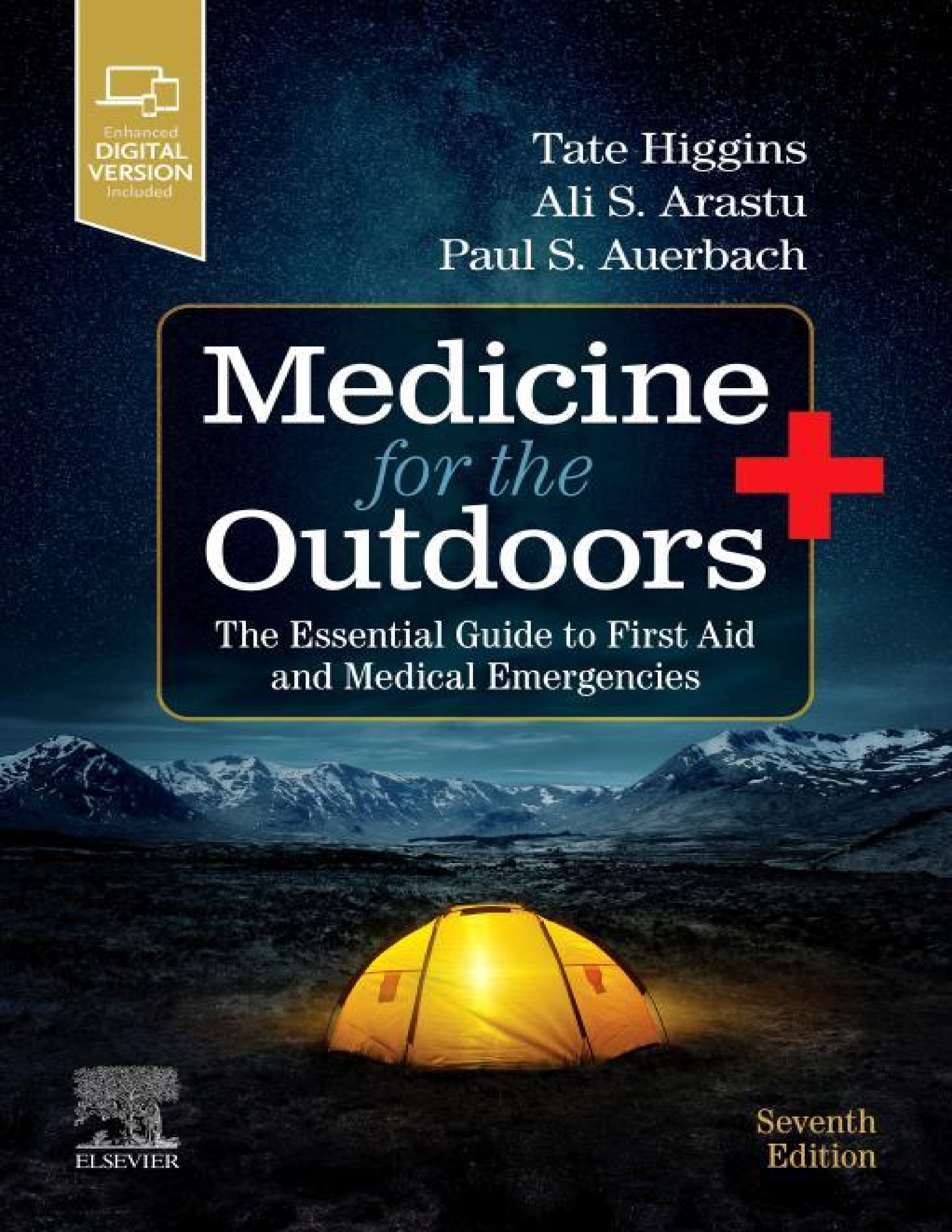


Enhanced
DIGITAL
VERSION
Included

Tate Higgins
Ali S. Arastu
Paul S. Auerbach

Medicine *for the* Outdoors

The Essential Guide to First Aid and Medical Emergencies

ELSEVIER

Seventh
Edition

Medicine *for the* Outdoors

The Essential Guide to First Aid and Medical Emergencies

SEVENTH EDITION

Tate Higgins, MD, FAWM

Ali S. Arastu, MD, FAWM

Paul S. Auerbach, MD

ELSEVIER

Table of Contents

Cover image

Title page

Copyright

Preface

Part One. General Information

How to use this book

Before you go

- Be in good health
- Be prepared
- Common sense
- Falls prevention
- Rules of the road
- Conditioning and acclimatization
- Equipment
- Trip plans
- Medicines

Nutrition

Fluid requirements

Personal hygiene and bodily waste disposal

General injury prevention: Risk factors

Disaster preparedness

Disaster response triage

Duty to assist

General first aid principles

While you are waiting for help to arrive

Assisting a victim of starvation

Medical decision-making

Hand offs

Patient assessment–a structured approach to emergencies in the outdoors

Overview

Primary survey (a search for immediate life threats)

A note on ABC vs. CAB

Airway

Choking

Helmet removal

Breathing

How to assist breathing (mouth-to-mouth)

Circulation

- Disability and neurologic status
- Logrolling the victim (see Figs. 27 and 28)
- Lifting and moving a victim
- Expose and environment
- The secondary survey
- The physical exam
- Vital signs by age group
- Pulse oximetry
- Temperature
- History

Part Two. Major Medical Problems

Introduction

An approach to the unconscious victim
- Drug overdose
- Long-term care of an unconscious or gravely disabled person

Chest injury
- Broken ribs
- Flail chest
- Pneumothorax
- Bruised lung
- Treatment for chest injuries

- Serious lung disorders
    - Asthma
    - Pulmonary embolism
    - Heart failure (often called “congestive heart failure”)
    - Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
    - Pneumonia
- Chest pain
    - Angina pectoris
    - Heart attack (acute myocardial infarction “AMI” or “MI”)
    - Treatment for a suspected heart attack
    - Aortic dissection
    - Very rapid heart rate
    - High blood pressure
    - Noncardiac causes of chest pain
- Bleeding
    - Treatment for bleeding
    - Applying a tourniquet
    - Internal bleeding
- Shock
- Head injury
    - Concussion

- Treatment principles for head injuries
- Simplified motor score
- AVPU
- ACDU
- Pain control
- Lacerations of the scalp

Allergic reaction

- Treatment for a severe allergic reaction (anaphylaxis)

Seizure

- Treatment for seizure

Fractures and dislocations

- Compartment syndrome
- Splints and slings
- Taping
- Specific injuries
- Neck
- Logrolling the victim (see Figs. 27 and 28)
- “Clearing” a cervical spine
- Skull and face
- Nose
- Jaw
- Wrist, hand, and finger

  - Forearm
  - Elbow
  - “Nursemaid’s elbow”
  - Upper arm
  - Collarbone (clavicle)
  - Shoulder dislocation
  - Shoulder separation
  - Rib
  - Thoracic and lumbar spine (chest and lower back)
  - Pelvis
  - Tailbone (coccyx)
  - Femur
  - Hip
  - Knee and kneecap
  - Lower leg
  - Ankle
  - Toe
  - Heel
- Amputation
- Burns
  - Definitions (Fig. 132)
  - Treatment for burns

    Tar burn
    Burn prevention

Inhalation injuries
    Thermal injury
    Smoke (chemical) injury
    Air quality index for particles
    Aspiration injury
    Carbon monoxide poisoning

Abdominal pain
    General evaluation
    Physical examination
    Epigastrium
    Right upper quadrant
    Left upper quadrant
    Right lower quadrant
    Left lower quadrant
    Lower abdomen (central)
    Flanks (sides of lower back)

Problems of ovaries and vagina
    Ovarian infection
    Ovulation, ovarian cyst, and torsed (twisted) ovary
    Bleeding from the vagina

- Vaginitis, vaginal discharge, and vaginal infections
- Emergency contraception
- Safe sex

Disorders of the kidneys, bladder, and prostate

- Bladder infection
- Kidney infection
- Kidney stone
- Blood in the urine
- Acute urinary retention
- Prostate infection

Problems of the penis and testicles

- Painful testicle
- Penile discharge
- Infection of the foreskin (balanitis)
- Safe sex

Emergency childbirth

- Complicated deliveries
- Cellulitis of the breast (mastitis)

Diabetes

Stroke

Infectious diseases

- Fever in the returning traveler
- Malaria
- Yellow fever
- Dengue
- Chikungunya fever
- West nile viral disease
- Zika virus disease
- Eastern equine encephalitis
- Tick bites and prevention
- Relapsing fever
- Rocky mountain spotted fever
- Colorado tick fever
- Lyme disease
- Ehrlichiosis
- Anaplasmosis
- African tick-bite fever
- Babesiosis
- Schistosomiasis
- Trichinellosis (trichinosis)
- Leptospirosis
- Tularemia
- Typhoid and paratyphoid fevers

Meningococcal disease (including meningitis)

Tetanus

Ebola, lassa, and other viruses that cause “hemorrhagic fevers”

Emerging infectious diseases

COVID-19

Rabies

Part Three. Minor Medical Problems

Introduction

General symptoms

Fainting

Fatigue

Fever and chills

Cough

Coughing blood

Hiccups (hiccoughs)

Dizziness

Head (including eye, ear, nose, throat, and mouth)

Headache

Bell’s palsy

Ear and hearing

Eye

Contact lenses

- Nose
- Throat
- Mouth and teeth (dental)

Upper respiratory disorders

- Common cold
- Influenza
- Bronchitis
- Pleuritis
- Hay fever

Disorders of the gastrointestinal tract

- Diarrhea
- Gluten sensitivity
- Constipation
- Hemorrhoids, anal fissure, and rectal prolapse
- Flatus
- Heartburn
- Nausea and vomiting
- Vomiting blood
- Ulcer disease
- Hepatitis

Skin disorders

- Sunburn

Sunscreens

Melanoma

Poison ivy, sumac, and oak (genus toxicodendron)

Other irritating plants

Rashes incurred in the water

Hives

Heat rash

Intertrigo

Chafe

Impetigo

Cellulitis, including from methicillin-resistant staphylococcus aureus

Abscess

Ingrown toenail

Fingertip cracks

Paronychia

Felon

Blisters

Plantar warts

Athlete’s foot, ringworm, and jock itch

Tinea versicolor

Onychomycosis

Good foot care

Diaper rash

  - Armpit odor
  - Lice
  - Scabies
  - Creeping eruption
  - Shingles
  - Herpes simplex virus genital infection
  - Fever blisters

- Minor bruises and wounds
  - Bruises
  - Black eye
  - Blood under the fingernail
  - Torn fingernail
  - Puncture wounds
  - Impaled object
  - Scrapes
  - Cuts (lacerations)
  - Skin flaps and avulsions
  - Taping a wound closed
  - Sewing (suturing) a wound closed
  - Stapling a wound closed
  - Gluing a wound closed
  - Dress the wound
  - Wound infection

  - Seek medical care
  - Bandaging techniques
  - Abscess (boil)
  - Scalp laceration (cut on the head)
  - Fishhook removal
  - Splinter removal
  - Blisters

- Musculoskeletal injuries
  - Overuse syndromes
  - Carpal tunnel syndrome
  - Cyclist’s palsy
  - Saturday night palsy
  - Rotator cuff tendinitis
  - Turf toe
  - Muscle fatigue
  - Shin splints
  - Plantar fasciitis
  - Torn muscle
  - Sprains, strains, and tendon rupture
  - Muscle cramps
  - Arthritis
  - Bursitis
  - Venous thrombosis and thrombophlebitis

- Back pain

Mental health (psychiatric) emergencies

- Anxiety
- Panic
- Depression
- Delirium
- Psychosis
- Reaction to an injury or illness (acute stress disorder)
- Posttraumatic stress disorder
- Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder

Part Four. Disorders Related to Specific Environments

Injuries and illnesses due to cold

- Hypothermia (lowered body temperature)
- Prevention of hypothermia
- Mild hypothermia
- Moderate hypothermia
- Severe and profound hypothermia
- Rewarming and preparing a hypothermic victim for transport
- Cold water immersion
- What to do if you fall through the ice
- How to assist someone who has fallen through the ice
- Winter storm preparedness

- Safe sledding
- Frostbite
- Treatment of frostbite
- Stages of frostbite
- Wound management after thawing
- Prevention of frostbite
- Frostnip
- Immersion foot (trench foot)
- Chilblain (pernio)
- Raynaud’s phenomenon
- Hives induced by exposure to cold
- Snow blindness

Injuries and illnesses due to heat

- Burn injuries
- Heat-related illness (hyperthermia)
- Heat exhaustion and heat stroke
- Cooling the victim
- Muscle cramps
- Heat swelling
- Fainting
- Avoiding heat illness

Wildland fires

    High-risk situations
    Standard fire encounter principles
    What to do when caught in a wildland fire

High altitude–related problems
    Prevention of high altitude–related disorders
    High-altitude pulmonary edema
    High-altitude cerebral edema
    Acute mountain sickness
    Gamow bag (portable hyperbaric chamber)
    Other disorders of high altitude

Snakebite
    Venomous snakes
    Signs of envenomation
    Pit vipers
    Coral snakes
    Treatment of snakebite
    Avoidance of venomous snakes
    Nonvenomous snakes
    Gila monster and Mexican beaded lizard

Insect and arthropod bites
    Bees, wasps, hornets, and ants
    Spiders

Scorpions

Mosquitoes

Mosquito avoidance

Biting flies

Fleas

Chiggers

Centipedes and millipedes

Ticks

Tick avoidance

Tick removal

Tick bite and red meat allergy

Caterpillars

Beetles

Sucking bugs

Skin infestation by fly larvae

Insect repellents and other protection against insects

Screens, bed nets, coils, candles, shields, and traps

Repellents

Leeches

Lightning strike, tornado (cyclone), hurricane (typhoon), flood, earthquake, tidal wave (tsunami), landslide (mudslide), volcano, and snow avalanche

Lightning strike

Lightning avoidance and how to seek safety

Tornado avoidance and how to seek safety

Hurricane: How to seek safety

Flood: How to seek safety

Earthquake: What to do and how to seek safety

Tidal wave: How to seek safety

Landslide: How to seek safety

Volcano

What to do if working or traveling near an active volcano

Snow avalanche

Hazardous aquatic life and aquatic infections

Sharks

Shark avoidance

Barracudas

Moray eels

Sponges

Jellyfish

Coral and barnacle cuts

Sea urchins

Starfish

Cucumbers

Bristleworms

Cone snails (shells)

Stingrays

    Avoidance of stingray injuries
    Catfish
    Scorpionfish
    Surgeonfish
    Octopuses
    Sea snakes
    Skin rashes caused by aquatic plants (seaweed dermatitis) or creatures (sea bather’s eruption, swimmer’s itch)
    Poisonings from seafood
    Scombroid fish poisoning
    Pufferfish poisoning
    Ciguatera fish poisoning
    Paralytic shellfish poisoning
    Hallucinatory fish poisoning
    Anisakidosis

Underwater diving accidents
    Air embolism
    Decompression sickness (the “bends”)
    Nitrogen narcosis
    Ear squeeze
    Sinus squeeze
    Tooth squeeze

Drowning

- Recognizing a victim of drowning
- Prevention of drowning

Animal attacks

- Animal attacks
- General treatment
- Special considerations
- Avoidance of hazardous animals

Wild plant and mushroom poisoning

- Medical history
- Treatment for poisonings
- Commonly ingested toxic plants and mushrooms
- Toxicity of common plants

Part Five. Miscellaneous Information

Oxygen administration

- Precautions

Water disinfection

Motion sickness

Jet lag

- In flight

Personal safety in an age of conflict, kidnapping, and terrorism

- Safe travel
- Kidnapping and hostage behavior
- Piracy
- Blast injuries

First aid kits
- Basic supplies
- General supplies to consider
- Wound care: Preparations and dressings
- Splinting and sling material
- Eye medications and dressings
- Dental supplies
- Topical skin preparations
- Nonprescription medications
- Prescription medications (select what you feel you might need; the drugs listed are “for example”)
- Allergy kit
- Forest and mountain environments
- Aquatic environments

Physicians abroad

Immunizations

Transport of the injured victim
- Lifting and moving techniques

- Carries and litters
- Helicopters

Ground-to-air distress signals

Lost people

Procedures

- Intramuscular injection
- Fishhook removal
- Splinter removal
- Ring removal
- Zipper removal
- Knots and hitches

Dealing with death

- Handling a dead body
- Emotional considerations
- Obtaining assistance

Appendices

Appendix One: Commonly used drugs (medications) and doses

Appendix Two: Conversion tables

Appendix Three: Guidelines for prevention of diseases transmitted via human blood and other bodily fluids

Appendix Four: Commonly used applications of the SAM splint

Appendix Five: Emergency canine medicine

Glossary (Including Acronyms and Abbreviations)

Index

Copyright

Elsevier
1600 John F. Kennedy Blvd.
Ste 1800
Philadelphia, PA 19103-2899

MEDICINE FOR THE OUTDOORS: THE ESSENTIAL GUIDE TO FIRST AID AND MEDICAL EMERGENCIES, SEVENTH EDITION ISBN: 978-0-323-68056-1
Copyright © 2024 by Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher. Details on how to seek permission, further information about the Publisher's permissions policies and our arrangements with organizations such as the Copyright Clearance Center and the Copyright Licensing Agency, can be found at our website: www.elsevier.com/permissions.

This book and the individual contributions contained in it are protected under copyright by the Publisher (other than as may be noted herein).

Notice

Practitioners and researchers must always rely on their own experience and knowledge in evaluating and using any information, methods, compounds or experiments described herein. Because of rapid advances in the medical sciences, in particular, independent verification of diagnoses and drug dosages should be made. To the fullest extent of the law, no responsibility is assumed by Elsevier, authors, editors or contributors for any injury and/or damage to persons or property as a matter of products liability, negligence or otherwise, or from any use or operation of any methods, products, instructions, or ideas contained in the material herein.

Previous editions copyrighted 2016, 2009, and 2003.

Senior Content Strategist: Kayla Wolfe
Senior Content Development Specialist: Lisa Barnes
Publishing Services Manager: Shereen Jameel
Senior Project Manager: Manikandan Chandrasekaran
Senior Book Designer: Amy Buxton

Printed in India

Last digit is the print number: 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

ELSEVIER Book Aid International Working together to grow libraries in developing countries
www.elsevier.com • www.bookaid.org

Preface

The outdoor environment is beautiful, but it is ever-changing and can become hostile in a moment. Good fortune favors the well prepared, and there are no more important considerations for a successful outdoor experience than safety and first aid. Severe weather, rugged terrain, wild animals, and equipment failure conspire to create or complicate medical hardships that must be diagnosed swiftly and remedied with certainty. The therapies can be integral to survival. Medical education is thus as compelling as any other category of learning.

This revised seventh edition of *Medicine for the Outdoors* has been comprehensively updated based on advances in medical knowledge and requests from readers. I am indebted to my family, professional colleagues, and friends. Sherry, Brian, Lauren, and Dan embody the outdoor spirit and put this book to good use. *Medicine for the Outdoors* is dedicated to all the amazing people who give generously of their time to try to make the world a better place.

With at least as much effort as we seek to maintain our personal well-being, we must try to preserve our environment. Wise healers will approach preservation of planet Earth with the same passion that they devote to vital medical missions; for without the wilderness, there can be no wilderness medicine.

Paul S. Auerbach, MD
Summer, 2020

Paul S. Auerbach, MD. Paul died June 23 rd 2021 after a battle with brain cancer. He died surrounded by his family who he loved more than anything.

From Dr. Ali S. Arastu

Paul Auerbach. Legendary. The Father of Wilderness Medicine. Larger than life. Humanitarian in the truest sense of word. Compassionate. An inspiration, a mentor and a role model. Always there ... and impossibly everywhere else, too.

This is just a sample of the words used to describe Paul from the hundreds of people—family and friends, health care workers, humanitarians, wilderness enthusiasts, and conservationists from all over the globe—gathered to honor and celebrate Paul after he died on June 23, 2021. We gathered remotely, of course, given the circumstances of the COVID-19 pandemic. We listened in awe as those that loved Paul told countless stories and wondered how one individual could have possibly accomplished as much as he did.

Paul was a North Star—always present and there to guide and navigate—to an impossibly large number of people. I first met Paul at a Wilderness Medicine Society meeting before starting medical school, as I was setting off for a Pacific Crest Trail thru-hike and to be a Himalayan vagabond. And so began Paul's gentle guiding of my journey—through medical school and training afterwards. As I struggled to find the place that medicine had in my life, Paul's was always the advice that I sought. What medicine was to Paul—what Wilderness Medicine was to him—was limitless: it was a deep-seeded passion to heal. To know as much about medicine as possible, regardless of specialty or subspecialty, and deliver it to all people, no matter where the patient was, what was available or what sacrifice had to be made to provide the care needed. It didn't matter if it was the quaternary care facility at Stanford University or in remote wilderness.

Paul's mantra was to serve and heal all he encountered—the wilderness included. There couldn't have been a better mentor as I embarked on learning what it meant to be a physician.

My last backcountry adventure with Paul epitomizes much of who he was, his passion, his ability to be there, and, impossibly, everywhere else too. We were at the Cottonwood Lakes trailhead in the eastern Sierra, sitting in a van that I was living in at the time, awaiting the arrival of fifteen recently incarcerated youth from Los Angeles. In addition to guiding my journey in medicine at Stanford, Paul also found time to help me found a non-profit organization dedicated to empowering vulnerable youth and connecting them to wilderness. His pack was stuffed with no less than thirty pounds of journals, articles, and papers that he was writing or editing. His satellite phone was going off as he was coordinating yet another search and rescue response and the building of a hospital in Nepal. Yet with all this, he was remarkably present, excited to be in the wilderness and share its wonder with fresh young eyes. His balance of working to make the world a better place, yet remaining present while doing so, will always inspire me.

Paul genuinely influenced the path of many—I consider myself blessed to be among this group. *Medicine for the Outdoors* will always be Paul's text; Tate and I were honored when he asked us to carry it forward, and we will cherish the many conversations with Paul about what this book means. We hope that it continues to inspire a venture into the wild, whatever that may mean.

Ali S. Arastu, MD, FAWM
Summer, 2021

From Dr. Tate Higgins

My path to wilderness medicine, to Paul, and to this book started with a love of being outside and a fundamental desire to know how to help when things went wrong. As a river guide in the American West, I entered the field of Wilderness Medicine officially when a great friend and guide-mentor encouraged me to become a Wilderness EMT to make myself a more qualified international expedition leader.

Wilderness Medicine gave me a framework to tackle any emergency in any environment. I practiced skills equally useful in remote mountains, wild and scenic rivers, ambulances, or in my own living room. I learned medicine in the context of creativity, teamwork, adaptability, and problem solving with limited resources. As I immersed myself in Wilderness Medicine, one larger than life figure came up again and again. Paul Auerbach. He had written the definitive textbook of the field. He was an emergency medicine physician, humanitarian, writer, and pioneer in the field who never stopped adventuring outdoors. He was one of the rare experts who talked the talk and walked the walk.

Like countless others around the world, Paul's work inspired me. I became a Wilderness Medicine instructor at NOLS where I have had the privilege to teach thousands of students across the country. The skills taught in Wilderness Medicine courses are universal and empowering, and it has been a privilege to share them widely. Somewhere along the way, I got caught up in all the medicine, moved out of my truck, went to medical school, and became an emergency medicine physician.

I knew Paul was at Stanford, and when I came there as a resident, one of the first things I did was reach out to him. I was nervous to call him because he was an almost mythical figure, but I was determined to meet the man that had blazed the trail I'd been following. It turns out, I didn't need to be nervous. He couldn't have been more generous or welcoming. He immediately invited my wife and I over for dinner. Paul and his wife Sherry welcomed us with open arms, and I felt like we had always known each other. Despite his busy schedule, despite the fact that he was dying and knew his time was limited, he became a generous mentor to me. He told a million stories, most about his own family. We ate ice cream. He made jokes about his own mortality and gave advice on everything. He introduced me to my co-author Ali.

Later, when Paul asked us to take over *Medicine for the Outdoors*, I was honored and humbled. I told him that I felt undeserving of the opportunity. He reassured me and asked only that when the time comes, at the end of our own careers, Ali and I pass this opportunity on to some young, hardworking professional at the beginning of their own career. "Be generous and help others," he told us.

The last time Paul, Ali, and I all hung out together, Paul said that he was trying to view this cancer stuff as an adventure and that he was learning so many things because of it. I'll never forget how calm and positive he seemed even as his life was ending.

"Family first," he told us. This, above all else, was his guiding philosophy, and it showed.

He gave us professional advice, too. "When you have a choice between work and a trip, go on the trip."

He reminded us that it's not enough to just sit at your desk and write the books. You have to get out in the world and have adventures. "Wilderness medicine people don't care that you're a doctor," he said. "They care that you're legit."

When we parted that day, Paul shook my hand, looked me straight in the eye, and said reassuringly, "This isn't the end." He paused for a beat, and I stood there in full anticipation, holding his eye contact, waiting for the final lesson. "If you come across some dog with a smile and a mustache. That'll be me," he said nodding and smiling. "I don't know how I'll talk to you, but that'll be me." We all laughed.

That's how I remember him. Smiling and generous and unbelievably brave and upbeat, taking on his own death with the attitude of adventure and sharing generously to the very end.

I am grateful to Paul, to my family, to my co-author Ali, and to the teachers and mentors that have given generously of their time and attention to make me better. I hope that this book can pass on some of that energy and help you in whatever adventure you are lucky enough to pursue.

Tate Higgins, MD, FAWM
Summer, 2021

About the authors

Dr. Tate Higgins is a Fellow of the Academy of Wilderness Medicine and a lead instructor for NOLS Wilderness Medicine. Since 2009, he has taught prehospital and wilderness medicine courses to outdoor professionals and enthusiasts around the country and across the globe. He has worked many years in the backcountry as a whitewater river guide and as an international trip leader. His interests include multi-day river trips, high altitude expeditions, and using wilderness to inspire and train effective leaders. Residency in emergency medicine at Stanford.

Dr. Ali S. Arastu is a Stanford trained Pediatric Critical Care physician and a Fellow of the Academy of Wilderness Medicine. On the Board of Directors of several non-profit organizations, he is passionate about introducing youth to the wilderness, and using the wilderness as a platform for empowering youth to be the healthiest version of themselves. His wilderness interests include long-distance backpacking and anything involving the ocean.

Dr. Paul S. Auerbach was the Redlich Family Professor of Surgery in the Division of Emergency Medicine at Stanford University School of Medicine. A founder and past president of the Wilderness Medical Society, Dr. Auerbach was editor of *Wilderness Medicine*, the definitive textbook for medical professionals, and author of the books *Field Guide to Wilderness Medicine, A Medical Guide to Hazardous Marine Life, Diving the Rainbow Reefs, An Ocean of Colors, Management Lessons from the E.R.* , and *Bad Medicine*. The nation's foremost authority on wilderness medicine, he served on the Medical Committee of the National Ski Patrol System; was an advisor to the Divers Alert Network, Healthline Networks, and Redpoint Resolutions; and was a consultant or committee member for many other scientific, medical, and outdoor-related organizations. He was an elected member of the Council on Foreign Relations, was the first editor of the journal *Wilderness & Environmental Medicine* (formerly *Journal of Wilderness Medicine*), was named a "Hero of Emergency Medicine," and was a recipient of numerous awards, including the Outstanding Contribution in Education Award from the American College of Emergency Physicians, Founders and Education Awards from the Wilderness Medical Society, DAN America and DAN Rolex Diver of the Year Awards from the Divers Alert Network, Diver of the Year Award for Science from Beneath the Sea, and NOGI Award for Science from the Academy of Underwater Arts and Sciences. In addition to his clinical work in emergency medicine at Stanford, Dr. Auerbach was engaged in research on frostbite, avalanche rescue, medical radiation exposure, and traumatic brain injury; assisted early-stage biodesign and technology companies; was an active international medical volunteer involved in disaster response and prehospital care system design; and was highly sought after as a speaker and writer, both in the medical profession and in the popular media. He was the original author of *Medicine for the Outdoors* before inviting Dr. Higgins and Dr. Arastu to join him as co-authors on the 7th edition and ultimately take over the text. Dr. Auerbach died June 23, 2021.

List of Illustrations

Fig. 1 Patient assessment. A structured approach to emergencies in the outdoors.
Fig. 2 Anatomy of the respiratory system.
Fig. 3 Jaw pull to open the airway.
Fig. 4 Modified jaw thrust to open the airway while being in a position to minimize motion of the neck. Grasping the angles of the lower jaw firmly, the rescuer pulls forward to lift the tongue out of the throat.
Fig. 5 Positioning the head to control the airway. The forehead is gently pushed back while support is maintained under the neck. Use a jaw thrust technique if a broken neck is suspected.
Fig. 6 Placement of a pillow to assist airway alignment in an infant **(A),** small child **(B),** and older child or adult **(C).**
Fig. 7 Head tilt with chin lift to bring the base of the tongue forward and open the airway.
Fig. 8 Manual tongue traction. With a cloth or safety pin *(inset)* to secure the grip, the tongue is lifted out of the mouth to clear the airway.
Fig. 9 Using two safety pins to attach the tongue to the lower lip to help control the airway.
Fig. 10 Victim on their side to minimize choking. Recovery position.
Fig. 11 The Heimlich maneuver. **A,** A hand is placed on the upper abdomen. **B,** The second hand interlocks to create a tight grip. A sudden, forceful squeeze ("bear hug") causes the victim to cough.
Fig. 12 Heimlich maneuver with the victim lying on their back.
Fig. 13 Look, feel, and listen for air movement.
Fig. 14 Mouth-to-mouth breathing. **A,** While the neck is supported with one hand, the nose is pinched closed. **B,** The rescuer covers the victim's mouth with their own and forces air into the victim until the chest rises. This should take approximately 1 to 2 seconds.
Fig. 15 **A–C,** Improvised CPR barrier fashioned from protective surgical glove.
Fig. 16 Mouth-to-mouth-and-nose breathing required to resuscitate a child.
Fig. 17 Location of the pulses. **A,** Carotid artery in the neck. **B,** Femoral artery in the groin. **C,** Radial and ulnar arteries in the wrist. **D,** Taking a radial pulse. **E,** Brachial artery in the arm. **F,** Popliteal artery behind the knee. **G,** Posterior tibial

artery on the inner aspect of the ankle. **H,** Dorsalis pedis artery on the top of the foot.

Fig. 18 Positioning the hands for CPR. **A,** The heel of the first hand is placed two fingerbreadths above the bottom edge of the breastbone. **B,** The second hand is placed over the first and the fingers are interlocked.

Fig. 19 Proper arm and body position for CPR. The rescuer compresses the victim's chest by keeping the arms straight and dropping their upper body weight directly over the victim.

Fig. 20 Compression of the chest during CPR. With proper technique, the adult/child breastbone should be compressed 1/3 or more the depth of the chest, at least 2 inches in adults, with 100 to 120 compressions per minute.

Fig. 21 Infant CPR. **A,** Positioning the infant on the forearm. **B,** With the forearm for a back support, two fingers of the opposite hand are used to compress the breastbone. **C,** The mouth and nose of the infant are covered by the rescuer's mouth for rescue breathing.

Fig. 22 Immobilization of the neck. The rescuer grasps the victim's shoulders and controls the head between their forearms.

Fig. 23 Immobilization of the neck. The rescuer grasps the victim's head with two hands. The key principle is to stabilize the spine in neutral alignment without twisting or bending during body movement.

Fig. 24 Immobilization of the neck using rolled towels. The rescuer's hands can be replaced with a strap of tape across the forehead to prevent movement.

Fig. 25 Cervical collar fashioned from a padded hip belt on an inverted backpack.

Fig. 26 A rolled towel or shirt is secured behind the neck with a firmly wrapped cravat or cloth. This technique should be used solely for an alert and cooperative victim. *It provides only enough support to remind the victim to not move their head and neck.*

Fig. 27 Logrolling the victim. The rescuer at the head immobilizes the neck with their forearms and the victim's extended arm, while an assistant helps turn the body. The head holder should command all movements.

Fig. 28 Logrolling the victim. The rescuer at the head immobilizes the neck with two hands on the victim's head. The victim's arms can be crossed at the chest, at their side, or extended.

Fig. 29 Pressing on a fingernail to check capillary refill.

Fig. 30 Pulse oximeter.

Fig. 31 Naloxone administration.

Fig. 32 Flail chest. A section of detached (broken) ribs might seriously impede the mechanics of breathing.

Fig. 33 Pneumothorax. Air enters the pleural space lining the lung through the chest wall or from a lung leak, which causes the lung to collapse. A tension

pneumothorax occurs when air in the pleural space accumulates under pressure, forcing the lung, heart, and trachea to the opposite side *(white arrow).*

Fig. 34 Chest wound dressing. **A,** Open chest wound. **B,** The dressing is held firmly in place with tape or a cloth wrap.

Fig. 35 Apply a dressing sealed on three sides to cover a wound over a collapsed lung.

Fig. 36 A dressing sealed on four sides might be necessary to prevent air from entering chest cavity. Wipe away blood and sweat before applying and use extra tape to hold in place. It may be necessary to remove or decompress 4-sided dressing.

Fig. 37 Finger decompression of existing wound to relieve tension pneumothorax.

Fig. 38 Method of cushioning a flail chest wall segment by applying firm pressure with a blanket and section of tree bark.

Fig. 39 Costochondritis. The attachments of the ribs to the breastbone are inflamed and exquisitely tender to pressure.

Fig. 40 Firm pressure applied to a bleeding wound.

Fig. 41 Wound packing to control bleeding.

Fig. 42 Israeli pressure bandage.

Fig. 43 Initial positioning of a combat application tourniquet (CAT).

Fig. 44 Positioning the self-adhering band of a CAT through the friction adapter buckle. **A,** On a leg, go through both sides of the friction buckle. **B,** On an arm, one side may be sufficient.

Fig. 45 Secure the self-adhering band of the CAT tightly back upon itself.

Fig. 46 Adhere the band of the CAT until it reaches the clip.

Fig. 47 Twist the windlass rod of the CAT until the bleeding stops.

Fig. 48 Lock the windlass rod of the CAT in place.

Fig. 49 Place band through clip, and adhere windlass strap to the windlass clip.

Fig. 50 Application of the MATResponder Tourniquet.

Fig. 51 Application of an improvised tourniquet. **A,** Wrap the bandage around the limb, then tie a square knot. Tie a stick in place over the knot. Twist the stick to tighten the tourniquet just until the bleeding stops. **B,** Secure the stick.

Fig. 52 **A,** Loops of bowel protrude from a laceration in the abdomen. **B,** These should be covered gently with a moistened bandage or cloth. Do not try to push them back into the abdomen unless necessary for evacuation (e.g., if the victim must walk out under their own power, and such activity is forcing more bowel to extrude from the wound).

Fig. 53 Padding and bandages to prevent motion of a penetrating object.

Fig. 54 Positioning a victim who is in shock. Elevate the legs, cushion the back, protect the airway, and keep the victim warm.

Fig. 55 Unequal pupils.

Fig. 56 String and hair-tying method for closing a scalp wound. Glue can be used instead of string.

Fig. 57 Figure 8 suture for bleeding scalp wound.

Fig. 58 Fractured bones. **A,** Simple fracture (one break). **B,** Comminuted fracture (multiple breaks). **C,** Closed fracture (skin unbroken). **D,** Open, or compound, fracture (skin broken).

Fig. 59 Position of function (normal anatomic resting position). Unless otherwise specified, the upper and lower limbs should be bandaged and/or splinted in these positions. **A,** Upper extremity. **B,** Lower extremity.

Fig. 60 Traction in line to reposition deformed fractures.

Fig. 61 Splints can be fashioned from items such as **(A)** ski poles and **(B)** rolled newspaper.

Fig. 62 Major bones of the skeleton.

Fig. 63 Elevate head in severe head injuries and skull fractures using rigid backboard if spine injury suspected.

Fig. 64 Bandage for a fractured or dislocated jaw. The bandage must be easy to remove, in case the victim needs to vomit.

Fig. 65 Dislocated jaw. **A,** The condyle of the mandible slips forward out of the joint. The teeth do not fit together properly. **B,** The rescuer applies firm downward pressure to relocate the jaw. **C,** Normal position is restored, and the teeth fit properly.

Fig. 66 A rolled elastic bandage is gripped gently to maintain the hand in the “position of function.”

Fig. 67 Hand dressing in the “position of function.” **A,** The fingers hold a pad of cloth in the palm. **B,** A circumferential wrap is applied, taking care to pad between the fingers. **C,** The completed wrap leaves the fingertips exposed, so that they can be checked for adequate circulation.

Fig. 68 A SAM Splint fashioned to stabilize the wrist and forearm. **A,** In this method, the elbow is free to bend. **B,** The splint can be extended to immobilize the elbow.

Fig. 69 Buddy-taping method to immobilize a finger.

Fig. 70 A variation of the buddy-taping method to immobilize a finger. If the fingers are taped together tightly, cotton or cloth should be placed between them for padding.

Fig. 71 Scaphoid (navicular) bone of the wrist.

Fig. 72 “Anatomical snuffbox” used to determine possibility of scaphoid fracture by applying direct external pressure.

Fig. 73 Sling and swathe. **A,** A triangular bandage is draped under the arm and over the opposite shoulder. **B,** Two corners are tied behind the neck, and the third is pinned at the elbow. **C,** A cravat swathe holds the arm against the chest.

Fig. 74 Tying off the tail of a sling instead of using a pin.

Fig. 75 Alternative route for more comfortable bandage placement for a sling.

Fig. 76 Pinning the shirt to make a hammock sling for the arm.

Fig. 77 Pinning a shirt sleeve to the chest.

Fig. 78 Reverse jacket as sling.

Fig. 79 **A,** Dislocation of a finger joint. **B,** Relocation of the bones with firm steady traction.

Fig. 80 **A,** Mallet finger. **B,** Splinting a mallet finger.

Fig. 81 Taping the thumb for immobilization. **A,** The buddy-taping method. **B,** A thumb-lock. If possible, padding should be placed between the thumb and the forefinger.

Fig. 82 "Gamekeeper's thumb."

Fig. 83 Repositioning a dislocated elbow.

Fig. 84 To reduce a nursemaid's elbow, rotate the hand and forearm as shown, then flex the forearm up toward the shoulder.

Fig. 85 If no pop is felt after rotating the elbow and flexing the forearm toward the shoulder, then maintain the rotation and flexion and push the hand more firmly toward the upper arm.

Fig. 86 Using a cravat to hold the upper arm against the body.

Fig. 87 Padded boards to splint the upper arm.

Fig. 88 Modified figure-of-eight bandage for a broken collarbone.

Fig. 89 Woven figure-of-eight bandage for a broken collarbone.

Fig. 90 Dislocated shoulder. **A,** Normal anatomy. **B,** With dislocation, the head of the humerus slips out of the glenoid (socket), and a depression *(arrow)* is noted in the external appearance of the shoulder.

Fig. 91 The victim with a dislocated shoulder carries the arm up and away from the body.

Fig. 92 Proper position for using the Cunningham technique for reducing a shoulder dislocation.

Fig. 93 Technique for relocating a shoulder dislocation. One rescuer applies traction at the forearm while another applies countertraction at the chest.

Fig. 94 Repositioning a dislocated shoulder. Attached to the victim's forearm with a strap, rope, or sheet, the rescuer uses their body weight to apply traction, leaving their hands free to manipulate the victim's arm. A second rescuer applies countertraction, or the victim can be held motionless by fixing the chest sheet to a tree or ground stake.

Fig. 95 Life jacket brace to assist in the relocation of a dislocated humerus.

Fig. 96 A fanny pack filled with rocks can be used for a weight in the "dangle" method of shoulder relocation.

Fig. 97 Pulling on the hanging arm to relocate a dislocated humerus.

Fig. 98 **A,** Pushing the lower edge of the scapula toward the spine while an assistant pulls downward on the hanging arm to assist in the relocation of a dislocated humerus. **B,** The downward pull on the arm should be slightly forward to help put the arm bone back in the shoulder socket.

Fig. 99 External rotation technique for reducing a dislocated humerus.

Fig. 100 Reducing a dislocated humerus while the victim is lying on their back. **A,** Gently pulling and externally rotating until **B,** reduction occurs. Spaso technique.

Fig. 101 Eskimo technique for reducing a dislocated humerus.

Fig. 102 Milch technique for reducing a dislocated humerus.

Fig. 103 Shoulder harness. **A**, wrap under arm pit then around chest. **B**, repeat, going under arm each time.

Fig. 104 **A,** Ligamentous attachments of the collarbone at the shoulder. **B,** Second-degree shoulder separation. **C,** Third-degree shoulder separation.

Fig. 105 Pelvic sling improvised with a jacket provides compression to the pelvis to control bleeding.

Fig. 106 Greater trochanters. Landmark for pelvic binder.

Fig. 107 Using an inflatable sleeping pad to stabilize a fractured pelvis.

Fig. 108 Fracture of the femur. **A,** Without traction, strong muscles of the thigh pull the broken bone ends together, causing pain and deformity. **B,** Traction straightens the leg and helps control bleeding and pain.

Fig. 109 Technique for applying traction to the lower leg to stabilize a broken femur.

Fig. 110 Single ski pole system for applying traction to stabilize a broken femur.

Fig. 111 The toe section of a boot can be cut away (with boot off victim) to allow inspection for adequate circulation. A cravat or piece of webbing can be passed through a boot as the first step in creating a traction harness.

Fig. 112 Paired-looped webbing to create an ankle hitch. **A,** Position the webbing around the ankle. **B,** Pull the harness tight with the ends pointed down for fixation to the splint.

Fig. 113 Buck's traction.

Fig. 114 S-configuration hitch traction harness applied above an injured ankle. Padding must be used to prevent injury to lower leg.

Fig. 115 Proper length of traction splint rods.

Fig. 116 Creation of the half ring, which snugs up into the buttock crease.

Fig. 117 Attachment of the spacer at the foot end between the splint rods.

Fig. 118 Configuration of cravats for cradle hitches.

Fig. 119 Attaching the splint to the leg above the suspected point of the fracture.

Fig. 120 Tie the free ends of the foot harness to the spacer. Then twist the Spanish windlass to create downward traction on the leg.

Fig. 121 After the windlass is twisted to achieve the desired traction, tie the windlass rod to the long struts of the splint to maintain the traction.

Fig. 122 Applying traction to a long leg splint using a webbing belt and sliding buckle.

Fig. 123 Secure the splint in place by tying off the cradle hitches.

Fig. 124 Position of the leg with posterior hip dislocation.

Fig. 125 Position of the leg with anterior hip dislocation.

Fig. 126 Two-rescuer method for repositioning a dislocated hip.

Fig. 127 Captain Morgan technique for reducing a dislocated hip.

Fig. 128 Whistler technique for reducing a dislocated hip.

Fig. 129 Duct tape suspenders support an improvised knee splint.

Fig. 130 Lower leg splint.

Fig. 131 A piece of rolled foam can be used as a “stirrup” to hold the foot and ankle motionless.

Fig. 132 Burn wound.

Fig. 133 Rule of nines for body surface area estimate.

Fig. 134 Location of the abdominal organs. **A,** View from the front, with the abdomen divided into four quadrants. **B,** View from the back. The kidneys are located posteriorly and might be the cause of flank or back pain.

Fig. 135 Ulcers. **A,** Location of ulcer craters in the duodenum and stomach. **B,** Epigastric region of the abdomen, where ulcer pain is often noted.

Fig. 136 Gallbladder with gallstones. **A,** The stones are formed in the gallbladder and travel through a narrow passageway (cystic and common ducts), which is easily blocked. **B,** Location of the gallbladder adjacent to the liver in the right upper quadrant of the abdomen.

Fig. 137 Appendicitis. Pain is felt in the right lower quadrant of the abdomen.

Fig. 138 Inguinal (groin) hernia. **A,** A loop of bowel bulges through a defect in the lower abdominal wall. **B,** Location of external bulge. In some cases, the swelling extends into the scrotum.

Fig. 139 Abdominal aortic aneurysm. **A,** Age, high blood pressure, and disease ravage the dilated aorta. **B,** Location of the aorta in the abdomen. Leaking or rupture causes pain in the abdomen, back, and flank.

Fig. 140 Kidney with kidney stones. **A,** The stones are formed in the kidney and travel through the ureter, bladder, and urethra before they are passed in the urine. **B,** Location of the genitourinary (urogenital) system.

Fig. 141 Female reproductive tract.

Fig. 142 Location of female reproductive tract within the pelvis.

Fig. 143 Rotation of the right testicle in a torsion; an inflamed epididymis of the left testicle.

Fig. 144 Appearance of the head and face during childbirth.

Fig. 145 Gentle downward pressure to deliver upper shoulder.

Fig. 146 Gentle upward pressure to deliver lower shoulder.

Fig. 147 Ear infections. **A,** Normal ear anatomy. **B,** Otitis media (inner ear infection). The eardrum bulges outward as the middle ear fills with fluid. The eustachian tube narrows or closes. **C,** Otitis externa (external ear canal infection). The canal becomes swollen and drains pus.

Fig. 148 Anatomy of the eye.

Fig. 149 Eversion of the eyelid to locate a foreign body. **A,** The lid is grasped and pulled over a cotton swab or small blunt stick. **B,** The underside of the eyelid is inspected for a foreign body while the victim looks downward.

Fig. 150 Taping a patch over the eye.

Fig. 151 Holding an eye patch in place with a cravat. Hang a cloth strip over the uninjured eye. Hold the patch in place with a cravat. Tie the cloth strip to lift the cravat off the uninjured eye.

Fig. 152 Bandage for the injured eye. A cravat or cloth is rolled and wrapped to make a doughnut-shaped shield, which is fixed in place over the eye.

Fig. 153 Using a cup to fashion an eye shield.

Fig. 154 Hyphemia. Bleeding into the eye causes an accumulation of blood in the anterior chamber, where it settles into a layer behind the cornea. In severe cases, the pupil is obscured by red blood.

Fig. 155 Contact lens removal. **A,** Push the lens gently to the lateral (away from the nose) white portion of the eye. **B,** A downward and outward pull on the skin at the lateral corner of the eye pops the lens free.

Fig. 156 Subconjunctival hemorrhage. The red discoloration does not involve the cornea, which remains clear.

Fig. 157 Location of the sinuses in the front of the skull and the face.

Fig. 158 Inflamed tonsils.

Fig. 159 Incision and drainage of a gum abscess.

Fig. 160 Tying a repositioned avulsed tooth in place with string or dental floss.

Fig. 161 Holding a tooth next to an adjacent tooth using a splint and glue.

Fig. 162 Hemorrhoids. **A,** External view of the anus with an enlarged external hemorrhoid. **B,** A cross-sectional view of the anus and rectum shows dilated veins that protrude into the rectum (internal hemorrhoids) and externally from the anus.

Fig. 163 Solar radiation.

Fig. 164 **A,** Poison oak. **B,** Poison ivy. **C,** Poison sumac.

Fig. 165 Hives.

Fig. 166 General location of lymph nodes within the lymphatic system. Tenderness and enlargement of the nodes mark inflammation in the lymph nodes; red streaking can sometimes be appreciated.

Fig. 167 External appearance of an abscess in the armpit.

Fig. 168 Cross section of a pus pocket, with a soft cap.

Fig. 169 **A,** To drain an abscess, a stab wound is made in the center of the softest area. **B,** After the pus is removed and the cavity is rinsed, a gauze wick is layered into the cavity.

Fig. 170 **A,** Two incisions are placed approximately 1 inch apart to allow the loop technique for abscess drainage. **B,** The rubber is tied off to create a loose loop.

Fig. 171 Removing an ingrown toenail.

Fig. 172 Relieving the pressure on an ingrown toenail. **A,** Place a strip of tape next to the painful ingrown toenail. **B,** Wrap the tape under the toe to separate the tissue from the nail.

Fig. 173 **A,** Paronychia. **B,** Draining a paronychia.

Fig. 174 **A,** Felon. **B,** Linear incision through the pad of the finger for drainage of a felon. **C,** L-shaped incision to allow improved drainage of a felon.

Fig. 175 **A,** Blister on the heel. **B,** A cushion of moleskin protects the area from further irritation.

Fig. 176 Using a sandwich bag to eliminate friction from a "hot spot" that might turn into a blister. **A,** Mark a corner of the bag to the size desired to cover the blister with a decent margin. **B,** Cut the bag, taking care to include both thicknesses (double layer, so that the plastic can slide on itself). **C,** Tape the plastic in place to cover the entire "hot spot" without applying any tape directly to the irritated skin.

Fig. 177 Shingles (herpes zoster) eruption.

Fig. 178 Hot paper clip technique to drain blood from under the fingernail.

Fig. 179 To control bleeding, cut a single finger from a rubber glove, then place it on the bleeding finger. Cut a small hole in the tip, then roll it back down over the finger so that it becomes tight at the base of the finger.

Fig. 180 Using a Zerowet Splashield attached to a syringe to irrigate the open wound.

Fig. 181 Using a small plastic bag filled with water to irrigate a wound.

Fig. 182 Fashioning a butterfly bandage. **A,** Fold a piece of tape so that the smooth (nonadhesive) sides are touching (e.g., do not let the tape stick together) and cut off both corners at the crease. **B,** The straightened tape reveals the "butterfly." **C,** The bandage is used to hold the wound edges close together.

Fig. 183 "Halving" a wound for the first act of closure.

Fig. 184 Halving a half, or "quartering the wound." This helps keep the wound in alignment and prevent mismatched sides (of different lengths).

Fig. 185 Completed wound closure using tape.

Fig. 186 Matching the vermilion border of the lip.

Fig. 187 Using opposite-facing tape strips to pull a wound closed.

Fig. 188 Longitudinal tape strips used as anchors for the cross (closing) pieces.

Fig. 189 Folding a longitudinal piece of tape to prepare for a suture anchor strip.

Fig. 190 Sewing the tape suture strips together to close the wound.

Fig. 191 Gripping a suture needle with a needle driver.

Fig. 192 Pushing the needle through the skin and out into the base of the wound.

Fig. 193 Pulling the suture through the first side of the wound.

Fig. 194 Pushing the needle into the base of the opposite side of the wound.

Fig. 195 Rotating the needle out through the second (final) side of the wound.

Fig. 196 The U shape of proper suture placement.

Fig. 197 To tie a suture, first loop it around the needle driver twice.

Fig. 198 Grab the short end of the suture with the needle driver.
Fig. 199 Laying down the first loop of a knot.
Fig. 200 Creating the second loop of a square knot over the needle driver.
Fig. 201 Once again, grab the short end of the suture with the needle driver.
Fig. 202 Completing the first square knot.
Fig. 203 **A,** Preparing to staple a wound. **B,** Pressing the surgical tissue stapler against the skin while pushing the wound edges together. **C,** Squeezing the stapler in order to discharge the staple into the skin.
Fig. 204 Removing a surgical staple.
Fig. 205 Making a cravat from a triangular bandage.
Fig. 206 To begin a finger bandage, place layers of gauze over the fingertip.
Fig. 207 To complete a finger bandage, wrap the gauze around the finger, then bring it across the palm and around the wrist to tie off.
Fig. 208 Creation of a wrist bandage. **A,** First, wrap around the wrist a few times. **B,** Continue across the top of the hand and then in the "web space" between the thumb and index finger. **C,** Continue back across the top of the wrist, and then **(D)** continue back over the hand in **(E)** a figure-of-eight pattern.
Fig. 209 Spiral leg bandage.
Fig. 210 Creation of a thigh and groin bandage. **A,** Wrap a long 6 inch elastic bandage around the mid-thigh in an inner-to-outer direction working upward. **B,** At the groin crease, continue to wrap around the waist one time, then **(C)** wrap back down the thigh. **D,** Finish by wrapping around the thigh.
Fig. 211 Shoulder bandage. **A,** Drape a triangular bandage over the shoulder. Begin to form a cravat and tie off in front of the opposite armpit. **B,** Complete the bandage.
Fig. 212 Head bandage. **A,** Drape a triangular bandage just over the eyes. **B,** Create a hem and cross behind the head, tying with a half knot in order to **(C)** fashion a square knot in the front. Tuck the tail that remains behind the head into the half knot.
Fig. 213 Securing a bandage to the side of the head. **A,** Lay a cravat over the wound. **B,** Cross the cravat and **(C)** tie it off behind the ear.
Fig. 214 Position of the hand when suffering from "Saturday night palsy."
Fig. 215 Taping for shin splints. **A,** Place a foam pad on the affected area. **B,** Cover the foam with pre-wrap and tape.
Fig. 216 Taping for arch support. **A,** Fix an anchor strip under the heel. **B,** Attach strips across the bottom of the foot. **C,** Lock the crosspieces.
Fig. 217 Wrapping the ankle with a figure-of-eight bandage. **A,** Start above the ankle and **(B)** wrap down under the foot. **C,** Cross back and forth over the top of the foot and **(D)** continue in a figure-of-eight pattern to secure the ankle.
Fig. 218 Taping a sprained ankle. **A,** Strips of adhesive tape are placed perpendicular to each other to **(B)** lock the ankle with a tight weave. **C,** The tape edges are covered to prevent peeling.

Fig. 219 Ankle taping method favored by athletic trainers.

Fig. 220 Pulling up on the toes to attain proper ankle position for wrapping.

Fig. 221 Bursitis affects the lubricating sacs (bursae) near the **(A)** shoulder, **(B)** knee, **(C)** hip, and **(D)** elbow.

Fig. 222 Herniated (slipped) disk. **A,** Posterior protrusion of the disk into the spinal (cord) canal. **B,** Cross section of the normal disk. **C,** Protruding disk impinges on the nerve root.

Fig. 223 Windchill determination. To determine windchill, find the ambient air temperature on the top line, then read down the column to the line that corresponds with the current wind speed. Example: When the air temperature is 10°F and the wind speed is 20 mph, the rate of heat loss is equivalent to –9°F under calm conditions. To convert to metric or Celsius, use the following: 1 mile = 1.61 kilometers; C = 5/9 (F – 32).

Fig. 224 Improvised insulation wrap.

Fig. 225 Blisters of frostbite might not extend to the ends of fingers and toes.

Fig. 226 Heat index. Humidity contributes greatly to the accumulation of heat; when both air temperature and relative humidity are excessive, human temperature control is diminished.

Fig. 227 Tarp assisted cooling. Use a tarp, tent fly, or plastic sheet to improvise a cold-water bath.

Fig. 228 Gamow bag. A portable hyperbaric chamber that can be used to temporarily treat severe high-altitude illness by simulating descent.

Fig. 229 Rattlesnake. **A,** Typical rattlesnake appearance, with features of identification that include *triangular* head **(B),** hinged fangs **(C),** single row of underbelly scales leading up to the anal plate **(D),** and a rattle on the tail **(E).**

Fig. 230 Coral snake.

Fig. 231 Snakebite patterns. **A,** Nonvenomous snake. **B,** Venomous snake.

Fig. 232 The pressure immobilization technique. **A,** Begin to wrap the limb directly over the bite site with an elastic bandage. The *dotted square outlines* a pad that can be placed over the bite site. **B,** Continue wrapping up the limb. **C,** Wrapped limb. **D,** Begin to apply a splint. **E,** Wrapped and splinted limb.

Fig. 233 Honeybee sting. Because the venom sac is still attached to the stinger, both should be scraped or pulled free from the skin as soon as possible.

Fig. 234 Application of the Extractor to a bee sting.

Fig. 235 Female black widow spider with typical hourglass marking on the underside of the abdomen.

Fig. 236 Brown recluse spider with typical violin-shaped marking on the top side of the cephalothorax.

Fig. 237 Tarantula.

Fig. 238 Scorpion.

Fig. 239 Tick.

Fig. 240 Removing a tick with tweezers.

Fig. 241 Puss caterpillar.
Fig. 242 Gypsy moth caterpillar.
Fig. 243 Blister beetle.
Fig. 244 Triatomid “kissing bug.”
Fig. 245 **A,** Ferning lightning burn. **B,** Punctate (starburst) lightning burn.
Fig. 246 Spiny sea urchin.
Fig. 247 Sea urchin pincer with embedded venom sac.
Fig. 248 Sea cucumber.
Fig. 249 Bristleworm.
Fig. 250 Cone snail, with a depiction of its venom apparatus.
Fig. 251 Stingray. The ray thrusts upward in self-defense with venom-laden spine(s) into the foot of an unwary victim.
Fig. 252 Lionfish (zebrafish).
Fig. 253 Volume changes with depth and pressure.
Fig. 254 Middle ear squeeze. When a diver descends, air in the middle ear contracts, the eustachian tube collapses, and the eardrum bulges inward, causing pain. If the external water pressure is sufficient, the eardrum can rupture.
Fig. 255 Protective position when confronted by an attacking bear.
Fig. 256 Oleander.
Fig. 257 Foxglove.
Fig. 258 Water hemlock, with tuberous roots.
Fig. 259 Castor bean.
Fig. 260 Monkshood.
Fig. 261 Poison hemlock.
Fig. 262 Pokeweed.
Fig. 263 Rhododendron.
Fig. 264 Jimsonweed.
Fig. 265 Skunk cabbage.
Fig. 266 Pyracantha.
Fig. 267 *Amanita phalloides* (death cap).
Fig. 268 *Amanita muscaria* (fly agaric).
Fig. 269 *Coprinus atramentarius* (inky cap).
Fig. 270 Proper hand positioning for straight lift.
Fig. 271 Vacuum mattress.
Fig. 272 Fashioning a rope (webbing) seat.
Fig. 273 Fireman’s carry.
Fig. 274 Shoulder drag.
Fig. 275 Fireman’s drag.
Fig. 276 Blanket drag.
Fig. 277 Piggyback carry.
Fig. 278 Cradle carry.
Fig. 279 **A,** Overlapping hands to create a four-hand seat. **B,** Carrying the victim.

Fig. 280 Fashioning a ski pole seat. **A,** The poles are slung between rescuers wearing backpacks. **B,** A victim can sit comfortably on the padded ski poles.

Fig. 281 Three-person wheelbarrow carry.

Fig. 282 Creating a coiled rope seat. **A,** The rope is coiled and the loops secured. **B,** The loops of the coil are divided into equal sections at the point of fixation. **C** and **D,** The victim can step through the split loops, so that a single rescuer can carry the victim.

Fig. 283 Two-rescuer split-coil rope seat.

Fig. 284 Blanket-pole litter.

Fig. 285 Construction of a backpack frame litter. Pads or a sleeping bag are placed on the litter.

Fig. 286 Parka litter.

Fig. 287 Making a rope stretcher. **A,** Having created a series of parallel loops, lay the lengthwise segments perpendicularly alongside. **B,** Use a clove hitch to secure the loop ends. **C,** The remaining long ends of the rope are passed through the outside loops to form the perimeter of the stretcher, and are tied off to complete the process.

Fig. 288 Mummy litter. **A,** Lay out the rope in even loops. **B,** Lay blankets or tarps over the loops, then long, rigid objects for stability. **C,** Place a sleeping bag or blanket in the center to hold the victim. **D,** Pass the first nontied loop through the tied loop and work your way to the top. Bring the finishing loops over the shoulders and tie off.

Fig. 289 Approach zones around a helicopter. **A,** It is best to approach from the front. **B,** Don't walk uphill into the helicopter rotor blades.

Fig. 290 Ground-to-air signals.

Fig. 291 Administering an injection. **A,** Flick the air bubble to the top of the vial. **B,** Break off the top of the vial at the narrowing or line. **C,** Draw the medicine into the syringe. **D,** Holding the needle straight up, gently push the plunger until **(E)** no air is left. **F,** Pinch up a fold of skin and briskly stick the needle through the skin and into muscle at a 90-degree angle for an intramuscular injection, or just under the skin at a 15- to 30-degree angle for a subcutaneous injection.

Fig. 292 Fishhook removal. **A,** The barb is embedded in the finger. **B,** The hook and barb are pushed through the skin. **C,** The shaft of the hook is cut. **D,** Both pieces are easily extracted. **E,** "Press-and-yank" method of fishhook removal.

Fig. 293 Ring removal. **A,** Thread a string under the ring. Wrap the long portion to compress the finger next to the ring. **B,** Unwrap the string to push the ring toward the end of the finger. The process is repeated until the ring is moved over the knuckle or swollen part of the finger.

Fig. 294 Zipper removal by cutting the diamond-shaped slider.

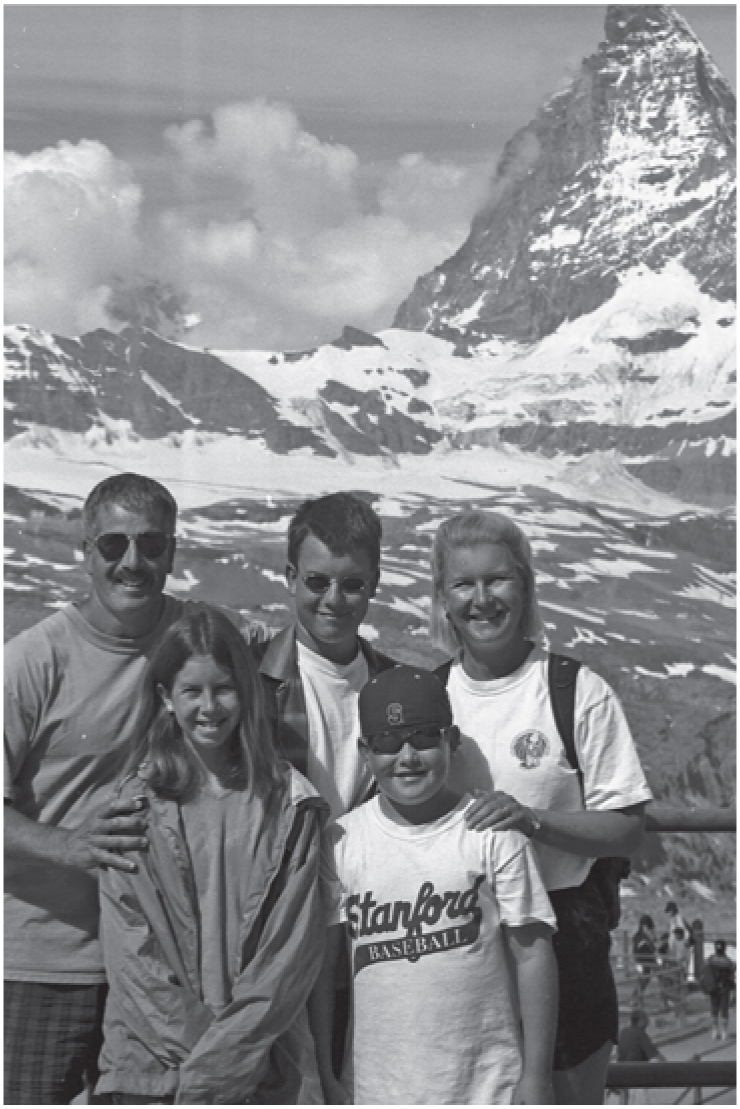
Fig. 295 Overhand knot.

Fig. 296 Slip knot.

Fig. 297 Figure-of-eight knot.

Fig. 298 Half hitch and double half hitch.
Fig. 299 Bowline.
Fig. 300 Double bowline.
Fig. 301 **A,** Loop knot. **B,** Draw loop.
Fig. 302 Round turn with double half hitch.
Fig. 303 Single sheet bend.
Fig. 304 Clove hitch.
Fig. 305 Double carrick bend.
Fig. 306 Prusik hitch.
Fig. 307 Double fisherman's bend.
Fig. 308 How to use epinephrine autoinjector.
Fig. 309 How to use metered-dose inhaler, Albuterol.
Fig. 310 SAM Splint basic C-curve.
Fig. 311 SAM Splint reverse C-curve.
Fig. 312 SAM Splint T-curve.
Fig. 313 SAM Splint finger splint.
Fig. 314 SAM Splint volar wrist splint.
Fig. 315 SAM Splint thumb spica splint.
Fig. 316 SAM Splint ulnar gutter splint.
Fig. 317 SAM Splint double-layer wrist splint.
Fig. 318 SAM Splint upper arm splint.
Fig. 319 SAM Splint sugar tong splint.
Fig. 320 SAM Splint elbow splint.
Fig. 321 SAM Splint cervical (neck) collar.
Fig. 322 SAM Splint anterior shoulder dislocation prop splint.
Fig. 323 SAM Splint ankle stirrup splint.
Fig. 324 SAM Splint figure-of-eight ankle splint.
Fig. 325 SAM Splint combination stirrup and figure-of-eight ankle splint.
Fig. 326 SAM Splint single long leg splint.
Fig. 327 SAM Splint double long leg splint.
Fig. 328 SAM Splint knee immobilizer splint.
Fig. 329 SAM Splint half-ring femur splint.
Fig. 330 SAM Splint impaled object protector.
Fig. 331 Improvised dog muzzle created from a rolled gauze or strap.

PART ONE
General Information


Stanford
BASEBALL

OUTLINE

How to use this book
Before you go

General first aid principles
Patient assessment–a structured approach to emergencies in the outdoors

How to use this book

Medicine for the Outdoors is arranged to make information easy to retrieve. Part One outlines basic principles of health care that should be applied to all outdoor travel and presents a structured approach to patient assessment that will help rescuers bring order to the chaos of medical emergencies in the outdoors. Parts Two and Three describe medical situations, beginning with life threats and covering, in turn, minor medical problems. Part Four discusses disorders related to various wilderness settings and environmental threats from both medical and safety perspectives. Part Five covers additional practical information, such as evacuation guidelines and techniques, water disinfection, useful knots and hitches, drug injection techniques, and first aid kits. Appendix One lists medications and doses, with an emphasis on medications mentioned in the book. Conversion tables for common measurements are found in Appendix Two. Appendix Three outlines guidelines for prevention of hepatitis, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), and other diseases transmitted by bodily fluids. Appendix Four describes and illustrates commonly used applications of the SAM Splint. Appendix Five is a brief description of emergency canine medicine. The glossary defines medical and technical terms. The index will guide you swiftly to any topic.

We have also provided information pertaining to prevention of sickness and injury in particular wilderness environments and situations; this includes such topics as how to avoid drowning or being struck by lightning and what to do if you fall through the ice or find yourself near a forest fire.

To use this book to best advantage, read the appropriate sections *before* you embark on a trip. That way, you will remember where to find information in case of an emergency. All readers are encouraged to participate in well regarded and organized first aid courses, hands-on wilderness medicine programs, and outdoor safety training. Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) training that conforms to American Heart Association standards is available through multiple venues. Automated external defibrillator (AED) training and Stop the Bleed training should be completed, as should safety training (e.g., avalanche, swift water rescue) pertinent to the likely encountered environments.

Many drugs recommended in the book are available only by prescription. A physician and/or pharmacist should explain any prescribed drug’s use and side effects. All persons should consult a physician before any expedition for current advice on the advisability of activities, immunizations, and use of particular drugs. Many of the drugs mentioned in the book are listed in Appendix One. Unless a particular dose and/or duration are specified, the reader is referred to Appendix One. Recommended doses of drugs are adult doses, unless otherwise noted.

The basic therapies recommended do not include all those that could be rendered by a physician with advanced equipment and a large armamentarium of drugs. We have not described every infectious or tropical disease that could possibly be contracted during a journey abroad. However, the diagnosis and management of illnesses such as schistosomiasis, malaria, Lyme disease, anaplasmosis, Ebola virus disease, yellow fever, dengue fever, West Nile viral disease, and Rocky Mountain spotted fever are relevant to many people who travel domestically and overseas in wilderness areas and are therefore included. Because we live in an age of biohazards, a few of these entities, such as anthrax, are discussed.

New infectious germs will continue to emerge and cause illness. Examples include Middle East Respiratory Syndrome (MERS), Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome (SARS), and COVID-19. These often originate in animals, sometimes infect humans, and then might be spread by human-to-human transmission. Unless there is a specific remedy or viable vaccine, the best prevention is recognition, self-isolation through the infectious period (generally, incubation period then when a person is symptomatic then in the recovery phase if the germ is still being shed in an infectious form[s]), limiting unnecessary exposure to infected persons, strict attention to hygiene (particularly hand washing), and sometimes wearing personal protective equipment (e.g., face shield/mask or an N95 respirator).

In addition to “Western medicine,” there exists “complementary and alternative” (from the Western perspective) medicine. While many of the recommendations of naturopathic doctors are appropriate and effective, we personally do not have the expertise upon which to make such recommendations. However, in a wilderness setting, and certainly when being treated by healers in non-Western countries, you might wish to be the beneficiary of such remedies. If so, you will need to perform your own validation of remedies, such as *Melaleuca alternifolia* (tea tree) oil as a topical antiseptic or anti-itch preparation, or certain techniques in the realm of pain management including ear (“Battlefield”) acupuncture.

The wilderness is a place for all, regardless of racial, ethnic, or gender identity. The images and gender pronouns used in this text are imperfect representations intended to be inclusive of all.

Before you go

Be in good health

To the extent possible, strive to be in the best physical and mental health possible as you embark on a wilderness venture:

- Exercise regularly. Have a well-rounded regimen to build strength, mobility, aerobic and anaerobic capacity.
- Eat a healthy and well-balanced diet. Advice regarding proper nutrition and “the best” diet—from ketogenic to low-fat to intermittent fasting—seems to be perpetually evolving. Themes that seem to stand the test of time are a diet that is calorically appropriate, balanced, diverse, and minimally processed (i.e., avoid processed meat, fast food, or junk food). Consult with a physician and nutritionist to find the diet best for you that has the appropriate amount of macronutrients (protein, carbohydrate, and fat).
- Complete proper screening examinations for treatable diseases such as breast, cervical, colon, testicular, and prostate cancer. Think about your heart and brain, and test at appropriate intervals for high-density lipoproteins, low-density lipoproteins, and total cholesterol. Maintain your blood pressure below a worrisome value. Pay attention to your blood glucose to maintain an acceptable fasting value.
- If you are pregnant, discuss the planned adventure and activity with your obstetrician prior to embarking. Include a delivery plan should you be away from home towards the latter part of your pregnancy.
- Maintain all recommended immunizations, and get an annual flu shot. Be sure to check the CDC website prior to travel to ensure you are up to date on immunizations (see Immunizations on page 452).
- Wear your seat belt when driving and wear a helmet when riding a bicycle or motorcycle. Never attempt dangerous maneuvers if you are tired or intoxicated.
- All recreational drugs—legal or not—may impact one’s sensorium. Reduced awareness, hallucinations, impaired decision making, and slowed reflexes will negatively affect one’s ability to keep themself safe and also to provide care for a sick or injured team member. If you

choose to partake in drugs in the wilderness, do so with an abundance of caution. Be intentional about set and setting and have a designated "sober" person to act as a safety resource should an unfortunate situation arise. The wilderness is not a place to do drugs for the first time or test your limits with doses.
- Visit a dentist regularly and follow a regimented cleaning protocol (brushing/flossing) to prevent a dental issue in the wilderness.
- Get enough sleep. This is important for your overall health. Attempt to obtain 8 to 9 hours per each 24 hours in synchrony with your normal circadian rhythm ("biological clock"). Avoid potentially dangerous activities if you are sleep deprived.

Be happy! Learn compassion, help others and make the world a better place. Have some quiet time and consider learning to meditate. Attending to your emotional state will make you a more satisfied and healthier person.

Be prepared

There is no substitute for preparedness. Adherence to this basic rule will prevent or ease the majority of mishaps that occur in the wild. Proper education before situations of risk allows you to cope in a purposeful fashion, rather than in fear and panic. At least two, and preferably all, members of a wilderness expedition should understand first aid and medical rescue. On a casual family outing, at least one responsible adult should be skilled in first aid. Manual skills, such as mouth-to-mouth breathing, tourniquet application, cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) and automated external defibrillator (AED) use, and the application of bandages and splints, should be practiced beforehand. Become familiar with technical rescue techniques pertinent to the environment you will be in (e.g., high-angle rock, swift water, or avalanche-prone areas). Be certain to carry appropriate survival equipment, such as maps, a global positioning system (GPS) or compass, satellite messenger and personal locator beacon (e.g., Somewear Global Hotspot), avalanche transceiver, waterproof matches, firestarter materials, a knife, nonperishable food, a flashlight, AvaLung in avalanche territory, and adequate first aid supplies (stored in a waterproof container). Minimize the need for improvisation.

Technology, especially mobile phone and its applications, are rapidly being developed to aid with wilderness navigation and outdoor medicine topics. If you are going to use such technology, be sure to have a backup navigation/resource system, as well as update and review these applications before you might need them.

Be prepared for the harshest environmental conditions you might expect to encounter. To the best extent possible, become familiar with the setting and possible survival scenarios, particularly should you become stranded or lost. If you will be traveling in avalanche country, consider taking a level 1 avalanche certification course recognized by the American Avalanche Association or other reputable organization.

If you have a significant medical problem, you should carry an information card, a MedicAlert bracelet or tag, or something similar. If you will be traveling abroad, be certain to have insurance that will cover you for medical evacuation from the location and specific environment in which you plan to adventure.

A common question asked of wilderness medicine physicians is whether a person can engage in certain activities or travel in a particular environment, depending on the person's state of health and medical history. Given the number of persons with preexisting conditions, especially those who are part of a growing senior population, these are very important considerations. Whether a person has coronary artery disease, diabetes, rheumatoid arthritis, sickle cell anemia or trait, or any other of numerous conditions, it is important to understand what situations are considered to be safe and what situations are risky. Pre-existing conditions are sometimes classified as "unstable." If they are unstable, they can worsen. In general, persons with unstable conditions should not travel to high altitude, because resultant low blood oxygen levels might impair or prevent recovery from the condition. If you have a preexisting condition, consult with your physician before undertaking any activity, such as that in extreme cold, heat, high altitude, or remote environments that might put you or your companions at (unacceptable) risk. People with specific medical disabilities, such as chronic severe lung disease, might be advised by a physician to avoid certain stressful environments, such as high altitude.

A sexually active woman of childbearing age should have a test for early pregnancy detection before a wilderness expedition. Any pregnancy under 8 weeks' gestation has a 25% chance of miscarriage. Furthermore, it might be sensible to confirm (by an ultrasound examination) that the fetus is properly situated within the uterus and that there is not a risk for an ectopic (outside-the-uterus) pregnancy (see page 149) which could rupture and threaten the mother's life.

To summarize, have an emergency action plan to protect people and property. Consider the likelihood of being exposed to risks and try to determine likely outcomes of accidents and illnesses, so that you can respond appropriately to danger, communicate effectively, treat people, have access to all necessary equipment, and be prepared to travel and transport. Train and practice until you are reasonably confident.

Common sense

Many accidents occur because people ignore warning signs or do not anticipate problems. *Pay heed to rangers, posted warnings, weather reports, and the experience of seasoned guides.* Prepare for situations of risk by developing your skills in less challenging conditions. Wear recommended personal safety equipment, such as a flotation jacket, safety harness, or climbing helmet. Do not tolerate horseplay in dangerous settings.

Falls prevention

Falls figure prominently in outdoor mishaps, particularly for older adults. Pay attention to the following:

- Exercise regularly, so that you do not become fatigued or weakened when exercising outdoors.
- Stay adequately hydrated. Eat regularly. Do not weaken yourself by not drinking or eating enough when navigating difficult terrain.
- Pay attention when walking on uneven terrain, particularly if you have an issue with balance or gait.
- Use a walking pole(s) for balance and stability.
- Wear footwear with the proper amount of traction.
- Respect guardrails and barriers.
- Know how to properly cross swiftwater.
- Wear single vision lenses as bifocals contribute to falls.
- Use adequate lighting in the dark.
- If hazardous animals approach you on the trail, move to the upslope side.
- Do not hike while intoxicated or overly tired.
- Avoid medications that make you tired or drowsy on the trail.
- Keep gear properly stowed so that you do not trip over loose ends or random objects on the ground.
- On boats, hold on to a handrail or other fixed object.
- If hearing is important for safety (e.g., hearing instructions or detecting hazards), use hearing aids or personal sound amplification products.

Rules of the road

When abroad, remember that most injuries occur while traveling on roadways. Although it might be tempting to utilize the local modes of transportation, this might be hazardous. If you are a driver or passenger in or on a motor vehicle, remember that roadways in developing nations are often dangerous. If there are traffic rules, they often are not enforced. Here are important safety rules:

- Do not ride in the back of a truck or on the roof of a bus.
- Always wear a seatbelt. For children, have them travel in the back seat in correctly positioned age- and size-appropriate restraints. All infants and toddlers should ride in a rear-facing car safety seat (CSS) until they reach the manufacturer's allowed height or weight limit. After that point, they should use a forward-facing CCS with a shoulder harness until they reach the manufacturer's allowed height or weight limit. After that point, they should use a belt-positioning booster seat until they fit properly into the vehicle's lap belt and shoulder harness configuration.
- Wear a helmet when on a motorcycle or moped (if you must use these conveyances).
- Avoid nighttime travel.
- Do not travel alone.
- Watch for pedestrians and animals in the roadway, particularly when visibility is low.
- Do not exceed the posted speed limit.
- Slow down at intersections and crosswalks. Do not pass another vehicle at an intersection or crosswalk.

Here are important safety rules for pedestrians:

- When possible, walk on paths or sidewalks. Stay off roads that prohibit pedestrians.
- Wear bright or reflective clothing.
- If you must walk on the road, walk on the shoulder facing traffic. Be careful if you are on unstable ground or next to a drop-off. Try to make eye contact with the driver approaching you.
- Look both ways, twice, before crossing a road or path. Try to do so at crosswalks or intersections. Cross in good lighting.

Conditioning and acclimatization

Many health hazards of wilderness travel, such as falls, can be avoided by a reasonable degree of fitness, which can be acquired only by conditioning. Every expedition member should begin from a state of maximum fitness (aerobic exercise capacity, agility, muscle strength, power, and endurance). Conditioning might make a person more capable in a situation of rescue, including performing CPR. Other health hazards, such as temperature extremes and high altitude disorders, can in certain circumstances be avoided by acclimatization to the environment. Acclimatization is a physiologic adaptation that is often different from, and might be unrelated to, physical fitness. For instance, see the discussion on acclimatization to high altitude on page 347.

Equipment

Be prepared for foul-weather conditions. Always assume that you will be forced to spend an unexpected night outdoors. Carry warm clothing and waterproof rain gear (with patches for easy repair). Know how to dress properly for all types of weather using a layered approach. Break in all footwear and take care to pad rough edges and exposed seams. Consider carrying a compact emergency position-indicating radio beacon (EPIRB).

Persons who wear eyeglasses with multifocal (bifocal, trifocal, or progressive) lenses tend to be elders. Wearing lenses with appropriate single-distance focus decreases the incidence of falls during outdoor activities. This might be because multifocal eyeglasses diminish depth perception and cause blurred contrast.

Before each use and after any collision or impact, a safety helmet of any sort (ski, bicycle, etc.) should be inspected for integrity. If there are cracks, dents, or other damage, the internal structure of the helmet can be altered in such a way as to lessen its ability to protect the wearer. If that is the case, replace the helmet. Helmets should fit comfortably and snugly and be worn properly. Pads should contact the cheeks and forehead, and the back of the helmet should not contact the nape of the neck. The edge of the forehead opening should rest approximately two fingers-breadth above the eyebrows. The chin strap should be tightened to the point that one finger can slide between it and the underside of the chin. If extra insulation is needed under the helmet for thermal protection, use a thin garment, not a thick hat. When wearing goggles, size them so that the top edge rests snugly and comfortably against the edge of the helmet forehead opening.

All expedition leaders should carry safety and first aid supplies (in a waterproof container) for the most likely mishaps. Medical supplies must be arranged so that they can be rapidly located and deployed and be available during all phases of the expedition, including travel to and from the adventure area. Each person on an adventure trip or expedition should carry a personal medical kit, including essential medications. Recommended first aid items are listed on page 444.

Become familiar with the safety profile of all equipment. For instance, be aware of the flammability of tents, clothing, sleeping bags, and so forth if you will be in the vicinity of a campfire. Certain inflatable air mattresses might be comfortable and convenient but pose a suffocation hazard for small children if they become entrapped between the mattress and the fabric sides of a tent. Knives with spring-loaded actions and/or without a safety latch must be handled with great caution.

Trip plans

Prepare a trip plan (itinerary) and record it in a location (trailhead, ranger station, marina, or the like) where someone will recognize when a person or party is overdue and potentially lost or in trouble. Similarly, determine beforehand a plan for getting help in an emergency, whether it involves radio communication, ground-to-air or ship-to-shore signals, cellular telephone, or knowing the location of the nearest pay telephone, ranger station, or first aid facility. If mobile rescue-grade equipment is to be used, it should be checked and double-checked before departure, and regularly scheduled communications should be prepared. At least two members of any expedition should be able to fashion standard ground-to-air distress markers. Make sure children wear an item of bright clothing and carry a whistle that they know to blow if they are frightened or lost. If you carry a radio, know how to tune in to a weather information channel. The National Weather Service issues a “watch” when conditions may develop a concerning weather pattern, and a “warning” when its arrival is imminent.

If you will be traveling within an area with telephone or radio communication, whether on land or at sea, carry precise instructions for persons to be able to communicate in an emergency. For instance, a diver should know how to contact the Divers Alert Network (www.diversalertnetwork.org). An expedition might wish to establish a relationship with an organization such as Global Rescue (www.globalrescue.com) for medical consultation or evacuation.

In most stories of miraculous ocean or wildland survival, the first chapter includes the account of how the victim lost their way. All wilderness travelers should carry maps, be proficient with a GPS or compass routing, understand how to signal for help, and know in advance where they intend to explore. If you are traveling in snow country, you should know how to avoid being caught in an avalanche and consider carrying an avalanche rescue beacon (transceiver) that operates on the frequency of 457 kilohertz (kHz). The signal carries 100 to 150 ft (30 to 46 m) and is received by the rescuers’ units. In avalanche country, also carry a shovel and a collapsible probe pole. Consider wearing an AvaLung or an ABS Avalanche Airbag System. A technology for locating an avalanche victim is the RECCO harmonic radar-based detector.

Medicines

There is no need to carry a drugstore on a day hike. In general, it is best to avoid administering new (to the user) drugs in a wilderness setting unless they are absolutely necessary because unknown side effects might be more difficult to manage when distant from urban medical care. On the other hand, drugs necessary to treat established medical problems (such as nitroglycerin tablets or spray for a person with angina (chest pain)) should always be on hand. It is the responsibility of the trip leader to be aware of any significant medical problems and to insist that people in obviously poor physical condition not undertake activities that might endanger themselves or others. Any person with allergies, diabetes, epilepsy, or special medical instructions should wear an identification bracelet or carry a medical information card. Anyone who takes medications should carry a list of drugs and doses. If you travel abroad, it is wise to carry an adequate supply of routine medications, as well as a note from a physician stating their necessity, should you be questioned or need refills. Ensure your immunizations are up to date, including specific requirements for particular countries (see page 452).

Nutrition

Anyone who undertakes vigorous physical activity should consume adequate calories in a well-balanced diet. A debilitating weight-reduction program should not be continued in the wilderness, where a rescue might depend on extraordinary effort and endurance. Similarly, an unfamiliar diet (e.g., keto diet, intermittent fasting) should be well tolerated in a non-stressful setting before it is put to the test when energy, strength, endurance, and alertness might become important for survival.

To avoid dehydration and exhaustion, take adequate time to eat, drink, and rest. Do not plan to live off the land unless you are a survival expert. Most adult men require 3500 to 5000 food calories each day to sustain heavy physical exertion. This can add 2 to 3 lbs for each day’s food to your backpack. Women require 2000 to 3500 calories. A nutritious diet for any activity can easily be maintained with proper planning. For instance, for backpackers, it has been suggested that the diet should be composed of 50% carbohydrates achieved by constant “carbohydrate snacking,” 35% fat, and 15% protein. To calculate the number of calories worth of food to carry, multiply your ideal body weight in pounds times 22. For example, a 150-lb (68 kg) person would carry 150 × 22 = 3300 calories, divided into the food group ratios mentioned previously. Consider carrying a supply of energy bars or gel, but do not count on food bars alone to maintain you.

People who become patients need to maintain a decent nutrition status. This is important for medical and psychological reasons. Here are some factors to consider during a rescue:

- Plan ahead. Everyone needs to eat.
- Even if a victim is not hungry, they need nourishment. They should consume at least 30 g of carbohydrate every 30 minutes if they are physically active. This is necessary to maintain blood sugar in an acceptable range for continued exertion. Common symptoms of low blood sugar are shakiness, hunger, sweating, sudden moodiness or

behavior changes, confusion, headache, pale skin color, dizziness, and fatigue.
- During sustained exercise, such as a long hike, eat sufficient protein to avoid losing muscle mass. Eat three or more servings of high-quality protein sufficient to achieve an overall daily intake of 1 g per kg of body weight.
- Food and drink can be emotionally reassuring.

Fluid requirements

Fluid requirements have been well worked out for all levels of exercise. They are highlighted in the section on heat illness (see page 341). Most people underestimate their fluid requirements. Although there is variation, the following is a hydration requirement based on an average minimal recommendation of 2 to 3 liters of liquid per day for an adult man: minimal water loss—2300 mL; water loss in hot environmental temperature—3300 mL; and water loss during heavy exercise with significant sweating—6600 mL. Other factors that increase fluid loss are activities at high altitude or in cold, dry air (increased loss during breathing), anything that increases sweating, and ingestion of drugs (e.g., alcohol or diuretics) that increase urinary losses.

Encourage frequent rest stops and water breaks. If natural sources of drinkable water (springs, wells, ice-melt runoff) will not be encountered, you should carry at least a 48-hour supply. Carry supplies for water disinfection (see page 433). Inspect your urine to be certain that it is light-colored, rather than dark-colored. Dark coloration usually indicates that you are not adequately hydrated.

Personal hygiene and bodily waste disposal

Personal hygiene can influence preventing disease transmission and should be maintained on wilderness expeditions. The most obvious activity is washing hands effectively before eating or preparing foods. Soap and water scrubbing, followed by an application of an alcohol-based (at least 60%) gel, is the most effective technique. To wash hands properly, wet them with clean water, then lather with soap. Take care to wash bottom and top of hands, between the fingers, and under the nails. Scrub for at least 30 seconds, then rinse with clean, running water before completely drying with a *dry*, clean cloth or towel or air (sun) drying. Sharing a contaminated towel can spread germs, so if conditions and time permit, consider air drying. If a person is known to be ill, they should have their own personal towel that is used and laundered apart from other clothing and towels. Do not dry hands on one’s pants or shirt. Doing so might re-contaminate the skin. Washing skin in bacteria-laden areas, such as underarms, in the groin, and around genital areas, might decrease infections in these locations. If hands are washed often enough to cause skin irritation, chapping, and cracking, follow drying with a moisturizing cream or lotion. Tampons should not be retained in place for prolonged periods of time, in order to avoid toxic shock syndrome. Brushing teeth and flossing will diminish dental decay and gum infections.

Defecation is a common cause of spreading infections, in particular, diarrheal diseases. If an outhouse is available, use it. If provision has not been made to carry wastes out of wilderness areas, they can be buried in holes (minimum depth 6 in [15 cm]) and covered tightly with soil, sand, or leaf litter, at least 100 yards from natural water sources. Toilet paper should be carried out, be biodegradable and buried, or carefully burned. Urinate far from camp and trails, preferably on rocks or bare ground. Treat animal waste like human waste.

General injury prevention: Risk factors

Injuries occurring in outdoor settings have associated risk factors. Here they are, with some of them repeated elsewhere in the book in the appropriate locations, because injury prevention is the name of the game.

Before the activity

- Poor mental and/or physical conditioning.
- Lack of education on proper skills and techniques to use in the field.
- Lack of appropriate equipment.
- Use of recreational drugs.
- Poorly maintained equipment.
- Poor trail/trek/route planning (natural hazards, unstable terrain, bad weather conditions, etc.).
- Lack of awareness of risks and types of injuries.

During the activity

- Poor physical status (fatigue, injured, etc.).
- Refusal to wear and use safety protective gear.
- Lack of awareness of personal skills limitation.
- Lack of knowledge of the terrain.
- Equipment failure.
- Lack of safety devices integrated into equipment.
- Poor trail/trek/route maintenance.

After the event

- Lack of appropriate injury management.
- Lack of knowledge how to contact and relay information to emergency services.
- Difficult-to-remove equipment.
- Poor trail/trek/route conditions and directions for rescue personnel.

Disaster preparedness

If there is a chance that you might be affected by, or called on to assist during a disaster, it is important to be prepared. At a minimum, you should be prepared to be self-sufficient:

- Be physically and emotionally fit.
- Be vaccinated for any diseases endemic to the region in which you will be a victim or rescuer.
- Have a plan and methods for communication. Include a meeting place.
- Carry a kit that will allow you to survive for at least 4 days. This kit should contain at least the following items:
  - Water disinfection supplies sufficient to generate 4 liters of drinking water per day.
  - Nonperishable food that requires little or no preparation, such as read-to-eat meal packets, canned foods, and energy bars.
  - An improvised shelter, such as a plastic sheet, cord, garbage bags, “space” blanket, and sleeping bag. A small tent with mosquito screens or netting is optimal. Include a rain fly.
  - Fire preparation supplies (e.g., tinder and firestarter).
  - Paracord. This can be conveniently carried in bracelet or belt form.
  - Maps, a compass, and a GPS unit.
  - Battery powered or hand-crank NOAA weather radio.
  - Emergency lighting, including a headlamp and extra batteries.
  - Cell phone or satellite phone with charger and portable power packs. Also carry a whistle, survey tape, mirror, and pad and pencil. If you are going to be remote from cell phone service, strongly consider carrying a satellite phone or something that allows you to use your cell phone as a “sat phone.” (e.g., Somewear Global Hotspot)
  - First aid kit.
  - Insect repellent and sunscreen.
  - Extra prescription glasses, extra clothing, and a multi-tool with a sharp knife.
  - Sanitation supplies to collect bodily and other wastes.
  - Special items for infants, elders, disabled persons and animals.

Disaster response triage

If you are involved in a disaster response, be aware that there are many methods of “tagging” (for the purpose of triage, or sorting) patients according to their medical status. The most commonly employed method designates patients as:

- *Green:* Minimally significant medical condition; “walking wounded”; able to care for self or with minimal assistance.
- *Yellow:* “Delayed”—may need significant medical attention, but is expected to survive if immediate care is not rendered.
- *Red:* “Immediate”—requires immediate life-saving intervention(s).
- *Black:* “Expectant”—survival is highly unlikely, even with advanced care; requires comfort measures.

In the event of a disaster, real tags can be placed on patients to indicate their categories. Another method is to use an illuminated triage light, such as a chemical light or a weather-proof battery-powered light (e.g., the E/T light www.triagelights.com).

The military also follows Air Evacuation (MEDEVAC) Priorities:

- *Priority I:* Urgent—needs to be evacuated as soon as possible, with a maximum delay of 2 hours, in order to save life, limb, or eyesight, to prevent complications of serious illness, or to avoid permanent disability.
- *Priority IA:* Urgent Surg—needs surgical intervention to save life and stabilize for further evacuation.
- *Priority II:* Priority—sick or wounded and requiring prompt medical care within 4 hours or condition could deteriorate to “Urgent,” where special treatment is not available, or who will suffer unnecessary pain or disability.
- *Priority III:* Routine—condition not expected to deteriorate significantly, can wait for up to 24 hours.
- *Priority IV:* Convenience—evacuation by vehicle is a matter of convenience rather than necessity.

Duty to assist

In most circumstances, a person is not legally obligated (unless by employment) to assist someone in medical need. You might feel a moral obligation, but this is your decision. Good Samaritan statutes require you to follow accepted guidelines and to act as would any prudent person with similar training under the same set of circumstances. So, if you have not been trained to administer first aid, you are not expected to be able to accomplish that. You are not expected to put your or another person's life in danger in order to perform a rescue or otherwise assist a victim. Whenever possible, introduce yourself and ask the victim for permission (consent) to treat. If the victim is medically incompetent or is a minor (without an available parent or guardian) you are generally looked upon favorably by the law. If you begin to treat a victim, you are obligated to stay with them until you transfer care to another person.

General first aid principles

In all first aid situations, the rescuer must remain calm. If you panic, you will lose control of the victim, as well as of yourself. To establish authority, speak and act calmly and purposefully. Introduce yourself to the victim and ask their permission for you to assist. Allow the victim to discuss the incident, their situation, and their fears. If you can involve the victim in their rescue and treatment, it is often good for their morale. Try not to be judgmental. Save criticism for after the event. Avoid laying any blame on people; they might get hurt emotionally or become argumentative as a result. When communicating with a victim and bystanders, remember that you are not only caring for the victim, but in many ways, for family and friends. It is important to communicate frequently, honestly, and in a manner that is reassuring and inspires cooperation and hope. Promote communication and teamwork. If you need assistance in handling a situation, ask for and be willing to accept it. If a situation or medical leader is needed, try to establish this position and be clear about who is in charge.

Always prioritize safety. Don't endanger additional inexperienced rescuers. If you can't get to the victim easily, send for help. Approach all victims safely; don't allow the sense of urgency to transform a sensible rescue into a series of risky, or even foolhardy, maneuvers. If it appears that the victim is too ill to be moved, set up camp immediately. In all cases, protect the victim from the elements from above and below.

Start with life threats. Does the victim have a pulse? Is there any active bleeding that needs to be controlled? Is their airway open and protected? Are they breathing adequately? Examine the victim for a medical bracelet, wallet card, or other medical record.

If you have paper and a writing instrument, record your observations. If you send someone for help, have them carry a piece of paper that states the victim or victims' location, nature of the emergency, number of people needing help, condition of the victim(s), what is being done to treat the victim(s), and any specific environmental conditions or physical obstacles. Accident report forms are available from organizations such as The Mountaineers.

Always assume the worst. Assume that each victim you encounter has a broken neck or has had a heart attack until proved otherwise. Always be conservative in your treatments and recommendations for further evaluation or rescue.

Do not rush to move a seriously injured victim unless they are in danger from the environment or need to be moved for medical reasons. Don't encourage a victim to get up and "shake it off" until you have examined them for a potentially serious problem.

Wilderness medicine often involves extended patient contact time. If you must remain in a wilderness location for a prolonged period of time caring for a victim who has become your patient, remember to attend to the basic survival requirements, which include air (oxygen) for breathing, shelter, water, food, psychological support, and human waste disposal. If possible, change dressings applied to wounds every 24 hours.

Never administer medicines or perform procedures if you are not sure what you are doing. The Good Samaritan laws provide certain legal protections for rescuers' actions so long as they operate within prudent limits and take reasonable care. This book will not make you a doctor. A good rule to follow is *primum non nocere:* "First, do no harm." If you aren't certain what to do and the situation is not worsening, don't interfere. Explain to the victim that you aren't a physician but will do your best to get them through whatever crisis they have encountered to the best of your knowledge and ability. If you encounter a victim who might be seriously ill, seek an expert opinion as soon as possible. Even if your treatment seems successful, it's wise to consult a physician if you would have ordinarily done so.

Listen to the patient. Try to communicate effectively by being a good listener, showing respect for the patient, sympathizing with them, and expressing reassurance. The story of what happened, and the medical history can be extremely important in making swift and appropriate medical decisions. Let the victim tell you what happened in their own words and try not to interrupt unless it's important.

Send for help early. As soon as you have determined that a situation will require extrication, rescue, or advanced life support, initiate your prearranged plan for communication and transportation. Don't assume that someone will call for help; you must assign this task to a specific individual. If you have a medical report form available to send to potential rescuers, do so. If not, try to write down and transmit the following information with a reasonable amount of specificity:

- Number of victims
- Location (Be specific. Use GPS coordinates when possible.)
- Landing area for helicopter—yes or no; include weather conditions
- Your name and immediate contact information
- Communication appliances—mobile phone, radio
- For each victim:
    - Age
    - Gender

- Injuries/medical problems
- Condition
- Therapies (splints, bandages, procedures, medications) undertaken

If you are in a situation in which you can access the emergency medical service (EMS) system (911 or other telephone number), be prepared to provide the following information: the victim's location, your phone number, the nature of the emergency, the number of people needing help, the condition of the victim(s), what is being done to treat the victim(s), and any specific environmental conditions or physical obstacles. Speak slowly and clearly, and don't hang up until the dispatcher tells you they have all the information they need.

While you are waiting for help to arrive

- Complete an adequate history. Listen carefully to the victim; in most cases, they will lead you to the affected organ system. Remember to inquire about allergies, especially to medications.
- Reassure the victim. Most disorders are not life-threatening and will allow you plenty of time to formulate a treatment plan. Be sure you have introduced yourself to the victim, and always explain what you are doing in a direct fashion. Avoid making comments such as "Oh my God," "This is a hopeless situation," or "Whoops!" Let the victim know that you are capable and in charge. Accentuate the positive aspects of the situation to build a climate of hope. Don't argue with other rescuers in the presence of the victim. Be particularly gentle, parental, and reassuring with children. Always warn the victim before you do anything that might cause them pain.
- Keep the victim comfortable and warm. Don't feed a victim who cannot purposefully swallow. If they can eat and drink, offer water, clear soups, and clear juices. Use oral rehydration salts (ORS; see page 232) or an electrolyte-containing sports beverage to maintain hydration. Avoid excessive coffee, tea, and other caffeinated beverages.
- Keep a written record of all medications given. If possible, also record symptoms and objective measurements (such as temperature) with times noted.
- Remove all constrictive clothing or jewelry from any injured areas. If the victim has a hand wound, all watches and rings (see page 471) should be removed before swelling makes doing so impossible. In particular, rings left in place can become inadvertent tourniquets on swollen fingers.

Always reexamine and reevaluate a victim at regular intervals. A person might not experience difficulties until after a time delay, particularly if the problem is related to a head injury or internal bleeding. If you are concerned enough about a person to examine them once, wait a while and then examine them again. The interval between examinations is determined by your level of concern. For instance, someone with possible internal bleeding (see page 68) should be examined every 10 to 15 minutes until you are confident that the severity of the situation has declined sufficiently to warrant less vigilance.

If someone has an altered mental status (particularly after a head injury), they require your constant attention.

Try to maintain reasonable hygiene. This includes handwashing with soap and water and/or using an alcohol-based (at least 60%) hand gel. This is particularly important as an interval activity between multiple victims. Be aware that alcohol-based hand gel is not particularly effective against spore-forming bacteria, such as *Clostridioides difficile*.

Assisting a victim of starvation

In a rare circumstance, you might encounter someone who has been without food and/or water for days or weeks and is in a situation of starvation. If that is the case, the general approach is to:

- Attend to any life-threatening injuries or medical conditions.
- Be certain that the person has functioning kidneys. This might be very difficult to determine in the field. If the person can still urinate, for the purpose of immediate care, you should proceed to offer food and drink. If the person is so "dry" that they have not urinated for 24 or more hours, proceed with caution and watch for fluid retention (swelling of the ankles and shortness of breath). Begin with 10 mL (2 teaspoons) of oral fluid per kg of body weight consumed every 2 to 3 hours until urination begins. An acceptable fluid is a dilute electrolyte solution (e.g., ORS [see page 230] or half-strength [diluted with water] Gatorade or other sports beverage).
- Slowly feed the victim small portions of a food that is relatively high in fat (e.g., bacon, eggs, nuts, banana chips).
- Do not permit the victim to gorge on fluid or food. The sudden sensation of profound fullness might cause nausea and vomiting.

Medical decision-making

The art of outdoor medicine absolutely depends on observation, anticipation, and resourcefulness. The cardinal rule is to act conservatively and not take unnecessary risks when making the decision to continue a journey or postpone travel and seek formal medical attention. Similarly, you might need to decide whether to carry out a disabled victim or to stay put and signal or send for help.

Although every situation is unique, all decisions begin with an accurate assessment of the victim's condition. The situation should be categorized as trivial (small cuts, insect sting without allergic reaction, a single episode of diarrhea); minor (sprained ankle, small burn wound, sore throat); moderately disabling (broken wrist, kidney stone, bronchitis); potentially severe (chest pain, severe abdominal pain, high fever); totally disabling (seizure, broken hip, severe high altitude illness); or life-threatening and limb-threatening (uncontrolled bleeding, extensive frostbite, venomous snakebite with symptoms). In all cases that are more than trivial or minor, it is proper to insist on prompt evacuation or rescue for thorough evaluation. Never overestimate your abilities as a healer or count on good fortune.

The assumption under which you must operate is that a victim's clinical condition will deteriorate, particularly in a harsh environmental setting. No adventure is worth a lost life or permanent disablement.

If more than one victim is injured, you must set priorities and attend to the most critically injured. Continually evaluate each victim to detect improvement or deterioration over time. Don't focus on situations that are beyond reasonable hope. For example, if a victim is near death from severe burns, decide if there is really anything you can do to save them, and if not, get busy with the people you can help. These are emotionally charged and extremely difficult decisions, even for those of us who have made them many times for many years.

You might have to decide whether to evacuate a victim or wait for a rescue party. In some instances, this is an easy decision—when a victim must be carried to a lower altitude to treat severe mountain sickness, for instance, or when the transport route is short and easily negotiated. The judgment call is based on weather conditions, the nature and severity of the injury or illness, and the distance that needs to be covered. The following are typical of medical indications to seriously consider evacuating a patient (other indications may apply):

- Altered mental status
- Serious bleeding
- Cannot walk
- Abdominal pain with persistent vomiting, diarrhea, or fever
- Abruptly painful and/or swollen testicle
- Serious skin infection
- Broken or dislocated bone
- Frostbite
- Injury or illness beyond the comfort of the group to manage

Hand offs

Sometimes you might need to care for a person for days and then hand off their care to another person. You also might assume care of an existing situation. If you become a new caregiver, it is very important that you form the most accurate impression possible of your patient. In addition to receiving a detailed report from current caregivers, here are rules to follow:

- If the situation permits, ask your new patient to repeat their history. If the person is reluctant to engage in a long conversation, at least try to get them to relate current relevant events.
- Repeat as much of the physical examination as you can. Explain to the patient that you have assumed their care, and that in order to do the best that you can on their behalf, it is important for you to understand their issues and to be able to monitor progress based upon the examination.
- Assume that until you have talked to the patient or otherwise obtained a comprehensive history, and performed a physical examination with your own hands, eyes, and ears, you don't know as much as you could about your patient.
- Interview and examine your patient as often as is necessary and practical. If you must be absent from a patient for a longer period than is prudent between examinations, delegate the responsibility to someone else.

Patient assessment–a structured approach to emergencies in the outdoors

Overview

When you come across a victim in need of help, they often are part of an accident scene, and so you must "size up" the scene and establish priorities. A structured approach will help bring order to chaos, give you an anchor from which to build calm, and will maximize the chances for a successful outcome. Fig. 1 depicts a structured approach to injury and illness in the outdoors. Your priorities in any significant medical situation are to maintain emotional self-control; ensure the safety of yourself, your team, and the victim(s); and try to determine a reasonable overview of the situation to allow yourself to be rational and effective.

1. Don't rush in until you have had an opportunity to look over everything—the physical setting, any obvious hazards, and the victim(s).
2. Eliminate any physical dangers to the victims and rescuers. This is often referred to as "securing the scene." Try to control the situation or have someone else do it. For instance, if you're assisting an injured hunter, be certain that no one is in the firing line of a loaded weapon, or if you are near the edge of a cliff, move to a safe location. Move out of an obvious avalanche path and away from falling rocks, and distance yourself from hazardous animals. Take shelter from lightning. Retreat from a venomous snake, swarm of stinging insects, or edge of a swiftly flowing river.
3. Don't assume that you appreciate how sick or injured the victims are until you have had a chance to examine them or take a report from a reliable examiner.
4. Protect yourself and other rescuers as best possible from exposure to contaminated blood and bodily fluids (see page 504).
5. Examine the victim(s). This first examination is called a "primary survey" and is intended to first identify any life threats using an ABCDE approach. ABCDE stands for airway (see page 18); breathing (see page

25); circulation (see page 28); disability and neurologic status (including neck injury—see page 33); and exposure / environment.
6. Treat any immediately life-threatening illnesses or injuries. This is known as resuscitation. If possible, explain to the victim what you're doing.
7. Make an initial call for help as soon as you are able and include specific information about your location (use your map, cell phone, or GPS device to give exact coordinates or very specific landmarks and distances from known trails or junctions. Practice identifying your coordinates in your neighborhood or backyard before you venture into the backcountry. Your ability to give an exact location is essential for a rescue team to find you, especially in wilderness areas where it is very difficult to identify parties even with the aid of a helicopter). Report the conditions of the victims and what you need (supplies, food, etc.). If necessary, activate emergency medical services (e.g., call 911: EMS).
8. Perform a "secondary survey" (complete examination—see page 38) and then continue treatment. Communicate effectively with the patient. Whenever possible, explain what you're doing while maintaining a calm, supportive demeanor. Persons who are seriously ill or injured need reassurance and psychological support to minimize stress injuries. Give the victim power to help make appropriate decisions in their care and participate in their own destiny.
9. Think about shelter and assign someone to that task, particularly in bad weather.
10. Create a treatment plan.
11. Create a plan for evacuation.
12. Prepare the victim for transportation. Protect them from environmental exposure.
13. Plan for things to go wrong, be flexible, and have back up plans. Maintain your priorities of safety. Be careful not to cause more victims during long or difficult evacuations. Brief your group and update group communication regularly. Think ahead. Assign clear roles.

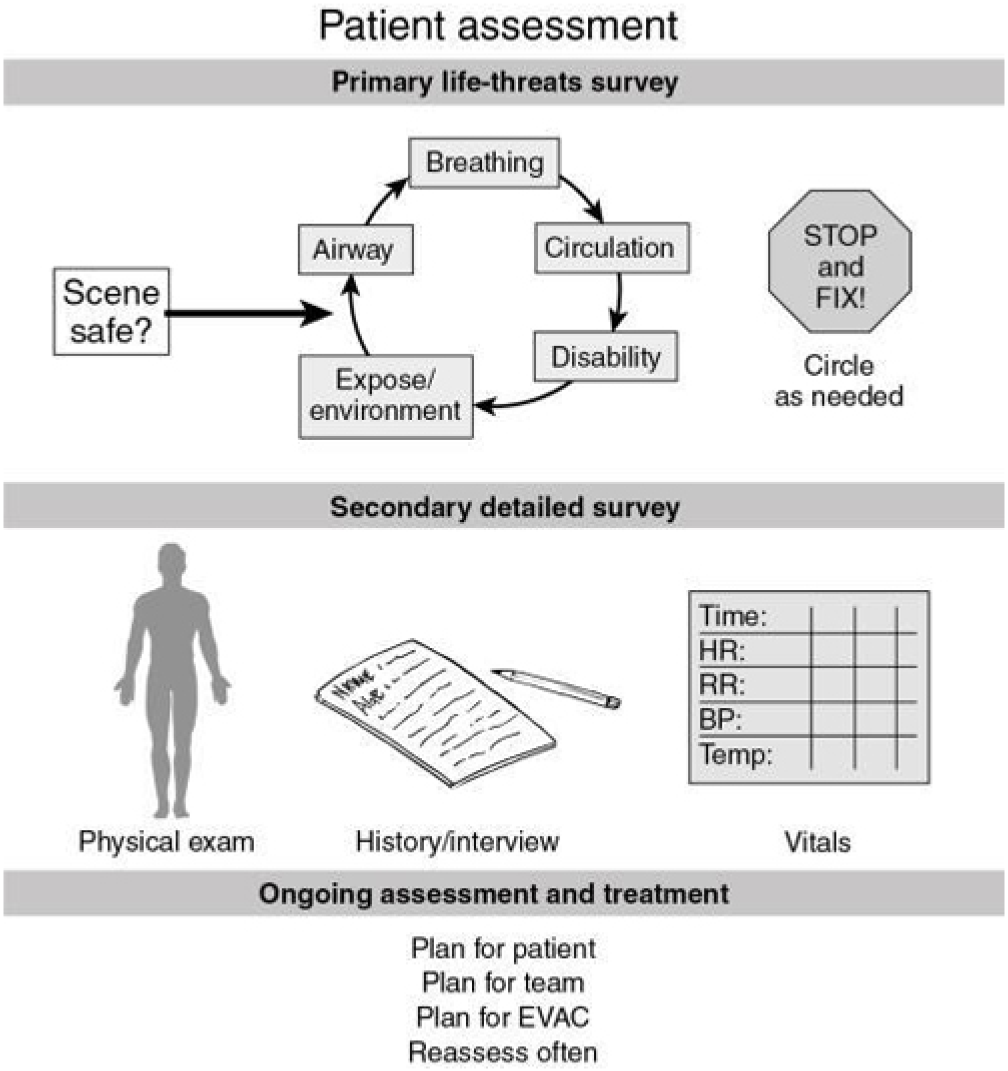

Patient assessment
Primary life-threats survey
Scene safe?
Airway
Breathing
Circulation
Disability
Expose/ environment
STOP and FIX!
Circle as needed
Secondary detailed survey
Time:
HR:
RR:
BP:
Temp:
Physical exam
History/interview
Vitals
Ongoing assessment and treatment
Plan for patient
Plan for team
Plan for EVAC
Reassess often

FIG. 1 Patient assessment. A structured approach to emergencies in the outdoors.

Primary survey (a search for immediate life threats)

Issues of airway, breathing, circulation must be promptly identified and managed. These life threats are stop and fix problems. ABCs may be identified and managed out of "order" or concurrently. For instance, one rescuer might apply direct pressure to a serious bleed (a stop and fix circulation problem) while another is also checking for an open airway. In other words, you don't need to ignore a spurting arterial wound because A, airway, comes before C, circulation, but you should not get distracted by or begin managing less threatening injuries until after each element of ABCDE has been investigated and all proper interventions started.

A note on ABC vs. CAB

When teaching cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR), the "ABC" (airway, breathing, circulation) method as the initial approach to determine whether or not to begin the chest compressions of CPR for cardiac arrest victims has been changed to a "CAB" approach, with initiation of chest compressions first, followed by airway and breathing (see pages 18–33). This approach prioritizes prompt initiation of chest compressions for victims that don't have a pulse or appear dead (no coughing, breathing, moving). If you come across a victim that is unconscious, it makes sense to begin your assessment by checking for a pulse and for signs of life. If necessary, immediately initiate CPR starting with compressions followed by airway and breathing.

The vast majority of victims encountered will have signs of life and will not need CPR. For victims that are awake, moving, or breathing, an ABC approach is appropriate. Do not fret about ABC vs. CAB. Both of these systems are designed to empower rescuers to act swiftly and with a systematic plan. The guiding principle is to identify life threats and do your best to help without delay. As mentioned above, life threats can be managed concurrently, and the order of approach may depend on the situation. Similarly, the MARCH approach (massive hemorrhage, airway, respirations, circulation, head injury/hypothermia) was developed for tactical situations where patients often suffered high energy trauma. All of these approaches work. Use the system with which you are most familiar.

Everyone who is able should take a hands-on CPR training course to practice the skills of managing ABC problems and be comfortable with basic life support such as chest compression, airway positioning, and rescue breathing.

Airway

Check that the victim's mouth and nose are open and empty. Adequacy of the airway and breathing must be attained rapidly in every victim. Airway obstruction is one of the leading causes of death in victims of head injury, and a frequent complication of vomiting in an unconscious person. In the absence of hypothermia, an interval of 4 minutes in which there is a failure to oxygenate the brain can lead to irreversible damage.

Fig. 2 depicts the anatomy of the respiratory system. Air enters the mouth and nose (where it is humidified), traverses the pharynx (throat), passes through the trachea (windpipe) and bronchi, and normally proceeds into the smallest air sacs of the lungs, known as the alveoli. Within these distal air spaces, inspired oxygen is exchanged for carbon dioxide, one of the end products of human metabolism. During swallowing, the epiglottis and tongue cover the entrance (via the vocal cords) to the trachea, so that food and liquid are directed to enter the esophagus and not the airway.

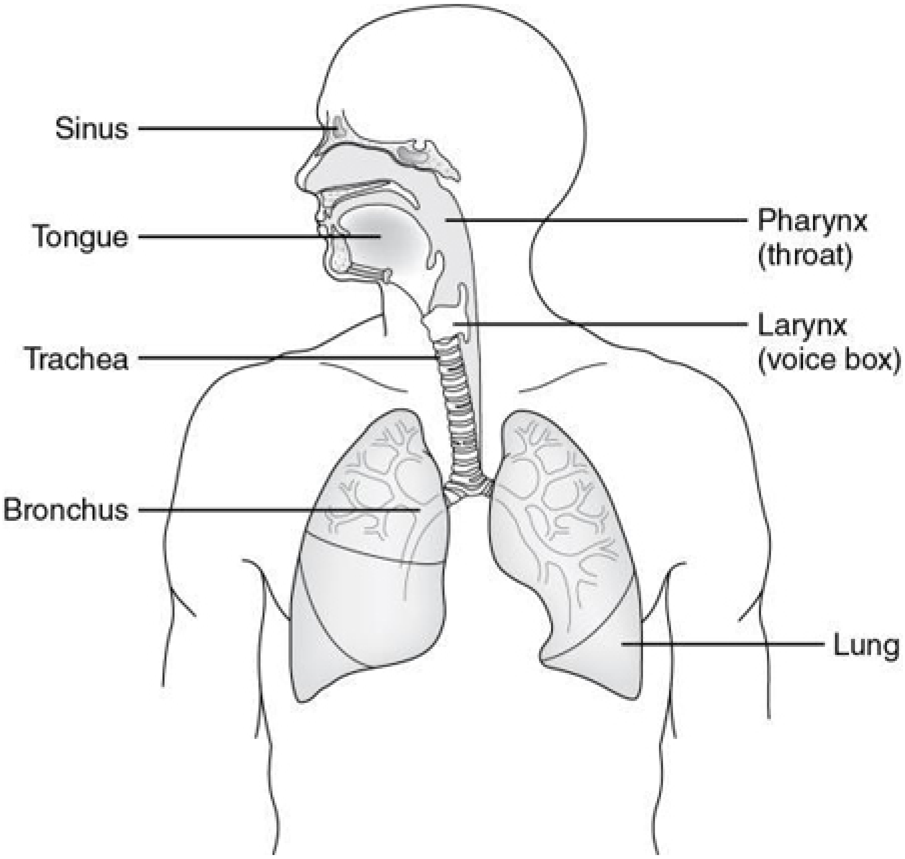


FIG. 2 Anatomy of the respiratory system.

Obstruction of the airway at any level can interfere with the passage of air, delivery of oxygen via the lungs to the blood, and exhalation of carbon dioxide. The mouth and pharynx might fill with blood, vomitus, or secretions. With facial injury, deformation of the jaw or nose might hinder breathing. In a supine (face up) unconscious victim, the tongue might fall back into the pharynx and occlude the opening to the trachea. Facial swelling can be due to an allergic reaction. Inhalation of food can obstruct the opening between the vocal cords and cause rapid suffocation.

Symptoms of airway obstruction include sudden inability to speak, appearance of panic with bulging eyes, blue skin discoloration (cyanosis), choking gestures (handheld to the throat), harsh and raspy or “musical” and high-pitched noise (“stridor”) that comes from the throat during breathing, prolonged expiration, and difficulty with breathing as evidenced by struggling and profound agitation. Any person who collapses suddenly, particularly while eating, or who has been in an accident should be examined rapidly for airway obstruction. A person who can still breathe but is struggling because of airway obstruction, might be using “accessory” muscles of the chest wall, shoulders, neck, and abdomen while straining to breathe.

1. *The neck should not be overly manipulated if there is a possibility of injury to the spine or spinal cord.* If a victim is unconscious and has suffered a fall or multiple injuries, it's safest to assume that their neck is broken and to stabilize the spine from excessive movement. In this situation, keep the airway open by gently but firmly lifting the jaw, either by grasping the lower teeth and jaw and pulling directly forward (away from the face) or by maintaining a forward pull on the angles of the jaw (Fig. 3). Don't bend the neck forward or backward. A modified jaw thrust (Fig. 4) can be performed by a single rescuer while stabilizing the neck.
2. *The neck may need to be carefully repositioned for safety or airway access. In the event the neck needs to be moved into a neutral, anatomical position, the movements should be done carefully and deliberately.* Gently straighten the neck into a neutral position by moving one plane at a time. Stop if you meet resistance or pain. Gentle realignment in this manner is very unlikely to cause further injury and is considered safe. Once a spine is in a neutral position, it should be stabilized and protected in a neutral position (see page 33).
3. *If there is no chance of a broken neck,* maintain the airway with the jaw lifts previously described or by tilting the head backward while gently lifting under the neck (Fig. 5). The alignment is different for an infant, small child, or older child or adult in terms of where one would position a pad or pillow (Fig. 6). A head tilt with chin lift can be used (Fig. 7). Extremely extending (backward) or flexing (forward) the head on the neck is not desirable. A neutral "sniffing" position should be attempted.
4. Keep the airway clear of blood, vomitus, loose dentures, and debris. This can be accomplished by sweeping the mouth with two fingers or by continuous suction with a field suction apparatus powerful enough to extract chunks. Take care not to force objects deeper into the throat. If the tongue appears to be the problem (you might hear a snoring noise when the victim inhales), wrap the end of the tongue in a cloth or gauze bandage, grasp firmly, and pull it out of the mouth (Fig. 8). If it cannot be held in this manner, a seemingly brutal, but potentially lifesaving, maneuver can be used. A safety pin or sharp-pointed wire can be passed through the tongue and used to improve the grip (see Fig. 8), taking care to avoid the large, visible blood vessels at the base of the tongue. To keep the tongue out of the mouth, a string can be tied to the safety pin and then secured to the victim's shirt button or jacket zipper. Fortunately, in most cases the jaw lift will carry the base of the tongue out of the airway. Another aggressive technique is to use two safety pins to attach the tongue to the face just below the lower lip (Fig. 9) or with an extending string to the victim's shirt button or jacket zipper.

5. If the victim is unconscious, don't leave them lying flat on their back. Turn them on their side ("recovery position") so that if vomiting or bleeding occurs, the fluid can drain from their mouth and the victim won't choke or drown (Fig. 10). Use a pillow or other padding as needed for comfort, but don't occlude gravitational drainage from the mouth.
6. If the victim is conscious and having airway difficulty, allow them to assume whatever position keeps them most comfortable. This usually protects the airway and allows the victim to handle their secretions (e.g., saliva or bleeding from the mouth and nose).

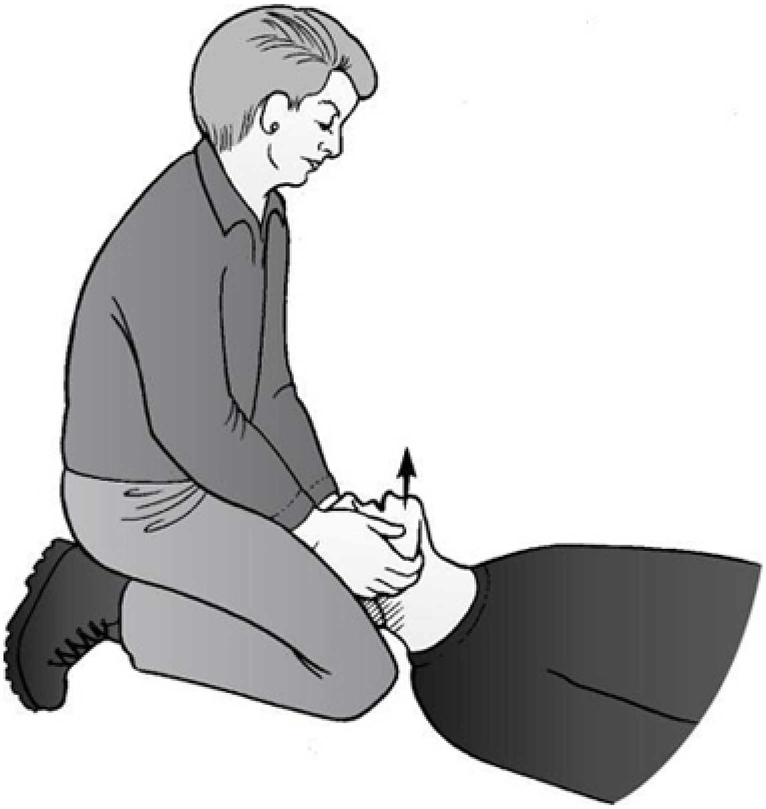


FIG. 3 Jaw pull to open the airway.

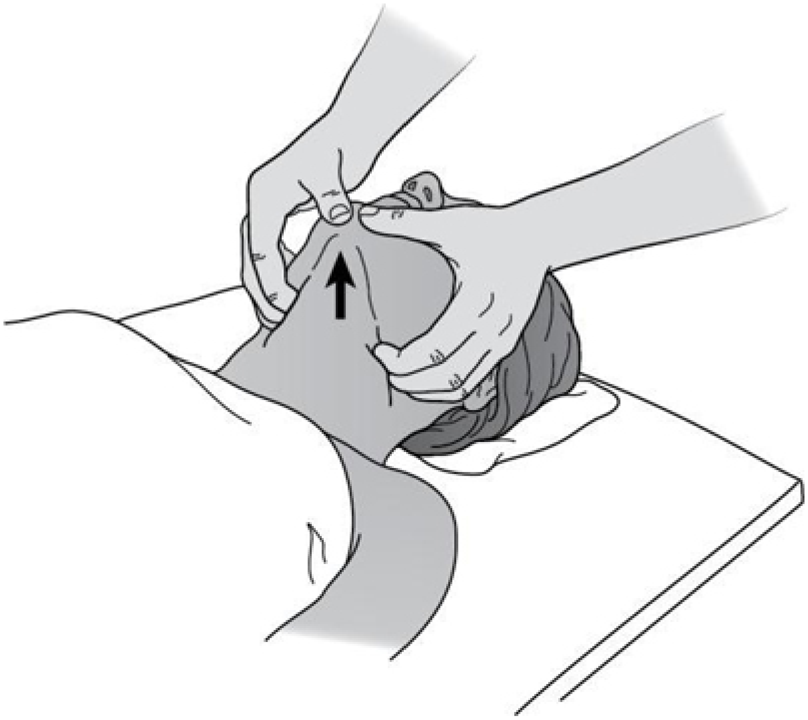


FIG. 4 Modified jaw thrust to open the airway while being in a position to minimize motion of the neck. Grasping the angles of the lower jaw firmly, the rescuer pulls forward to lift the tongue out of the throat.

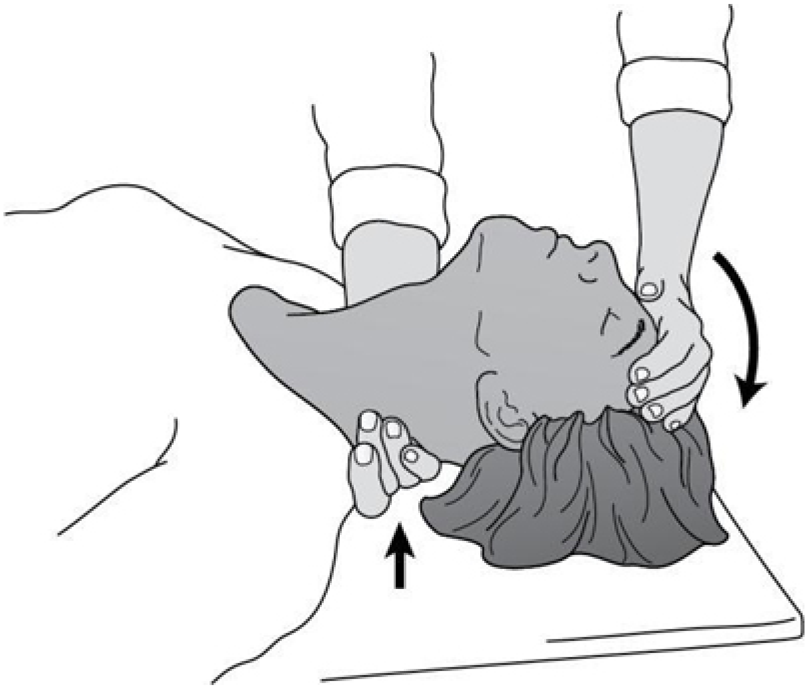


FIG. 5 Positioning the head to control the airway. The forehead is gently pushed back while support is maintained under the neck. Use a jaw thrust technique if a broken neck is suspected.

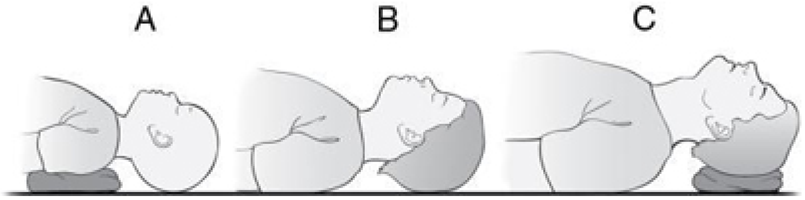


FIG. 6 Placement of a pillow to assist airway alignment in an infant **(A),** small child **(B),** and older child or adult **(C).** *Source:* (Redrawn from Auerbach PS [ed]: Wilderness medicine [ed5]. St. Louis: Mosby, 2007, p 452; redrawn from Walls RM, Murphy MF, Luten RC, Schneider RE [eds]: Manual of emergency airway management [ed 2]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2004.)

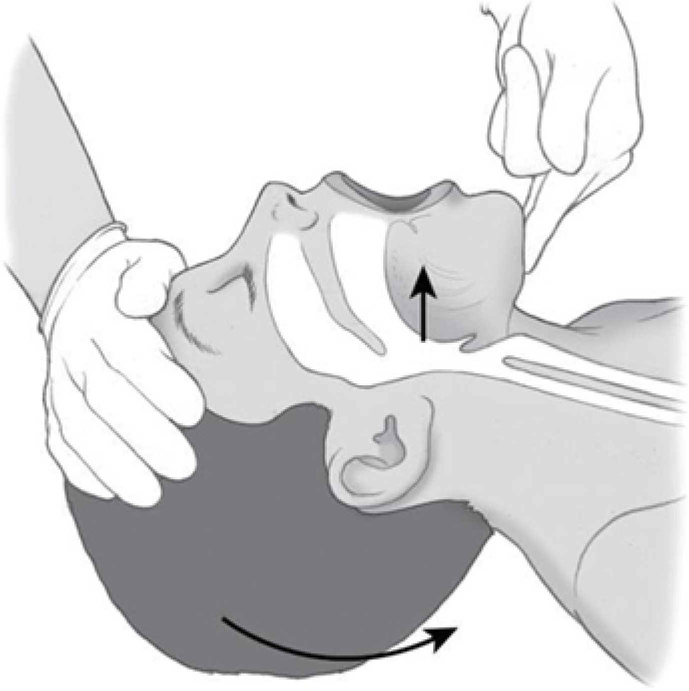


FIG. 7 Head tilt with chin lift to bring the base of the tongue forward and open the airway. *Source:* (Redrawn from Auerbach PS [ed]: Wilderness medicine [ed 5]. St. Louis: Mosby, 2007, p453; redrawn from Mahadevan SV, Garmel GM, [eds]: An introduction to clinical emergency medicine: guide for practitioners in the emergency department. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 2005. Copyright Illustration ©Chris Gralapp.)

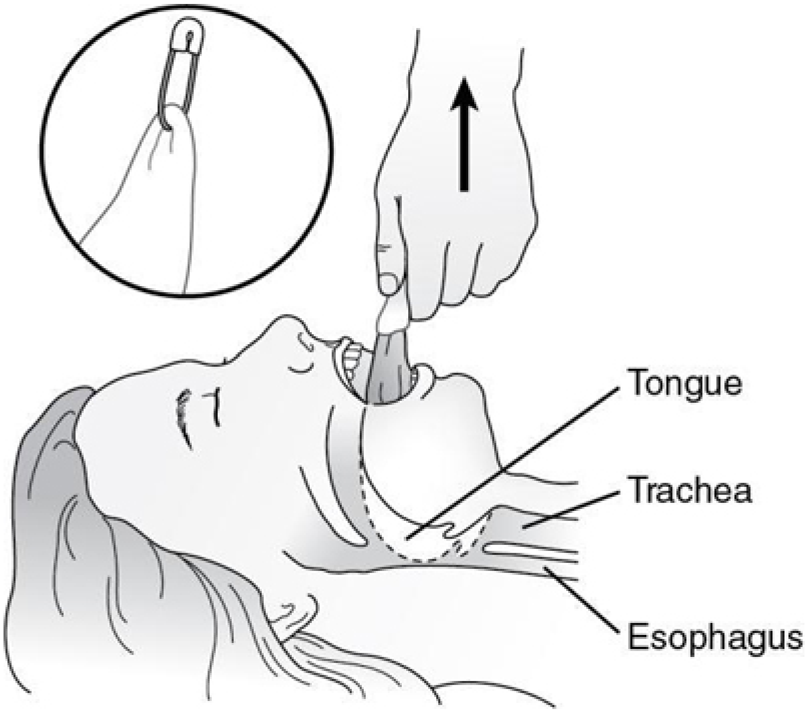


FIG. 8 Manual tongue traction. With a cloth or safety pin *(inset)* to secure the grip, the tongue is lifted out of the mouth to clear the airway.

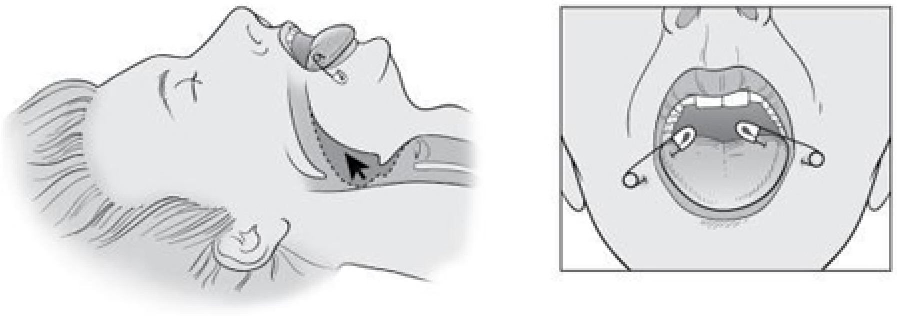


FIG. 9 Using two safety pins to attach the tongue to the lower lip to help control the airway. *Source:* (Redrawn from Auerbach PS [ed]: Wilderness medicine [ed 5]. St. Louis: Mosby, 2007, p. 506.)

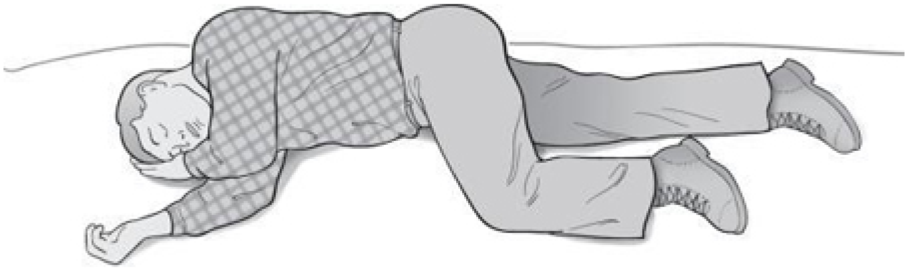


FIG. 10 Victim on their side to minimize choking. Recovery position. *Source:* (Redrawn from Auerbach PS [ed]: Wilderness medicine [ed 5]. St. Louis: Mosby, 2007, p. 456.)

Choking

Choking is a life-threatening airway problem in which the upper airway (above the vocal cords) is obstructed by a foreign object (tongue, broken teeth, dentures, food). The choking person is profoundly agitated (until they become unconscious from lack of oxygen), might appear to be panicked with bulging eyes, might grasp at their throat in a choking gesture, cannot breathe, and is unable to speak. You must respond rapidly:

1. Sweep the mouth with one or two fingers to remove any visible foreign material. Take care not to force material farther into the throat. Quickly extract loose dentures.
2. Using an open hand, give the victim two to four rapid, sharp blows on the back between the shoulder blades. This might be more effective if the victim is lying on their side or is bent forward at the waist. If a small child is choking, perform this maneuver while holding them face down or upside down. If the victim is an infant, place them face down on one of your forearms, with their head lower than their body. Support their head. Give five quick back blows, then turn the infant over and give five quick chest thrusts (similar to those given during CPR—see page 31).
3. Perform the Heimlich maneuver (Fig. 11). Position yourself behind the victim and encircle them with your arms, clasping your hands in a fist in the upper abdomen just below their ribs. Squeeze the victim suddenly and firmly (“bear hug”) two or three times, in an attempt to produce a brisk exhalation (cough) and ejection of the foreign (choking) material. If you are the victim and no one is present to help during a choking episode, you can throw yourself against a log or table edge in an attempt to perform a self-Heimlich maneuver.
4. If the victim is lying on their back (supine), perform the Heimlich maneuver by sitting astride their thighs, facing their head (Fig. 12). Place

the heel of one hand on their upper abdomen and cover it with your other hand. Press into the abdomen suddenly and firmly in a direction toward the chest. Do this a few times, and then perform the chin lift (see step 1 on page 19) and sweep a finger deeply through the mouth to extract any visible foreign material forced up by your efforts. Take care not to push anything back into the throat.

5. If the victim is unconscious or becomes unconscious then apply the force in center of chest (the same technique as chest compressions for CPR. See page 28).
6. For a child older than 1 year of age, kneel behind the child or keep them supine (because the child is too large to hold face down or upside down) and place the heel of your hand well below their breastbone but above their navel.
7. If the victim is obese or pregnant, apply the force (with the victim sitting or lying down) to the center of the chest (breastbone) in the same motion as chest compressions for CPR, rather than the abdomen.
8. If necessary, begin mouth-to-mouth breathing (see page 26). If unable to get in a breath (look for chest rise), then reposition the airway and try again. If unable to get a breath a second time, then begin chest compressions and CPR. The chest compressions create pressure to dislodge an airway obstruction. Visualize the Airway and remove visible obstructions at the airway step of each cycle of CPR.

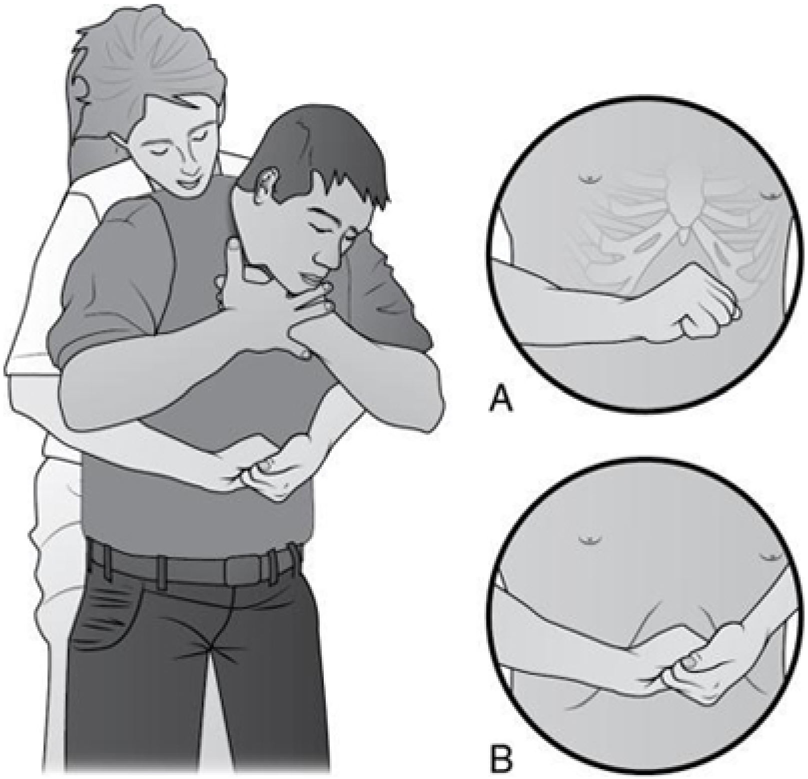


FIG. 11 The Heimlich maneuver. **A,** A hand is placed on the upper abdomen. **B,** The second hand interlocks to create a tight grip. A sudden, forceful squeeze ("bear hug") causes the victim to cough.

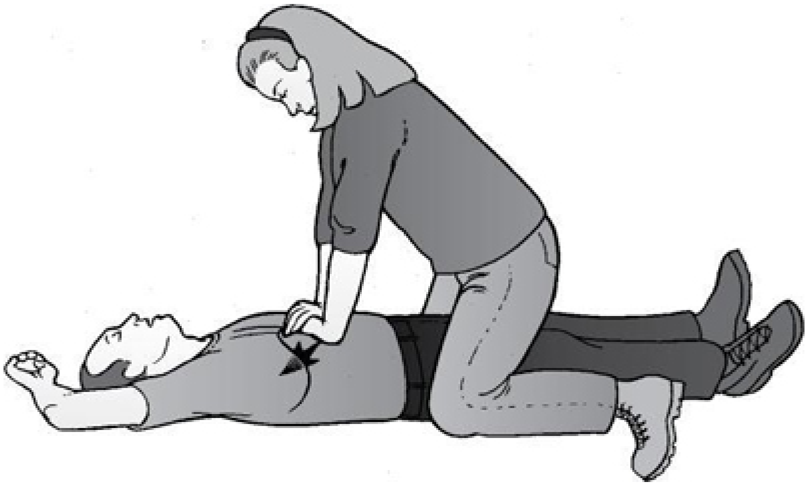


FIG. 12 Heimlich maneuver with the victim lying on their back.

Sometimes a person will feel like they are choking if they have great difficulty swallowing. This is particularly true if they have something, usually food, stuck in the esophagus. In this situation, the object can be completely obstructive, so that nothing can pass by. The person might complain of chest pain and be anxious, drooling (can't swallow saliva), and begin to retch in an involuntary attempt to dislodge the object. If they can remain calm, they will realize that their breathing is OK (because the airway is not obstructed). If a foreign body has become impacted in the esophagus, bring the victim promptly to medical care, so that someone can use an endoscope to look directly into the esophagus and remove the food or whatever else (sometimes part of a toy in a child) is causing the difficulty. If anyone is suspected to have swallowed a battery (usually a "button" battery), bring them promptly to medical attention, even if swallowing is normal.

Helmet removal

If the victim is wearing a helmet, it might be necessary to rapidly remove it to get to the airway. If the helmet is not interfering with the primary survey, it can be removed later. It is very important to do this in a way that protects the neck from excessive twisting or bending forward or backward. It usually takes two persons to safely remove a helmet:

1. The first rescuer, positioned above the head of the victim, holds the helmeted head steady by grasping it on each side. If necessary to support the airway, the first rescuer can reach down and hold the mandible (lower jaw).
2. The second rescuer, positioned below the head of the victim, prepares the helmet for removal by loosening and removing straps, goggles, and other attachments, so long as this process does not allow for unintended head movement.
3. The second rescuer takes over head stabilization, while the first rescuer continues to hold the helmeted head by sliding two hands along the sides of the victim's head position; this should be done by either placing one hand behind the base of the head at its junction with the neck and the other hand under the chin or by sliding two hands along the sides of the head and up inside the helmet.
4. The first rescuer completes removal of retaining straps, then slides the helmet off the head using axial (straight up away from the feet, without any twisting) traction.
5. Head positioning is maintained while a cervical collar or other method (see page 33) is used to stabilize the position of the head and neck.

The issue of whether or not to remove a helmet in order to transport a patient (e.g., an injured skier) is somewhat controversial, but the general consensus is that if the helmet holds the head and neck in good alignment for breathing, and its removal will cause the patient to have a more difficult airway, it should be left in place. You might need to pad around it to keep the head and neck from moving during transport.

Breathing

Look, listen, and feel for breathing that is adequate and pain free (Fig. 13). Put your ear close to the victim's mouth and nose and try to detect if they are moving air into and out of their lungs. Watch for chest wall motion. Determine if a victim is breathing by listening and feeling for air movement around the mouth and nose and observing the chest for unassisted rise and fall. In cold weather, look for a vapor cloud or feel for warm air moving across your hand. If the victim is not breathing well (or at all), you must manage the airway (see page 18) and begin to breathe for them (see page 25), *taking care to maintain the neutral position of the neck if there is any chance of a cervical spine injury* (see page 33). Observe the number of breaths per minute; normal is 12 to 18 per minute for adults, 20 to 30 per minute for small children, and 30 to 50 per minute for infants.

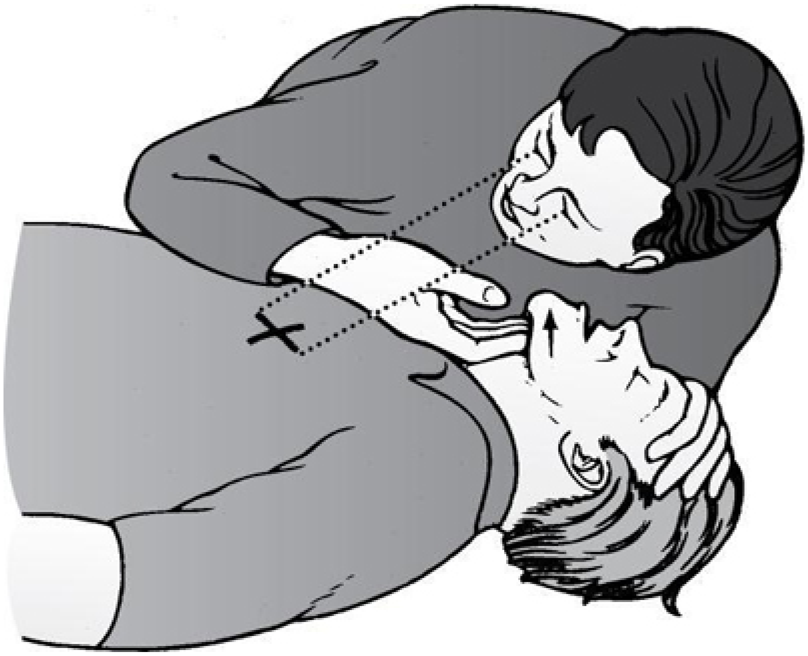


FIG. 13 Look, feel, and listen for air movement.

Characterize the nature and effort of breathing. Look to see if breathing is effective—the chest expands, and air movement is appreciated. Observe if the victim is laboring to breathe. In an adult, if the breathing rate is less than 10 or greater than 30 breaths per minute, the skin color is blue, or the victim is confused or unconscious, be prepared to assist breathing.

If the breathing is noisy, rattling, or "musical" and high-pitched, suspect an airway obstruction (see page 18), particularly if the victim is lying on their back. If the victim has a loose denture or another dental appliance, remove it. If there is no chance of a cervical spine injury (see page 33) and it appears that the victim might vomit, position them on their side. If you're concerned about a neck injury, use the logrolling maneuver (see page 36).

Near the condition of death, a person might show "agonal respirations," characterized by infrequent mouth openings without any chest rise, sometimes accompanied by head lifting. Agonal respirations are not adequate breaths and should not be mistaken for signs of life. A victim with only agonal respirations needs CPR starting with chest compressions.

The act of breathing delivers oxygen to the lungs during inhalation, exchanges oxygen for carbon dioxide in the lungs, transfers oxygen into the bloodstream, and removes carbon dioxide during exhalation. The rate and depth of breathing are controlled by the oxygen and carbon dioxide levels in the blood, by the body's oxygen demand, by the ability of the blood to unload oxygen to the tissues, by brain and brainstem regulatory sensory systems, and by emotional factors. If there is a head or spinal cord injury or a drug overdose, however, the central nervous system stimulus for breathing might be lost. In many instances, this is only transient (lightning strike is a possible example as is opioid overdose); thus, it's imperative to provide breathing assistance for a period of time before giving up hope. A victim may have a pulse and only need rescue breathing to stay alive. Exhaled air from a human contains 16% oxygen, which is enough to support life (via mouth-to-mouth or mouth-to-[face]mask breathing) at low altitudes. Continue to reassess pulse often and begin CPR if the victim loses their pulse.

A direct chest injury (broken ribs, fractured breastbone, bruised or collapsed lung) might render respirations inadequate because of pain or mechanical dysfunction. Accumulation of fluid in the lungs because of inhalation, burns, heart failure, or constriction of the smaller branches of the airway (during an asthma episode or allergic reaction) might make the work of breathing overwhelming for the victim.

How to assist breathing (mouth-to-mouth)

1. Position the victim's head in the "sniffing position" by placing one hand under their neck and the other on their forehead, to lift behind the neck (gently) and tilt the head backward (Fig. 14). If you suspect a broken

neck, don't move the victim's neck excessively; merely lift their jaw (see Fig. 4).

2. Quickly sweep two fingers through the victim's mouth to remove any visible foreign material. Remove loose dentures.
3. Pinch the victim's nose closed and cover their mouth with your own (see Fig. 14). If you have a barrier (pocket-type face (resuscitation) mask or mouth shield, such as the NuMask Pocket CPR Kit with one-way valve) to prevent transmission of infectious diseases, use it as directed. An improvised barrier shield for rescue breathing can be created by taking a surgical glove and cutting off the middle finger at the midpoint of its length. The rescuer then stretches the glove across the victim's mouth and nose and blows into the glove (Fig. 15). After each breath, uncover the nose to allow the victim to exhale. If you are using the jaw lift technique to open the airway, press your cheek against the victim's nose to occlude it during mouth-to-mouth breathing. For mouth-to-nose breathing, close the victim's mouth and cover their nose with your mouth. For small children and infants, cover both the mouth and nose with your mouth (Fig. 16).
4. Blow air into the adult victim until you see their chest rise. This should take approximately 1 to 2 seconds. With small children and infants, don't blow forcefully. Remove your mouth and allow the victim to exhale passively; the chest should fall. The goal is to give two full breaths, pausing between them to inhale and see if the chest moves properly.
5. If the victim has a pulse and only needs rescue breathing, repeat the inhale–exhale cycle of one breath every 5 seconds for adults, and every 3 seconds for children.
6. Continue to monitor circulation and pulse while managing breathing and airway. If the victim does not have signs of life or a pulse, then CPR and chest compressions should begin immediately. When chest compressions are occurring, the repeating ratio is 30 compressions then a brief pause for two rescue breaths for adults and children.
7. If you meet resistance trying to blow air into the victim's lungs and/or the chest does not rise, reposition to be certain the airway is open (proper head position, tongue and mouth clear—see pages 19–22). You might need to lift the jaw (see page 19) to pull the base of the tongue up and out of the throat. If the positioning is correct and the chest still does not rise, consider an airway obstruction with a foreign body (see page 22) and begin chest compressions and CPR with a 30:2 ratio of compressions to breaths, checking for visible obstructions in the mouth before each round of attempted breaths.
8. Mouth-to-mouth breathing usually forces air into the victim's stomach as well as into their lungs. If the stomach fills up with so much air that it

becomes tense and you cannot expand the lungs, turn the victim quickly on their side and press on the abdomen. This might make them vomit, so be prepared to clean out the mouth.

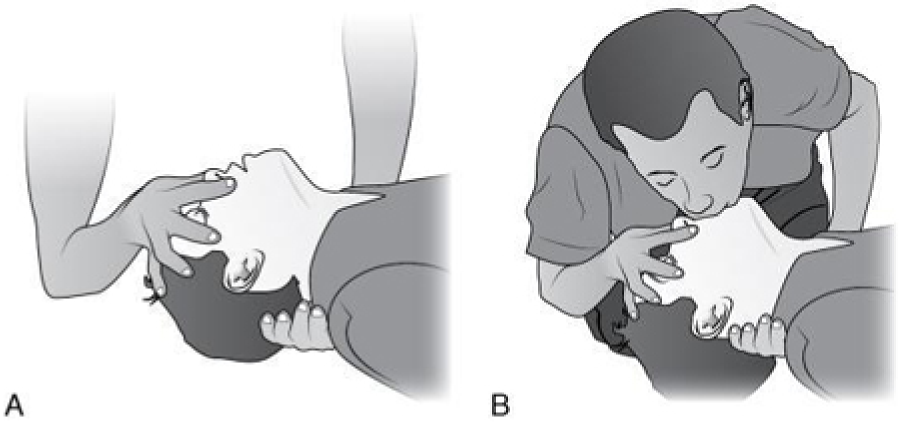


FIG. 14 Mouth-to-mouth breathing. **A,** While the neck is supported with one hand, the nose is pinched closed. **B,** The rescuer covers the victim's mouth with their own and forces air into the victim until the chest rises. This should take approximately 1 to 2 seconds.

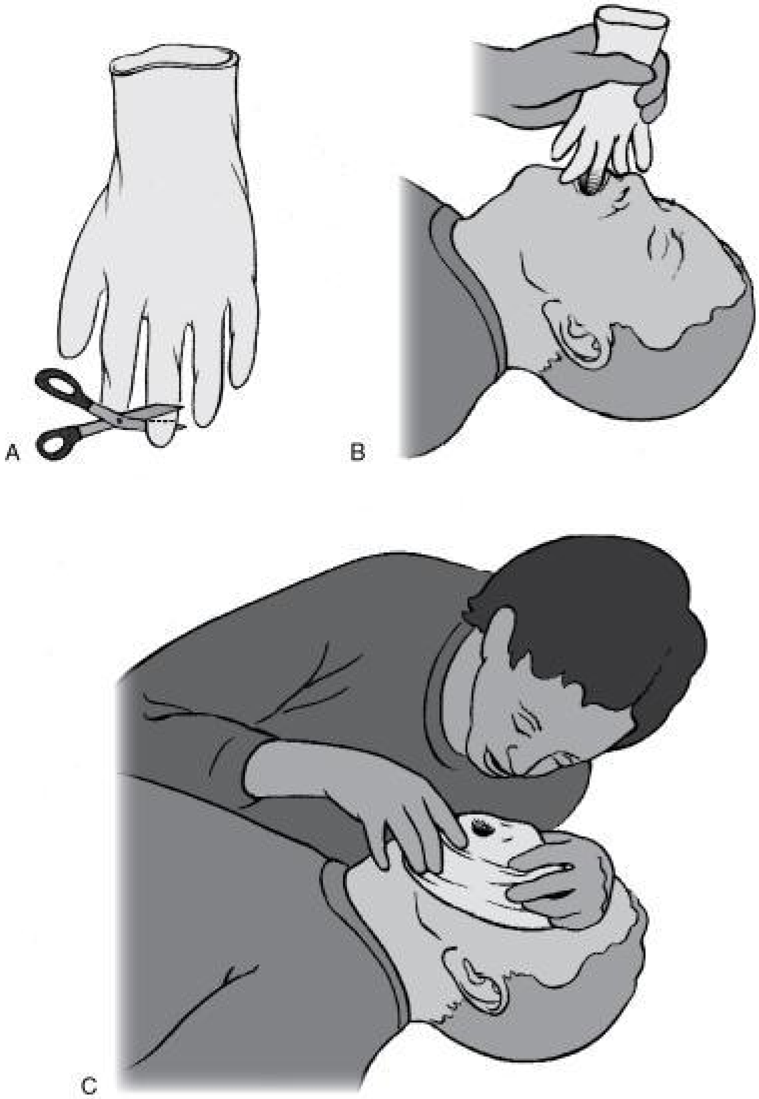


FIG. 15 **A–C,** Improvised CPR barrier fashioned from protective surgical glove.

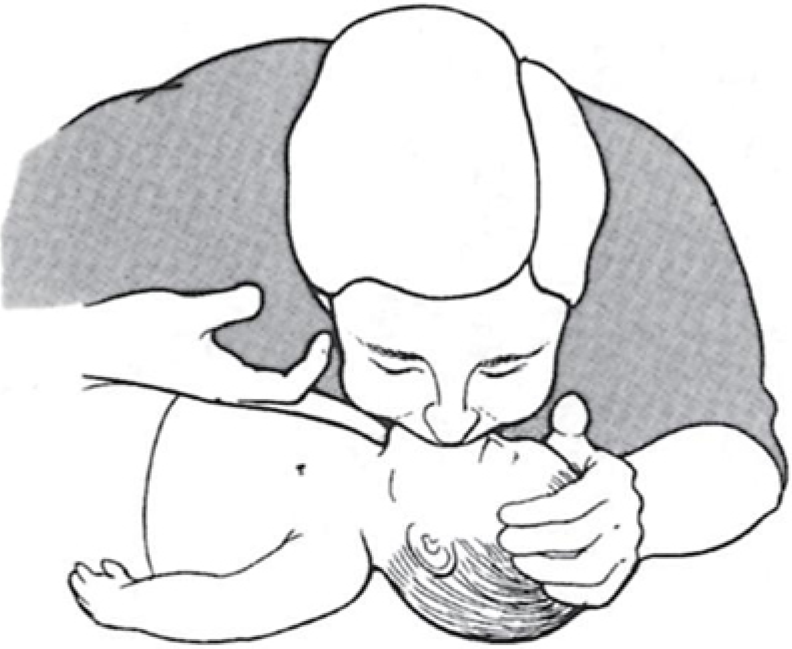


FIG. 16 Mouth-to-mouth-and-nose breathing required to resuscitate a child.

Circulation

Check for a pulse. Control severe bleeding. If a patient appears lifeless then begin your primary survey at C and start your survey with a brief pulse check or immediate chest compressions. Current American Heart Association guidelines advise laypersons to follow a "Simplified Adult Basic Life Support (BLS) Algorithm." This emphasizes a "Push Hard–Push Fast" approach that specifies that if the victim is unresponsive (without signs of life) and is not breathing (or is gasping only), then the rescuer should activate an emergency response (e.g., call for assistance), obtain an automated external defibrillator (AED), and begin chest compressions. If the AED is applied and the victim is suffering from ventricular fibrillation, a shock might be delivered. Always check with the manufacturer, but be aware that most AEDs, because they are self-grounded, can be used safely in wet environments or on metal surfaces without risk to the rescuer.

Determining whether or not BLS has been successful eventually requires checking for a pulse. Check for pulses for no more than 10 seconds at the neck (carotid artery: Fig. 17A) or groin (femoral artery: Fig. 17B). Use the tips of your index and middle fingers to feel for a pulse. Don't use your thumb because the thumb often has pulsations of its own, which you might confuse with the victim's pulse. Using more than one finger at the same time to locate a pulse might increase your likelihood of feeling it.

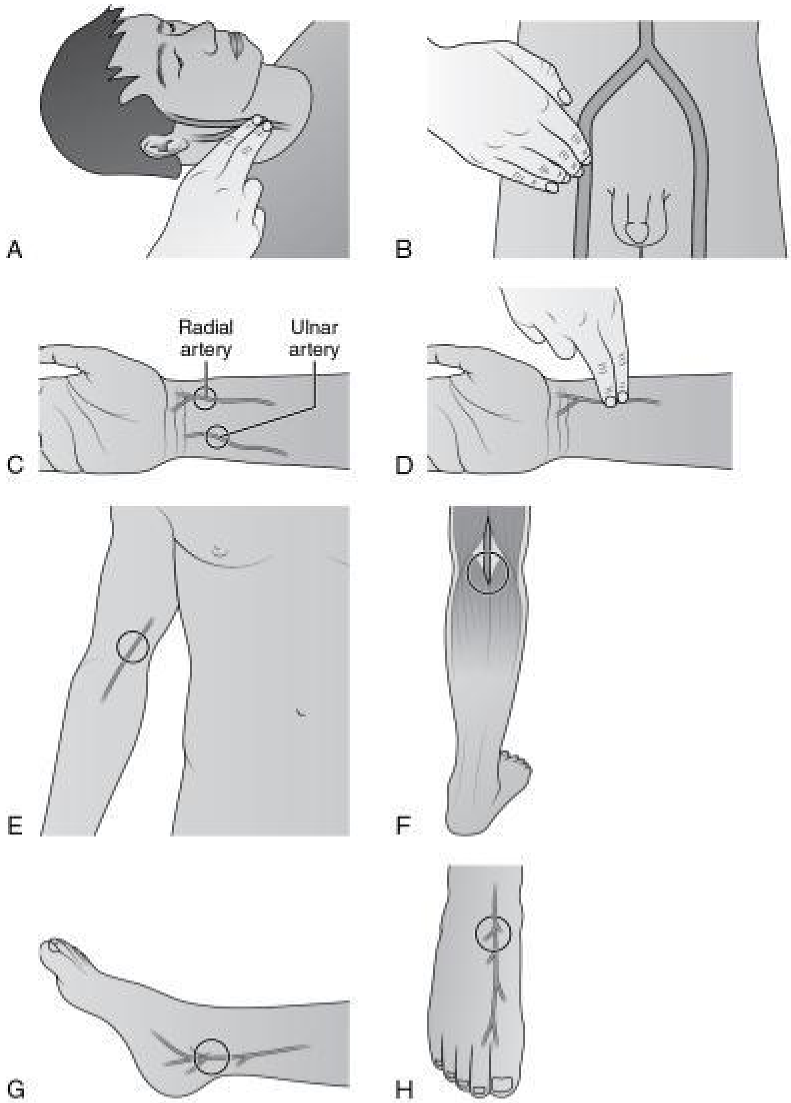


FIG. 17 Location of the pulses. **A,** Carotid artery in the neck. **B,** Femoral artery in the groin. **C,** Radial and ulnar arteries in the wrist. **D,** Taking a radial pulse. **E,** Brachial artery in the arm. **F,** Popliteal artery behind the knee. **G,** Posterior tibial artery on the inner aspect of the ankle. **H,** Dorsalis pedis artery on the top of the foot.

Don't rely on the wrist (radial or ulnar artery: Fig. 17C and D) for the determination of heartbeat in an unconscious victim. The carotid artery is located (see Fig. 17A) at the level of the Adam's apple, between this structure and the large muscle (sternocleidomastoid) that runs from the base of the ear to the collarbone. Pulsations from the femoral artery can be felt (see Fig. 17B) below the abdomen in the groin crease where the front of the leg attaches to the trunk, two fingerbreadths medial (toward the center) to the midpoint in the line from the hipbone (anterior iliac spine) to the bony region directly under the pubic hair (the pubic symphysis). Other locations where the pulse can be felt (often with great difficulty) are on the inner aspect of the elbow (brachial artery: Fig. 17E); behind the knee (popliteal artery: Fig. 17F); directly behind the bony prominence (malleolus) on the inner side of the ankle (posterior tibial artery: Fig. 17G); and centrally on the top of the foot (dorsalis pedis artery: Fig. 17H).

A normal resting pulse rate is 55 to 90 per minute for adults, 80 to 110 per minute for small children, and 100 to 130 per minute for infants. A well-conditioned athlete will often have a resting pulse rate of 45 to 50 per minute, because the well-developed vagus nerve's impulses dominate. Failure to feel a pulse means that the heart is not beating (cardiac arrest), the pump (heart) is not squeezing with sufficient force (profound shock or hypothermia), the artery is constricted (hypothermia), there is an injury to the artery (from a fracture or severe cut), or you are feeling in the wrong place.

Locate brisk bleeding. Quickly survey the victim to locate any obvious sources of brisk bleeding. Take care to look under clothing and do a blood sweep between the victim and the ground. Quickly apply direct pressure, wound packing, or tourniquet to areas of severe bleeding (see page 58). Take blood and bodily fluid precautions before contact (see page 504).

If no pulse is detected (and the victim is unconscious and not breathing), give 30 chest compressions, then open the airway and deliver two breaths, and then continue the CPR sequence of 30 compressions to every two breaths. Call or send someone for help and an AED.

Chest compressions are performed as follows:

1. Place the victim on their back on a firm, flat surface and position the heel of one of your hands over the center of their breastbone (Fig. 18A). The heel of your second hand is placed over the bottom hand. Interlock your fingers (Fig. 18B) and keep them held lightly off the victim's chest.
2. Your shoulders should line up directly over the victim's breastbone, with your arms straightened at the elbows (Fig. 19).
3. Using a stiff-arm technique, the adult breastbone is compressed at least 2 inches (5 cm) and then released (Fig. 20). For children and infants, compress to 1/3 the depth of the chest. Keep your motions smooth. The compression phase should equal the relaxation phase, with a rate of 100 to 120 compressions per minute for adults and children. Give an initial 30 compressions then position airway and give two breaths. With single-rescuer CPR on victims of all ages, try to maintain a ratio of 30 compressions interrupted by two mouth-to-mouth breaths (see page 26). After the first four cycles of compressions and breaths, check for pulses and spontaneous breathing. If both are absent, resume your efforts, checking for signs of life every few minutes. If unable to manage Airway

or Breathing then prioritize and continue chest compressions only until more help arrives.

4. If two rescuers are working together, the second rescuer should give the victim mouth-to-mouth resuscitation, giving two breaths after every 30 chest compressions. The artificial breaths should be provided during a brief pause between compressions. If providing CPR to infants or children, two rescuers working together might adjust the ratio to 15 chest compression followed by two breaths.
5. Continue CPR until you are relieved by someone, you become exhausted, the victim is revived, or a qualified person pronounces the victim dead. Situations in which CPR is unlikely to revive a victim include cardiac arrest associated with severe injuries, drowning in which the victim has been submerged for more than an hour (with the exception of cold-water immersion—see page 326), or the victim having an incompressible chest (extreme cold or prolonged “downtime” with rigor mortis—see page 324).

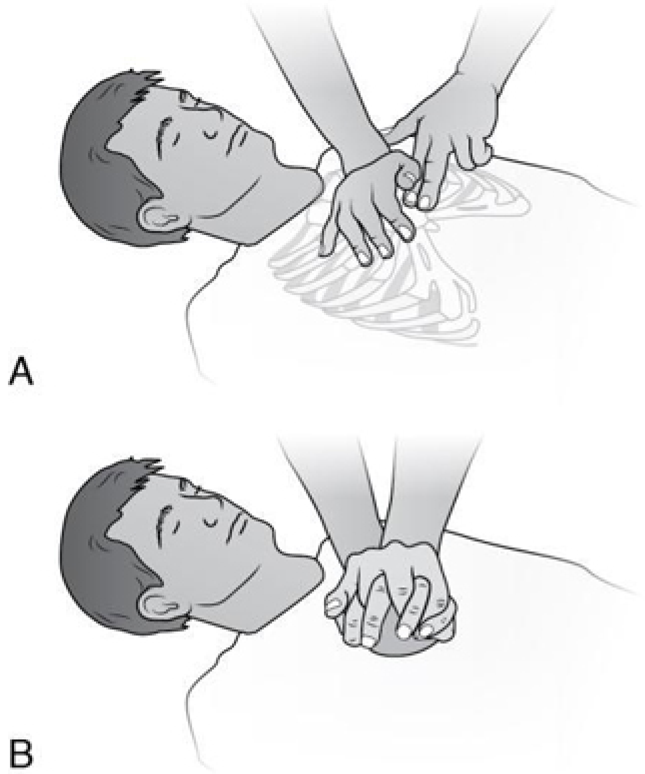


FIG. 18 Positioning the hands for CPR. **A,** The heel of the first hand is placed two fingerbreadths above the bottom edge of the breastbone. **B,** The second hand is placed over the first and the fingers are interlocked.

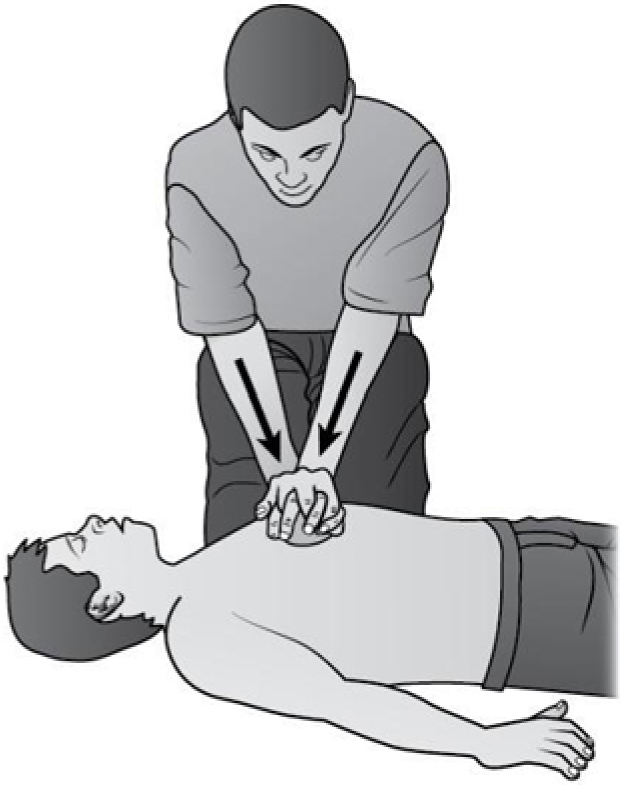


FIG. 19 Proper arm and body position for CPR. The rescuer compresses the victim's chest by keeping the arms straight and dropping their upper body weight directly over the victim.

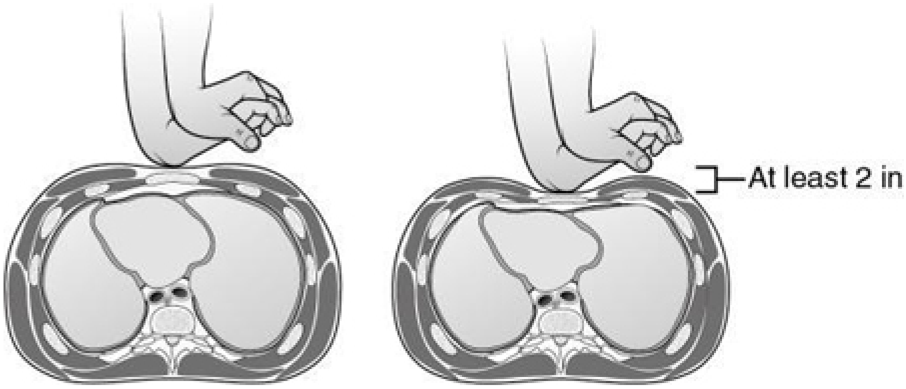


FIG. 20 Compression of the chest during CPR. With proper technique, the adult/child breastbone should be compressed 1/3 or more the depth of the chest, at least 2 inches in adults, with 100 to 120 compressions per minute.

Chest compressions in infants and small children can be performed by placing a stabilizing hand on the child's back and compressing with hand (or fingers) on the chest (Fig. 21). With a small child, use one hand to perform the compressions. With an infant, use two fingers. Care should be taken to provide firm compressions without separating the ribs from the breastbone. The compression depth is at least one-third of the anterior–posterior diameter of the chest (approximately 1.5 inch [4 cm] in infants and small children, and 2 inches [5 cm] in large children).

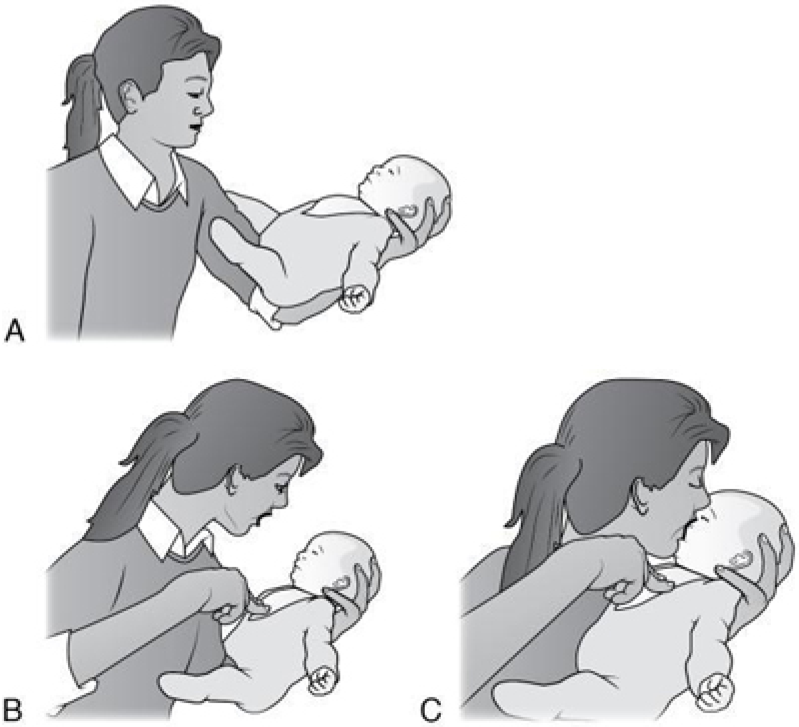


FIG. 21 Infant CPR. **A,** Positioning the infant on the forearm. **B,** With the forearm for a back support, two fingers of the opposite hand are used to compress the breastbone. **C,** The mouth and nose of the infant are covered by the rescuer's mouth for rescue breathing.

Miraculous survivals have been reported in victims of prolonged cardiac arrest from cold-water submersion or lightning strike. During the first 5 to 7 minutes of CPR, if you cannot do both mouth-to-mouth breathing and chest compressions for whatever reason, do the compressions only.

As mentioned previously, if you have access to an AED, attach it to the victim as soon as possible, so that it can determine whether or not a shock (for ventricular fibrillation, in which the heart does not contract, but quivers in such a fashion as to be unable to pump blood) is indicated. If the AED shocks the victim, then immediately resume compressions. If a shock is successful in terminating ventricular fibrillation, chest compressions might still be necessary for a minute or two to circulate blood (and oxygen) while the heart restores a life-sustaining rhythm and blood pressure. When pulses return and can be felt, or the victim shows signs of life, discontinue chest compressions. If there are no signs of life or a pulse then continue CPR and follow the automatic prompts of the AED, which will recheck for need for shock every 2 minutes.

CPR in a wilderness setting is rarely successful. Unfortunately, your best efforts at resuscitation might be to no avail and the victim will die. Signs of death include no detectable pulse; absent breathing; dilated (and often irregularly shaped) pupils that don't contract when exposed to bright light; pale or blue-gray skin, fingernails, and lips; penile erection; uncontrolled urination or bowel movement; cool body temperature; and no movement or response to pain. After a period of an hour or two, the muscles become stiff (rigor mortis), the skin mottles, and blood settles visibly in a dependent fashion due to gravity (dependent lividity) causing large, discolored blotches on the victim's back, buttocks, and legs (if they are kept supine). When to stop CPR depends on the situation. There is no agreed upon time for stopping. Some experts recommend stopping after 30 minutes of good CPR in the wilderness setting because survival is very very unlikely after prolonged arrest. You may consider going longer depending on the situation and availability of rescue.

However, it's essential to remember that hypothermic individuals, who are extremely cold, might appear to be dead (see page 324), when in fact they are alive and might be saved. Severely hypothermic individuals might have nondetectable pulses, breathing so shallow that it cannot be detected, skin mottling, stiff muscles, and so forth. Therefore, if severe hypothermia is suspected, "no one is dead until they are warm and dead." In such a case, resuscitative efforts should be carried out until the victim is revived, the rescuers become exhausted or endangered, or a health care professional can pronounce death. This is also true for a victim of lightning strike or cold-water drowning.

It's reasonable to not begin CPR if there is an obviously not survivable injury (e.g., decapitation, incineration, or apparent death and decomposition of the body) or if it's unsafe for the rescuer. If a victim is dead, the body should be decently covered and kept in a cool location until extrication is possible. If foul play is suspected, the body should not be moved. If a dangerous communicable infection is suspected as the cause of death, take appropriate precautions and minimize body handling (see Handling a Dead Body page 478).

Disability and neurologic status

Check the victim's mental status. If they are awake, quickly determine if they are oriented to person, place, and time. Ask, "What is your name? Where are you? What is the date?". Note if the speech pattern is normal, slurred, or garbled (see altered mental status page 45).

Protect the cervical spine. If a victim has fallen, is unconscious, or has a face or head injury, they might have a fracture of the cervical spine (neck). High-risk situations include falls from a height greater than 3 feet or any fall that involves an elderly person, motor vehicle accidents at speeds over 35 mph or with a death at the scene, drowning, and diving accidents. If the victim has external evidence of a neck injury; complains of midline neck or back pain; or has a tender neck when examined, broken limb, pelvic pain, altered mentation, head or face injury, chest or back pain, or abnormal sensation or weakness in the hands or feet, be suspicious for an associated cervical spine fracture. If the victim has a very painful injury other than the neck (e.g., a broken leg), they might be distracted by this and not focus on a neck injury, so be certain to examine it carefully. In this circumstance and the others noted above, it's prudent to stabilize the victim's head and neck. Other situations considered to be "distractions" for the purpose of evaluating a person for a spine injury include intoxication, or numbness or other altered sensation in an arm, leg, or other body region being evaluated.

You must immediately stabilize the head and neck. The neck can be stabilized by a firm grip of the victim's head with two hands or forearms by a rescuer positioned at the victim's head (Fig. 22 and Fig. 23) and further immobilized by taping the head to a backboard or stretcher, by applying a cervical collar, or by placing sandbags or their equivalent on either side of the head (Fig. 24). Don't use bags of snow to hold the head, because these might melt and allow too much motion; they can also contribute to hypothermia (see page 321).

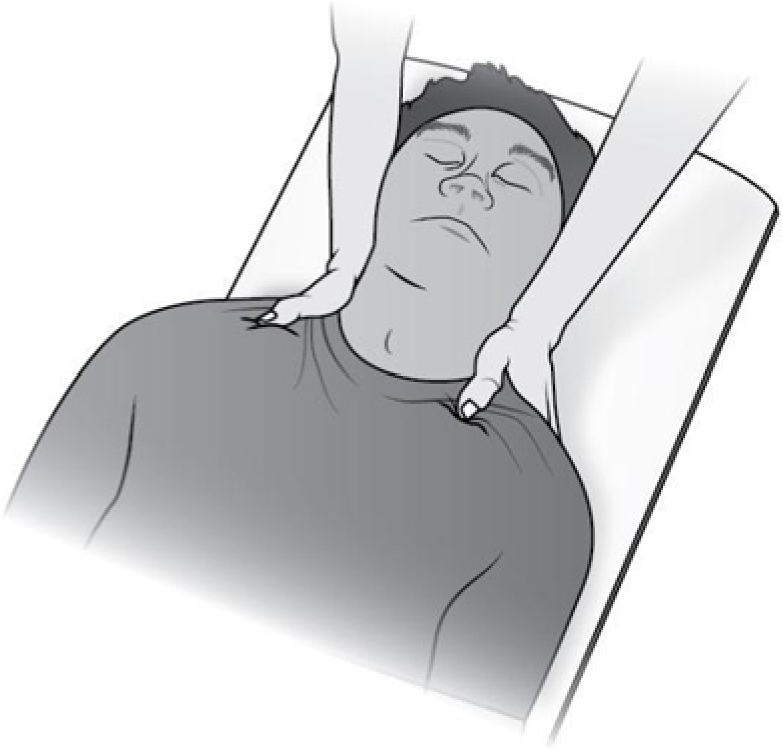


FIG. 22 Immobilization of the neck. The rescuer grasps the victim’s shoulders and controls the head between their forearms.

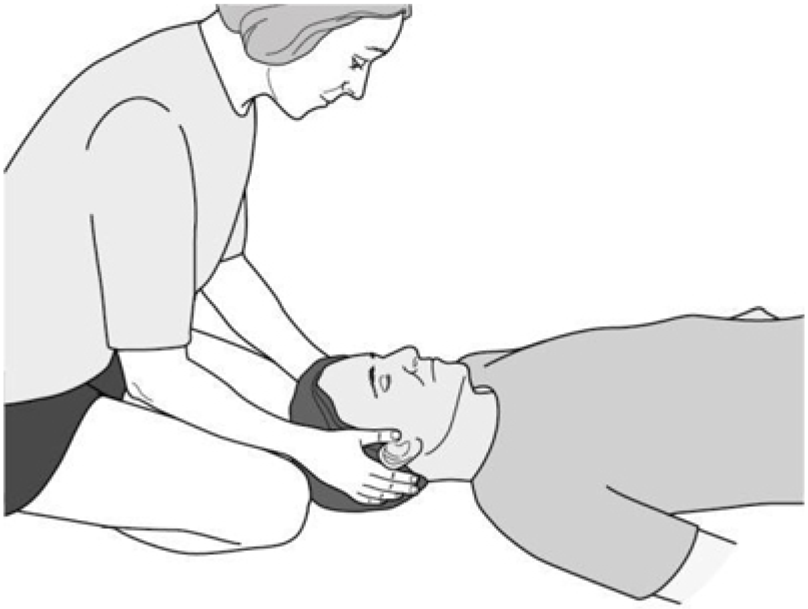


FIG. 23 Immobilization of the neck. The rescuer grasps the victim’s head with two hands. The key principle is to stabilize the spine in neutral alignment without twisting or bending during body movement.

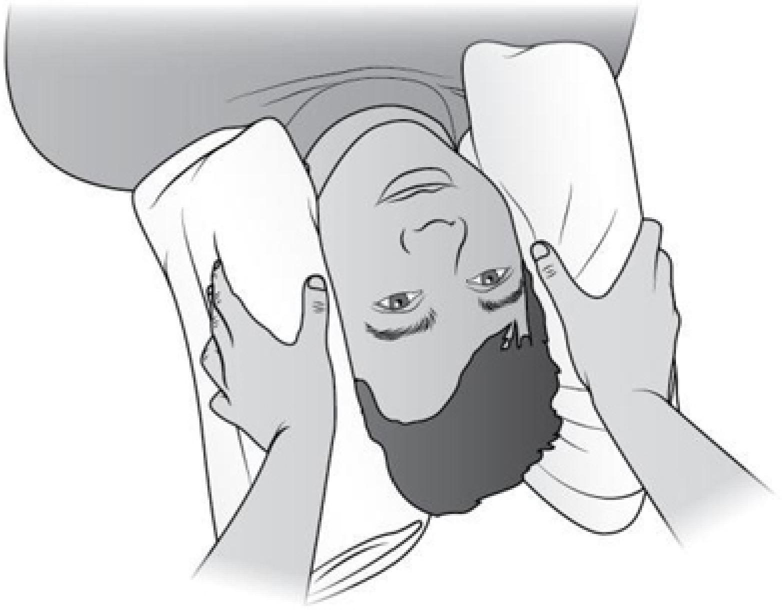


FIG. 24 Immobilization of the neck using rolled towels. The rescuer's hands can be replaced with a strap of tape across the forehead to prevent movement.

In general, the most dangerous direction of motion for a neck-injured (spinal cord-injured) person is chin to chest (flexed). Circumferential neck collars that prevent flexion can be purchased preformed or be fashioned from cardboard, Ensolite sleeping pad material, foam-covered aluminum (the SAM splint) (see Fig. 321), a padded hip belt on an inverted backpack (Fig. 25), or other materials. For a neck collar to be effective, it must fit properly, not choke the victim, and allow the victim's mouth to open if they need to vomit.

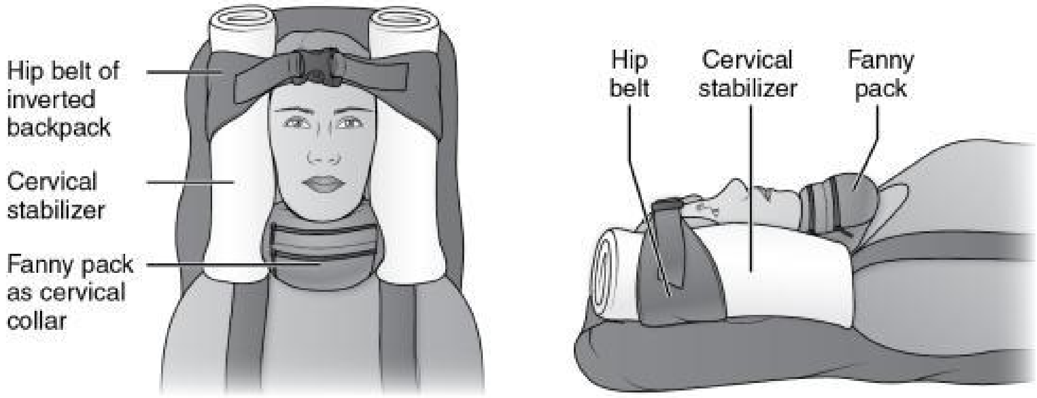


FIG. 25 Cervical collar fashioned from a padded hip belt on an inverted backpack.

It might be necessary to straighten (align) the victim's head and neck in order to allow extrication or transportation, or to improve the airway (see page 18). To do this, very slowly (using at least two hands) first move the head so that the neck is not bent sideways, without performing any head rotation. Stop immediately if any resistance is felt to this maneuver. Then, rotate the head until the head and neck are in a neutral (facing forward) position. Stop immediately if any resistance is felt to this maneuver. *Don't excessively flex the neck forward or extend it backward.* If the victim is awake and can talk to you, instruct them to let you know if moving their head and neck is causing them to have increased pain or to have a worsened neurologic situation (such as numbness in the hand or arm). If that's the case, then don't move the neck if at all possible.

The safest way to move a victim with a suspected neck injury is to apply a protective collar and transport the person on a rigid backboard or vacuum mattress (see page 454). An improvised spine board can be made by inserting a snow shovel through the centerline attachment points of an internal frame backpack. Pad the shovel, then tape the victim's head to the shovel, which serves as a head bed. The pack suspension system is used to stabilize the shoulders and torso, so that the victim now has their head relatively immobilized. Another possibility is to invert (turn upside down) an internal or external frame backpack and use the padded hip belt as a head bed.

If a rigid collar cannot be applied without forcing the neck into an unnatural (for the victim) position, it might be better to use a soft collar with rigid reinforcements to prevent motion. For instance, if the victim is an elderly person who normally has a forward curvature of the spine, and can inform you of this, it's better to immobilize the neck in a comfortable (for the victim) position with a slight amount of flexion. Applying force to straighten this particular victim's neck might risk worsening a fracture or even causing a spinal cord injury. In any case, the most important thing is to prevent future unintended motion.

If no other equipment is available and if the victim is conscious and cooperative, a thick pad (rolled towel, jacket, or the like) can be placed at the base of their neck. This can be made more rigid by first wrapping (compressing) it with a wide elastic (e.g., ACE) bandage. Secure this by wrapping tape or cloth around the forehead, then crossing it over the pad and bringing it back out under the armpits to be tied across the chest (Fig. 26). *Be aware that this technique does not guarantee immobilization in a combative or confused victim and provides only enough support to remind the victim to not move their head and neck.*

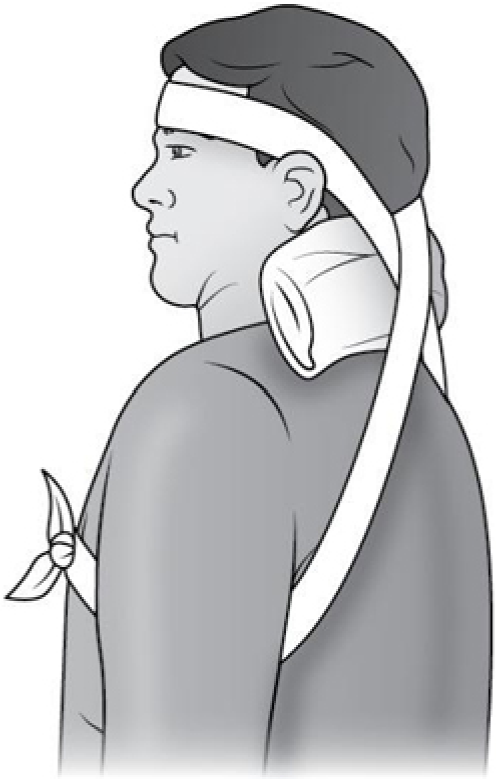


FIG. 26 A rolled towel or shirt is secured behind the neck with a firmly wrapped cravat or cloth. This technique should be used solely for an alert and cooperative victim. *It provides only enough support to remind the victim to not move their head and neck.*

In proportion to the torso, the head of a young child is larger than is the head of an adult. Therefore, when a child is flat on their back, their neck might be flexed instead of in a "neutral" position. To overcome this effect, tilt the head back slightly, or place a blanket or pad under the child's torso.

If the victim must be moved or turned on their side (most commonly to allow vomiting, to expose the back to look for injuries, or to place insulation beneath him), the victim can be "logrolled," using as many rescuers as possible to avoid unnecessary motion (Figs. 27 and 28).

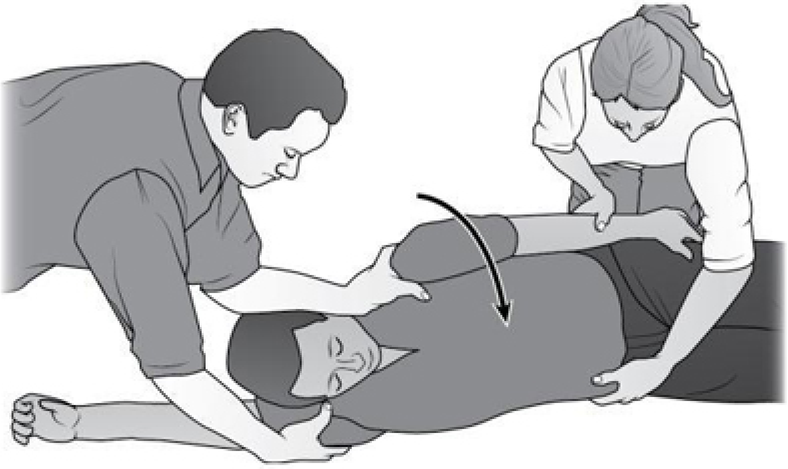


FIG. 27 Logrolling the victim. The rescuer at the head immobilizes the neck with their forearms and the victim's extended arm, while an assistant helps turn the body. The head holder should command all movements.

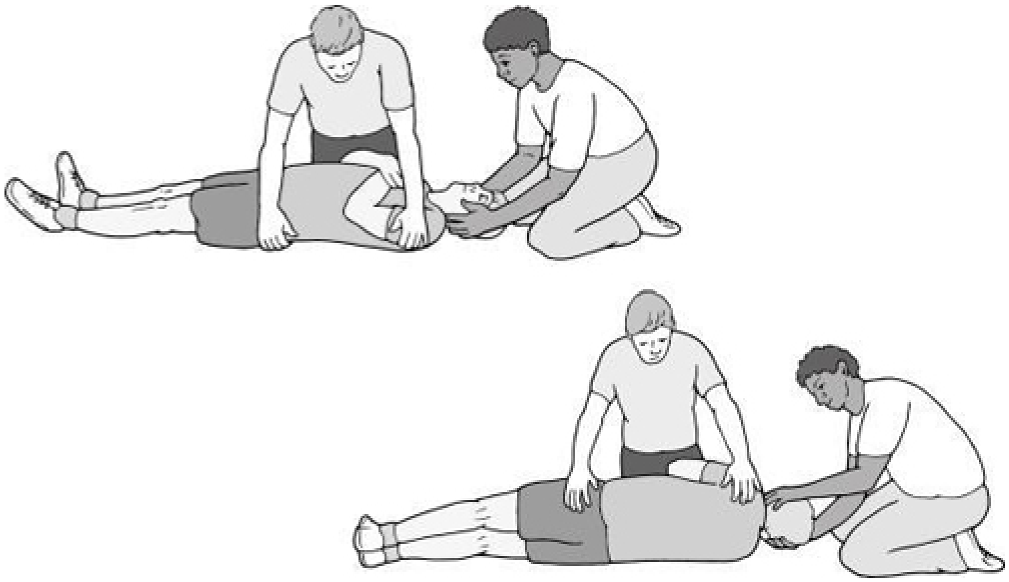


FIG. 28 Logrolling the victim. The rescuer at the head immobilizes the neck with two hands on the victim's head. The victim's arms can be crossed at the chest, at their side, or extended.

Immobilizing a person's neck, particularly if using a "cervical collar," can make it more difficult to attend to the airway, so extra diligence in observation is needed. Also, putting a collar around someone's neck might raise the pressure upon the brain inside the skull, which is not desired for someone who is head-injured. Finally, if there is a pre-existing neck deformity, such as occurs with certain types of spine disorders, a collar might make the situation worse. Whenever applying a spinal immobilization device (e.g., backboard, collar), take care to pay close attention to the patient, particularly if they cannot extricate themself, turn, or otherwise protect their airway should they begin to vomit or have any other type of airway compromise.

Logrolling the victim (see Figs. 27 and 28)

The best way to carry and immobilize a person who might have an injured spine is to use a scoop stretcher, or to slide a backboard underneath the victim. However, when these are not available and a spine-injured person must be turned, logrolling is the best alternative.

1. The first rescuer approaches the victim from the head and keeps the head and shoulders in a fixed position (no neck movement) by placing their hands firmly on each side of the victim's head or by grasping the shoulders and stabilizing the head with their forearms.

2. The second rescuer positions themselves at the victim's side so that they can firmly grasp the shoulder and the hip and roll the victim towards them.
3. The second rescuer extends the victim's arm (on the side on which the victim is to be rolled) above the victim's head. The first rescuer takes this arm and uses it to help support the head in proper position or maintains their grip on the head or the shoulders. Alternatively, the arm can be left at their side or arms can be crossed at the chest.
4. All rescuers work together to turn the victim as a single unit without moving their neck. The rescuer who is the head holder is deemed the leader of movements and should be in charge of calling out commands and initiating movements.

Lifting and moving a victim

See page 453.

Expose and environment

During your primary survey be sure to expose (get to skin level) any areas that may be injured in order to assess for serious injury or life threats such as open chest wounds and severe bleeding. If a patient is complaining of pain then investigate that area at skin level. Minor injuries can be further investigated later, during a detailed physical exam, and should not distract from finishing the primary survey. Ask permission to move clothes, explain what you are doing, protect patient privacy and dignity, and replace clothes after exposing. Try to avoid cutting clothes in the wilderness where they are essential equipment in limited supply.

In a wilderness setting, the environment is always a factor. Take a moment to consider any environmental threats to the victim such as extreme heat or cold, high altitude, or changing weather and initiate interventions such as tasking other members of the group to prepare shelter as necessary. There are few stop and fix environmental threats, but if the victim is suffering a life-threatening environmental emergency such as heat stroke then intervene immediately as part of your primary survey.

The secondary survey

Once you have dealt with life-threatening problems (ABCDE), begin a careful, complete examination of the victim, measure and record vital signs, and take a complete medical history. After finishing your primary survey, take a deep breath. You have addressed immediate life threats. Take a step back and consider the general appearance and condition of your patient. Sometimes you will get a sense that something is seriously wrong. An infant who is lethargic is potentially very ill; a senior citizen who is confused and has slurred speech is in trouble. Trust your instincts. Assume the worst.

It's easy to become focused on an obvious injury, such as a deformed broken ankle, and overlook other, possibly more serious injuries. Whenever possible, perform a complete examination of any patient who has anything more than a minor ailment. Particularly dangerous situations include falls; blows to the head, neck, chest, or abdomen; altered mental status; difficulty breathing or shortness of breath; and injuries to children. In these cases, or whenever the diagnosis is not readily apparent, evaluate the victim from head to toe. Weather and appropriate modesty permitting, be sure to undress the victim sufficiently to perform a proper examination. Look around the neck or on the wrist(s) for a medical alert (such as MedicAlert) tag, and in a wallet, helmet, or pack for an information card. After assessing injuries at skin level, promptly return clothing, zip up jackets, etc. that were undone for assessment.

The physical exam

Because most bodies are bilaterally symmetrical, if you're having difficulty determining if a body part is abnormal or deformed, compare it to the opposite side. Ask a victim to move a body part before you do it for them; if they resist because of pain or weakness, you need to suspect a broken bone or spinal cord (nerve) injury. Do not "force" a motion.

Take as much time as you can afford to explain to a victim what you are going to do. This is usually reassuring. If the victim is a child, it's important to make eye contact and to be continually supportive. If someone is doing or has done something with which you don't agree, make any argument or criticism out of earshot of the victim. If the examiner is opposite in gender to the victim, try to have a same-gender witness (chaperone). When examining a victim, keep talking to them. Closely observe for indications of discomfort or pain.

1. Reassess the victim's mental status. Ask about person, place, time. "What is your name? Where are you? What day is it?" Note if the speech pattern is normal, slurred, or garbled. If the answers are in any way abnormal, suspect a head injury, intoxication, stroke, central nervous system infection (such as meningitis), hyperthermia, hypothermia, severe high-altitude illness, low blood sugar, or hypoxia (insufficient oxygen to the brain). Maintain constant observation of the victim until all of their responses are appropriate. Remember that the reliability of the remainder of your examination of the victim depends upon the victim being alert and responsive. If they have altered mental status, you

might not be able to rely upon their responses to your questions and physical examination.

2. Examine the neck. Without turning the victim's head, feel each cervical vertebra and the first few thoracic vertebrae from behind and note tenderness or muscle spasm. The seventh vertebra will be the most prominent. Check for swelling. Feel the Adam's apple in the front of the neck for tenderness or a "crunching" sensation (noted by both the examiner and victim). If there is a chance of neck injury, immobilize the neck (see page 33).
3. Examine the spinal column. Risk factors, among others, for a spine injury are high speed collision, fall from a height greater than 3 feet, ejection from a moving vehicle, age greater than 65 years, diving into shallow water, lightning strike, and tumble in the surf. A person found at an accident scene who cannot walk should be suspected to have suffered a spinal injury. Run your fingers down the length of the spine in the midline of the back and press to elicit any tenderness. If the victim reports midline pain or you feel a deformity or step-off, then you must assume that there is a broken bone. Check for spinal cord injury by having the victim voluntarily move their arms and legs and report their sense of feeling. Ask the victim to squeeze your hand with each of his, and then to "press down on the gas pedal" with each foot against your hand. Pinch the skin on the back of the hand and top of the foot as a crude measure of sensation. If any response (hand-to-hand or foot-to-foot) is asymmetrical, suspect a spinal cord injury or stroke (see pages 33 and 165). The "NEXUS" (based on the National Emergency X-Radiography Utilization Study) criteria are used by doctors to determine who is at low probability of spinal cord injury; no tenderness when pressing on the back of the neck in the midline, no focal neurological abnormality (e.g., no weakness or numbness and tingling anywhere on the body), awake and alert, not intoxicated, and without a painful distracting injury (such as a burn or broken ankle). While this is not absolute, it is somewhat reassuring, particularly if a patient needs to be moved (see page 453).
4. Examine the head—but try not to move it. Feel the entire scalp gently for raised or depressed areas, or cuts. *Observe blood and bodily fluid precautions* (see page 504).While being careful to not expose yourself unnecessarily to blood, look carefully through thick scalp hair for sites of bleeding. Look into the ears for drainage (clear [spinal] fluid, blood, or pus). If there is blood, capture some on a white absorbent cloth or gauze pad. If the blood forms a ring, with a faded or yellow area toward the center, this might indicate the presence of leaking cerebrospinal ("spinal") fluid. Feel the nose for obvious malalignment or instability.

Look up into the nostrils. If you have a flashlight, shine it into the eyes to see if the pupils constrict and are equal in size. If you don't have a flashlight, cover the eyes and then uncover them to see if the pupils constrict. Pinpoint (constricted) pupils might be a sign of brain injury or drug overdose. Unequal pupils might represent a direct injury to an eye or a brain injury. Nonreactive and bilaterally dilated pupils might represent a severe brain injury. Ask the victim to follow your fingers with their eyes; if this cannot be done, if the eyes don't move together, or if they report blurred or double vision, there might be a problem. If the eyes are spontaneously jerking or wandering, this might also indicate abnormality. If the victim has contact lenses, they might require assistance with their removal (see page 206). Have the victim open and close their mouth to see if the teeth fit properly. Feel the nose to check for pain and deformity. Check the teeth for absence, looseness, or breaks, and the tongue for cuts. Have the victim open and close their mouth and move their jaw from side to side. Ask them to stick out their tongue and move it from side to side. Ask the victim if they can swallow. Ask them to say "Ahh" and see if you can get a glimpse of the back of their throat. If dentures are loose, remove them. Inspect for missing teeth. Smell the victim's breath to detect any abnormal odor (e.g., alcohol or "fruity" breath associated with severe diabetes).

5. Examine the skin. Look for sweating, skin color (normal might—and pale does—indicate inadequate circulation; dusky blue indicates hypothermia or shock; reddened indicates heat illness or sunburn; yellow indicates liver disease; mottled indicates low blood pressure, hypothermia, shock, or massive infection), bruises, rashes, burns, bites, and cuts. Note the skin temperature. Look inside the lower eyelids for a pale color that might indicate anemia or internal bleeding. If you pinch the skin on a victim's forearm and it remains "tented" and loose, the victim might be dehydrated. One method to determine adequacy of the general circulation is to check "capillary refill." To do this, press down firmly on the victim's fingernail in order to blanch (turns pale white) the tissue underneath the nail. When the pressure is released, if the circulation is adequate, normal (usually red-pink) will return within 2 seconds (Fig. 29). If it takes longer than 2 seconds, suspect a circulatory problem, which can be general (e.g., anemia, significant dehydration, low blood pressure) or localized (e.g., very cold temperature). Persons with certain preexisting disabilities might have loss of sensation in the skin, which must be taken into account.
6. Examine the chest. Observe whether the chest expands fully and equally on both sides with breathing. Feel the chest wall and breastbone for tenderness and inspect for deformation or embedded objects. Run your

fingers along the length of the collarbones. Place your ear against each side of the chest to listen for breath sounds.

7. Examine the abdomen. Gently press in all areas to elicit tenderness. See page 137 for a discussion of causes of abdominal pain. Examine the genitals if there is a suspected injury. An uncontrolled penile erection might indicate a spinal cord injury. If when you examine the abdomen (particularly of an elder person), you detect a mass that is pulsating, this might be an aneurysm (see page 145). The person should be advised of your finding and instructed to seek a thorough medical evaluation.
8. Examine all bones and joints. Gently press on the chest, pelvis, arms, and legs to elicit any tenderness. As noted earlier, run your fingers down the length of the clavicles (collarbones) and press centrally where they join the sternum. Trace each rib with your fingers. Look for deformation or discoloration. When practical, check circulation, movement, and feeling in all limbs.
9. Perform a brief mental health evaluation. Notice your patient's speech capability and pattern, ability to reason, and whether they make sense. Ask them if they can recite their name, location, date, and circumstances. Make note of abnormal thoughts, expressions of despair or hostility, and any declaration of auditory or visual hallucinations.
10. Assess and document vital signs.

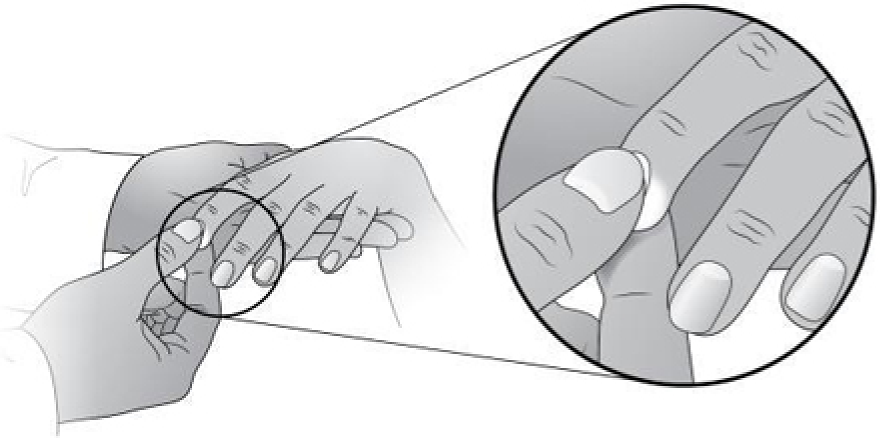
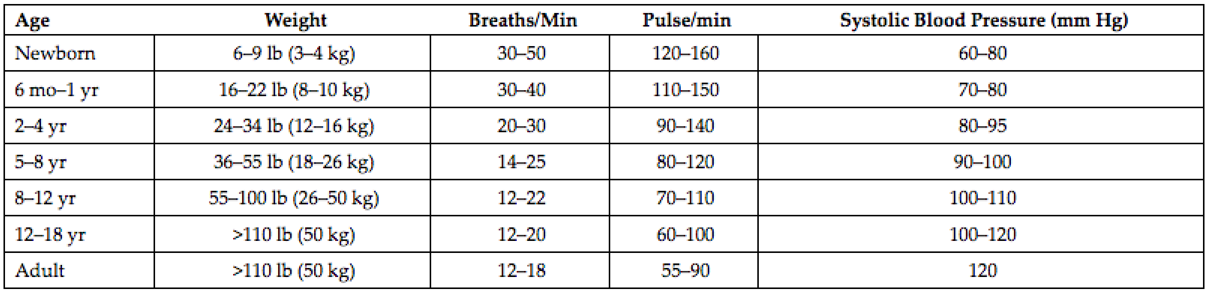


FIG. 29 Pressing on a fingernail to check capillary refill.

Vital signs by age group

When you examine a person, you will usually be able to count the pulse rate in beats per minute, count respirations in breaths per minute, and sometimes obtain the blood pressure. The pulse rate is faster with excitement or fear and slower in trained athletes. A rapid and weak (“thready”) pulse is a sign of impending shock (see page 70), usually as a result of excessive bleeding, dehydration, or heart problems. An irregular pulse might indicate an abnormal heart rhythm, such as atrial fibrillation, in which the atria (upper chambers of the heart) quiver rather than contract normally. Here are normal values for these “vital signs”:



Age	Weight	Breaths/Min	Pulse/min	Systolic Blood Pressure (mm Hg)
Newborn	6–9 lb (3–4 kg)	30–50	120–160	60–80
6 mo–1 yr	16–22 lb (8–10 kg)	30–40	110–150	70–80
2–4 yr	24–34 lb (12–16 kg)	20–30	90–140	80–95
5–8 yr	36–55 lb (18–26 kg)	14–25	80–120	90–100
8–12 yr	55–100 lb (26–50 kg)	12–22	70–110	100–110
12–18 yr	>110 lb (50 kg)	12–20	60–100	100–120
Adult	>110 lb (50 kg)	12–18	55–90	120

Pulse oximetry

A pulse oximeter is a small device that measures the peripheral (e.g., in capillaries of the finger) saturation of hemoglobin (oxygen-carrying pigment) with oxygen (SpO_2) in the blood (Fig. 30). The oximeter is usually placed on a fingertip or earlobe. A normal oximeter reading depends on the altitude at which it is obtained, because there is less available oxygen as one ascends in altitude. Ninety-four percent to 100% is normal oxygen saturation (meaning that 94% to 100% of the hemoglobin is carrying oxygen) in a healthy person at sea level. As one ascends to high altitude, the saturation generally drops, but with acclimatization up to an altitude of approximately 12,000 feet should not fall below 90% in most situations. If the oxygen saturation is measured lower than its predicted value for a given altitude, this might represent a problem with oxygen supply or delivery (such as occurs with high-altitude pulmonary edema [see page 351]), a false reading resulting from placing the oximeter on a cold finger or a finger with nail polish or pressed-on nail, exposure of the oximeter to bright light or a strong electromagnetic field, or other causes. If the patient is short of breath in a way that’s a cause for concern (see page 52) and the oximeter reading is low (below 90%), it’s wise to administer oxygen (see page 431) if it is available. If carbon monoxide intoxication or dark skin pigmentation is present, the pulse oximeter reading might be falsely elevated, so pulse oximetry should not be relied upon in these situations. Although pulse oximetry determination does not predict who will or won’t develop acute mountain sickness, it’s a useful adjunct to follow the oxygenation of a person at high altitude.

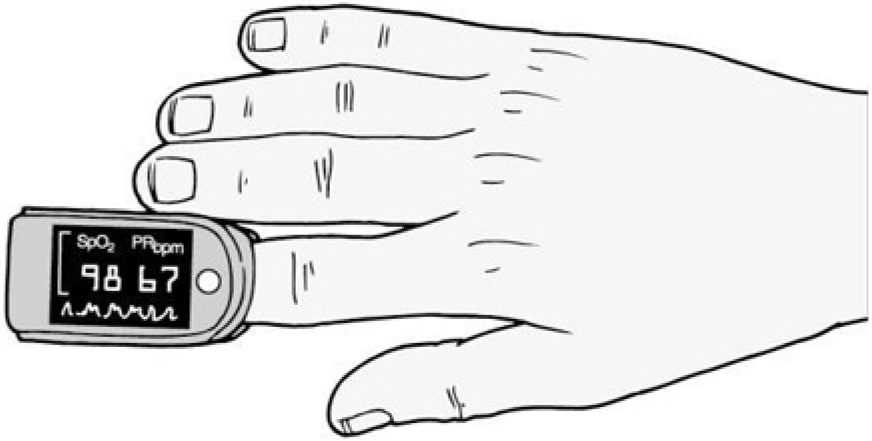


FIG. 30 Pulse oximeter.

Temperature

Use a digital, mercury, or alcohol thermometer, if possible one that can detect hypothermia or hyperthermia, depending on the circumstance. Rectal temperature measurement is more reliable than oral or axillary (see page 188) measurement but might be impractical in the field. Always shake down a mercury or oral thermometer and hold it in place for at least 3 minutes to obtain a reading. Don't rely on skin temperature to accurately reflect changes in the core temperature. Feeling a person's forehead to determine temperature is notoriously inaccurate. (For more information on fever see page 188).

History

If a victim only has a sprained ankle, a comprehensive discussion might not be necessary, but if it is appropriate, try to elicit the following history:

Current illness: What happened? When did it happen? Why did it happen? If the victim is suffering pain, describe its location, time of onset, whether it came on suddenly or gradually, whether it comes and goes, its quality (dull, sharp, cramping, etc.), how it is made worse or relieved, and whether the victim has suffered anything similar before (and if so, whether there was a medical diagnosis). Have the victim describe all symptoms, such as nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, blurred vision, shortness of breath, fatigue, cough, and so on.

Prior illnesses and preexisting conditions: Have the victim describe any previous illness (heart attack, asthma, pneumonia, meningitis, etc.) and any current conditions (diabetes, anemia, abnormal heart rhythms, etc.) and how they have been and are currently being treated.

Surgeries: Have the victim list any surgical operations, such as appendectomy or knee surgery.

Medications: Have the victim list any current medications.

Allergies: This includes allergies to food, plants, insects, and medication(s) and the nature of the allergic reaction(s).

Immunizations, exposure to communicable diseases, recent foreign travel, occupation, recent dietary history: Any of these might be appropriate if the victim is perhaps suffering from an infectious disease, including food poisoning or toxic ingestion.

Review of systems: This is a comprehensive questioning about each organ system to determine if the victim has or has ever had symptoms referable to each system:

- *General:* Fever, chills, fatigue, weakness, unintentional weight loss or gain, excessive thirst or urination, hot or cold temperature intolerance, excessive sweating, easy bruising, loss of appetite, dizziness, history of intravenous drug use
- *Head:* Headache, dizziness
- *Eyes:* Blurred vision, double vision, decreased vision, discharge, itching, pain
- *Ears:* Decreased hearing, ringing or buzzing in the ears, discharge from the ears, pain
- *Nose:* Nosebleeds, difficulty breathing, nasal discharge, sinus infection
- *Throat:* Sore throat, foreign body sensation, tonsillitis, hoarseness or difficulty talking, painful swallowing, difficulty swallowing
- *Dental:* Tooth loss, abscess, dentures, bleeding from gums
- *Neck:* Pain, decreased range of motion, arthritis
- *Chest (lungs):* Difficulty breathing, chest pain when breathing, shortness of breath, wheezing, cough (productive of sputum or nonproductive), coughing blood, history of tobacco use
- *Heart:* Palpitations, pressure-like sensation in the chest, chest pain, fainting
- *Abdomen:* Pain, mass
- *Gastrointestinal:* Nausea, vomiting (describe what is vomited), diarrhea (describe color and consistency), red blood in stools or dark black stools, yellow skin (jaundice), perianal itching, constipation, excessive gas, bloating, belching
- *Hematologic/immune:* Anemia, frequent infections, exposure to human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) or Ebola virus

- *Genitourinary:* Change in frequency of voiding, incontinence, painful urination, discolored or malodorous urine, back pain, blood in urine, history of sexual contacts, penile or vaginal discharge, testicular pain, date and character of last menstrual period (normal, abnormal), vaginal bleeding
- *Neurologic:* Seizure, weakness in any body part, numbness or tingling of any body part, difficulty with coordination or walking, difficulty with speech or comprehension, fainting
- *Muscular/skeletal:* Muscle cramps, weakness, incoordination, muscle pain, joint pain or swelling
- *Psychiatric:* Abnormal thinking, hallucinations (visual or auditory), desire to hurt self or others, inappropriate crying or laughing, depression, nervousness, insomnia, mood changes

Ongoing assessment and treatment

After completing your primary and secondary survey, create and execute a plan to treat the victim’s injuries or illness. Expect to repeat your primary and secondary assessments as needed because situations and conditions will change in the wilderness. Make a plan for evacuation. Make a plan to take care of and support the rest of the team. Plan for things to go wrong, be flexible, and have back up plans. Maintain your priorities of safety. Be careful not to cause more victims during long or difficult evacuations. Brief your group and update group communication regularly. Think ahead. Assign clear roles. Reassess often.

PART TWO

Major Medical Problems

OUTLINE

Introduction
An approach to the unconscious victim
Chest injury
Serious lung disorders
Chest pain
Bleeding

Shock
Head injury
Allergic reaction
Seizure
Fractures and dislocations
Amputation
Burns
Inhalation injuries
Abdominal pain
Problems of ovaries and vagina
Disorders of the kidneys, bladder, and prostate
Problems of the penis and testicles
Emergency childbirth
Diabetes
Stroke
Infectious diseases

Introduction

This section describes common disorders that can be life-threatening. The problems are often present in combination and require prompt recognition and management.

An approach to the unconscious victim

Any disorder that decreases the supply of blood, oxygen, or sugar to the brain or that causes brain swelling, bleeding into the brain, or alteration of critical body chemistries can lead to unconsciousness. Thus, virtually every major illness or injury can ultimately render a person unconscious. If you come across someone who cannot be awakened, you must rapidly assess them for any treatable life-threatening conditions, and then try to discover the cause of the altered mental state.

Perform a thorough assessment of the patient as outlined on page 16. The differential for an unconscious victim is wide and includes shock (see page 70), head injury (see page 72), seizure (see page 80), severe allergic reaction (see page 78), low blood sugar (see page 162), stroke (see page 165), fainting spell (see page 187), hypothermia (see page 321), heat illness (see page 337), high-altitude cerebral edema (see page 352), high-altitude pulmonary edema (see page 351), lightning strike (see page 386), poisoning, and alcohol or drug intoxication. If a victim is unconscious, start with the primary survey, immediately check for a pulse, or other signs of life, and if no pulse or signs of life begin CPR starting with chest compressions.

Drug overdose

The victim with altered mental status, as severe as unconsciousness with erratic (depressed) breathing, might be suffering from a drug overdose, particularly of a narcotic (sometimes referred to as an opioid) substance. If this is suspected, administration of naloxone (Narcan) intravenously (IV), intramuscularly, or intranasally can be lifesaving if it “reverses” the narcotic (Fig. 31). The route of administration in part determines the rate of onset of effects; IV is almost immediately, while intranasally it might be 5 or more minutes. An autoinjector (EVZIO) comes in a single dose of 0.4 mg or 2 mg. The initial dose is 0.4 mg, but if a synthetic narcotic, such as fentanyl, has caused the situation, a total dose of up to 25 mg might be required. The intranasal spray preparation is available in doses of 2 or 4 mg in 0.1 mL. If the person treated is addicted to an opioid and its effect is reversed by naloxone, they might show severely unpleasant opioid withdrawal, with symptoms of body (particularly bone and joint) aches, diarrhea, rapid heart rate, fever, sneezing and runny nose, “goose bumps” on the skin, yawning, abdominal cramps, nausea and vomiting, diarrhea, sweating, shivering, tremor, restlessness or agitation, dilated pupils, weakness, and high blood pressure. The duration of effect of the naloxone ranges from 20 to 90 minutes, so you must be alert for the patient to deteriorate again after it has worn off. If this happens, a repeat dose is given and observation continued.

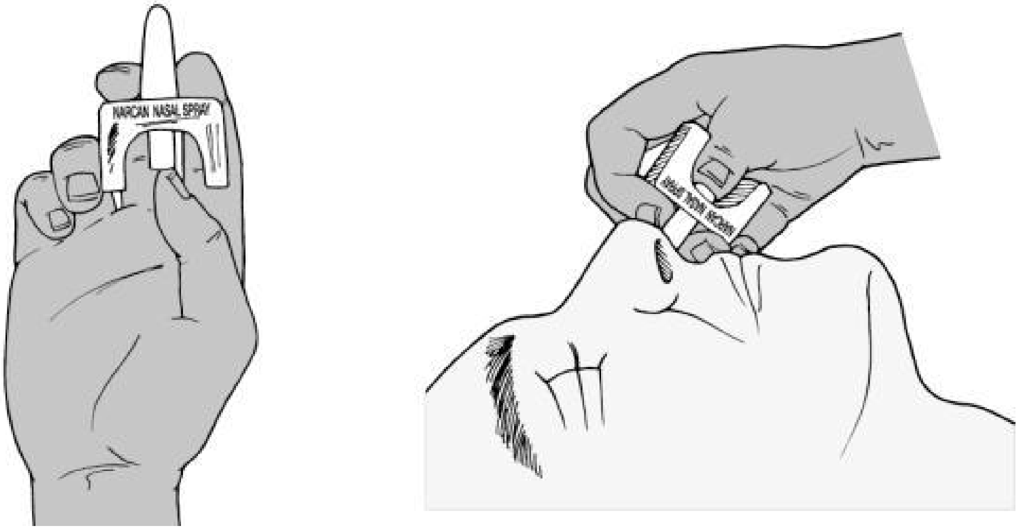


FIG. 31 Naloxone administration.

Long-term care of an unconscious or gravely disabled person

If a person is unconscious or gravely disabled and you need to care for them for more than a day, you might need to attend to the following:

1. Be careful administering oral liquids, food, or medications. The person must be capable of purposeful swallowing.
2. If the eyes are open and the victim cannot blink or protect their eyes, gently tape them shut or provide for regular moisturization/lubrication with “artificial tears.” Remove contacts.
3. If the victim urinates or defecates and soils themself, they should be cleaned and dry clothing or a diaper applied.
4. To prevent pressure sores, reposition the victim at least every 2 hours to provide full circulation to any compressed soft tissues.
5. Protect victim from environment including excessive sun exposure.

Chest injury

Broken ribs

Direct force applied to the chest wall can break ribs, causing pain with deep breathing, coughing, or sneezing. An injury to the ribs can damage the underlying structures causing bruising or collapse of a lung (pneumothorax). If the right lower ribs are broken, be alert to the possibility of a bruised or cracked liver, which lies directly below; if the left lower ribs are broken, the underlying spleen might be injured causing internal bleeding or signs of shock. Broken ribs can more rarely be caused by severe coughing fits especially in victims over the age of 65. When broken ribs cause pain sufficient to limit deep breathing, pneumonia also becomes a risk. Victims should be monitored for underlying lung or abdominal injury, treated for pain, and encouraged to take occasional deep breaths to fully expand their lungs. Broken ribs can range in severity from moderate discomfort to life-threatening injury.

Flail chest

If several ribs are broken or detached in series, so that the affected section of the chest wall cannot expand and contract in synchrony with the rest of the chest, then a flail chest (Fig. 32) is present. Depending on the size of the flail segment, this can cause severe respiratory compromise. Sometimes the flail segment moves with breathing in a direction opposite to the rest of the chest wall (e.g., it moves inward on inspiration and outward on expiration known as paradoxical movement). A flail chest is a life-threatening injury and should be treated with respiratory support in a position of comfort for the victim.

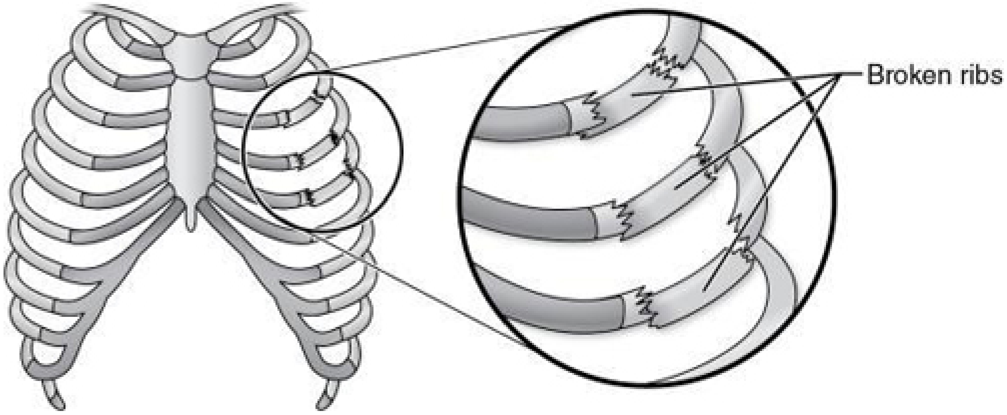


FIG. 32 Flail chest. A section of detached (broken) ribs might seriously impede the mechanics of breathing.

Pneumothorax

A pneumothorax is a collapsed lung created when there is an air leak (from the lung or from a penetrating wound of the chest wall) into the space between the lung and the inside of the chest wall (pleural space). In the normal situation, the pleural space is undetectable and filled with negative pressure, which allows the lung to expand and contract with chest wall movement (breathing). When air leaks into the pleural space, either from a lung injury or from a hole in the chest wall, the lung collapses. The lung might then be increasingly compressed if air accumulates in the pleural space under pressure (Fig. 33). A collapsed lung is recognized by diminished or absent breath sounds (heard through a stethoscope or an ear held against the chest wall) on the affected side, accompanied by chest pain, cough, rapid heart rate, shortness of breath, and difficulty breathing. A pneumothorax may worsen and progress to a "tension" pneumothorax, characterized by rapidly progressive difficulty in breathing, cyanosis (blue skin discoloration), distended neck (jugular) veins, and a shift of the windpipe away from the affected side. A tension pneumothorax interferes with both lung expansion and with blood flow to the heart and is life-threatening.

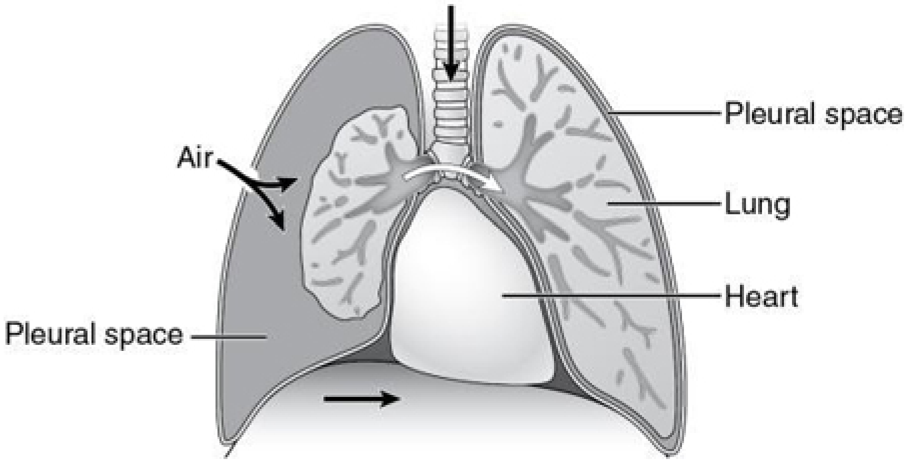


FIG. 33 Pneumothorax. Air enters the pleural space lining the lung through the chest wall or from a lung leak, which causes the lung to collapse. A tension pneumothorax occurs when air in the pleural space accumulates under pressure, forcing the lung, heart, and trachea to the opposite side *(white arrow).*

Sometimes, the same process that causes air to escape from the lung to create a pneumothorax can direct some of this air to become trapped under the skin, creating a "crackling" sensation when the skin is pressed, sensation of fullness or visible swelling in the neck, change in voice, and difficulty swallowing. Although worrisome in appearance, this subcutaneous (under the skin) air absorbs over time and is not nearly as dangerous as a collapsed lung.

Bruised lung

A bruised lung (pulmonary contusion) can result when sufficient force is applied to the chest wall. This injury typically causes increased difficulty with breathing after a delay of minutes to hours, as blood and tissue fluid accumulate in the injured lung and may not fully develop for 24 to 48 hours. In a severe case, the victim will cough up blood clots.

Treatment for chest injuries

1. Assess the rate and adequacy of breathing. If necessary, assist breathing. This can be done with mouth-to-mouth breathing (see page 26) or with a face mask device. *If the victim is not breathing, check for pulses and assess the need for CPR* (see page 28).
2. Attend to any chest wounds. All open wounds (Fig. 34A) (particularly those in which air is bubbling) should be rapidly covered with an

occlusive dressing, to avoid “sucking” chest wounds that could allow more air to enter the pleural space and thus continue to worsen a collapsed lung (see Fig. 33). For a dressing, a Vaseline-impregnated gauze, heavy cloth, plastic, or adhesive tape (Fig. 34) can be used. The dressing should be sealed to the chest on at least three sides (Fig. 35). The goal of a three-sided occlusive dressing on an open chest wound is to create a flutter-valve effect (air can exit, but not enter) and prevent both the worsening of the pneumothorax and the development of a tension pneumothorax—which might come with a complete seal. It may be difficult to improvise an occlusive dressing that achieves both these goals. Priority should be given to sealing the wound which may require taping all four sides and monitoring for signs of tension. (See 4-sided occlusive chest seal Fig. 36). If signs of tension develop, the dressing can be released (see below). A commercial dressing designed for open chest wounds is superior to improvised dressing. SAM Chest Seal is an occlusive dressing designed for treating open chest wounds and comes in forms with or without a one-way valve.

3. If the victim develops a tension pneumothorax following a penetrating wound to the chest and their condition deteriorates rapidly (difficulty breathing, cyanosis, distended neck veins, collapse followed by unconsciousness), remove any dressings, force a finger through the wound into the chest to allow the air under pressure to escape (Finger decompression; Fig. 37). If your diagnosis is correct, you will hear a hissing noise as the air rushes out. This allows the lung to partially expand and might save the victim’s life. (When a tension pneumothorax occurs and there is no hole in the chest through which the air can escape, a trained rescuer will place a needle or catheter [14 gauge] through the chest wall over the top side of the 2nd to 4th rib in the line directly down from the mid-clavicle or armpit [axilla] to allow the air to exit.) After the release of air from a tension pneumothorax, cover the wound with a completely occlusive (not permeable to air; so *not* a loosely woven piece of gauze) dressing as described above. Continue to monitor for repeat development of tension, especially if the victim is being treated with positive pressure ventilation such as mouth-to-mouth.
4. A spontaneous pneumothorax that is not associated with a chest wound or that does not appear to be a tension pneumothorax may need to be treated with a tube through the chest wall (“chest tube”). This decision will be made based upon the size of the pneumothorax (e.g., how much lung is collapsed), the clinical condition of the victim, ability to “follow” the patient in order to detect worsening, and the preference and experience of the treating physician.

5. Administer oxygen (see page 431). If an oxygen tank is available, oxygen should be administered. Elderly victims who have been heavy cigarette smokers (chronic obstructive pulmonary disease [COPD]: see page 54) should be watched carefully for signs of decreasing consciousness whenever oxygen is administered. If this occurs (in the absence of head trauma or shock), supplemental oxygen should be discontinued.
6. Anyone who has a significant flail chest will be unable to coordinate the muscular act of breathing and will need early assistance. If it improves breathing, the flail segment should be cushioned firmly with pillows, sandbags, or their equivalent (Fig. 38). If necessary, secure the cushion with wide strips of tape or straps, but do not make these circumferential around the chest in such a way that they will restrict chest wall expansion for breathing. Cushioning and strapping limit movement (pain) of the broken bones and ease the act of breathing. If a victim with a flail chest needs to be transported, do so with the injured side down to assist lung expansion of the uninjured side. The goal is to support breathing. If an intervention or position makes breathing or pain worse for the victim then try something different.
7. Broken ribs are best managed with cushioning in a position of comfort and frequent reevaluation of the ability to breathe. Do not tape or tightly wrap the ribs, because this might prevent complete re-expansion of the chest (lung) with inspiration and therefore predispose the victim to shallow, inadequate breathing and subsequent pneumonia. However, a moderately snug elastic wrapping of the chest might be necessary to provide sufficient pain relief so that a victim can self-extricate. Midline to midline taping or a sling and swathe on the injured side might provide some support and pain relief. Encourage the victim to take at least one deep breath or give one good cough each hour. If an incentive spirometer is available, follow directions and use it. Allow 6 to 8 weeks for the ribs to heal before allowing strenuous activity.
8. Evacuate the victim as soon as possible. Properly positioning the victim can be helpful. If the chest is injured on one side, transport the victim on their side with the injured side up and the uninjured side down. This might facilitate better oxygenation of the blood. However, take note that a person with a flail segment might be more comfortable with the injured side down. If that is the case, then facilitate whatever position that allows the greatest amount of pain relief and the victim to be effectively transported.

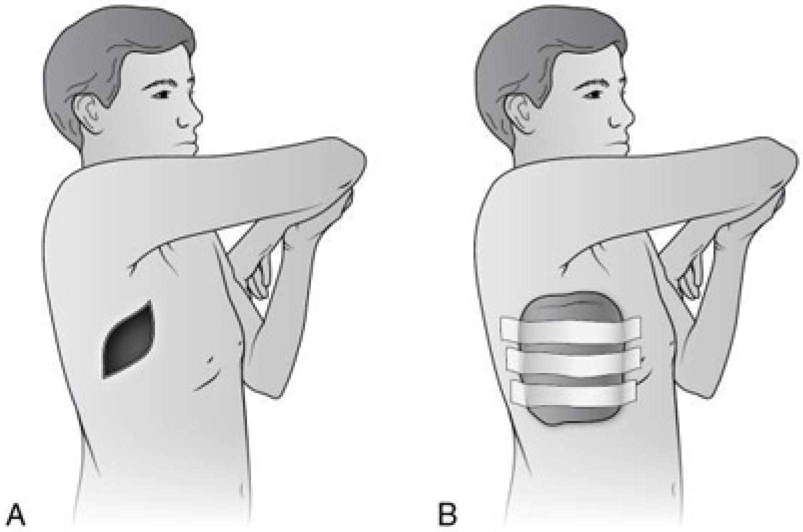


FIG. 34 Chest wound dressing. **A,** Open chest wound. **B,** The dressing is held firmly in place with tape or a cloth wrap.

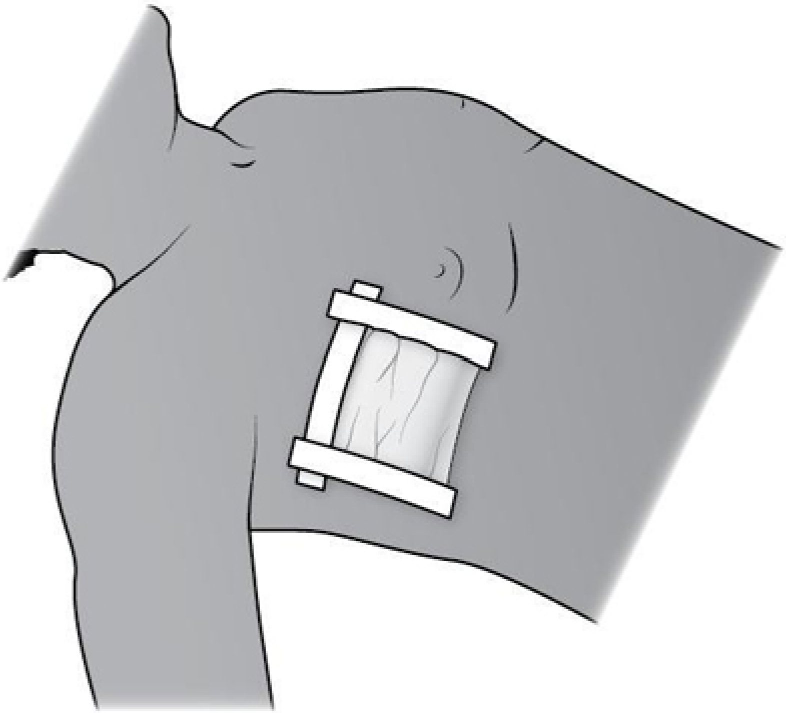


FIG. 35 Apply a dressing sealed on three sides to cover a wound over a collapsed lung.

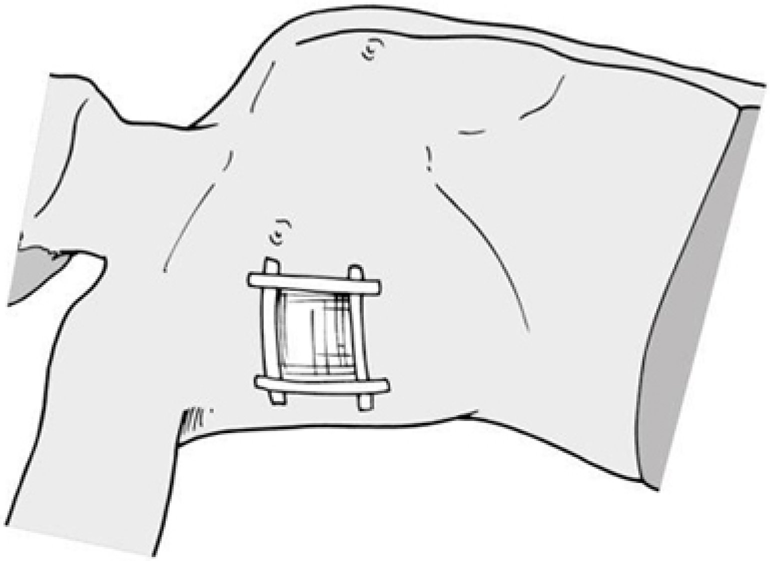


FIG. 36 A dressing sealed on four sides might be necessary to prevent air from entering chest cavity. Wipe away blood and sweat before applying and use extra tape to hold in place. It may be necessary to remove or decompress 4-sided dressing.

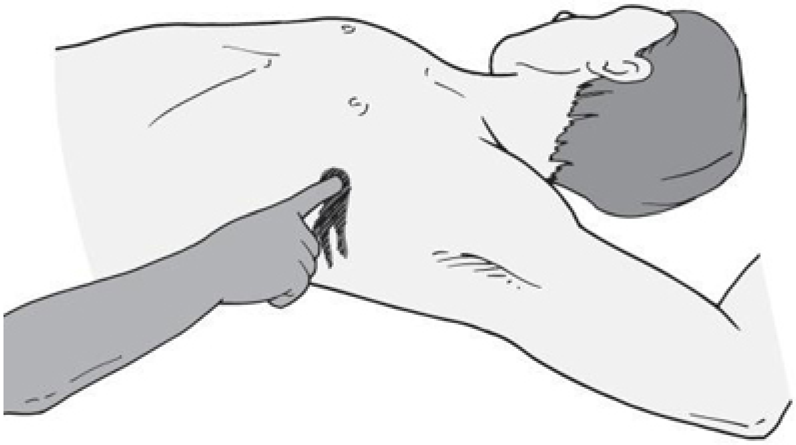


FIG. 37 Finger decompression of existing wound to relieve tension pneumothorax.

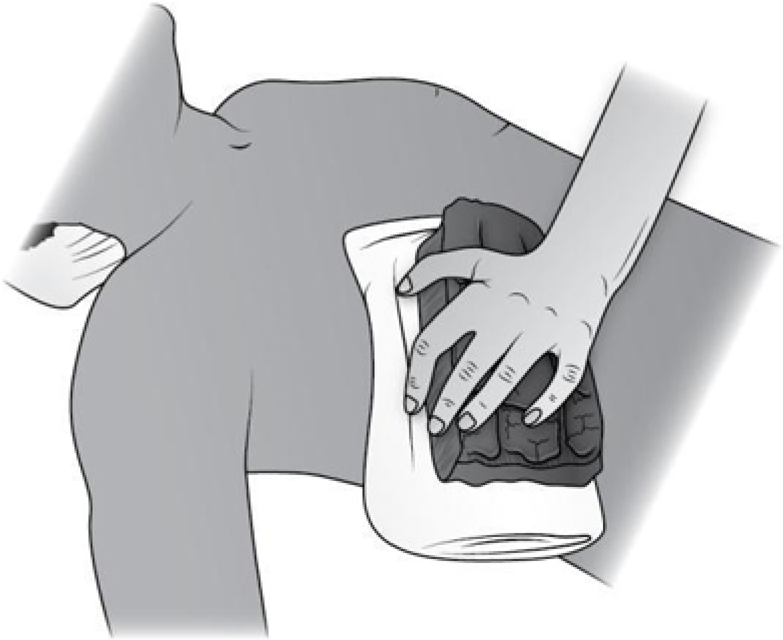


FIG. 38 Method of cushioning a flail chest wall segment by applying firm pressure with a blanket and section of tree bark.

Serious lung disorders

Asthma

Asthma is a hyperresponsive disease of the airways and lungs that involves episodes of coughing, shortness of breath, wheezing, and increased secretions in the bronchi. Generally, most people will know that they are prone to asthma attacks; however, a first-time episode might occur during an allergic reaction, on exertion or exposure to cold, or as a result of emotional stress. In most cases, the mechanism is the same: narrowing and spasm of the small airways, with increased mucus production. Asthma is often accompanied by inflammation of the airways. The victim has difficulty breathing, with wheezing during exhalation (most common), during inspiration, or both. Coughing is a major feature. The victim might become quite anxious ("air hunger"). Severe cases lead to rapid respiratory deterioration, cyanosis (blue discoloration of the skin), and the use of accessory muscles of respiration (the victim sits upright and attempts to expand the chest wall by contracting neck muscles and using body movements, or sits forward and appears agitated). When the attack is extreme, wheezing might diminish, because the lungs become so "tight" that there is not enough air movement to create the abnormal breath sounds. The victim might tire out and become drowsy. Worrisome signs that indicate a severe asthma attack are very rapid (greater than 30 breaths per minute) or very slow breathing rate, and inability to speak or lie down. Diminished or poor feeding in an infant might indicate severe asthma. Conditions that mimic asthma are acute allergic reaction, inhalation of a foreign body, pulmonary embolism (see page 53), heart failure (see page 54), and vocal cord dysfunction. If a pulse oximeter is available (see page 41) and the oxygen saturation is below 90%, that is worrisome.

Treatment for severe asthma

1. **Administer oxygen** (see page 431). Remove trigger. If cold weather precipitated the attack, try to get the victim into a warmer climate.
2. **Administer an inhaled (aerosol or "micronized") bronchodilator** such as albuterol (Ventolin). Bronchodilators (airway openers) are drugs that carry the advantages of minimal side effects and direct delivery to the

site of action. They are available in metered-dose handheld inhalers from which the victim takes therapeutic puffs (See page 485).

   A The most effective technique for metered-dose inhalation is discharging the contents through a spacer clamped between the lips. The drug should be released (canister pressed down or “triggered”) at the beginning of a deep inspiration. After inhalation, the recipient should attempt to hold their breath for 10 seconds.
   B In an acute moderate to severe asthma attack, start with four puffs of a short-acting bronchodilator and consider going up to 10 puffs as needed.
   C Young children have difficulty using the inhaler and may require nebulized albuterol (difficult in the wilderness); ensuring ability to comply with an inhaler with a spacer is imperative prior to wilderness travel with an asthmatic child.
   D A person with asthma might also be carrying their own long-acting bronchodilator, such as salmeterol or formoterol or an inhaler that combines budesonide (steroid) and formoterol.

3. **Administer a corticosteroid**. Asthma is often accompanied by inflammation of the airways. The patient should be given a steroid such as dexamethasone, 0.6 mg/kg body weight (oral or intravenous, maximum dose 16 mg), followed by a second equivalent dose 24 hours later. This recommendation is for both pediatric and adult age patients; refer to page 486 for steroid conversion. If a person with asthma improves greatly (e.g., feels completely normal) after an inhaled bronchodilator, steroid administration is not absolutely necessary, but in general, it is a very helpful intervention.
   A If a victim is carrying their own steroid (glucocorticoid) inhaler, such as beclomethasone, budesonide, ciclesonide, or fluticasone, have them use it. Similarly, if they are carrying their own ipratropium (which helps to open the airways), this can be self-administered.
4. **Administer epinephrine** (adrenaline) if the victim remains in severe distress after inhalation of a bronchodilator. For a severe asthma attack that is not remitting, epinephrine can be given via an EpiPen autoinjector or in a proper dose of 0.01 mg/kg intramuscular (maximum dose 0.5 mg) every 20 minutes for 3 doses. Drug information and administration of epinephrine is discussed on page 469.

A person with asthma who is in more than minimal distress, does not achieve great improvement with these basic pharmacologic maneuvers, or who requires epinephrine should be transported rapidly to the nearest medical facility. Great care should be taken to keep them well supplied with oxygen and as exertion-free as possible.

Newer therapies are drugs ("biologics") that combat aspects of the type of airway inflammation seen in persons whose asthma does not improve with corticosteroids. These are prescribed by pulmonologists, who specialize in lung diseases.

Pulmonary embolism

A pulmonary embolus is a blood clot that has traveled from a vein somewhere in the body to lodge in the circulation of a lung. Such a clot obstructs the flow of venous blood through a portion of the lung and prevents the normal transfer of oxygen to blood by the affected lung tissue.

The most common sources of the original blood clots are the veins of the pelvis or legs (thrombophlebitis: inflammation of the veins with blood clots). Predisposing factors to thrombophlebitis include prior blood clots in the lungs or pelvis/legs, dehydration, underlying disease of the veins (such as varicose veins), injuries, cancer, recent surgery (within the previous 4 weeks), medications (such as birth control pills), injury, obesity, and prolonged (more than 3 days) immobility (see page 311). There are hereditary genetic factors as well, such as the presence of factor V Leiden thrombophilia, which results in a tendency to form clots in small blood vessels.

If a person has blood clots in the leg(s), symptoms can include leg pain, warmth, or swelling. These clots might be present in the calf or deeper within the thigh with extension into the pelvis.

Symptoms of pulmonary embolism include sudden onset of sharp chest pain (occasionally worse with deep breathing), cough (occasionally with blood), shortness of breath, increased rate of breathing, light-headedness, and increased (greater than 100 beats per minute) or irregular heart rate. The victim might develop a fever. It is often difficult to distinguish pulmonary embolism from pneumonia (see page 54). If the clot is very large, the victim might collapse and die rapidly. This is rare. Sometimes a person who has passed out transiently and woken up has suffered a pulmonary embolism.

If a person develops symptoms that might represent pulmonary embolism, particularly with signs of blood clots in the legs or coughing up blood, they should be promptly taken to medical attention. If oxygen (see page 431) is available, it should be administered. If the victim can swallow purposefully, administer an aspirin tablet (325 mg) every 24 hours. If a pulmonary embolism is diagnosed, the patient will be treated with a rapid-acting anticoagulant ("blood thinner"), such as heparin or enoxaparin, while being started on a maintenance anticoagulant such as warfarin (Coumadin), dabigatran (Pradaxa), apixaban (Eliquis), or rivaroxaban (Xarelto).

Heart failure (often called “congestive heart failure”)

Failure of the heart muscle to pump blood effectively can occur suddenly (usually with a large heart attack) or start gradually and worsen with time (after a heart attack; with infections of the heart muscle; after a serious viral illness; from prolonged cocaine, anabolic steroid, or alcohol abuse; from chronic anemia; etc.). The symptoms include breathlessness (particularly with exertion or when lying flat), swollen feet and ankles (fluid retention), bubbling noises in the lungs (fluid in the lungs), cough, wheezing, fatigue, loss of appetite, and blue skin discoloration (cyanosis) noted under the fingernails, around the lips, and of the earlobes. Frequently, a victim of heart failure cannot lie flat to sleep (because fluid collects in the lungs), so they wake up at night feeling short of breath.

The New York Heart Association classifies heart failure as: Class I—no symptoms with ordinary physical activity; Class II—symptoms with ordinary physical activity; Class III—comfortable at rest, but symptoms during less than ordinary physical activity; and Class IV—symptoms at rest.

If a victim with known heart failure rapidly worsens (usually indicated by increasing shortness of breath, lightheadedness and fainting), or if a previously healthy individual develops signs of heart failure (which might represent a new heart attack), they should be kept sitting up, unless they are more comfortable lying on their back. Administer oxygen (see page 431), and immediately carry them to medical attention. If the victim must travel under their own power, all exertion should be kept to a minimum. If the victim is awake and alert, you can administer nitroglycerin 0.4 mg by tablet or spray under the tongue. If this makes the person feel better and the blood pressure does not drop dangerously low, the dose can be repeated after 20 minutes. Do not use nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) in persons with heart failure because of the concern for fluid retention.

If traveling at high altitude, suspect high-altitude pulmonary edema (see page 351).

Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease

Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) refers to a number of diseases suffered by people who have exposed their lungs to long-term insults, particularly cigarette smoke. Chronic bronchitis (infection, inflammation, or bronchospasm—see page 227) or emphysema (scarring that leads to lack of elasticity, overinflation, or lung collapse) are the most common subsets of COPD. People with COPD have poor respiratory reserves and cannot tolerate strenuous exercise or extremes of environment. A victim of COPD suffers attacks of shortness of breath and coughing similar to asthma but can get into serious trouble much faster because of underlying debilitation. The earliest signs of respiratory fatigue should be heeded, and evacuation to a restful situation and physician evaluation are high priorities.

With the exception of epinephrine, you can treat a victim of COPD who is having acute worsening with the same drugs used for the management of asthma. Effective bronchodilator drugs include albuterol, levalbuterol, formoterol, salmeterol, vilanterol, ipratropium, and tiotropium. After an exacerbation of COPD, the victim might benefit from a 5-day course of oral prednisone (40 mg per day). Corticosteroids are interchangeable to a certain degree; see page 486 for conversion. Umeclidinium is a drug sometimes used for COPD that relaxes muscles in the airways. If the "attack" is severe, then one each of three categories of drugs (bronchial muscle relaxant, bronchodilator, and steroid) may be given in combination. If an infection is suspected, treat as if for pneumonia with an antibiotic (see page 55).

Administration of high-flow oxygen (greater than 2 liters per minute by nasal cannula) carries a theoretical risk, because correction of the chronic low blood oxygen level (hypoxia) in some individuals with COPD may worsen their condition. Therefore, any person with COPD who is given oxygen should be watched continuously. If their rate of breathing becomes dangerously slow, or they become confused or sleepy, the oxygen flow rate should be lessened. That being said, do not withhold oxygen administration for a patient with COPD that appears to need it. Severe COPD can be catastrophic. If necessary, the person might need to have their breathing assisted with positive pressure ventilation such as rescue breathing.

If a person with COPD shows signs of bronchitis (see page 227) or pneumonia (see next section), the first-line antibiotic should be azithromycin, trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, amoxicillin, doxycycline, tetracycline, clarithromycin, levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, or sparfloxacin. Second-line antibiotics include cefixime, cefprozil, ofloxacin, and amoxicillin–clavulanate (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498). There is some evidence that continuing azithromycin 250 mg by mouth once per day over a prolonged period of time might decrease the frequency of acute COPD worsenings. Persons with COPD should be administered influenza and pneumococcal vaccines according to current CDC recommendations.

Pneumonia

Pneumonia is an infection of the lung(s) characterized by combinations of fever, shaking chills (often with chattering teeth), cough, painful and rapid breathing, shortness of breath, night sweats, chest pain, weakness, and expectoration of discolored (red, green, yellow, brown) phlegm (sputum). Patients might also have nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. With severe pneumonia, particularly in elders, mental status might be altered. A pulse oximeter (see page 41) might show low oxygen saturation reading for the altitude at which it is measured. Pneumonia can evolve from bronchitis (see page 227) or arise independently. In toddlers or young children, rapid breathing, abdominal pain, poor appetite, and vomiting can be the presenting complaints. "Community-acquired" pneumonia is that felt to originate outside the hospital and suggests different infectious organisms than does hospital-acquired pneumonia.

Treatment for pneumonia

1. If respiratory difficulty is extreme, administer oxygen (see page 431).
2. Administer an antibiotic for 7 to 10 days, unless otherwise specified. Although many different bacteria, viruses, mycoplasmas, fungi, and other agents can cause pneumonia, the organisms most commonly acquired outside the hospital ("community-acquired") respond to the following drugs (for people without significant underlying risk factors): amoxicillin–clavulanate (875/125 mg twice a day), doxycycline (100 mg twice a day), azithromycin (500 mg the first day, then 250 mg once a day), clarithromycin (500 mg twice a day or 1000 mg extended release once a day), levofloxacin (750 mg once a day), or moxifloxacin (400 mg once a day). A person who has significant underlying illness (e.g., heart failure or diabetes) should be treated with a combination of (amoxicillin-clavulanate or cefdinir/cefpodoxime/cefuroxime/cefprozil) plus (azithromycin/clarithromycin or doxycycline) or with levofloxacin/moxifloxacin alone. (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498). For a child 4 months to 6 years of age, use amoxicillin, amoxicillin–clavulanate, azithromycin, erythromycin–sulfisoxazole, clarithromycin, or cefuroxime axetil.
3. Evacuate the victim.

If pneumonia is suspected, this is a non-trivial situation and should be anticipated to worsen.

Chest pain

Chest pain can be a manifestation of a variety of disorders, ranging from a harmless chest cold or heartburn to an acute coronary syndrome that is a harbinger of a life-threatening heart attack. To try to attain a diagnosis, it is important to ask these questions:

1. Where is the pain?
2. What is the nature of the pain?
3. How severe is the pain?
4. How long have you had the pain?
5. Does the pain extend into the arm, neck, jaw, or abdomen?
6. What relieves the pain?

Angina pectoris

Angina pectoris ("angina") is chest pain caused by narrowing or obstruction (spasm or actual occlusion) of the coronary arteries, which supply the heart muscle. The pain, which lasts from 3 to 15 minutes, is most often described as heavy and pressure-like ("squeezing," like a weight on the chest). It is classically located beneath the breastbone (but might also commonly be present in the left front chest), with occasional radiation to the jaw, back (between the shoulder blades), and left arm. Rarely, it can radiate to the right arm. Associated symptoms include nausea, sweating, shortness of breath, anxiety, and weakness. It is commonly associated with exertion, emotional stress, or both, and might be more frequent at high altitudes (this is debated by doctors) where less oxygen is available. Symptoms are sometimes worse in cold weather or after meals. "Atypical" angina is pain that occurs at rest or that awakens a victim from sleep. Women commonly have more subtle or non-classic symptoms of angina than do men. These include irregular heartbeat, "sharp" or "stabbing" pain, pain that can be reproduced by pressing on the chest, pain in the back, and pain that is localized to underneath the breast. Additional symptoms in elders include shortness of breath with exercise, weakness, or sweating. A first-time angina episode, change in the pattern of existing angina episodes, or increased frequency of episodes might portend a heart attack. This is sometimes referred to as "unstable angina." If there are any features of a heart attack, then the term “acute coronary syndrome” might be invoked. Angina can sometimes be relieved by rest. Persons with known angina are generally prescribed drugs: nitrates (e.g., isosorbide dinitrate), beta-adrenergic blockers (e.g., metoprolol), or calcium channel blockers (e.g., nifedipine, verapamil, or diltiazem). They also might be taking low-dose aspirin and a “statin” drug to achieve target lipid (e.g., cholesterol) levels. Any person who is taking a nitrate should not be prescribed medication for erectile dysfunction (e.g., sildenafil citrate [Viagra]) because taking both these medications can cause unsafe drops in blood pressure.

The person who suffers from angina should be kept at absolute rest (sitting or supine) until the pain subsides. If they are carrying their medications, they should place a nitroglycerin tablet (0.4 mg) under their tongue (the tablet dissolves) or use sublingual nitroglycerin spray. If pain persists, this can be repeated after 3 to 4 minutes (not to exceed three tablets or spray applications in 10 minutes). Unless the victim is completely familiar with their angina and declares the episode typical and completely resolved, they should be transported with minimum exertion to an appropriate medical facility. If no relief is obtained, the victim might be suffering or will soon suffer a heart attack. Expect a person with chest pain to trivialize their symptoms and deny the possibility of a heart attack. Frequent or barely remitting angina is considered to be “unstable angina” or an “acute coronary (artery) syndrome” because it is so frequently followed by a heart attack.

There is a rare phenomenon, known as stress cardiomyopathy (disease of the heart muscle) and myocardial (heart) stunning, which is a severe, often reversible abnormality is which a person without coronary artery disease suffers chest pain or decreased heart pump effectiveness (resulting in low blood pressure) when faced with a profound emotional stress, such as death of a parent or extreme fear. The precise mechanism is unknown, but the hypothesis is that this might be caused by an outpouring of “stress hormones.” This is one more reason why it is important to try to keep emotions under control in a stressful situation.

Heart attack (acute myocardial infarction “AMI” or “MI”)

A heart attack is an emergency, because it might rapidly lead to complete cardiac arrest (standstill). A person suffering a heart attack might, in a typically-described presentation, show some or all of the following symptoms: aching (sometimes “crushing”) substernal (under the breastbone) chest pain that can extend into the back, left arm or both arms, or neck; shortness of breath; profound weakness; nausea or vomiting; pale, moist, and cool skin; sweating; agitation; abnormal heart rate and rhythm—slow, fast, or irregular; and collapse. Typically, the chest pain does not subside with rest or administration of nitroglycerin. When cardiac arrest occurs, the victim stops breathing and has no heartbeat.

Risk for a heart attack is greater in persons over the age of 65 years, with high cholesterol, a prior heart attack or family history of heart attacks, high blood pressure, diabetes, cigarette smoking, or frequent angina. Any elderly person with chest pain, or someone with risk factors (e.g., diabetes, recent cocaine use) requires prompt physician evaluation. Women, particularly under the age of 54 years, are more likely than men to have heart attacks without typical chest pain. The implication is that a young woman with risk factors (e.g., diabetes, obesity, tobacco use, unsatisfactory lipid profile, high blood pressure, and/or family history of heart attacks) might be well advised to see a physician for a thorough evaluation before strenuous outdoor activities.

A "silent" heart attack, in which there is a paucity of symptoms, more commonly occurs during sleep or in a diabetic victim.

Treatment for a suspected heart attack

1. Send someone for help and an automated external defibrillator (AED).
2. If the victim has a pulse and is breathing, they should be kept at absolute rest, and arrangements should be made for immediate transport to a medical facility.
3. Administer one non–enteric-coated (i.e., uncoated) aspirin tablet (325 mg) or two to four tablets of 81 mg "baby aspirin" by mouth. Have the victim chew and swallow the aspirin to hasten absorption from the stomach into the bloodstream. If oxygen is available, it should be administered.
4. If the victim is having chest pain and has an adequate blood pressure (BP; systolic >90 mm Hg) administer nitroglycerin 0.4 mg every 3 to 4 minutes up to three doses.
5. If the victim collapses, *assess the need for CPR* by feeling for a pulse (see page 29) and evaluating for signs of life such as coughing, breathing, or moving. If these are absent, begin CPR with chest compressions, call 911, and get and AED (see page 28). Apply an AED as soon as it arrives, turn it on, and follow prompts.

Aortic dissection

Aortic dissection refers to a tear in the aorta, commonly associated with a prior history of high blood pressure. The classic symptoms include sudden (abrupt) "*tearing*" (sharp) chest pain, which can be unbearably intense. It reaches maximal intensity almost immediately and might be described by the victim as if a knife were being stuck in the chest. The pain might spread to the back or abdomen, jaw, neck, arms, or between the shoulder blades. The pain can be intermittent. This is a true emergency, so if suspected should lead to prompt evacuation.

Very rapid heart rate

Paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia (PSVT) is a disorder that causes a person's heart to beat very rapidly, sometimes up to 250 beats per minute. This can make the victim extremely uncomfortable, with a sensation of pounding or fluttering in the chest, palpitations, chest discomfort or tightness, anxiety, light-headedness, shortness of breath, nausea, or weakness. If they are not carrying appropriate medications to treat this condition, you might try having the victim bear down and hold their breath as if straining to lift a heavy weight, blow (with resistance) into an empty plastic syringe, or immerse their face in a pool of ice water. This sends a reflex signal via the vagus nerve to the heart to cause it to slow to a normal rate ("break" the PSVT). Such a maneuver can be enhanced by having the patient lie flat on his back and having the patient or an observer raise the patient's legs to about 45 degrees. A reverse Valsalva technique can also be tried where the victim exhales, pinches their nose, closes their mouth, and then inhales against resistance for 10 seconds. Pressing on eyeballs or massaging the neck over the carotid artery is no longer recommended because of possible negative side effects. PSVT is definitively treated by a physician with an intravenous injection of a specific medication (often adenosine), or in a dire emergency with a controlled (synchronized) electrical shock ("cardioversion") to the heart. Persons might be carrying medications to control or treat PSVT. These include diltiazem (or another calcium channel blocker), metoprolol (or another beta blocker), and many others.

High blood pressure

High BP (hypertension) is very common, particularly in adults. It is considered to be any value of either the top or bottom number above 130/80 mm Hg. Normal BP is 120/80 mm Hg or less. Many persons take medication(s) to control their BP. Dangerously elevated BP can cause symptoms of chest pain, shortness of breath, headache, blurred vision, back pain, weakness, perhaps nosebleed, and/or altered mental status. This variety of hypertension can lead to a heart attack or stroke. If a patient has elevated BP that is felt to cause any of these symptoms, they should be put at rest, given their own BP medicine, and then promptly transported to medical care. Chronic hypertension is a cause of heart failure (see page 54).

Noncardiac causes of chest pain

Infection

Chest pain might be caused by a lung infection, such as pneumonia, bronchitis, or pleuritis. Typically, infection is characterized by pain that's sharp in nature and associated with fever, cough, weakness, and production of colored (nonwhite) sputum. Deep breathing usually makes the pain worse. The treatment of these disorders is discussed in other sections. Consult the index.

Pulmonary embolism

Chest pain might be caused by a blood clot that has traveled to a lung(s); this is called pulmonary embolism (see page 53).

Heartburn

The pain of gastrointestinal upset (in particular, reflux of food and acid from the stomach into the esophagus) can closely mimic chest pain (angina). Typically, heartburn (reflux esophagitis, or "reflux") occurs after a large meal, especially when the victim immediately lies down. Foods that are often troublesome include alcoholic and carbonated beverages, coffee, chocolate, and fats. It can also occur if a swallowed pill becomes stuck against the wall of the esophagus. The discomfort radiates sharply from the stomach through the breastbone and into the throat. Pain, belching, and a sour taste in the mouth might indicate a hiatal hernia, which allows reflux of stomach acid back up into the esophagus. Treatment for heartburn is discussed on page 245. If there is any suggestion that angina (see page 56) is present, seek medical attention. Because the symptoms of a heart attack can be easily confused with those of heartburn, any elderly person with chest or abdominal pain requires prompt physician evaluation.

Muscle injuries

Heavy physical exertion can lead to overuse syndromes and chest pain. The pain is related to muscle motion and is accompanied by pain with motion and soreness to the touch. Treatment for these injuries is discussed on page 303.

Costochondritis

Costochondritis is an irritation of the cartilaginous ends of the ribs where they attach to the sternum (Fig. 39). The pain is sharp and well localized to the breastbone and adjacent rib ends. It is worsened considerably by pressing on the area or by deep breathing. Typically, there is little or no swelling. The treatment is administration of aspirin, acetaminophen, or an NSAID.

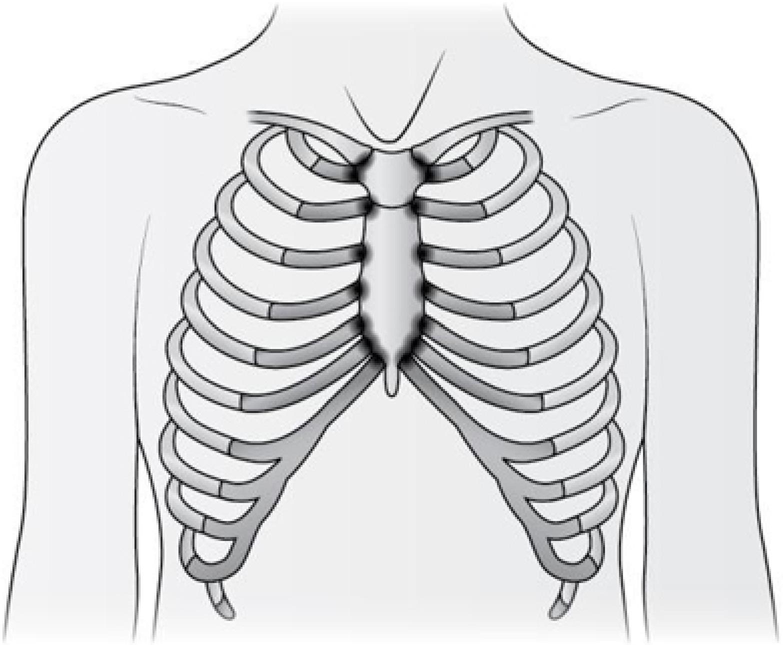


FIG. 39 Costochondritis. The attachments of the ribs to the breastbone are inflamed and exquisitely tender to pressure.

Bleeding

For a discussion of wound management (cleaning, closing, and dressing), see page 279.

Whenever you are going to be exposed to blood or other potentially infectious bodily fluids, wear nonpermeable nitrile gloves from your first aid kit. If you are allergic to latex rubber, do not use sterile latex rubber gloves. If you have only one pair of gloves and need to care for more than one patient, wash your gloved hands or at least rinse them between patients. If you have eyeglasses, put them on.

While it is occasionally visually distressing, bleeding can be one of the easiest problems to manage because the treatment options are so straightforward. The severity of the injury determines the rate of blood loss and what measures you must take to control the bleeding. Evaluate the following considerations of severity:

1. Where is the bleeding? It is important to consider and identify internal bleeding as well as external bleeding. Considerable blood loss can be associated with blunt (nonpenetrating) abdominal injury (liver, spleen) as well as long bone or pelvis fracture (2 quarts of blood can rapidly accumulate in the thigh following a broken femur). *Examine the entire victim. Look inside or under clothing to evaluate at skin level and log roll to evaluate back and sides.*
2. Is the bleeding from an artery or from a vein? Because arterial blood is under higher pressure, blood loss tends to be more rapid from a severed artery than from a vein. Arterial bleeding can be recognized by its spurting or pulsatile nature and rapid outflow. All blood exposed to air, in the absence of unusual drug intoxications, appears similar; so you cannot rely on color to indicate origin.
3. A victim who has lost more than 25% of their blood volume might suffer from shock. Treatment of shock is discussed on page 70.
4. Prolonged uncontrollable bleeding is rare unless a major blood vessel or more than one vessel is disrupted, the victim is taking an anticoagulant (blood thinner) medication, or the victim suffers from hemophilia. In such a case, heroic intervention can be lifesaving.

Treatment for bleeding

First, remove all clothing covering the wound so that you can see precisely where the bleeding is coming from. *Almost all external bleeding stops with firm, direct pressure.* Firm pressure should be applied directly to the wound with the heel of your hand or fingertips, using the cleanest available thick (four or five thicknesses of a 4 inch by 4 inch—or 10 cm by 10 cm—sterile gauze pad, for instance) bandage or cloth compress (Fig. 40). Army battle dressing (ABD) pads are excellent for this purpose and do not take up much space in your pack. Maintain pressure for a minimum of 10 minutes, to allow severed vessels to close by spasm (an artery contains small amounts of muscle tissue in its walls) and to allow early blood clot formation. Peeking at the wound under the compress interrupts the process and prolongs active bleeding. The application of cold packs or ice packs over the compress (*not* under it) might hasten the process by initiating spasm and closure of disrupted blood vessels. It is also useful to have the victim lie down and to elevate the bleeding part above the level of their heart. A scalp wound tends to bleed freely and might require prolonged pressure or wound closure for control (see page 76).

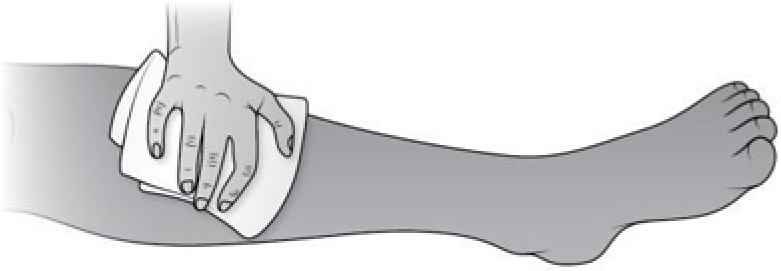


FIG. 40 Firm pressure applied to a bleeding wound.

If direct pressure to the wound does not stop the bleeding, you must make certain that you are applying the pressure in the correct spot. Check quickly to see that you are pressing precisely over the bleeding point. If you are a fraction of an inch off, you can miss the best compression spot for a torn blood vessel; in this case, simply piling on more bandages might not solve the problem.

Deep wounds may require wound packing directly into the wound to control bleeding. For deep wounds, apply gauze into the base of the wound, continue to pack gauze firmly into the wound until voids are filled and apply direct pressure to the packed gauze (Fig. 41).

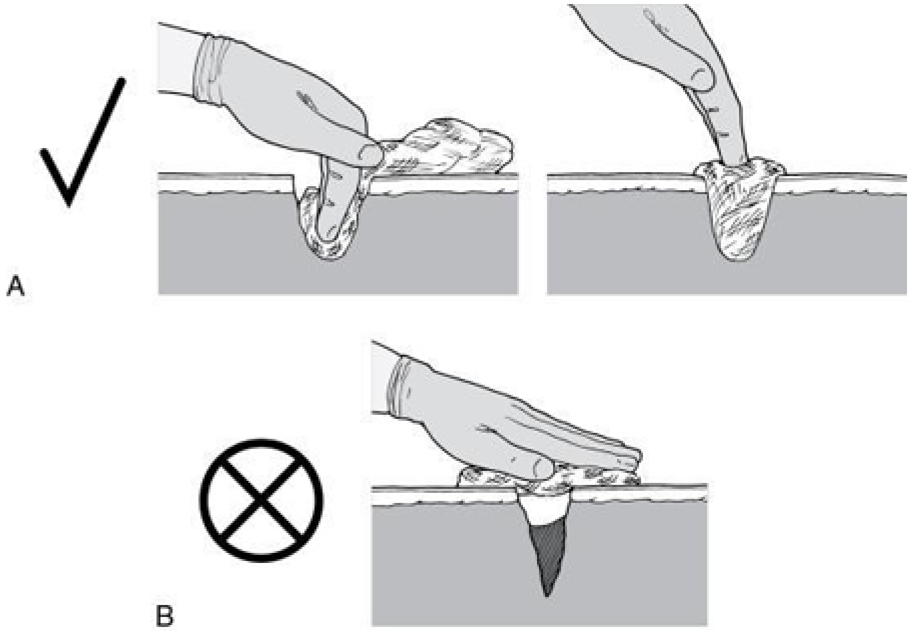


FIG. 41 Wound packing to control bleeding.

If the direct pressure appears to be working, once the bleeding has substantially subsided (wait for 5 to 10 minutes) you can apply a pressure dressing. Do this by covering the wound with a thick wad of sterile gauze pads, ABD pads, or the cleanest dressing available, and wrapping the area firmly with a rolled gauze or elastic bandage. Do not apply the dressing so tightly that circulation beyond it is compromised (as indicated by blue fingertips or toes, or by numbness and tingling). Watch the dressing closely for blood soaking and dripping, which indicate continuous bleeding.

The Israeli (emergency) bandage is an elasticized bandage with a non-adhesive bandage pad sewn into it. A built-in pressure bar allows the user to twist the bandage around the wound once, and then change the direction of wrapping to create pressure on the wound (Fig. 42).

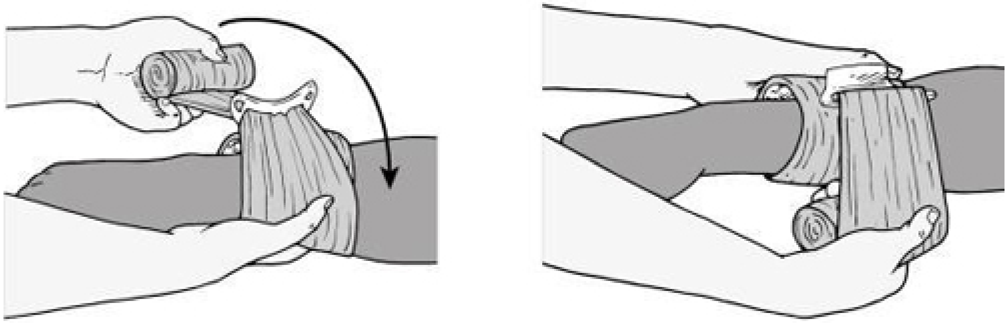


FIG. 42 Israeli pressure bandage.

Pressure points are external body locations that can be compressed to diminish or stop bleeding. This is accomplished by impeding blood flow through the underlying artery. For bleeding control, the focus should be on firm direct pressure, but pressure points might be used if the resources and knowledge are available. Pressure point compression can be used to attempt to control bleeding that cannot be controlled by direct pressure to the wound, and as a bridge to application of a tourniquet (see later discussion). The pressure point for the arm is on its inside to occlude the brachial artery, accomplished between the biceps and triceps muscles (see Fig. 17, E). For the leg, it is directly over the femoral artery (see Fig. 17, B). The pressure point should be compressed for approximately 10 to 15 minutes, to allow the severed blood vessel(s) to constrict and for the bleeding to be controlled by direct pressure on the wound. Sometimes using a hand to apply pressure is not sufficient, and one might need to kneel on the pressure point (directly on the brachial artery in the arm and with the leg rotated outwards [externally] for the femoral artery in the groin). If direct pressure, wound packing, or pressure point constriction is not successful at halting life-threatening bleeding, it might be necessary to apply a tourniquet. In the case of torrential bleeding, most rescuers will go directly from pressure over the wound to the application of a tourniquet. If blood is gushing from a wound, particularly if it is pulsatile bleeding from an artery, it is entirely reasonable to first apply a tourniquet in order to better assess and control the situation, then apply pressure directly over the wound, and then release (not remove) the tourniquet to see if pressure alone will control the bleeding. If not, the tourniquet can be re-tightened. Otherwise, tourniquets should be left in place once applied.

There are "blood stopper" (hemostatic) products that can be used to assist in controlling bleeding. Whenever one of these products is used, it is still necessary to apply direct pressure to the wound for at least 3 minutes. For profound bleeding from a large leg wound near the femoral artery and vein (see page 29), it might even be necessary to apply pressure by kneeling on the bandages. In any case of a bleeding wound, if the bleeding only partially ceases, repeat the application of the hemostatic product.

Applying a tourniquet

Massive bleeding from an arm or leg might require application of a tourniquet. A tourniquet is indicated in a life-threatening situation and is best applied by a trained person. Become a trained person! Practice, practice, practice! When the time comes that you need to apply a tourniquet, it will be a high-stress situation, and you will need to have perfect recall and be supported by “muscle memory” attained through repetition. Do not count on book learning or online depictions alone to get you prepared.

Purchase a tourniquet (choose one of the styles described in this section from a reputable source, be cautious of cheap knock offs that may not perform well in life-or-death situations) and practice the techniques described. Take a hands-on training such as a Stop the Bleed Course. Practice improvising tourniquets using techniques described in this section with materials you have readily available. Carry tourniquets in your car, bag, and person so that you will have one if ever needed. Tourniquets save lives. Do not be afraid to apply one if necessary to control severe bleeding.

The decision to apply a tourniquet is one in which a limb is possibly sacrificed to save a life, but it may take hours for permanent limb damage to occur. Massive bleeding from the head, neck, or torso requires direct pressure or wound packing, as these locations are not appropriate for tourniquet application.

A tourniquet should be applied to the limb between the bleeding site and the heart, as close to the injury as is effective (usually 2 to 3 inches [5.1 to 7.6 cm] above the wound), and tightened to the point at which the bleeding stops. The reason for placing it close to the bleeding is to preserve as much living tissue (which is “above” the tourniquet) as possible. Do not apply tourniquets over joints, such as elbows or knees. If a wound is near a joint space, go above (closer to the heart) the joint space.

The combat application tourniquet (CAT) is used by the military and available for purchase to laypersons. It is applied to a bleeding victim as follows:

1. Place the wounded limb through the loop of the band. Position the tourniquet 2 to 3 inches above the wound (Fig. 43). Before tightening any tourniquet, be sure to first take out the slack.
2. If the leg is the limb involved, direct the self-adhering band through both sides of the friction adapter buckle (Fig. 44, A). If the arm is involved, this is not necessary (Fig. 44, B).
3. Feed the self-adhering band tightly around the limb and securely fasten it back on itself (Fig. 45).
4. Adhere it completely along the band until it reaches the clip (Fig. 46).
5. Twist the windlass rod until the bleeding stops (Fig. 47).
6. Lock the windlass rod in place with the windlass clip (Fig. 48).

7. Place band through clip and adhere windlass strap to the windlass clip (Fig. 49).
8. Observe for cessation of bleeding. If needed, apply a second tourniquet above and side-by-side to the first tourniquet.

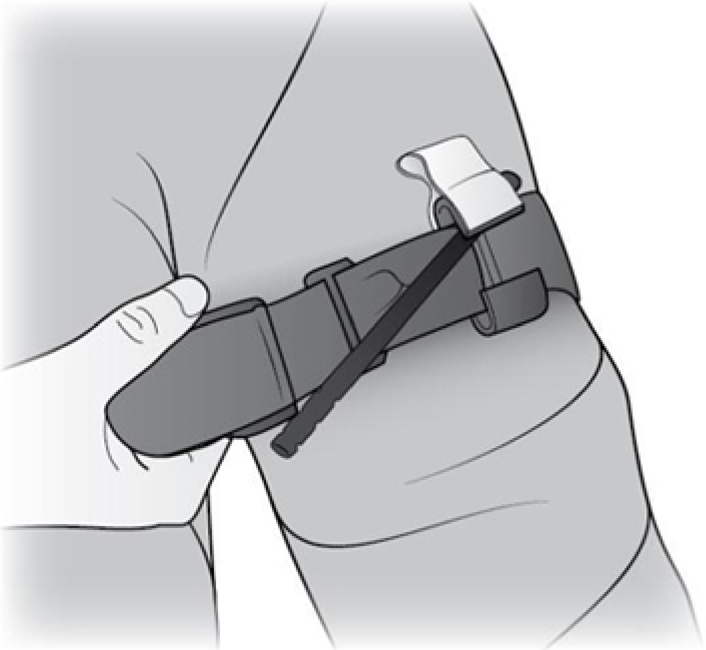


FIG. 43 Initial positioning of a combat application tourniquet (CAT).

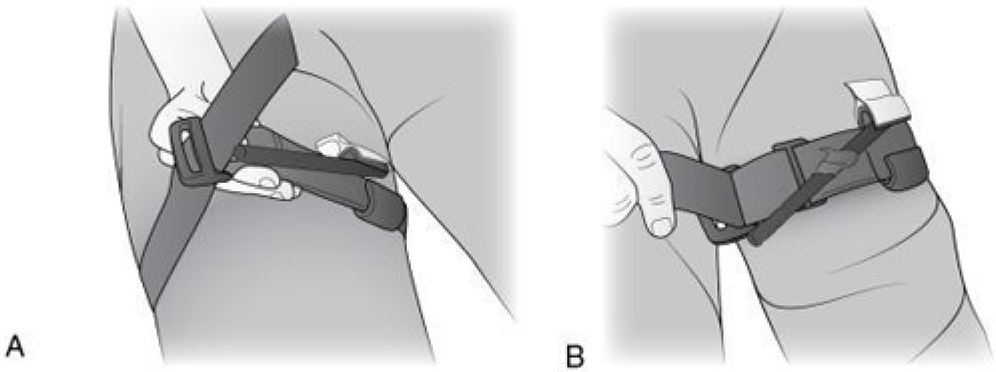


FIG. 44 Positioning the self-adhering band of a CAT through the friction adapter buckle. **A,** On a leg, go through both sides of the friction buckle. **B,** On an arm, one side may be sufficient.

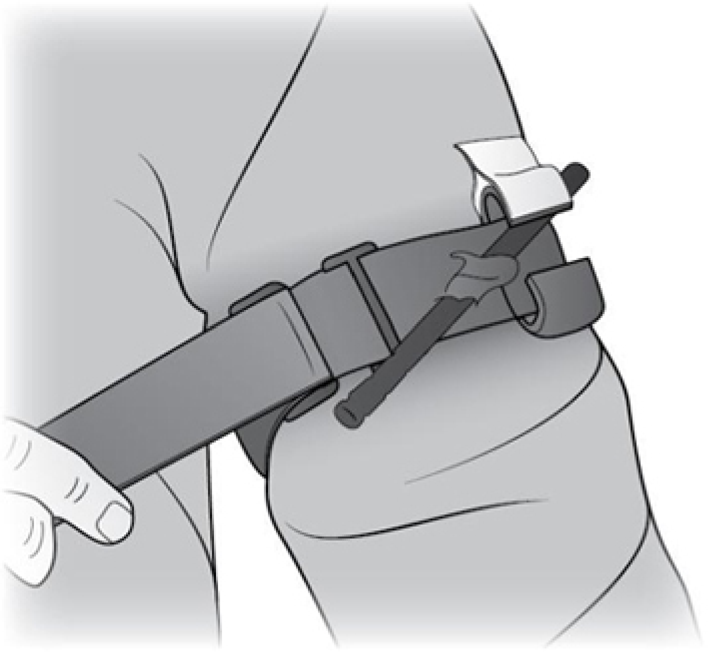


FIG. 45 Secure the self-adhering band of the CAT tightly back upon itself.

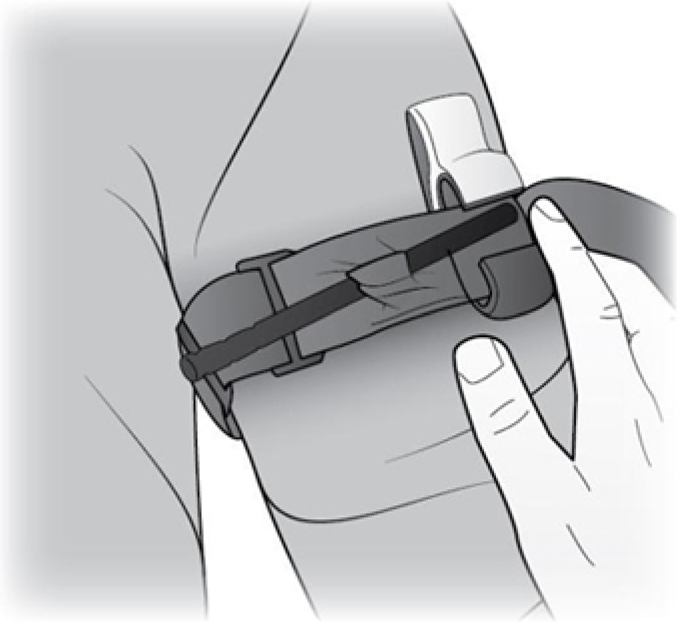


FIG. 46 Adhere the band of the CAT until it reaches the clip.

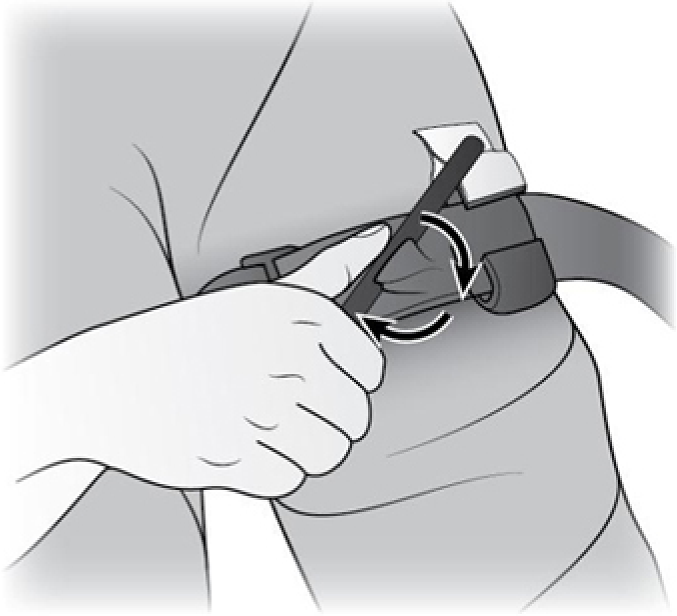


FIG. 47 Twist the windlass rod of the CAT until the bleeding stops.

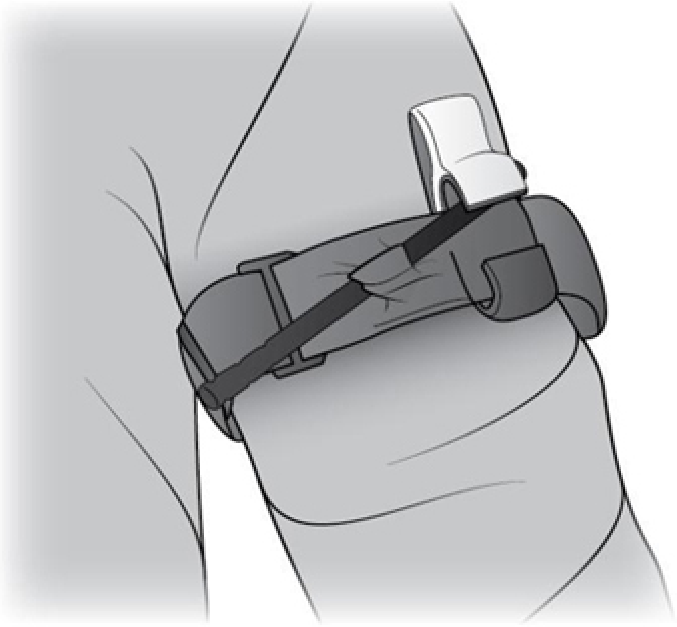


FIG. 48 Lock the windlass rod of the CAT in place.

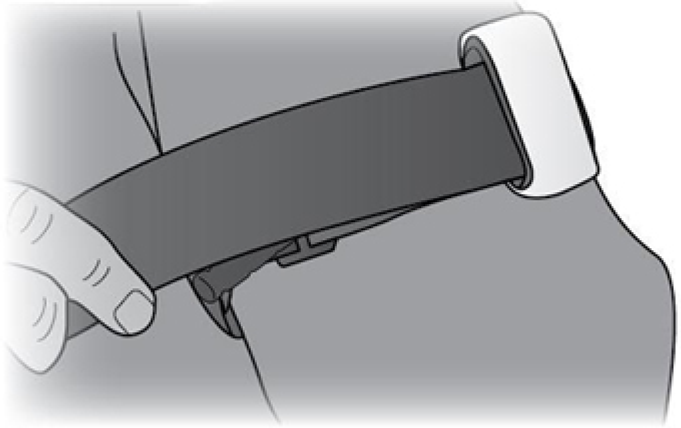


FIG. 49 Place band through clip, and adhere windlass strap to the windlass clip.

The CAT can be carried in its one-handed configuration, with the free-running end of the self-adhering band passed through the buckle, forming a loop for the arm to pass through. Then, one pulls the self-adhering band tightly and securely fastens it back upon itself. The windlass rod is twisted until the bleeding has stopped. To maintain the tightness, the windlass rod is locked in place with the windlass clip. Then, the self-adhering band is wrapped over the windlass rod. To complete the application, the windlass rod and self-adhering band are secured with the windlass strap. A person should be practiced in this technique before having to deploy it in the field.

Another commercially available tourniquet is the MatResponder Tourniquet (Pyng Medical). This is applied as follows (Fig. 50):

1. Place the tourniquet on an arm or leg with the housing facing upward.
2. Click the strap buckle into place.
3. Pull the strap tight.
4. Turn the key further to tighten the strap.
5. To reapply the tourniquet, push in and hold the release tab, then pull the strap all the way out. Reposition the tourniquet, then follow instructions 1 through 4.

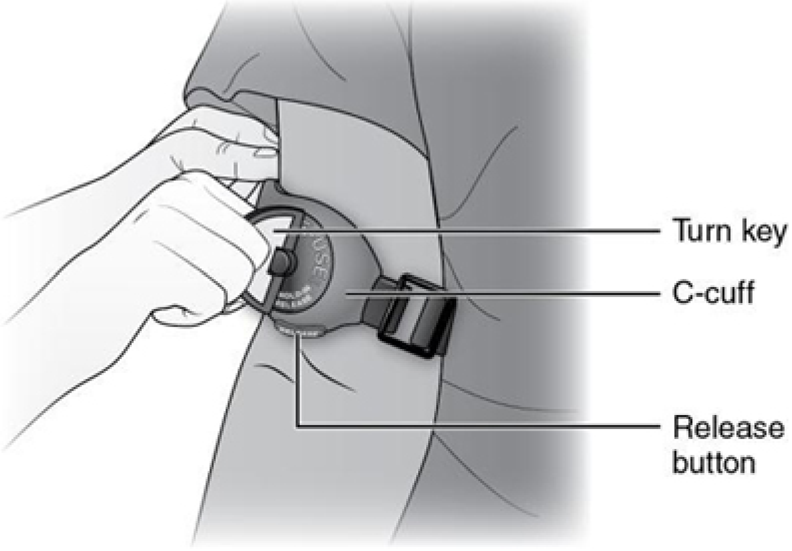


FIG. 50 Application of the MATResponder Tourniquet.

There are many types and brands of tourniquets, including the SOFFT-T tourniquet; SWAT-T stretch, wrap, and tuck tourniquet; SAM XT extremity tourniquet; and Parabelt tourniquet belt. Become familiar with the one(s) you carry.

To construct an improvised tourniquet, use a 2- to 4-inch (5 to 10 cm) bandage, triangular bandage, or cloth—not something thin (such as a string, wire, or cord) that will cut through the skin. If an elastic bandage is selected, pull it tightly enough to make it thin and no longer stretchy. Wrap the bandage around the limb, and then tie a half or an entire square knot, leaving loose ends long enough to tie another knot (Fig. 51, A). Place a stick or stiff rod over the knot, and then tie it in place with the loose ends. Before tightening the tourniquet, be sure that you have taken out the slack. Twist the stick (windlass) until the bandage is tight enough to stop the bleeding, and then secure it (see Fig. 51, B) in place with another cloth, tape, or circular bandage. If the tourniquet is applied correctly, it should only take approximately 1 or 2 turns of the windlass to stop blood flow. If you must leave the victim after applying a tourniquet, and therefore can no longer apply direct pressure to the wound, be certain to check that the tourniquet is still effective after you have released pressure.

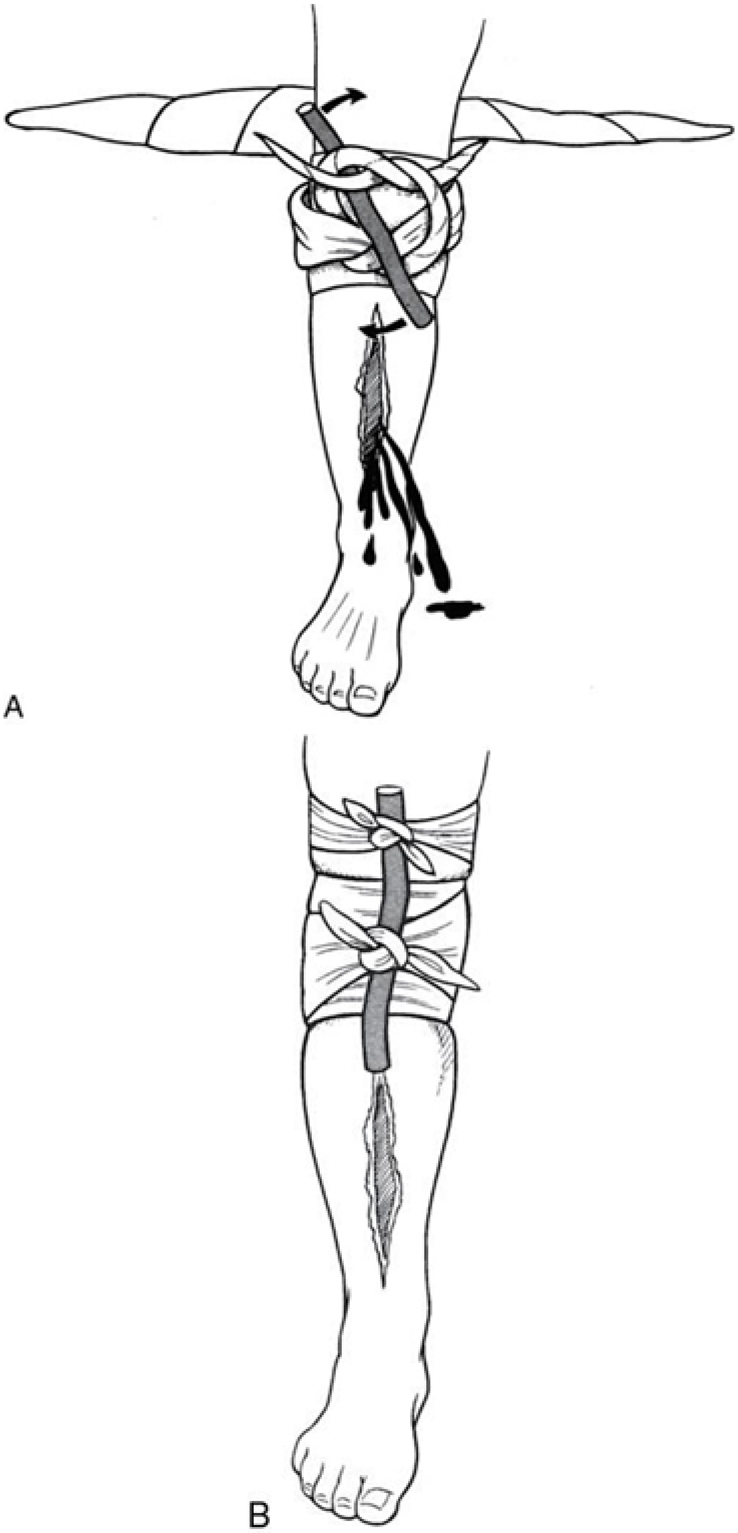


FIG. 51 Application of an improvised tourniquet. **A,** Wrap the bandage around the limb, then tie a square knot. Tie a stick in place over the knot. Twist the stick to tighten the tourniquet just until the bleeding stops. **B,** Secure the stick.

After placing any tourniquet, write the initial time of placement on the device or nearby skin with an indelible marker. If the tourniquet is left on for more than 3 to 6 hours, the tissue beyond the tourniquet might die and the limb may require amputation. However, loosening the tourniquet should not be attempted if the bleeding was torrential or additional bleeding of any amount would cause the victim to become seriously compromised. That having been said, some authorities recommend loosening the tourniquet an hour after its initial placement under physical and visual control, which might be all right if the bleeding is not brisk. If the bleeding can now be controlled with direct pressure alone, do not retighten the tourniquet but keep a very close watch on the situation. If the original wounding damaged or severed a very large blood vessel, it is likely that you will need to keep the tourniquet in place for more than an hour. Always keep a tourniquet in plain view, so that it does not get left in place longer than necessary just because someone did not know or forgot it was there. After a tourniquet has been in place continuously for 2 or more hours, do not remove it until you reach advanced medical care.

If a single tourniquet has been placed and bleeding continues, attempt first to tighten the tourniquet. If this is not successful in staunching the bleeding, then apply a second tourniquet side-by-side to (above) the first tourniquet, between the first tourniquet and the heart.

Considerations for other severe wounds include:

1. If the victim has suffered a large wound through which internal organs (such as loops of bowel) (Fig. 52, A) or bones (see page 83) are protruding, *do not attempt to push these back inside the body or under the skin unless they slide back in easily (essentially without your assistance).* In a wilderness situation, moving organs (i.e., gently returning extruded bowel to within the abdominal cavity) or realigning bones to stop bleeding and/or applying traction to allow a prolonged evacuation might be necessary, but greatly increases the chance for infection. Before exposed bowel or bones are moved, gently irrigate away any gross dirt or other debris. If the bowel or bones remain external to the skin, cover them with continually moistened bandages (pads of gauze or cloth) held in place without excess pressure (see page 84) and protect from freezing. Seek immediate medical attention.
2. If the victim has suffered a severe cut in their neck, take special care to not disturb the wound because such disturbance might remove a blood clot that is controlling the bleeding from a large blood vessel. Apply a firm pressure dressing (do not choke the victim with the bandage) and seek immediate medical attention. Continually assess the airway (see page 18), because an expanding blood clot within the neck can compress

the throat and windpipe. A penetrating wound to the neck can be created with a knife, bullet, tree limb, arrow, ski pole, etc. If there has been injury to a major blood vessel, the airway, digestive tract (e.g., esophagus) or spinal cord/nerve roots, possible signs include difficulty breathing or swallowing, air bubbling in the wound, expanding swelling of the neck (sometimes seen to be pulsating), brisk bleeding from the wound or mouth, vomiting blood, shock (see page 60), or neurologic abnormality (see page 88). If the victim begins to have raspy breathing, changed voice, or any of the signs noted above, evacuation is maximally urgent.

3. Bleeding can be quite brisk from a ruptured or torn varicose (dilated) vein in the leg. This can usually be managed with direct pressure, while elevating the leg. Follow this with a pressure dressing.
4. If a foreign object (such as a knife, tree limb, or arrow) becomes deeply embedded (impaled) in the body, do not attempt to remove it, because the internal portion might be occluding a blood vessel that will hemorrhage without this "plug." Any attempt at removal might create more damage than that already exists, which includes increasing the bleeding. This is particularly true with a hunting (broadhead) arrow. Pad and bandage the wound around the object, which should be fixed in place with tape if possible (Fig. 53). The external portion of the object can be cut to a shorter length (cut off the shaft of the arrow a few inches above the skin, for example), if necessary, to facilitate splinting and transport of the victim. Other ways to protect the impaled object from being jostled is to use a splint (see Fig. 330) or completely cover the secured object.
5. A gunshot wound might cause severe internal damage that is not readily visible from the surface wound. Any victim who has suffered a gunshot wound should be brought to immediate medical attention, no matter how minor the external appearance. If bleeding cannot be controlled such that it is welling up from the wound, try packing the wound with a blood stopper gauze, such as Z-Fold QuikClot Combat Gauze (see Fig. 41), and apply pressure. Taking extreme care, disarm the victim, because a head-injured or otherwise confused victim carrying a loaded weapon could accidentally create an additional victim. If you do not know how to handle a firearm, carefully (avoiding the trigger and keeping the barrel pointed away from others) move the weapon at least several feet away (preferably far away from medical care) and point it in the direction where accidental discharge will do the least harm. If you know how, remove the ammunition and leave open the firing chamber.
6. After the bleeding has stopped, immobilize the injury.
7. Amputations are discussed on page 127.

8. Check all dressings regularly to be certain that swelling has not made them too tight. Signs that a bandage is too tight are blue discoloration of the fingernails/fingertips/toenails/toes, cool and pale skin color, tingling or loss of feeling beyond the bandage, difficulty moving the fingers or toes, and pain underneath or beyond the bandage. Adjust and redress wounds as necessary.

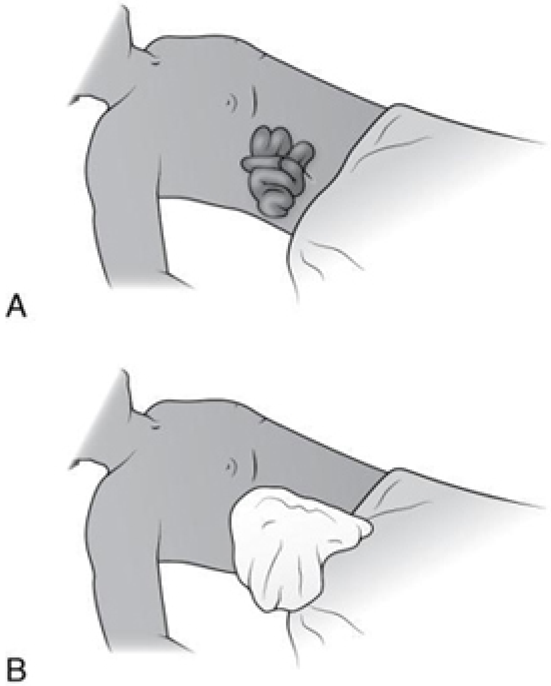


FIG. 52 **A,** Loops of bowel protrude from a laceration in the abdomen. **B,** These should be covered gently with a moistened bandage or cloth. Do not try to push them back into the abdomen unless necessary for evacuation (e.g., if the victim must walk out under their own power, and such activity is forcing more bowel to extrude from the wound).

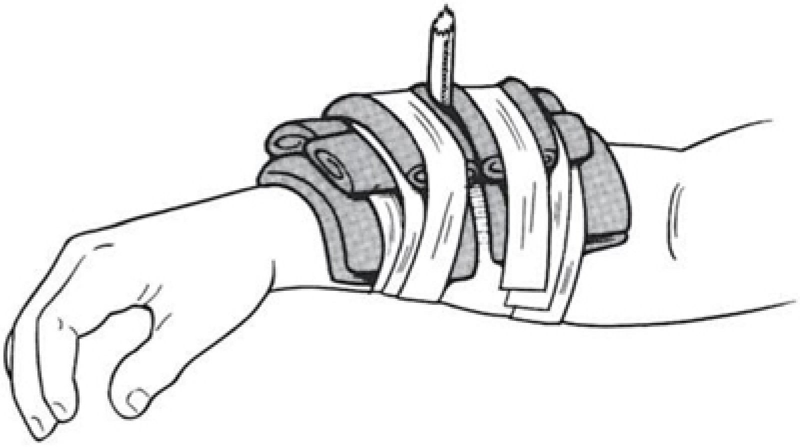


FIG. 53 Padding and bandages to prevent motion of a penetrating object.

Internal bleeding

If bleeding is internal, such as from a bleeding ulcer, blunt trauma, broken bone, injured spleen or liver, leaking abdominal aneurysm, or lung cancer, the victim might suffer from shock (see page 70). Symptoms of internal (undetected) bleeding are the same as those of external bleeding, except that you do not see the blood. They include rapid heartbeat, shortness of breath, general weakness, thirst, dizziness or fainting when arising from a supine position, pale skin color (particularly in the fingernail beds and conjunctivae), and cool, clammy skin. Other signs include increasing pain and firmness of the abdomen after an injury (either penetrating or blunt), vomiting blood or "coffee grounds" (blood darkened by stomach acid), blood in the urine or feces, or large bruises over the flank or abdomen. Because it is difficult to predict the rate of internal blood loss and because the only effective treatment for many causes of severe internal bleeding is surgery, medical help should be sought immediately.

Because a ruptured abdominal aortic aneurysm is frequently fatal, it is reasonable to screen for this condition in general and in particular prior to a remote wilderness expedition. Criteria for screening include male sex, high blood pressure, age 65 years or older, cigarette smoking history, and presence of an abdominal mass, particularly if it is pulsatile.

Shock

Shock is a condition in which the blood supply that carries oxygen and nutrients to various organs of the body is profoundly insufficient to meet metabolic demands. In simple language, the shock state is the beginning of cell death. The signs and symptoms are restlessness, low blood pressure, weak and rapid (thready) pulse, altered mental status (restlessness, anxiety, confusion, unconscious), moist and cool (clammy) skin, rapid shallow breathing, inability to control urination and bowel movements, nausea, and profound weakness. It is a life-threatening condition and can follow a large number of inciting events. Causes of shock include severe internal or external bleeding (25% to 30% acute loss of an adult's total blood volume, equivalent to 1.5 to 2 liters out of 6 liters), called hemorrhagic shock, overwhelming infection, known as "septic shock, or sepsis", burns, dehydration, heart attack, hormonal insufficiency, hypoglycemia, hypothermia, hyperthermia, allergic reaction, drug overdose, and spinal cord injury (loss of sympathetic nervous system support allows blood vessels to dilate because they lose tone). If shock is caused by blood loss (hemorrhage), the following rough estimates apply:

1. Blood loss of 750 mL corresponds to heart rate ("pulse") of up to 100 beats per minute and respiratory rate of approximately 14 to 20 breaths per minute. Blood pressure might remain normal. The victim is slightly anxious.
2. Blood loss of 750 mL to 1.5 liters corresponds to heart rate 100 to 120 and respiratory rate of 20 to 30. Blood pressure might still be normal and the victim is mildly anxious.
3. Blood loss of 1.5 to 2 liters corresponds to heart rate 120 to 140 and respiratory rate of 30 to 40. Blood pressure is decreased and the victim is anxious and confused.
4. Blood loss of greater than 2 liters corresponds to heart rate greater than 140 and respiratory rate greater than 35. Blood pressure is decreased and the victim is confused, weak and tired.

Although not absolute, if the radial pulse can be felt, the systolic blood pressure is estimated to be at least 80 mm Hg; if the femoral artery pulse can be felt, 70 mm Hg; and if the carotid artery pulse can be felt, 60 mm Hg.

Shock is a true emergency. Unfortunately, unless using epinephrine to treat a severe allergic reaction, there is little that the rescuer can do to treat shock in the field. Thus, recognizing early manifestations of conditions that can lead to shock is important so that the victim can be brought rapidly to medical attention.

Management of shock includes the following:

1. Evaluate ABCs. Treat the cause of the shock. Control any obvious sources of external bleeding (see page 60).
2. Position the victim lying down on his or her back, with the legs elevated about 30 degrees (8 to 12 in or 20 to 30 cm), to encourage blood in the leg veins to return to the central circulation (heart) and head (brain) (Fig. 54). This might shift 300 to 500 mL of blood. Don't elevate the legs if the victim has a severe head injury (see page 72), difficulty breathing, a broken leg, or a neck or back injury, or if such a maneuver causes pain in the back or pelvis. If you suspect internal bleeding, avoid unnecessary movement. If the victim is short of breath because of heart failure (see page 54), they might be more comfortable in the sitting position.
3. Keep the victim covered and warm. Remove them from harsh weather conditions. Remember to insulate them from below. Take special care to keep their head, neck, and hands covered. Loosen restrictive clothing.
4. Administer oxygen (see page 431).
5. Splint all broken bones.
6. If the victim is diabetic, consider a hypoglycemic (low blood sugar) reaction (see page 162). If the victim is conscious and can purposefully swallow, administer Glutose paste (see page 162) or a sugar-sweetened liquid or gel by mouth in small sips. Otherwise, don't give the victim anything to eat or drink unless they are alert and thirsty or hungry. If the victim is in shock because of diarrhea and dehydration, attempt to initiate oral fluid intake (see page 229).
7. If the victim has been stung by an insect or appears to be suffering an allergic reaction (see page 78), treat the allergic reaction.
8. Transport the victim to a hospital as rapidly as possible. For example, septic shock needs to be managed aggressively with, among other treatments, antibiotics given through a vein.

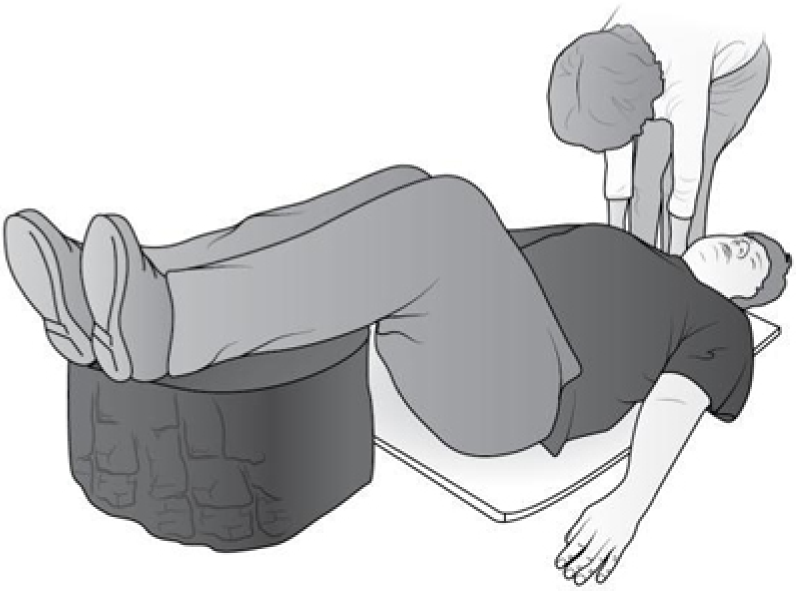


FIG. 54 Positioning a victim who is in shock. Elevate the legs, cushion the back, protect the airway, and keep the victim warm.

Head injury

Victims of head injury (when it involves the brain, commonly referred to as "traumatic brain injury" or TBI) can be roughly divided into two groups, according to whether they have lost consciousness or not. In addition to loss of consciousness, other risk factors for a serious brain injury include high suspicion for a skull fracture (e.g., boggy swollen area on the head, indicative of a collection of blood), abnormal behavior, amnesia or severe mechanism of injury (fall from more than 3 feet, ejected from a motor vehicle, struck by a high-impact object, decrease of Glasgow Coma Scale score over time). Always be aware that the dazed or unconscious victim cannot protect their airway; you must be vigilant in your observation. The most common immediate serious complication of head injury is obstruction of the airway with the tongue, blood, or vomitus. The most common associated serious injury is a broken neck.

Persons who are taking medications ("blood thinners" or "anticoagulants") that inhibit blood clotting, such as warfarin (Coumadin), dabigatran (Pradaxa), clopidogrel (Plavix), apixaban (Eliquis), or rivaroxaban (Xarelto) are at increased risk for bleeding inside the skull (either within the brain or in the space between the brain and the inside of the skull) following an injury, so they must be watched particularly closely after any blow to the head or sudden deceleration event. The most common indication that such bleeding is happening is persistent or increasing headache. As a general rule, it's important to closely observe a person taking an anticoagulant who has suffered even a minor head injury for 24 hours to detect the onset of any worrisome symptom.

Concussion

Concussion is a form of traumatic brain injury (TBI) that can range in severity. If a person struck in the head has lost consciousness, they have suffered at least a concussion. However, a person does not need to have gone unconscious to have suffered a concussion. The working definition of a concussion is an immediate and temporary impairment of brain function, sometimes accompanied by a brief period of amnesia after a blow to the head. The following signs and symptoms are commonly associated with a concussion: unaware of what happened; confusion; cannot recognize people or surroundings; loss of memory (not typically including, however, one's name and location); loss of consciousness;

headache or sensation of pressure in the head; dizziness; balance problems; nausea; vomiting; feeling "foggy," "dazed," or "stunned"; visual problems (e.g., seeing stars or flashing lights, or seeing double); hearing problems (e.g., ringing in the ears); irritability or emotional (mood) changes; inappropriate behavior; slowness or fatigue; inability to follow directions or slow to answer questions; easily distracted or poor concentration; glassy-eyed or vacant staring; slurred speech; seizure. With regard to the latter, a single brief seizure immediately following a concussion is not *always* an ominous sign, but in a wilderness situation should prompt an evacuation for evaluation by a physician. Headache, dizziness, and difficulty concentrating (persistent postconcussive symptoms) might persist for weeks after a concussion, so the victim should not be in a position, such as lead climber, to put others at risk. Evolving evidence shows that it might take a concussion a month or more to heal, even after the victim is free of noticeable symptoms. During the healing period, they might be at risk for a much more severe injury ("second impact syndrome") with a similar inciting force. Necessary supervised nonaggressive physical activity can be undertaken if there are no persistent symptoms, but the presumption should be that a symptom-free month is necessary before someone can be "cleared" for vigorous physical activity. With regard to high altitude, one should probably wait for at least 60 days after resolution of all symptoms. If someone is symptomatic with a concussion, they should not sleep above an altitude of 9843 feet (3000 meters).

When a traumatic injury to the brain occurs, if any of the following are present, proceed with extreme caution and seek medical attention: loss of consciousness, abnormal behavior, severe mechanism of injury (e.g., fall from a height), Glasgow Coma Scale score below 15 (see page 75), large soft collection of blood (hematoma) within the scalp, or possibility of a skull fracture.

Treatment principles for head injuries

1. *Protect the airway (see page 18) and cervical spine (see page 33).* Make a quick inspection of the mouth to identify anything that needs to be cleaned out, such as blood, vomit, or broken teeth. Consider positioning the victim on their side in the recovery position (see page 22).
2. If the victim wakes up after a brief loss of consciousness and quickly regains their normal mental status and physical abilities, they have probably suffered a minor injury (so long as there is no relapse into unconsciousness or persistent lethargy, nausea or vomiting, or severe headache). The victim with any loss of consciousness in the wilderness should be evacuated for further medical evaluation. If the victim is far from help, they should undertake no vigorous activity and be kept under close observation for at least 24 hours. It is commonly taught that

after someone has sustained a head injury with loss of consciousness (implying a concussion), they should be kept awake. It is also taught that if the victim falls asleep, they should be awakened regularly, presumably to demonstrate that they can be awakened and have not worsened or lapsed into a coma. However, be aware that sleeping in and of itself has no influence on the progression of the head injury. Furthermore, some persons who have suffered a concussion (or worse) become sleepy. If they fall asleep, they will not worsen because they fell asleep. If they worsen, it is part of the progression of the head injury, not related in any way to sleep. You cannot keep someone awake forever because they need sleep in order to rest. So, if you're in a situation in which you are assessing someone who has suffered a head injury to determine their neurologic status, you need to set reasonable intervals at which to perform the examinations. There is no magic number, but if you're concerned that someone is worsening, reassessing at least once every 2 hours seems reasonable. Signs of worsening following a blow to the head include increasing nausea and vomiting, blurred vision, increasing headache, and any change in mental status (e.g., declining alertness, ability to converse, or ability to follow commands; increasing confusion; or decreasing level of consciousness). If someone seems more sleepy (drowsy) than usual after a head injury, particularly if they are a child, perhaps difficult to assess and compounded with exhaustion, it's better to be safe than sorry by bringing that person to medical attention as soon as possible.

3. Confusion or amnesia for the event that caused the blackout is not uncommon and not necessarily serious, so long as the confusion does not persist for more than 30 to 45 minutes. Because a serious brain injury might not become immediately apparent, the wilderness traveler who has been knocked out should not venture farther from civilization for 24 hours. If headache or nausea persists beyond 2 to 3 hours, the victim should begin to make their way (assisted by rescuers) to medical care. If the injury is minor and evacuation is not undertaken, advance the victim's activity as follows: no physical activity and complete rest until without symptoms; next, light walking without any heavy lifting or resistance activity; next, mild exercise with slight resistance; finally, full activity. Don't progress beyond one "level" each 24-hour period. It might be helpful to not only avoid physical exertion for the first day, but also to avoid mental exertion.
4. If the victim wakes up and is at first completely normal, only to become drowsy, disoriented, or to lapse back into unconsciousness (typically, after 30 to 60 minutes of normal behavior), they should be evacuated and rushed to a hospital. This might indicate bleeding from an artery

inside the skull, causing an expanding blood clot (epidural hematoma) that compresses the brain. Frequently, the unconscious victim with an epidural hematoma will be noted to have one pupil significantly larger than the other (Fig. 55).

5. If the victim awakens but has a severe headache, bleeding from the ears or nose with no obvious external injury to those organs, clear fluid draining from the ear or nose, unequal-sized or poorly reactive (don't constrict promptly on exposure to bright light) pupils, weakness, bruising behind the ears or under the eyes, vomiting, or persistent drowsiness, they might have a skull fracture. Such signs mandate immediate evacuation to a medical facility.
6. In a wilderness setting, if the victim suffers a seizure (see page 80) after a head injury, no matter how brief, they should be transported to a medical facility for further evaluation.
7. If the victim is weak in an arm or leg, is disoriented, or has a fluctuating level of consciousness (normal 1 minute, drowsy the next), they might have suffered a significant brain injury and should be immediately rushed to a medical facility.
8. Because there is a high incidence of associated neck injuries, any person with a serious head injury should have their cervical spine stabilized (see page 88). Head injuries often cause vomiting. Therefore, be prepared to turn the victim on their side so that they don't choke (see page 22). A victim may need to be evacuated in the side (recovery) position.

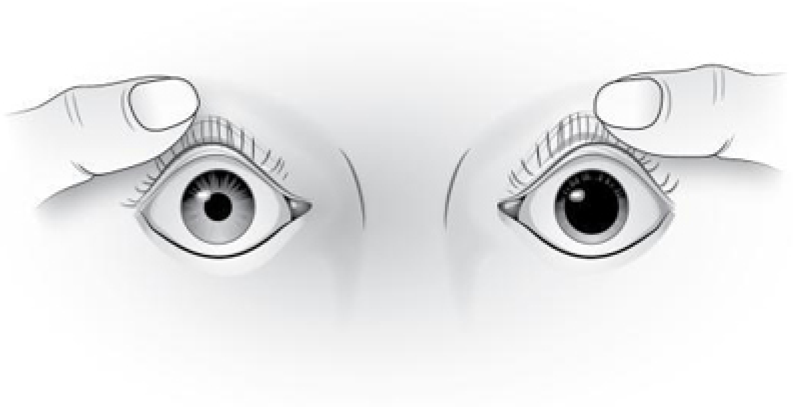


FIG. 55 Unequal pupils.

Neurological Assessment Scales. Frequent and regular assessment of the patient's neurological status should be carefully tracked; GCS (Glasgow Coma Scale) is commonly used in the hospital setting, but there are other available scales as well. GCS was developed as a scoring system not for acute care in the field, but rather for repeated bedside assessment of persons with changing states of consciousness and to measure duration of coma in an intensive care unit setting. So, it might not be reliable, in part because it is subjective (relative to the examiner's ability to apply it) and difficult to remember. Research suggests that simply determining that a patient cannot follow verbal commands is equivalent to a GCS score of 13 or less for the purpose of determining important injury outcomes.

Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS) This scale was introduced for medical professionals as a method to follow the progress of a brain-injured victim in an intensive care unit setting. However, because it is the most commonly used scale, you should be familiar with it and prepared to report your findings.

Eye Opening	Spontaneous To voice To pain None	4 3 2 1
Best Verbal Response	Oriented Confused Inappropriate Incomprehensible None	5 4 3 2 1
Best Motor Response	Obeys commands Localizes pain Withdraws from pain Flexes the limbs in response to pain Extends the limbs in response to pain None	6 5 4 3 2
GCS Total Score		3 to 15

- 15 is normal (no brain injury)
- 13 to 14 is (supposed to be) mild brain injury
- 9 to 12 is (supposed to be) moderate brain injury
- 3 to 8 is (supposed to be) severe brain injury

Persons with a GCS score of 15 can deteriorate even if they have suffered apparently minor head injuries. Warning signs for persons who might have a serious problem include increasing headache; persistent vomiting; restlessness; increased confusion or sleepiness; observed decrease in GCS score; uncontrolled urination or bowel movement; clear or blood-tinged fluid coming from an ear or the nose without an injury to these areas; raccoon eyes or Battle's sign (see page 91); a convulsion; weakness or numbness of a body part; and a focal blow to the side of the head. So, if a person appears normal, but has suffered any one of these, they are perhaps at a greater risk for having a serious brain injury. This person therefore should be watched very closely. If you are far from medical attention, you should make plans for a prompt evacuation.

Simplified motor score

Score the best response. Victims with score lower than 2 have high risk of brain injury.

- Obeys commands +2
- Localizes pain +1
- Withdrawal or a lesser response to pain +0

AVPU

- A—Alert
- V—Responds to verbal stimuli (not alert, e.g., moves to loud voice)
- P—Responds to painful stimuli (not alert, not responsive to verbal, e.g., moves in response to trapezius pinch)
- U—Unresponsive to all stimuli

ACDU

- A—Alert
- C—Confused
- D—Drowsy
- U—Unresponsive

The purpose of using any scale or score is to be able to get a handle on the patient's initial condition and then to be able to "follow" the patient over time in a consistent fashion, in order to know if the patient is improving, staying the same, or deteriorating. This can be very important for treatment and rescue decisions, including selection of a method of evacuation.

Pain control

For the purpose of treating a mild post-concussion headache, avoid using aspirin, ibuprofen, or naproxen in order to lessen a potentially increased risk of bleeding. However, if the victim appears to be doing well, acetaminophen can be used. If possible, don't use drugs, such as diphenhydramine or narcotics, that might alter the victim's state of consciousness.

Lacerations of the scalp

Cuts of the scalp tend to bleed freely, because the blood vessels are positioned in the thick skin in such a way that they cannot go into spasm and seal off after they are severed. For this reason, it's important to apply prolonged firm pressure to any head wound and to seek care as soon as possible. If possible, any closure method should be preceded by a quick, vigorous rinse of the wound to remove any large pieces of dirt, gravel, or other debris. After that, control bleeding by applying pressure to the wound with the cleanest cloth available. Next, attempt to close the wound. One way to keep the edges of the wound together is to dry the hair as best possible, then twirl hair (if it is at least 1.2 inches [3 cm] in length) on directly opposite sides of the wound to form strands, and then pull these strands toward each other to pull the skin together, then twirl them around each other. Then put a drop of rapid-cure cyanoacrylate glue (such as Super Glue) at the lowest junction of the strands while you're holding them together, and allow the glue to set up, which will occur very quickly. If a cyanoacrylate glue is not available, another way to do this is to first lay a long piece of string or dental floss along and beyond the length of the wound. Then, twirl the hair to form the strands, and twirl the strands together as described above. Next, use the string to tie the hair strands together (Fig. 56). Repeat the gluing or tying process as necessary to account for the entire open length of the wound. If the wound is large and you don't have a cyanoacrylate glue or any string, you might be able to bring the edges together by directly tying the twirled hair taken from opposite sides of the wound, but this is usually quite difficult.

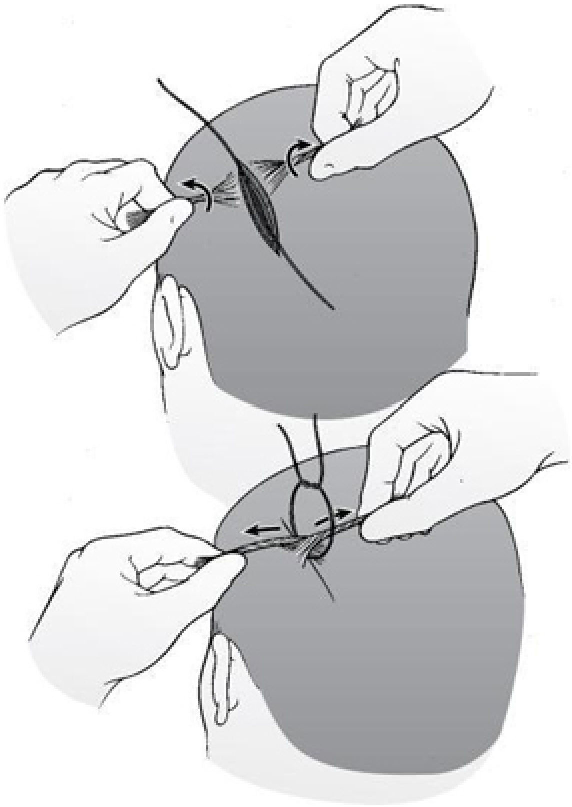


FIG. 56 String and hair-tying method for closing a scalp wound. Glue can be used instead of string.

A medical stapler can also be used to close scalp lacerations. See page 292.

For active scalp bleeds, a figure 8 suture placed directly over the bleeding vessel can control areas of bleeding and allow for better visualization of wounds (Fig. 57).

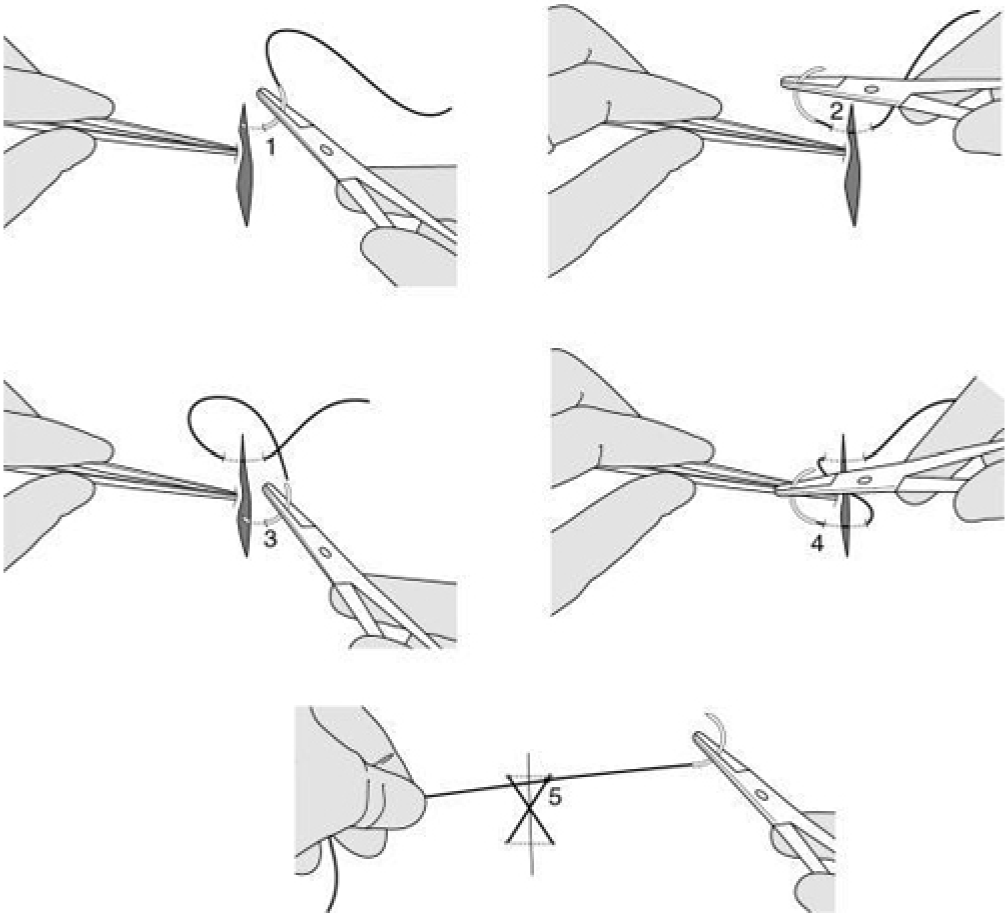


FIG. 57 Figure 8 suture for bleeding scalp wound.

Do not leave patients with bleeding scalp wounds unattended until bleeding is fully controlled. Wounds, especially on the back of the head, can lose a lot of blood into the ground or dressings without being noticed if not monitored.

For information regarding wound repair and bandaging, see pages 279 and 296.

Allergic reaction

A severe allergic reaction (anaphylaxis) can be life-threatening. It is caused by exposure to insect and animal venoms (such as wasp or jellyfish stings), plant products, medications, or any other agent to which the victim's immune system has been previously sensitized. The foods that most commonly cause allergic reactions are eggs, milk, fish, shellfish, nuts, soy, and wheat.

Symptoms of a severe allergic reaction include low blood pressure; difficulty breathing with wheezing; swelling of the lips, tongue, and throat (leading to airway obstruction); itching; hives (red, raised skin welts that can occur singly or in large patches); nausea and vomiting; diarrhea; abdominal pain; seizures; and abnormal heart rhythms. Any or all of these symptoms might be present in varying severity. The most common life-threatening problem is respiratory distress. Facial swelling indicates that the airway might soon become involved. *Be ready at all times to protect and support the airway.*

Treatment for a severe allergic reaction (anaphylaxis)

1. Remove the allergen. Assess ABCs.
2. Immediately administer epinephrine (adrenaline) if the victim has any signs of severe allergic reaction. Epinephrine is a life saving medicine that is usually injected into the patient's thigh via an autoinjector such as an EpiPen. Epinephrine (adrenaline) is injected intramuscularly (see page 469) as an aqueous solution of 1:1000 concentration in a dose of 0.3 to 0.5 mL for an adult and 0.01 mL/kg of body weight for a child (not to exceed 0.3 mL). For weight estimation, 1 kg equals 2.2 lb. It should be injected into the lateral thigh. If the thigh is obese, whether in an adult or a child, such that the needle might not reach into muscle, then inject into the lower thigh. If obesity is extreme, consider injecting into the mid-calf. See page 484 for proper administration details. The drug is available in preloaded syringes which include the EpiPen autoinjector (0.3 mg) and EpiPen Jr. autoinjector (0.15 mg), Auvi-Q autoinjectors, Adrenaclick autoinjectors, and SYMJEPI pre-filled (with epinephrine) syringes. FDA-approved generic products are sometimes less expensive. Other devices worldwide are the Jext, Emerade, Allerject, and Anapen. Instructions for

use accompany the kits. For dosing purposes, a 0.3-mg autoinjector should be used for adults and children over 66 lb (30 kg) in weight. Children 66 lb and under should be injected with a 0.15-mg autoinjector. According to manufacturers, epinephrine should be stored between 68oC to 77oF (20oC to 25oC) with brief excursions permitted to 59oF to 86oF (15oC to 30oC). When injecting into a child's leg, be sure to hold the leg firmly so that it does not move in order to prevent creating a cut. Never re-insert an autoinjector needle. Take particular care to handle preloaded syringes properly, to avoid inadvertent injection into an unintended location, such as a finger or toe. Do not intentionally inject epinephrine into the buttocks or a vein. Epinephrine should not be exposed to heat or sun, but does not need to be kept refrigerated. If clear (liquid) epinephrine turns cloudy or discolored, it should be discarded. When administering an injection, never share needles between people.

3. Administer diphenhydramine (Benadryl) by mouth. This is a histamine-1 receptor antagonist drug. A milder reaction that does not require epinephrine or corticosteroids can be managed with diphenhydramine alone. The adult dose is 25 to 50 mg every 4 to 6 hours; the pediatric dose is 1 mg/kg of body weight, also every 4 to 6 hours (usually 12.5, 25, or 50 mg). The major side effect of this medication is drowsiness. An example of a nonsedating antihistamine suitable for this purpose is fexofenadine (Allegra) 60 mg capsule for adults.
4. While administering corticosteroids is still recommended by many, its usefulness for acute allergic reaction has recently come under question. Until further notice, prednisone tablets in a dose of 20 to 60 mg should be given to an adult; the pediatric dose is 1 mg/kg of body weight. The onset of action of steroids is delayed for 4 to 6 hours; therefore, this drug should be given early. Corticosteroids are interchangeable to a certain degree. If you must substitute, here is a rough measure of equivalence: 20 mg prednisone equals 16 mg methylprednisolone equals 3 mg dexamethasone.
5. Administer an inhaled (aerosol or "micronized") bronchodilator. Bronchodilators (airway openers) are drugs that have the advantages of minimal side effects and direct delivery to the site of action. They are available in metered-dose handheld inhalers from which the victim inhales therapeutic puffs. An excellent drug for an acute attack is albuterol (Ventolin). The dose for an adult is 2 to 6 puffs initially, followed by 2 to 4 puffs every 3 to 6 hours. A child over age 12 who can manage the device can use a handheld inhaler; younger children often require oral (liquid) medication in the appropriate dose. See page 485 for more details.

6. Administer a histamine-2 receptor antagonist drug. This can be famotidine (Pepcid) 10 or 20 mg for an adult and 0.25 mg/kg for children. Note: A safety advisory was issued in autumn of 2019 by the FDA because it was determined that the antihistamine ranitidine (Zantac) might contain a possible cancer-causing nitrosamine impurity called N-nitrosodimethlamine (NDMA) at low levels, and ranitidine was discontinued in the US.
7. Evacuate the victim for medical evaluation while monitor for recurring reaction and the need for repeat dosing of epinephrine. A small percentage of victims may need repeat dosing of epinephrine. If a victim has a known allergy, it is wise to carry multiple autoinjectors of epinephrine on wilderness trips.

Reactions to specific agents (such as bee stings, plant contact, hay fever, etc.) are discussed elsewhere. Consult the index.

If someone suffers an episode of anaphylaxis, they should seek follow-up medical attention, to determine whether or not venom immunotherapy is advised. This evaluation might include measuring blood (serum) tryptase, which is an important indicator of the risk for future anaphylaxis. If a person believes that they are allergic to a specific drug but cannot recall the reaction or find documentation of drug allergy, they should consider seeking the advice of an allergist to determine whether or not they are truly allergic. This is very important when considering the likelihood that someone might benefit in the future from administration of a drug such as penicillin.

Seizure

A seizure ("fit"; epilepsy) usually represents vigorous involuntary muscle activity and altered consciousness associated with abnormal electrical discharges within the brain. It might be caused by a number of underlying disorders, which include structural abnormalities of the brain (scars, birth defects), injury, tumor, infection, bleeding (stroke), uncontrolled hypertension, lack of oxygen, abnormal blood chemistries (calcium, sodium, glucose), and "recreational" drug abuse (including drug or alcohol withdrawal). Seizures may be triggered by failure to take prescribed anti-seizure medication.

Most seizures have been grouped into various classifications, which include the following types:

Partial. This seizure is initiated in a focal, or "restricted," part of the outermost layer (cortex) of the brain. Consciousness might (complex seizure) or might not (simple seizure) be impaired.

Generalized. This seizure involves the cortex of the brain in a symmetrical and synchronous manner, and might lead to "automatic," "absent," or profoundly agitated behavior patterns.

Tonic-clonic. Grand mal ("big illness"). In this type of generalized seizure disorder, the victim classically becomes unconscious and has violent repetitive muscle activity with tongue biting, grunting, eye deviation to one side, difficulty breathing, and occasional loss of bladder or bowel control. Following the seizure, the victim will be confused or combative for a time (10 to 60 minutes) as they slowly return to normal (postictal phase). They might sleep for a while after a seizure.

Status epilepticus. This is defined as prolonged seizure activity for a period that exceeds 5 minutes, or as multiple seizures without a return of normal consciousness between fits. Status epilepticus is a true medical emergency.

Absence seizure. Petit mal ("little illness"). This is an "absence" attack generally seen in a child; in it, they seem to be daydreaming, distracted, or confused. It is not associated with violent abnormal physical behavior.

Treatment for seizure

1. Protect the airway (see page 18). If the victim vomits, do your best to clear the mouth and nose of debris. Turn the victim on their side. They might suddenly bite down and hold their teeth clenched, so take care not to get your fingers caught in the mouth. *Never try to pour liquids into the mouth of a seizing victim. Do not place objects in their mouth.*
2. Protect the victim from injuring themself during the seizure. This can be done with cushions, sleeping bag, or constant repositioning of the victim. If they need to be physically restrained to protect them from their environment, keep them on their side. Loosen all clothing around the neck.
3. In most cases, a seizure will only last 30 seconds to 2 minutes and will be self-limited. The victim will be confused for a few minutes to an hour after the seizure and should be watched closely for recurrence or difficulty in breathing. If the victim continues to seize or does not wake up between seizures (status epilepticus), they must be transported to a medical facility as soon as possible for drug administration. Any victim who does not fully awaken, who awakens but has never previously had a seizure, or who appears weak or feverish after a seizure should be rapidly evacuated.
4. When the victim awakens, determine if they have ever had a seizure before and whether they are supposed to be taking anticonvulsant medications. The most common cause of a seizure is failure to take prescribed antiseizure medication(s). If the victim has been delinquent, they should take their medicine as soon as possible. For an adult, common medications are phenytoin sodium (Dilantin) 300 to 400 mg per day, phenobarbital 30 to 60 mg three times a day, or diazepam (Valium) 5 to 10 mg three to four times a day. Other common antiseizure medications include levetiracetam (Keppra), lamotrigine (Lamictal), pregabalin (Lyrica), valproic acid (Depakote), clonazepam (Klonopin), gabapentin (Neurontin), trimethadione (Tridione), primidone (Mysoline), and ethosuximide (Zarontin). Never administer an oral medication to anyone unless they are awake and capable of purposeful swallowing. One exception to this rule is the careful administration of sugar to an unconscious diabetic patient (see below).
5. A possible cause of unconsciousness or seizure in a person who suffers from diabetes is low blood sugar (hypoglycemia) (see Diabetes page 162). If a diabetic suffers a seizure, they should be given sugar as soon as possible. This might be difficult to do away from the hospital, because intravenous injection will be required if the victim cannot swallow. If a diabetic feels weak, sweaty, dizzy, or nauseated, they should

immediately ingest a sugar-containing beverage, or concentrated liquid glucose (Glutose: one tube contains 15 g). If the victim is unconscious, sugar granules or small squirts of Glutose can be placed under the tongue or between the cheek and gums, from where they can be passively swallowed. Position the victim on their side in the recovery position and take care to protect the airway. Once a diabetic suffering from hypoglycemia perks up from ingesting something containing sugar, be certain that the total amount of carbohydrate ingested is 15 to 20 g. This can be accomplished with 4 ounces of carbohydrate-containing juice or non-diet (sweetened) soda, 8 ounces of milk, sugar tablets or 4 teaspoons of table sugar, a tube of Glutose, 5 hard candies, 2 tablespoons of raisins, 5 soda crackers, or a tablespoon of honey. If a glucose meter is handy, check to see that the blood sugar is at least 70 mg/deciliter, and preferably above 100 mg/deciliter. If not, repeat the feeding. Instructions for administering glucagon by nasal powder or injection to a diabetic suffering from severe hypoglycemia are found on page 163.

6. If a woman in her final (third) trimester of pregnancy, or soon after (within 4 weeks) the birth of her child, suffers a seizure, she should be assumed to be suffering from a disorder known as eclampsia, which can be life-threatening. Eclampsia includes high blood pressure, kidney dysfunction, heart failure, fluid in the lungs, and perhaps central nervous system hypersensitivity (including stroke). The woman should immediately be rushed to a medical facility, where she will likely be treated with intravenous magnesium, antihypertensive medication, and perhaps induction of labor to deliver her child if that has not yet occurred.
7. An alcoholic person who suddenly and significantly reduces their alcohol use can suffer withdrawal, as their formerly chronically depressed nervous system becomes unencumbered by the sedative effect of alcohol. That person will be very tremulous (“jittery”), be unable to sleep, become anxious and then confused or delirious (“delirium tremens: DTs”), and/or suffer a convulsion/seizure. They are at increased danger for an accident, such as a fall or drowning. Very common symptoms include hand tremor, sweating, headache, and visual/auditory hallucinations (seeing/hearing things that are not there). Severe alcohol withdrawal can be fatal, so it must be promptly recognized and treated. The drug commonly used for treatment is a benzodiazepine, such as diazepam or lorazepam.
8. A person, particularly when emotionally distressed, might suffer a “pseudo seizure” (false seizure; not a real seizure). In such cases, the patient might be thrashing, turning the head briskly from side-to-side, have normal color and breathing, flutter the eyelids, and awaken rapidly

> (nearly immediately) to a normal conscious state. They might or might not be tearful and will not have suffered side of tongue biting or loss of bladder/bowels. When in doubt, always treat the victim as having suffered a true seizure and take appropriate safety and medical precautions and actions.

Anyone who has suffered a first-time seizure, regardless of the cause, should be evacuated and evaluated by a neurologist.

Fractures and dislocations

A bone fracture (break) can be simple (one clean break) or comminuted (multiple breaks or shattered) (Fig. 58). Furthermore, it might be closed (skin intact) or open ("compound," with the skin broken, often with the bone visible in the wound). An open fracture is highly prone to infection. A fracture might be associated with injuries to adjacent nerves and blood vessels.

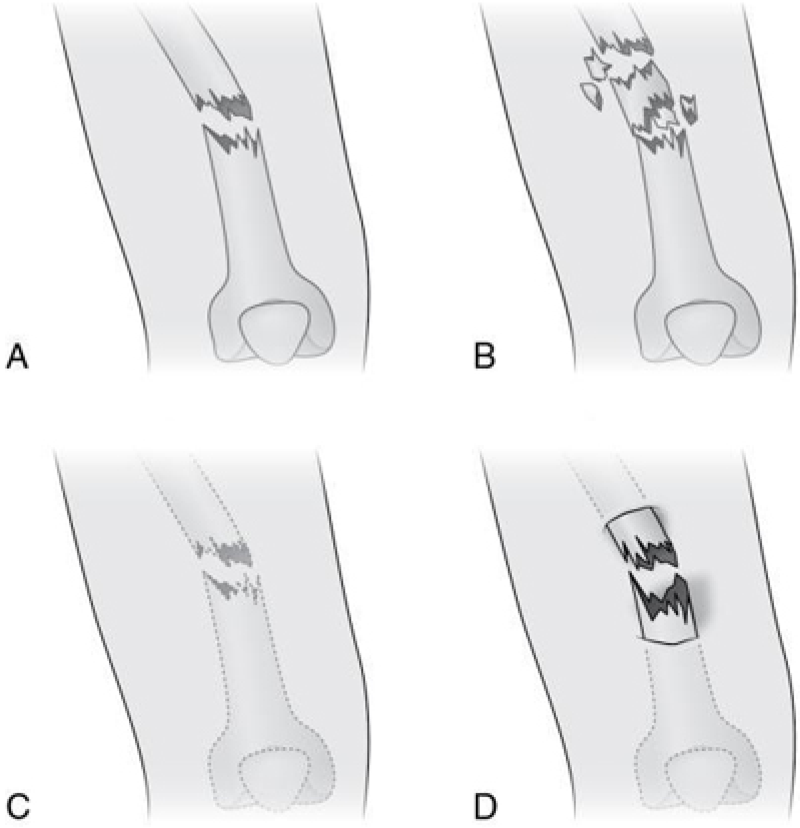


FIG. 58 Fractured bones. **A,** Simple fracture (one break). **B,** Comminuted fracture (multiple breaks). **C,** Closed fracture (skin unbroken). **D,** Open, or compound, fracture (skin broken).

A broken bone or dislocation (displacement of a bone at the joint) should be suspected whenever there has been sufficient force, if a snap or crack was heard, if the victim cannot move or bear weight on the body part, or if an injured body part is painful, swollen, discolored, or deformed. Pain with a broken bone tends to be instantaneous, constant, and worsened considerably with motion, which might also create a grating sensation and noise. If something is deformed or "grates" with movement, apply a splint. A broken or dislocated bone should be compared with the normal opposite limb; asymmetry is a key sign of a significant injury.

It's helpful to use a standardized approach to examining an injured limb, to be certain that the examination is complete and nothing significant overlooked:

1. When examining an injury, always begin with an uninjured area and work toward the injury, so that the victim's response to pain doesn't interfere with your exam. Ideally, injuries should be examined at skin level.
2. Otherwise, begin your examination at the furthest point of the limb and work your way back to the origin. For instance, for the upper extremity, examine the fingers, hand, wrist, forearm, elbow, upper arm, and shoulder, in that order.
3. Have the victim attempt to move each joint voluntarily through an active range of motion. Note what is painful. If voluntary range of motion is limited by manifestations of an injury (e.g., pain, swelling, deformity, weakness), then very gently attempt passive range of motion (e.g., assist the victim). Take care to stop if there is an obstruction or the victim objects.
4. A small child with a fracture or dislocation will not use the affected body part and will cry vigorously with the slightest manipulation. Pain and swelling in the vicinity of a joint of a child should be assumed to be a fracture or dislocation.
5. If necessary, manage a dislocation (described in various sections later) and then apply a splint. Take care during application of the splint to not reproduce the dislocation.

If you think that a bone might be broken, it's best to treat it as a break until an x-ray can be obtained or the situation shows obvious marked improvement (which usually requires 4 to 6 days).

Because of the force necessary to break or displace a bone, any person with a fracture or dislocation should be examined carefully for other injuries. All fractures and some dislocations cause a certain amount of bleeding, which can be significant. For instance, it's possible to lose 500 to 750 mL of blood at the site of a humerus fracture, 500 mL to 1 L from a tibia fracture, 1 to 2 L from a femur fracture, and more than 1 L from a broken pelvis. Be prepared to treat the victim for shock (see page 70). Don't manipulate a broken limb unnecessarily, even if circulation to the limb seems normal; excess motion increases the risk of damage to the bones, nerves, and blood vessels.

If the skin has been disrupted in the vicinity of the broken bone, the fracture is open. The bone end might or might not be visible through the wound, and bleeding might be minor or major. If a victim has sustained an open fracture, is alert enough to swallow liquids, and is more than 6 hours distant from a medical facility, administer penicillin, erythromycin, amoxicillin, or cephalexin 500 mg by mouth every 4 hours. Rinse the wound with tap water or disinfected drinking water to remove any obvious dirt (and thus, bacteria), and then cover it with a sterile dressing. Don't vigorously scrub or irrigate the wound. Unless there are signs of loss of circulation (coldness, blue color or paleness, numbness) or it's necessary to realign the limb to allow splinting and evacuation, don't try to reposition the injury or to push the bone back under the skin. If you must manipulate the limb, rinse any visible bone with clean water (avoid scrubbing the bone itself), and then allow the bone to slide under the skin without touching it. While holding traction (pulling on the end portion of a limb in a longitudinal axis to achieve correct anatomic alignment), immediately apply a splint (see page 86) to prevent further motion and damage.

In general, it's unwise to manipulate an injured limb more than necessary. If the extremity is minimally deformed, but the circulation is intact (normal pulses, sensation, temperature, and color) you may be able to securely splint it in the position in which you found it. On the other hand, if the circulation to an extremity is obviously absent (the extremity is numb, cold, and blue or pale), if the victim is in extreme discomfort, or if gross deformity prevents moving the victim out of a dangerous situation or prevents the application of a good splint, then an attempt to restore the part to a normal position is justified. Early realignment is easier than delayed realignment, can alleviate a major amount of pain, helps control blood loss into the surrounding soft tissues, can decrease the incidence of fat emboli (fat from the bone marrow entering the bloodstream and causing severe illness), and often allows easier splinting and transport. Be advised, however, that relocation of a fracture or dislocation might be difficult and transiently very painful for the victim. If you're going to attempt to realign a limb, it should be done as soon as possible after the injury (preferably, within 3 hours), before swelling and increasing pain and muscle spasm make the maneuver impossible. If there is no deformity, splint the injured body part in the "position of function" (the position it would assume if it were at rest) (Fig. 59).

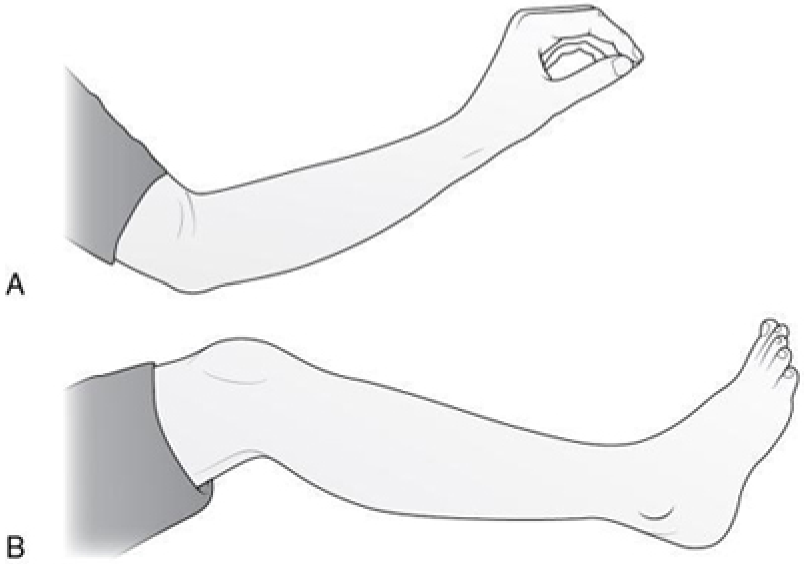


FIG. 59 Position of function (normal anatomic resting position). Unless otherwise specified, the upper and lower limbs should be bandaged and/or splinted in these positions. **A,** Upper extremity. **B,** Lower extremity.

To attempt to reposition a displaced body part, apply steadily increasing traction (pulling force) to the injury along the normal axis of alignment while applying countertraction above the injury. Don’t forcefully lever the bone or snap a bone back into position with a quick, forceful motion. To gain mobility in a deformed area, it’s sometimes necessary to gently rock the body parts or slightly accentuate the deformity (“distract” the joint to create maneuvering space between the bones) while applying continuous traction away from the body (Fig. 60). This allows the dislocated part to clear any obstruction and slip back into position. If the part is repositioned, it should be held in place while you splint it. Often the easiest way to do this is to fasten it, with padding in between, to a normal bone nearby, such as finger-to-finger, or leg-to-leg. After such maneuvers, check to see that circulation has been restored.

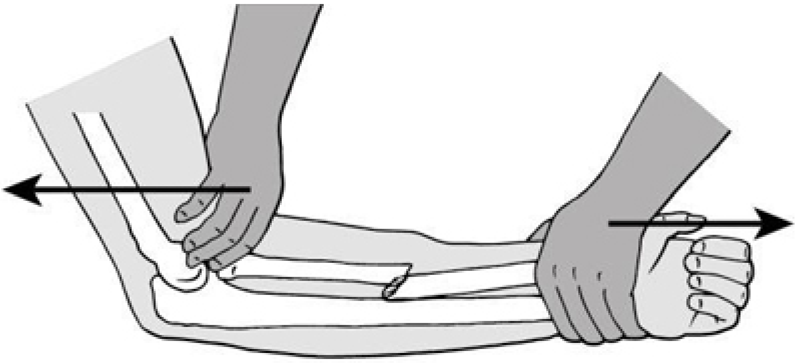


FIG. 60 Traction in line to reposition deformed fractures.

Compartment syndrome

Within the limbs (legs, arms, forearms, feet, hands, and fingers), there are "compartments" defined by inelastic boundaries of tough connective tissue, or fascia. These compartments contain bones, groups of muscles, blood vessels, and nerves. If swelling occurs within a compartment—typically caused by bleeding, continuous excessive external pressure, or a crush injury—the pressure can exceed 20 mm of mercury, which diminishes circulation to the compartment and rapidly causing tissue death. The most common cause of compartment syndrome in a wilderness enthusiast is swelling surrounding a broken bone or associated with a severe blunt injury, such as occurs after a fall. The lower leg and forearm are the most common sites. Compartment syndrome is rare following snakebite (see page 359), because most of the swelling following a bite is confined to superficial soft tissues.

Signs and symptoms include the "5 Ps": pain, pallor (pale color of the skin), pulselessness (although pulses might be present), paresthesia (numbness and tingling), and paralysis of the affected body part. Severe pain seems out of proportion to the injury. The underlying tissue feels extremely tight, and pain is increased markedly with external pressure. Stretching the muscles that run through the compartment causes worsened pain. There might be decreased sensation or tingling in those skin areas supplied by the nerves that run through the compartment—for example, decreased sensation to pinprick or light touch on the top of the foot in the web space between the great and second toes because of pressure on the deep peroneal nerve, which runs through the anterior leg compartment. The limb might become pale or show a bluish tinge. When pulses become diminished or lost, the situation has become severe, and the limb will be weak or become useless (paralyzed). Very rarely, a compartment syndrome can occur in the gluteal region.

Field treatment involves elevation of the affected limb, splinting, padding to protect against further injury, and rapid evacuation. A true compartment syndrome must be treated with surgery to open the compartment and allow the pressure to be reduced. Severe damage can occur within 6 hours of the onset of the syndrome or can be delayed by hours or days as the limb swells, so it's important to frequently reexamine (every 30 minutes for the first 2 hours; every hour for the next 12 hours; every 2 hours for the next 24 hours; then every 4 hours for the next 48 hours) the person who has suffered an injury that makes them vulnerable to a compartment syndrome. Carefully take down splints as necessary to evaluate limbs at skin level. Expect to adjust improvised splints frequently to account for swelling, movement, stretching of materials. Build splints using knots and materials that are secure but can be undone and reapplied to facilitate monitoring. Don't administer aspirin to the victim. Cold packs are of limited, if any, benefit; never immerse a limb in ice water.

Splints and slings

A splint should be applied to any broken bone, bad sprain, or severely lacerated body part after gross deformity is corrected, to maintain proper position and immobilize the injured part (or parts) so that it cannot be displaced. This prevents further nerve, blood vessel, and muscle damage, and keeps broken bone ends from grating against each other or from poking through the skin. A sling-and-swathe combination (see Fig. 73) helps to further immobilize a limb. Pain can be lessened or relieved by eliminating unnecessary motion, allowing more rapid transport.

These general guidelines should be followed in the application of splints:

1. Practice, practice, practice!
2. Carry splints or materials to allow improvisation, such as tape, knife, parachute cord, safety pins, wire, and plastic cable ties. Closed-cell foam (e.g., Ensolite) is a superb material for padding an improvised splint.
3. Examine every suspected fracture at skin level to see if it is open or closed (see page 83). Control bleeding (see page 60) and apply a dressing if necessary.
4. Check the circulation below the fracture site by inspecting pulses, skin color, sensation, and movement of fingers and toes. In the arm, check the radial and brachial pulses; in the leg, check the popliteal, dorsalis pedis, and posterior tibial pulses (see Fig. 17).
5. Remove all constrictive jewelry (watches, bracelets, rings, and so forth). Left in place, these can become inadvertent tourniquets on swollen limbs and fingers (see page 471).

6. Splint the joint above and below the injury. For instance, to keep the knee from moving, you often need to prevent motion at the ankle, knee, and hip. There will be times when this is difficult but do the best you can.
7. If possible, fashion the splint first on an uninjured body part or on a bystander to work out sizing and design challenges and then transfer it to the injured area. This lessens manipulation of the injured part and minimizes pain associated with splinting.
8. If the scene is safe, splint the fracture(s) before the victim is moved.
9. Splint the body part in a "position of function." For the hand, this would be like holding a soda can; for the wrist, straight or slightly bent upward; for the elbow, bent at a right angle; for the hip, slightly flexed; for the knee, straight or slightly bent; and for the ankle, bent at close to 90 degrees.
10. When applying a splint, try not to move or displace the injured area. Use clothing pulled tightly against the skin for a grip, or place hands above and below the estimated break in a bone in order to apply traction and maintain alignment while handling the limb. Take care to apply the splint in a way that it doesn't cut off the circulation. Watch what you're doing at all times so that you can observe the position of the bone(s).
11. Pad the splint properly by filling empty space to allow even pressure and stability, protect all bony prominences, alleviate pressure points, and immobilize injuries as best as possible. This can be done with foam, a sleeping pad, pack material, or clothing. Be mindful to NOT sacrifice items of clothing that you may need to stay protected from the elements.
12. Administer appropriate pain medication. If the injury is closed (skin unbroken) and there are no signs of decreased circulation, apply ice or snow packs intermittently (10 minutes "on" alternated with 10 minutes "off") to the swollen area. Don't apply snow or ice directly to the skin; protect the skin with cloth. Elevate the injured part as much as possible, to minimize swelling.
13. After a splint is applied, check the limb periodically to make certain that swelling inside the splint has not cut off the circulation. Partially take down splint as needed to evaluate at skin level. This is particularly important in cold weather, in which numbness can be a confusing factor. Expect to adjust splints frequently during extended patient care scenarios.
14. Insist that all victims seek medical evaluation when they return home, to be certain that all bones are properly aligned and that no further intervention is needed.

Splints can be fashioned from sticks, cardboard, foam pads, rolled newspapers, pack frames, ski poles, paddles, ice axes, or other similar objects

(Fig. 61). Foldable or rollable wire splints can be constructed by cutting 6 inch by 30 inch (15 cm by 76 cm) and 18 inch by 36 inch (46 cm by 91 cm) pieces of ⅛ inch or ¼ inch (3 mm or 6 mm) wire mesh and covering the sharp edges with adhesive or duct tape. Fasteners can include belts, triangular bandages, tape, elastic wraps, shirtsleeves, and blankets. Slings can be fashioned from triangular bandages, cravats, sheets, ropes, and vines.

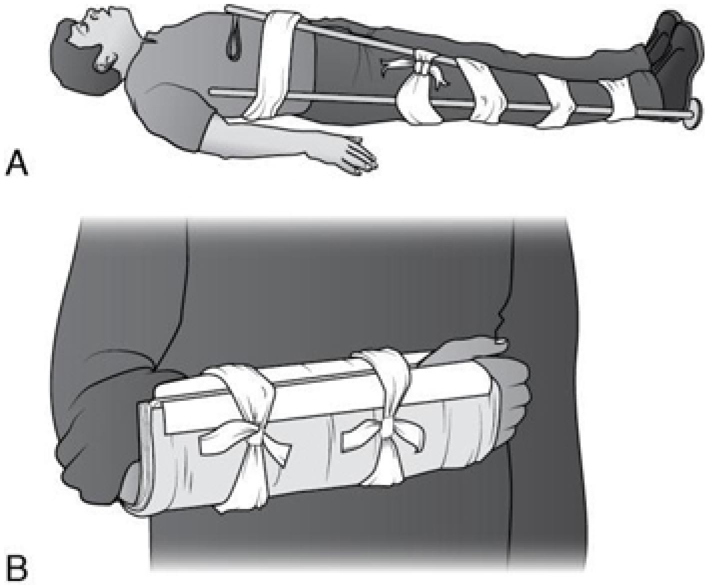


FIG. 61 Splints can be fashioned from items such as **(A)** ski poles and **(B)** rolled newspaper.

An inflatable air splint is sometimes less desirable, in that it can attain only one shape and might create circulation problems by exerting too much pressure on injured tissues. If you use an air splint, be sure that it has a mechanism to adjust for volume expansion (heat and high altitude). When stored at freezing temperatures, it should be kept partially inflated so that any frozen moisture (from inflating breaths) within the air bladder doesn't cause the walls to adhere.

The SAM Splint has become a standard item for the outdoor first aid kit. The core of the SAM Splint is a long rectangle of "O" temper, ultrathin aluminum alloy. The covering layers are made of dermatologically safe closed-pore foam. The splint is available in a standard size of 4¼ inches by 36 inches, which rolls easily to become a 3 inch by 4¼ inch cylinder. It can be shaped to splint a great number of body parts. The splints also come in a 5½ -inch wide XL version, in prepackaged lengths of 18 inches and 9 inches, and as a finger splint that measures 3¾ by 1¾ inches. Appendix Four shows common applications of the SAM Splint.

To learn more about specific splints and slings, read about the specific injuries in the following sections.

Taping

Taping techniques are usually mastered by athletic trainers. It’s not likely that outdoor adventurers will be carrying the padding, foam prewrap, benzoin spray, and athletic tape necessary to complete a comprehensive taping of large joint injuries or to tape for injury prevention. However, just in case the supplies are handy, instructions for taping appear with a few specific injuries. In general, taping does not supply the same amount of support as does splinting. The most common tape is white athletic tape. A very useful product is self-adherent elastic wrap, such as Coban. Adhesive tape can be applied directly to skin, but it will lose adhesion if the skin is not shaved first. If you shave, do so very carefully to avoid nicks and the possibility of creating a site(s) for infection. Plus, when tape is removed from hairy skin, it can be quite painful. Be very careful when applying tape to an acutely injured body part, because swelling underneath the constricting tape can cause circulation problems. Avoid leaving gaps in the tape because this leads to blisters. Try to apply the tape in a way that follows the skin contours and avoids wrinkles and try to overlap the tape a half-width on successive wraps or strips. If there are any small cuts, skin nicks, or abrasions, always cover these with antiseptic ointment and a bandage before taping. Avoid tension over bony prominences. Taping a sprained ankle each morning on an extended hiking trip can require many rolls of tape (approximately ½ roll per application). If you anticipate needing tape for an expedition, then consider having each participant carry a simple first aid kit that includes one roll of tape and pool group resources as needed.

Specific injuries

The major bones of the skeleton are illustrated in Fig. 62. Check Appendix Four for instructions on how to use the SAM Splint for specific injuries. These design principles can also be applied using alternative materials.

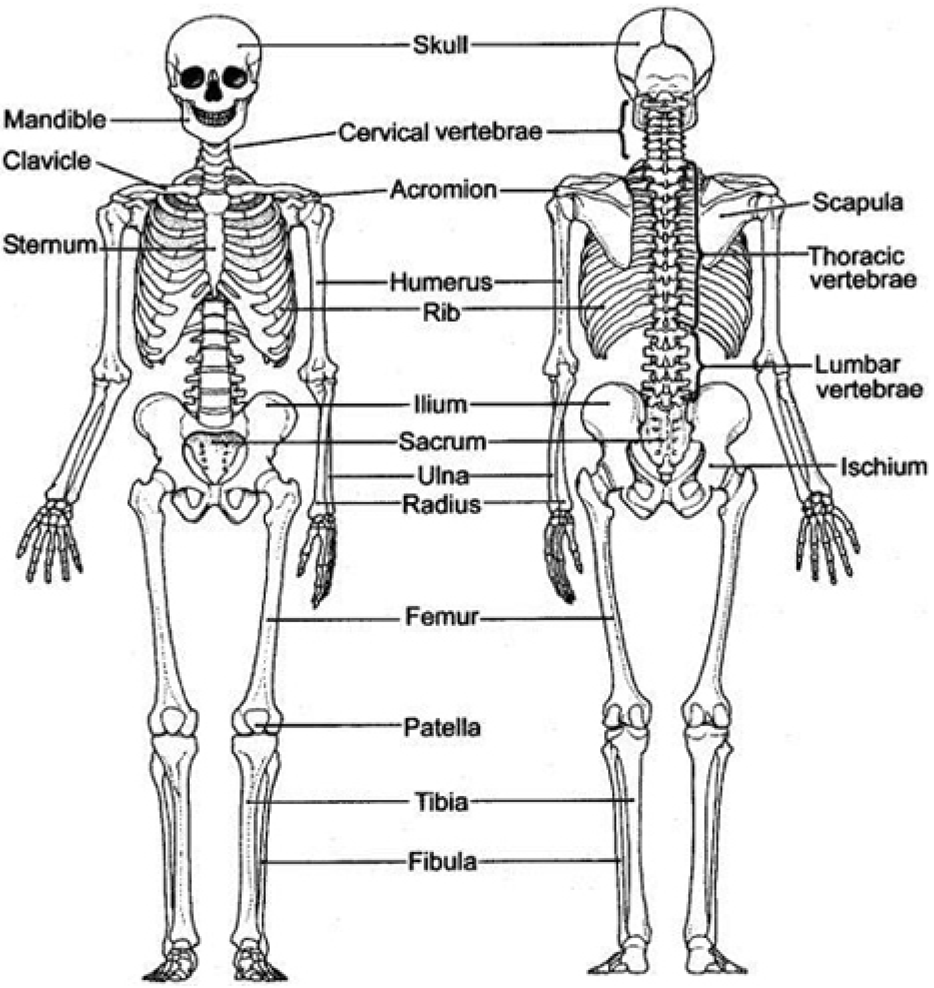

Skull
Mandible
Cervical vertebrae
Clavicle
Acromion
Scapula
Sternum
Thoracic vertebrae
Humerus
Rib
Lumbar vertebrae
Ilium
Sacrum
Ischium
Ulna
Radius
Femur
Patella
Tibia
Fibula

FIG. 62 Major bones of the skeleton.

Neck

If a fracture of the cervical spine is suspected because of neck pain, weakness or loss of feeling in an arm or leg, tingling in an arm or leg, loss of bladder or bowel function indicative of spinal cord injury, inability to turn/flex/extend the neck, or high energy mechanism of injury (e.g., a victim who has fallen, is unconscious, and has a face or head injury), you must immediately stabilize the head and neck to protect the spinal cord. Initially, this can be done by a rescuer holding the victim's head in a neutral alignment (Fig. 22 and 23). Further spine stabilization can be achieved by taping the head to a backboard or stretcher, by applying a rigid collar (which can be fashioned from a SAM Splint, as in Fig. 321), or by placing sandbags or their equivalent on either side of the head (see Fig. 24). Another technique is to use the padded hip belt of an inverted backpack (see Fig. 25). *It may be necessary to move the victim's head and neck to reposition in order to allow the victim to breathe, to apply a c-collar and backboard, and to evacuate.* Gentle traction in line can be used to carefully align the head and neck to an anatomically neutral position of function. Straighten the head and neck in small, controlled movements. Stop if there is severe pain or any resistance. Once a neutral alignment has been achieved, the spine should be stabilized and protected from movements out of neutral. (See page 33).

For the ambulatory, cooperative victim with minor neck discomfort, a thick pad (rolled towel, jacket) can be placed posteriorly at the base of the neck. Secure this by wrapping tape or cloth around the forehead, and then cross it over the pad and bring it back out under the armpits to be tied across the chest (see Fig. 26). Alternatively, use a thick removable waistband from a backpack or a rolled Ensolite pad or a rolled jacket in a horse-collar configuration. *Soft-collar techniques should not be relied on to hold the neck immobile; they merely offer gentle support.*

If the victim must be moved or turned on their side (most commonly to allow vomiting or to place insulation beneath him), hold their head fixed between your forearms while you hold their shoulders with your hands or hold the victim's head with your palms on either side of skull and fingers extending over cheeks and jaw and "logroll" the victim using as many rescuers as possible to avoid unnecessary head, neck, and spine motion.

Logrolling the victim (see Figs. 27 and 28)

1. The first rescuer approaches the victim from the head and keeps the head and shoulders in a fixed position so that the neck doesn't move.
2. The second rescuer extends the victim's arm (on the side over which the victim is to be rolled) above the victim's head. The first rescuer might use this arm to help hold the victim's head in proper position or maintain a secure grip on head with hands or forearms. Alternatively both arms can be crossed at the chest or kept at the victim's sides.
3. All rescuers work together to roll the victim without moving the neck. The head holder is in charge and initiates synchronized movements with verbal commands.

Alternative methods for moving a victim with a suspected spine injury include the lift and slide and the straight lift. See Transport of the Injured Victim on page 453.

An alert victim with a broken neck or severely torn ligament will usually have enough discomfort from the injury and muscle spasm to force them to hold their neck still. However, someone with a head injury or who is under the influence of alcohol or drugs might feel no pain and can have an undetected serious injury that will be worsened by motion. Persons with severely altered mental status are at a significant risk, so should be presumed to have a broken neck and handled accordingly.

Any victim with a suspected neck fracture should be transported on a firm board, in a scoop stretcher or on a vacuum mattress, if possible. (See Fig. 63 and Fig. 271 and Transport of the Injured Victim on page 453).

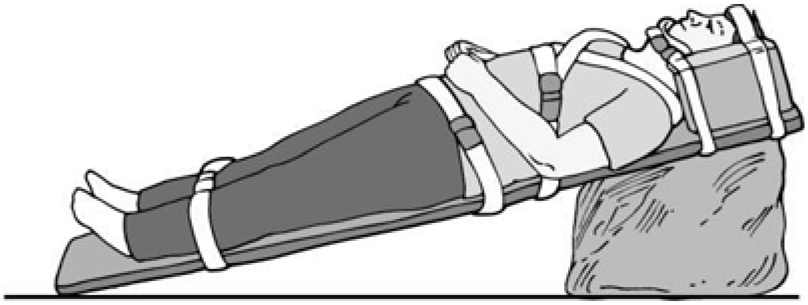


FIG. 63 Elevate head in severe head injuries and skull fractures using rigid backboard if spine injury suspected.

See page 33 for more discussion on stabilizing suspected spine injuries.

Extended time on hard backboards and litters can cause pressure injuries and in general these devices should be used for extrication and transportation, not for prolonged stabilization. During an extended rescue situation, a victim should be taken off a hard backboard and litter using the same careful movement techniques described previously and placed on flat, padded, insulated surface.

“Clearing” a cervical spine

It’s sometimes as important to know when an injury is absent as it is to recognize when it is present. This is true in the case of a broken neck.

The “Canadian C-Spine Rule” can assist with determining who might have suffered a significant cervical spine injury. Persons with a high risk for a broken neck are greater than or equal to 65 years of age; fall from a height greater than or equal to 3 feet; fall down five or more stairs; receive a direct blow to the top of the head; are in a motor vehicle accident characterized by high speed, rollover, or passenger ejection; are in a motorized recreational vehicle accident; have numbness/tingling in an arm or leg; or resist turning the head without assistance to either side to a distance of 45 degrees in angle from the midline (facing forward).

“Clearing” the spine means determining that there is likely not a broken neck. Steps to take to determine the presence or absence of a broken neck should be done only if the victim is awake and alert, not intoxicated or otherwise with an altered mental status, is cooperative, and is not distracted (in particular, by pain from another area of the body). To decide that such a person does not have a broken neck, trained medical professionals are taught to do the following actions in *precisely* the order listed:

1. Ask if there is any numbness, tingling, or other abnormal sensation in any arm or leg (which could be attributed to a spinal cord injury). If there is, then you should not “clear” the cervical spine.
2. Ask if the victim has any pain in their neck. If there is pain, then you should not “clear” the cervical spine.
3. Feel each bone (vertebra) in the neck beginning from just below the skull to the first few bones in the upper back (thoracic spine). If there is pain, then you should not “clear” the cervical spine.
4. Have the victim voluntarily turn their head to the right to a distance of 45 degrees. Instruct them to stop if they feel any pain. If there is pain, then you should not “clear” the cervical spine.
5. Have the victim voluntarily turn their head to the left to a distance of 45 degrees. Instruct them to stop if they feel any pain. If there is pain, then you should not “clear” the cervical spine.
6. Have the victim tilt their head backward, extending the neck. Instruct them to stop if they feel any pain. If there is pain, then you should not “clear” the cervical spine.
7. Have the victim touch their chin to their chest. Instruct them to stop if they feel any pain. If there is pain, then you should not “clear” the cervical spine.

If you complete this evaluation without the victim complaining of neck pain or stiffness, then you can be reasonably certain that they don’t have a broken neck. If unable to “clear” the cervical spine then treat the victim as if they have a spine injury as discussed on pages 33 and 88.

Skull and face

See page 72. If there is a fracture of the skull, the victim might demonstrate black eyes (“raccoon eyes”), bruising behind the ears (“Battle’s sign”), or cerebrospinal fluid (CSF; clear or watery blood-tinged fluid) leaking from the nose or ears. If CSF is seen to be leaking from the nose or ears, then elevate the head 30 to 60 degrees from the flat position if there is no reason to not do so (such as a suspected spine fracture). If you suspect a spine fracture, then place the victim on backboard first and then elevate the head of the backboard (see Fig. 63). One way to differentiate CSF from blood is to collect the dripping fluid onto a white gauze, cloth, or towel. Blood coalesces in the center (like the yolk of an egg) and becomes surrounded by a “halo” (band) of clear or pink-tinged fluid (CSF). If there are fractures of bones in the face, there will usually be swelling and pain of the overlying soft tissues. If the fracture(s) is severe, the upper teeth when grasped might move. If swelling is severe around the nose, breathing might be impaired. If the bones around the eye socket are broken, there might be double vision or inability of the affected eye (or eyes) to traverse its full range of motion. If there is a fracture of the bones that comprise the orbit, the eye might appear to be sunken in the face and/or the victim might complain of double vision worsened when looking up.

Nose

See page 215.

Jaw

A fractured jaw is usually caused by a fall or a blow from a closed fist. The lower bone (mandible) might be broken in one or more places. The victim will complain of pain, swelling, inability to fully open or close their mouth, deviation of the jaw when opening the mouth, improper fit of the teeth, perhaps missing or broken teeth, and difficulty talking. If the fracture extends into the oral cavity, there might be bleeding from the mouth. Treatment is to wrap a bandage over the top of the head and under the jaw for support (Fig. 64). *It should be easily removable in case the victim needs to vomit.* A liquid diet should be maintained until the victim can reach the hospital. If a person has a significant facial injury, particularly if there is bleeding or vomiting, allow them to sit in order to lean forward and drain these fluids without choking. If they need to be recumbent, don’t place them on their back. Rather, put them in the recovery position (see page 22).

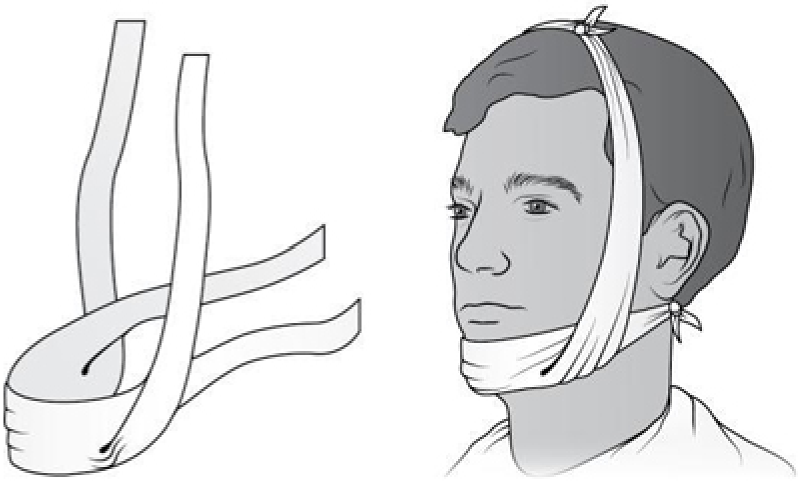


FIG. 64 Bandage for a fractured or dislocated jaw. The bandage must be easy to remove, in case the victim needs to vomit.

A dislocated jaw can occur from a blow, from a wide-mouthed yawn, or even during sleep. The mandible slips loose from one or both of its two bony sockets below the ears and slides forward (Fig. 65). To reposition the mandible, approach the seated victim from behind and grasp the jaw by placing your thumbs (with cloth or gauze padding for traction) inside the mouth against the lower molars (rear teeth), holding the bone firmly with your remaining fingers. Exert steady pressure straight down until you feel the mandible "pop" back into place, and the victim says their teeth fit properly (see Fig. 65, B). It's sometimes possible to reposition the jaw by pushing down and back from the outside on the prominent bones in front of the ears. If both sides of the jaw are dislocated, attempt to reposition one side at a time. After the jaw is repositioned, tie a bandage under the chin and over the top of the head to keep the jaw from easily dislocating again (see Fig. 64). *The bandage should be easily removable in case the victim needs to vomit. Another way to keep the mouth from opening widely is to wrap a rolled towel around the neck in such a way as to limit vertical jaw motion.*

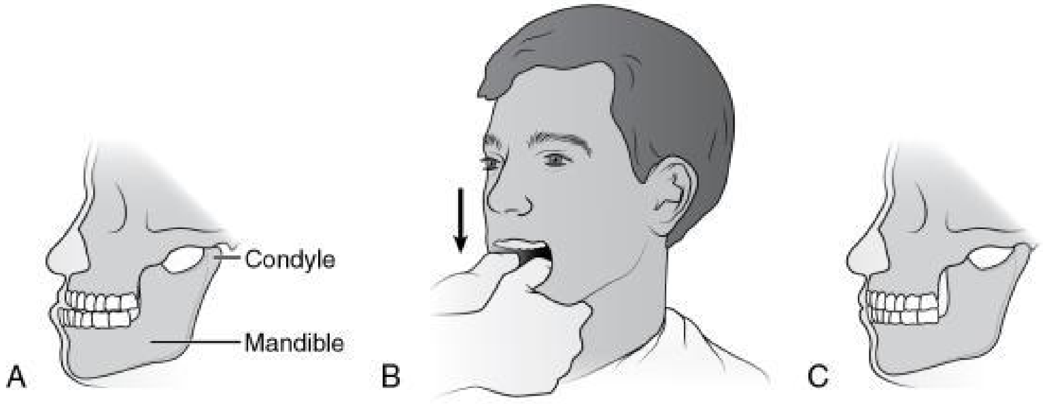


FIG. 65 Dislocated jaw. **A,** The condyle of the mandible slips forward out of the joint. The teeth do not fit together properly. **B,** The rescuer applies firm downward pressure to relocate the jaw. **C,** Normal position is restored, and the teeth fit properly.

Wrist, hand, and finger

A fracture or dislocation of the hand, wrist, or finger should be positioned and splinted in the normal resting position (position of function; see Fig. 59, A). For a wrist or hand injury, this can be accomplished by allowing the victim's fingers to rest around a padded object in their palm (such as a rolled pair of socks, rolled elastic bandage, or wadded cloth; Fig. 66), with a circumferential wrap to maintain position (Fig. 67). Every attempt should be made to allow the fingertips to remain uncovered, to assess circulation. If the wrist is involved, place a rigid splint on the underside of the hand, wrist, and forearm to prevent motion (Fig. 68; see Figs. 314 and 316). Another way to splint a wrist fracture and at the same time provide immobilization of the elbow is to use a "sugar tong" type of splint (see Fig. 317). Fingers can be splinted independently or taped together (with padding in between) for support (Figs. 69 and 70).

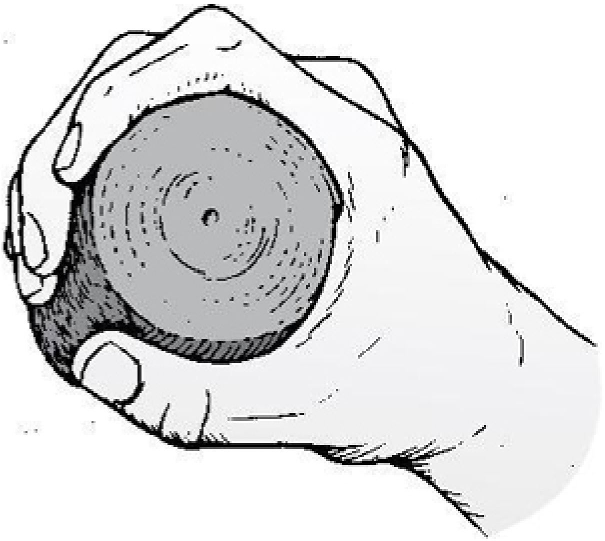


FIG. 66 A rolled elastic bandage is gripped gently to maintain the hand in the “position of function.”

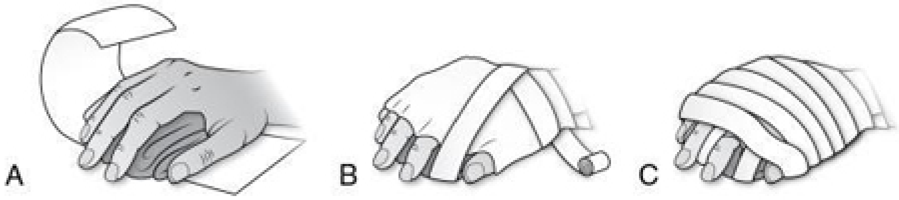


FIG. 67 Hand dressing in the “position of function.” **A,** The fingers hold a pad of cloth in the palm. **B,** A circumferential wrap is applied, taking care to pad between the fingers. **C,** The completed wrap leaves the fingertips exposed, so that they can be checked for adequate circulation.

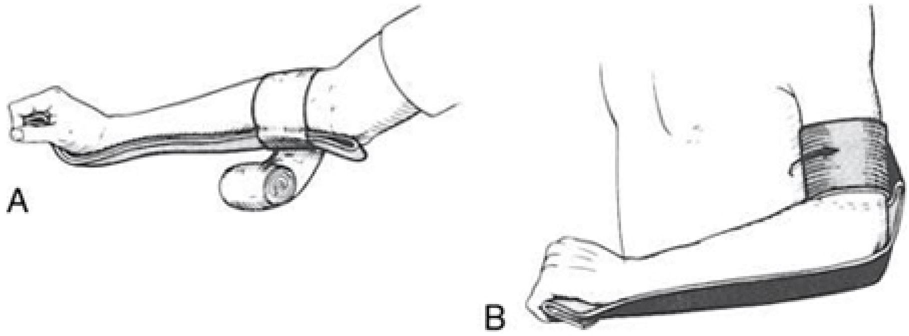


FIG. 68 A SAM Splint fashioned to stabilize the wrist and forearm. **A,** In this method, the elbow is free to bend. **B,** The splint can be extended to immobilize the elbow.

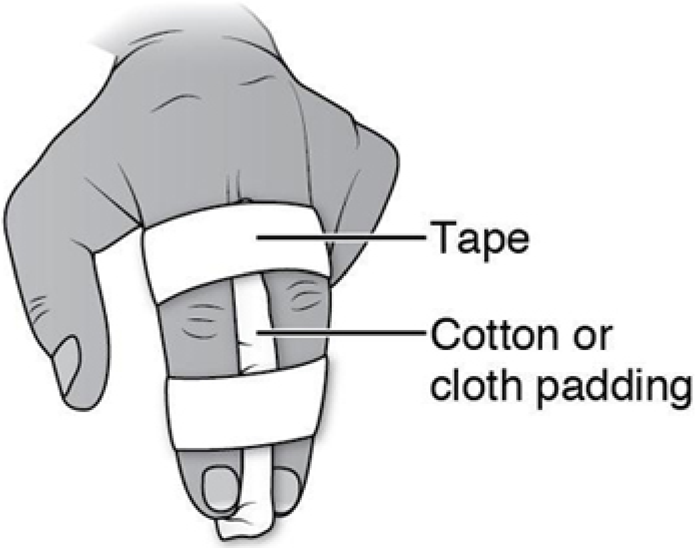

Tape
Cotton or
cloth padding

FIG. 69 Buddy-taping method to immobilize a finger.

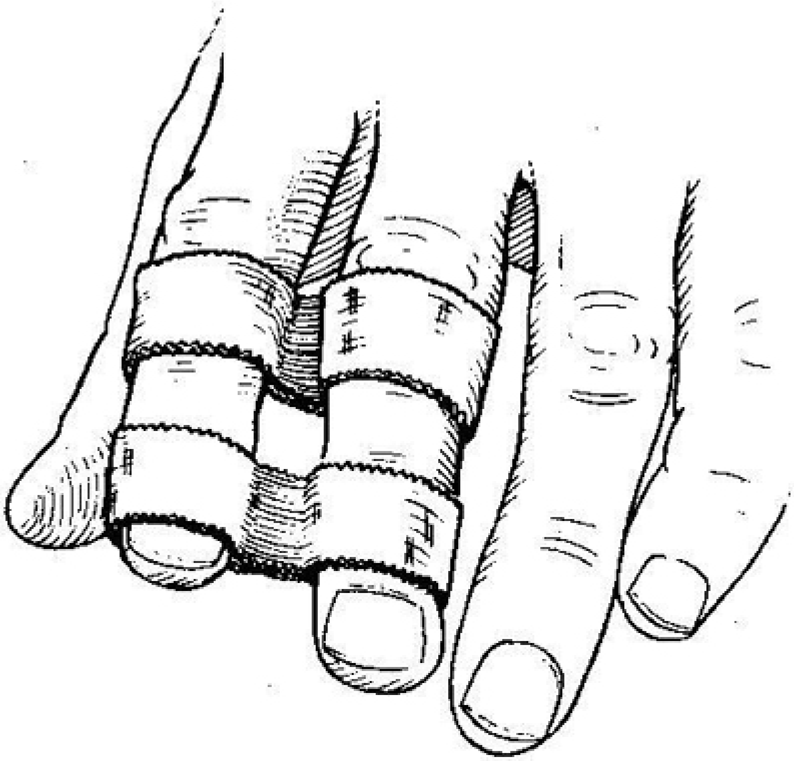


FIG. 70 A variation of the buddy-taping method to immobilize a finger. If the fingers are taped together tightly, cotton or cloth should be placed between them for padding.

A commonly missed fracture of the wrist is that of the scaphoid (navicular) bone (Fig. 71). This occurs commonly from a fall on an outstretched hand. Pain and swelling are common, and the examiner notes tenderness when pressing directly on the scaphoid bone via the "anatomical snuffbox" (Fig. 72). Even if swelling is not present, if there is "snuffbox tenderness," then the wrist should be splinted in a position of function (see page 85) and the victim brought to a physician for evaluation. Definitive determination of the presence of a fracture might require an MRI test.

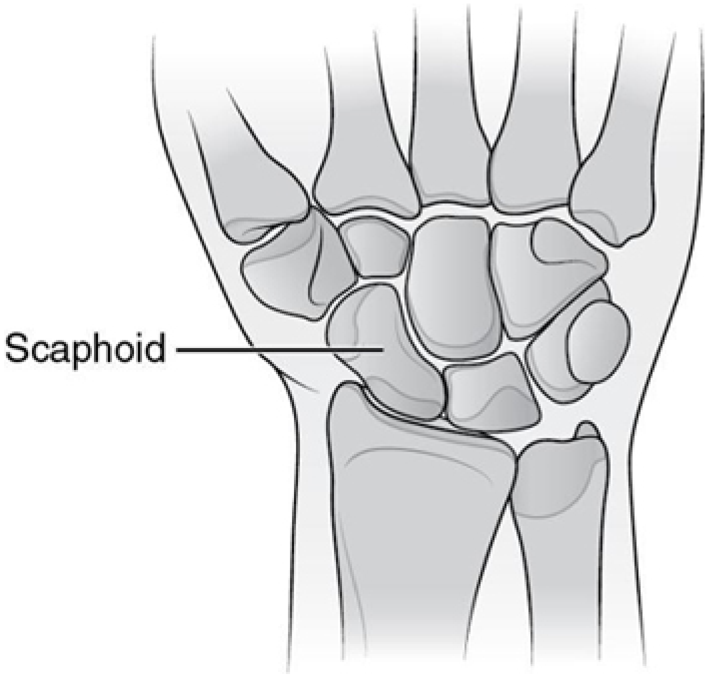


FIG. 71 Scaphoid (navicular) bone of the wrist.

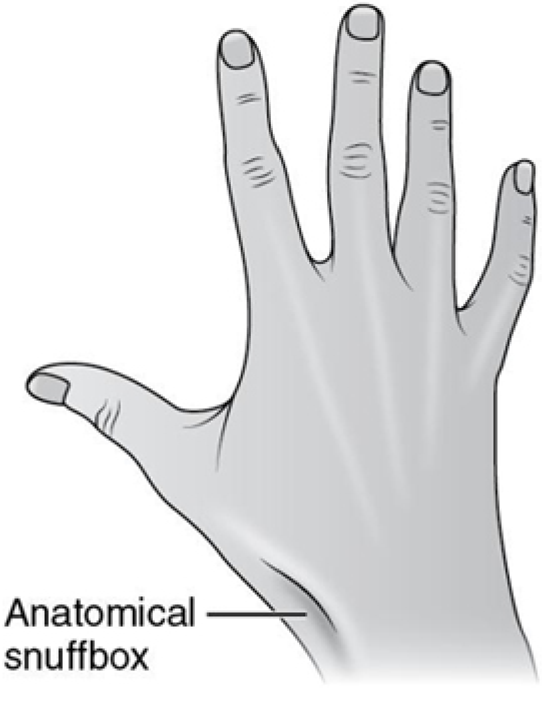

Anatomical snuffbox

FIG. 72 "Anatomical snuffbox" used to determine possibility of scaphoid fracture by applying direct external pressure.

A sling can be applied to the forearm for support and pain relief. A swathe can be added for further immobilization. To make a classic arm sling out of a triangular bandage, lay the bandage under the arm as shown in Fig. 73. Tie two corners together with a square knot at the opposite shoulder—which creates the arm cradle—and then pin the remaining elbow corner up onto the body of the sling. If the corner cannot be pinned, it can be twisted into a "tail" and then tied into a knot (Fig. 74). If the injury is to the upper arm, the victim might be more comfortable if the bandage is brought under the arm to be tied off on top (Fig. 75). A rolled or folded triangular bandage becomes a cravat, which is wrapped around the sling-encased arm and chest (as a swathe) to hold the arm snug against the body wall (see Fig. 73C). If materials to fashion a sling aren't available, the victim's shirt can be pulled up and pinned to create a crude hammock for the arm (Fig. 76), or the shirt sleeve can be pinned to the body of the shirt after the elbow is flexed to the proper position (Fig. 77). The victim's jacket or sweater can be used to fashion a sling by zipping it up and inserting their elbow through the bottom of the jacket and tying the sleeves around their neck (Fig. 78).

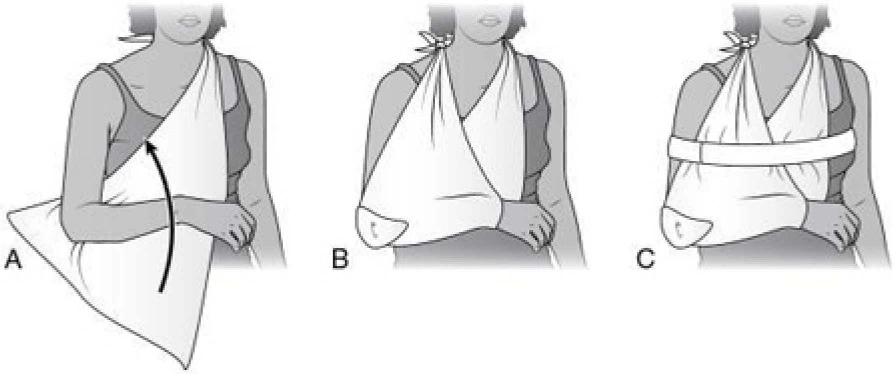


FIG. 73 Sling and swathe. **A,** A triangular bandage is draped under the arm and over the opposite shoulder. **B,** Two corners are tied behind the neck, and the third is pinned at the elbow. **C,** A cravat swathe holds the arm against the chest.

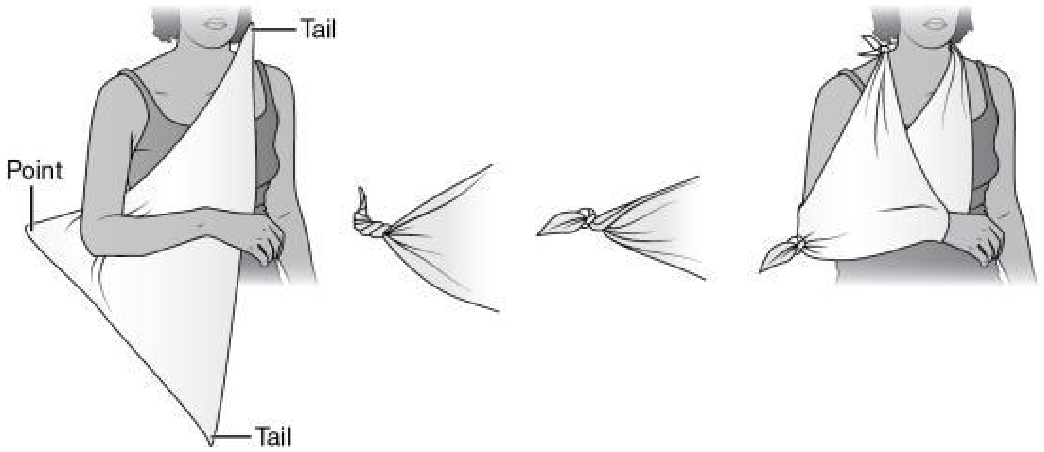

Tail
Point
Tail

FIG. 74 Tying off the tail of a sling instead of using a pin.

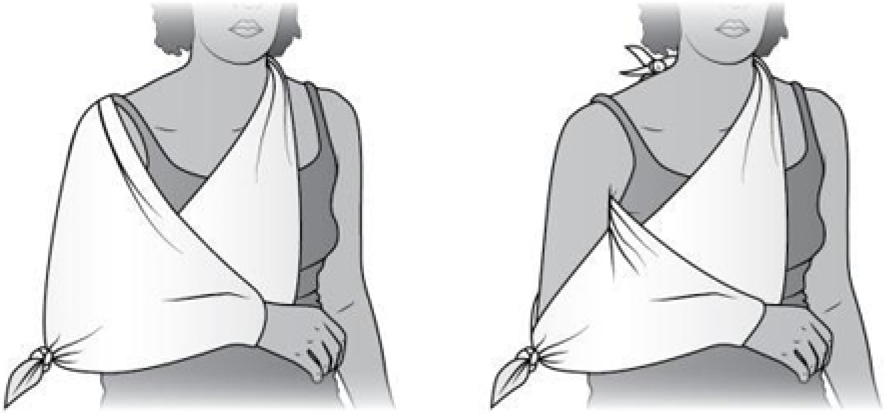


FIG. 75 Alternative route for more comfortable bandage placement for a sling.

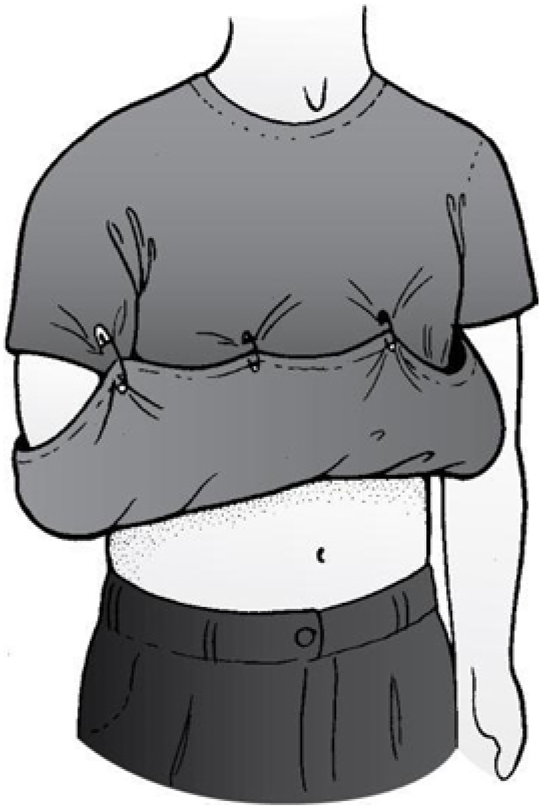


FIG. 76 Pinning the shirt to make a hammock sling for the arm.

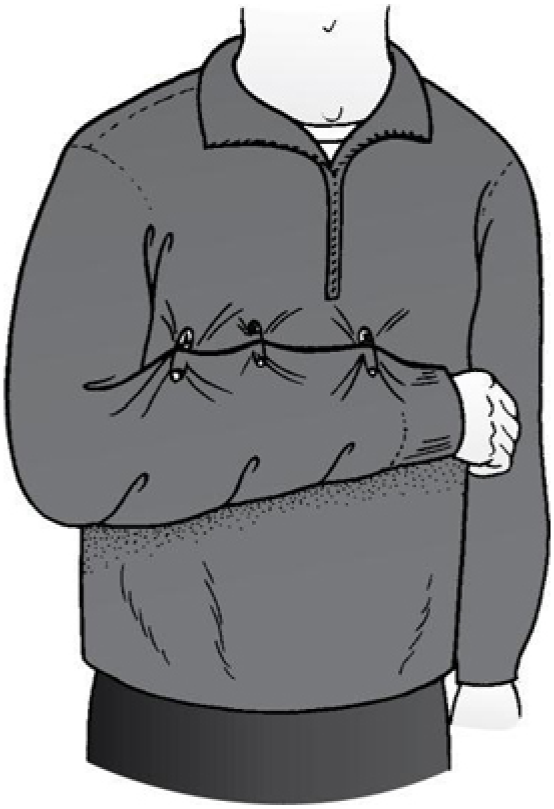


FIG. 77 Pinning a shirt sleeve to the chest.

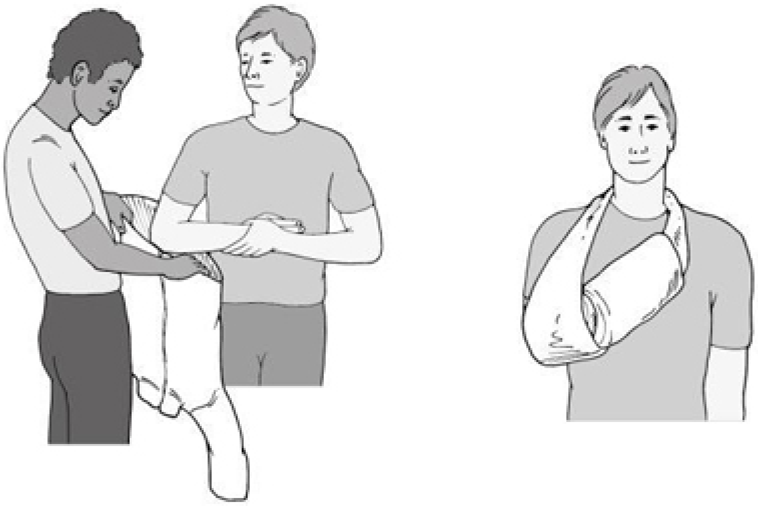


FIG. 78 Reverse jacket as sling.

If a finger is dislocated at the middle or distal joint (Fig. 79, A), make a gentle attempt at relocation by applying steady, firm traction to the fingertip (see Fig.

79, B). Wrap a thin layer of gauze around finger to assist with grip. Don't try to reposition the joint with a sudden forceful snap. It's often easiest to relocate a finger if you hold the joint slightly bent and push the distal (overriding) bone back into position with your thumb while you're pulling the bones back into their proper position. It's nearly impossible to reduce a dislocation at the knuckle of the index finger without an operation. After a finger is realigned, it should be taped to one or two adjacent fingers for splinting (see Figs. 69 and 70).

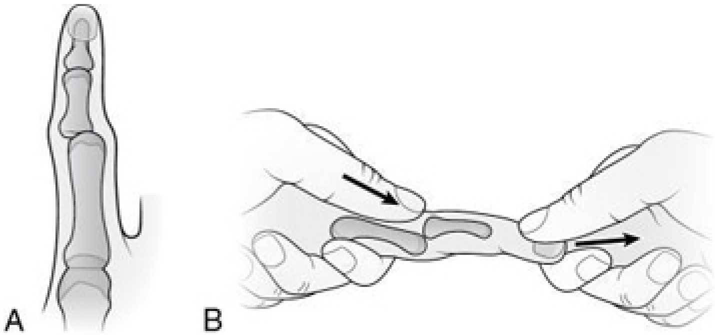


FIG. 79 **A,** Dislocation of a finger joint. **B,** Relocation of the bones with firm steady traction.

A "mallet finger" (Fig. 80, A) results from disruption of the extensor tendon, which normally pulls the tip of the finger into a straight position. The finger should be splinted with a slight amount of hyperextension (see Fig. 80, B). A different injury at this joint is disruption of the flexor tendon ("rugby jersey finger"), which normally pulls the tip of the finger down into a bent position. In this case, the end of the finger will often be swollen, bruised, and tender and will be observed to be held straight at the most distant joint, unable to be voluntarily bent toward the palm. This finger should be splinted slightly bent and the victim referred promptly to a hand surgeon for repair.

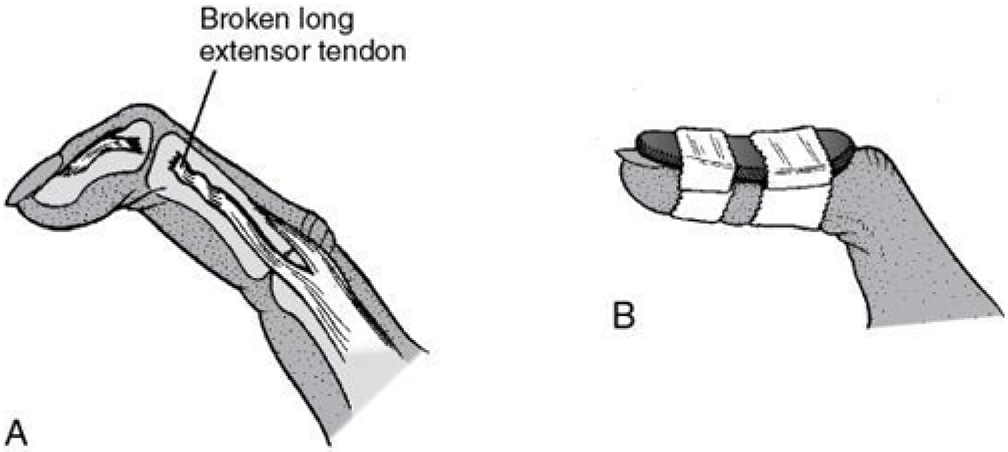


FIG. 80 **A,** Mallet finger. **B,** Splinting a mallet finger.

If the thumb is dislocated or fractured, it can be taped to prevent further injury, by fixing it with an anchor to the index finger (Fig. 81, A) or directly against the hand (see Fig. 81, B). You can use the anchor technique to hold any two fingers together.

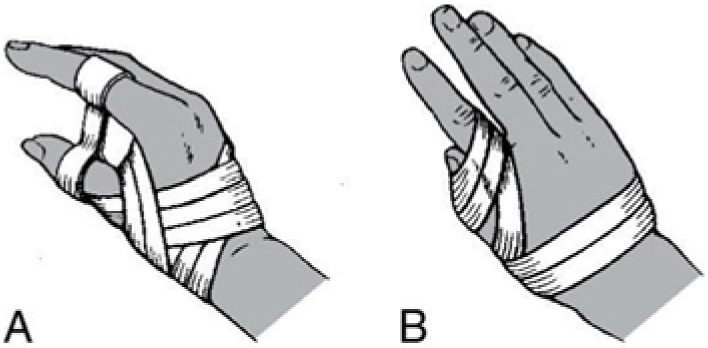


FIG. 81 Taping the thumb for immobilization. **A,** The buddy-taping method. **B,** A thumb-lock. If possible, padding should be placed between the thumb and the forefinger.

A “gamekeeper’s thumb” is a disruption of the ulnar collateral ligament, often associated with a tiny avulsion fracture where the ligament attaches, at the base of the thumb (Fig. 82). This is a ligament on the inner aspect of the thumb that keeps it from being pulled out away from the hand into an exaggerated hitchhiking gesture. It typically occurs when someone falls onto a ski pole or hiking pole, forcing the thumb outward and rupturing the tendon. The thumb should be taped to limit motion and the victim brought promptly to medical attention for consideration for surgical repair.

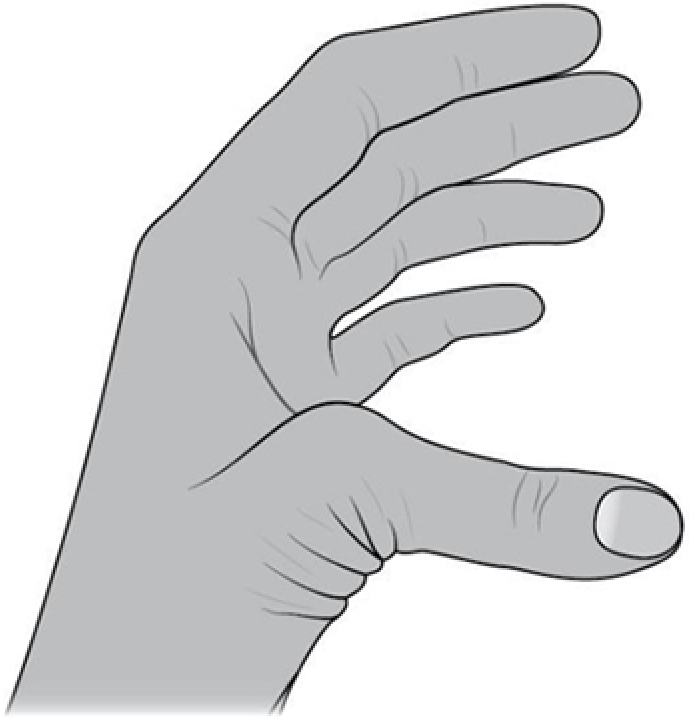


FIG. 82 "Gamekeeper's thumb."

Forearm

A fracture of the forearm should be splinted to immobilize the wrist and bent elbow (see Fig. 68, B). This can also be done in a "sugar tong" fashion (see Fig. 317). Fashion a sling and attach it to the trunk with a swathe (see Fig. 73).

Elbow

A fracture of the elbow should be splinted to include the wrist and shoulder, if possible, and at an angle of 60 to 90 degrees. However, if it's painful for the victim to move their elbow, splint it in the position in which you found it. A sling should be fashioned and attached to the trunk with a swathe. A dislocated elbow should be realigned if necessary to restore circulation to the hand. Hold the arm bent 45 to 90 degrees at the elbow and use a lever motion to pull the bones of the forearm back into position, while holding the upper arm fixed in countertraction (Fig. 83). This might require a fair amount of force to accomplish and is usually difficult if the victim cannot relax.

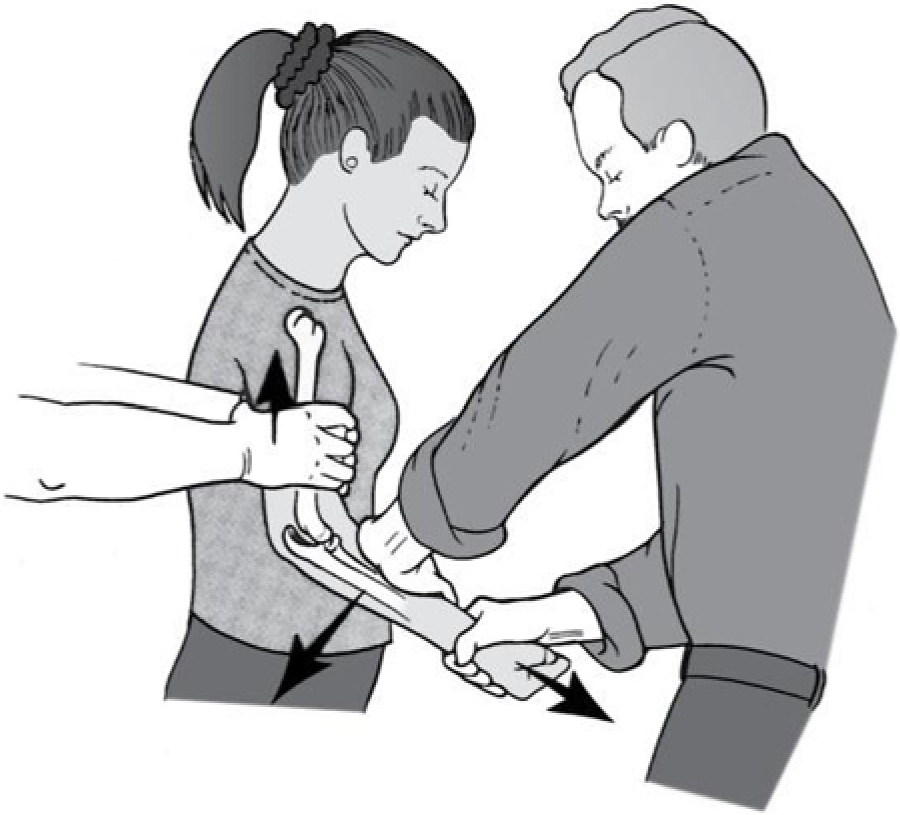


FIG. 83 Repositioning a dislocated elbow.

"Nursemaid's elbow"

The radius and ulna are the long bones of the forearm, and join with the humerus (the long bone of the upper arm) at the elbow joint. In young children, if a sudden straight pulling force is applied to the arm, such as when a child's hand is tugged to pull them along, or they are swung in a circle vigorously by the arms, the ligament that holds the radius in place might slip off the head of the radius within the elbow. There might be an audible snapping sound and immediate pain, but the pain often subsides rapidly, after which the child will still not use the arm. If this occurs and you're close to medical care, splint the arm as for a fracture. However, if you are far from care and wish to see if you can remedy the situation (i.e., return the ligament to its proper position), take the child's arm and do the following. First, rotate the hand and forearm such that the thumb moves away from the body (accentuated hitchhiker's gesture) (Fig. 84). Next, bend the arm at the elbow to 90 degrees while maintaining the external rotation. If no "pop" is felt or heard, keep the thumb pointed away from the body and move the forearm toward the upper arm (i.e., "flex" the arm) until you have moved it as far as you can (Fig. 85). Alternatively, you can try to remedy the situation using the opposite movements. First, rotate the hand and forearm such that the thumb moves toward the body (thumbs down gesture). Next, extend the elbow while maintaining internal rotation until the arm is straight. If the ligament moves back to its proper position, the child will begin to use their arm again within 10 minutes. After that, there is no need for a sling or splint. If the child still will not use their arm, seek medical attention.

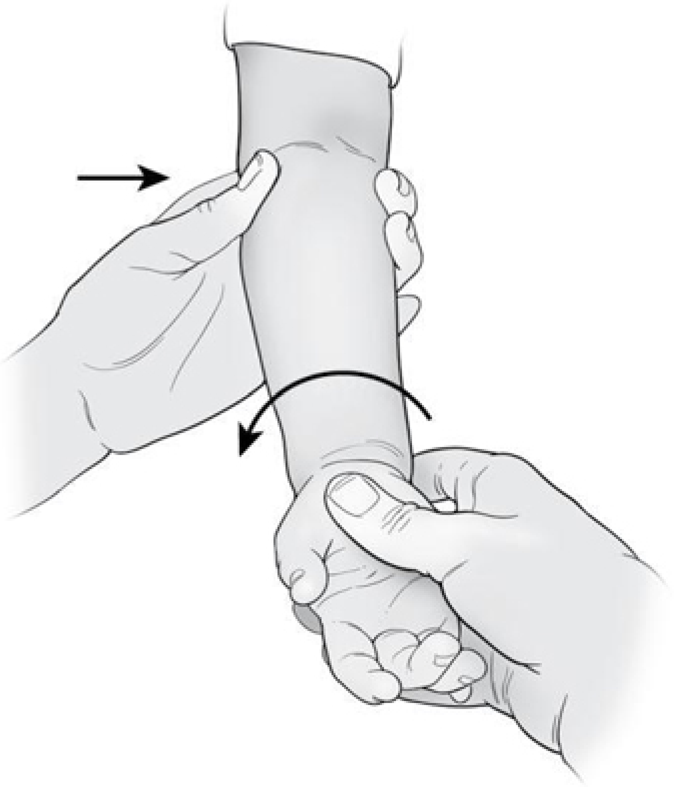


FIG. 84 To reduce a nursemaid's elbow, rotate the hand and forearm as shown, then flex the forearm up toward the shoulder.

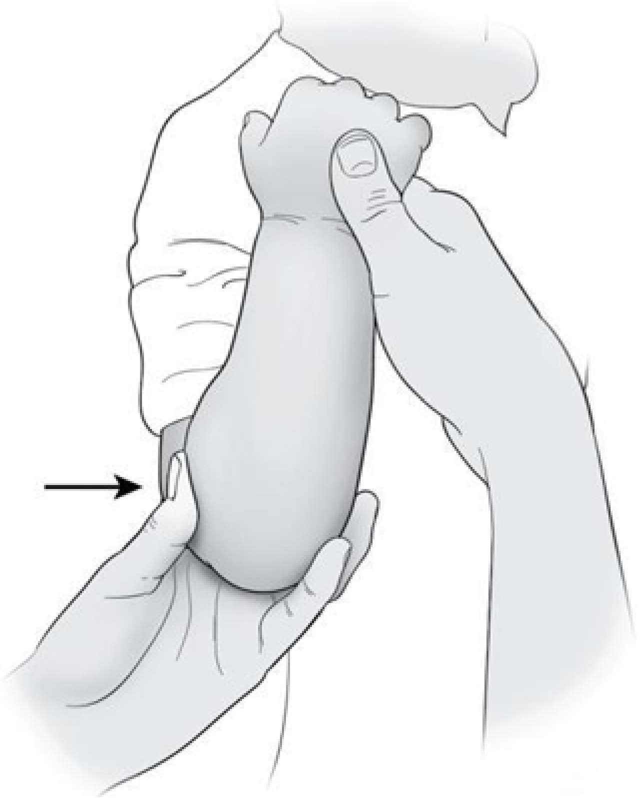


FIG. 85 If no pop is felt after rotating the elbow and flexing the forearm toward the shoulder, then maintain the rotation and flexion and push the hand more firmly toward the upper arm.

Upper arm

The entire length of the bone of the upper arm (humerus) can be palpated for tenderness or deformity from the arm's inner aspect. A fracture of the humerus can be differentiated from a dislocated shoulder by observing how the victim holds their arm. With a humerus fracture, the arm is often held close to the chest, whereas a dislocation of the head of the humerus from the shoulder socket (shoulder dislocation—see page 103) prevents the victim from pulling their arm into their body. Also, if a "crunching" or grating sensation is felt when the arm is manipulated, or it rotates freely as if disrupted, a broken bone might be present. Because the radial nerve runs around the back of the humerus, if a fracture is present, there might be numbness of the top of the hand as well as weakness/inability to raise (extend) the wrist and fingers.

A fracture of the upper arm, particularly if it's close to the shoulder, is often quite difficult to splint. A "sugar tong" splint can be fashioned using a SAM Splint, by laying the splint along the inner and outer surfaces of the arm, with the U of the “tong” at the elbow (see Fig. 317). If possible, the elbow should be kept bent at 90 degrees and the arm placed in a sling. Attach the sling to the body by using a circumferential (around the chest) swathe fashioned from a belt, rope, or long piece of cloth to prevent motion of the arm at the shoulder (see Fig. 73). Another method is to use a cravat to hold the upper arm against the body (Fig. 86).

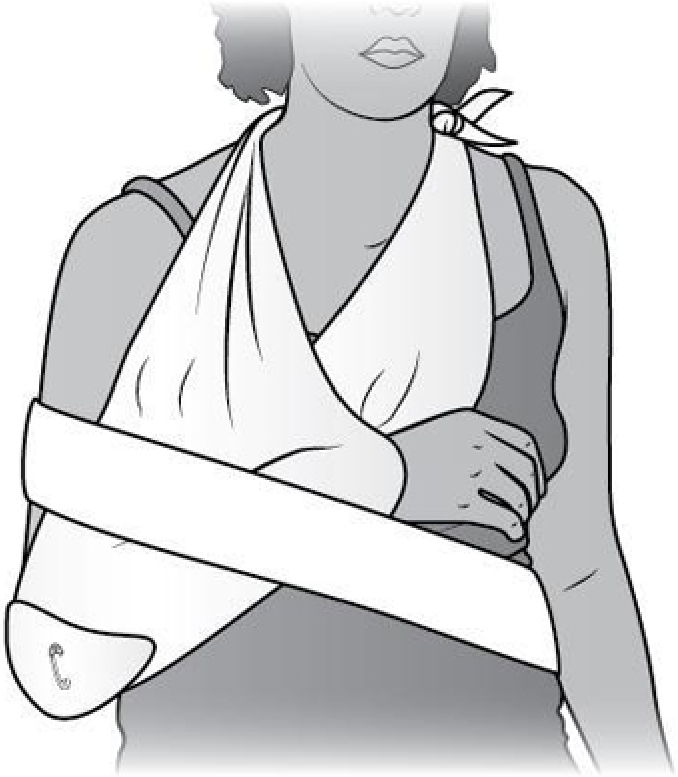


FIG. 86 Using a cravat to hold the upper arm against the body.

Two padded board splints can be used to stabilize an arm fracture above the elbow (Fig. 87). The splints cross the upper part of the arm and the midforearm to create a triangle with the elbow. A sling is added for support.

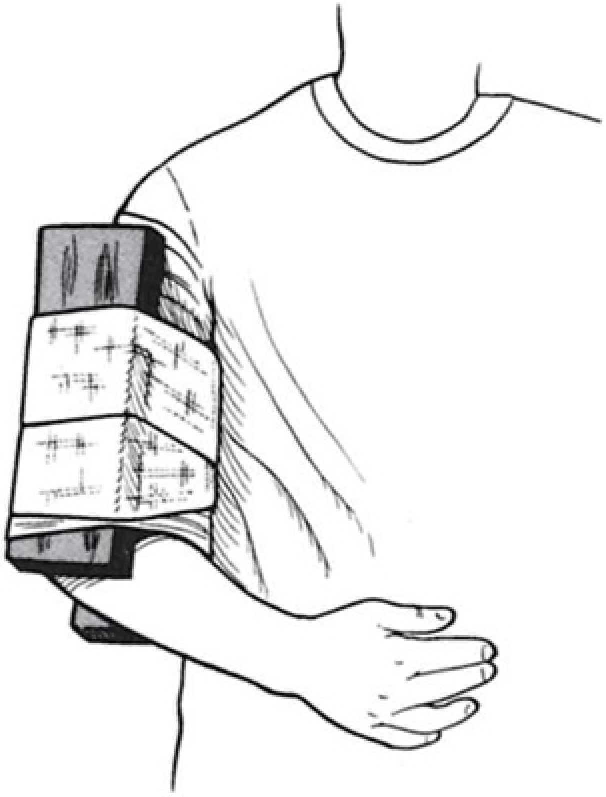


FIG. 87 Padded boards to splint the upper arm.

Collarbone (clavicle)

A fracture of the collarbone causes shoulder pain and possible swelling/deformity at the break. Rarely, a broken end can puncture the lung, so if the victim is short of breath, suspect a collapsed lung (see page 47). The fracture is best managed with a sling and swathe (see Figs. 73 and 86), simple sling, or a modified figure-of-eight bandage (or both). The latter is created by draping a rope, cloth, or cravat behind the neck across the shoulders, then forward over the shoulders and under the arms (pad the armpits, if possible), to be tied in the back (Fig. 88). This will pull the shoulders back into the military position. To provide a tighter fit, tie the cross-shoulder section to the lower knot (giving a figure-of-eight appearance). After the figure-of-eight bandage is pulled snug, the affected arm can be fixed to the chest using a sling and swathe. Another technique is to weave a figure-of-eight bandage with a long, rolled elastic bandage (Fig. 89). *If any figure-of-eight bandage increases the victim's discomfort or if the collarbone is felt to be broken very close to the shoulder, you can use just a sling, with or without a swathe.* A collarbone fracture appears to heal equally well with any of these methods, so the major goal is sufficient support and immobilization for comfort. Figure-of-eight bandages have fallen out of favor by some experts.

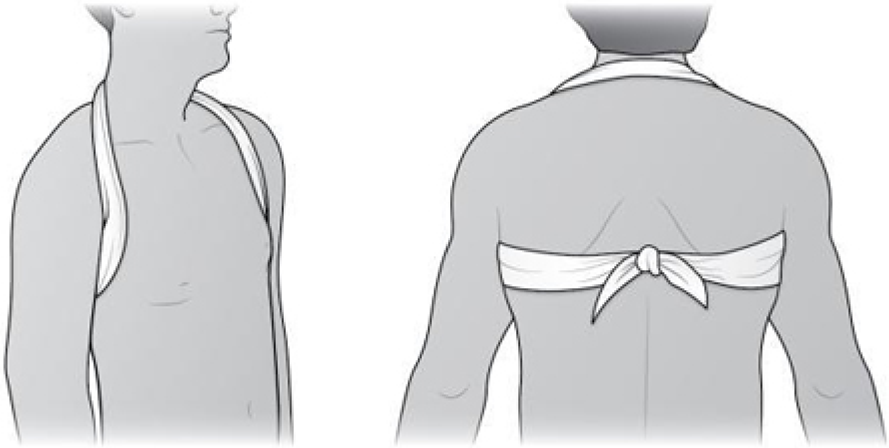


FIG. 88 Modified figure-of-eight bandage for a broken collarbone.

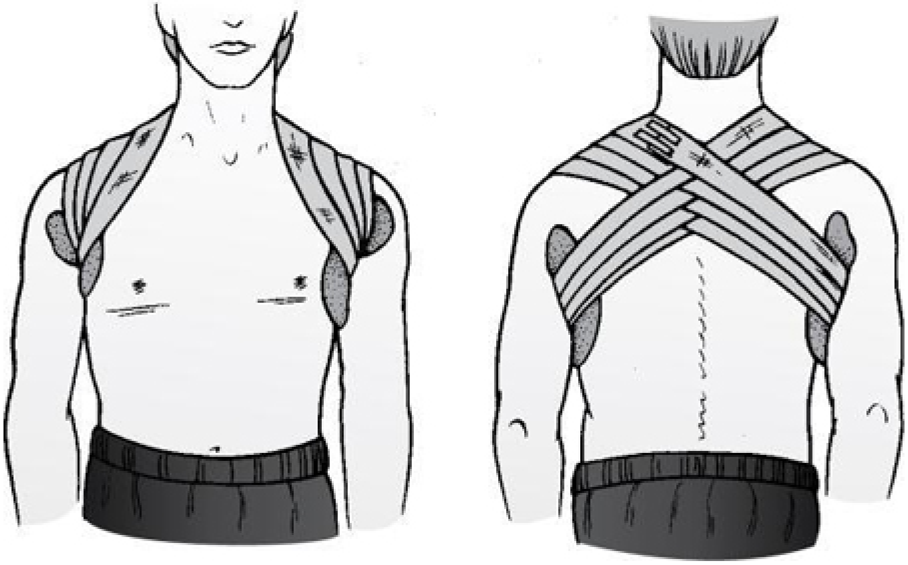


FIG. 89 Woven figure-of-eight bandage for a broken collarbone.

Another alternative is to have the victim wear a properly fitted backpack with shoulder straps and carry approximately 15 lb of weight in the pack. The most comfortable sleeping position might be in a reclining chair or propped semi-upright.

Shoulder dislocation

The long bone (humerus) of the upper arm fits into the shoulder joint with a ball-and-socket mechanism, held in place by muscles and tendons (Fig. 90, *A*). When a person falls onto their shoulder or an outstretched arm or has their arm twisted or pulled forcefully, the head of the humerus can dislocate out of the shoulder joint (see Fig. 90, B). This is usually quite painful and can be associated with a fracture of the humerus or the lip of the shoulder socket. The diagnosis of shoulder dislocation is made by observing and feeling a depression in the shoulder where the upper arm bone should be located (see Fig. 90, B), noting that the victim holds the arm up and away from the body (Fig. 91), and feeling the head of the humerus as a firm ball 2 to 3 inches (5 to 7.5 cm) below its normal position. There is reduced range of motion of the joint and absence of a "grating sensation" (indicating absence of a broken bone). Those who have previously suffered shoulder dislocations are often prone to recurrent episodes with lesser forces applied to the joint than are needed to cause a first-time dislocation.

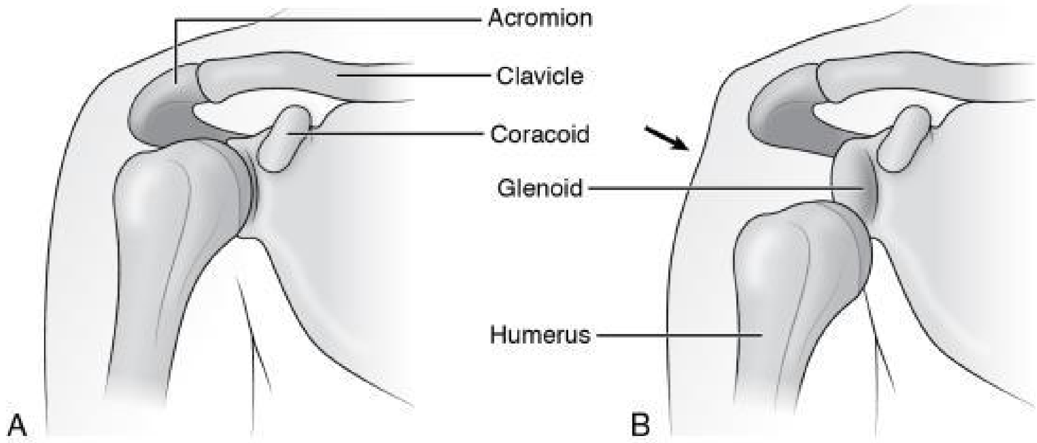


FIG. 90 Dislocated shoulder. **A,** Normal anatomy. **B,** With dislocation, the head of the humerus slips out of the glenoid (socket), and a depression *(arrow)* is noted in the external appearance of the shoulder.

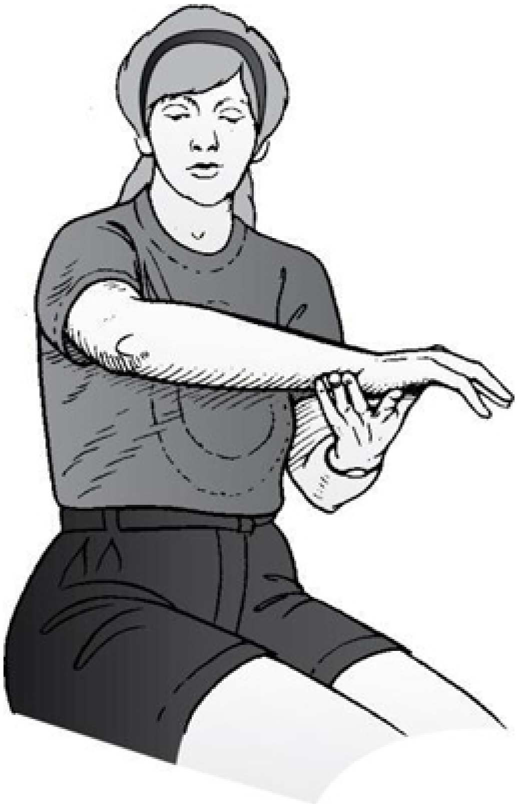


FIG. 91 The victim with a dislocated shoulder carries the arm up and away from the body.

If the injured victim can be transported to a medical facility within 2 hours, there is no absolute need to attempt relocation of the arm unless they are in extreme pain. If you decide to not attempt to relocate the humerus by any of the techniques described later, place the arm in a sling, position some padding underneath the arm and against the chest, and secure the sling to the victim's chest with a swathe to minimize motion and discomfort (see Fig. 73 and Fig. 86). Alternatively, you can support the arm using a splint manufactured from a SAM Splint (see Fig. 322).

It's usually easiest to relocate the arm ("reduce" the dislocation) if this is done soon after the injury. A prompt reduction avoids the effects of worsening muscle spasm and sometimes internal bleeding, both of which contribute to soft tissue swelling and difficulty with the reduction. So, if more than 2 hours will elapse before medical help is obtained, if the dislocation is recurrent (has happened to the same shoulder before), or if the victim is suffering severe pain or loss of sensation or circulation, you can make an attempt to reposition the arm bone in its socket. Don't attempt relocation if the upper arm or elbow is deformed in a manner that would suggest a broken bone. Elders who fall are more likely to have broken their arm than are younger persons with more sturdy bones.

The “Cunningham technique” is simple to attempt (Fig. 92). The victim should be calm and cooperative. Have them sit upright in a chair or on a rock or log, in a comfortable position. Sit or kneel directly opposite the victim, optimally at a level slightly below them, and have the victim rest the hand of their affected arm on your same-side shoulder (e.g., their right hand on your right shoulder) in order to slightly bend at the elbow and ask them to try to relax the arm. You should be close enough to the victim so that they don’t need to reach for you. If the right arm is involved, rest your right wrist across the victim’s forearm so that you can exert slight downward pressure by holding the arm at the elbow, close to the victim’s chest wall. With your left hand, massage the victim’s biceps muscle and then deltoid and trapezius muscles to eliminate spasm and promote relaxation. Ask the victim to sit up straight and pull their shoulders back while you continue to massage. Ask the victim to shrug their shoulders, and then try to keep them level. Have the victim breathe in and out slowly, attempting total relaxation. If the technique works, the head of the humerus will move back into its socket. Warn the victim that it might feel odd when bone is moving, but to try to remain relaxed. For a dislocation on the opposite side, reverse your hands. If another rescuer is present, have them contribute by massaging the trapezius muscles on both sides and helping the patient attain the proper posture. The Cunningham technique might not work well on an obese person.

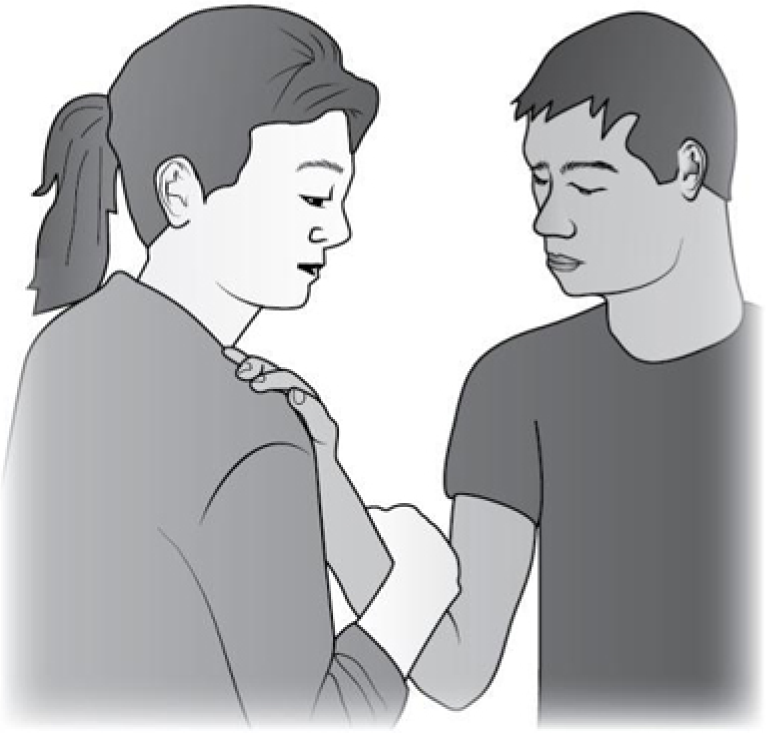


FIG. 92 Proper position for using the Cunningham technique for reducing a shoulder dislocation.

Another simple technique for relocation is to pull with steady, forceful traction on the injured arm, directed at a 45- to 90-degree angle away from the body. At the same time, someone should provide countertraction by holding a sheet or blanket that's wrapped across the victim's chest and under the affected armpit (Fig. 93). The easiest technique is to tie a sheet, belt, webbed strapping, or avalanche cord around the rescuer's waist and the victim's bent forearm, so that the rescuer (standing or kneeling) can lean back to apply traction, keeping their hands free to guide the head of the humerus back into position (Fig. 94). In all cases, place padding in the armpit and bend of the elbow to prevent a pressure injury to sensitive nerves beneath the skin. A single rescuer can provide countertraction by placing their foot against the victim's chest just below the armpit or fixing the countertraction sheet or rope to a tree or ice ax buried in the ground; they can also use a life jacket as a foot brace (Fig. 95). *Don't jerk the arm, attempt to twist or lever it into position, or pull with a tugging motion.*

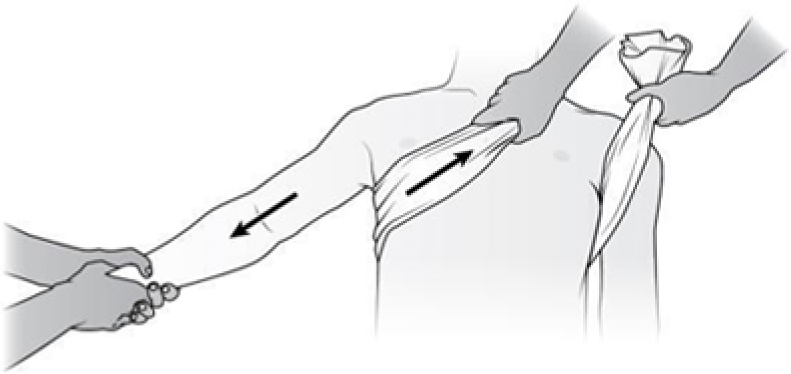


FIG. 93 Technique for relocating a shoulder dislocation. One rescuer applies traction at the forearm while another applies countertraction at the chest.

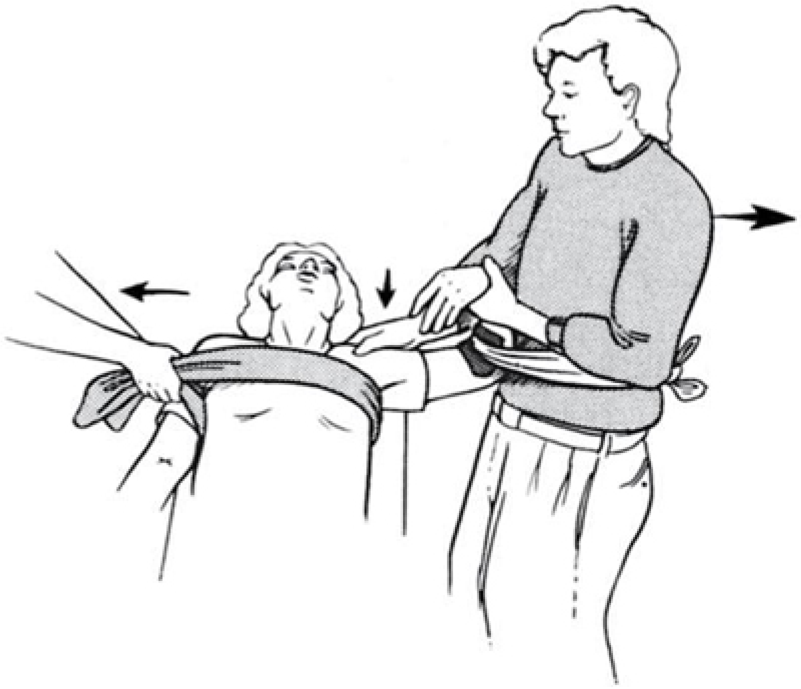


FIG. 94 Repositioning a dislocated shoulder. Attached to the victim’s forearm with a strap, rope, or sheet, the rescuer uses their body weight to apply traction, leaving their hands free to manipulate the victim’s arm. A second rescuer applies countertraction, or the victim can be held motionless by fixing the chest sheet to a tree or ground stake.

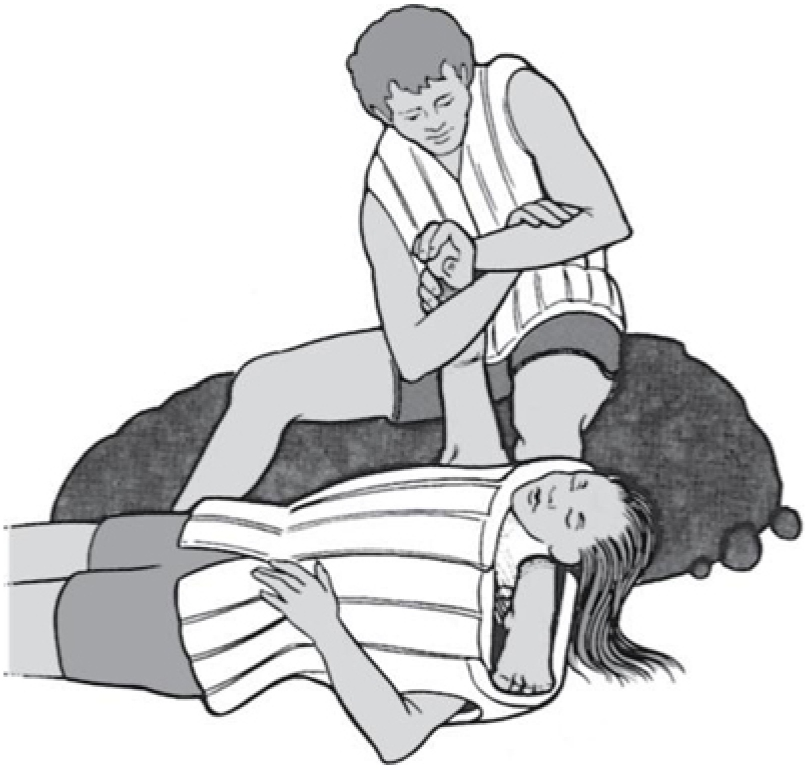


FIG. 95 Life jacket brace to assist in the relocation of a dislocated humerus.

Another technique is to have the victim lie prone so that their injured arm can dangle free. Place a thick pad under the injured shoulder. Attach a 10- to 20-lb (4.5- to 9-kg) weight to the wrist or forearm (don't have the victim attempt to hold the weight) and allow it to exert steady traction on the arm, using gravity to relocate the humeral head (Fig. 96). Alternatively, have the standing victim bend forward at the waist as you pull steadily downward on their arm to simulate the gravity effect, with gentle side-to-side (at the wrist) rotation (Fig. 97).

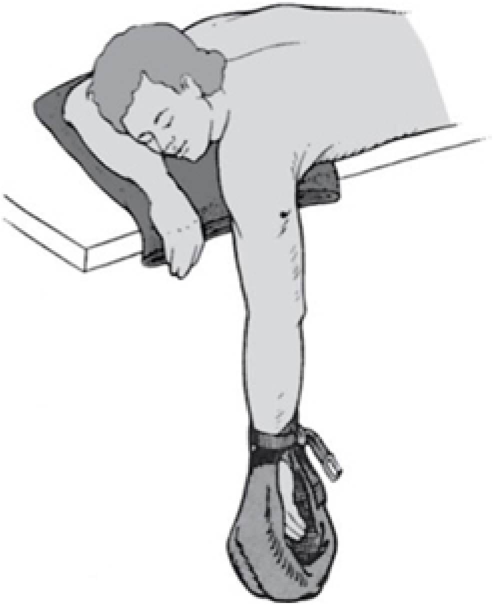


FIG. 96 A fanny pack filled with rocks can be used for a weight in the “dangle” method of shoulder relocation.

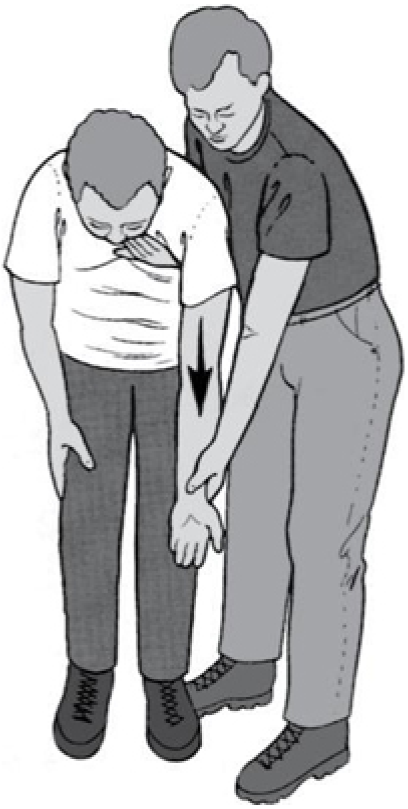


FIG. 97 Pulling on the hanging arm to relocate a dislocated humerus.

In the scapular manipulation technique, the victim is placed in a prone position so that their injured arm can dangle free. Apply traction for 5 to 10 minutes. Then, while maintaining traction, push the tip (lower edge) of the scapula (“wingbone”) in toward the spine while pulling the upper portion (toward the shoulder) of the scapula away from the midline. This can also be done with the victim in a standing position (Fig. 98, A). If the victim is standing, it might help to pull the arm forward as well as down (see Fig. 98, B). This can also be done with the victim lying on their back. Have one rescuer hold the victim flat by pressing on their chest while another pulls the arm upward at a 90-degree angle. The third rescuer reaches underneath the victim to manipulate the scapula. Another technique is the external rotation technique done sitting or supine in which the arm is gently rotated externally while applying traction at the elbow (Fig. 99). *The scapular manipulation technique can be combined with any other technique*, such as the Cunningham technique. There needs to be enough rescuer hands to combine techniques.

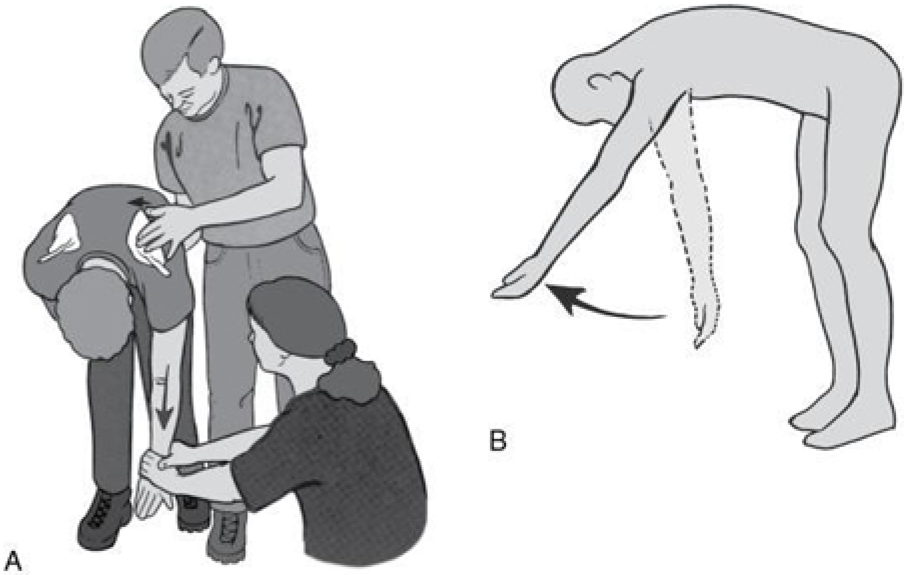


FIG. 98 **A,** Pushing the lower edge of the scapula toward the spine while an assistant pulls downward on the hanging arm to assist in the relocation of a dislocated humerus. **B,** The downward pull on the arm should be slightly forward to help put the arm bone back in the shoulder socket.

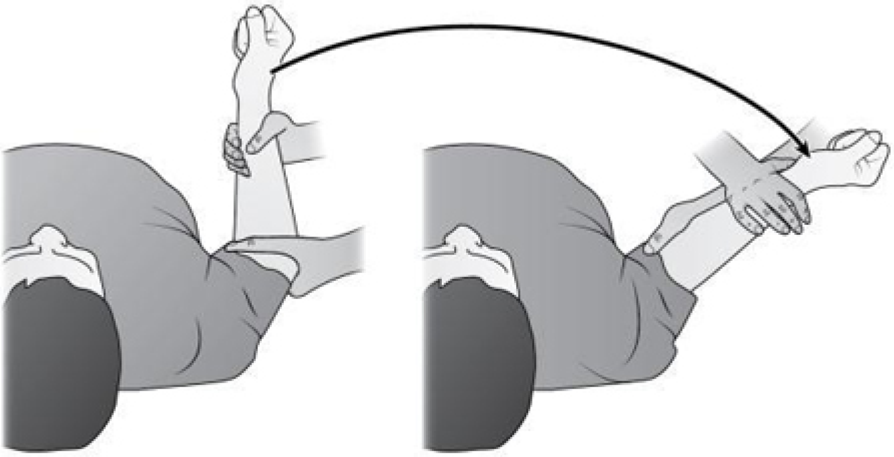


FIG. 99 External rotation technique for reducing a dislocated humerus.

In the Spaso technique, the victim lies on their back. The rescuer slowly lifts the affected arm while applying traction. When the arm is fully lifted and pointing toward the sky, the rescuer applies external rotation (rotate the thumb out to the hitch-hiking position) (Fig. 100).

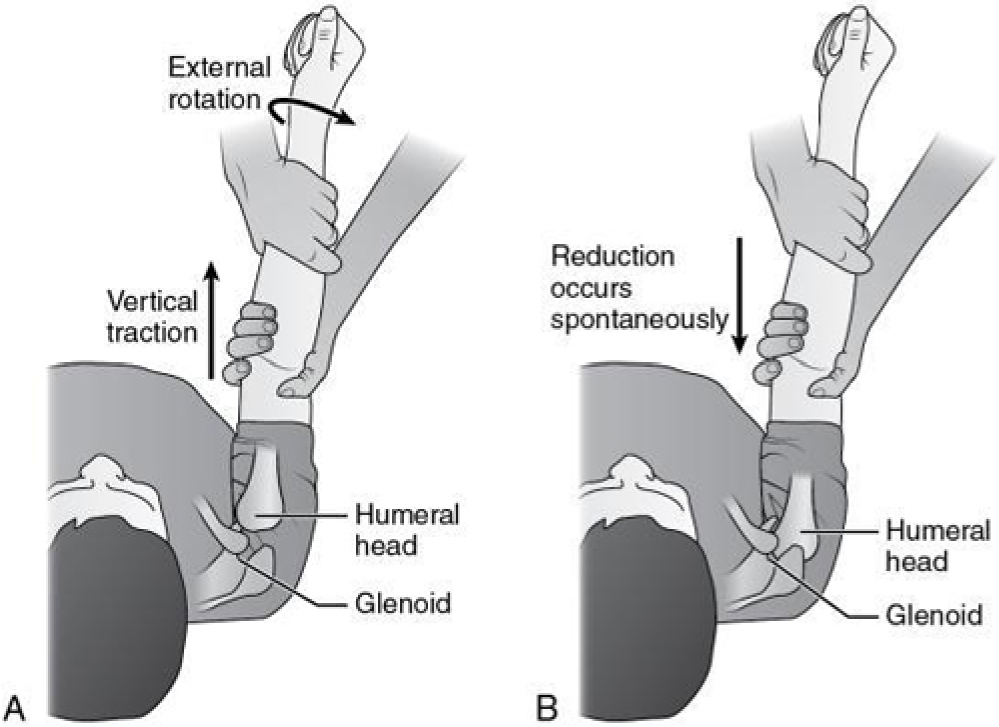

External rotation
Vertical traction
Humeral head
Glenoid
A
Reduction occurs spontaneously
Humeral head
Glenoid
B

FIG. 100 Reducing a dislocated humerus while the victim is lying on their back. **A,** Gently pulling and externally rotating until **B,** reduction occurs. Spaso technique.

In the Eskimo technique, the victim lies on the ground with the uninjured shoulder down and the injured shoulder up. It usually takes two persons to lift the victim by the wrist and forearm of the injured arm, so they are hanging by the injured arm (Fig. 101). If this technique is successful, the head of the humerus pops back into position within a few minutes.

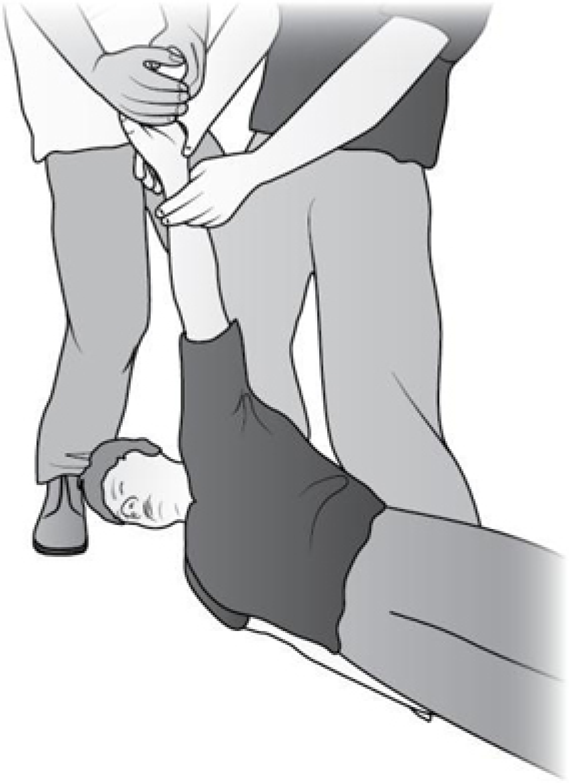


FIG. 101 Eskimo technique for reducing a dislocated humerus.

In the Milch technique, the victim attempts self-reduction of the dislocation. They should sit, stand, or lie on their back and slowly reach, using the hand of the injured shoulder, behind the head in order to touch the opposite shoulder (Fig. 102). Another way to describe this technique is to have the victim reach up and backward with the injured arm as if going into a windup to throw a baseball. If the technique works, the victim will feel a “pop” as the dislocation is corrected. If you wish to assist the victim, use one hand to gently cup their elbow and assist them with this procedure, while using your other hand to steady the affected shoulder.

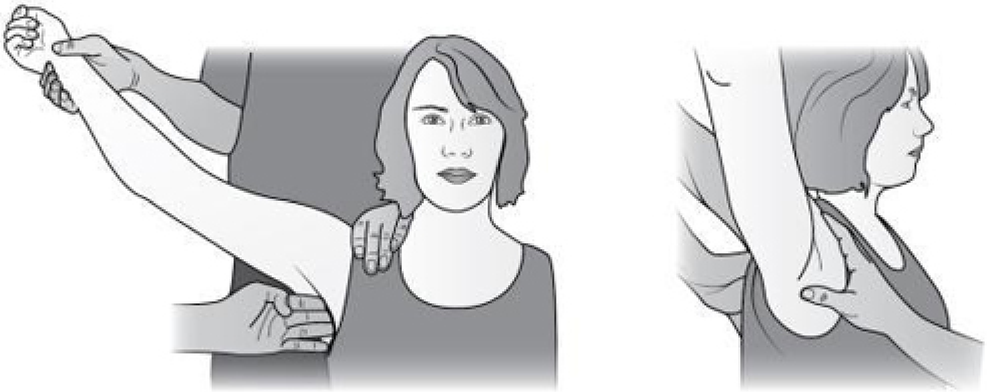


FIG. 102 Milch technique for reducing a dislocated humerus.

If you are the victim, you can attempt the Milch technique. Alternatively, you can get in a sitting position with knees bent up to your chest, wrap your arms around your knees, lock hands by grasping the wrist of the injured arm with your good hand, and then spread your knees or lean back.

If pain medicine is available, the victim should be medicated before relocation is attempted, to allow the greatest possible shoulder and chest muscle relaxation. As the arm bone moves back into proper position (this might require 15 minutes of steady traction), it will sometimes "give" in little movements, with a final "pop" back into the socket. Once the bone is back in place, the victim will be able to bring their arm across the chest. If the victim cannot relax their muscles sufficiently to allow relocation, if your attempts cause excruciating pain, or if you're otherwise unsuccessful after 30 minutes, leave well enough alone (no one ever died of a dislocated shoulder). Place padding in the armpit and fix the arm near the body in as comfortable a position as possible with swathe bandages, and then go for help. A shoulder harness (Fig. 103) might be useful. The victim who cannot walk should be transported in a sitting (for comfort) position, if possible. If the shoulder relocates, it should be placed in a sling and swathe, to prevent a repeat dislocation (see Figs. 73 and 86). Gently move the arm and shoulder multiple times per day to avoid locking of the joint. A first-time shoulder dislocation that is relocated should be immobilized for 3 weeks with daily gentle movements. A recurrent dislocation that is relocated can be exercised gently after 3 to 5 days.

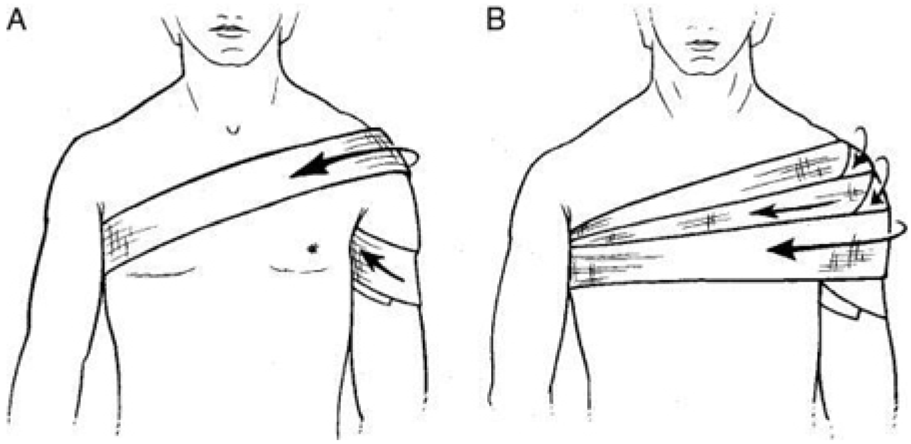


FIG. 103 Shoulder harness. **A**, wrap under arm pit then around chest. **B**, repeat, going under arm each time.

Shoulder separation

A shoulder separation, as contrasted with a dislocation, occurs when the collarbone's ligamentous attachments to the acromion and coracoid structures of the triangular scapula are weakened or disrupted (Fig. 104). This can range from small tears in the ligaments, which don't result in a visible deformity, to full disruption of the ligaments, leading to a "free-floating" collarbone. The injury usually follows a direct blow to the shoulder, such as occurs when you fall onto your side and cannot break the fall with an outstretched arm.

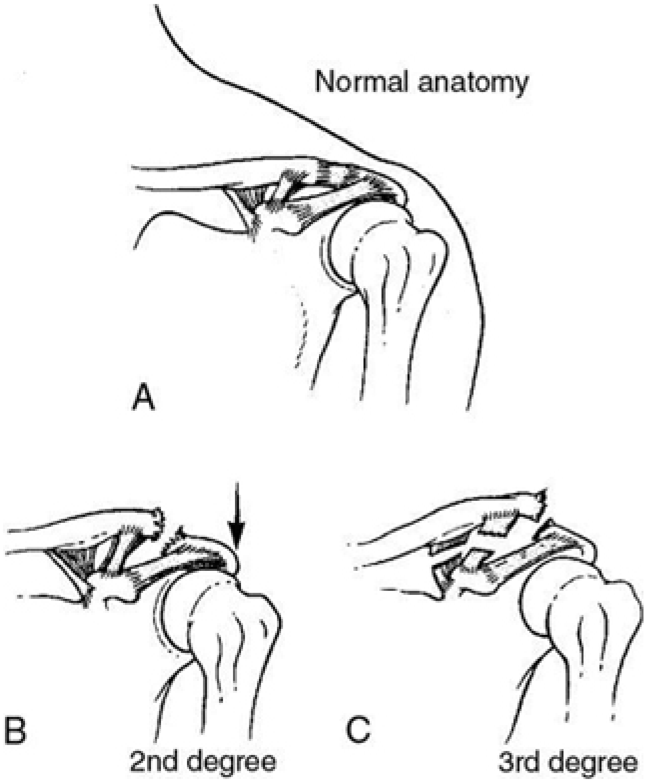


FIG. 104 **A,** Ligamentous attachments of the collarbone at the shoulder. **B,** Second-degree shoulder separation. **C,** Third-degree shoulder separation.

If tenderness is elicited when pressing directly over the acromioclavicular (AC) joint, particularly with swelling and a spongy sensation over the end of the collarbone, suspect a shoulder separation. Treat as for a broken collarbone (see page 101).

Rib

A broken rib can be very painful, but there is little that the rescuer can do to improve the situation. Signs and symptoms include pain in the chest after an injury, pain that is worse when taking a deep breath, point tenderness over the broken rib(s), and (rarely) a deformity (e.g., visible depression or bulge). Pad the chest wall with blankets or clothing (if the victim needs to be carried out on a stretcher) to restrict unnecessary motion and contact. Never bind the chest so tightly that the victim cannot take a deep breath; this would prevent full expansion of the lungs, which predisposes the victim to partial lung collapse and pneumonia. Even though it will cause pain, encourage the victim to breathe deeply (sigh) or cough at least 10 times each hour. If there is a segment of detached (flail) ribs (see page 47), attempt to stabilize its position with padding (see Figs. 32 and 38); if this victim needs to be transported, carry them with the injured side down to assist lung expansion on the uninjured side. Because of the force necessary to break a rib, anticipate internal bleeding (lungs, liver, and spleen) (see page 68). A rib will sometimes break during forceful coughing. In this case, internal injury is not a concern.

Thoracic and lumbar spine (chest and lower back)

A victim who falls a great distance and lands on their feet might fracture their heel(s), ankle(s), and lumbar vertebrae (lower bones of the spine—see Fig. 62). Symptoms of spinal cord injury include back pain, particularly in the midline; weakness, numbness or tingling below the injury; loss of bladder or bowel control; numbness in a "saddle" distribution (where a person's skin would contact a saddle when sitting on a horse); and low blood pressure ("spinal shock"). If a fractured spine is suspected, the victim must be completely immobilized to avoid damage to the spinal cord. Position them on a firm litter or backboard and secure them so that no motion of the back is possible (see page 35). If a scoop stretcher or backboard is not available and the victim must be moved, they should be logrolled (see page 37). If a patient has a suspected spine injury but must be repositioned to allow placement on a backboard or other conveyance, use as many assistants as you need to try to avoid unnecessary twisting and bending of the spine (see page 453). Pay particular attention to the neck and lower back.

Pelvis

If pressing inward on the victim's hips or downward on the pubic bone causes pain, suspect a fracture of the pelvis and immobilize the victim from their waist down. A pelvis (pelvic) fracture is frequently associated with severe internal injuries and bleeding, so rapid evacuation is a high priority. Be prepared to treat the victim for shock (see page 70). Don't allow a victim with a suspected pelvic fracture to walk. A SAM Pelvic Sling is a force-controlled circumferential pelvic sling belt for reduction and stabilization of pelvic fractures. This reduces the volume into which bleeding from the fracture can occur. Another device is the Pelvic Binder (www.pelvicbinder.com). If this type of device is not available, the pelvis can be wrapped tightly with a sheet (folded to approximately 12 to 16 inches [30 to 40 cm] in width), sleeping pad (held in place with tape), blanket, or jacket to attempt to keep the bone fragments from moving, which hopefully diminishes instability, internal bleeding, and pain (Fig. 105). Place the top of the sheet or device so that it is just above the top of the iliac crests, with the bottom over the hips. If it is placed properly, it is centered over the greater trochanters of the femur (Fig. 106). Pelvic binders are often placed too high on the hips. Ensure that the tension is over the greater trochanters of the femur. If it is placed too high, it can open the pelvis further. A windlass (see windlass component of Fig.

120) applied to the material wrapped around the pelvis can be used to achieve tightness. Another method is to wrap an inflatable sleeping pad snugly around the pelvis and secure it with tape. After it is secured, it can be inflated to snug it up and apply pressure (Fig. 107). Before applying any pelvic sling, be sure to empty the patient's pockets and remove their belt so that the external pressure doesn't press any items against the pelvis. For transport, place padding between the victim's legs and gently tie their legs and feet together to minimize motion and improve comfort. Don't leave any pelvic binding (stabilization) apparatus in place for more than 24 hours.

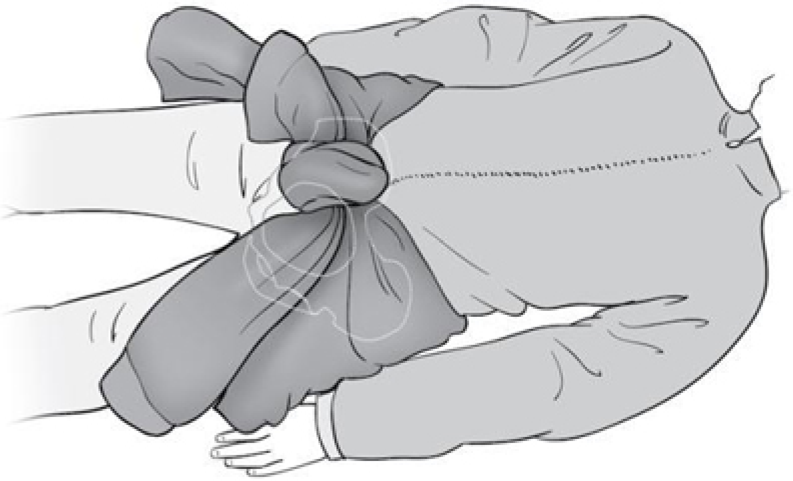


FIG. 105 Pelvic sling improvised with a jacket provides compression to the pelvis to control bleeding.

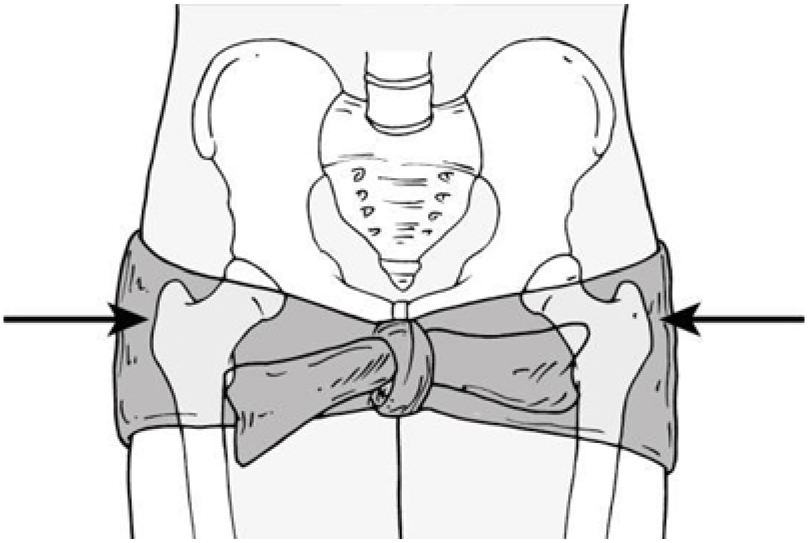


FIG. 106 Greater trochanters. Landmark for pelvic binder. *Source:* (Redrawn from Auerbach PS [ed]: Wilderness medicine [ed 5]. St Louis: Mosby, 2007, p 505.)

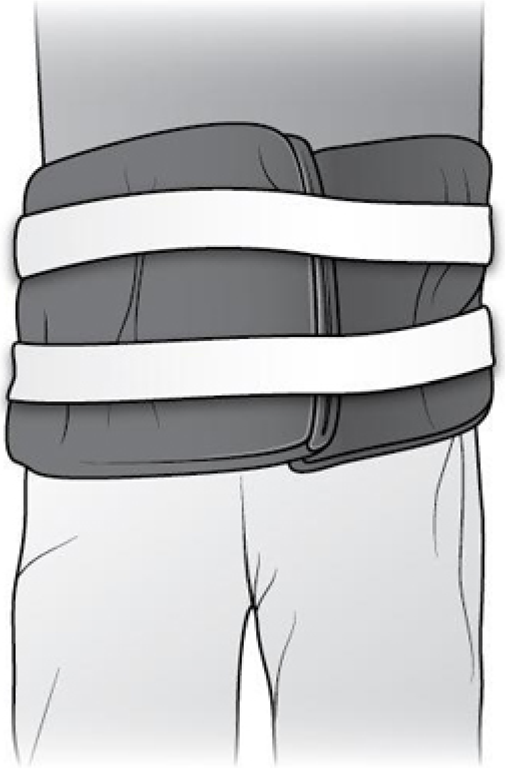


FIG. 107 Using an inflatable sleeping pad to stabilize a fractured pelvis.

Tailbone (coccyx)

If someone slips and falls directly into a sitting position on a very hard surface, such as a boulder or rock slab, they might break their tailbone. This causes pain at the tip of the spine, felt at the top end of the crease between the buttocks, and almost always with sitting. It might also cause pain with bowel movements. Treatment consists of positioning to avoid pressure on the area. This includes leaning forward when sitting to rest the weight anywhere other than on the tailbone, improvising a doughnut-shaped sitting cushion, and avoiding constipation.

Femur

A fracture of the femur (the large bone of the upper leg—the longest and strongest bone in the body) can be diagnosed by severe pain, inability to bear weight, deformity, and rapid swelling (from bleeding). Often, the affected leg is shortened, and the foot is rotated away from the other leg. Sometimes a fracture of the neck of the femur can be subtle, as the victim complains only of minor pain on the inside of the groin or knee and might continue to walk. On close inspection, the affected leg might be seen to be slightly shortened, and there might be some swelling and pain in the anterior hip area. Any disabling femur fracture requires splinting from the hip to the ankle. Because the muscles of the thigh are quite powerful and will tend to force the broken bone ends to overlap (Fig. 108, A), traction might be necessary to control bleeding, maintain position, decrease pain, and prevent further internal muscle and blood vessel damage (see Fig. 108, B). The recommended amount of traction is the equivalent of 10% of body weight, not to exceed 15 lb (6.8 kg). If sufficient rescuers are available, one person should maintain firm traction on the leg at the ankle to oppose the strong muscle contractions of the thigh (Fig. 109). A broken femur can bleed 2 quarts (liters) of blood into the thigh rapidly, so evacuation is a high priority. Be prepared to treat the victim for shock (see page 70). Note that traction splints for femur fractures have fallen out of favor in some prehospital systems because they are often applied incorrectly and can cause more harm than good, especially to the ankle where tension is applied to the soft tissues there. In settings where femur fracture traction splints aren't recommended by local experts, a full leg immobilization splint is used.

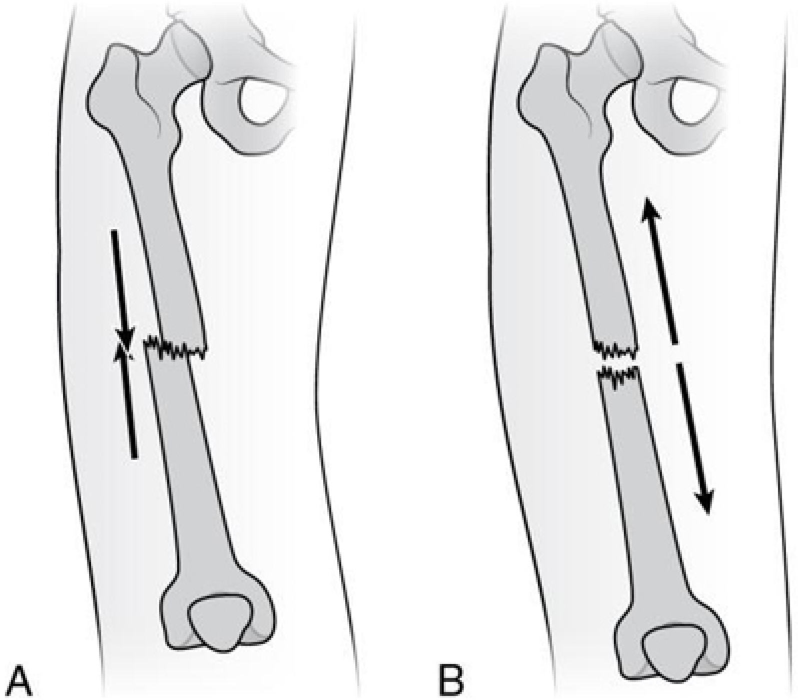


FIG. 108 Fracture of the femur. **A,** Without traction, strong muscles of the thigh pull the broken bone ends together, causing pain and deformity. **B,** Traction straightens the leg and helps control bleeding and pain.

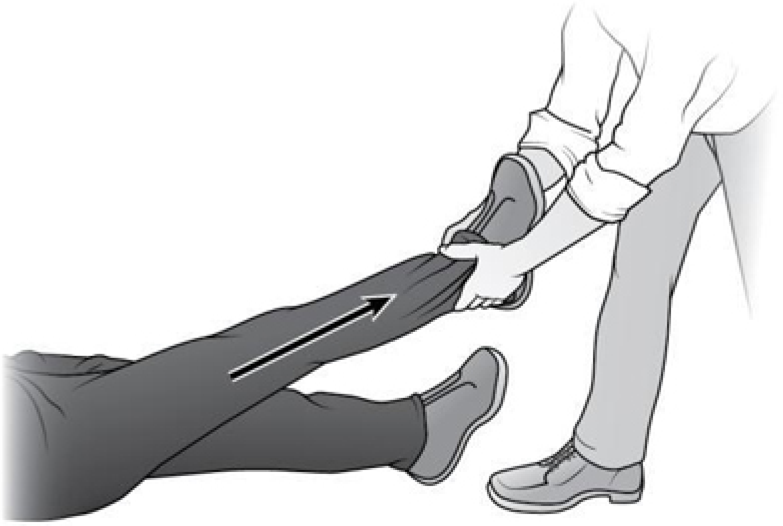


FIG. 109 Technique for applying traction to the lower leg to stabilize a broken femur.

The standard Thomas ("half ring") splint allows traction to be applied to the femur. A Hare splint has a ratchet mechanism at the end to provide mechanical traction. A Sager splint allows traction by facilitating lengthening of its long, rigid axis rod. The Kendrick Traction Device is a lightweight, portable field traction apparatus that operates on the same principle and can easily be carried and applied in a wilderness setting. The Slishman Traction Splint, available in ski pole and EMS versions, is an excellent, lightweight device. The ski pole version is similar to a single ski pole system (Fig. 110). Practice using any commercial splint before you have to use it "for real."

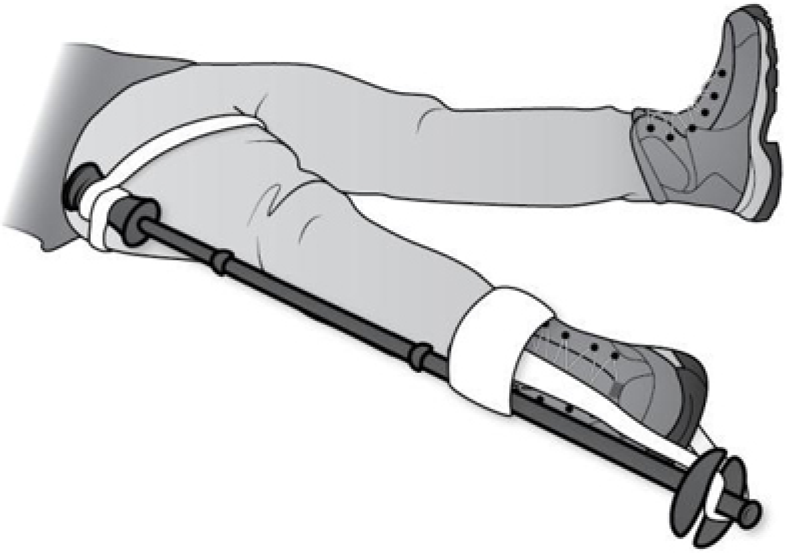


FIG. 110 Single ski pole system for applying traction to stabilize a broken femur.

You can also prepare an improvised traction splint that replicates the features of a Thomas splint: a half ring to anchor up against the pelvic bone (ischial tuberosity) underneath the lower crease of the buttock, two longitudinal rigid rods to run the length of the leg, a fixed spacer at the lower (foot) end between the two rods, and a traction mechanism to pull on the leg to align the fracture. The half ring can comprise a SAM Splint (see Fig. 329). See later for details.

The ankle should be padded with foam or cloth pads, or a boot should be worn. If the latter is done, you can take off the boot, cut away the toe section to assess the circulation (skin color, sensation) and replace the boot (Fig. 111).

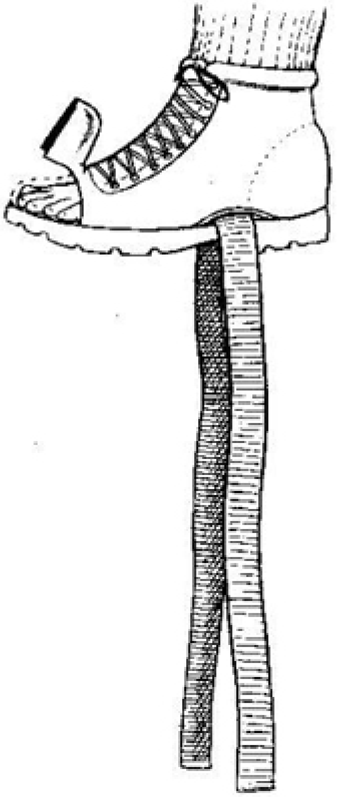


FIG. 111 The toe section of a boot can be cut away (with boot off victim) to allow inspection for adequate circulation. A cravat or piece of webbing can be passed through a boot as the first step in creating a traction harness.

A traction harness must be created to pull the leg straight down away from the head. One method is to cut two slits through the victim's sturdy boot, above the sole just in front of the heel and directly below the leg bones. Pass a cravat or nylon webbing (such as a pack strap) through the opening (see Fig. 111); the ends of the strap will be secured to the rigid object that will form the spacer at the foot end of the leg splint. The paired-loop ("double runner") method of creating an ankle hitch uses paired lengths of cravat, nylon webbing, or rope (Fig. 112, A). Fold each in half, creating a single turn at one end. Lay one cravat over the top of the ankle and one behind the ankle (behind the Achilles tendon), with the curved ends pointed in opposite directions. Pass the free ends of each cravat through the loop in the other cravat and tighten the cravats so that they fit snugly and flat against the ankle. The free ends should now hang down (see Fig. 112, B) and will be secured to the spacer, directly or with an interposed pulley system, that connects the long, rigid rods of the splint. Another method to apply traction is "Buck's traction," in which a pad is secured firmly around the lower leg in such a way that the pad can get enough purchase to allow it to anchor tape stirrups (Fig.

113). If the ankle is injured, a suitable traction harness would be the S-configuration hitch, which is applied to the leg just above the ankle (Fig. 114).

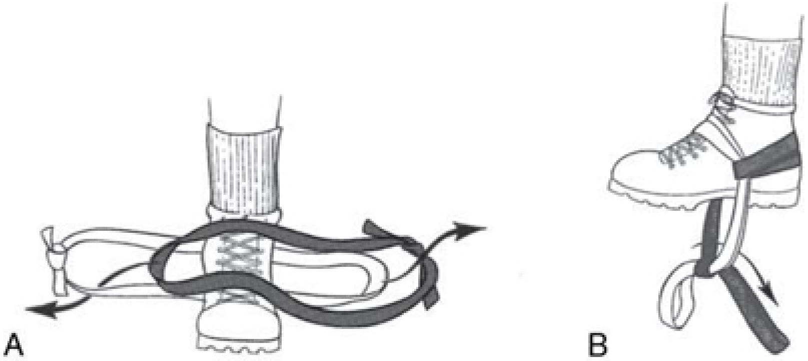


FIG. 112 Paired-looped webbing to create an ankle hitch. **A,** Position the webbing around the ankle. **B,** Pull the harness tight with the ends pointed down for fixation to the splint.

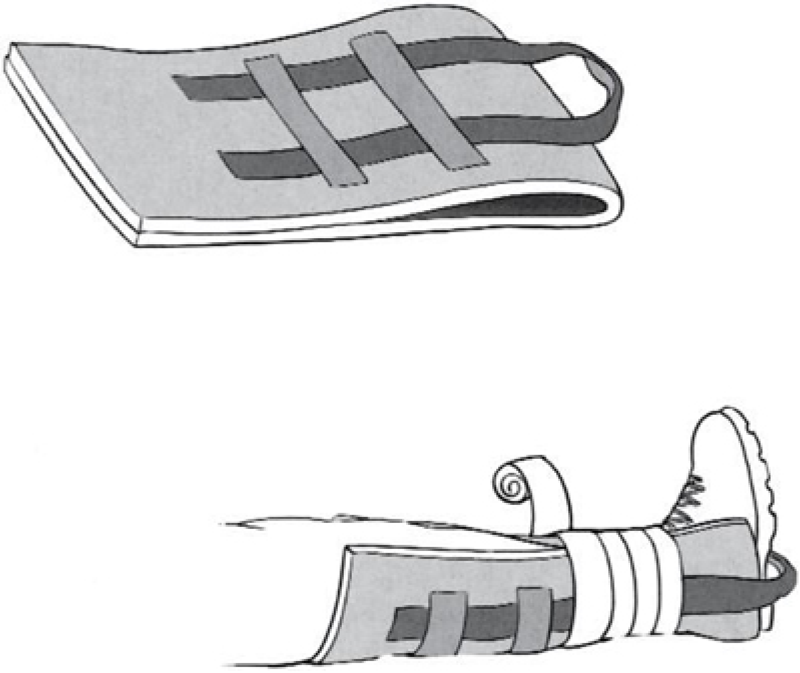


FIG. 113 Buck's traction.

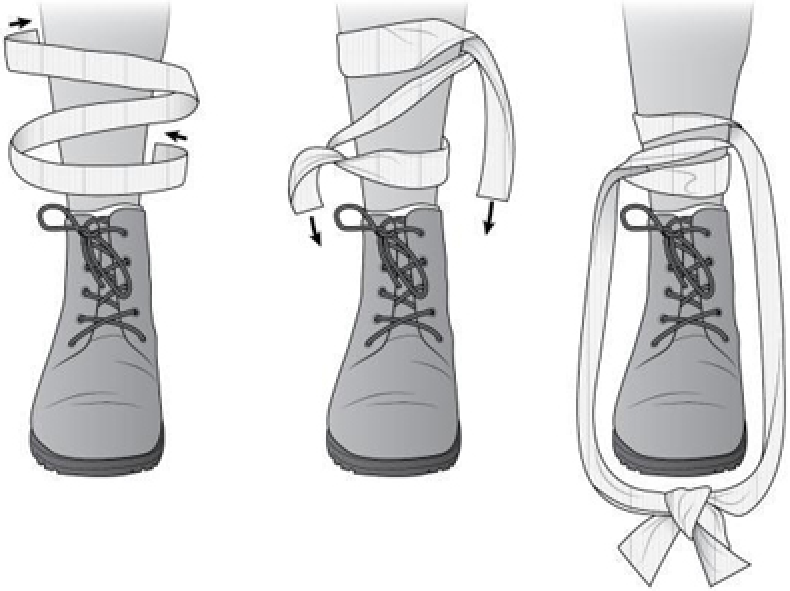


FIG. 114 S-configuration hitch traction harness applied above an injured ankle. Padding must be used to prevent injury to lower leg.

The traction splint rods can be fashioned from two ski poles, rigid tree limbs or saplings, tent poles, or anything else that's approximately a foot (30 cm) longer than the distance from the top of the thigh to the bottom of the foot. To measure the proper length, lay the rods next to the victim on either side of the thigh, with the top of the inner rod tucked up against the groin crease and the top of the outer at the top of the thigh. Cut the lengths to be even at a distance of approximately 8 to 12 inches (20 to 30 cm) below the foot (Fig. 115).

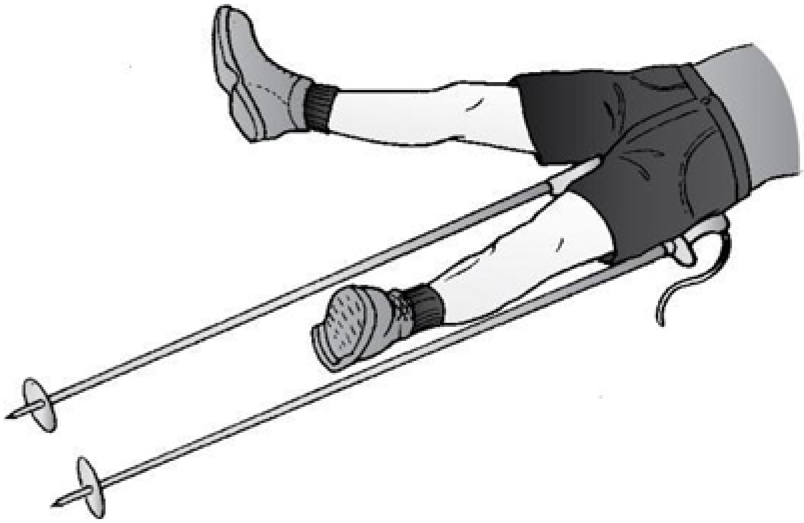


FIG. 115 Proper length of traction splint rods.

Construct the splint away from the victim. Using a cravat, ski pole straps, webbing, or rope, attach the tops of the two poles with a length that approximates half the circumference of the thigh at this point, to create the half ring that will be snugged up underneath the victim into the lower buttock crease (Fig. 116). This splint can also be accomplished using a SAM Splint (see Fig. 329) to create the half ring. At the lower (foot) ends of the rods, attach a perpendicular rigid spacer about 8 inches (20 cm) in length (Fig. 117). This could be a piece of ski pole, a wrench, a piece of tree limb, or the like. Then lay four cravats (two for above the knee, two for below) or straps (that can be fastened) over the rods and wind them to be configured as cradle hitches (Fig. 118). These will fix the rods to the leg after traction has been applied. Velcro straps are nice, if you have them.

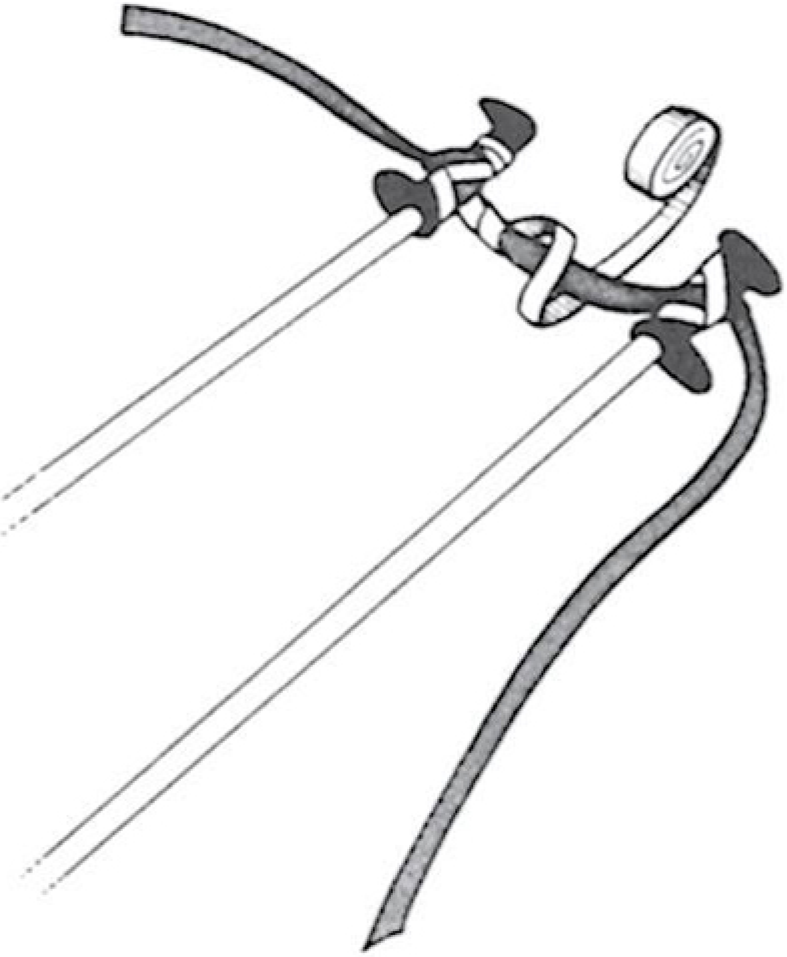


FIG. 116 Creation of the half ring, which snugs up into the buttock crease.

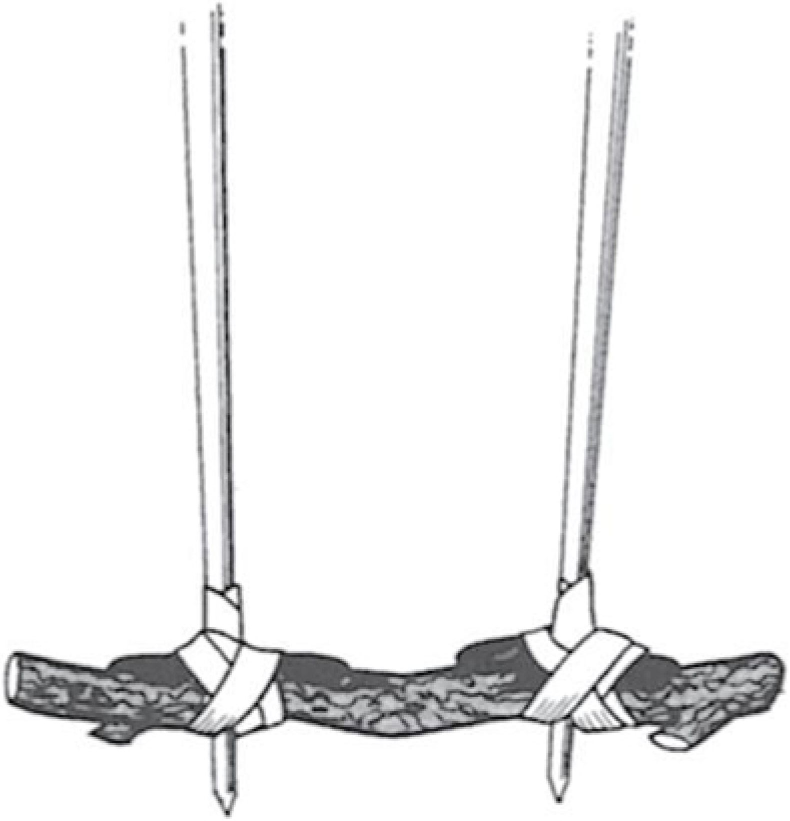


FIG. 117 Attachment of the spacer at the foot end between the splint rods.

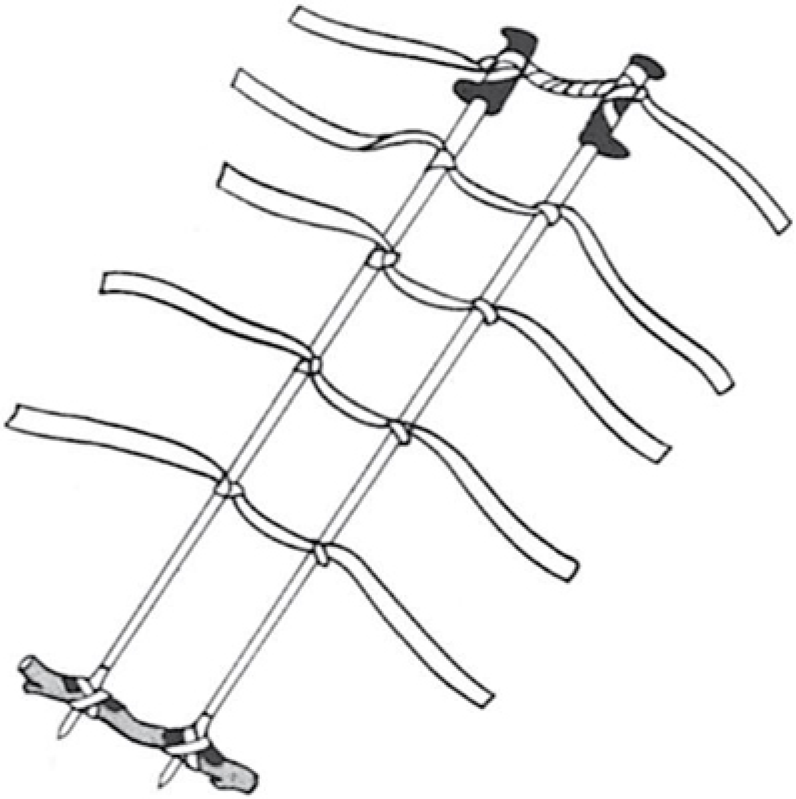


FIG. 118 Configuration of cravats for cradle hitches.

Holding traction on the leg, lift it enough to slide the splint underneath. Snug the half ring up into the buttock crease, remembering to keep the shorter rod on the inside of the leg. Attach the splint firmly to the leg with tape or a cravat around the front of the thigh (over thick padding, if available) at the top of the splint above the suspected point of the fracture (Fig. 119).

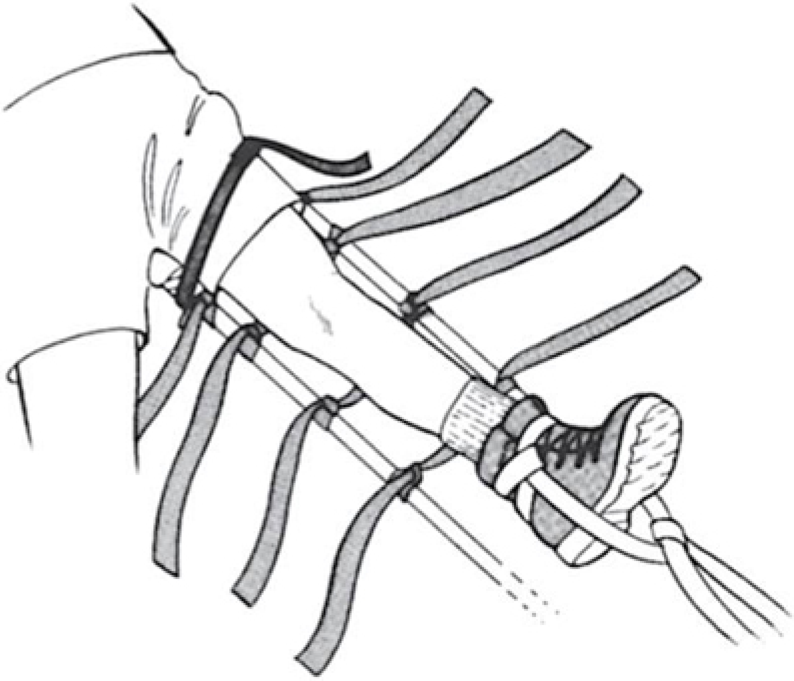


FIG. 119 Attaching the splint to the leg above the suspected point of the fracture.

Tie the free ends from the traction harness (which you created through the boot or around the ankle) to the spacer at the end of the long splint. Create a “Spanish windlass” by inserting a short, rigid stick or rod between the tied-down free ends and twisting to produce the desired amount of traction (Fig. 120). Fix the twister rod in place by tying it to the adjacent long splint rods (Fig. 121). Another way to apply traction is to use a webbing belt and sliding buckle (Fig. 122).

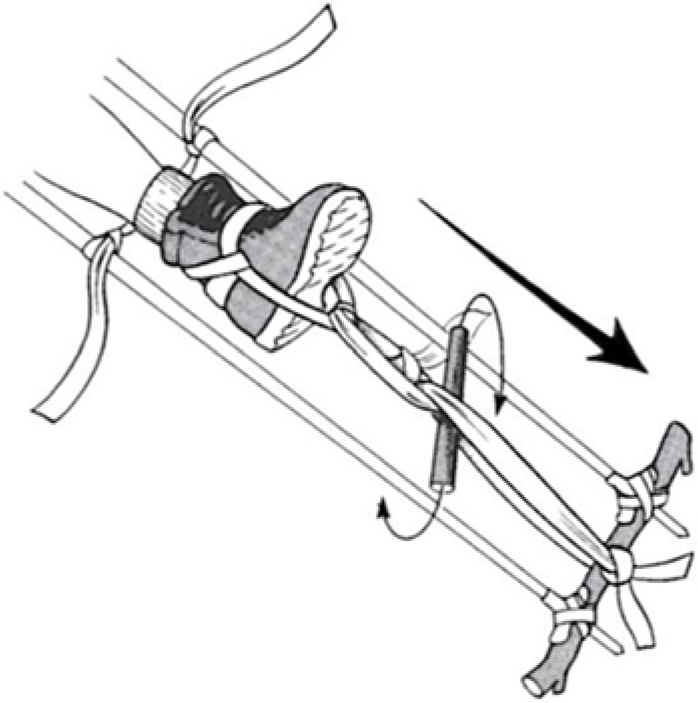


FIG. 120 Tie the free ends of the foot harness to the spacer. Then twist the Spanish windlass to create downward traction on the leg.

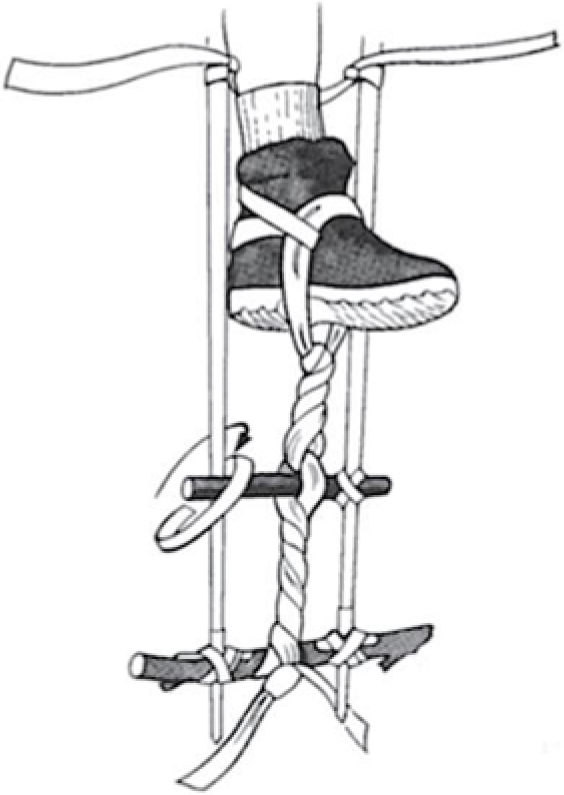


FIG. 121 After the windlass is twisted to achieve the desired traction, tie the windlass rod to the long struts of the splint to maintain the traction.

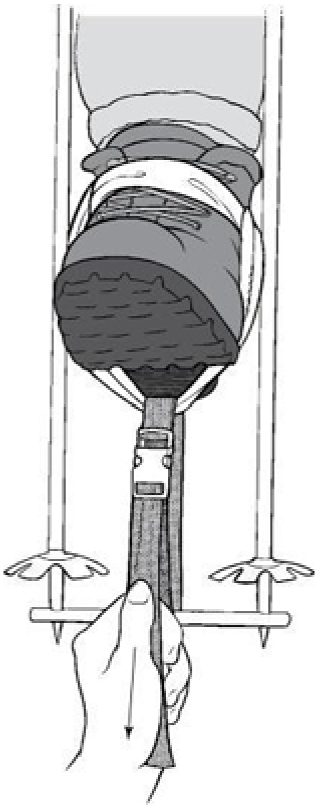


FIG. 122 Applying traction to a long leg splint using a webbing belt and sliding buckle.

Finally, secure the splint to the leg with the cradle hitches, two above the knee and two below (Fig. 123). Pad everything. The victim might be more comfortable if you apply traction while their knee is very slightly bent.

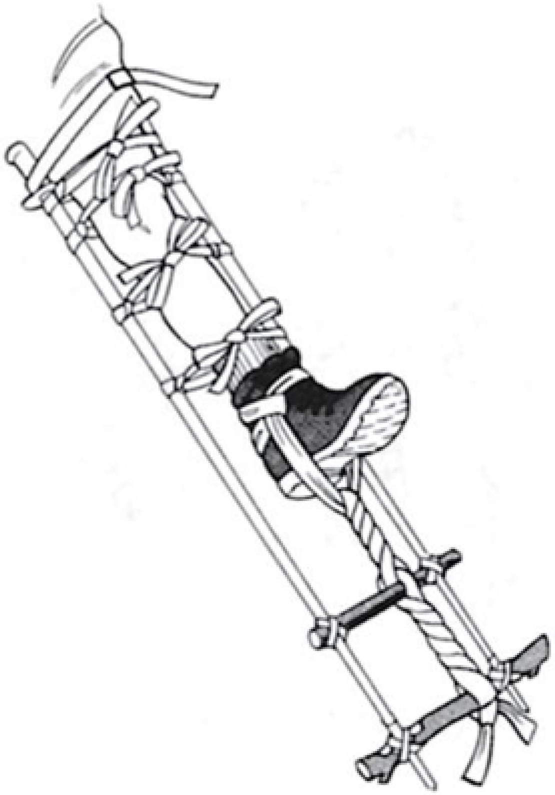


FIG. 123 Secure the splint in place by tying off the cradle hitches.

With a broken femur, the rescuer would ideally remove the victim's shoe or boot to be able to assess whether the circulation is intact, by checking the dorsalis pedis artery pulse on the top of the foot (see page 28) and observing for normal skin color and sensation. This should be done only if it will not interfere with splinting and if the foot can be protected from the elements (e.g., to avoid frostbite). If the footwear is removed, tent up the sock and cut a hole just large enough to allow a finger to enter to find the pulse and to get a peek at the skin color.

After applying any femur traction splint, remember to check at 30-minute intervals to be sure that the traction has not lessened beyond where you desire it to be. It's not uncommon for professional and improvised traction splints alike to slip or otherwise lose tension. You must also check to make sure the ankle hitch is not causing pain, cutting off circulation, or injuring local tissue.

Hip

If a person (usually elderly) falls with great force directly onto their knee, the large leg bone can be forced backward out of the hip socket and create a posterior hip dislocation. In such a case, the affected leg appears shorter and is bent at the knee; the foot and knee are also turned inward (toward the other leg) (Fig. 124). With an anterior hip dislocation, the ball of the femur slips forward out of the hip socket, and the leg is shorter and externally rotated (knee and foot face outward) (Fig. 125). Either dislocation is a serious condition, because the blood supply to the head of the femur (the "ball" of this ball-and-socket joint) is disrupted. If medical attention cannot be reached within 1 hour, make an attempt at relocation—*unless there is a deformity of the upper leg or knee (indicating a fracture).* Hold the leg and knee of the victim firmly and exert forceful traction pulling on the thigh directly down toward the victim's feet, in an attempt to slide the head of the femur back into the hip socket. If this is successful, you will feel a "give," and the leg, knee, and foot will regain proper alignment.

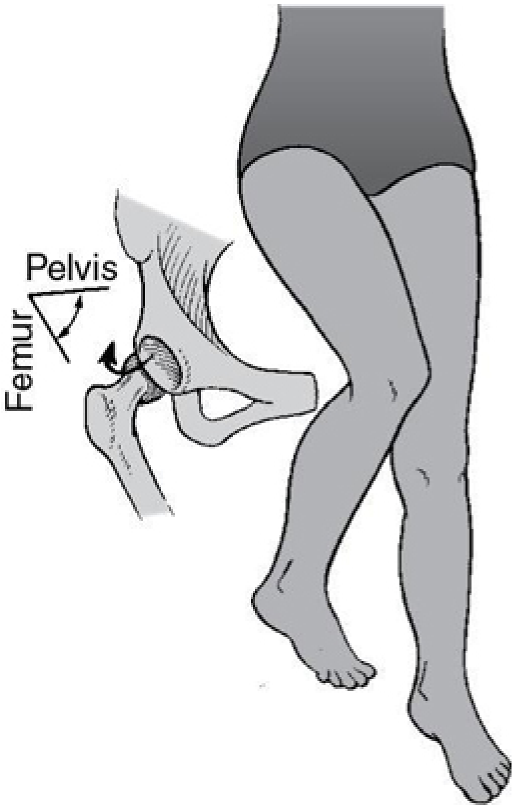


FIG. 124 Position of the leg with posterior hip dislocation.

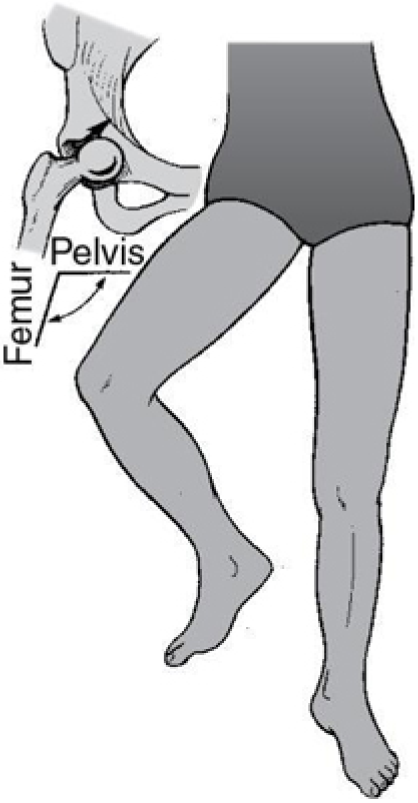


FIG. 125 Position of the leg with anterior hip dislocation.

Because of the force required to perform this maneuver, it's generally necessary to have a second rescuer provide countertraction to the victim's upper body. The two-rescuer method involves the first rescuer straddling the supine victim directly over their hips, facing toward the victim's head and holding the victim's bent leg between their knees. The second rescuer holds the victim's pelvis to the ground while the first lifts upward on the dislocated femur (Fig. 126).

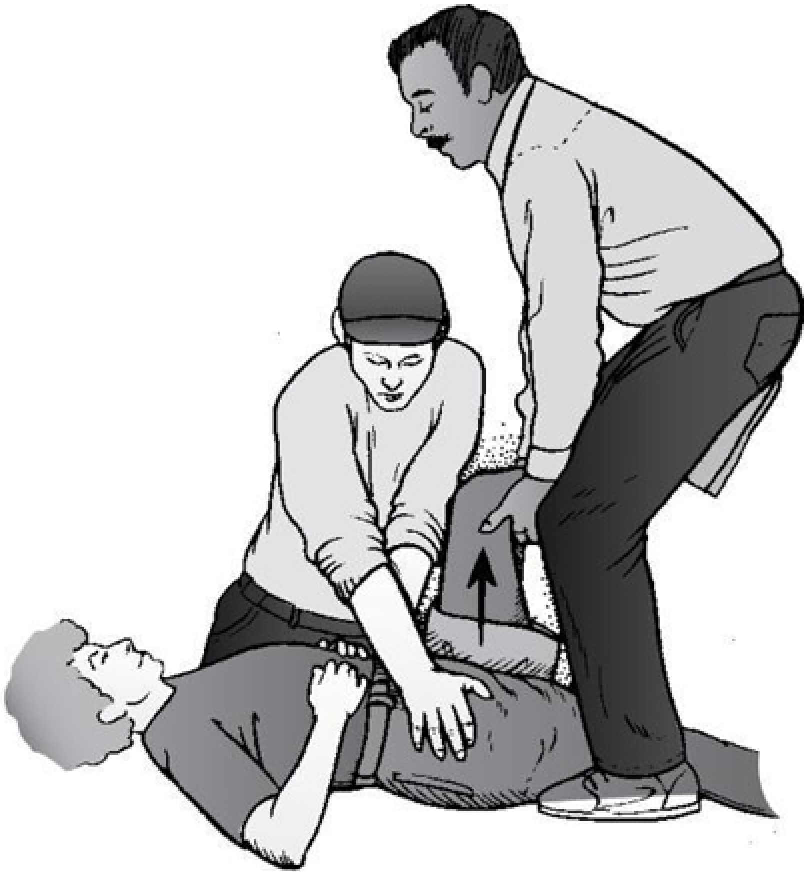


FIG. 126 Two-rescuer method for repositioning a dislocated hip.

The "Captain Morgan technique" (named for the pose of the pirate on a bottle of Captain Morgan rum) is performed as follows: Have the victim lie on their back on a backboard, stretcher, or other surface to which the victim can be secured by a strap across the pelvis. Bend the joints of both the leg (at the hip) and the knee on the affected side to 90 degrees (right angle). The rescuer then places one of their feet on the backboard directly underneath the victim's leg such that the rescuer's knee is positioned underneath the victim's calf as close as possible to the knee. The rescuer holds the victim's ankle to keep the knee bent and applies an upward force to the hip by lifting their calf, while gently rotating the lower leg back and forth to see if this helps slide the femur back within the pelvis (Fig. 127). This technique can be done with a single rescuer, but it's always helpful to have someone assist by holding the victim's pelvis firmly on the ground.

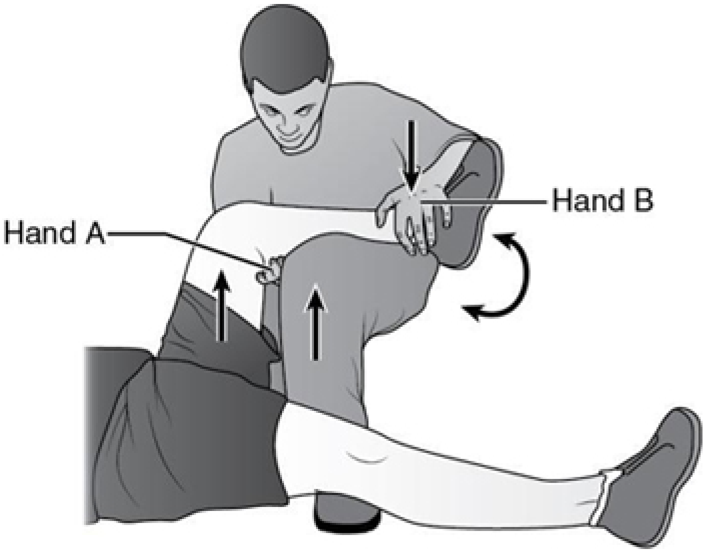


FIG. 127 Captain Morgan technique for reducing a dislocated hip.

Another single-rescuer technique is the “Whistler technique.” In this case, the rescuer’s forearm is used as a fulcrum against which to apply the necessary force to put the dislocated femur back into place (Fig. 128). Have the victim lie on their back on a backboard, stretcher, or other surface to which the victim can be secured by a strap across the pelvis. The uninjured leg is put up into a bent flexed position. The rescuer slides their forearm under the injured leg behind the knee and uses their hand to hold onto the flexed knee of the uninjured leg. With their other hand, the rescuer holds firmly onto the ankle of the injured leg, which should be put into a position of approximately 90 degrees flexed (at the hip). Now, the rescuer uses their forearm (underneath the dislocated leg) as a fulcrum and the lower leg as a lever. Putting downward force on the leg should now flex the knee and put traction on the femur, pulling its head back into the hip socket. It might help to rotate the leg back and forth to get the hip to go back into position.

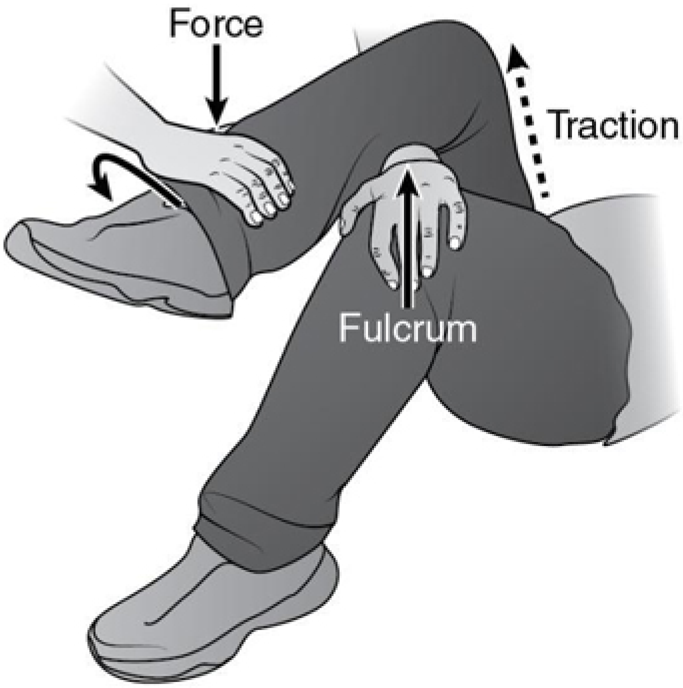


FIG. 128 Whistler technique for reducing a dislocated hip.

If relocation is successful, firmly splint the hip by securing the victim's legs together, slightly bent at the hips and knees with padding in between; they should be promptly evacuated and should not attempt to walk.

Knee and kneecap

When examining the knee, it's helpful to understand the anatomy. There are four bones: femur (large bone of the upper leg), tibia (larger bone of the lower leg [includes the "shin"]), fibula (smaller bone of the leg located on the outer side), and patella (kneecap). The medial (inner side) collateral ligament connects the femur to the tibia; the lateral (outer side) collateral ligament connects the femur to the fibula. The medial and lateral menisci are cartilages inside the joint that help cushion the tibia against the femur. The anterior cruciate ligaments cross within the knee and provide stability against forward and backward motion between the tibia and femur, and also against rotation around a vertical axis. If there is swelling within the knee (typically from a fluid collection), the skin "dimples" usually found on either side of the kneecap are less or disappear.

A suspected fracture of the knee or kneecap should be splinted from hip to ankle. If there is such great deformity that the foot becomes numb and turns blue or pale and cold (usually with severe dislocation of the knee joint) and pulses cannot be felt, then dislocation of the knee joint should be suspected and the rescuer should use traction to attempt to realign the leg in a position of function (with the knee bent at a 15- to 30-degree angle; see Fig. 59, B) to reestablish circulation. It’s very difficult to correct a knee dislocation in this manner, so it’s likely that the attempt will be unsuccessful. If pulses don’t return even after the knee has been repositioned, the major artery that traverses the knee joint might have been torn or crushed and occluded. **A knee fracture or dislocation is a surgical emergency. Even if the relocation attempt is successful, the victim still must be evacuated promptly for a full evaluation.**

The kneecap can be dislocated to the outside (lateral dislocation—more common) or to the inside (medial dislocation). If the kneecap becomes dislocated, gently straighten the leg, then push the kneecap back into place. It might be necessary to slightly hyperextend (“over straighten”) the knee to accomplish this. To relax the quadriceps muscle, it might help to slightly flex the hip. Another technique is to have the victim lie face down, then hold the patella firmly while lifting the affected leg slowly off the ground to relax the hamstring muscles. Then, release your grip on the patella and slowly straighten the leg to see if the kneecap will move back into proper position. Occasionally, the kneecap will not move back into position. If any maneuver is painful or not easily accomplished, don’t apply force. After the kneecap is repositioned, splint the leg straight or at a 15-degree bend (knee) using an Ensolite or foam pad and elastic bandage(s). If the leg is in this position and splinted, the victim might be able to gently bear weight. If the splint slips, duct tape can be used to fashion suspenders (Fig. 129). To prevent the kneecap from becoming dislocated, a person with a history of frequent (patellar) dislocation can choose to wear an Aircast patellar brace or similar support. This stabilizes the kneecap and compresses the surrounding soft tissue with a circular cushion of air.

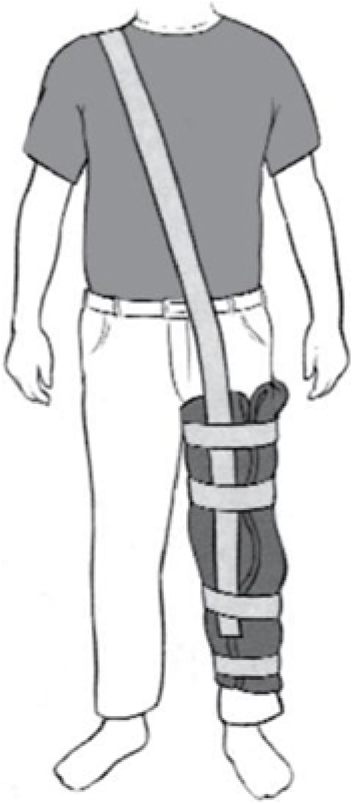


FIG. 129 Duct tape suspenders support an improvised knee splint.

If the knee has been dislocated or fractured, the victim must be carried. If a kneecap dislocation is the only injury, however, successful treatment will allow the victim to walk, using an ice ax, ski pole, or other object as a crutch.

The kneecap might also become painful because of repetitive bending of the knee, such as occurs with hiking and climbing, combined with maltracking of the kneecap within the groove in the femur. This is treated with rest, activity, and proper stretching and strengthening.

The knee can be sprained (or strained) when it twists or withstands impact. The supporting ligaments that bind the joint on the outside and inside (lateral and medial collateral ligaments) and those that cross front to back through the interior of the knee joint (cruciate ligaments) can be stretched, slightly torn, or completely disrupted. This causes immediate pain with weight bearing (walking), motion (trying to bend the knee or extend the leg), or touch (pressing against the injured side of the knee). Often, there is swelling and a spongy feel to the knee. As swelling increases, the knee becomes less flexible and more difficult to bend. If you suspect more than a minor sprain, immobilize the knee as if for a fracture; the victim should avoid weight bearing.

Sometimes the mechanism of injury can suggest what has been damaged:

- Striking the bent knee from the outside commonly injures the medial collateral ligament.
- Striking the straight knee from the inside commonly injures the lateral collateral ligament.
- Striking the front of the knee commonly injures the posterior cruciate ligament.
- A knee being severely twisted or completely giving out on impact or pivot commonly is caused by anterior cruciate ligament disruption.
- The medial and lateral menisci are cartilaginous cushions within the knee joint. Pain with knee rotation or clicking/locking of the knee might indicate a meniscal tear. A “bucket-handle” tear of a meniscus can cause the attached torn fragment to become lodged in the knee joint, which is very painful, and results in a “locked” knee, which cannot be bent (flexed) or straightened (extended) without sharp excruciating pain (because the fragment is being pinched). If this happens, it’s sometimes possible to release the trapped fragment. First, position the affected side down to take advantage of gravity. Next, gently and slowly bend the knee to an angle of about 30 degrees, and then apply pressure to the lower leg in an attempt to slightly open the affected side of the joint. For instance, if the pain is on the outer side of the knee, the pressure is applied to the lower leg and ankle in an inward fashion, with slight inward rotation of the ankle, with a hand pressing on the inside of the knee in a direction toward the ground. If the pain is on the inner side of the knee, pressure is applied to the lower leg in an outward fashion, with slight outward rotation of the ankle, with a hand pressing on the outside of the knee in a direction toward the ground. If the maneuver is successful, the pain will be relieved immediately, and the knee will “unlock” (be able to bend and straighten without pain).
- Inability to step up (“climb stairs”) after a “pop” is felt or heard might indicate injury to the quadricep/patellar tendon. Sometimes this tendon is irritated from overuse, which causes pain underneath and just below the kneecap. The treatment is rest, ice, and a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID), as for any other sprain or strain. Some persons report pain relief if they apply a patellar tendon strap around the leg just below the knee. This can be improvised from a rolled cravat or bandanna.

Lower leg

A fracture of the lower leg should be splinted from knee to ankle (Fig. 130). If necessary, the legs can be attached side by side with padding in between. If the knee is not involved, keep it bent at 15 to 30 degrees.

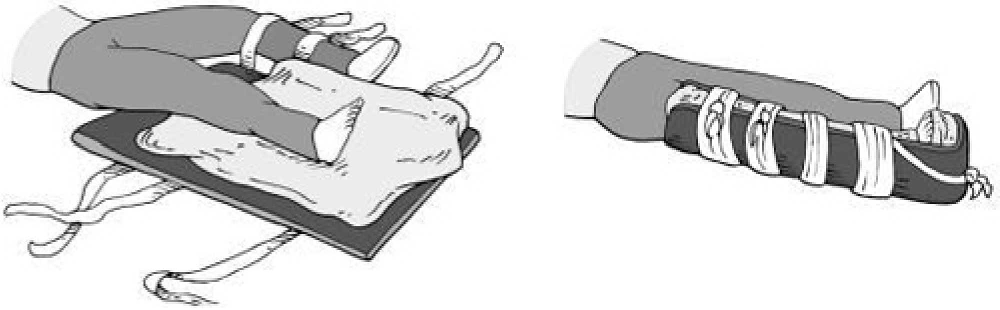


FIG. 130 Lower leg splint.

If the head of the fibula (smaller bone of the lower leg) is dislocated from its position adjacent to the head of the tibia (larger bone of the lower leg), there will be pain and a bulge at the site of the dislocation. This injury commonly occurs when the knee is bent (flexed) while the foot is rotated inward with forefoot and toes forced downward. If this happens and pain prohibits the victim from walking, then an attempt can be made to relocate the fibular head by pressing over it while simultaneously bending the knee and rotating the foot outward while lifting the forefoot toward the knee, to cause a "pop."

Ankle

A fracture of the ankle can be stirrup-splinted, placed in a lower leg splint, or wrapped to prevent movement. This can be accomplished using a SAM Splint, parka, or piece of rolled foam taped or wrapped into place (Fig. 131; see Figs. 323 to 325). Remove or loosen the boot or shoe to avoid entrapment due to swelling, which could impair circulation. However, if the victim must walk out under their own power, replace footwear as soon as possible, before swelling makes this impossible.

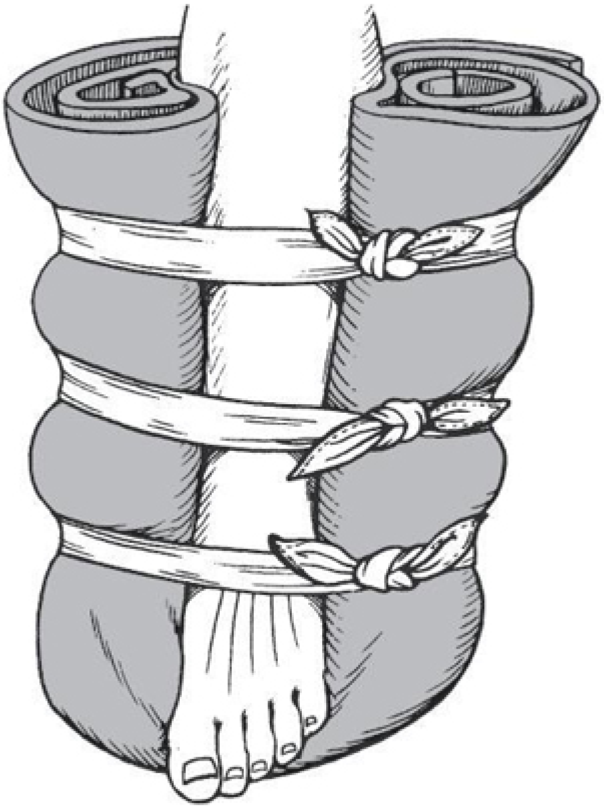


FIG. 131 A piece of rolled foam can be used as a “stirrup” to hold the foot and ankle motionless.

Toe

A fractured toe can be splinted by buddy-taping. This is performed by placing some padding (cloth or cotton) between the toes and taping the injured toe to a healthy adjacent toe for support.

Heel

A fractured heel often occurs after a fall from a height in which the victim lands on their feet. It is a serious injury, both in and of itself, and because it can be accompanied by other serious injuries, such as a broken spine (typically of the lumbar – lower- spine due to compressive vertical forces). Severe pain and swelling are common. Discoloration of the skin is variable. The victim should be splinted with the foot pointed slightly downward or in a normal position and brought rapidly to medical attention.

Amputation

Amputation is detachment of a body part, such as an ear, finger, or foot. It is usually associated with a serious force or crushing injury, such as an animal bite. The immediate threats to life are bleeding (see page 60) and shock (see page 70).

If a body part is detached, apply firm pressure to the site of the bleeding where the tissue loss has occurred. Manage any serious bleeding (see page 60). Cover the wound with the cleanest available bandage, and then wrap firmly. *Do not attempt to reattach the detached body part.* If a digit is hanging on by a small "bridge" of skin or muscle, attempt to bandage it without completing the separation.

If the body part can be easily recovered and the victim can be brought to a hospital within 24 hours of the injury, do the following:

1. Gently rinse the body part if the cut end is contaminated with dirt.
2. Wrap the body part in clean cloth or gauze and keep the covering moist. The ideal solution is saline (*not* ocean water, because of infection risk), if that is available; if not, fresh water will do. Do not immerse the part in a bag of water; merely keep the cloth covering moist. Put the cloth-wrapped part in a dry plastic bag and keep the body part cool by placing the plastic bag in cold water or a cooler. Do not freeze the amputated tissues. To avoid a cold-induced tissue injury, *do not apply ice directly to the body part.* Without cooling, an amputated part might remain viable for up to 6 to 12 hours; with cooling, this can be extended to 24 hours.
3. Bring the body part with the victim to the hospital. If possible, make sure the amputated part stays with the patient.

If the limb is completely severed and the bleeding is severe, a tourniquet should be applied. A tourniquet may result in the muscular walls of the arteries constricting, after which bleeding can be controlled by direct pressure (see page 62). In situations where victims are far from a hospital, after an hour, consider loosening the tourniquet briefly to see if the bleeding can be controlled with pressure techniques alone.

After bleeding is controlled, cover the stump with a moistened gauze or cloth, optimally underneath pressure or compression dressings and bandage. Place a plastic bag(s) containing ice/snow mixed with water on top of the bandaged stump. Evacuate the patient rapidly to definitive medical care.

Burns

Definitions (Fig. 132)

First-degree burn (superficial). This is a burn that involves the outermost layer of skin, the epidermis. It is often quite painful. The skin is reddened, but there is no blister formation. When a large surface area is involved, as with an extensive sunburn, the victim might become quite ill, with fever, weakness, chills, and vomiting.

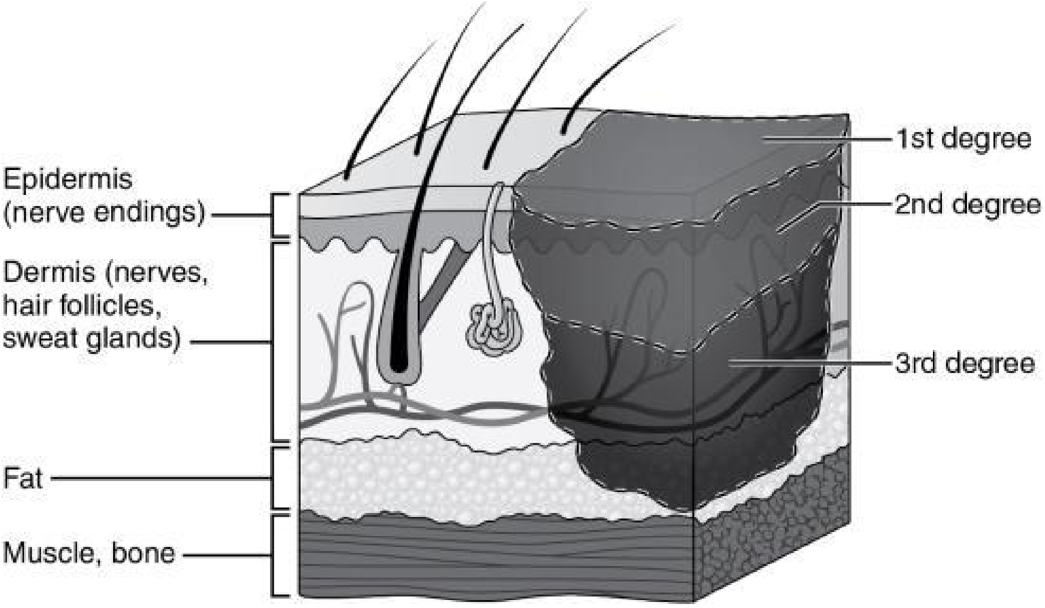

Epidermis (nerve endings)
Dermis (nerves, hair follicles, sweat glands)
Fat
Muscle, bone
1st degree
2nd degree
3rd degree

FIG. 132 Burn wound.

Second-degree burn (partial thickness). This is a burn that involves the epidermis and portions of the next-deeper layer of the skin, called the dermis, which contains the sweat glands, hair follicles, and small blood vessels. It is usually more painful than a first-degree burn, and blisters are present. Large areas of second-degree injury impair the body's ability to control temperature and retain moisture. Thus, a severely burned victim loses large amounts of fluid and can rapidly become hypothermic in a cold environment.

Third-degree burn (full thickness). This is a burn that has penetrated the entire thickness of the skin, and might involve muscle and bone. It is typically painless because of nerve destruction. The appearance is dry, hard, leathery, and charred. Occasionally, the skin will appear waxy and white with small, clotted blood vessels visible as purple or maroon lines below the surface. Because a third-degree burn is usually surrounded by an area of second-degree injury, the edges of the wound might be quite painful. Third-degree burns almost always require a skin graft for coverage.

Inhalation injury. This is a burn that involves any portion of the airway. Inhalation injury occurs when a victim is trapped in a fire and inhales smoke, steam, or superheated air (see page 132). Most of the damage caused by smoke inhalation is chemical injury caused by harmful substances carried within the smoke. One should suspect airway burns, which can rapidly choke the victim, when there is hoarseness, raspy breathing noises, facial or neck burns, or difficulty breathing. Someone who shows any of these needs to be brought promptly to medical attention (see page 18).

Treatment for burns

1. Remove the victim from the source of the burn. If their clothing is on fire, roll them on the ground or smother them in a blanket to extinguish the flames. If clothing is soaked with hot liquid, quickly remove the clothing. Remove all materials that are hot or burned. If the victim has been burned with chemicals, *gallons* of water should be used to wash off the harmful agents. If chemicals might be present in an article of clothing, remove it. If the eyes are involved, they should be irrigated copiously with lots of water. Phosphorus ignites on contact with air, so any phosphorus in contact with the skin must be kept covered with water. Do not attempt to neutralize acid burns with alkaline solutions or vice versa; the resultant chemical reaction might liberate heat and worsen the injury. Stick to irrigation with water. If clothing remains stuck to the skin and does not fall away with irrigation, do not tear the clothing away. Cut around it.
2. Evaluate the airway. Look for evidence of an inhalation injury: burns of the face and mouth, singed nasal hairs, soot in the mouth, swollen tongue or uvula (see Fig. 158), drooling and difficulty in swallowing saliva, muffled voice, coarse or difficult breathing, coughing, and wheezing. If it appears that an inhalation injury has occurred, administer oxygen (see page 431) by face mask at a flow rate of 5 to 10 liters per minute and transport the victim to a hospital as quickly as possible.

3. Examine the victim for other injuries (see page 16). Unless the airway is involved or the victim is horribly burned, the burn injury will not be immediately life-threatening. In your eagerness to treat the burn, do not overlook a serious injury such as a broken neck. Control all bleeding and attend to broken bones before applying burn dressings.
4. Treat the burn. Cool the burned area. This is usually done with cool or cold, wet compresses. Do not apply ice directly to skin to avoid creating a frostbite injury. If the burn is acquired suddenly (as when a child grabs a hot rock), prompt application of cold can limit the extent of the tissue damage.

Superficial / first-degree: A small first-degree burn can be treated with cool, wet compresses for 10 to 20 minutes. Oral administration of an anti-inflammatory drug, such as aspirin or an NSAID, can provide considerable relief. For treatment of a sunburn, which might involve a large body surface area and might or might not cause blistering, see page 249. Topical corticosteroid creams or ointments are of no benefit in treating a burn wound. Anesthetic sprays that contain benzocaine work for a few hours but might induce allergic reactions. They should be used sparingly. If no blisters are present, a moisturizing cream (such as Vaseline Intensive Care) will help soothe the skin. Aloe vera gel or lotion of at least 60% concentration perhaps promotes resolution of extensive first-degree burns. Burnaid first aid burn gel (Rye Pharmaceuticals), which also comes in an impregnated dressing, contains 2% to 4% melaleuca oil and is advertised to provide relief from the pain of minor burns and scalds.

Partial thickness / second-degree: A second-degree burn should be irrigated gently to remove all loose dirt and skin. This should be done with the cleanest cool water available. *Never apply ice directly to a burn;* this might cause more extensive tissue damage. Cool compresses can be used for pain relief for 10 to 20 minutes. Mild soap and water can be used to clean the burn.

After the wound is clean and dry, cover it with a hydrocolloid dressing (e.g., DuoDERM), polyurethane film dressing, hydrogel wound dressing (e.g., Spenco 2nd Skin), or silver-impregnated wound dressing. These appear to promote more rapid healing with less discomfort than application of silver sulfadiazine antiseptic cream. However, if only silver sulfadiazine (Silvadene) is available, it can be used. An alternative is mupirocin ointment or cream, or bacitracin ointment. A nonadherent dressing layer directly over the antiseptic is easier to change than coarse gauze. Regardless of what is applied directly to the burn wound, it might be helpful (to keep the burn wound area clean) to apply a somewhat bulky dressing made of gauze or cloth bandages, taking care to keep the dressing snug but not tight. Silver sulfadiazine should not be used on the face or in victims who are pregnant, infants, or nursing mothers with children younger than 2 months.

Spenco 2nd Skin is an inert hydrogel composed of water and polyethylene oxide. It absorbs fluids (so long as it does not dry out), which “wicks” serum and secretions away from the wound and promotes wound healing. Other occlusive hydrogel-type dressings are NU-GEL (preserved polyvinyl pyrrolidone in water) and Hydrogel, which can absorb up to 2½ times its weight in exuded (from the wound) fluids. Yet another covering for a burn is a layer of petrolatum-impregnated Aquaphor gauze under a dry (absorbent) gauze dressing.

Do not apply butter, lanolin, vitamin E cream, or any steroid preparation to a burn. These can all inhibit wound healing and might facilitate infections with increased scarring.

Dressings should be changed each day to readjust for swelling and to check for signs of infection. Be certain to keep burned arms and legs elevated as best possible, to minimize swelling and pain.

Blisters should not be opened unless they are obviously infected and contain pus (this will generally not occur until 24 to 48 hours after the burn injury). If a blister remains filled with clear fluid, it is an excellent covering for the wound and will minimize fluid loss and infection. There is no rush to remove charred skin from a burn wound. As the wound matures and dressings are changed, gentle scrubbing will lift off dead tissue.

A victim with large areas of second-degree burns might need to be treated for shock (see page 70).

Full thickness / third-degree: A third-degree burn should be irrigated gently and cleansed with mild soap and water. It should then be covered with antiseptic cream or ointment or a hydrogel-type dressing, and then with a dry sterile dressing.

If a first-degree burn involves more than 20% of the body surface area and the victim suffers from fever, chills, or vomiting, a physician evaluation is required.

If a second-degree burn involves a significant portion of the face, eyes, hands, feet, genitals, or an area greater than 5% of the total body surface area (TBSA), a physician evaluation is required.

Body surface area can be estimated using the “rule of nines” (Fig. 133). For an adult, each upper limb equals 9% of TBSA, each lower limb equals 18%, the anterior and posterior trunk equal 18% each, the head and neck combined equal 9%, and the genital/groin area (perineum) equals 1%. For a small child, each upper limb equals 9% of TBSA, each lower limb equals 14%, the anterior and posterior trunk equal 18% each, the head and neck combined equal 18%, and the perineum equals 1%. Another method to estimate involved body surface area is the “palm of hand” rule, which is that the surface area of the victim’s palm with the fingers represents approximately 1% to 1.5% of their TBSA.

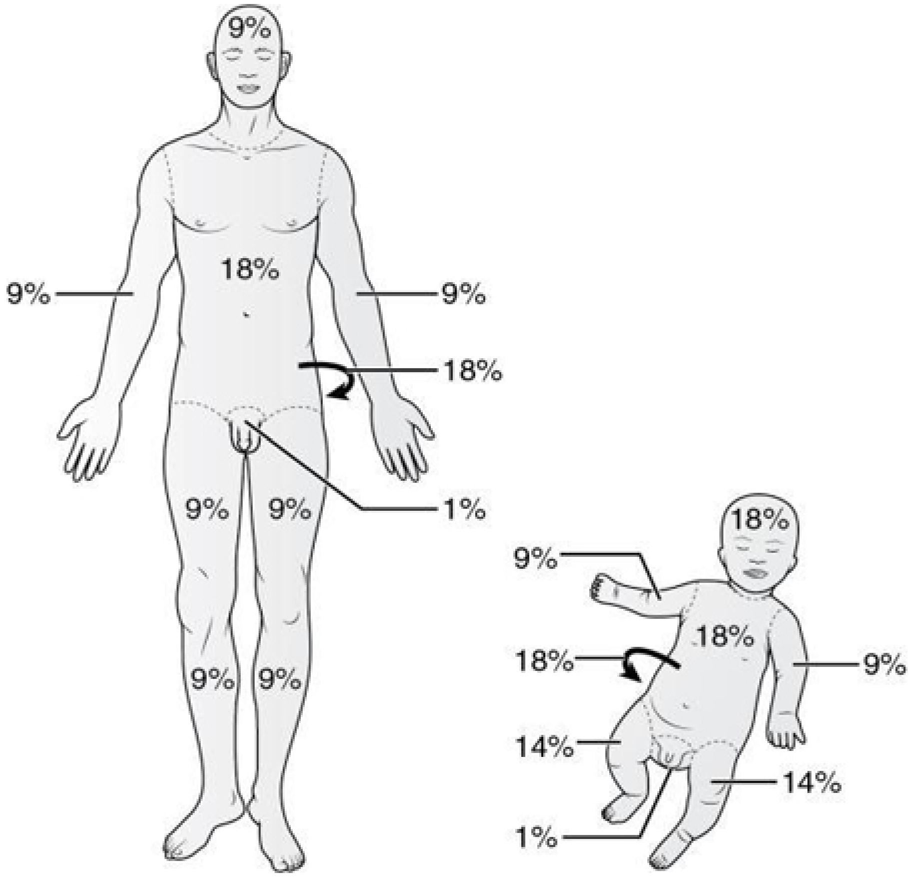


FIG. 133 Rule of nines for body surface area estimate.

All third-degree burns are serious and should be seen by a physician.

Wet versus dry dressings

If the burn surface area is small (less than 10% of TBSA), cool, moist dressings *(not ice)* can be used to initially cover the burn wound. These often provide greater pain relief than do dry dressings. If the surface area involved is large, however, dry, nonadherent dressings should be used, to avoid overcooling the victim and introducing hypothermia (see page 321). Because the skin is the major thermoregulatory organ of the body, it is difficult for an extensively burned victim to control their body temperature, so great care must be taken when wetting down such a person. If the victim begins to shiver, the cooling is too extreme.

Fluid replacement

A person who has suffered an extensive burn will rapidly become dehydrated. Because water quickly shifts from the blood volume into the tissues of the body, the injured skin cannot retain moisture, and associated immune suppression leads to overwhelming infection and shock. Oral rehydration with balanced salt solutions is little help, but in the wilderness, it is usually the only option. Try to get the victim to drink—in sips, if necessary—enough liquid to keep the urine copious and light-colored (see page 229). If a burned victim cannot drink because their airway is injured, consciousness is altered, weakness prevails, or vomiting is persistent, immediately call for an evacuation.

Antibiotics

Antibiotics are not necessary for burns unless they become infected. This is indicated by the presence of pus, foul odor, cloudy blisters, increased redness, and swelling in the normal skin that surrounds the burn, and fever greater than 101°F (38.3°C). Blisters that appear to be infected should be "unroofed" and drained, then covered with a proper dressing. If a burn becomes infected, administer dicloxacillin, cephalexin, or erythromycin, and be certain to change all dressings daily. If a person sustains a serious burn that becomes infected after exposure to ocean water, administer doxycycline, trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, or ciprofloxacin in addition to the other antibiotic chosen. (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.)

Tar burn

If a victim is splashed with hot roofing tar or paving asphalt, immediately immerse the affected area in cool water to solidify the tar and limit the burn. If a small area is covered with tar and you cannot reach a physician, you can remove the tar by gently massaging it with repeated coatings of bacitracin or mupirocin ointment, or mayonnaise, which will turn brown as the tar dissolves into it. Do not injure the skin by attempting to roughly peel off the tar. After the tar is removed, treat the burn as described previously. If you cannot dissolve the tar, cover the wound with bacitracin ointment or mupirocin ointment or cream, and a clean dressing.

Beach tar removal

These same tar-dissolving substances will work to remove the sticky tar sometimes found washed up on the beach. Other substances that are effective for this purpose include olive oil, 50/50 ointment (50% liquid paraffin and 50% soft paraffin), baby oil, cooking oil, mineral oil, or tanning oil. Goo Gone is a product containing naphtha, petroleum, heavy aliphatic terpenes and terpenoids, and citrus oil. It should not be applied to a burn. If it is used to remove beach tar, then wash the skin very carefully with soap and water after you have finished with the tar removal.

Burn prevention

1. Obey all posted warnings regarding campfires.
2. Use flame-resistant tents and sleeping bags.
3. Keep all campfires a sufficient distance (minimum 20 feet) from tents and other flammable materials. Create a clear, fuel-free perimeter of at least 3 feet around any campfire or grill. Do not sit too close to a campfire, particularly in windy conditions. Do not allow children to play near a campfire.
4. Do not add lighter fluid, gasoline, kerosene, or any other flammable liquid to a flaming fire or hot coals/embers.
5. Store flammable liquids in approved metal containers that are tightly sealed. Do not fill lamps and stoves with fuel anywhere near intense heat or open flames. Use a funnel to pour flammable liquids and clean up any spills immediately.
6. Keep a bucket of water within easy reach of a campfire.
7. Thoroughly extinguish the campfire before going to sleep or leaving the campsite.
8. Do not handle camp sauna hot rocks or cook pots without wearing proper hand protection.
9. Do not allow children to handle containers with hot water.
10. Do not set containers of hot water or food on unstable or uneven surfaces.
11. Create safe backcountry kitchen areas with no through traffic.
12. Do not overheat dishwashing water on river trips.
13. Use battery-operated lights in or near tents or campers.

Inhalation injuries

Inhalation injuries include thermal (heat) and chemical (smoke, noxious gas) inhalations. A third type of inhalation injury is aspiration (inhalation) of stomach contents; blood; or ocean, river, lake, or pool water into the lungs. The severity of the injury is determined by the chemical nature of the substance, temperature, volume of inhaled material, and underlying health of the victim. In a likely scenario, such as a boating accident or a seizure that occurred in the water, you must have a high index of suspicion for an inhalation injury. Drowning is discussed on page 412.

Thermal injury

In thermal inhalation, the airway is injured by the introduction of superheated air or steam. Such injuries almost always occur in an enclosed environment, although occasional mishaps occur in association with wildland fires (see page 345). Because water conducts heat approximately 30 times as efficiently as air, the risk of injury is far greater with steam than with dry superheated air.

The heat injures the inside of the mouth and nose, throat, vocal cords, trachea, bronchi, and occasionally lungs. External signs of an inhalation injury include burns of the face and mouth, singed nasal hairs, soot in the mouth and nose, and/or a swollen uvula. Symptoms include shortness of breath; wheezing; coughing (particularly of carbonaceous black sputum); raspy, coarse breathing (stridor) noted most often during inspiration, with a barking quality that seems to originate in the neck; muffled voice; drooling; difficulty swallowing; swollen tongue; and agitation.

Once the burn injury has occurred, there is no effective way to limit its progress, so *the victim should be transported as rapidly as possible to an emergency facility.* If oxygen (see page 431) is available, it should be administered. If the victim's condition deteriorates rapidly because the airway becomes swollen and obstructed, the only hope for survival is the placement of a tube directly through the vocal cords and into the trachea (endotracheal intubation), or the creation of an air passage through the neck (tracheotomy).

Smoke (chemical) injury

Most smoke is composed of soot and various chemicals. Although each specific substance causes its own variation on the basic lung injury, the immediate first aid approach is the same. Remove the victim from the offending agent and *immediately administer oxygen* (see page 431). If the victim is having difficulty breathing or is without respirations, they should be supported with mouth-to-mouth breathing (see page 26). Difficulty in breathing might be delayed for a few hours after smoke inhalation, so a victim should seek immediate medical attention even if they feel fine initially.

The utmost caution must be exercised when removing a victim from the source of suspected toxic gases, so as not to create additional victims. Rescuers should wear gas masks if they are available. Carbon monoxide intoxication is discussed on page 136.

Smoke from wildland fires can affect your health (see Wildland Fires page 345). A person does not acclimate to smoke in any way, and repeated exposures can diminish lung function. So, avoidance is very important.

Intense exposure to heat and smoke when in the immediate proximity of a raging forest fire causes burns, asphyxiation from lack of oxygen, carbon monoxide poisoning, and injury by other severe, acute causations.

Smoke exposure of a degree to create a hazy horizon, where you can see, smell, and taste the smoke, might also cause health problems. Healthy persons are usually not at a major risk from such smoke. But of course, it is always a good idea to avoid breathing smoke if you can help it. Smoke is not good for you.

Smoke is a mixture of gases and fine particles produced when wood and other organic matter burn. It reflects the fuel, so can contain products of combustion from rubber, plastics, and any other material consumed in the blaze. Firefighters have the greatest exposures to smoke, and they are often affected. It has been estimated that nearly 40% to 50% of medical encounters by wildland firefighters are for respiratory problems. Whether or not this statistic can be perfectly extrapolated to a non-firefighter population passively exposed to wildfire-generated smoke is not known, but it is highly likely that respiratory ailments and diminished lung function would be a logical result of exposure to smoke.

What is in the smoke? Some of the combustion products of concern include these classes of materials: particulate matter (organic and inorganic), carbon monoxide, ozone, organic acids, polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons, volatile and semi-volatile organic compounds, and free radicals. These are present or absent in varying degrees depending on the fuel burned, temperature of the fire, suppression method(s) used, and other factors. Therefore, the toxicity of the smoke might vary, but for the purposes of this discussion, all smoke from wildland fires should be considered comparable.

Because particulate matter dominates in proportion within wildland fire smoke, the greatest health threat from smoke comes from the fine particles, which are often microscopic. The particles easily get into the eyes and respiratory system, where they can cause health problems such as burning eyes (conjunctivitis), irritated throat, runny nose (sometimes associated with an allergic response), and illnesses such as bronchitis (cough). Fine particles also can worsen chronic heart and lung diseases. Because death rates from these conditions have been noted to rise in a smoky environment, the smoke has been linked to premature deaths in people with these conditions, in a fashion analogous to increased mortality rates during heat waves.

Persons who are most susceptible to ill effects at lower smoke levels are those with heart disease (congestive heart failure, symptomatic angina, cardiomyopathy) and lung disease (asthma, reactive airway disease, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease [COPD]).

Older adults appear to be at increased risk of being affected by smoke, as are children with high activity levels. Firefighters, athletes, soldiers, and others who exercise in smoky conditions often report feeling poorly, sometimes to the point of incapacitation.

Prevention is key. One must know how to limit exposure to smoke:

1. Pay attention to local air quality reports and to the Environmental Protection Agency's (EPA) Air Quality Index (AQI—see later discussion). Stay alert for any news coverage or health warnings related to smoke. Use visibility guides if they are available. Not every community has a monitor that measures particle levels in the air. In the western United States, some areas without air quality monitors have developed guidelines to help people estimate the AQI based on how far they can see.
2. Common sense is the cornerstone of wilderness medicine. If it is smoky outside, do not plan to exert yourself or run the race, and consider keeping your children indoors. If you develop smoke-related symptoms, curtail any contributing activities and seek an environment away from the smoke. Ordinary dust masks are designed to filter out large particles, so do not count on them to diminish exposure to small particulate matter found in smoke. Similarly, a handkerchief is not effective. A surgical mask that does not form a tight seal is not helpful. Useful masks are N95, N95 with a plastic vent, and P100 (multipurpose respirator).
3. The air indoors is also important during times of high smoke levels outdoors and you should keep indoor air as clean as possible. Unless it is extremely hot outside and you need to open windows and doors for air circulation, you should keep them closed. If you have an air conditioner, allow it to run, with the fresh air intake closed and the filter clean. Certain air cleaners might decrease particulate matter indoors but be certain that the device does not emit ozone. Do not smoke tobacco

products, and do not burn anything that will emit smoke. If it becomes too hot inside a building or enclosure, find a cooler shelter, so that you are not overcome by the heat. When driving a car in smoky areas, keep the windows and vents closed.

Air quality index for particles

The AQI, which is often depicted as a color-coded chart, is an index for reporting daily air quality that indicates how clean or polluted the air is, and what associated health effects might be of concern. The EPA calculates the AQI for five major air pollutants regulated by the *Clean Air Act:* ground-level ozone, particle pollution (also known as particulate matter), carbon monoxide, sulfur dioxide, and nitrogen dioxide. Ground-level ozone and airborne particles are the two pollutants that pose the greatest threat to human health in the United States. In the setting of smoke from a wildland fire, it is the particulate matter that is of greatest concern.

The AQI is reported as a numerical rating that runs from 0 to 500. The higher the AQI value, the greater the level of air pollution and the greater the health concern. For example, an AQI value of 50 represents good air quality with little potential to affect public health, whereas an AQI value over 300 represents hazardous air quality. When AQI values are above 100, air quality is considered to be unhealthy, at first for sensitive (to the harmful components) groups of people, and then for everyone as AQI values get higher.

The AQI categories are:

- *0 to 50 (Green): Good.* Air quality is considered satisfactory, and air pollution poses little or no risk.
- *51 to 100 (Yellow): Moderate.* Air quality is acceptable; however, for some pollutants there might be a moderate health concern for a small number of people.
- *101 to 150 (Orange): Unhealthy for sensitive groups.* Members of sensitive groups might experience health effects. The general public is not likely to be affected when the AQI is in this range.
- *151 to 200 (Red): Unhealthy.* Everyone might begin to experience health effects. Members of sensitive groups might experience more serious health effects.
- *201 to 300 (Purple): Very unhealthy.* This triggers a health alert, because everyone might experience more serious health effects.
- *301 to 500 (Maroon): Hazardous.* This triggers health warnings of an emergency nature. The entire population is more likely to be affected.

People living in proximity to the fire-stricken areas should remain indoors and avoid inhalation of smoke, ashes, and particulate matter in the area. Ordinary dust masks, designed to filter out large particles, will not help because they allow the more dangerous smaller particles to pass through. High-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filter masks can remove nearly all airborne particles 0.3 micrometers (microns) in diameter but are more expensive and might be difficult to use for people with lung disease, because it can be hard to draw air through them.

If outdoor trips in smoky areas are necessary, breathing through a damp cloth might help filter out some of the particles that are floating in the air, but this is a temporizing measure only and should not be counted on to significantly diminish smoke exposure for more than a few minutes.

Aspiration injury

Vomiting and inhalation of stomach contents is a common complication of having an altered mental status because a person who has a depressed level of consciousness does not protect their airway. In any situation in which a victim is unconscious and prone to vomit, place the victim on their side so that vomitus and blood will drain from their mouth to the ground, rather than into their lungs (see page 22). If you suspect a neck injury, and the victim must be kept on their back with the neck immobilized, keep constant watch for vomiting. If the victim vomits, they must be quickly turned on a stretcher or backboard or logrolled (see page 36), and their mouth manually cleared of debris. Evacuate any patient with difficulty breathing at rest or with worsening respiratory symptoms.

Carbon monoxide poisoning

Carbon monoxide is a colorless, odorless gas that is produced during combustion such as from a camp stove, fire, or engine exhaust. Breathing carbon monoxide can cause fatigue, headache, nausea, shortness of breath, chest pain, stumbling, altered mental status, confusion, coma, and death. Avoid exposure to smoke and exhaust. Do not cook in closed spaces such as tents. Be aware of the possibility of poisoning if multiple members of a group develop signs of illness at the same time. Scene safety first. Move victims from suspected carbon monoxide exposure to fresh air. Administer oxygen if available (see page 431). Injury from carbon monoxide can range from mild to life threatening. Evacuate any patient who has difficulty breathing at rest, altered mental status, or symptoms that don’t improve.

Note: a victim of carbon monoxide poisoning may have a falsely normal oxygen reading on a pulse oximeter.

Abdominal pain

The causes of abdominal pain are myriad. There are serious causes and minor disturbances. As with most disorders, the purpose of taking a history and performing a physical examination is to determine the urgency of the situation, in order to plan for evacuation if necessary. Because differentiation between various causes is often difficult, the recommendations that follow are ultraconservative. Any person with severe abdominal pain should be seen by a physician as soon as possible. Signs and symptoms indicative of a serious cause for abdominal pain are persistent, severe, or worsening abdominal pain; a "rigid" abdomen (stomach muscles tightened involuntarily in response to the examiner pressing on the abdomen); "rebound" tenderness (see page 138); "guarding" (tightening of abdominal muscles to prevent the examiner from pushing deeply into the abdomen; fever; persistent vomiting; blood (red or "coffee grounds") in the vomit or bowel movement; and/or black tar-like bowel movement.

A special word of caution—when an elder person complains of severe abdominal pain, there is a much greater likelihood that this is a sign of life-threatening illness. Sudden, severe, diffuse, and relentless central abdominal pain, particularly if associated with bloody stools, can be a sign of decreased blood flow and lack of oxygen (ischemia) to the bowel, caused either by obstruction of an essential blood vessel or by the bowel kinking or telescoping back upon itself. This situation is a surgical emergency. Ripping pain in the lower abdomen or back (often with an expanding girth) might be from an abdominal aortic aneurysm (see later discussion).

General evaluation

Obtain the history:

1. *Nature of the pain.* Is the pain sharp (knife-like), aching (constant), colicky (intermittent and severe), or cramping (squeezing)? Has the victim ever suffered a similar episode? Been given a specific diagnosis? Is it minor or severe? Have the victim characterize it on a scale of 1 to 10, with 10 being the worst, so that you can track the victim's progress.

2. *Location of the pain.* Is the pain well localized to one area, or does it radiate to another region (from the back to the groin, for example)? Did the pain begin in one region and move to another?
3. *Mode of onset of the pain.* Did the pain occur suddenly, or has it gradually increased in intensity? How long has the victim been in pain?
4. *Associated symptoms.* Is the victim short of breath, nauseated, vomiting, suffering from diarrhea or constipation, or dizzy? Is the victim vomiting blood, bile (green liquid produced by the gallbladder), or "coffee grounds" (blood darkened by stomach acid)? Does the vomit smell like feces (indicative of a bowel obstruction)? Does the victim have a fever (indicative of an infection)? Do they have blackened, tarry bowel movements (indicative of bleeding in the gastrointestinal tract)?
5. *Relief of pain.* Is there a position that the victim can assume that will lessen the pain? Does the victim feel better in a quiet position, or are they agitated and constantly moving around?
6. *Menstrual history.* In the female victim, it is important to determine if there is any chance that the abdominal pain is related to a disorder of pregnancy.

Physical examination

Perform the physical examination:

1. Observe the victim. Note whether they are active or avoid movement. If possible, note the severity of distress when the victim has their attention diverted (and so is not focusing their attention on your examination).
2. Note the victim's skin color, pulse rate and strength, rate of respirations, effort of breathing, mental status, and temperature. Abnormalities of any of these heighten the possibility of a serious problem.
3. Examine the abdomen. This is best done by having the victim lie quietly on their back, with their knees drawn up. Gently press on the abdomen, *proceeding from the area of least discomfort to the area of greatest discomfort.* For the purposes of examination, the abdomen can be divided by perpendicular lines through the navel into four quadrants: right upper, left upper, right lower, and left lower (Fig. 134). The epigastrium is the area of the abdomen directly below (not underneath) the breastbone in the midline. Note where the victim complains of pain and whether the pain is affected by your examination. If the victim has increased sharp pain when you suddenly release your hands from their abdomen after a pressing maneuver, this might indicate "rebound" pain associated with general inflammation of the lining of the abdominal cavity (peritonitis). Rebound pain might be caused by severe infection or leakage of blood or

stomach/bowel contents into the abdominal (peritoneal) cavity, or by other problems that are generally quite severe.

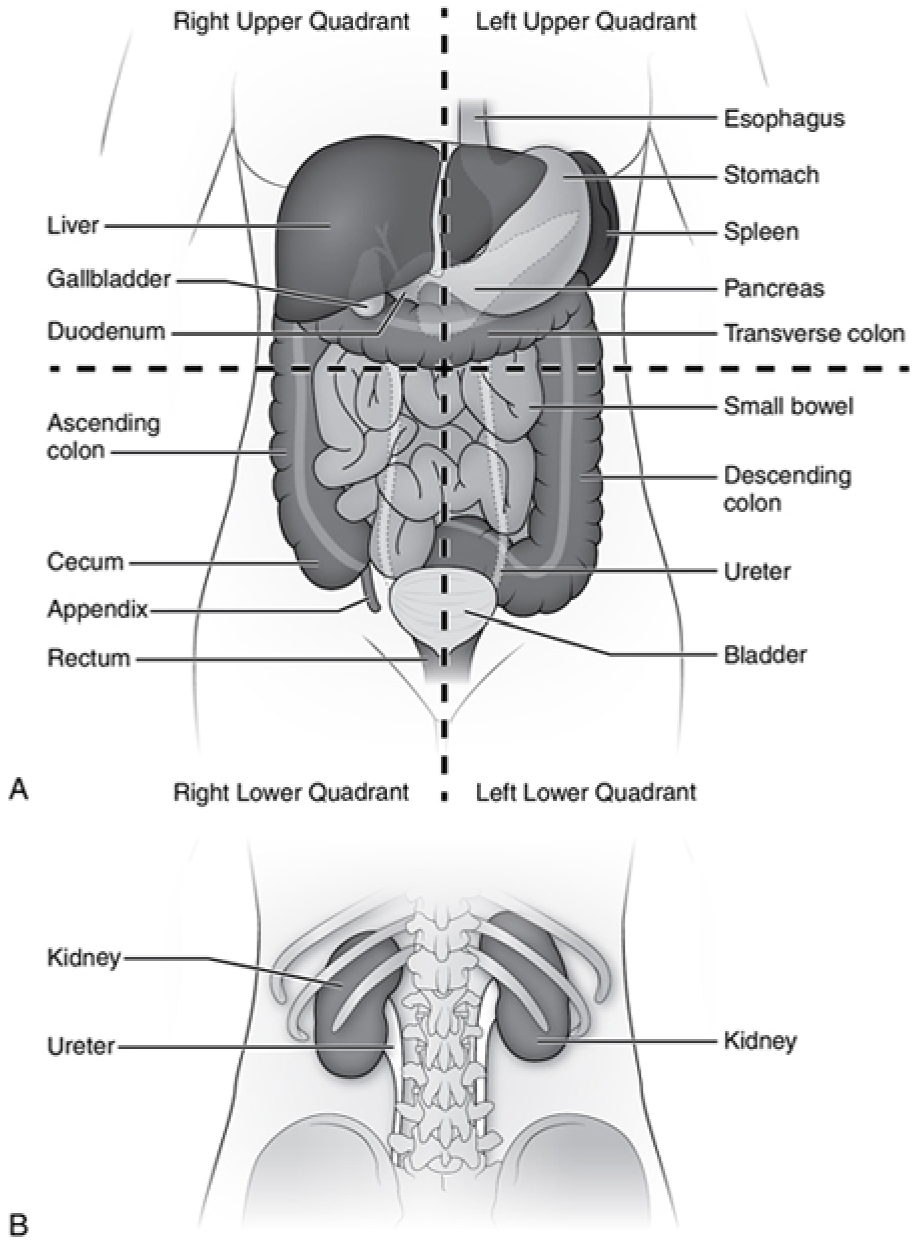

Right Upper Quadrant
Left Upper Quadrant
Esophagus
Stomach
Liver
Spleen
Gallbladder
Pancreas
Duodenum
Transverse colon
Small bowel
Ascending colon
Descending colon
Cecum
Ureter
Appendix
Rectum
Bladder
A
Right Lower Quadrant
Left Lower Quadrant
Kidney
Ureter
Kidney
B

FIG. 134 Location of the abdominal organs. **A,** View from the front, with the abdomen divided into four quadrants. **B,** View from the back. The kidneys are located posteriorly and might be the cause of flank or back pain.

When a specific area of the abdomen is tender, there are certain disorders to consider. Brief descriptions of and treatments for these disorders follow, organized by abdominal region.

Epigastrium

Heart attack (see page 57)

The symptoms of a heart attack can include pain that’s located in the epigastrium, rather than in the chest. If the victim has a history of heart disease and complains of dull epigastric pain, nausea, shortness of breath, and weakness, consider the possibility of a heart attack. If you suspect a heart attack, even minimally, plan for immediate rescue or evacuation.

Ulcer (see also page 246)

An ulcer is an erosion in the lining of the stomach (gastric ulcer) or duodenum (peptic ulcer) that penetrates the protective mucous layer and allows acid and digestive juices to erode deeper into the tissues (Fig. 135). This causes extreme pain and can lead to bleeding from leaking blood vessels in the ulcer crater. Symptoms include constant burning pain in the epigastrium that is made worse by pressing and is often associated with nausea and/or belching. In a minor case, the pain might be relieved by a meal. In a severe case, when the ulcer has eroded into a blood vessel or has perforated the wall of the stomach or bowel, the victim will vomit red blood or dark brown clotted blood (“coffee grounds”) and complain of pain that can radiate to their back. Rebound tenderness and peritonitis might be present. Dark black tarry bowel movements (melena) are caused by blood that has made its transit through the bowel. Bright red blood or blood clots with a bowel movement can be caused by brisk bleeding from an ulcer, but more commonly originate from bleeding that is occurring within the large intestine (colon) or rectum, or from hemorrhoids (see page 243). Mild bleeding from an ulcer might transiently decrease the pain, because blood acts as an antacid. Some ulcers are caused by bacterial (usually, *Helicobacter pylori*) infection. To eradicate the bacteria and allow the ulcer to heal, a physician must prescribe specific, intense antibiotic therapy. This therapy might also decrease the incidence of stomach cancer.

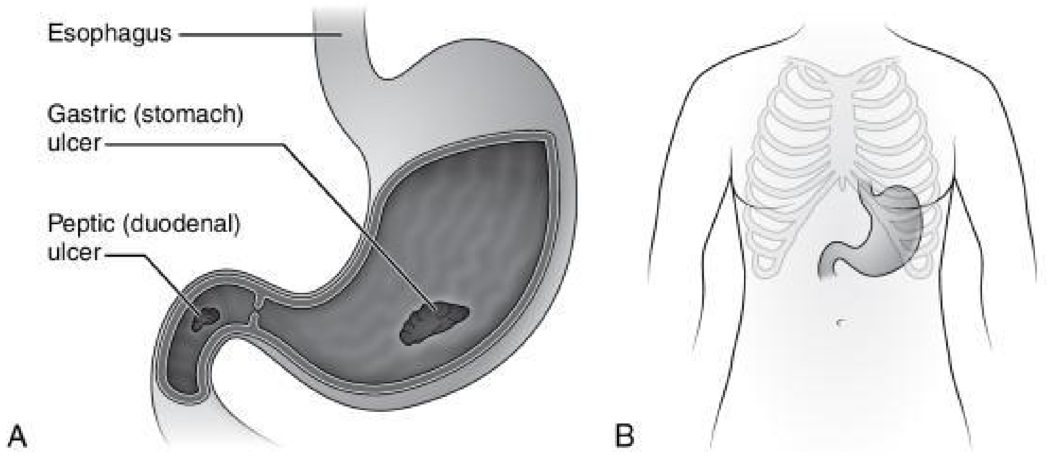


FIG. 135 Ulcers. **A,** Location of ulcer craters in the duodenum and stomach. **B,** Epigastric region of the abdomen, where ulcer pain is often noted.

Gastroenteritis

Gastroenteritis is often called the "stomach flu" (see the discussion of diarrhea on page 229). Symptoms include waves of crampy upper and/or lower abdominal pain, followed by loose bowel movements. Nausea and vomiting might be present. Occasionally, the victim has symptoms of an upper respiratory infection, with cough, runny nose, sore throat, headache, and fever. The treatment for viral gastroenteritis consists of an adequate liquid diet (hydration is the key to recovery—see page 230), which can sometimes only be accomplished by first administering medicine for persistent vomiting (see page 245). When a victim vomits green bile, this should be taken as a sign that the problem is more serious than straightforward gastroenteritis, although bilious vomiting can occur with repetitive retching, when the stomach has been emptied and duodenal contents are all that is left for regurgitation.

Heartburn

See page 245.

Pancreatitis

The pancreas is an organ situated in the posterior upper abdomen that secretes enzymes used to digest food. The pancreas also secretes insulin, the hormone that allows us to use and store glucose. The digestive enzymes travel from the pancreas through a duct, from which they are released through a small opening into the duodenum (the first portion of the bowel after the stomach). If the pancreas becomes inflamed, either by alcohol abuse (heavy drinking is the most common cause), viral infection, or blockage of the main secretory duct by a gallstone, severe epigastric pain is the rule. Sometimes the victim will have diffuse abdominal pain with radiation to the back. Pain is accompanied by nausea and vomiting (which might contain bile). The victim might be restless and prefer to sit and lean forward for pain relief. A person with pancreatitis needs to be hospitalized, because the most effective treatment is to eliminate oral intake for a time (to decrease stimulation of the pancreas). Out of the hospital, allow the victim clear liquids and antacids only, and pain medicine if pills can be kept down. Seek immediate physician care. If a person with severe abdominal pain has blue discoloration around the umbilicus or of the flanks, this might indicate internal bleeding, known as hemorrhagic pancreatitis. Chronic pancreatitis causes nearly constant pain and is an entity distinct from intermittent acute pancreatitis. It is associated with, among other things, diabetes, tobacco use, and pancreatic duct obstruction.

Right upper quadrant

Injured liver

If a fall or blow to the abdomen, right flank, or right lower chest is followed by abdominal pain that is worsened by pressing on the right upper quadrant, a torn or bruised liver should be considered. The victim is at risk for severe internal bleeding and should be observed for signs of shock (see page 70). Evacuate them as soon as possible.

Hepatitis

See page 247.

Gallstones (cholelithiasis)

Gallstones are formed in the gallbladder, which lies under the liver in the right upper quadrant of the abdomen. The gallbladder stores bile (manufactured in the liver), which is released into the duodenum to aid in digestion following each meal (Fig. 136). An attack of gallbladder inflammation (cholecystitis) occurs when the outlet from the gallbladder or the main bile duct into the duodenum becomes obstructed (usually by a gallstone) and the gallbladder cannot empty. This causes stretching of the gallbladder, inflammation, and painful contraction against an impenetrable passage. There is often an element of infection.

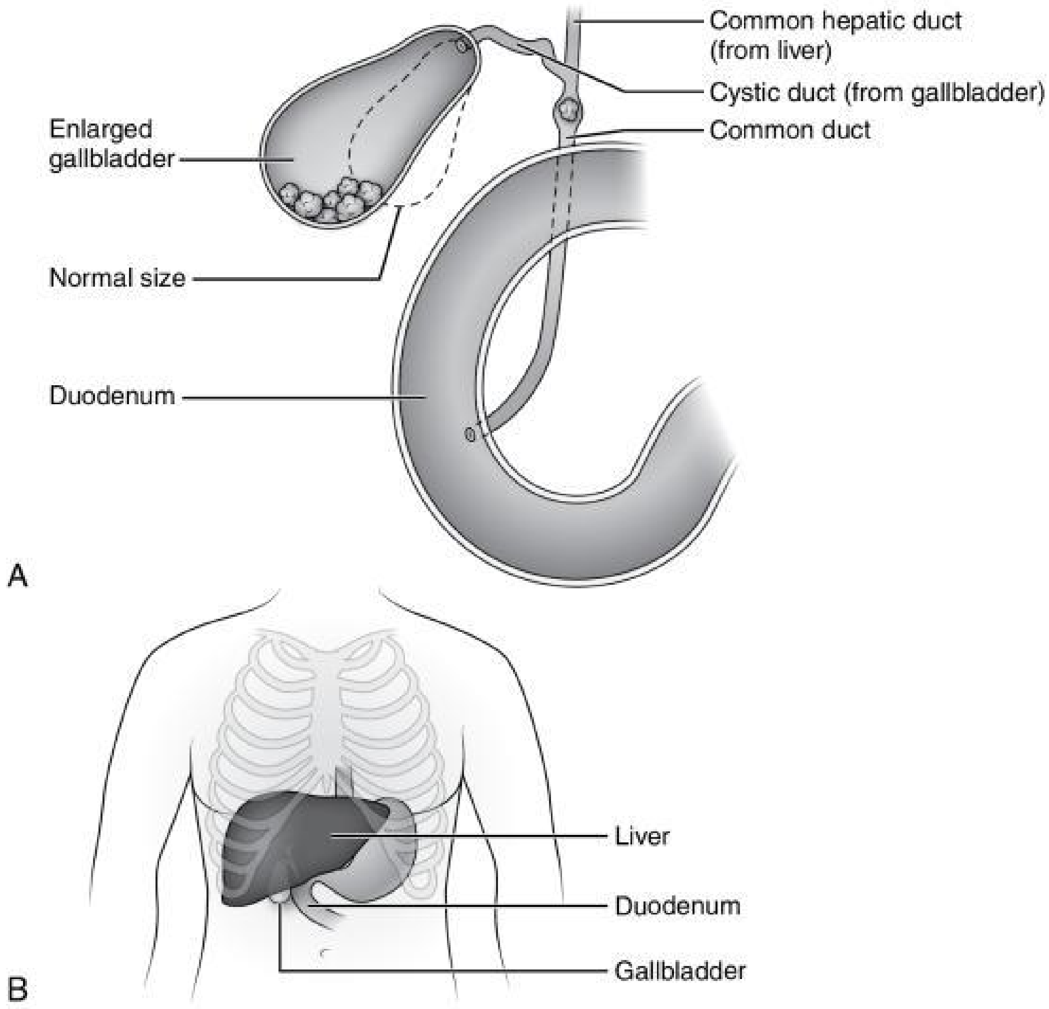

Common hepatic duct (from liver)
Cystic duct (from gallbladder)
Common duct
Enlarged gallbladder
Normal size
Duodenum
A
Liver
Duodenum
Gallbladder
B

FIG. 136 Gallbladder with gallstones. **A,** The stones are formed in the gallbladder and travel through a narrow passageway (cystic and common ducts), which is easily blocked. **B,** Location of the gallbladder adjacent to the liver in the right upper quadrant of the abdomen.

A typical attack occurs immediately after a meal and is sudden in onset. The pain is colicky and located in the right upper quadrant or epigastrium. It might be associated with nausea, vomiting, and fever. Occasionally, it radiates to the back or right shoulder. Examination of the abdomen demonstrates tenderness in the right upper quadrant. Occasionally, you can feel a tennis ball–sized tender mass—the swollen gallbladder.

The definitive treatment for cholecystitis is removal of the gallbladder, although many surgeons prefer to “quiet down” the situation first with antibiotics, pain medicine, and intravenous fluids. The victim of a gallbladder attack should be transported to a hospital for evaluation. Pain medicines can be given safely, although certain narcotics might increase spasm of the bile passage and, paradoxically, briefly worsen pain. Solid foods (particularly fats) are prohibited during an attack. Maintain the victim on clear liquids and begin antibiotic therapy with ampicillin, amoxicillin, amoxicillin–clavulanate, or ciprofloxacin; any of these combined with metronidazole, if pills can be kept down.

If gallstones cause bile duct obstruction, the victim can develop cholangitis, which is potentially devastating infection/inflammation of the biliary tract. The classic symptoms are fever, right upper quadrant pain, and jaundice, but this combination is often not present. If it is suspected, rapidly transport the patient to medical attention for intravenous (IV) antibiotics. In the meantime, use the oral antibiotics recommended for cholecystitis.

Pneumonia

Infections of the lungs may present as abdominal pain. See page 55.

Left upper quadrant

Injured spleen

If a fall or blow to the abdomen, left flank, or left lower chest is followed by abdominal pain that is worsened by pressing on the left upper quadrant, consider a torn or bruised spleen. The victim is at risk for severe internal bleeding and should be observed for signs of shock (see page 70). Evacuate the victim as soon as possible.

Gastroenteritis

See page 140.

Pancreatitis

See page 140.

Pneumonia

See page 55.

Right lower quadrant

Appendicitis

The appendix is a small (average length 3.5 inch [9 cm]), sausage-shaped outpouching of the cecum (which is a part of the small bowel) that is located near the transition point where the small bowel becomes the large bowel (colon) (Fig. 137). When it becomes obstructed or infected/inflamed (acute appendicitis), the victim typically has a history of crampy pain that begins in the central abdomen (often around the umbilicus), and then moves, over the course of a few hours, to become constant in the right lower quadrant. They might also suffer loss of appetite, constipation or diarrhea, vomiting, fever, and weakness. Pain nearly always precedes any other symptoms. There might be burning on urination if the appendix rests against a ureter carrying urine from the kidney to the bladder. Sometimes, if one presses on the left lower quadrant of a victim of appendicitis, there is pain noted in the right lower quadrant. If an inflamed appendix lies close to the obturator or psoas muscles, there might be pain when the right leg is internally rotated (obturator) or pulled away from the midline (psoas) of the body.

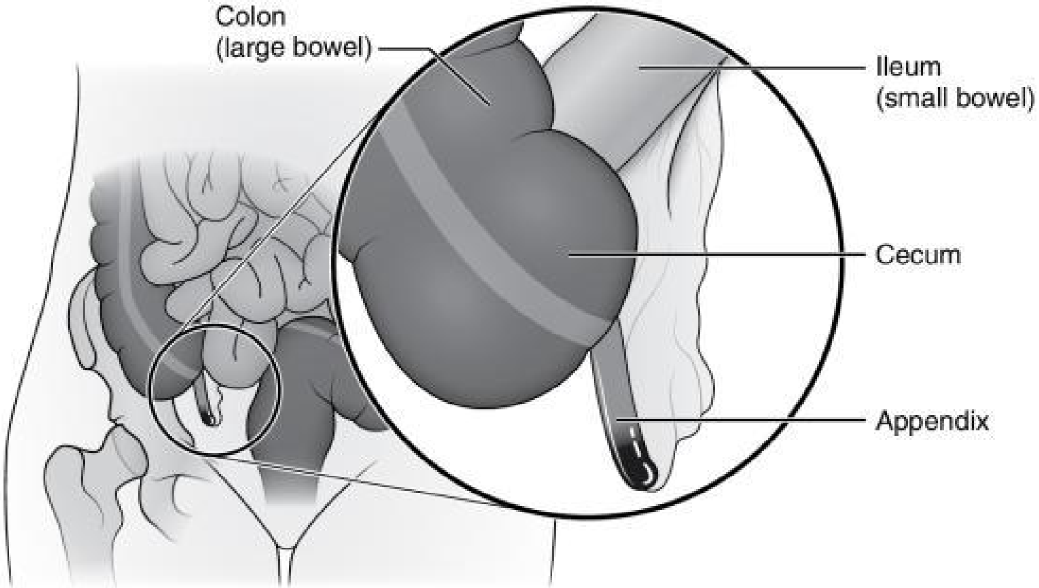


FIG. 137 Appendicitis. Pain is felt in the right lower quadrant of the abdomen.

Examination of the abdomen demonstrates tenderness in the right lower quadrant. Frequently, the victim will resist any movement of the body or legs, because such movement causes abdominal pain. Rebound tenderness is associated with a swollen appendix that is ready to burst or has already ruptured. After the appendix ruptures, the pain might diminish considerably for a few days while an abscess forms. Untreated appendicitis might cause the victim to develop peritonitis, rapid breathing and heart rate, and low blood pressure. If you suspect appendicitis, transport the victim to a hospital for surgical evaluation. If transport will take more than 24 hours and the victim can tolerate oral fluids (is not actively vomiting), allow clear liquid intake to prevent dehydration. An antibiotic (cephalexin, amoxicillin–clavulanate, cefixime, or cefpodoxime) should be administered and continued if more than 24 hours will elapse before arrival at a hospital. If the victim is allergic to these agents, a combination of levofloxacin and metronidazole can be substituted. (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.)

If a woman of childbearing age develops any lower quadrant pain, the diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy (see page 149) should always be considered. For extended expeditions, it's useful to carry a urine pregnancy test kit in the first aid kit.

Kidney stone

See page 146.

Problems of the ovaries and vagina

See page 148.

Colitis

See page 241.

Bowel obstruction

If the intestine becomes obstructed by scar tissue, cancer, injury, or feces, the victim rapidly becomes quite ill. Symptoms include nausea and vomiting, frequently of green bile or feculent (feces-like) material. The victim has waves of cramping pain that coincide with bowel motion (contractions) that might be visible through the abdominal wall, which is often distended by the dilated loops of bowel. Occasionally, the victim will have small, squirting bowel movements, as a little liquid slips past the obstruction. If a bowel obstruction is suspected, the victim should be immediately evacuated to a hospital.

An ileus is functional inactivity (no food or fluid absorption, lack of normal peristalsis) of the bowel that leads to intestinal dilation, vomiting, and abdominal pain. It commonly follows an intraabdominal injury or physiologic catastrophe (such as extensive burns, disseminated infection, or shock).

Hernia

If the intestine slips through the muscles of the abdominal wall, usually in the groin or around the umbilicus (navel), a hernia is formed (Fig. 138). Symptoms include a visible bulge, abdominal pain, and pain at the site of the hernia. The victim should be made to lie quietly on their back with their knees drawn up; place cold packs directly on the bulge. Give pain medicine to control the discomfort. If sufficient relaxation is obtained, the hernia might slip back through the wall, and the bulge will disappear. Gentle manipulation may be needed to assist reduction. Afterward, the victim should wear a support (truss or belt) to prevent recurrence until the problem can be corrected surgically. Straining and heavy lifting should be avoided.

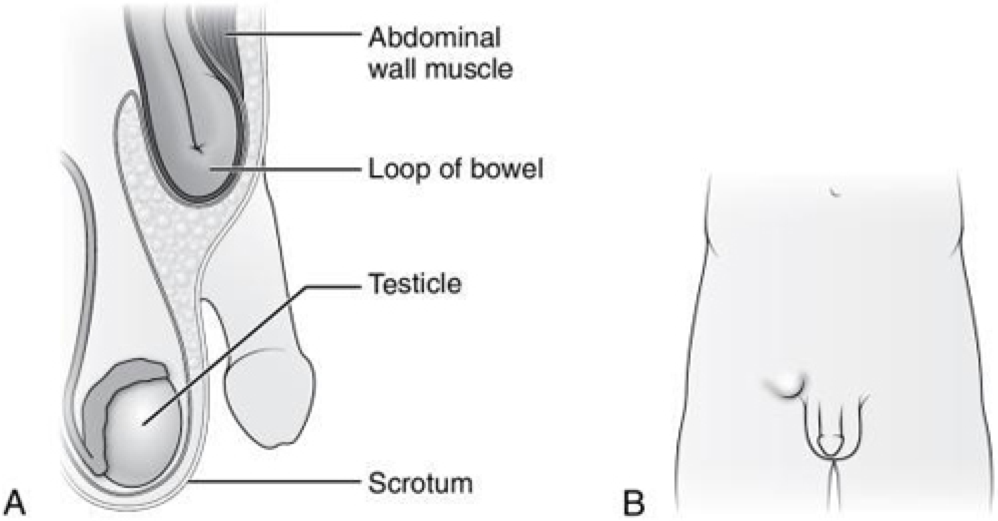


FIG. 138 Inguinal (groin) hernia. **A,** A loop of bowel bulges through a defect in the lower abdominal wall. **B,** Location of external bulge. In some cases, the swelling extends into the scrotum.

If a victim has a painless hernia (bulge) that cannot be corrected, they should avoid straining, particularly when holding their breath, and seek the advice of a physician.

If the intestine will not slip back through, the hernia is trapped (incarcerated). This is an emergency, because if the blood supply to the bowel is pinched off, the tissue can be severely damaged or die, and/or a bowel obstruction (see page 143) can be created. An incarcerated hernia becomes extremely painful, and if the bowel is injured (usually by decreased blood flow—“strangulated” hernia), the overlying skin frequently becomes reddened or dusky in appearance. Because the aforementioned maneuvers for reduction of a hernia will not be successful and pain will increase, the victim should be rapidly evacuated to a hospital.

Left lower quadrant

Diverticulitis

Diverticula are small outpouchings that develop at weak points along the wall of the colon (large bowel), most commonly the sigmoid colon, probably because of high pressures associated with muscle contractions during the passage of stool. Diverticulosis indicates the presence of diverticula. When these sacs become obstructed and/or inflamed (diverticulitis; most frequently in middle-aged or elderly individuals with risk factors of obesity, cigarette smoking, using nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs, and inactivity), they enlarge and create sudden onset and constant abdominal pain along with fever. The patient might report a change in bowel habits: diarrhea or constipation. Usually, the left lower quadrant is involved, because diverticula tend to form in the left-side portion of the colon (descending colon) more frequently than in the right-side portion (ascending colon) or horizontal connecting section (transverse colon). A ruptured diverticulum can cause a clinical picture much like that of a ruptured appendix (see page 142), with pain in the left side of the abdomen instead of the right side. The victim should generally seek medical attention, and their diet should be limited to clear fluids. Physical activity should be minimized. Antibiotics (ciprofloxacin 500 mg twice a day plus metronidazole 500 mg three times a day; metronidazole 500 mg twice a day plus doxycycline 200 mg twice a day; amoxicillin–clavulanate 875 mg twice a day; trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, cefixime, or cefpodoxime) should be administered if help is more than 24 hours away and continued for 7 to 10 days. If there is significant improvement (pain completely relieved) with antibiotics over the initial 3 to 5 days, then the diet can be slowly advanced to solid foods. After diverticulitis resolves, it is prudent to administer probiotics twice daily for 2 weeks. (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498).

Doctors have historically advised persons with known diverticular disease to avoid eating nuts, seeds, popcorn, corn, and other high-residue foods. This is on the presumption that these food products pass through the bowel partially or complete nondigested, so they might be prone to cause trauma to the diverticula or to lodge in them. This has never been proved true, so one can eat a “backpackers” diet without fear of inducing diverticulitis.

Colitis

See page 241.

Kidney stone

See page 146.

Problems of the ovaries and vagina

See page 148.

Bowel obstruction

See page 143.

Hernia

See page 143.

Lower abdomen (central)

Abdominal aortic aneurysm

An aneurysm is a dilated blood vessel that has been weakened by the ravages of age, high blood pressure, and atherosclerosis (Fig. 139). At a certain point, the wear and tear become too much and the blood vessel rips, causing either a slow leak or rapid, massive bleeding that leads to sudden collapse and death. This generally occurs spontaneously most commonly in the elderly, unless there is a congenital defect; traumatic tears of the aorta occur in all age groups, particularly in persons with a history of high blood pressure.

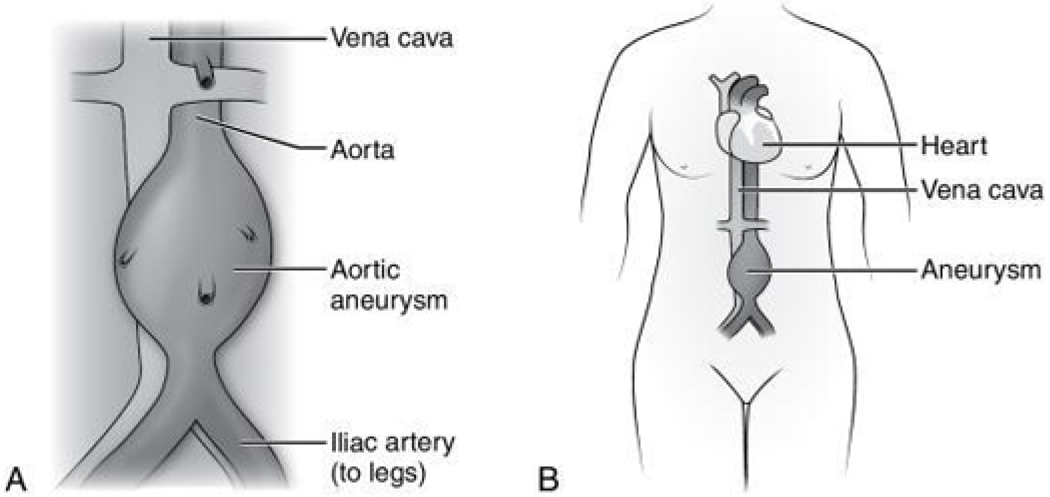


FIG. 139 Abdominal aortic aneurysm. **A,** Age, high blood pressure, and disease ravage the dilated aorta. **B,** Location of the aorta in the abdomen. Leaking or rupture causes pain in the abdomen, back, and flank.

The aorta is the large artery that carries blood from the left ventricle of the heart to the body. An abdominal aortic aneurysm is defined as enlargement to a diameter of 1.18 in (3 cm) or more. The symptoms of a ruptured abdominal aortic aneurysm are intense, unrelenting, ripping pain in the abdomen that can radiate to the back or chest; weakness; discoloration of the legs with mottling; and rapid collapse. Gentle examination of the abdomen might demonstrate a pulsating, expanding mass. Abdominal rigidity is due to rapid accumulation of blood.

Any elderly person who suddenly develops abdominal pain or back pain associated with weakness, a fainting spell, decreased sensation and/or abnormal color in the legs or feet (even if transient), or shortness of breath should be immediately rushed to a hospital. In the best of circumstances, this is a highly critical situation. Be prepared to treat the victim for shock (see page 70).

Bladder infection

See page 152.

Colitis

See page 241.

Bowel obstruction

See page 143.

Problems of the ovaries and vagina

See page 148.

Flanks (sides of lower back)

Abdominal aortic aneurysm

See page 145.

Kidney stone

A "kidney stone" originates in the urine-collecting system of the kidney, and most commonly causes pain when it travels down the ureter (ureteral stone) to the bladder (Fig. 140). After traversing the bladder, it might enter the urethra and continue to wreak havoc. The most common compositions of stones are calcium-derived (80%), struvite (15% to 20%; magnesium ammonium phosphate), uric acid (5% to 10%), and cystine (less than 1%).

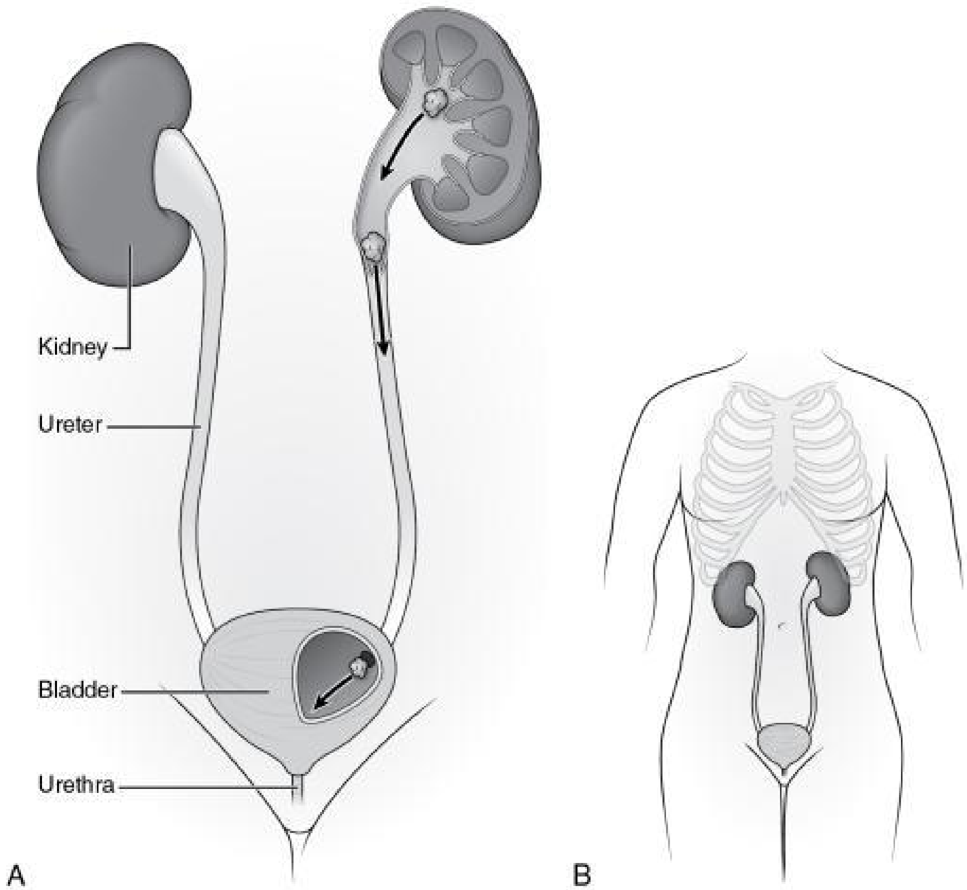


FIG. 140 Kidney with kidney stones. **A,** The stones are formed in the kidney and travel through the ureter, bladder, and urethra before they are passed in the urine. **B,** Location of the genitourinary (urogenital) system.

The pain of a kidney stone is usually sudden in onset and often becomes intolerable. The location of the pain is related to the location of the stone. If the stone is high in the ureter, the pain localizes to the victim's back (on the affected side), with some radiation to the abdomen. Lightly tapping over the flank and lower ribs on the back of a victim with a kidney stone will often cause extreme pain. If the stone is passing through the lower ureter, the victim will have extreme pain in the back, abdomen, and genitals. When the stone is not moving, the pain (renal "colic") might disappear as quickly as it began. A small (less than or equal to 2 mm in diameter) stone might take 7 to 10 days to pass; a 2- to 4-mm stone might take up to 2 weeks; and a stone larger than 4 mm might take up to 3 weeks.

A victim who is passing a kidney stone finds no relief from remaining motionless, and will appear quite agitated, constantly changing positions.

Associated symptoms include nausea, vomiting, bloody urine, an urge to urinate, pain on urination, and sweating.

If the diagnosis of a kidney stone appears relatively certain, give the victim the strongest pain medicine that is necessary and available, and encourage them to drink copious amounts of fluid. Ketorolac (10 mg by mouth every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 5 days) has been recommended as a pain medication for kidney stone because it might decrease spasm in the ureter; it can be given along with a narcotic drug, such as hydrocodone, to enhance the analgesic effect. Another useful drug if ketorolac is not available is diclofenac (50 mg by mouth two or three times a day). Some urologists recommend adding tamsulosin (Flomax) 0.4 mg by mouth once a day for a few days after the onset of pain associated with passing a kidney (ureteral) stone, particularly those 5 to 10 mm in diameter. It should be noted that this therapy might cause low blood pressure as a side effect. Seek physician evaluation as soon as possible. *If the victim is elderly, consider the diagnosis of ruptured aortic aneurysm* (see page 145). If you have any suspicion that the victim might have an aneurysm, evacuate them immediately.

Kidney infection

See page 153.

Pneumonia

See page 55.

Problems of ovaries and vagina

Ovarian infection

The ovaries and fallopian tubes (Figs. 141 and 142), which carry eggs from the ovaries to the uterus, might become infected, commonly with *Mycoplasma genitalium*, or with the bacteria (*Neisseria gonorrhea*) that cause gonorrhea or by other infectious agents, such as *Chlamydia trachomatis*. This is sometimes called pelvic inflammatory disease (PID). Symptoms include abdominal pain in the lower quadrants (greatest on the side of the affected ovary), fever, shaking chills, nausea, vomiting, and weakness. Occasionally, the patient will complain of a yellow-greenish vaginal discharge. If you suspect an infection, take the patient to a hospital immediately, where the PID patient will receive at least one medication administered by injection. If more than 24 hours will pass before a doctor can be reached, the victim should be treated with azithromycin 1 g by mouth single dose or doxycycline 100 mg two times a day for 14 days. Add to either of these metronidazole 500 mg by mouth twice a day for 2 weeks. If these are not available, then use tetracycline 500 mg four times a day or amoxicillin–clavulanate 500 mg two to three times per day for 14 days (doxycycline and tetracycline are effective against *Chlamydia*). Yet another drug combination is a 14-day oral course of metronidazole 500 mg twice a day plus one of the following: levofloxacin 500 mg once a day or moxifloxacin 400 mg once a day or ofloxacin 400 mg twice a day. To reiterate, if you suspect gonorrhea (can occur at same time as other infections and should often be suspected), bring the patient to a health care professional promptly for an injection of ceftriaxone (or another cephalosporin type of medication) while administering the medications for chlamydial infection. Away from professional medical care, if more than 24 hours will pass before a doctor can be reached and supplies are limited, to treat the gonorrhea, albeit suboptimally, administer cefixime 800 mg orally as a single dose.

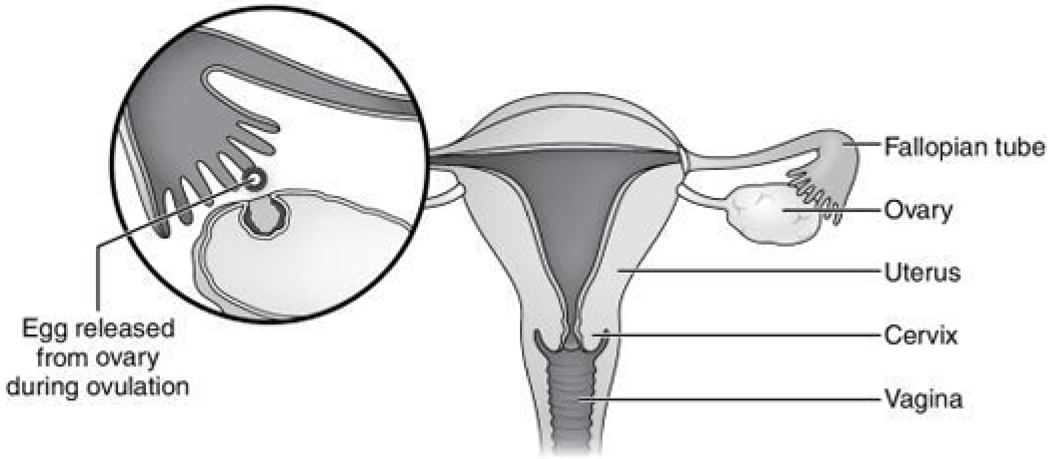

Fallopian tube
Ovary
Uterus
Cervix
Vagina
Egg released from ovary during ovulation

FIG. 141 Female reproductive tract.

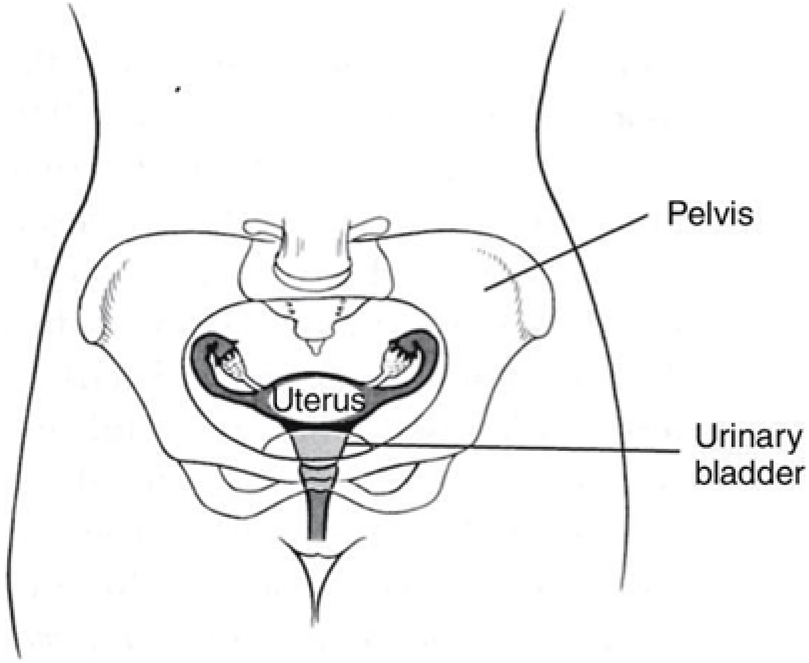

Pelvis
Uterus
Urinary bladder

FIG. 142 Location of female reproductive tract within the pelvis.

Ovulation, ovarian cyst, and torsed (twisted) ovary

Some women suffer sudden, intense abdominal pain at the time of ovulation (when the egg is released from the ovary, known as mittelschmerz). This is caused by a small amount of blood and ovarian fluid, which irritates the lining of the abdomen. Symptoms include pain that suddenly develops in the right or left lower quadrant and is worsened by movement or deep palpation of the area. Treatment is pain medicine and rest.

A ruptured ovarian cyst (which releases tissue fluid or blood) or torsed (twisted) ovary causes similar but much more severe symptoms, which can include excruciating pain, nausea and vomiting, and a rigid (to the pressing hand) abdomen. Ovarian torsion is a medical emergency that requires rapid evacuation to a hospital. Any of these conditions might be difficult to distinguish from appendicitis (see page 142) if the right ovary is involved. Treatment for a torsed ovary might require emergency surgery. The diagnosis can be confusing if the pain is not severe, and/or waxes and wanes, particularly in a younger patient. *Any sudden abdominal discomfort in a woman of any age should be promptly evaluated by a physician.*

Bleeding from the vagina

If bleeding from the vagina accompanied by abdominal pain is not clearly part of a normal menstrual period, a woman should seek prompt medical attention. Possible causes include fibroids, uterine polyps, cancer, “dysfunctional uterine bleeding” (having a menstrual period without ovulation), and pregnancy-related bleeding. If the bleeding is clearly part of a normal menstrual period, and the pain is unquestionably due to menstrual cramps, the victim might benefit from administration of a non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID).

If abnormal (in amount or character) pain and/or bleeding occur during or between menstrual periods, the cause should be determined by a physician. Until the evaluation is performed, exertion should be kept to a minimum. If periods have been missed (or if the victim is known to be pregnant) and copious vaginal bleeding develops, place the patient at rest and transport her rapidly—by litter, if possible—to a physician. If the bleeding is spotty, the victim can be allowed to walk with assistance. A ruptured tubal (ectopic) pregnancy can rapidly become life-threatening. In this situation, a pregnancy situated in a fallopian tube (rather than in the uterus) causes the tube to rupture. The symptoms include vaginal bleeding, lower abdominal pain (which can become severe, but might also be absent), and signs of shock (see page 70). This is a true medical emergency.

Vaginitis, vaginal discharge, and vaginal infections

The most common causes of female genital tract discharge are infection, reaction to a foreign object, injury, or allergic reaction. In the healthy vagina, bacteria (lactobacilli) produce lactic acid and promote an environment (pH of 3.8 to 4.5) that resists infection, although there are other microorganisms (such as *Staphylococcus, Ureaplasma,* and *Mycoplasma*) present.

Vaginitis is a condition of irritation and inflammation of the vagina, commonly noted as a secondary condition that follows administration of an antibiotic, such as ampicillin, to a woman. The antibiotic alters the normal bacterial population of the vagina and allows overgrowth of the causative (for vaginitis) agent, which is often yeast. With a *Candida albicans* yeast (candidiasis or moniliasis) infection, the victim notes a thick, white, and creamy or curdy ("cottage cheese") discharge, vulvar and vaginal itching and redness, and burning pain on urination. She should use clotrimazole (Gyne-Lotrimin). Administer vaginal 100 mg tablets once a day for 7 days, or twice a day for 3 days; a vaginal 500 mg tablet for 1 day (single dose); or 1% cream in a 5 g dose for 7 to 14 days. An alternative drug is miconazole nitrate (Monistat); administer 100 mg vaginal suppositories once a day for 7 days, 200 mg vaginal suppositories once a day for 3 days, 1200 mg vaginal suppository in one dose, or 2% cream in a 5 g dose for 7 days. Other acceptable treatments are a single fluconazole (Diflucan) 150 mg tablet by mouth; tioconazole 6.5% (Vagistat-1) ointment in a single 5 g application; butoconazole nitrate 2% (Femstat) cream in a 5 g dose for 3 days; or terconazole (Terazol) vaginal cream 0.8% in a 5 g dose once a day for 3 days, vaginal cream 0.4% in a 5 g dose once a day for 7 days, or vaginal suppositories 80 mg once a day for 3 days.

Bacterial vaginosis is caused by a shift in vaginal bacterial flora from lactobacilli-dominant to mixed flora and is characterized by a milky (yellowish or gray), sticky, homogeneous, and sometimes thin discharge with an abnormal ("fishy," particularly after intercourse) odor, as well as occasional itching and pain. It is definitively diagnosed by measuring the vaginal pH at a value greater than 4.5 and noting a specific type of cell ("clue cell") when the discharge is examined with a microscope. Treatment is either metronidazole 500 mg by mouth twice a day for 7 days or 0.5% or 0.75% metronidazole vaginal gel (such as MetroGel Vaginal) once a day for 5 days; or clindamycin phosphate 300 mg by mouth twice a day or 1 applicator (5 g) of 2% vaginal cream at bedtime for 7 consecutive nights; or 2% extended-release clindamycin cream, one application intravaginally.

Other causes of vaginal infection include trichomoniasis, herpes simplex virus, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* (the causative agent of gonorrhea), and *Chlamydia trachomatis.*

If the infection is due to trichomoniasis (caused by *Trichomonas vaginalis*), the victim will suffer a copious, occasionally frothy, and white-gray or yellowish (sometimes foul-smelling) discharge and might also have abdominal pain and fever. The vulva might be irritated. In such a case, the antibiotic of choice is tinidazole or metronidazole 2 g in a single dose. Do not drink alcohol while taking tinidazole or metronidazole or for 3 days thereafter. The male sex partner should be treated with the same treatment.

Genital herpes is caused by herpes simplex virus type 1 (HSV-1) or type 2 (HSV-2). HSV-1 is transmitted predominantly by oral–genital sexual contact and HSV-2 by genital–genital contact. After exposure, the incubation period is 2 to 12 days, with an average of 4 days. Early symptoms include a red rash and small bumps, followed by a blistering rash with ulcers. Other symptoms can include pain at the site of the rash, tender local lymph nodes, fever, headache, fatigue, and muscle aching. If the blisters and ulcers occur on external skin, they heal in 9 to 12 days after a crusting phase; if they occur on mucous membranes (e.g., inside the vagina or the mouth), they heal without first crusting. After the first episode of genital herpes has resolved, recurrent episodes can be preceded by tingling or sharp pain in the buttocks, legs, or hips from a half hour to 5 days before the rash erupts.

For first episode of genital herpes (take medication by mouth for 10 days): Acyclovir 400 mg three times a day; or valacyclovir 1 g twice a day; or famciclovir 250 mg three times a day.

For recurrent episode of genital herpes: Acyclovir 800 mg twice a day for 5 days or three times a day for 2 days; famciclovir 125 mg twice a day for 5 days or 1 g twice a day for 1 day; or valacyclovir 500 mg twice a day for 3 days or 1 g once a day for 5 days.

For suppressive therapy against genital herpes eruptions (take medication twice a day for as long as suppression is desired): Acyclovir 400 mg, valacyclovir 500 mg, or famciclovir 250 mg. It is possible that taking any of these medications once a day, rather than twice a day, might be effective.

The herpes sufferer should be advised to adhere to excellent handwashing and avoid touching the sores, because the virus can be mechanically spread.

Emergency contraception

If emergency contraception is desired (e.g., for unprotected sexual intercourse or contraceptive failure), levonorgestrel tablets 0.75 mg (Plan B) are available over the counter. This medication does not protect against infection with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and other sexually transmitted diseases. The medication provides a short burst of hormones that affects the lining of the uterus and alters sperm transport, which prevents sperm from meeting the egg to achieve fertilization. Levonorgestrel is most effective if given within 3 days (72 hours) of intercourse but is particularly effective if given within the first 24 hours after intercourse, and might be effective up to 5 days after intercourse. The dose is one pill by mouth, followed by a second pill 12 hours after the initial pill. Plan B One-Step is a single 1.5 mg dose of levonorgestrel taken orally as soon as possible within 72 hours after unprotected intercourse. Another approach is ulipristal acetate 30 mg (Ella), a prescription progestin drug that may be taken by mouth as soon as possible within 5 days after unprotected sexual intercourse. It works by preventing or delaying the release of an egg from the ovary and perhaps by altering the lining of the uterus.

A medically supervised approach to end an early pregnancy is mifepristone (Mifeprex) 200 mg taken orally on day one, followed in 24 to 48 hours by 800 micrograms of misoprostol taken in the cheek pouch. Mifepristone is not available over the counter, should not be used if it has been more than 70 days since the beginning of last menstrual period, and should not be purchased over the Internet. Any patient who needs emergency contraceptives should follow up with their physician within 7 to 14 days.

Safe sex

The wilderness traveler should recognize that the implications of sexual relationships on expeditions can affect the physical, emotional, and group dynamics of the entire team. It is the responsibility of all consenting adults to practice safe sex while on wilderness expeditions including using barrier protection to reduce the risk of sexually transmitted infections and measures to prevent unwanted pregnancy.

Disorders of the kidneys, bladder, and prostate

Bladder infection

Bladder infection (cystitis, sometimes called urinary tract infection [UTI]) occurs more frequently in females than in males, because the shorter female urethra does not protect the bladder from bacteria as efficiently as does the male organ. A person with a bladder infection complains of discomfort (sharp pain, cramping, or burning) on urination, urge to urinate ("urgency"), frequent urination, difficulty initiating urination, lower abdominal cramping, and sometimes bloody urine, which can be as severe as small clots. Similar symptoms might be suffered by males who harbor infections in the prostate gland.

Treatment involves administration of an antibiotic and increased (1 to 1.5 L of water above usual intake) oral fluid intake. Because many antibiotics are well concentrated in the urine, there are several acceptable treatment regimens. For the sake of simplicity, the female victim can be treated (in order of preference) with nitrofurantoin monohydrate/macrocrystals (Macrobid) 100 mg capsule twice a day for 5 days (safe in pregnancy) with meals; trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole (Bactrim or Septra) in one double-strength tablet twice a day for 3 days, or two double-strength tablets in one dose; fosfomycin trometamol (Monurol) 3 g sachet single dose; levofloxacin 250 or 500 mg once a day for 3 days; ofloxacin 200 mg twice a day for 3 days, or 400 mg in one dose; norfloxacin 400 mg twice a day for 3 days; lomefloxacin 400 mg; trovafloxacin 100 mg; cefpodoxime 100 mg twice a day for 3 days; cefdinir 100 mg twice a day for 5 days; or amoxicillin–clavulanate 500 mg/125 mg twice a day for 7 days. (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.) If the victim is diabetic or older than 65 years of age, or if the symptoms do not completely resolve or they recur within a few days of therapy, use the same or a different drug for 7 to 10 days. If the victim is pregnant, use nitrofurantoin, amoxicillin, ampicillin, cephalexin, cefadroxil, or trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole. However, do not use trimethoprim in the first trimester.

Older males are more likely than younger males to suffer from UTIs, usually attributed to prostate gland enlargement, which impairs normal urination. Chronic prostatitis might be the culprit. Because a urine culture is generally recommended prior to starting antibiotics, any male (particularly elder) with a suspected UTI should seek medical care. If that is not possible, the same antibiotics as recommended for women above can be selected and administered for 7 days. If the prostate is infected, then different antibiotics will be selected and used for 30 days. In the absence of professional medical care, trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole is a good choice. A reasonable second choice is doxycycline or amoxicillin–clavulanate.

Chlamydia are bacteria that are a very common cause of reproductive tract infections in women and genitourinary tract infections in men. Because the penicillin family (such as ampicillin) are not effective against *Chlamydia,* any male with a bladder infection should be treated with tetracycline (500 mg four times a day), doxycycline (100 mg twice a day), or trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole (one double-strength tablet twice a day) for 10 days, or with azithromycin 1 g in a single dose. Any male who develops a bladder or prostate infection (see page 154) should be seen by a physician when he returns from his journey.

Some persons believe that the incidence of bladder infections in women might be decreased by a daily 8 oz (237 mL) glass of cranberry juice, or by ingesting cranberry juice capsules or tablets. This has never been scientifically proved; emerging data suggest that it is not true.

It might not be convenient for a woman to squat in order to urinate outdoors. There are devices available to facilitate a woman's urinating while standing or squatting. The Whiz Freedom is advertised as a hydrophobic (repels water), antibacterial, and ecofriendly urine director. This device fits over the pudendal region so that urination can be accomplished when standing or sitting outdoors (or indoors) in such a manner that the urine stream is captured and directed away from the body. Another product intended for the same purpose is the "Lady J."

Kidney infection

Kidney infection (pyelonephritis) is considerably more serious than bladder infection. Symptoms might include all of those for bladder infection, as well as flank or lower back pain, severe abdominal pain, fever, chills, nausea and vomiting, weakness, and cloudy urine with or without a foul odor. The pain is characterized as aching and might become pronounced if you punch the victim gently just under the ribs adjacent to the spine on the affected side.

The field treatment is to administer an antibiotic. Begin the victim on levofloxacin (750 mg once a day for 5 days), trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole (one double-strength tablet twice a day for 14 days); any of the following for 7 days: norfloxacin (400 mg twice a day), ofloxacin (200 to 300 mg twice a day), lomefloxacin (400 mg once a day), or moxifloxacin (400 mg once a day); or amoxicillin–clavulanate (875/125 mg twice a day) or cefadroxil (500 mg twice a day) for 10 days. The victim might require hospitalization for an intravenous antibiotic(s). Therefore, anyone who is suspected to have a kidney infection should be evacuated immediately. (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.)

Kidney stone

See page 146.

Blood in the urine

Blood in the urine is caused by bladder or kidney infection, overuse of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), the passage of a stone(s), blunt or penetrating injury to the flank (kidney region), bleeding disorder, or tumor of the genitourinary tract. After heavy exertion or high fever, a person might break down muscle tissue and release myoglobin (an oxygen-carrying protein found in muscle) into the bloodstream (rhabdomyolysis or "rhabdo"). In cases of burns, severe injury, or certain infections, red blood cells can be destroyed and will release their oxygen-containing protein (hemoglobin) into the bloodstream. Hemoglobin and myoglobin are filtered through the kidneys and can be concentrated in the urine, giving it a pink to reddish-brown hue. If the urine is not made dilute (by drinking large amounts of fluid to increase its volume), the concentration of these pigments in the kidney can clog the filtration system and cause sudden kidney failure. Although after vigorous exercise some individuals may normally pass a small amount of reddish urine, anyone who develops darkened urine after fever or exertion should be placed at maximum rest, cooled to a normal body temperature (see page 337), encouraged to drink as much fluid as possible, and rapidly transported to a medical facility. If you are more than 24 hours away from a doctor, the urine rapidly clears with rest and increased fluids, and the victim appears in good health, the journey may continue.

Urine can also be discolored by ingestion of certain chemical agents, such as urinary tract anesthetics (blue-green or orange), beets (pink-red), or bile pigments (brown, seen with hepatitis).

Acute urinary retention

There are occasions when a person cannot urinate, and the bladder becomes distended with urine. This is seen more often in males than females, because a common cause is obstruction of the urethra where it passes through the male prostate gland. If the gland is enlarged (benign prostatic hypertrophy [BPH]), which occurs in elderly males almost exclusively, the passageway for urine can be narrowed to the point where it becomes obstructed. Early symptoms, which develop as the passage narrows, are difficulty initiating a stream, a weak stream, dribbling (leakage of urine), and urinating small amounts. On occasion, it can become painful to urinate. If the obstruction becomes complete, it causes urine to collect in the bladder, which becomes painfully distended and can be felt as a hard mass in the lower abdomen. Unless the obstruction can be relieved, this is an emergency. The usual treatment is to pass a small tube (catheter) through the penis directly into the bladder. This can be difficult and should be attempted only by someone trained in the technique. It is a good idea for someone properly trained to carry a urinary catheter(s) and lubricant on any extended wilderness expedition that will include elderly males as participants.

If a male has an enlarged prostate, drugs that are anticholinergic (such as certain antispasmodics) or that contain atropine and its derivatives can precipitate acute urinary retention. For instance, an elderly male with BPH on a diving expedition who takes anti–motion-sickness medication might suffer urinary retention as a side effect of the medication. A medication that relieves the symptoms of BPH in some men is tamsulosin (Flomax 0.4 mg capsule once daily), which relaxes the prostate muscles around the urethra, allowing urine to flow more freely out of the bladder. This medication can create its own side effects of dizziness and low blood pressure on arising, similar to what is seen with dehydration. Therefore, it is important for people using this medication to stay well hydrated and avoid situations in which a dizzy spell or fainting might create a serious injury.

Prostate infection

Bacterial infection of the prostate gland (prostatitis) is usually abrupt in onset, with fever, urgency and frequency of urination, pain on urination that might radiate to the lower back, chills, weakness, and sometimes difficulty urinating leading to urinary retention. While there might be a sensation of burning on urination, there is usually scant or no discharge from the urethra. “Bicycle seat prostatitis,” from prolonged pounding on the prostate caused by lengthy cycling, is not uncommon. Until the diagnosis is confirmed, the victim should begin to take an oral antibiotic such as levofloxacin, trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, or amoxicillin–clavulanate. On a prolonged journey, if an antibiotic appears to be effective within a few days, it should be continued for a minimum of 3 weeks. If prostatitis is suspected and an antibiotic started, add ibuprofen to the treatment plan for the first few days. In a young, sexually active male, suspect gonorrhea or chlamydial infection (see page 152). (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.)

Problems of the penis and testicles

Painful testicle

If a male complains of a painful testicle, examine both testicles. Look for discoloration or swelling. If a testicle has been injured by a blow, provide support with an improvised jockstrap and apply cold packs. If a testicle suddenly becomes painful, particularly in an adolescent, and appears swollen and/or discolored, usually without a penile discharge, it might be twisted, or "torsed." If a painful testicle appears to be resting in a higher position than the other testicle, particularly if it appears swollen and/or has a horizontal orientation, suspect testicular torsion. Since this usually happens if the testicle rotates inward (toward the midline) (Fig. 143), gently see if you can rotate it outward (looking from above, like opening a book) within the scrotum. If this causes a dramatic relief of pain, you might have saved the testicle. If the testicle rotates easily but the severe pain is not reduced, be prepared to continue the outward rotation, because the testicle might have torsed itself by rotating completely, up to twice around. If the maneuver increases the pain and appears to shorten the "hang" of the testicle, you might be worsening the torsion and might attempt rotating the testicle in the opposite direction.

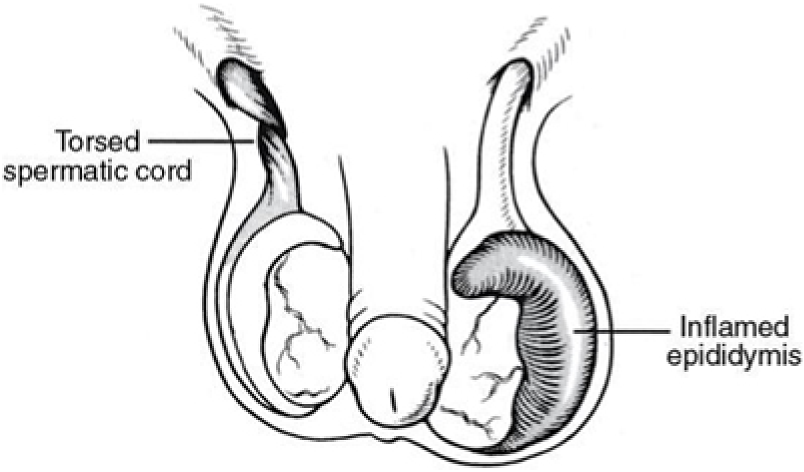


FIG. 143 Rotation of the right testicle in a torsion; an inflamed epididymis of the left testicle.

If you believe an unresolved torsion is present, this is an emergency, and the victim should be rushed to a physician. If a torsion is not resolved within the first 4 to 6 hours, the testicle might be lost. The pain is usually followed by swelling in the scrotum and groin region. Sometimes the affected testicle is seen to be slightly higher than the uninvolved testicle. The pain might be of a severity to cause the victim to become nauseated or vomit, and to feel faint.

If a testicle is swollen and the victim complains of pain or burning on urination, he may be suffering from infection or inflammation of the epididymis (called epididymitis), which is part of the sperm-collection pathway (see Fig. 143). Other symptoms include lower abdominal, flank, or groin pain. If the case is severe, the victim might suffer fever, chills, nausea, and muscle aches. This should be treated with doxycycline (100 mg twice a day), tetracycline (500 mg four times a day), levofloxacin (250 mg daily), norfloxacin (400 mg twice a day), or trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole (one double-strength tablet twice a day) for 10 days. Another diagnosis to consider, particularly in an adolescent male, is a sexually transmitted disease (see Penile Discharge, below). If epididymitis is diagnosed, the victim will require decreased activity for a few days, and scrotal support using an athletic garment. (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.)

One way to help distinguish epididymitis from testicular torsion is to gently elevate the scrotum—in general, with epididymitis the pain is diminished, whereas with torsion it is commonly increased, although this is not absolute.

Penile discharge

If a male complains of a discharge from his penis, particularly if it follows sexual intercourse by a few days and is yellow or greenish in color, you must suspect gonorrhea. It is generally safest to treat the victim for both gonorrhea and a chlamydial infection, because people frequently carry both infections simultaneously. In a doctor's hands, a sufferer of gonorrhea will be treated with an intramuscular injection of ceftriaxone 500 mg *plus* either a single oral dose of either azithromycin 1 g or oral doxycycline 100 mg twice a day for 7 days (to treat *Chlamydia*). Away from professional medical care, if more than 24 hours will pass before a doctor can be reached, to treat the gonorrhea, administer cefixime 400 mg orally as a single dose. Alternative single-dose therapies for gonorrhea are cefpodoxime 200 mg, cefuroxime 1 g, ofloxacin 400 mg, azithromycin 2 g, or norfloxacin 800 mg. (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.) In the event that the preferred drugs are not available, another alternative is oral gemifloxacin 320 mg plus oral azithromycin 2 g. To attempt to treat gonorrhea and chlamydial infection with one medication at the same time, you can use the single-dose 2 g azithromycin therapy. Syphilis might also have been transmitted, so the victim should be tested on return to civilization, even if the victim was treated with a 2-g dose of azithromycin, since there is often resistance of the causative spirochete *(Treponema pallidum)* to this drug. Unless there is an allergy to penicillin, a physician will prescribe a form of this drug to treat syphilis —the form, dose, route, and duration to be determined after patient assessment for the stage of the disease.

If there has been no sexual intercourse and a penile discharge develops, particularly if it is white or clear, treat with doxycycline or azithromycin.

Infection of the foreskin (balanitis)

An uncircumcised male might develop an infection of the foreskin, which usually appears as redness of the head (glans) of the penis and of the underside of the foreskin, sometimes with excessive moisture, small bumps, and whitish discharge (likely yeast). To treat this condition, wash the penis twice each day and apply a topical antifungal cream, such as clotrimazole after each washing. If the situation does not resolve within a week, then administer metronidazole 500 mg by mouth twice a day for 7 days.

If the foreskin of an uncircumcised male is pulled back from the head of the penis and becomes stuck, red and swollen, an attempt should be made to put it back in its proper position. To lessen the swelling, the penis needs to be held firmly for 5 to 10 minutes. Then, using a lubricant if possible, the tissue is worked back into proper position by gently pushing it forward over the head of the penis. If repositioning is not successful and the tissue remains out of position, the victim should be brought urgently to medical attention.

Safe sex

The wilderness traveler should recognize that the implications of sexual relationships on expeditions can affect the physical, emotional, and group dynamics of the entire team. It is the responsibility of all consenting adults to practice safe sex while on wilderness expeditions including using barrier protection to reduce the risk of sexually transmitted infections and measures to prevent unwanted pregnancy.

Emergency childbirth

When a woman is ready to give birth, the contractions of labor are usually intense and uninterrupted, or separated by intervals of less than 3 to 5 minutes. If the child to be born is not the woman's first, labor can progress very quickly, so do not wait until the last minute to set up. On the other hand, do not deliver a baby in the wilderness if it is not necessary. If the child is the mother's first, if the contractions are more than 5 minutes apart, if the waters have not "broken" (a gush of fluid from the ruptured amniotic sac) and there has been no passage of bloody mucus, and if no bulging is present in the vaginal area, consider whether you have time to make it to the hospital. If the waters have broken and labor has not begun, it is best to evacuate the mother, because delivery should occur or be induced within 24 hours to avoid the onset of an infection that could jeopardize the infant and mother. *If the umbilical cord or any other part of the infant other than the head is showing at the vagina, the delivery will be difficult and should be performed, if possible, by a skilled obstetrician.*

If delivery is imminent (the mother wishes to push) and you are outdoors, spread a towel or blanket. The birthing process is messy, so do not expect to salvage the ground cloth. Wear sterile surgical gloves from your first aid kit. If you do not have gloves, wash your hands with soap and water. Have the following supplies ready: four towels for drapes; two sturdy strings to tie the umbilical cord; a sharp pair of scissors, scalpel, or knife to cut the umbilical cord; a towel to dry the baby; a blanket to wrap the baby; a rubber suction bulb for the baby's mouth and nose; and a large plastic bag to carry the placenta.

Have the mother undress below the waist and cover her with a blanket or sheet. She should lie on her side between contractions until she feels that she is ready to push. When she wants to push, have her lie on her back with her legs spread as far apart as possible. Place a towel (drape) over each thigh, across the abdomen, and under the buttocks to "frame" the vagina.

It is extremely helpful to elevate the buttocks with a folded blanket or pile of towels. This is because the most difficult part of a normal birth is delivery of the upper shoulder, which is facilitated by pushing the infant downward at the proper time.

When the mother is undergoing a contraction, and you see some wrinkled skin and a wisp of hair from the infant's head showing in her vagina, have the mother grab behind her legs and pull them up toward her head, or plant her feet firmly, while she bears down (like having a bowel movement) and pushes. This might go on while the vaginal entrance stretches to accommodate the infant's head. If the fluid-filled, transparent amniotic sac is bulging out in front of the infant's head, it can be very carefully nicked with a sharp blade or scissors to allow the fluid to be released and the delivery to proceed. Do not do this unless you are certain that the childbirth will occur away from a hospital. A mother might prefer to squat during delivery, but this makes assisting her more awkward.

During a push, put one hand (covered with a clean towel or cloth if possible) gently on the infant's chin and another on the back of the head, providing countertraction against the infant's head and the woman's perineum to control the speed of delivery and to allow gradual stretching of the opening and to then assist delivery of the head. You should apply gentle but firm pressure to the infant's head to control descent. You do not want the head to "pop out," to avoid a large tear in the vagina.

A baby is delivered in (ideally) two stages. First, the head and face appear, usually with the face down (Fig. 144). Once the infant has appeared to the level of his eyebrows, instruct the mother to stop pushing. The baby will be extremely slippery. When his face appears, run your fingers around the infant's neck to see if the umbilical cord is wrapped around it. If it is, see if you can slip it over the head.

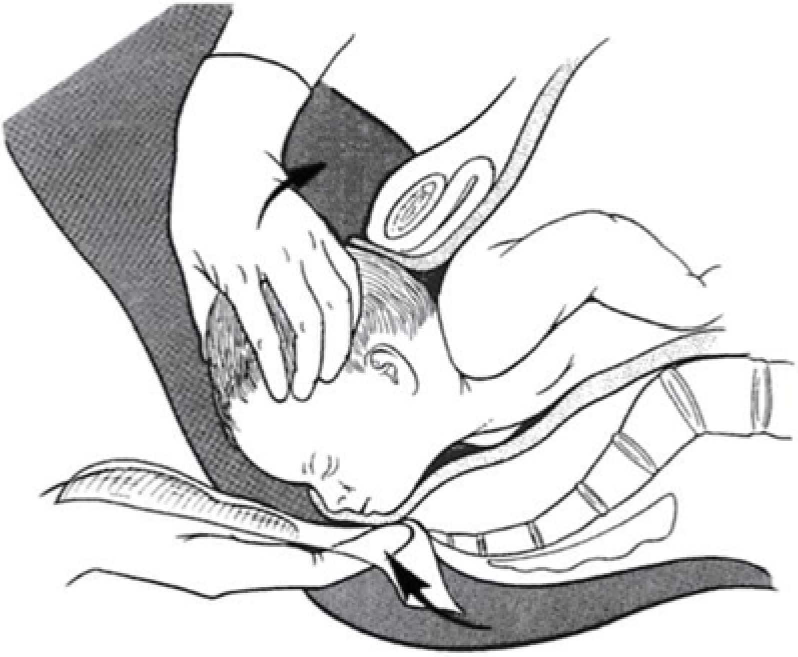


FIG. 144 Appearance of the head and face during childbirth.

In the moment between the delivery of the head and the beginning of the shoulders' emergence, support the head with one hand and gently wipe the face with a clean cloth. Although most authorities recommend that suctioning the mouth and nostrils of a newborn (of dark meconium and amniotic fluid) is not necessary, it is alright if they appear obstructed to gently suction the mouth (first) and nose, using the bulb syringe, but be gentle. Squirt out any extracted material before each reinsertion of the tip.

The baby's head and body will spontaneously rotate 90 degrees (do not twist them) to one side as the body starts to emerge. Have the mother resume pushing. While supporting the head, grasp the uppermost (with respect to the ground) shoulder and apply gentle downward pressure until the upper shoulder is delivered from the vagina (Fig. 145). Do not tug on the head or pull from underneath the infant's armpits. After the upper shoulder is out, exert gentle upward pressure to free the lower shoulder (Fig. 146). At this point, hang on to the baby tightly, because the rest of the baby will shoot out, usually with a big gush of amniotic fluid and some blood.

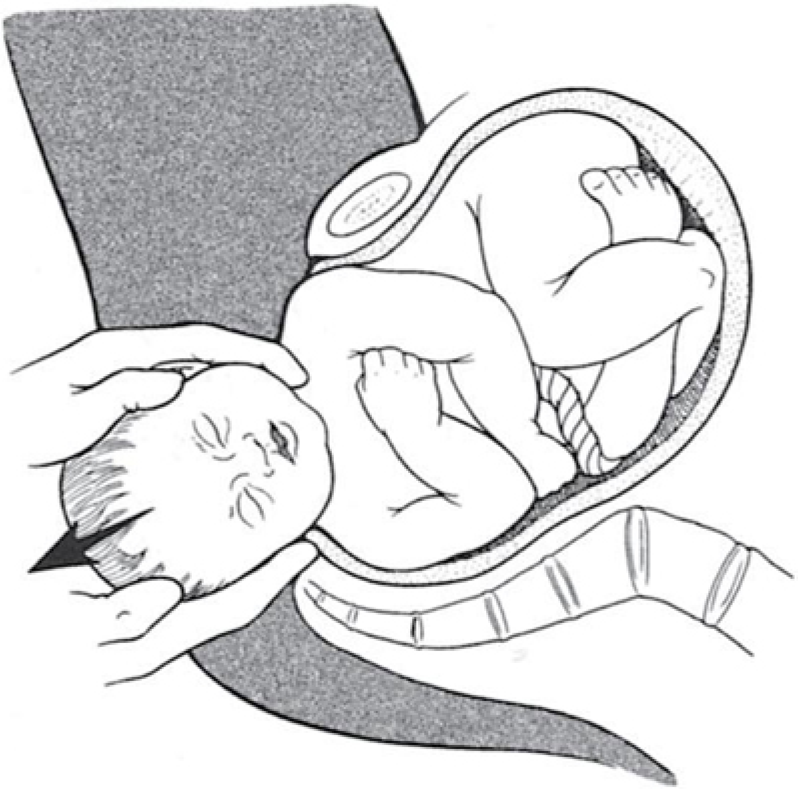


FIG. 145 Gentle downward pressure to deliver upper shoulder.

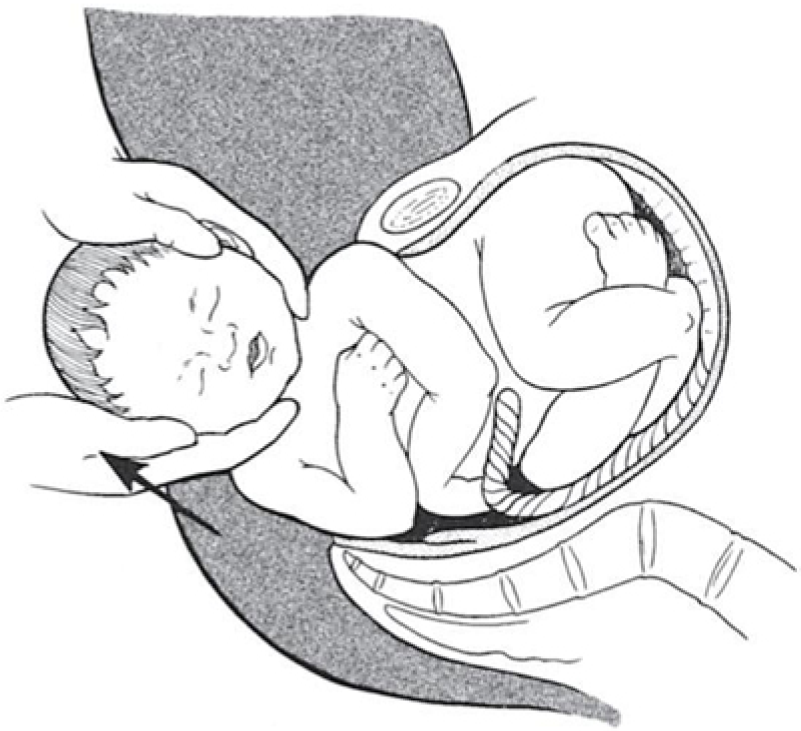


FIG. 146 Gentle upward pressure to deliver lower shoulder.

For vigorous term and preterm infants, practice “delayed cord clamping” by delaying clamping (tying off) of the umbilical cord for 30 to 60 seconds for enhanced neonatal benefits including increased hemoglobin levels of infant and enhanced transitional physiology. To clamp off, tie (clamp) the umbilical cord with two ties (preferably sterile, having been dipped in boiling water, for example), one at 6 inches (15 cm) and one at 8 inches (20 cm) from the child. Use ties that will not slip a knot (shoelace material or cotton tape) or the baby could suffer severe bleeding. Cut carefully between the ties.

If the baby is breathing and appears to be OK, place it securely on the mother’s abdomen, wrapped in a towel for warmth, then dry the baby. The mother can begin to breastfeed at this point.

Newborns are obligate nose breathers. If the baby does not perk up immediately after being born, stimulate him by rubbing with a towel until he begins to cry. Gently wipe off all slimy material.

The long end of the umbilical cord, which is still attached to the placenta that is attached to the inside wall of the uterus, will be hanging from the mother’s vagina. The placenta will deliver spontaneously, so do not pull on the umbilical cord. *Massage the mother’s abdomen (uterus) for 30 minutes after the placenta is delivered.* This hopefully causes the uterus to contract and lessens bleeding. The uterus will feel like a firm, rounded, grapefruit-sized mass in the middle of the lower abdomen just above the pubic bone. If bleeding starts again, massage more vigorously. You might have to repeat this a few times during the hours immediately following childbirth. It might be uncomfortable for the mother, but you should still do it. Place the placenta in a plastic bag and bring it to civilization for inspection.

If bleeding seems profuse after the placenta is delivered, or if the placenta does not spontaneously deliver after 60 minutes, be prepared to treat for shock (see page 70).

If the vagina is torn, apply pressure with a sterile compress. After the bleeding slows, the vaginal area can be gently washed, with the mother on her back, so that rinse water flows away from the vagina toward the anus. Take care to keep any contaminating material or solutions out of the vagina. Lay a sterile compress or clean sanitary napkin over the vagina.

After a wilderness birth, administer an antibiotic (cephalexin, amoxicillin–clavulanate, or erythromycin) to the mother for 48 hours.

Emergencies that can occur after childbirth include eclampsia (see page 81), bleeding, infections, and emotional depression. If a mother loses a liter or more of blood within 24 hours of delivery, she can become seriously ill and die. If this degree of bleeding is suspected (rapid heart rate, low blood pressure, altered mental status, fainting, chest pain, shortness of breath: see page 70), she needs to be evacuated promptly for emergency blood transfusion and other possible lifesaving measures, such as surgery and administration of tranexamic acid.

Complicated deliveries

Shoulder dystocia

This is a condition where the baby’s forward shoulder becomes impacted behind the pubic symphysis of the mother’s pelvis and interferes with delivery. When this occurs, the gentle downward traction on the baby’s head during delivery is not sufficient to deliver the forward shoulder. There are a couple of maneuvers you can try. The first is to have the mother spread her legs as wide as possible and pull her knees to chest in a forced flexion position. If that does not solve the problem, next press just above the pubic symphysis to try to move the shoulder. If you attempt this, do not put pressure on the uterus, which could cause it to contract and worsen the situation. If these do not work, quickly position the mother on her hands and knees “on all fours.” That might reposition the baby in the birth canal and allow delivery.

Breech delivery

In a breech delivery, the infant’s buttocks and legs come out first. Let the baby deliver spontaneously (do not pull) until the level of their umbilicus (where the umbilical cord attaches) appears. At this point, support the baby and do not pull.

Pulling on the baby can cause the head to extend backwards on the neck and become trapped, causing the baby to suffocate.

Determine which shoulder is lower and try to swing the baby's body to the other side to allow that shoulder to exit the vagina. Gently move the baby to the opposite side to deliver the other shoulder. Do not let go of the baby. If the first shoulder will not deliver, you might need to reach inside the vagina with two fingers to locate one of the infant's arms and swing it down across their anterior chest, so that the hand and forearm are delivered. Repeat this procedure for the second arm.

Position the baby so that their face is down. With one hand tightly holding the baby by their ankles, slide your other hand underneath them and slip your middle finger into the vagina, then into the baby's mouth for a grip. During a contraction, when the mother is pushing, extract the baby. If the extraction takes a few minutes, let the baby rest on your forearm with your finger in their mouth and their arms and legs dangling on either side, and use your other hand to push the vaginal tissues away from his face.

Prolapsed umbilical cord, single arm, or foot

A prolapsed umbilical cord occurs when the cord falls out of the vagina and becomes trapped between the baby and the opening. This can be a catastrophe, because if the cord is pinched and obstructed, the blood supply to the baby will be interrupted.

Turn the mother on her side or have her kneel in the knee-to-chest position and try to interrupt labor. Do not encourage pushing. Place a moistened (with disinfected saline, preferably) towel over the cord and vagina and expedite an emergency evacuation of the mother from the wilderness. If the delivery continues, try to have it occur without undue delay. Do your best to keep the head from compressing the cord.

If a single arm or foot hangs out of the vagina, have the mother kneel in the knee-to-chest position and try to get her to a hospital as quickly as possible.

Cellulitis of the breast (mastitis)

A nursing mother might develop infection of the soft tissue of the breast. Risk factors for mastitis include plugging of the milk ducts due to delayed infant feeding (causes breast engorgement), cracked nipples, fatigue, and poorly fitted (rubbing) clothing. The affected part of the breast becomes reddened, warm, and painful. The mother might suffer from fever, chills, body aches, and nausea and vomiting. Unresolved, mastitis can develop into a breast abscess. The mother should continue to breastfeed the child, because the infection will not be transmitted to the child. Nurse first on the unaffected side, then on the affected side. If the breast remains engorged, attempt to pump after feeding. Encourage frequent breastfeeding. Administer dicloxacillin or cephalexin 500 mg by mouth four times a day for 10 days. If the patient is allergic to penicillin, administer clindamycin 450 mg three times per day or erythromycin 500 mg by mouth twice a day for 10 days. Warm packs applied to the breast might encourage drainage and hasten resolution. The woman should stay well hydrated and wear a supportive bra.

Diabetes

Diabetes is a disorder in which the pancreas cannot create sufficient insulin (type 1 or insulin-dependent diabetes) or in which insulin is not effective (type 2 or non–insulin-dependent diabetes; risk factors are obesity, weight gain, sedentary lifestyle, and unhealthy diet). Insulin allows the body to use and store sugar; in the diabetic state, the victim suffers from high blood sugar and an array of physiologic derangements (kidney failure, skin ulcers, bleeding into the vitreous of the eye) associated with deterioration of small blood vessels. Diabetes is defined as a fasting blood glucose level greater than 126 milligrams per deciliter (normal is 100 mg/dL) or a non-fasting level of more than 200 mg/dL. Many diabetics need to take insulin (there are various types) to manage the disease; others can control their blood sugar by diet, oral medications (hypoglycemic agents), or both. Injectable insulin products have different times of onset of effect and duration of action. Oral medications include drugs that stimulate pancreatic cells to produce more insulin (e.g., glipizide [Glucotrol]), reduce sugar production in the liver (e.g., metformin [Glucophage]—first line therapy for type 2 diabetes), reduce carbohydrate absorption and sugar “peaks” after eating (e.g., acarbose [Precose]), inhibit glucose reabsorption through the kidneys (e.g., canagliflozin [Invokana]), or reduce insulin resistance in the body. Glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists (e.g., dulaglutide) stimulate insulin secretion in response to a meal. Exenatide (Byetta) injection is used as a supplemental drug for certain patients with type 2 diabetes. Insulin analogs, such as insulin lispro, are rapidly acting and when used in conjunction with standard insulins, which have longer onset and duration of action, can allow the outdoor enthusiast who suffers from diabetes to have greater flexibility in the timing of meals, snacks, and exercise. One product is the Humalog KwikPen. Insulin pumps are battery-powered devices that provide a programmed infusion through the skin. Insulin preparations, alone or in combination with other drugs to treat diabetes (e.g., insulin glargine plus lixisenatide), are constantly evolving, so be aware of their recommended uses and side effects. Other drugs increasingly used to treat diabetes are glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists (e.g., dulaglutide, liraglutide, semaglutide).

The most common dangerous acute situation incurred by a diabetic is a hypoglycemic reaction (low blood sugar; usually less than 70 mg/dL) induced by an inadvertent overdose of insulin, or after a normal dose of insulin or glucose-lowering agent accompanied by extraordinary exercise or insufficient food intake. The manifestations of a hypoglycemic reaction are weakness, sweating, hunger, abdominal pain, and altered mental status (which might include confusion, belligerent behavior, fainting, seizures, or coma). The solution is to administer sugar as rapidly as possible. If the victim is unconscious, it is generally prohibited to administer anything by mouth because of the danger of choking and aspiration of food or fluid into the lungs. However, sugar granules or concentrated liquid glucose (Glutose: one tube contains 15 g) can be inserted under the tongue or between the cheek and gums, to dissolve and be passively swallowed. Otherwise, sterile glucose solution must be injected intravenously, which obviously requires a trained individual. If the victim is awake and capable of swallowing, a naturally sweetened solution (apple or orange juice, sugar-containing soft drink), banana, or candy bar (chocolate, sugar cube) should be eaten. Once a diabetic suffering from hypoglycemia perks up from ingesting something containing sugar, be certain that the total amount of carbohydrate ingested is 15 to 20 g. This can be accomplished with 4 ounces of carbohydrate-containing juice or non-diet (sweetened) soda, 8 ounces of milk, sugar tablets or 4 teaspoons of table sugar, a tube of Glutose, 5 hard candies, 2 tablespoons of raisins, 5 soda crackers, or a tablespoon of honey. If a glucose meter is handy, check to see that the blood sugar is at least 70 mg/dL. If not, repeat the feeding. As soon as the victim feels better, they should eat a meal, to avoid a recurrence.

Glucagon is a hormone that causes the liver to release glucose. In a hypoglycemic emergency, it can be administered by nasal powder, or by liquid injection into a muscle, of the victim to raise the blood glucose level. For suspected severe low blood sugar in a person ages 4 years and older, 3 mg of glucagon powder can be administered into the nose. This can be done even if the victim has a stuffy nose from a cold. A person administered glucagon might suffer momentary sweating and nausea.

Here are the steps for intramuscular glucagon liquid administration:

1. Find the diabetic person’s glucagon injection kit (glucagon’s HypoKit), most likely stored in a small, zippered case. There will be a vial of powder and a syringe containing liquid with an attached needle.
2. Remove the plastic cap from the vial. Pull the needle cover off the syringe. Insert the needle through the rubber stopper (within the marked circle) of the vial containing the GlucaGen powder and inject all the liquid from the syringe into the vial.
3. Without taking the needle out of the vial, gently shake or roll the vial back and forth until the powder has completely dissolved, and the solution appears clear.
4. Make sure that the plunger on the syringe is completely down. While keeping the needle in the liquid within the vial, withdraw all the liquid

into the syringe. Take care to not pull the plunger out of the syringe. Pull the syringe and needle out of the vial or leave it within the vial for the next step.

5. Point the needle and syringe up so that the air floats to the top of the syringe just under where the needle attaches to the syringe (see page 469). Push the plunger gently until a few drops of liquid drip out to be sure that there is no air in the syringe and needle. Continue to push the plunger until you have the correct dose for the injection. If you have not yet removed the needle from the vial, do so now.
6. Stab the needle all the way into a muscular area such as the curve of the calf or into a muscular thigh. Try not to push it into fatty tissue, such as a buttock. While holding the needle and syringe motionless, pull back on the plunger to be sure that the needle is not positioned in an artery or vein, in which case blood would freely enter the barrel of the syringe. If no blood is returned, then push the plunger all the way down without any hesitation. For a child weighing less than 44 lb (20 kg), administer only half of the contents of the syringe. Do not administer the glucagon injection directly into a vein. After the injection, remove the needle and apply light pressure at the injection site. A person injected with glucagon might suffer momentary sweating and nausea.
7. When the person revives, give them fast-acting simple sugar (Glutose paste, glucose tablets, fruit juice, or hard candy), if they are capable of purposeful swallowing. Because the blood glucose level will remain adequate only for an hour or so because of the injection, it is important to observe the person closely and be sure that they continue to ingest food and liquid. If you have a glucose meter, try to keep the glucose level above 100 mg/dL.

Anyone who suffers from diabetes should wear appropriate identification, in case they require assistance. If traveling in a wilderness group, educate peers on signs and symptoms of hypoglycemia, use of equipment and medications, and where medications are stored so that others can assist in an emergency. No one who is insulin dependent should attempt physical exertion in a dangerous environment without adequate glucose intake. Even a person taking only an oral hypoglycemic drug, such as micronized glyburide or glipizide, should be cautious.

If the blood sugar gets dangerously high, the diabetic might become very ill, because the blood becomes acidotic with the by-products of metabolism (known as ketones, which causes diabetic ketoacidosis [DKA]), dehydration increases, and body chemistries become unbalanced. Such a patient is confused, combative, or comatose. Their breathing rate increases, breathing becomes shallow, and exhaled breaths have a fruity or acetone (like fingernail polish remover) odor.

They might be vomiting, complain of abdominal pain, and be intensely thirsty. Because of dehydration, the pulse is rapid and weak, skin is very dry, eyes might appear "sunken," and there is little sweating (dry armpits). Such a clinical picture calls for immediate transport of the victim to the hospital. If they can drink, they should be encouraged to ingest unsweetened fluids. The definitive treatment for DKA is intravenous fluids and insulin, which must be carefully dosed according to the measured blood sugar level and other tests.

If you cannot differentiate between a hypoglycemic reaction (low blood sugar) and altered mental status caused by excessively high blood sugar, you should err on the side of predicting a hypoglycemic episode and give the victim something sweet to eat or drink. If you have guessed correctly, the improvement will be dramatic; if your diagnosis was wrong, the extra sugar will not cause any significant harm. If a diabetic person is carrying a blood glucose meter (such as FreeStyle Lite, FreeStyle Libre Flash, FastTake, Accu-Chek, or SureStep), be sure you are instructed in its proper use before you need to use it. At high altitudes, the Accu-Chek Compact Plus blood glucose meter is a good choice because it relies on a chemical reaction that does not depend on the presence of oxygen.

If a person with diabetes develops a skin infection, particularly if it is on the foot, an appropriate antibiotic choice is dicloxacillin, amoxicillin–clavulanate, or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole. Diabetic foot skin ulcers occur commonly. If this needs to be treated, if the ulcer is dry, then apply a moisturizing dressing; if the wound is weeping, apply an absorbent dressing. Inspect footwear carefully for proper fit, to avoid pressure that might be causing or worsening the ulcer. Pad around the ulcer as you would for a blister (see page 267).

If a person with diabetes develops gastroenteritis (see page 140) with vomiting, it is wise to administer an antiemetic drug early, to try to prevent dehydration and to allow adequate eating and drinking, thereby making it somewhat easier to manage blood sugar swings.

Diabetes and SCUBA

Diabetes was previously considered an absolute contraindication to SCUBA diving. The Divers Alert Network has published guidelines for recreational diving with diabetes:

1. Persons can dive with diabetes if they are 18 years of age or older and:
    A. Have well controlled hemoglobin A1c (less than 9%)
    B. Are in good overall health
    C. Are under medical supervision
    D. Are not diving with new medications
    E. Can recognize the signs and symptoms of hypoglycemia

    F. Have never suffered hypoglycemia requiring another person to intervene

2. A diabetic who experiences any symptom of hypoglycemia while diving should end the dive, exit the water, and seek medical attention.
3. Prior to any dive, the blood glucose should be greater than or equal to 150 mg/dL and not more than 300 mg/dL. This should be tested at least three times prior to the dive: 60 minutes before and 30 minutes before the dive, and just before the dive.
4. Rescue medications should be immediately available on the boat or on shore, depending on the origin of entry into the water.
5. Blood sugar should be carefully monitored for 12 to 15 hours post dive.
6. Avoid diving to a depth greater than 100 ft seawater (30 m seawater).
7. Avoid dives longer than 60 minutes, with mandatory decompression stops, in caves or wrecks that would complicate ascent, in very cold water, or that involve great exertion.
8. At least one diver in the group should be non-diabetic.
9. Let everyone know about your diabetes so that they can keep an eye out for you.

Stroke

A stroke is caused by a blood clot that blocks an artery supplying part of the brain, or by bleeding from a leaking vessel into the brain. It occurs suddenly and can be minor or major, depending on the area and amount of the brain involved. If a stroke involves the brainstem, it might affect the breathing center and cause rapid death. A stroke might be caused by rupture of a cerebral artery aneurysm; when this occurs, the victim might suffer a form of bleeding known as subarachnoid hemorrhage, in which case the victim sometimes complains of a sudden-onset severe headache (perhaps the "worst headache of my life"; can be associated with physical straining, such as lifting a heavy weight) and sometimes neck pain or a stiff neck with or without loss of consciousness. The most common cause of subarachnoid hemorrhage is rupture of an aneurysm inside the skull.

Stroke symptoms include sudden headache without another cause; numbness of the face, arm, or leg; nausea and vomiting; blurred or double vision; weakness or paralysis of the arm(s) and/or leg(s) (particularly if it occurs on one side); difficulty speaking or understanding speech; difficulty walking; dizziness, confusion, and/or loss of balance or coordination; loss of consciousness; coma; seizure; and collapse. If someone has stroke symptoms that last for a few minutes to an hour and then gradually fully resolve, they have suffered a transient ischemic attack (TIA), which is a warning that they might soon suffer a full-blown stroke. So, even if stroke symptoms are fleeting, the victim should see a physician as soon as possible. If a person is believed to be suffering a stroke, they should be transported to a stroke center if possible because there are therapies that are often effective within the first 6 hours of onset, and perhaps longer. If a person is believed to have suffered a TIA, they should begin to take aspirin, 81 to 325 mg by mouth once a day, until they are evaluated by a neurologist. If a stroke occurs, aspirin should not be administered.

A rapid simple neurologic examination can reveal subtle changes indicative of a stroke. This exam consists of the following:

Mental status. Ask the victim their name, age, and location, as well as time, day, and year.

Vision. Have the victim count fingers that you display. Check each eye by itself and then both eyes together. Check that the pupils are equal. Ask the victim to follow a moving object with their eyes.

Facial muscles. Ask the victim to pucker their lips and then to whistle. Check the cheeks and mouth for symmetry. Have the victim clench their jaw while you feel the jaw muscles on each side. Have the victim tightly close their eyes. Have them relax with their eyes closed; lightly touch their face to locate any numb spots.

Hearing. Make a soft noise (yet loud enough that you can hear it) in each of the victim's ears.

Swallowing and speech. Ask the victim to swallow. Ask them to stick their tongue out and move it from side to side voluntarily. Listen carefully to note if their speech is clear or slurred.

Muscle strength. Have the victim squeeze one of your fingers with each hand, straighten each leg against resistance, bend each leg against resistance, bend and straighten each elbow and wrist against resistance, extend and flex each ankle against resistance, and shrug both shoulders against resistance.

Sensation. Using a light touch, move your fingers over the extremities and try to identify any areas of decreased sensation.

Coordination. Ask the victim to stand perfectly still in an upright position with their eyes closed and their arms at their sides. Be prepared to catch them if they begin to fall. Have them open their eyes, and then clap one hand into the palm of the other as fast as possible. Ask them to move an index finger back and forth between the tip of their nose and your finger, held 18 inches (46 cm) away. Have them walk heel-to-toe and on tiptoes.

If someone displays the symptoms of a stroke, they should be placed at absolute rest with their upper body and head elevated by an angle of at least 30 degrees. If their level of consciousness declines, pay attention to their airway (see page 18) so that they do not vomit and choke. Seek immediate medical attention. Low blood sugar can cause symptoms that mimic a stroke. If the victim can swallow purposefully without choking, sugar granules or concentrated liquid glucose (Glutose: one tube contains 15 g) can be carefully inserted under the tongue and between the cheek and gums, to dissolve and be passively swallowed (see page 162).

Other situations that can mimic a stroke include certain types of headaches, seizures, systemic infection, brain lesion (tumor, infection), non-stroke fainting episode, poisoning, emotional.

If stroke symptoms are associated with scuba diving, they might indicate an air embolism (see page 408). In this case, the victim needs to be transported in a head-down and/or left-side-down position and delivered to a hyperbaric chamber as soon as possible.

Work with your doctor to assess your risk of stroke and then make necessary adjustments to lifestyle habits and diet that are known to be healthy and preventative.

Infectious diseases

Wilderness enthusiasts and travelers are exposed to numerous pathogens, vectors (carriers, such as mosquitoes or ticks) and diseases that are not indigenous to their home, placing them at risk of exposure to infectious diseases. This section addresses some of the more common and worrisome infectious diseases associated with travel and outdoor activities. Information regarding these infectious diseases, including recognition, prevention and treatment, is based on what is currently known; this field changes quickly as pathogens change or develop resistance to previously effective medicine, new and better treatments are discovered, and toxic side effects to certain drugs come to light. It is important for health care providers to remain informed; the Centers for Disease Control (CDC; www.cdc.gov) serves as an excellent resource with updated information pertaining to the field of infectious disease.

Prevention is the best medicine. Strategies for avoiding tick and mosquito exposure are discussed on page 381. Immunizations are discussed on page 452.

Fever in the returning traveler

Fever in the returning (from a foreign country) traveler is common. Any of the disorders in this book that have fever as a symptom can be the cause. The most difficult to diagnose are usually infectious diseases that are not commonly seen in the country of origin. Therefore, the travel history is very important. If the cause is not obvious, a doctor might need to do extensive testing to determine the cause. Very worrisome signs and symptoms include alteration in mental status, severe weakness, difficulty breathing, diffuse bleeding, rapidly evolving skin rash, persistent severe pain, a stiff neck, and/or inability to eat and drink without vomiting and/or diarrhea.

As a general rule, infectious diseases follow periods of incubation. The incubation periods of travel-related infectious diseases, some of which might have fever as a component, are (with overlap, often because diseases might have different presentations during different stages) as follows:

- *Less than 10 days:* Influenza, dengue, yellow fever, gonorrhea, plague (typically 2 to 8 days), ehrlichiosis, hantavirus, paratyphoid fever, Chikungunya virus, Japanese encephalitis, leptospirosis, Mediterranean spotted fever, African tick-bite fever, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, Colorado tick fever, trichinosis, tularemia, anthrax, tick-borne diseases

- *10 to 21 days:* Malaria, viral hemorrhagic fevers (such as Ebola, Rift Valley, and Marburg), typhoid fever, scrub typhus, Q fever, relapsing fever caused by *Borrelia* organisms, African trypanosomiasis, Epstein-Barr virus, hepatitis, Lyme disease
- *More than 21 days:* Malaria, filariasis, brucellosis, hepatitis (A, B, C, E), rabies, schistosomiasis, leishmaniasis, amoebic liver abscess, tuberculosis

The location of travel provides clues to the possible cause of fever. For instance, if a person has traveled to the Caribbean, then dengue and malaria are high on the list, with rare clusters of cases of histoplasmosis and leptospirosis. Cattle, sheep, and goats in Utah, Oregon, Nebraska, California, and Texas carry the spores that transmit Q fever. In sub-Saharan Africa, it would be more common to suspect malaria, tick-borne rickettsial infection, schistosomiasis, or filariasis, with less common cases of African trypanosomiasis. The CDC Health Information for International Travel *(The Yellow Book)* is an excellent resource to help guide the patient and clinician (www.cdc.gov/travel).

Malaria

Malaria is caused predominately by one of six microscopic protozoan parasites: *Plasmodium falciparum, Plasmodium vivax, Plasmodium malariae, Plasmodium knowlesi*, *Plasmodium ovale curtisi* or *Plasmodium ovale wallikeri.* These are transmitted in the wild by the bite of an infected female *Anopheles* mosquito. Of the nearly 430 species of *Anopheles* mosquitoes, only 30 to 40 transmit malaria. Most cases of malaria acquired by U.S. citizens are contracted in sub-Saharan Africa; most of the remainder are linked to travel in Southeast Asia, Central and South America, the Indian subcontinent, the Middle East, and Oceania (Papua New Guinea, Vanuatu, and the Solomon Islands). The range of this disease might change as global warming introduces mosquito vectors into new territories, particularly those associated with human conflict, poverty, and natural disasters.

Mosquitoes bite humans to obtain a blood meal to produce eggs. When a female mosquito bites a human infected with malaria, it ingests an immature form of the parasite. In approximately 2 weeks, the parasite matures within the mosquito. When the infected mosquito bites a noninfected human, it releases malaria sporozoites (an immature form of the parasite), which mature in the human liver to become merozoites, and which then invade red blood cells. From these locations, the organisms can penetrate the vital organs, such as the brain, lungs, liver, and kidneys. Within a few days, the infected red blood cells burst, and the parasites infect more red blood cells.

The incubation period between acquisition of the parasites and the onset of symptoms is 8 to 40 days, depending on the species. Up to a third of victims might not show the disease until after 60 days from the time of the initial mosquito bite. Malaria should be considered in any person with a fever who is in or has recently been in a malarious location. Typical symptoms include a flu-like illness, with any or all of the following: headache, chills, sweats, fatigue, backache, pale skin, loss of appetite, muscle aches, nausea, diarrhea, and vomiting. These are soon followed by episodes of headache, intense chills (rigors), high fever, and sweating. Jaundice and anemia might occur. The episodes last 1 to 8 hours and are separated by 2 to 3 days, depending on the species. Onset of fever can be delayed by a few days.

Persons infected with falciparum malaria might be significantly more ill, with episodes of fever and chills at closer intervals (sometimes seemingly constant) and lasting for more than 30 hours. In addition, there might be alteration in mental status, abdominal pain, seizures, difficulty breathing, blood in the urine, severe anemia, and shock. Severe malaria can be fatal or lead to anemia, heart and kidney failure, and/or coma; untreated infections can cause recurrent illness for years.

Identification of the specific plasmodium has traditionally been accomplished by observing the parasites under the microscope in blood smears. Three “negative” (no parasites seen) blood smears interpreted by a trained examiner and spaced 12 to 24 hours apart are necessary to rule out malaria. Rapid diagnostic tests, such as BinaxNOW, are frequently used to diagnose malaria.

Persons with severe malaria need to be treated promptly with intravenous artesunate as soon as possible. Uncomplicated less severe malaria can be treated with a variety of oral medications.

Unfortunately, there is not yet a useful vaccine against malaria. Avoidance of mosquito bites is key to prevention. Because the *Anopheles* mosquito tends to feed during the evening and nighttime, it is particularly important to wear adequate skin-covering clothing; sleep under nets or screens; spray living quarters (with, for instance, a pyrethrin-containing product) and clothing; and use insect repellent (N,N-diethyl-3-methylbenzamide, called DEET) at these times (see page 381).

If you travel to a region where *P. falciparum* is resistant to chloroquine and pyrimethamine–sulfadoxine, prophylaxis (prevention) can be accomplished with mefloquine. The adult dose is 250 mg (salt) weekly. The pediatric dose varies according to the weight of the child: weight 10 to 19 kg, 63 mg; weight 20 to 30 kg, 125 mg; weight 31 to 45 kg, 188 mg; and over 45 kg, 250 mg. (For estimating purposes, 1 kg equals 2.2 lb.) Mefloquine should be started 2 to 3 weeks before travel, and then administered once a week during travel in malarious areas and for 4 weeks after you leave such areas. Mefloquine has been deemed safe during pregnancy. This drug should not be used by persons with psychiatric disease or history of depression or seizures. Side effects include nausea and vomiting, dizziness, mood changes, difficulty sleeping and nightmares, headache, and diarrhea.

An alternative drug for travelers who cannot take mefloquine is doxycycline (the adult dose is 100 mg a day beginning 1 to 2 days before travel and continuing for 4 weeks after; the pediatric dose for those more than 8 years of age is 2 mg/kg of body weight a day, up to the adult dose). Doxycycline is not advised for pregnant women or children under age 8 years, and it might cause increased skin sensitivity to sunlight.

Another prophylaxis regimen against malaria is chloroquine phosphate (the adult dose is 300 mg of the base once a week; the pediatric dose is 5 mg/kg of the base, up to the adult dose, once a week), which should be taken 1 to 2 weeks before you enter a malarious region and continued until 1 month after your journey. Chloroquine is recommended for travelers, particularly pregnant women and children who weigh less than 33 lb (15 kg), who cannot take mefloquine or doxycycline. If you use chloroquine for prophylaxis, you should also carry three tablets of Fansidar to be taken in the event of a flu-like illness or other unexplained fever, assuming the absence of an allergy to sulfonamide antibiotics. Chloroquine should not be used by persons with retinal problems and has side effects of headache and itching.

Proguanil (Paludrine) is a drug that can be used for antimalarial prophylaxis in areas where *P. falciparum* is resistant to chloroquine. The drug is available without prescription in parts of Europe, Scandinavia, and Africa, but is, as yet, unavailable in the United States. It is administered in an adult dose of 200 mg daily (pediatric dose: under 2 years, 50 mg; age 2 to 6 years, 100 mg; age 7 to 10 years, 150 mg; over 10 years, 200 mg), along with weekly chloroquine (the latter to protect against other forms of malaria). It can be used by those who will spend more than 3 weeks in rural areas of East Africa (particularly Kenya and Tanzania), but does not appear to be useful in Papua New Guinea, West Africa, or Thailand.

Atovaquone in combination with proguanil hydrochloride is available as the drug Malarone. The drug is taken at the same time each day with food or a milky drink. Treatment should be started 2 days before entering a malaria-endemic area and continued for 7 days after return. The adult dose is one tablet (250 mg atovaquone/100 mg proguanil) per day. Each pediatric tablet of Malarone contains atovaquone 62.5 mg/proguanil 25 mg. The pediatric dose is based on weight: 11 to 20 kg, one pediatric tablet per day; 21 to 30 kg, 2 tablets; 31 to 40 kg, 3 tablets; greater than 40 kg, one adult tablet. It should be noted that if Malarone is taken with tetracycline, metoclopramide, rifampin, or rifabutin, it might be less bioavailable and thus potentially less effective. It should not be used by persons with significant kidney disease.

Pyrimethamine plus dapsone (drug combination: Maloprim) is prescribed in many malaria-endemic regions outside the United States. This drug cannot be used by pregnant women; it can also cause bone marrow suppression.

If you are stricken with malaria in an area where the malaria organism(s) is believed to be sensitive to chloroquine, but you have not been taking prophylaxis, begin treatment with chloroquine (adult dose, 600 mg of the base immediately, followed with 300 mg at 6 hours and once a day on days 2 and 3; pediatric dose, 10 mg/kg of body weight [up to 600 mg] of the base immediately, followed by 5 mg/kg at 6 hours and once a day on days 2 and 3). In a region where *P. falciparum* is resistant to chloroquine, administer quinine sulfate (adult dose, 650 mg every 8 hours for 3 days; pediatric dose, 8 mg/kg [up to 650 mg] every 8 hours for 3 days) *plus* tetracycline (adult dose, 250 mg four times a day for 7 days; pediatric dose, 5 mg/kg [up to 250 mg] four times a day for 7 days) or Fansidar (adult dose, 3 tablets; pediatric dose: weight 5 to 10 kg, ½ tablet; weight 11 to 20 kg, 1 tablet; weight 21 to 30 kg, 1 ½ tablets; weight 31 to 45 kg, 2 tablets; weight over 45 kg, 3 tablets). (For purposes of estimation, 1 kg equals 2.2 lb.)

In addition to the treatment recommendations above, there are two "stand-by treatment regimens" offered by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC):

1. Atovaquone-proguanil (Malarone): The dosage for each of 3 consecutive days of treatment is based on body weight: 5 to 8 kg, 2 pediatric tablets; 9 to 10 kg, 3 pediatric tablets; 11 to 20 kg, 1 adult tablet; 21 to 30 kg, 2 adult tablets; 31 to 40 kg, 3 adult tablets; greater than 40 kg, 4 adult tablets. This treatment regimen is not recommended for someone who has been taking this medication for prophylaxis against malaria.
2. Artemether-lumefantrine (Coartem): The 3-day regimen is based on body weight: 5 to less than 15 kg, 1 tablet per dose; 15 to less than 25 kg, 2 tablets per dose; 25 to less than 35 kg, 3 tablets per dose; 35 or greater kg, 4 tablets per dose. The person should receive the first dose, then the second dose 8 hours later, then one dose twice per day for the next 2 days. This treatment regimen is not recommended for someone who has been taking mefloquine for prophylaxis against malaria.

Persons who have taken prophylaxis can contract malaria. In any case of suspected malaria, seek the advice of a physician as soon as possible. Anticipate that a stricken individual, particularly a child, might develop extremely low blood glucose (sugar).

To determine the malaria risk within a specific country and to learn of the most recent recommendations for prophylaxis and drug therapy, you can seek information from one of many sources on the Internet, such as www.cdc.gov/malaria/. For instance, there is evolving information about the drug tafenoquine used in a single dose to treat *P. vivax* infection, as well as "triple artemesin-based combination therapy" (using three instead of two drugs simultaneously to increase success and limit drug resistance). Because drug resistance to artemisinin has arisen in Africa and perhaps other continents, it is very important to remain current on the latest recommendations for therapy.

Yellow fever

Yellow fever is a viral disease transmitted in the jungle by mosquitoes of the genus *Haemagogus* and in urban areas of the species *Aedes aegypti*. "Jungle" yellow fever is seen in forest-savanna zones of tropical Africa, parts of Central America, forested areas of South America, and Trinidad. The "urban" variety is seen in South America and West Africa.

The illness begins 3 to 6 days after the culprit mosquito bite(s). Symptoms include sudden onset of fever, headache, chills, red eyes, muscle aching, no appetite, nausea, and vomiting. These symptoms last for 3 to 4 days, after which there might be 12 to 24 hours of remission. Soon thereafter comes a "toxic phase," in which the seriously stricken victim develops fever, skin rashes, altered mental status, severe abdominal pain, vomiting, low blood pressure, profound hepatitis, and liver and kidney failure. In such cases, the victim becomes jaundiced (hence, "yellow" fever) and bleeds easily. The disease can be fatal in up to half of persons who enter the toxic phase. Treatment is supportive and based on symptoms. Because of the bleeding problems, do not use aspirin to control fever.

Because the vaccine is so effective, yellow fever is not commonly seen outside of Africa and South America. A single dose provides lifelong protection for most people and is recommended for those age 9 months or more traveling or living in high-risk areas (i.e., Africa, South America); travelers to areas of active yellow fever outbreak should consider a booster vaccine to maintain immunity. Check current recommendations regarding the duration of immunity and for whom booster doses are recommended. Also, many countries require a proof of vaccination prior to entry. Refer to the Immunization section (page 452) for resources regarding the latest recommendations regarding vaccinations and boosters, as well as travel.

Dengue

Dengue (sometimes called dengue fever) is a viral (genus Flavivirus) infection transmitted by female *A. aegypti* and *Aedes albopictus* mosquitoes. It is estimated that at least 50 million people in more than 100 countries (predominately Asia, Latin America, and Africa) are infected each year with dengue viruses. It is the leading cause of fever in returning travelers and is surging in Honduras, Nepal, the Philippines, and Bangladesh, among other countries. Likely because of climate change and vector migration, more cases will also be seen in the United States; there have been outbreaks in such states as Louisiana, Florida, Hawaii, and Texas. There are four different serotypes of dengue virus (DEN-1, DEN-2, DEN-3, and DEN-4), and there appears to be little cross-immunity, so a person might be stricken with dengue four times in their life, with each subsequent infection generally being worse than the preceding ones. The current thinking is that while a first infection with DEN-1 might provide a slight boost in short-term (6 months to 1 year) overall immunity to dengue, it might also increase the possibility of severe disease after this period from the other serotypes. The most active feeding times for dengue vector mosquitoes are for a few hours after daybreak and in the afternoon for a few hours just after dark (dusk) ("diurnal" feeding pattern). As opposed to the night-feeding mosquitoes that transmit malaria, these species tend to be "urban," might also feed during daylight hours (also indoors, in the shade, and during an overcast), and are known to bite below the waist. The larvae flourish in artificial water containers (e.g., vases, tires), often in a domestic environment.

The bite is often not noticed. The incubation period following a mosquito bite is 4 to 7 (maximum 14) days. The disease is self-limited (3 to 7 days; full recovery in 1 to 2 weeks) and characterized in older children and adults by a sudden onset of severe headache (with or without pain behind the eyes), sore throat, fatigue, high fever (greater than 101.3°F or 38.5°C; lasts for 3 to 7 days), chills, muscle aches, sore throat, reddened eyes, enlarged lymph nodes, nausea and vomiting, bone and joint pain ("breakbone fever"), bruising, and a fine, red, itchy skin rash that typically appears (as the fever subsides) on the proximal arms, legs, and trunk (it spares the face, palms, and soles). It might then spread to the face, and farther out on the arms and legs, becoming slightly darker and more solid. The rash usually lasts for up to 4 days. Although the fever usually remits spontaneously, an occasional victim will relapse. Some victims have a cycle of a few days of fever, then 1 to 3 days without fever, then fever again. A person's first infection with dengue virus tends to produce a mild illness. The second infection can be much more severe. It is not uncommon to suffer central nervous system manifestations, such as irritability, depression, seizures, or severe altered mental status. Children and young adults appear to be particularly vulnerable to especially severe forms of dengue virus infection (formerly called "dengue hemorrhagic fever"), associated with severe abdominal pain, persistent vomiting, fever transitioning to low body temperature (hypothermia), and bleeding problems: nosebleed, bleeding gums, bloody vomiting, darkened stool, restlessness, weakness, etc. This can progress to include breathing difficulties and circulatory problems that can lead to extremely low blood pressure (shock—see page 70). When this occurs (generally 3 to 6 days after the first onset of symptoms of dengue), the victim might develop a diffuse, dark purple, blotchy rash caused by bleeding into the skin.

Treatment is supportive and based on symptoms. Antiviral drug therapy has not yet been shown to be of benefit. Fever should be treated with acetaminophen, and not with aspirin or NSAIDs (nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs, such as ibuprofen). Dengvaxia is a vaccine given in a series of three injections that is active against all four serotypes of dengue. It is indicated for people ages 9 to 16 years who have already suffered a laboratory-confirmed case of dengue and who live in endemic areas. *It should not be used in people who have not previously had a proven dengue infection, because in a previously uninfected person, the vaccine acts like a first infection. Thereafter, if a person suffers a second infection, it can be very severe.* Work continues on an improved vaccine.

Chikungunya fever

Chikungunya fever is somewhat similar to dengue. It is indigenous to tropical (sub-Saharan) Africa and Asia, and should be particularly suspected in persons returning from the Caribbean. Caused by transmission of an alphavirus from a bite by the mosquito *A. aegypti* or *A. albopictus*, Chikungunya illness carries an incubation period of 1 to 12 (usually 2 to 4) days, followed by sudden onset of fever greater than 101.3°F (38.5°C), and hallmark intense pain and stiffness of multiple joints, particularly fingers, toes, wrists, ankles, and knees. The joint symptoms, which might include swelling due to fluid collections (effusions) are often in the hands and feet. Other symptoms might include headache, backache, sore muscles, pain on looking at the light, pain behind the eyes, sore throat, nausea, vomiting, and weakness. On days 2 to 5 after the onset of fever, there might appear a red rash on the trunk, arms, and legs (less commonly on the face, palms, and soles). The arthritis can last for months to years, or it might disappear and then return 2 to 3 months after the initial illness. There are rarely neurological problems, such as seizures or encephalitis. It is possible to develop a blistering rash or skin ulcers. There are blood tests to confirm the diagnosis. Vaccine experimentation is under way. Therapy is symptomatic. Aspirin should be avoided.

West nile viral disease

West Nile (named from the West Nile province of Uganda) viral disease (West Nile virus [WNV]) is caused by a flavivirus (similar to those that cause St. Louis encephalitis, Japanese encephalitis, and Murray Valley encephalitis) carried predominantly by mosquitoes (*Culex pipiens* in the eastern United States, *Culex pipiens quinquefasciatus* in the southern United States, and *Culex tarsalis* in the western United States, *Aedes*, *Anopheles*, and many other species) and at least 160 species of birds, although it has been found in small mammals and to an alarming degree in horses. The mosquitoes become infected by feeding on birds and many animals (e.g., bats, horses, chipmunks, dogs, rabbits, reindeer, squirrels, and even alligators). It appears to be transmitted to humans by mosquito bite and has been presumed to have arrived in the United States from the Middle East. In rapid fashion, it appears to have spread across the country. The four top species of wild birds affected by WNV are American crows, Western scrub-jays, yellow-billed magpies, and Steller's jays. Mosquitoes bite the birds and thus acquire the virus. WNV disease is endemic in Africa, the Middle East, and West Asia and is anticipated to spread north as mosquitoes migrate with a warming climate. The virus has been spread to the recipient of an organ transplant from an infected donor, from a pregnant mother to a fetus, by blood transfusion, and possibly through breast milk. Otherwise, it does not appear to spread from human to human. While much of the clinical WNV activity is noted in summer and autumn, it is certainly possible to acquire the disease in winter from the bite of an infected mosquito.

The incubation period after a bite from an infected mosquito until the onset of illness is 3 to 21 days. About a quarter of human victims suffers a flu-like illness lasting for 3 to 6 days, characterized by fever, headache, neck stiffness and pain, swollen lymph glands, muscle aches and weakness, loss of appetite, fatigue, diarrhea, vomiting, red (smooth, bumpy, or lace-patterned) rash (commonly on the chest, abdomen, and back; sometimes on the arms and/or legs), and aversion to light (sometimes interpreted by victims as eye "pain"). Fatigue might be a residual symptom for up to a month. In 1 in every 150 cases, the victim suffers neuroinvasive disease, which might include severe encephalitis (inflammation of the brain with one or more of altered mental status, fever, seizures, abnormal neurological exam) with stiff neck and severe altered mental status (including coma or double vision), or perhaps meningitis (see page 196) or paralysis. Convulsions are rare. Elders are more prone to suffer severe or fatal illness. Death is uncommon.

Most (80%) people infected with WNV never realize that they have had the disease, because they remain without symptoms. Twenty percent of infected people develop West Nile fever, and less than 1% of people infected develop severe medical illness, including meningitis and/or encephalitis (characterized by seizures, loss of vision, and disorientation) or paralysis. There are blood tests for WNV that measure antibodies to the virus and show positive in most infected people within 8 days of the onset of symptoms. However, they might initially be "negative" and need to be repeated at a later date. There is no specific treatment other than supportive therapy. Recovery is generally complete for survivors, although persistent neuropsychological problems (fatigue, memory problems, weakness, tremor, word-finding difficulties, headaches, and depression) might occur, even if the acute disease was mild.

Zika virus disease

Zika virus disease (ZVD) is an originally equatorial (and now worldwide) disease caused by a virus that might have originated in the Zika Forest in Uganda. The disease is caused by a flavivirus related to those that are involved with dengue, West Nile, Japanese encephalitis, and yellow fever. The virus is carried by mosquitoes of the genus *Aedes*, which prefers to bite humans during the daytime. The virus can also be spread between humans via saliva, blood, urine, and sexual activities. There can also be transmission from a mother to her unborn child.

Most people infected with ZVD never realize that they have had the disease, because they remain without symptoms. The incubation period after a bite from an infected mosquito until the onset of illness is 3 to 16 days. The victim usually suffers an illness lasting for a few days to a week, characterized by all or some of fever, rash, headache, joint and muscle aches, conjunctivitis, pain in the back of the eyes, and fatigue. Chikungunya is a similar syndrome but lasts much longer. The skin rash, which is a combination of red blotchy patches and tiny bumps, begins on the trunk and spreads to the face, arms, legs, soles and palms.

If a pregnant woman is infected with Zika virus, her unborn child (fetus) can suffer from very severe congenital problems, which include a small head (microcephaly) with decreased brain tissue, scarring of the back of the inside of the eye (decreased vision), and muscle contractures–limb abnormalities. Infected adults of both sexes can develop Guillain-Barré syndrome (which in its most severe form causes progressive paralysis that can lead to death), typically with onset of 1 week after ZVD.

Blood testing is required to confirm infection by identifying Zika virus RNA. This is usually done with a screening test followed by a more precise confirmatory test that detects Zika virus antibodies. There is no specific treatment other than supportive therapy. Zika virus in an infected person can be detected for approximately up to 45 days in blood; 40 days in urine; and 180 days in semen. A woman of childbearing age who is felt to be infected with Zika virus should abstain from unprotected sexual intercourse (to avoid becoming pregnant) until at least 8 weeks after all symptoms have disappeared. Sexually active men who might have been exposed who wish to protect their partners should refrain from sex or use condoms for 6 months.

Eastern equine encephalitis

Eastern equine encephalitis (EEE) is caused by the EEE virus, which is transmitted by mosquito bites, most commonly from the species *Culiseta melanura*. This is a potentially fatal disease that is endemic to the eastern United States, particularly the forested swamp areas of the mid-Atlantic and New England states. It is also found in Latin America.

After an incubation period of 4 to 10 days from the time of the mosquito bite, EEE virus infection can lead to two different types of illness. The first is "systemic" and involves the rapid onset of fever, chills, fatigue, and muscle and joint pains, all lasting up to 2 weeks. Vomiting and diarrhea might occur. The second type of illness, which is much more severe, is encephalitis, which results in swelling of the brain. This occurs after a few days of the systemic illness. Symptoms include severe headache, altered mental status, weak breathing efforts, blue or pale skin color, seizures, and unconsciousness leading to coma. Up to a third of persons who become seriously ill with EEE will die, and survivors often have long-term neurologic problems.

There is no effective vaccine or treatment for humans, which emphasizes the importance of prevention. Outbreaks of infections with EEE virus occur in horses and humans following amplification of virus populations in a songbird–mosquito cycle. The prime time of risk is summer to early autumn. Mild winters and warmer summers attributable to global climate change might contribute to the risk.

Tick bites and prevention

Tick-borne diseases are increasing in frequency because of migration of vectors (such as ticks and mosquitoes) due to climate change that increases the amount of hospitable territory. Because some species of ticks can carry the bacteria of multiple diseases all at the same time, a single tick bite can result in co-infections, such as Lyme disease (see page 175) with babesiosis (see page 179), anaplasmosis (see page 178), or ehrlichiosis (see page 177).

Prevention is key. Avoid tick bites by wearing proper clothing (light colored for spotting ticks, tightly woven collared shirts, closed boots, long sleeves and pant legs, hats) impregnated with 0.5% permethrin (Permanone) insecticide or *N,N*-diethyl-3-methylbenzamide (DEET) repellent (see page 381). Insect Shield Repellent Apparel and Insect Shield Repellent Gear are impregnated with a proprietary permethrin formula. The clothing is claimed to withstand 70 launderings and retain repellency. When traveling in tick country, keep shirts and pant cuffs tucked in. Use insect repellents, notably DEET, picaridin, IR3535, or oil of eucalyptus, on exposed skin (page 382). All hair-covered areas and warm, moist locations on the skin should be inspected carefully. Any tick found on the skin should be removed promptly and properly (see page 377). Following a tick bite, watch for the characteristic rash and symptoms. Some authorities believe that a tick must be attached to a human for at least 36 to 48 hours to transmit Lyme disease, but this has not yet been proved. Most authorities agree that the risk of transmission increases with the duration of tick attachment. Wash clothing with hot water and dry in a dryer on high heat.

See page (376) for further discussion of prevention.

Relapsing fever

The sporadic (in occurrence) form of relapsing fever is caused by various borrelial organisms transmitted by argasid (soft) ticks of multiple *Ornithodoros* species. For instance, tick-borne relapsing fever in the western United States and Canada is caused by *Borrelia hermsii,* transmitted by the *Ornithodoros hermsii* tick. The epidemic form of relapsing fever is transmitted by the human body louse. In the United States, relapsing fever is largely confined to the western portion of the country, where the ticks inhabit coniferous forests in the remains of dead trees and burrows occupied by mice, rats, and chipmunks.

The disease is more common in men, who occupy the poorly maintained cabins and huts that rodents like to visit. The classic case involves a tick bite and a 7-day incubation period, followed by the abrupt onset of high fever, shaking chills, severe headache, muscle and joint aches, abdominal pain, nausea, and vomiting. This lasts for about 3 (but might be 1 to 17) days, until there is a crisis wherein the fever drops while the victim undergoes drenching sweats and intense thirst. For a subsequent period that averages 7 days, there is no fever and minimal symptoms, and then a relapse into illness. This cycle recurs an average of three times, with each episode of illness generally less severe. The sporadic (tick-borne) variation tends to be less severe; mortality rates of up to 40% have occurred in louse-borne epidemics.

A physician can make the diagnosis by examining a smear of the victim's blood under the lens of a microscope and observing the causative organisms. Treatment is doxycycline 100 mg twice a day, or tetracycline or erythromycin 500 mg by mouth four times a day for 10 days. When the victim ingests the antibiotics, they might suffer a high fever and low blood pressure (shock—see page 70) as a reaction to the death of the organisms within their bloodstream. Therefore, if you suspect relapsing fever, unless the victim is extremely ill, it is best to have them treated in a hospital, where this reaction can be anticipated and managed. If you are forced to treat in the field, be certain that the victim is well hydrated (see page 341) and administer a lower dose of antibiotic for the first four doses.

Rocky mountain spotted fever

Rocky Mountain spotted fever is caused by *Rickettsia rickettsii,* a tick-borne parasite. The disease is most commonly noted in late spring and early summer, when people are more likely to be outside and become hosts for the dog tick *(Dermacentor variabilis)* or western wood tick *(Dermacentor andersoni)*. Other ticks, such as the brown dog tick (*Rhipicephalus sanguineus* on the U.S.-Mexico border), can carry the parasite. Most infections are reported in the states of North Carolina, Oklahoma, Tennessee, Arkansas, and Missouri.

The incubation period is 2 to 14 (average 7) days after the tick bite, at which time a high fever abruptly begins. At 2 to 6 days after the onset of fever, the red-spotted rash typically begins on the wrists and ankles, then spreads toward the trunk, and might spread to involve the hands (including the palms) and feet (including the soles). The face is less often involved. At first, the rash is composed of pink spots that blanch with pressure; these later become darker red or purplish. As the disease advances, the spots coalesce to form purple blotches. However, some victims never develop a rash (Rocky Mountain "spotless" fever).

Other symptoms that begin before the onset of the rash include headache (common), chills, joint and muscle aching, cough, puffy eyelids and face, swollen hands and feet, reddened eyes, abdominal pain, nausea, and vomiting. Severe cases can affect multiple organ systems and cause death.

If you suspect that someone is suffering from Rocky Mountain spotted fever, seek a physician's help immediately. Doxycycline (adult dose, 100 mg twice a day) or tetracycline (adult dose, 500 mg four times a day; pediatric dose, 10 mg/kg four times a day) should be given for a minimum of 6 days and continued until the victim is without fever for 3 days. Although it is generally not recommended that you administer doxycycline or tetracycline to a pregnant woman or to a child younger than 6 years of age, because of the risk of tooth discoloration or abnormal bone development (the latter in a fetus during pregnancy); in a case of suspected Rocky Mountain spotted fever, when a physician is not available to administer an alternative antibiotic, doxycycline or tetracycline should be given.

Colorado tick fever

Colorado tick fever is caused by a virus transmitted to humans by the wood tick *D. andersoni,* and perhaps by other species. It is a seasonal illness that occurs from late March to early October, with peak incidence in May and June, usually in people who recreate outdoors.

The usual incubation period—from tick bite to symptoms—is 3 to 6 days. The victim complains of sudden onset of fever, severe headache, muscle aches, and fatigue. Other symptoms can include aversion to light, eye pain, loss of appetite, abdominal pain, and nausea and vomiting. Only 5% to 10% of victims develop a skin rash. The hallmark feature, which is observed in only half of victims, is a distinctive fever pattern. There is a fever for 2 to 3 days, a 1- to 2-day remission, and then an additional 2 to 3 days of fever. Permanent effects and serious complications are rare, but do occur, more commonly in children under 10 years of age.

A victim of Colorado tick fever might require 3 weeks or longer to recover fully; the most common persistent symptoms are fatigue and weakness.

However, infection appears to confer lifelong immunity to subsequent exposures to the virus. Treatment is supportive.

Lyme disease

Lyme disease, caused by infection (in North America and Europe) with the spirochetes *Borrelia burgdorferi, Borrelia afzelii*, *B. garinii*, and *B. bavariensis* (and less commonly *B. mayonii*), is the most common tick-borne illness in the United States. Occurrence is most frequently in summer and early autumn, during peak outdoor activities. The two hard ticks implicated in transmission of the spirochete from mammal to mammal (e.g., from white-footed mouse *Peromyscus leucopus* to the white-tailed deer *Odocoileus virginianus* in the South; from the dusky-footed wood rat *Neotoma fuscipes* and the California kangaroo rat *Dipodomys californicus* to larger mammals in northern California) are *Ixodes scapularis* (blacklegged [deer] tick) in the Northeast, South, and Midwest, and *I. pacificus* (western black-legged tick) in the West. The three expanding regions in the U.S. are mainly the northeastern states from Virginia to eastern Canada, upper Midwest (particularly Wisconsin and Minnesota), and northern California.

The adult ticks of these species are extremely small—about the size of a sesame seed. Worse yet, the disease can be transmitted by the nymphal forms, which can appear only as minuscule black spots on the skin. Other potential carriers of *B. burgdorferi* in the United States include the dog tick, wood tick, rabbit tick, and Lone Star tick (*Amblyomma americanum*, which also can transmit southern tick associated rash illness [STARI], which is very similar to Lyme disease). Lyme disease has been reported in Canada, the Soviet Union, Australia, Europe (linked to the sheep tick *Ixodes ricinus*), Scandinavia, Japan, and China. In Asia, the culprit tick is *Ixodes persulcatus*. The Lone Star tick can also transmit the Heartland virus, which has been identified thus far in Missouri and Tennessee, causing a flu-like illness for which there is only symptomatic treatment. This particular tick species will increase its geographic range due to global warming and other environmental changes. Other diseases attributed to this tick include tularemia, ehrlichiosis, red meat allergy, and Bourbon virus disease.

The distinctive skin lesion of Lyme disease, erythema migrans, appears 3 to 32 days (usually, about a week) after the tick bite, most commonly at the bite site. It is attributed to *B. burgdorferi* that are spreading locally in the skin and is usually found on the trunk, upper arm (or armpit), or thigh as a small red spot that expands into a large (average 7 in or 18 cm, but up to 30 in or 76 cm, in diameter) and irregular circle or oval with a red, raised, or flat outer border surrounding paler ("fading," but slightly red) skin in the center. The rash might itch or burn and is warm to the touch. The initial central spot might turn into a blister or small ulcer, or it might turn blue in color. In some cases, multiple similar red areas appear simultaneously, occasionally within the larger primary lesion, but never on the palms or soles. These areas clear spontaneously over 1 to 14 (average 4) weeks. Variations of the rash include diffuse hives or a more measles-like eruption. An untreated victim might develop recurrent rashes 1 to 14 months after the initial rash disappears.

Within days to weeks of infecting a human, the *B. burgdorferi* organisms spread from the skin through the bloodstream and lymphatic system to affect other organs. Therefore, appearing just before, or coincident with, the skin rash(es) are flu-like symptoms that include muscle aching (particularly of the calves, thighs, and back), stiff neck, fatigue, low-grade fever, chills, painful joints, loss of appetite, nausea, cough, sore throat, swollen lymph glands, enlarged spleen, headache, abdominal pain (particularly in the right upper quadrant), irritated eyes (conjunctivitis), swelling around the eyes, and aversion to light. Most of the symptoms disappear in 2 to 3 weeks (along with the rash), but fatigue and muscle aching might last for months.

More serious symptoms include severe headaches and a stiff neck suggestive of meningitis (see page 196), confusion, profound sleepiness or insomnia, memory disturbances, emotional changes, and poor balance. Pain in the joints and symptoms of hepatitis might also occur.

Pets can also contract this disease, suffering lameness, swollen joints, lethargy, and loss of appetite.

If Lyme disease is not treated with an antibiotic, the disease can progress to facial paralysis and severe heart and nervous system disorders weeks to months after the initial rash disappears. Months or years later, up to 60% of untreated victims will suffer arthritis. If a person is successfully treated for Lyme disease with an antibiotic and has a subsequent episode of the erythema migrans rash, it is quite possible that they have been reinfected with a different strain of *B. burgdorferi*.

Antibiotic therapy for Lyme disease at the time of the initial rash or symptoms should be given as follows: for an adult, use doxycycline 100 mg twice a day (or 200 mg once a day) for 10 days. An alternative is amoxicillin 500 mg orally three times a day for 14 days. If the victim is allergic to doxycycline/tetracycline and amoxicillin, they can take cefuroxime axetil 500 mg orally twice a day or phenoxymethyl penicillin 500 mg orally four times a day (or 1 gm three times a day) for 14 days. An alternative is azithromycin 500 mg once daily for 7 days. A child should be treated with amoxicillin 17 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight (up to 250 mg) three times a day for 14 days. (Doxycycline is typically avoided in children because tetracycline causes permanent tooth staining. This is probably not the case with doxycycline for a 10-day course, so if it is the only drug available to a child suspected to suffer Lyme disease, use it in a dose of 2.2 mg/kg [2.2 lb] body weight twice a day for 10 days.) If the child is allergic to penicillin, administer cefuroxime axetil in a dose of 15 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight twice a day, or phenoxymethyl penicillin 17 to 33 mg/kg (2.2. lb) of body weight four times a day. An alternative is azithromycin 10 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight once a day for 7 days. When giving these antibiotics to children, never exceed the adult dose. Nearly 15% of persons treated with antibiotics for Lyme disease in this fashion might develop fever, flushed skin, and low blood pressure within 24 hours of treatment. This might require physician intervention for intravenous fluids.

A physician might elect to treat certain Lyme disease victims with a daily injection of ceftriaxone for 2 weeks. There are occasional treatment failures; these people might require hospitalization for another intravenous antibiotic.

It has not yet been proved that administration of an antibiotic to every person bitten by an *Ixodes* tick is a cost-effective method to prevent this disease. However, in an area where carrier ticks and the disease are frequent, it is recommended to administer an appropriate antibiotic within 72 hours following removal of an embedded or blood-engorged tick. This should be considered only if the attached tick is identified as an adult or nymphal deer tick; the tick is felt to have been attached for 36 hours or longer; the drug can be given within 72 hours of tick removal; there is a high rate of infection (greater than or equal to 20%) within local ticks; and doxycycline is not contraindicated. The currently recommended single-dose therapy is 200 mg of doxycycline for adults, and for children 8 years of age or older doxycycline 4.4 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight (up to a total dose of 200 mg).

There are laboratory tests for Lyme disease. The first-line blood test is detection of antibodies to Lyme disease. Because it can take a period of weeks following the initial tick bite for an infection to cause the production of antibodies, the test can be falsely negative during that period. Thus, within two weeks of the appearance of the erythema migrans rash, testing for antibodies can be negative. It is also important to know that after being cured of Lyme disease using antibiotics, the blood test can remain positive for up to decades. So, the test does not effectively differentiate between a new and an old infection. Coupled with the fact that there is not lifelong immunity to Lyme disease (meaning that a person can suffer it more than once in a lifetime), the clinical diagnosis is very important in determining who is infected. There is currently no vaccine on the market to prevent Lyme disease.

Ehrlichiosis

Human monocytic ehrlichiosis (there is also a canine form) is present in two forms, one caused by a rickettsial organism known as *Ehrlichia chaffeensis,* which is spread by *Amblyomma americanum* (Lone Star) tick bites in the U.S. and *Rhipicephalus sanguineus* tick bites in India, and the other caused by the rickettsial organisms *Ehrlichia phagocytophila* and *Ehrlichia equi,* spread by *Ixodes* tick bites. Ehrlichiosis in the U.S. is also sometimes caused by *Ehrlichia ewingii* or *Ehrlichia* *muris eauclariensis*. Infection is usually acquired by a person who inhabits a rural environment. The average incubation period after a bite is approximately 7 to 10 days. The victims, who are more commonly middle-aged adults than children and young adults, complain of a flu-like syndrome with high fever, chills, fatigue, headache, muscle aches, vomiting, and a variety of skin rashes, which can be punctate, bumpy, like tiny bruises, or broad and reddened, and which might involve the palms and soles. A victim often has decreased counts of various types of blood cells, as well as liver dysfunction. The treatment is doxycycline 100 mg twice a day or tetracycline 500 mg four times a day for 10 days. The few children who have been diagnosed with ehrlichiosis have been treated with doxycycline 3 mg/kg of body weight in two divided doses per day. Untreated or treated after a delay in diagnosis, up to 15% of victims can develop severe infections, kidney failure, bleeding disorders, seizures, and/or coma.

Anaplasmosis

Human anaplasmosis, also called human granulocytic anaplasmosis, is caused by infection of white blood cells by a bacterium named *Anaplasma phagocytophilum*. Like ehrlichiosis, anaplasmosis is disseminated by bites of *Ixodes* ticks, the blacklegged tick *(Ixodes scapularis)* in the Northeast and upper Midwest, and the western blacklegged tick *(Ixodes pacificus)* on the West Coast. Because the nymphal form of ticks can be quite tiny, infestation leading to a bite might not be detected. Infected persons have the onset of illness 5 to 21 days after a bite, with symptoms of high fever, headache, fatigue, and diffuse muscle aches, which might progress to more serious illness affecting the kidneys, central nervous system, lungs, and blood system. Other early symptoms include fever, cough, loss of appetite, nausea, and diarrhea. A rash is rarely present, so its presence should raise the question of whether there is simultaneous Lyme disease. The treatment is the same as for ehrlichiosis. Successful treatment with the correct antibiotic usually causes symptoms to largely remit within 48 hours.

African tick-bite fever

African tick-bite fever (also known as South African tick typhus) is caused by a bite from a tick of the genus *Amblyomma* that transmits the bacteria *Rickettsia africae*. It is a common cause of fever in returned (to the United States) travelers who have been to sub-Saharan Africa or the West Indies. Symptoms include fever, fatigue, headache, chills, sweats, muscle and joint aching, and a bumpy or blistering rash on the limbs that might also appear on the palms and soles, with swollen lymph nodes in the bitten limb. A hallmark sign is a slightly painful, thickened bite site with a blackened center and red surrounding tissue. This might be hidden underneath scalp hair if that is where the tick attached. The onset of illness is within 6 to 10 days weeks after the tick bite. Treatment is with doxycycline 100 mg by mouth twice a day for 5 to 7 days. This usually causes symptoms to improve within 48 hours. On occasion, African tick-bite fever can cause severe illness with overwhelming infection, pneumonia, kidney failure, heart problems, and diffuse bleeding, so it is important to administer the doxycycline, even to children under the age of 8 years. In such a case, the doxycycline can be given for 2 days, followed by azithromycin for an additional 5 days.

Tick paralysis

If a person (particularly a young child with long hair) is traveling in or has just returned from tick country and begins to complain of fatigue and weakness, you might have discovered a case of tick paralysis.

The disorder is most common in spring and summer when ticks are feeding. Certain female ticks (North American wood tick, common dog tick, and Australian marsupial tick) attach to the skin and slowly (over several days) release a neurotoxin that causes profound lethargy and muscle weakness in the victim. The disorder usually begins 5 to 7 days after tick attachment. At first the victim might be irritable and restless, and complain of numbness and tingling in their hands and feet. Over the next day or two (but occasionally as quickly as within a few hours), the victim becomes weak, with an ascending (beginning in the feet and advancing toward the head) paralysis, which can become total. Just a portion of the face can be paralyzed if a tick is lodged behind the ear.

Search the skin (particularly the hair-covered areas) thoroughly for ticks and remove them properly. Improvement is usually noted within hours, and complete recovery occurs in 24 to 48 hours after removal of the tick. However, if the tick is not removed, the victim can die.

Babesiosis

Babesiosis is caused by protozoan parasites that invade human red blood cells. They are transmitted from mammals and rodents to humans by the bite of certain hard ticks. For instance, *Babesia microti* in New England is transmitted by the northern deer tick *I. scapularis,* which can also transmit the spirochete agent of Lyme disease.

An infection manifests itself in a human with symptoms of fatigue, loss of appetite, and weakness, followed within a few days to a week by fever, sweats, and muscle aches. Less common symptoms include headache, nausea, vomiting, and chills. There is rarely a rash. The victim might suffer anemia and an enlarged spleen. A person who no longer has a spleen, either because it is not present or not functioning properly (e.g., persons with sickle cell anemia) might suffer a more serious or prolonged illness.

A physician can make the diagnosis by observing the parasites in a smear of human blood under the lens of a microscope. Most victims recover without treatment. In severe cases, a physician can administer drugs, such as atovaquone (750 mg by mouth twice a day) plus azithromycin (500 or 1000 mg by mouth on day one, then 250 mg per day) for 7 to 10 days; if the bacteria are stubborn, antibiotic therapy might be necessary for 6 weeks or longer. Babesiosis should be suspected in persons if they have been diagnosed with Lyme disease or anaplasmosis and they develop severe disease, delayed (by approximately 4+ weeks) persistent anemia, or a poor response to usual antibiotic therapy.

Schistosomiasis

Schistosomiasis is a term that describes a variety of diseases caused by different species of parasitic trematode flatworms (blood flukes) of the genus *Schistosoma*. The intermediate hosts are freshwater snails, which release the immature infective stages into the water; thus, the infections are acquired by people who bathe or swim in contaminated water. It is not acquired in saltwater. The early symptoms caused by all of the species of worms are similar. When the fork-tailed cercariae (early stages of the immature worm) penetrate the skin, they cause a prickling sensation, or itching and burning, and a rash at the site of entry that might begin within a few to 60 minutes after exposure (usually as or after the water evaporates on the skin), along with redness and mild swelling. After an hour or so, the initial reaction fades and small red bumps become more itchy over 10 to 15 hours. Small blisters might then occur and appear to be pus-filled within 48 hours and last for 1 to 2 weeks. Up to 8 weeks later, the victim shows loss of appetite, fatigue, night sweating, headache, muscle aches, diarrhea, hives, and late-afternoon fever lasting 5 to 10 days ("snail," "safari," "Katayama," or "Yangtze River" fever).

After a few months, the different species cause specific organ damage. *Schistosoma haematobium* is prevalent in Africa, the Middle East, the islands of Madagascar and Mauritius, and India. The worms take residence in the blood vessels of the bladder and genitalia and induce bloody, painful, and frequent urination. The other four species of worms cause scarring in the intestines and liver. *Schistosoma mansoni* is prevalent in Africa, the Arabian Peninsula, Madagascar, Brazil, Suriname, Venezuela, and some Caribbean islands. The worms take residence in the blood vessels surrounding the large bowel and induce bloody and mucus-laden diarrhea. In late stages of the disease, the liver can be severely damaged. *Sjaponicum japonicum* is prevalent in China, the Philippines, Japan, and the island of Sulawesi. The worms take residence in the blood vessels supplying the small bowel and induce severe, bloody, and mucus-laden diarrhea. *Schistosoma intercalatum* infections occur in sub-Saharan Africa and *Schistosoma mekongi* infections along the Mekong River in Cambodia and

Laos. “Katayama fever” consists of fever, headache, muscle aches, abdominal pain in the right upper quadrant (liver), and bloody diarrhea. This occurs 2 to 6 weeks after the onset of schistosomiasis.

The diagnosis is usually made by identification of schistosome eggs in feces or urine. Treatment for schistosomiasis includes the prescription anthelminthic (antiparasitic) drug praziquantel, which kills adult schistosomes. However, the drug does not kill developing schistosomes or prevent reinfection. The skin is treated with a topical antiseptic ointment, such as bacitracin. If there appears to be a secondary bacterial infection, an antibiotic (e.g., dicloxacillin, cephalexin, or erythromycin) can be administered.

To prevent schistosomiasis, it is necessary to prevent the entry of cercariae into the body. In a region of high risk, it is unwise to bathe or swim in an untreated pond or stream. Shallow, stagnant water is more contaminated than that in swift-moving currents. Always wear hip boots or waders when passing through streams or swamps. If contact with water occurs, apply rubbing briskly towel off to remove the cercariae-laden water, but understand that this method might not be effective. Applying DEET (see page 382) to the skin before water immersion might block some of the penetrating cercariae, but this is not a reliable preventive measure. Washing the skin with rubbing alcohol or soap and water is similarly of limited effectiveness. Boil or disinfect all bathing water or store it for 3 days (the life span of the cercariae) before using it; also, be certain that it is free of snails. Heating bathing water to 122°F (50°C) for 5 minutes is also an effective method. Artemether is a drug that can be given alone or in combination with praziquantel to prevent schistosomiasis in high-risk situations. There is not yet an effective repellent or vaccine against schistosomiasis.

Trichinellosis (trichinosis)

Trichinellosis (trichinosis) is a disease that occurs in humans who consume the larvae of *Trichinella* species (such as *spiralis* and *nativa*) that have encysted in animal muscle tissue (meat). Most of us are familiar with the risk associated with eating undercooked pork but be aware that cases have resulted from consumption of horse meat, wild boar, bear, walrus, and cougar, the latter in jerky form (which was brined and smoked, but never heated during preparation). Squirrels, woodchucks, capybaras, mice, and rats are infected in nature.

Victims of trichinellosis first develop gastrointestinal distress (nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and abdominal pain) during the week following ingestion of infested meat. This might continue for 4 to 6 weeks. During the second week, when the larvae are invading human muscle tissue, high fever, muscle aches, swelling (edema, puffiness) of the soft tissues around the eyes, weakness, skin rash, and joint aches develop. There might be tiny red hemorrhages under the fingernails or visible within the skin. In addition, analysis of human blood shows an unusually high count of eosinophils, which are a cell type associated with allergies and certain parasite infestations.

The migrating larvae can cause damage to the lungs (cough, bloody sputum, shortness of breath, pain with breathing), heart, and brain.

The larvae encyst in the muscle tissues, beginning the second or third week of infection, which causes muscle aches and stiffness. Then the larvae die; they become calcified 6 to 18 months after the infection first occurred.

The definitive diagnosis is made in humans by a blood test or muscle biopsy (examining a small piece of muscle harvested from the patient for *Trichinella* cysts and muscle inflammation with a concentration of eosinophils). Treatment for a person with trichinellosis is not yet totally satisfactory; it involves administration of the drug albendazole or mebendazole.

Although most species of *Trichinella* are killed by freezing, there are freeze-resistant strains, so all meat that is at a high risk for carrying the parasite should be cooked thoroughly to a temperature of at least 150°F to 170°F (65.6°C to 77°C), which generally occurs when the meat turns from pink or red to gray. Certain brining solutions can kill *Trichinella;* however, the curing temperature must be sufficiently high.

Leptospirosis

Leptospirosis is caused by spirochetes of genus *Leptospira*. The organisms are shed in the urine of wild and domestic animals, including cows, dogs, and pigs. Humans acquire the disease by contacting contaminated soil or water, which includes freshwater ponds and streams. The spirochetes can enter through nicked or abraded skin, through the mucous membranes of the eye and mouth, or by being ingested.

After an incubation period of 2 to 21 days, many victims display fever, chills, fatigue, muscle aches, headache, swollen lymph glands, and red eyes without a discharge. Nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, and cough are common symptoms as well. This presentation lasts for about a week, and then is followed by a few days of improvement, after which a second stage of the disease begins. This is characterized by more muscle aches, nausea and vomiting, and a diffuse skin rash (red or purplish patches of skin). A sore throat, enlarged spleen, abnormal heart rhythms, low platelet count, and enlarged liver with jaundice might develop. In very severe cases, the victim might suffer from kidney and liver dysfunction, and even bleeding from the lungs.

Antibiotic treatment lessens symptoms and the duration of illness. Severe leptospirosis is treated with intravenously administered penicillin. If hospitalization is not needed, the treatment is doxycycline 100 mg by mouth twice a day, or tetracycline 500 mg four times a day, for 7 days. Other oral antibiotics that can be used are amoxicillin, cefuroxime axetil, azithromycin, penicillin, and erythromycin.

To avoid infection, it is best not to swim in freshwater ponds and streams likely to be heavily contaminated by urine from livestock or wildlife.

Tularemia

Tularemia is caused by the bacterium *Francisella tularensis,* which can be transmitted to humans by tick bites or by handling, skinning, or eating improperly cooked infected rabbit meat. Rarely, it can be transmitted (e.g., from a bite or handling sick or dead animals) from a cat, bear, deer, beaver, or muskrat. Even more rarely, it can be inhaled (associated with gardening and lawn care) and cause pneumonia. The incubation period after exposure to the bacteria is usually 3 to 6 days but ranges from 1 to 21 days. In the U.S., it occurs most commonly in the south-central states, but has been noted on Martha's Vineyard in Massachusetts, attributed in importation of rabbits for hunting many decades ago.

There are multiple clinical presentations of the disease, with combinations of the following signs and symptoms: painful swollen glands (e.g., on the neck: glandular form); painful and tender ulcers on the hand (from handling an infected animal) with associated swollen lymph glands behind the elbow and in the armpit (ulceroglandular form)–this form can appear anywhere with an ulcer at the site of inoculation and then fever and swollen anatomically-related lymph glands; swollen lymph glands in the groin, associated with insect bites of the legs; sore throat; conjunctivitis in one eye with a swollen lymph gland in front of the ear on the same side (oculoglandular form); fever (thus, "rabbit fever"); headache; chills; weakness; pneumonia; and weight loss. In some cases, the victim suffers from nausea and vomiting, diarrhea, and abdominal pain.

A physician will use blood tests to confirm the diagnosis. Treatment is best rendered with intramuscular injections of streptomycin. If the victim cannot be brought to medical attention promptly, therapy can be initiated with oral doxycycline 100 mg twice a day, tetracycline 500 mg four times a day, or ciprofloxacin 750 mg twice a day for 2 to 3 weeks (see fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498).

Other diseases can be transmitted to hunters. One example is tuberculosis in deer hunters. Hunters should wear "personal protective equipment" (e.g., eye shields, impermeable gloves, etc.) when field dressing game.

Typhoid and paratyphoid fevers

Typhoid and paratyphoid fevers are caused by the bacteria *Salmonella typhi* and *Salmonella paratyphi,* respectively, which are transmitted among humans through ingestion of contaminated food or water. Most cases are acquired abroad under conditions of poor hygiene.

After an incubation period of 10 to 14 days, victims suffer fever with or without diarrhea and abdominal pain. Most victims also complain of headache, fatigue, and loss of appetite. “Rose spots,” which are 2 to 4 mm red spots on the trunk that blanch (lose their color) when pressed, are seen in some cases. The liver might become inflamed.

Most cases resolve in 3 to 4 weeks (paratyphoid infection typically resolves in a shorter time period). The seriously stricken individual might suffer a severely inflamed bowel, distended abdomen, bleeding from the gastrointestinal tract, pneumonia, heart failure, severe fever, and death.

A physician who diagnoses typhoid or paratyphoid fever (the latter is also known as enteric fever) will treat the victim with an intravenous antibiotic. The layperson can use ciprofloxacin or azithromycin 10 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight by mouth twice a day for 7 days. The pediatric dose (up to the adult dose) is calculated by the same formula. An alternative is trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole; administer one double-strength tablet twice a day. You can also use ampicillin 100 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight in four divided doses. It is important to keep the victim from becoming dehydrated (see page 229).

Injectable and oral vaccines (see page 418) to prevent typhoid fever are available to people traveling to areas of high risk.

Meningococcal disease (including meningitis)

One of the most feared infectious diseases is meningitis caused by the bacterium *Neisseria meningitidis (meningococcus).* The infection can appear in outbreaks, most commonly abroad, particularly in sub-Saharan Africa and China. The infection is spread in the respiratory secretions of humans.

The disease appears in many forms, the most common of which are meningitis, pneumonia, and disseminated bacterial infection. The typical presentation of meningitis is fever, headache, and a stiff neck (see page 196). If the cause is meningococcus, the victim might develop a skin rash, which consists of red dots or bumps, or a flat, more patchy dark red discoloration. If the dark red dots begin to enlarge and coalesce into large purplish bruise-like discolorations, this is a bad sign. In the worst cases, the victim develops shock, respiratory failure, diffuse bleeding, and death.

This is a true emergency and time to intravenous antibiotics is paramount; even a delay of one hour will result in a significantly higher bacterial burden. The victim needs large doses of intravenous antibiotics, such as ceftriaxone or penicillin. If these are not available, administer a high oral dose of broad antibiotics (such as penicillin, cephalexin, cefixime) while arranging evacuation to higher level of care.

If someone comes in close contact with a person known to have meningococcal disease, oral antibiotics can be prescribed within 14 days of exposure for 2 days to prevent or minimize the spread of the disease. The recommended antibiotics are oral rifampin for children (dose for age less than 1 month is 5 mg/kg of body weight every 12 hours; age 1 month or older is 20 mg/kg of body weight every 12 hours) and adults (600 mg every 12 hours) or ciprofloxacin (500 mg once a day) for adults. An alternative is for a health care provider to administer a one-time intramuscular injection of ceftriaxone for children (dose 125 mg if age 15 years or younger; 250 mg otherwise) and adults (250 mg). Azithromycin in a single 500 mg dose for adults is also likely effective.

An effective meningococcal vaccine is available and strongly recommended; see immunizations (page 452) for resources regarding vaccination schedules and travel requirements.

Tetanus

Tetanus is caused by the bacterium *Clostridium tetani* and manifests as severe and painful muscle contractions/spasms (especially lockjaw) and generalized sweating, fever, and high heart rate. It is rare in vaccinated and resource-rich countries; diagnosis can usually be made with the clinical findings in the setting of inadequate vaccination. Treatment in the intensive care unit is usually required.

Prevention of tetanus is important with adequate immunizations; please refer to the resources outlined in the Immunization section (page 452).

For tetanus prophylaxis in wound management, if the vaccination status of the patient is unknown, the patient has had less than three doses of tetanus toxoid vaccine in the past, or the last vaccination is greater than 5 years ago, the current recommendation is to give a booster shot of a tetanus toxoid containing vaccine. In addition, if one sustains a “dirty” wound (contaminated with soil/dirt/feces, deep puncture, serious burn or frostbite, significant crush injury), they should also receive human tetanus immune globulin. The immune globulin acts to neutralize unbound toxin. Tetanus prophylaxis treatment should be given as soon as possible after sustaining the wound; the incubation period can be anywhere from 3 days to 3 weeks.

Ebola, Lassa, and other viruses that cause “hemorrhagic fevers”

The viral hemorrhagic (bleeding) fevers (Ebola, Lassa, Marburg, and Crimean-Congo) can all be spread among humans by transfer of secretions (blood and bodily fluids: vomit, urine, feces, sweat, feces, saliva, semen, other fluids). Therefore, it is important to isolate suspected victims as best as possible from other humans during their care. Personal protective equipment (PPE; breathing masks, along with liquid-impermeable gloves, face shields/goggles, and protective clothing or gowns with leg/foot components) that covers all skin should be worn by caregivers. Transfer to a medical facility for therapy might be critical to survival. Field care is supportive and similar to that for yellow fever (see page 170).

Ebola virus disease (EVD) is endemic to west and equatorial Africa. It is transmitted to humans and apes by three different viruses: *Bundibugyo ebolavirus* (causes Bundibugyo virus disease), *Sudan ebolavirus* (causes Sudan virus disease), and *Zaire ebolavirus* (causes Ebola virus disease). Because of international travel, EVD has appeared on other continents. It is most commonly contracted by handling infected animals, such as certain bats and chimpanzees found in Africa. "Bush meat" should be avoided as a dietary item. It is highly infectious and spreads in people by human-to-human transmission, from contact with blood and body fluids (including from corpses). The incubation period is 2 to 21 days after exposure, prior to the onset of symptoms. The infected victim typically has onset of high fever, severe headache, sore throat, abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, profound (cholera-like) diarrhea, joint and/or muscle pain, and fatigue/weakness. If the disease worsens, there is profound vomiting and diarrhea, leading to dehydration and collapse. In some cases, there can be diffuse bleeding and essential organ failure. To date, therapy is supportive, and vaccines are recent. The FDA approved Ervebo, a vaccine for prevention of EVD caused by Zaire ebolavirus in persons 18 years of age and older, in 2019. Anyone suspected of being infected with Ebola virus should be strictly isolated, and all available precautions, such as proper PPE, should be used to avoid contact with their blood or body secretions. A blood test might not show positive until after 72 hours of illness. The current thinking is that Ebola virus only spreads when people are sick (e.g., have symptoms), and that after 21 days, if an exposed person does not develop symptoms, they will not become ill with EVD. If a person with EVD is dehydrated but can ingest oral liquids, they can be treated with oral rehydration, anti-vomiting medication (such as odansetron), and anti-diarrheal medication to try to keep them from worsening and sliding into shock.

Lassa fever is a viral disease transmitted to humans principally through the body secretions of the *Mastomys natalensis* rat. It occurs primarily in sub-Saharan West Africa. The infected victim suffers a gradual onset of headache, fever, and fatigue. There is often a severe sore throat, and there might be diarrhea and/or reddened eyes. Victims often complain of chest pain behind the breastbone, which might be caused by inflammation of the throat and esophagus. Roughly a quarter of victims develop bleeding complications. If the case is nonfatal, resolution begins in 8 to 10 days. In a fatal case, the victim progresses to develop altered mental status, shock, and severe breathing disorders.

Emerging infectious diseases

There will always be emerging infectious diseases which can cause acute respiratory illness and fatal encephalitis. It is incumbent upon the traveler to know the risks present in anticipated geographies of travel and to take appropriate precautions to avoid becoming ill, such as being aware of disease-carrying animals (e.g., fruit bats and pigs).

COVID-19

At the end of 2019, a novel coronavirus (SARS-CoV-2) caused a global pandemic of illness (COVID-19). It is thought to be spread person-to-person by airborne droplets, which are exhaled, coughed, or sneezed into the surroundings. They travel up to 10 to 15 feet (perhaps further in the wind) and then are deposited onto surfaces or inhaled before they settle. The incubation period before someone begins to shed infectious virus and/or show symptoms of infection is 3 to 5 days but can be up to 2 weeks. A person can be completely asymptomatic and yet be contagious. The most common symptoms are fever, "dry" (not productive of sputum) cough, and shortness of breath. Additional symptoms include muscle aches, fatigue, general weakness, hallmark diminished senses of smell and taste, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. Because the virus has a predilection for lung tissue, it can cause pneumonia that can quickly progress to life threatening respiratory failure. COVID-19 can be fatal despite aggressive medical treatment, which includes steroids and mechanical breathing support. COVID-19 is particularly dangerous for older adults and those with chronic medical conditions. Children too are affected by COVID-19 and are also at risk of developing Multisystem Inflammatory Syndrome in Children (MIS-C), characterized by persistent fever and non-specific symptoms including abdominal pain, vomiting, fatigue, and rash. Severely affected children may have overwhelming inflammation and multi-organ failure, warranting intensive care therapies.

If COVID-19 is in your vicinity and as advised by public health authorities, pay strict attention to proper handwashing and "social distancing" to avoid spreading the virus to others. For handwashing, if soap and water are not available, use a hand sanitizer that contains at least 60% alcohol. Wear a proper face mask (or respirator) to cover the mouth and nose. An N95 rating is used by medical professionals and others because it filters at least 95% of particulate matter from inhaled and exhaled air. If a cloth face covering is worn to help slow the spread of virus or as a reminder to not touch one's face (nose, mouth, eyes), be sure that the face covering fits snugly yet comfortably, is secured in place with ties or ear loops, has multiple layers of fabric, can be easily breathed through, and can be washed and dried without damage or deformity. A face covering can be improvised easily from a bandana. If exposed, quarantining for 10 days may help mitigate spread of the virus to others. Risk of severe illness, is greatly reduced by vaccination. The CDC has authorized three vaccines in the United States for adults; Pfizer-BioNTech (2 doses, 21 days apart), Moderna (2 doses, 28 days apart), and with restrictions Johnson & Johnson's Janssen (1 dose). At time of this writing, these vaccines have been shown to be safe and extremely effective at preventing severe illness and death. Research and development of other vaccines against COVID-19 and new medications to treat the disease is ongoing.

To treat fever and muscle aches associated with COVID-19, use acetaminophen or ibuprofen. If respiratory distress, hypoxemia (low oxygen levels measured by pulse oximeter. See page 41.) or other signs of overwhelming inflammation develop, further medical evaluation and treatment is necessary.

Rabies

Rabies is discussed on page 416.

PART THREE

Minor Medical Problems

OUTLINE

- Introduction
- General symptoms
- Head (including eye, ear, nose, throat, and mouth)
- Upper respiratory disorders
- Disorders of the gastrointestinal tract
- Skin disorders
- Minor bruises and wounds

Musculoskeletal injuries
Mental health (psychiatric) emergencies

Introduction

Although the afflictions discussed in this section are rarely life threatening, they account for the majority of health care problems encountered in a recreational or wilderness setting. For the sake of simplicity, this section is organized by body organ system. Specific disorders can be rapidly located by using the index.

Whenever a person becomes ill, it is wise to consider how the disorder can become worse. For instance, a simple wound can progress to a severe infection without proper care and in suboptimal environmental conditions. Therefore, even with seemingly minor afflictions, one should not continue to travel farther from civilization until there is clear improvement.

We have not included all of the problems that originate from substance abuse or indiscriminate sexual encounters. However, it is critical to observe that drinking alcohol or using mind-altering drugs may impair judgment and is a major contributor to injuries. It is inexcusable to dull your senses if such activity places you and others at risk.

General symptoms

Fainting

Fainting is defined as sudden brief (usually less than 1 minute) loss of consciousness not associated with a head injury. The medical term for fainting is “syncope.” The term for feeling like you are going to faint, but remaining conscious, is “presyncope.” There are innumerable causes of fainting, but most episodes are associated with decreased blood flow (oxygen and/or glucose) to the brain. This might be caused by low blood sugar (hypoglycemia—see page 162), slow heart rate (vasovagal or “vagal” reaction, in which the vagus nerve is overstimulated resulting in a slower heart rate: fright, anxiety, stomach irritation, bowel dilation, drugs, fatigue, prolonged standing in one position), nervous system dysfunction, rhythm disturbances of the heart (particularly in the elderly), transient ischemic attack (TIA) (see page 165), stroke, dehydration, heat exhaustion, hyperventilation, toxic exposure (e.g., carbon monoxide), anemia, coughing spell, seizure (see page 80), head trauma, subarachnoid hemorrhage (see page 196), breath holding (children), or bleeding. Medications can make a person weak or dizzy and can cause fainting. Some people become weak and faint after they eat. Fainting associated with exercise, particularly in young persons, should be thoroughly evaluated by a physician. Elderly men sometimes faint during or after urination (“micturition syncope”).

If you witness a fainting episode or are with someone who is becoming lightheaded (sweating, weak, ashen colored, dizzy), quickly help the person lie down and elevate their legs 8 to 12 inches (20 to 30 cm). This position increases venous blood flow back to the heart, which in turn pumps more blood to the brain. If the victim begins to vomit, turn them on their side. If they have fallen, examine them for injuries. A cool, moistened cloth wiped on their forehead, on their face, and behind their neck might make the victim feel better. Do not splash or pour water on their face. Do not slap the victim’s face.

After a victim suffers a fainting episode, they should be examined for any sign of serious illness or injury. If you do not suspect anything serious, have them lie still for a few minutes, and then sit for a few minutes. If the victim is alert and capable of purposeful swallowing, offer them cool sweetened liquids to drink—preferably one that contains electrolytes (see page 230)—to correct dehydration. When the victim feels normal, they may slowly regain an upright posture.

If a person feels like they are going to faint, but does not faint, they might experience symptoms of lightheadedness, dizziness, nausea, seeing flashing lights, sweating, and or weakness for a few minutes, but remain awake. This person should be observed as closely as someone who actually faints, because serious medical problems identical to those that cause fainting might become apparent.

Older patients are at a higher risk for having a fainting spell related to a heart attack (see page 57) or stroke (see page 165). They might have a history of heart disease or abnormal heart rhythm (irregular pulse, history of atrial fibrillation) or diuretic medication use. If any of these is present, if the fainting occurred while the patient was lying down, or if there is a family history of sudden death, a prompt formal medical assessment should be obtained.

A vagal reaction, as described earlier, is often preceded by warning signs of lightheadedness, a sensation of warmth, nausea, sweating, and “tunnel vision.” It most commonly occurs in persons who are standing. If a person suddenly loses consciousness, wakes up, and does not recall any of the warning signs of a vagal reaction, particularly if it occurred during exercise or when the person was sitting or supine, then suspicion is heightened for an abnormal heart rhythm that requires formal medical evaluation.

Fatigue

Fatigue (lethargy, tiredness, exhaustion, generalized weakness, decreasing exercise tolerance) can be a sign of any disorder or dysfunction that diminishes a person’s energy level. Accompanied by fever, it can be indicative of an infection (be sure to take the person’s temperature); accompanied by certain associated symptoms, it might indicate a hypoactive or hyperactive thyroid. In the outdoors, anyone who began the trip in good condition but is now fatigued should be examined carefully for signs and symptoms of hypothermia (see page 321), hyperthermia (see page 337), high-altitude illness (see page 347), infection, emotional depression (see page 316), anemia (pale membranes inside the eyelid, pale fingernail beds, sallow skin complexion), dehydration (see pages 229 and 341), or starvation. A diabetic who becomes fatigued might be suffering from high or low blood sugar (see page 162). If fatigue is accompanied by shortness of breath, do not travel any farther from civilization until you determine a treatable cause or the victim clearly improves. Sudden onset of fatigue can be indicative of a heart attack (see page 57).

If a person is suffering physical exhaustion, allow them at least 12 hours of rest, encourage adequate food intake, and take particular care to correct dehydration.

In a situation of extreme exercise within a particular muscle group—such as the legs during forced military-style marching or long-distance ultramarathon running—muscle tissue can be broken down. This is more common under conditions of environmental heat (see page 337). Substances (particularly myoglobin, a pigment that carries oxygen) are released into the bloodstream, which in large concentrations can cause the kidneys to fail. The victim has very darkened (brown) urine (myoglobinuria), sore muscles, and extreme fatigue (condition known as rhabdomyolysis or rhabdo). In this situation, remove the victim from environmental heat, place them at as near complete rest as possible, and encourage them to drink as much liquid as they can to correct dehydration and flush the pigment from their system (see pages 230 and 341).

Fever and chills

Fever is an elevation in body temperature sometimes caused by infection. The causative organism (most commonly a bacterium or virus) releases substances into the bloodstream; these quickly reach the part of the brain that acts as the body's thermostat. Thus, body temperature is "reset" at a higher level. This probably helps fight infection, but the temperature might need to be lowered if the elevation is extreme or prolonged.

Classic teaching is that normal body temperature is 98.6°F (37°C) measured orally, and 99.6°F (37.5°C) measured rectally. That has been challenged, stating that normal body temperature perhaps averages 97.9°F (36.6°C) measured orally. Furthermore, "normal" should be determined person by person because individuals vary. To convert degrees Fahrenheit (F) into degrees Centigrade (C, or Celsius), refer to temperature conversion chart found on page 501.

Temperature should be measured with a thermometer. Electric (digital) thermometers are easiest to use and require the least time to record a temperature. If you use a mercury or alcohol thermometer, first shake it to pool the mercury or alcohol below the 94°F (35°C) marking.

The most accurate measure of a body temperature is by measuring the core body temperature (esophageal–usually only in the hospital setting, or rectal). *Do not rely on skin temperature as a correlate for core body temperature.* To take a temperature rectally (necessary in a case of suspected hypothermia, so long as it can be done in a location where the patient will not be exposed to the elements and become colder), the thermometer is *gently* placed—ideally lubricated with oil or petroleum jelly—1 inch (2.5 cm) into the rectum. It is held for at least 2 minutes and then extracted and read. Never leave a child or confused adult unattended with a thermometer in the mouth or rectum. To take a temperature by mouth, place the thermometer under the tongue, close the mouth, and take a reading after 3 to 4 minutes. Armpit (axillary) temperatures are far less reliable because they might underestimate the temperature elevation. However, a high temperature recorded from the armpit can be interpreted to mean that there is some elevation in body temperature. An armpit temperature might be the only one you get in an uncooperative child less than 2 years of age. Since such a temperature tends to read on the low side, add 1.4°F (0.8°C) to approximate the equivalent rectal temperature.

Generally, infection will not elevate the core (rectal) body temperature higher than 105°F (40.5°C). Anyone with a temperature measured above that level should be examined for heat illness (see page 335), stroke (see page 165), or drug overdose. Vigorous prolonged muscular activity (seizure or marathon running) can raise the core temperature above 107°F (41.7°C).

A child is considered to have a fever if their body temperature is greater than 100.4°F (38°C). You should be concerned about a fever greater than 100.4°F (38°C) in an infant less than 3 months of age or greater than 104°F (40°C) in any small child, because this can indicate a severe infection. Prolonged fever in a child should be investigated by a physician. Signs of a serious infection in an infant include lethargy ("floppy baby"), pain (persistent crying), labored breathing, purple skin rash, excessive drooling, a bulging "soft spot" (fontanel) on the top of the head, or a stiff neck.

If a person has a temperature higher than 100.5°F (38°C) that is thought to be due to an infection, they will be made more comfortable by lowering the fever with administration of aspirin, a nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drug (NSAID), or acetaminophen (Tylenol). *To avoid Reye syndrome (postviral encephalopathy and liver failure), do not use aspirin to control a fever in a child under age 17.* The traditional teaching is that infants and small children with fevers (usually due to ear infections or viral illnesses) should be treated as soon as any elevation of temperature is noted, in order to prevent febrile seizures. An infant (younger than 6 months) with a fever should be seen as soon as possible by a physician. Sponging a child with cold water does not help much to reduce fever and can even be counterproductive if the child struggles or begins to shiver, both of which generate heat. Never sponge a child with alcohol, because it can be absorbed through the skin and act as a poison.

If the victim suffers from environmental heat-induced illness (see page 337), they will not benefit from and should not be given aspirin or acetaminophen. An NSAID is not as dangerous but is also *not* helpful.

Whether to use an antibiotic for a "fever of unknown origin" (a fever that cannot be definitively linked to a specific site of infection) is a judgment call. If a person has an altered immune system (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome [AIDS], cancer, diabetes, chronic corticosteroid administration) and a high or persistent fever not associated with symptoms suggestive of a particular infection, it is probably wise to administer a "broad-spectrum" antibiotic, such as azithromycin. If there are symptoms that lead you to a specific site of infection (such as cough—pneumonia; burning on urination and flank pain—kidney infection), the appropriate antibiotic should be started. Finally, any feverish small child can become rapidly debilitated; they will rarely suffer from being given a common antibiotic, such as amoxicillin or trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole.

Chills might be caused by the release of bacteria or viruses (or their toxins) into the bloodstream. The victim will suddenly feel very cold and begin to shiver, with teeth chattering, goose bumps (piloerection), and weakness. The "chill" might actually occur during a temperature spike within a fever.

Cough

Cough is a common symptom. Often associated with an upper respiratory infection, cough can also be due to throat irritation, postnasal drip, nasal irritation or inflammation, overuse of nasal spray decongestants, sinusitis, bronchitis (see page 227), serious infectious disease (e.g., pneumonia—see page 55), whooping cough (pertussis—see below), asthma (see page 52), heart failure (fluid in the lungs—see page 53), reflux esophagitis ("heartburn"—see page 245), allergy, blood clot in the lungs (see page 54), high-altitude pulmonary edema (see page 351), or drug side effect.

Treatment of cough depends on the cause. For instance, the cough associated with asthma requires that the asthma be properly treated. For the cough associated with a minor upper respiratory infection, usually viral, cough medicine might be helpful. Some suggested remedies are listed on page 495. One favored by experts is dexbrompheniramine 6 mg plus pseudoephedrine 120 mg twice daily for 1 week. An alternative is ipratropium 0.06% nasal spray, two sprays per nostril 3 to 4 times daily for 2 weeks. *A U.S. FOOD AND DRUG ADMINISTRATION ADVISORY PANEL IN 2007 RECOMMENDED THAT THERE IS NO EVIDENCE THAT OVER-THE-COUNTER COLD AND COUGH MEDICINES WORK IN CHILDREN AND THAT THE PRODUCTS SHOULD NOT BE GIVEN TO CHILDREN YOUNGER THAN 6 YEARS OF AGE.* Children ages 2 to 18 years might benefit from 2 teaspoons of buckwheat honey (buckwheat, eucalyptus, citrus, and labiatae honey have been tested; other varieties might work) for treatment of nocturnal (nighttime) coughing. *It is not advised to feed honey to infants or children under age 12 months because of the risk for infant botulism.*

Whooping cough (pertussis) is a highly contagious infectious disease of the upper respiratory system caused by the bacterium *Bordetella pertussis* or *B. parapertussis*. Other species of *Bordetella* might cause disease in humans. It is transmitted by respiratory secretions or large droplets from the respiratory tract of an infected person. In children, whooping cough is typified by coughing episodes that are sudden, intense, and sometimes accompanied by vomiting and inspiratory "whoops," indicating throat spasms on inhalation. Most deaths from whooping cough occur in children younger than 12 months of age. It is not uncommon for the victim to cough in severe spells and to have gagging or vomiting after a coughing spell. The incubation period after exposure is usually 7 to 10 days. In adults, whooping cough most commonly presents like a common cold (runny nose and nasal congestion, sore throat, red eyes, mild cough, slight fever) for a week or two (this is the most infectious period). The cough then becomes progressively severe. The cough in both children and adults is described as paroxysms / fits of repeated coughing during a single exhalation, followed by a "whooping" inspiration. After coughing, the victim might be exhausted or vomit. It might involve difficulty breathing and in children, episodes of apnea (episodes of no respiratory effort). Persons with whooping cough usually appear well between coughing fits, which might be so severe as to cause nosebleeds, severe chest wall muscle strain, or even broken ribs. Untreated, the cough might last for 6 to 10 weeks in children and for more than 100 days in adults, as the illness gradually subsides. Given the highly contagious nature and possible delay in testing, treatment should be started if there is sufficient clinical suspicion (even without laboratory confirmation). The victim should be treated with azithromycin (500 mg day 1, then 250 mg days 2 through 5 for adults); clarithromycin (500 mg twice a day for 7 days for adults). If unable to take a macrolide antibiotic (i.e., azithromycin, erythomcyin, clarithromycin), a substitute is trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole (160 mg/800 mg twice daily for 14 days for adults). Azithromycin is preferred in pregnancy.

For children less than 1 month of age, azithromycin in the recommended agent (10 mg/kg per day for 5 days). For children 1 to 5 months of age, effective agents including azithromycin (10 mg/kg per day for 5 days) or clarithromycin (15 mg/kg per day in two divided doses for 7 days) are better tolerated than erythromycin (40 mg/kg per day in four divided doses for 14 days). If unable to take a macrolide antibiotic and over the age of 2 months, an alternative agent is trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole (8 mg/40 mg/kg per day in two divided doses for 14 days).

Antibiotic administration shortens the course of the disease if started within 3 weeks of the onset of cough symptoms. After that time, antibiotics do not shorten the course of the disease, but might help prevent disease spread. The protective effect of diphtheria-tetanus-pertussis (DTaP) vaccine wanes 5 to 10 years after the last dose, so adults remain vulnerable to the disease if they do not receive booster immunizations of Tdap vaccine. This is recommended for persons ages 10 to 64 years.

Croup is a disease of children, rarely seen in adults, in which there is hoarseness, raspy breathing on inhalation, and a seal-like, barking cough associated with narrowing of the soft tissues of the larynx. If croup is suspected, the victim should be given a single oral dose of a steroid (dexamethasone; 0.6 mg/kg body weight for a child, up to 16 mg total dose). One should minimize discomfort and anxiety, administer humidified air if possible. If there is stridor at rest or signs of increased work of breathing (i.e., moderate to severe croup), the patient needs to be taken to a medical facility where a health care practitioner can administer inhaled racemic epinephrine and observe closely in case further escalation of support is needed.

Coughing blood

The blood coughed up by a victim might have originated anywhere from the mouth to the lungs. Causes of coughing blood include the following:

Sore throat

The victim will complain of an irritated throat and difficulty swallowing and will cough up whitish phlegm streaked with blood. If the victim is not short of breath or in distress, rapid medical attention is not necessary (see page 216). If a person has a nosebleed, they might cough and spit a lot of blood (see page 213).

Pneumonia

The victim will complain of fever, chills, chest pain, and shortness of breath. They might cough up green or rust-colored thick sputum (see page 55).

Pulmonary embolism

The victim will complain of difficult and painful breathing, shortness of breath, agitation, and weakness. Generally, only severely ill persons will cough up small clots of blood (see page 53).

Lung cancer

The victim will suddenly cough up small pieces of spongy lung tissue or tumor, along with blood clots. Attend to the airway (see page 18) and seek medical attention.

Lung injury

If a victim is struck in the chest, and particularly if their ribs are broken, the underlying lung can be bruised or torn. The victim will cough up small clots of blood or, if the injury is major, mouthfuls of blood. This is extremely serious and requires constant attention to the airway (see pages 18 and 48).

Hiccups (hiccoughs)

Hiccups are sudden inhalations (caused by involuntary rhythmic contractions of the diaphragm and breathing muscles) immediately followed by rapid closure of the opening between the vocal cords. There is no known physiologic purpose for hiccups. Usually, they last a moment or two and are a mere annoyance. However, they sometimes persist and become fatiguing or painful. Often effective remedies involve maneuvers to interrupt breathing patterns or stimulate the back of the throat. These may include: biting into a lemon or lime, taking repetitive small sips of liquid for at least 30 seconds, causing a fright, gargling with or immersing the face into ice water, breath-holding or hyperventilating for 30 seconds, eating a teaspoon of granulated sugar (with or without peanut butter), or stimulating a gag (gently stimulate the back of the throat with a spoon, just to the point of causing the victim to gag).

Hiccups lasting longer than 48 hours should warrant a thorough medical evaluation and possible initiation of pharmacologic treatment with omeprazole or metoclopramide.

Dizziness

Dizziness is a feeling of lightheadedness, with or without a sensation of spinning (vertigo). The cause is often very difficult to diagnose. Dizziness might precede a fainting episode (see page 187) or might accompany a stroke (see page 165), heart attack (see page 57), low blood sugar (see page 162), heat illness (see page 337), ear infection (see page 197), the bends (see page 409), plant poisoning (see page 422), motion sickness (see page 437), migraine (see page 194), and many other disorders. Frequently, dizziness is caused by an infection or other disorder of the middle ear, which controls balance. Indeed, if the external ear canals are both blocked by wax, this alone can cause dizziness.

If a victim is dizzy, they should lie on their back and attempt to regain orientation to their surroundings. Examine them for obvious causes and treat accordingly. If the dizziness does not resolve, and particularly if the victim is elderly (in which case it might indicate a stroke, which is the most important cause of dizziness to “not miss”), they should be taken to a physician. While not absolutely precise, sudden onset of severe dizziness is more worrisome than gradual onset in which the dizziness is minor or episodic and builds in a crescendo fashion over a period of many hours or days. Dizziness triggered by motion is generally less worrisome. True vertigo is very distressing to the victim and described by them as “the room spinning around,” with nausea and/or vomiting, weakness, ringing in the ears in the absence of an auditory stimulus (tinnitus), and occasional slow jerking or fluttering movements of the eyeballs (nystagmus).

Inflammation of the inner ear (often associated with a recent cold) is known as vestibular neuritis (“labyrinthitis”). It is treated with the same medications used for motion sickness (see page 438). In addition, a 3-week taper of a corticosteroid in a starting dose similar to that for a severe poison oak rash (see page 258) might hasten recovery. Antiviral agents have not been proved effective for this condition. The benzodiazepine class of drugs (including lorazepam or clonazepam 0.5 mg by mouth twice a day, or diazepam 2 to 5 mg by mouth every 6 hours as needed) might be useful to suppress vertigo but carry the side effect of sedation. If dizziness is accompanied by nausea and vomiting, it might be helpful to give the patient ondansetron (4 mg dissolving tablet) or another anti-vomiting medication (see page 492). Vestibular neuritis is a diagnosis to be reached by a physician after more serious problems are excluded.

Benign paroxysmal (sudden) positional vertigo (BPPV) might be caused by free-floating calcium carbonate crystals in the inner ear. It is typified by episodes of a spinning sensation lasting for a minute or less, usually caused by a change in head position, accompanied sometimes by nausea and vomiting. It usually resolves spontaneously or can be remedied by head repositioning maneuvers that endeavor to reposition the particles within the inner ear that might be irritating the hair cells that affect balance. This is done by having the patient lie at a slight head-down incline with one ear down until the vertigo is gone or nearly gone. Then, have the patient turn their head to have the other ear down. From this point forward, assist the patient (with patient's chin tucked to chest) to a sitting position and see if the symptoms are gone. If the vertigo recurs, move the patient sequentially through the following two positions for a minute or two, allowing symptoms to subside: lying on one side with nose turned to the ground, and lying on the opposite side with nose turned to the ground. Then, check the sitting position to see if these maneuvers have been successful.

If someone suffers from tinnitus alone, have them evaluated upon return by a medical professional. This is particularly important if the ringing noise is in one ear only, seems to pulsate, is associated with obvious hearing loss, or is accompanied by any other neurological symptoms, such as weakness or asymmetry of part of the face.

Head (including eye, ear, nose, throat, and mouth)

Headache

In general, *particularly worrisome headaches* include a single headache that is the "first" or "worst" of a person's life; headache with a fever that is not explained by an obvious illness; headache with vomiting that is not explained by an obvious illness; headache associated with a neurologic sign, such as weakness or altered speech; headache associated with altered mental status; headache associated with neck pain when the chin is flexed to the chest; progressively worsening headache; sudden headache in an elder or someone with uncontrolled hypertension; headache in someone suffering from cancer or immunosuppression; headache after head injury; headache following an episode of loss of consciousness. In these cases, one should seek prompt medical attention.

When at high altitude (see page 347), always first assume that a headache is a high-altitude headache, a manifestation of acute mountain sickness, or part of evolving high-altitude cerebral edema. It is important to differentiate these problems from other causes of headache, because prompt descent from high altitude might effectively treat the headache, or more important, save a person's life.

Tension headache

Tension headaches are characterized by tightening or pressure-like (sometimes throbbing) pain in the temples, over the eyes, in jaw muscles, and in the posterior neck and shoulder muscles. They are usually bilateral. Sometimes there is aversion to bright light and/or loud sounds. They are not related to exercise. It can be treated with rest, sunglasses, and moderate pain medication, such as ibuprofen or acetaminophen every 3 to 4 hours. Adding caffeine (e.g., drinking coffee) might help, but one must be cautious to avoid caffeine withdrawal, which can also cause headaches. Sometimes, applying warm packs or massage to tense muscles relaxes them and helps relieve the pain.

Migraine headache

Migraines are generally more severe. It is defined as episodic attacks of headache lasting 4 to 72 hours and characterized by at least two of the following: moderate to severe intensity, one-sided pain, throbbing or "pulsating," and worsening with movement. In addition, there is nausea or vomiting, which can be treated with promethazine (Phenergan) or metoclopramide (Reglan). Ondansetron (Zofran) might not be as effective and might worsen the headache. There might be aversion to light (photophobia) or sound (phonophobia). Migraine headaches have many variations, which might include stuffy or runny nose and weakness of an arm or a leg, difficulty with balance, speech impairment, diminished hearing, or double vision. Some people experience an "aura" before the "classic" migraine headache, in which they might smell strange odors or see flashing lights, have speech difficult, yawn, suffer neck pain, and/or have mood changes. Others develop tunnel vision (diminished peripheral vision) or hypersensitivity to being touched. The headaches are characterized as excruciating, pounding, or explosive. They commonly awaken people from sleep. Occasionally they will respond to nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), but often require stronger pain medications. A person suffering from a migraine should be placed in a quiet, dark area to minimize external stimuli. They should be encouraged to drink enough liquid to treat or prevent dehydration and offered an NSAID, ketorolac, acetaminophen, or aspirin. Depending on the person, caffeine may or may not be helpful.

Specific antimigraine medications include the "triptans," such as sumatriptan (Imitrex), naratriptan (Amerge), rizatriptan (Maxalt), and zolmitriptan (Zomig). These medications should be given as early as possible to achieve maximal effectiveness. Other medicines that are effective include propranolol or metoprolol, amitriptyline, methysergide, flunarizine, prochlorperazine (Compazine) given with diphenhydramine (Benadryl), and metaclopramide. Ergotamine drugs (such as dihydroergotamine mesylate [Migranal] nasal spray) directly constrict arteries; these should only be used under the direct supervision of a physician, since they might worsen the effects of certain types of migraines. Erenumab-aooe (Aimovig), which is a calcitonin gene-related peptide receptor antagonist, is a new drug approved for monthly injections to prevent migraine. Similar drugs are rimegepant (also available as an orally disintegrating tablet [ODT]), galcanezumab, and fremanezumab, some also effective as well against cluster headache. If other drugs are not effective, dexamethasone in an adult dose of 8 mg by mouth might be effective. If an oxygen (see page 431) tank is available, the victim might get some relief by breathing 10 liters per minute by face mask. An elderly person with a severe migraine, which can be confused with a stroke (see page 165), should seek immediate medical attention. A migraine headache might be precipitated by lack of sleep, high altitude, emotional stress, fatigue, dehydration, bright lights, loud noises, types of weather, missing meals, excessive exercise, cyclical hormone changes, noxious odors, and certain ingested substances (such as caffeine [either by ingesting it or ingesting it irregularly] and monosodium glutamate). Therefore, the migraine sufferer should seek to obtain regular sleep (go to bed and wake up at the same times every day), rest, and meals (do not skip or delay); limit caffeine consumption to the equivalent of two cups of coffee or two 12-ounce sodas per day and try to maintain a "caffeine pattern"; avoid tobacco products; avoid known personal triggers (e.g., red wine); practice relaxation techniques; and strive to maintain fitness through regular exercise and dietary discretion. For certain sufferers, a neurologist might prescribe topiramate (Topamax) to be taken between episodes of migraine to reduce the frequency of headaches.

The Cerena Transcranial Magnetic Stimulator is a device for treatment of migraine headache that is preceded by an aura (see earlier). It works by releasing a pulse of magnetic energy to stimulate the occipital cortex in the brain, which might stop or lessen the pain of the headache. The Cefaly device is a small, portable, battery-powered unit that is worn like a headband across the forehead. It applies an electric current to the skin and underlying tissues to simulate branches of the trigeminal nerve.

Cluster headache

Cluster headaches (a form of trigeminal autonomic headache) are severe and on one side of the head, last from 30 to 90 minutes, and are associated with restlessness, agitation, eye redness and tearing, runny or congested nose, sometimes eyelid swelling, and sweating. These severe headaches might occur many times in a day, awaken the sufferer from sleep, and are not usually associated with nausea and vomiting. The same treatments for migraine, particularly inhalation of oxygen, are sometimes effective for cluster headaches. Prevention techniques are likewise similar.

Paroxysmal hemicrania

These are similar to cluster headache in that it is an adult headache that involves severe throbbing pain on one side of the face, in-around-and-behind the eye, and perhaps all the way to the back of the head and neck. It also has similar eye and nose symptoms. The headache comes in "attack" form, lasting 2 to 3 minutes up to 40 times per day. It is debilitating and can last for months. This type of headache shows relief after administration of the NSAID indomethacin (Indocin) 25 mg by mouth two or three times per day.

Sinus headache

Sinus headaches are associated with sinus infection (see page 215) and typified by fever, nasal congestion, production of a foul nasal discharge, and pain produced by tapping over the affected sinus(es). It should be treated with an oral decongestant (pseudoephedrine), nasal spray (Neo-Synephrine 0.25% or Afrin 0.05%), an antibiotic (azithromycin, amoxicillin–clavulanate, erythromycin, or ampicillin), and warm packs applied over the affected sinus(es).

Occipital neuralgia

This neuralgia is pain in the back of the head, upper neck, and sometimes up over the top of the head, and less commonly behind the eyes. It is attributed to damage to the occipital nerves. The pain becomes chronic, and the sufferer describes it as sharp, shocking, or stabbing. In addition to the medications used to treat migraine headaches, there might be relief from rest and local application of heat, and in the hands of a skilled medical practitioner, nerve blocks with anesthetic drugs or even surgery to cut or decompress the nerves.

Trigeminal neuralgia, also called tic douloureux, while not a headache, is a type of nerve-caused facial pain in the distribution of one or more divisions of the trigeminal nerve. It is most commonly caused (in the “classical” and “secondary” types) by compression of the trigeminal nerve within the skull. The episodes of severe, electric shock-like pain, are triggered by activities of daily living, like a gentle touch. The trigger location might be remote from the location of the pain. The pain is sometimes accompanied by contraction of the facial muscles (the “tic’), which might be subtle or overt. If trigeminal neuralgia is suspected, the person should be referred to a doctor for diagnosis and considerations of medical or surgical therapy.

Subarachnoid hemorrhage

This sudden headache is from bleeding that occurs, usually suddenly, from a leaking blood vessel (commonly an aneurysm) underneath the thin tissue layer that surrounds the brain and spinal cord. The headache is usually sudden in onset, described as “the worst headache of my life,” and might be associated with a fainting spell, altered mental status, seizure, and collapse. A common term for such a headache is “thunderclap.” If a person suffers a subarachnoid hemorrhage and remains awake, they might complain of a stiff or painful neck with or without back pain about 2 to 4 hours after the bleed. Anyone who complains of a severe headache after extreme physical straining (such as lifting a heavy weight or having a difficult bowel movement) or who collapses suddenly after reporting a headache should be suspected to have suffered a subarachnoid hemorrhage and be brought rapidly to a hospital. It is probably best to consider any thunderclap headache indicative of a potentially serious problem and to promptly seek medical attention.

Meningitis

This is a severe infection that involves the lining of the brain and spinal cord, is a true emergency. The headache of meningitis is severe and often accompanied by nausea, vomiting, photophobia, neck stiffness, fever, altered mental status, and weakness. The victim demonstrates extreme discomfort when the chin is flexed downward against the chest and might complain that the pain also occurs in the back (along the course of the spinal cord). It is important to note that an infant can suffer meningitis without a stiff neck and might present only with poor feeding, fever, vomiting, seizures, and extreme lethargy ("floppy baby"). A purplish skin rash indicates infection with the bacteria *Neisseria meningitidis,* a particularly fulminant and contagious form ("meningococcal") of infectious meningitis. If meningitis is suspected, the victim must be evacuated rapidly and started on broad-spectrum intravenous (IV) antibiotics.

Giant cell arteritis

This is a type of inflammation that occurs in elders (it is rare in persons younger than 50 years of age and is more common in women) that can affect the temporal artery, which travels in a path along the sides of the scalp over the ears (temples). The associated headache might be quite severe and accompanied by thickened and tender arteries that might be noticeably enlarged with or without overlying reddened skin. Pulses might or might not be appreciated in these arteries, and the victim might have pain radiating down the side of the face as low as into the jaw. Permanent partial or complete loss of vision might occur in one or both eyes, which makes this condition an emergency. The immediate treatment is administration of a high dose of a corticosteroid, such as prednisone 80 to 100 mg by mouth each day until a physician can evaluate the patient. Hopefully, symptoms will improve within a few days of beginning the corticosteroid medication.

Bell's palsy

Bell's palsy is a form of facial paralysis caused by a problem with the seventh (facial) cranial nerve that supplies the face. On some occasions, it might also involve other cranial nerves, including the fifth (trigeminal; causes decreased sensation in distribution of the nerve), ninth and tenth (glossopharnygeal and vagus; causes swallowing difficulty), and twelfth (hypoglossal; causes tongue weakness). The palsy is rapid in onset and can cause the muscles of one side of the face to be completely paralyzed less than 72 hours after the first weakness is noted. There is usually no pain except perhaps a slight discomfort behind the ear on the affected side. This pain might appear a day or two before the weakness. Bell's palsy can mimic a stroke. With Bell's palsy, the muscles of the forehead are affected along with the rest of the face. If they are not, the victim should be immediately evacuated for a full medical evaluation because this might indicate a brain issue.

The cause of Bell's palsy might be Lyme disease, for which the victim might need to be tested and treated (see page 175). If a person with Bell's palsy lives in a Lyme disease-endemic location during "tick season," it is prudent to begin treatment for Lyme disease pending the outcome of testing for confirmation. Other causes of facial palsy include ear infection (otitis media; see page 198), injury to the facial nerve, recent surgery, or infection with the varicella zoster virus that causes herpes zoster and chicken pox (see page 275).

The current recommendation for "idiopathic" (without known cause) Bell's palsy is to treat with a short-term course of oral steroids within 3 days of onset of symptoms (prednisone 1 mg/kg of body weight by mouth per day for 7 to 10 days). It is recommended to also treat persons with severe Bell's palsy with the antiviral drug valacyclovir (1000 mg by mouth three times a day for 7 days), preferred over acyclovir (400 mg by mouth five times a day for 10 days). Antiviral therapy alone without prednisone (or another oral steroid) is not advised. It is also important to protect the eye if the victim cannot close their eye or blink. The eye can be patched or gently taped closed to protect the cornea, and artificial tears (see page 208) can be used to keep the surface of the eye moist. It might take weeks to months for the weakness to resolve, so the patient should pay close attention to protecting their eye until eye closing and blinking are strong and effortless.

Ear and hearing

Sudden hearing loss

Sudden hearing loss can occur in one or both ears. It is often accompanied by ringing in the ears and/or vertigo (see page 192). If it is due to obstruction of the external ear canal by wax, this can be treated (see page 200). Otherwise, it can be caused by an infection, eardrum rupture, fluid in the middle ear, bone conduction problems in the inner ear, or malfunction of the nerves that participate in the hearing process. This will be determined by a specialist who should be seen promptly for evaluation and possible treatment. If a specialist cannot be seen within 2 weeks of onset of sudden hearing loss, administer the adult patient 60 mg prednisone (or its equivalent) per day for 3 consecutive days, then taper the dose over the ensuing 7 days. This therapy is intended to preserve hearing in the event that the cause is inflammatory.

Earache

An earache might be caused by infection, injury, or a foreign body in the ear. For a discussion of ear squeeze (barotitis) that occurs with scuba diving, see page 410.

Ear infection

Ear infection can be either internal (otitis media) or external (otitis externa) to the eardrum (tympanic membrane) (Fig. 147).

Otitis media. Infection might occur that reddens and inflames the eardrum and causes blood, serum, or pus to collect behind the drum (see Fig. 147, B). With otitis media (middle ear infection), there is no drainage from the external ear canal (unless the eardrum ruptures, which is unusual in an adult, although more common in a child) and the victim has a fever, often with a sore throat. In many cases, the victim has a history of prior infections. Most often, otitis media occurs in children; when it occurs in an adult, it might be associated with a sinus infection or functional obstruction of the eustachian tube (the pressure-release mechanism from the middle ear into the throat). A young child can rapidly become severely ill from otitis media; an infant might develop meningitis (see page 196) following an ear infection.

Although many cases of otitis media in children are caused by viruses, such as respiratory syncytial virus, and resolve without antibiotic treatment, if you are distant from physician care and suspect otitis media, treat the child victim with an antibiotic. Adults and children should be treated with amoxicillin (80 to 100 mg/kg of body weight per day in two divided doses), amoxicillin–clavulanate (same dose of the amoxicillin component as for amoxicillin), cefdinir (14 mg/kg once daily or in two divided doses), cefpodoxime (10 mg/kg once daily or in two divided doses), cefuroxime (15 mg/kg in two divided doses), or clarithromycin for 10 days, or with azithromycin for 5 days. An additional antibiotic choice for adults is moxifloxacin 400 mg once a day for 10 days. Other antibiotics that have been approved for treatment are cephalexin, cefprozil, loracarbef, and ceftibuten. Aspirin, ibuprofen, or acetaminophen should be used to control fever; to avoid Reye syndrome (postviral encephalopathy and liver failure), do not use aspirin to control fever in a child under age 17.

Otitis externa (swimmer's ear). Infection, commonly from the bacterium *Pseudomonas aeruginosa,* that develops in the external ear canal (often noted in swimmers and divers who do not keep the canal completely dry) rarely involves the eardrum (see Fig. 147, C). When the external canal is kept moist, it is easier for bacteria to invade the skin and cause infection. The earliest symptom might be itching and a sensation of fullness. Subsequent symptoms include a white to yellow-green liquid or cheesy discharge from the ear, pain inside the ear, and decreased hearing. Not infrequently, the victim complains of exquisite tenderness when the external portions of the ear are tugged or with jaw motion and has tender, swollen lymph glands in the neck on the affected side. In a severe case, the victim might have a fever and appear toxic, and there might be cellulitis (see page 261) of the external ear and adjacent skin.

If the victim has only a discharge without fever, swollen lymph glands, or cellulitis, they may be treated with ear drops, such as acetic acid 2% solution (acetic acid otic); ascetic acid 2% with hydrocortisone 1% (Acetasol HC); or 2% nonaqueous acetic acid (VōSoL or Domeboro Otic). Household vinegar (approximately 5% acetic acid) diluted 1:1 with fresh water or with rubbing (isopropyl) alcohol (approximately 40%) can be used as a substitute. These ear drops should be administered four to five times a day for 7 days and can be retained with a cotton or gauze wick gently placed into the external ear canal, or by using an expanding foam ear sponge (such as a Speedi-Wick, Shippert Medical Technologies). To avoid injuring the eardrum, do not attempt to clean out the ear with a cotton swab or similar object. The solution should be retained in the ear for a minimum of 5 minutes with each application. If there is any suggestion that the eardrum might be punctured (e.g., the presence of bleeding), do not use this solution. After beginning to use the ear drops, most persons begin to feel significantly better within 48 to 72 hours and have few or no symptoms within 7 days. If symptoms persist beyond a week, then continue therapy for up to 7 more days and see a doctor.

If the victim has a discharge with fever and/or swollen lymph glands, the ear drops should at a minimum contain hydrocortisone (VōSoL HC Otic); they should also be given oral amoxicillin/clavulanate, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin, erythromycin, or penicillin. Antibiotic-containing ear drops that can be useful are ciprofloxacin 0.2% with hydrocortisone 1% (Cipro HC otic suspension); ciprofloxacin 0.3% with dexamethasone 0.1% (Ciprodex); neomycin-polymyxin B-hydrocortisone (Cortisporin Otic); ofloxacin 0.3% otic solution (Floxin otic) 0.3%; and finafloxacin otic suspension (Xtoro). Ear drops are used three to four times a day for 7 days. If the discharge from the ear is gray or black, a fungal infection can also exist, in which case tolnaftate 1% solution can be added to the treatment regimen. Aspirin, ibuprofen, or acetaminophen should be used to control fever. *To avoid Reye syndrome (postviral encephalopathy and liver failure), do not use aspirin to control fever in a child under age 17.*

To prevent swimmer's ear, the external ear canal should be irrigated with VōSoL, Domeboro Otic solution (2% acetic acid, aluminum acetate, sodium acetate, and boric acid), diluted vinegar/alcohol (described earlier) or a 50:50 mixture, or an over-the-counter drying aid like Swim-EAR after each scuba dive or immersion episode in the water. Keep the solution in the canal for a full minute before allowing it to drain. Earplugs that absorb moisture and are discarded after no more than a few uses, such as ClearEars, may be helpful. Similarly, devices that dry the ear canal, such as the small, portable Mack's DryEar dryer, may help prevent and treat ear disorders. Avoid using petroleum jelly or other substances that can form a watertight seal because they might trap water and moist debris.

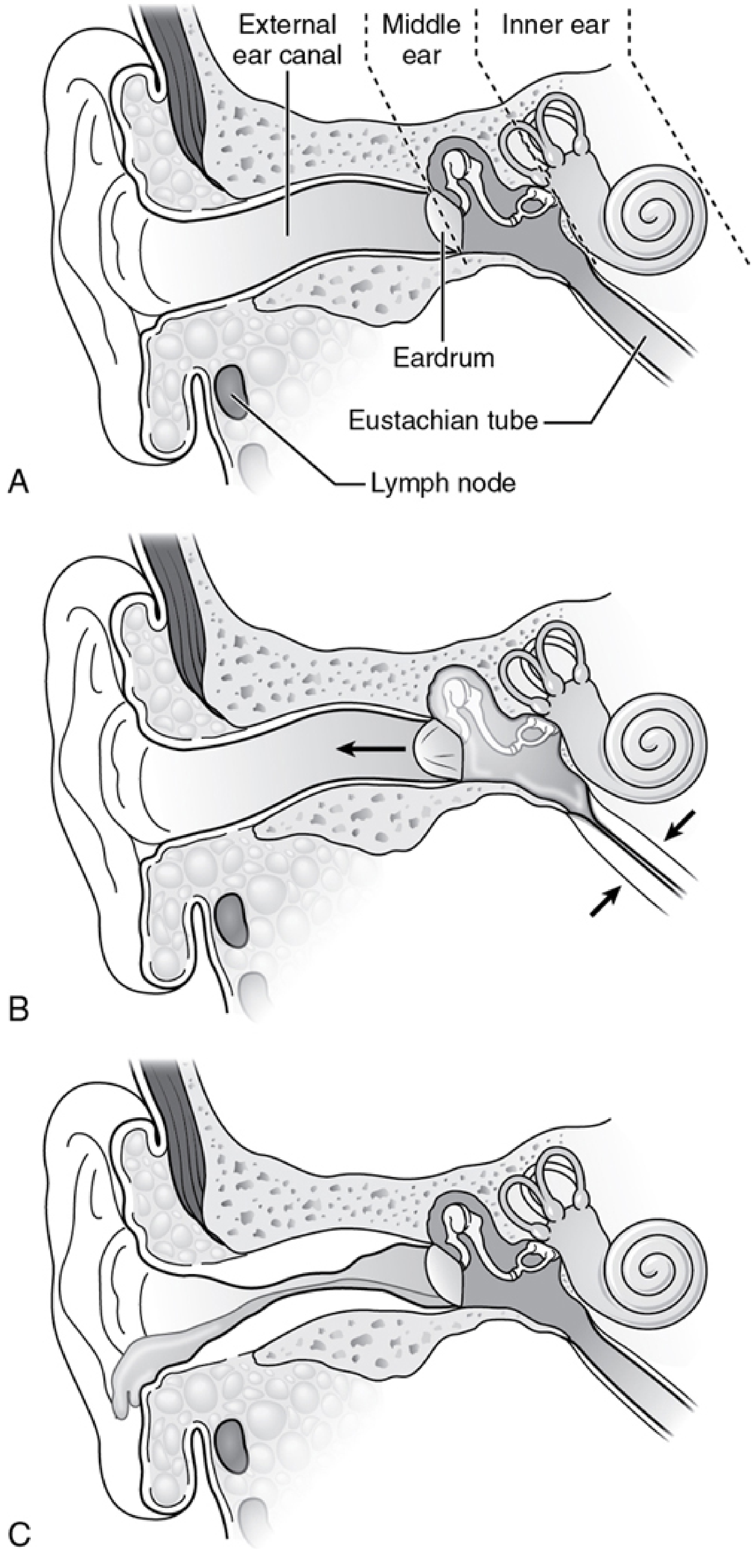

External ear canal
Middle ear
Inner ear
Eardrum
Eustachian tube
Lymph node
A
B
C

FIG. 147 Ear infections. **A,** Normal ear anatomy. **B,** Otitis media (inner ear infection). The eardrum bulges outward as the middle ear fills with fluid. The eustachian tube narrows or closes. **C,** Otitis externa (external ear canal infection). The canal becomes swollen and drains pus.

Referred pain

"Referred" pain is pain that appears in one body region but originates in another. This occurs because different body regions are supplied with nerves that share common central pathways. In the case of ear pain, the cause might be a sore throat, tooth infection, or arthritic jaw. The ear pain will not disappear until the underlying cause is corrected.

Injury to the eardrum

If something is poked into the ear, a hard blow is struck to the external ear, a diver descends rapidly without equalizing the pressure in their middle ear (see page 410), or a person is subjected to a loud explosive noise, the eardrum might be ruptured. This causes immediate intense pain and possibly loss of hearing, along with occasional nausea, vomiting, and dizziness. If the eardrum is ruptured, cover the external ear to prevent the ingress of dirt, and seek the aid of a physician. If debris has entered the ear, start the victim on penicillin or erythromycin by mouth. Do not put liquid medicine into the ear if you suspect that the eardrum is ruptured. If the dizziness is disabling, administer medicine for motion sickness (see page 437). Use appropriate pain medication.

Foreign body in the ear

A foreign body in the ear can be incredibly painful, particularly if it is dancing on the eardrum or resting against the sensitive lining of the ear canal. An inanimate foreign body (a piece of corn, peanut, foxtail, stone, or the like) can be left in the ear until an ear specialist with special forceps or irrigation equipment can remove it. If a live creature (cockroach, bee, tick) enters the external ear canal and causes pain that is intolerable, the ear should be filled with 2% to 4% liquid lidocaine (topical anesthetic), which will (slowly) numb the ear and perhaps drown the bug at the same time. If lidocaine is not available, mineral oil can be used, with the caution that it will frequently cause the insect to struggle, which might encourage a sting or bite and incredible temporary pain. Rubbing alcohol will work but might also cause pain. Once the animal is dead (a few minutes for most bugs, but less likely successful for ticks), a gentle attempt should be made with small tweezers to remove it. Do not attempt this unless you can see part of the bug, however. Do not push the bug in farther, or you might rupture the eardrum. If a dry bean or seed has become tightly trapped in the ear, do not use water to try to remove it, because the object will swell and become more impacted.

Wax in the ear

If hearing is diminished in an ear because of a wax (cerumen) plug, the wax must first be softened with a solution such as Cerumenex or Debrox. Another useful wax softener is docusate sodium (Colace) solution. Put a few drops in the ear (retained by a wick or cotton) four to five times a day for 1 to 3 days. This will turn hard ear wax into mush. If none of these is available, household hydrogen peroxide might work. Then use a forceful stream of lukewarm water to flush out the wax. You can fashion a flushing device by attaching a plastic 18-gauge IV catheter (without the needle) to an 8 to 30 mL syringe. Do not try to clean out the ear with a cotton-tipped swab or other rigid object, because you might force the wax down deeper, perforate the eardrum, or scrape and cut the exquisitely sensitive skin that lines the external ear canal, setting up an infection. After the wax is removed, gently instill a few drops of vinegar or isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol in order to remove residual water and prevent external otitis (swimmer's ear) (see page 199).

Eye

The anatomy of the eye is shown in Fig. 148. A proper eye examination is composed of an inspection for obvious injury to the eye or soft tissues surrounding the eye; assessment of the ability to see (visual acuity); muscular motion of the eyes; pupils for size, shape, equality, and whether they constrict when a bright light is shined into them; and the presence of blood or pus underneath the cornea. To check visual acuity, have the victim read something, one eye at a time, at a distance of about 16 inches. If the person uses glasses, have them wear them. If the victim cannot read, have them let you know the extent of their vision (e.g., can count fingers, detect hand motion, differentiate light from dark, or is blind).

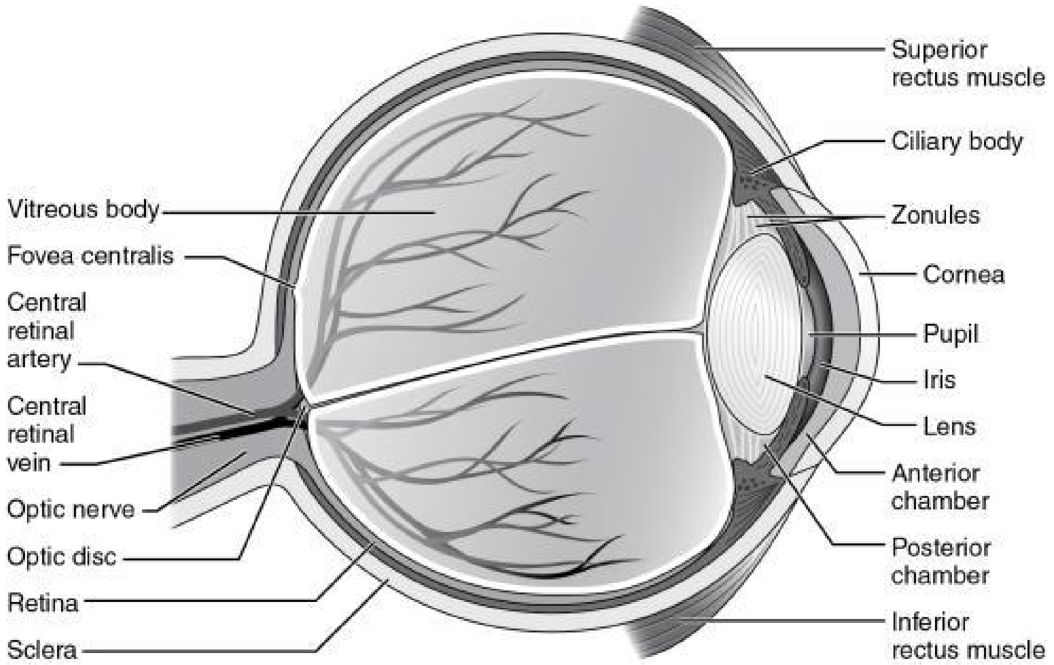

Superior rectus muscle
Ciliary body
Zonules
Cornea
Pupil
Iris
Lens
Anterior chamber
Posterior chamber
Inferior rectus muscle
Vitreous body
Fovea centralis
Central retinal artery
Central retinal vein
Optic nerve
Optic disc
Retina
Sclera

FIG. 148 Anatomy of the eye.

When examining the pupils, note the following:

1. If the pupils are unequal, this might indicate an injury to the eye (see Fig. 55). If the victim is unconscious and one or more pupils are widely dilated, it might indicate a brain injury. If one pupil is widely dilated and the victim is awake and seems otherwise normal, it might be the effect of having touched the eye with a medication.
2. If a bright light is shined in one eye, both pupils should constrict equally. Make note if this is not the case.
3. If the pupil is irregular (e.g., not round) in shape, there might be a penetrating injury to the eye.

Remember to protect your eyes in situations where they will be exposed to excessive ultraviolet (UV) light, wind, sand, dirt, flying objects (e.g., bungee cords or ice chips), toxic chemicals or plants, and so forth. This can be done by wearing sturdy goggles, sunglasses, or safety (shatter-proof) glasses.

Chemical injury to the eye

A chemical burn of the eye is a true emergency. If any acid, alkali, spitting cobra venom, skunk musk, or other chemical irritant is splashed into the eye, immediately flush the eye with cool water. Assist the victim in holding the eyelids open. Continue the irrigation for at least 30 minutes for exposure to acid and 60 minutes for alkali. Try to use at least 2 liters of liquid to irrigate the eye. It might take many more liters to remove acid or alkali, but these first 2 liters are a good start. Do not patch the eye closed. Seek immediate medical attention. If you are far from care, inspect the eye carefully for retained particles and remove them with a moistened cotton-tipped swab. Administer ofloxacin (Ocuflox) ophthalmic solution 0.3%, moxifloxacin 0.5% (Vigamox), or gatifloxacin 0.3% (Zymar) (1 to 2 drops four times a day) until the eye is healed.

If "superglue" comes in contact with the eyelids and they become glued shut, gently try to pull them apart. If this is not possible, apply Neosporin or bacitracin ointment to the eyelid margins and cover the eye with a patch. In 24 to 48 hours, the glue should dissolve and soften to allow the eyelids to separate. Do not use "superglue remover," which might contain acetone and is harmful to the cornea (clear surface of the eye). If antiseptic ointment is not available, patch the eye closed overnight with the eye pads presoaked with water. This might loosen the bond and allow the eyelids to be separated.

Foreign body under the eyelid and scratched cornea; corneal ulcer

If a foreign body lodges on the cornea (the clear surface of the eye) without actual penetration of the eyeball, irrigate the eye copiously with an eyewash solution (use water if you do not have eyewash). If this is not successful, have the victim look downward, grasp their upper lid firmly by the eyelashes, and fold it up and inside out (evert it) over a cotton swab (Fig. 149). You can lightly grease the swab with antiseptic ointment to keep it from sticking to the skin. If you can see the foreign body on the undersurface of the upper eyelid, gently wipe it away with a cotton swab or piece of moistened cloth. If you do not see the object, check between the lower eyelid and the eyeball. After the inspection, pull down on the eyelashes to unfold the lid.

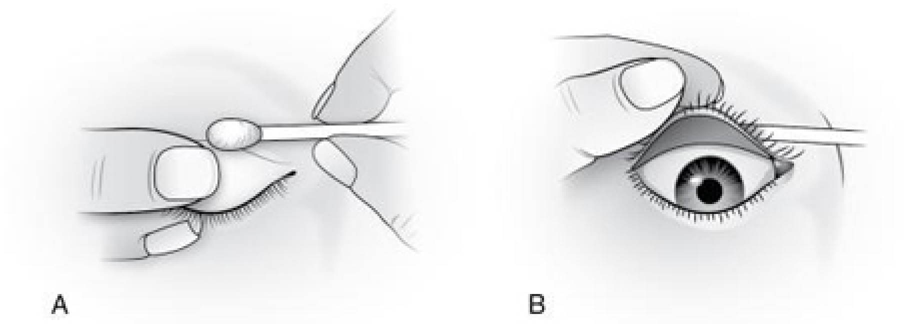


FIG. 149 Eversion of the eyelid to locate a foreign body. **A,** The lid is grasped and pulled over a cotton swab or small blunt stick. **B,** The underside of the eyelid is inspected for a foreign body while the victim looks downward.

Once you have removed the object, if the victim still feels as if something is in their eye, they might have suffered a scratch on the cornea (corneal abrasion). If the victim can tolerate the discomfort, do not patch the eye closed. Have the victim try wearing sunglasses to diminish the discomfort. If someone is carrying sterile anesthetic eye-drops, the medication can be used one time, but should not be used repeatedly because that causes delayed healing and increases the risk for infection. If the discomfort does not allow the victim to remain safe (e.g., needs to walk along a trail with the potential for a serious fall), then it might help control the discomfort to patch the eye closed for 24 hours. However, be aware that this will not hasten healing, and because of the loss of binocular vision, might impair depth perception. Furthermore, *never patch an eye closed if there is any sign of an active infection* (pus or discharge). When the patch is removed, if there is residual pain, a gritty sensation, gooey discharge, or blurred vision, see a doctor as soon as possible. Tiny objects, such as the spine of a horse nettle (sand brier), can become embedded in the cornea and not be visible without the magnification available to an ophthalmologist.

To patch an eye, a ½-inch (1.3 cm) thick pad of soft cloth or bandage should be shaped to fit neatly over the eye socket and affixed snugly to the face with tape or bandages extending across the patch onto the cheek below and the forehead opposite the affected eye (Fig. 150). Prepackaged sterile elliptical eye pads are available. If only tape is available, the eyelids can be taped closed with a single small piece of tape.

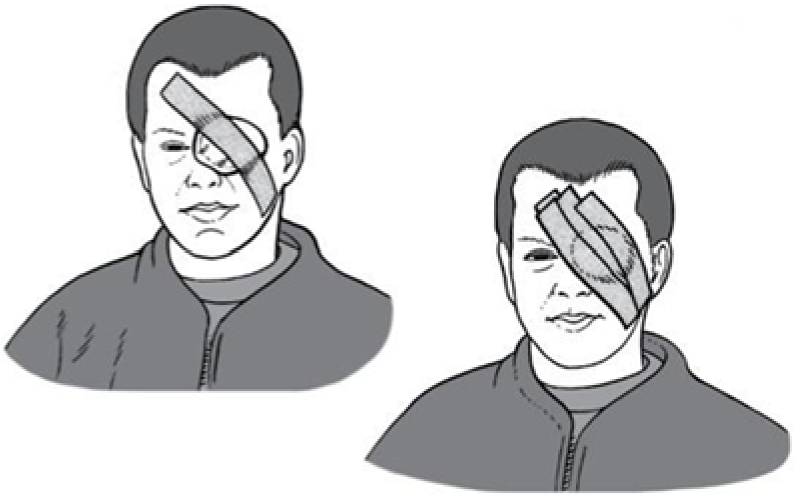


FIG. 150 Taping a patch over the eye.

Another way to hold an eye shield, patch, or padding around the eye is with a cravat (see page 204). First, place a strip of cloth approximately 2 inches (5 cm) wide and 15 inches (38 cm) long over the top of the head front-to-back, so that the face-side end hangs over the uninjured eye, near the nose. Place the patch, pad, or shield over the eye and hold it in place with a cravat, which should be wrapped horizontally around the head and then tied in position on top of the hanging cloth strip. Make the first tie (single loop or half square knot) in the cravat behind the head and at the base of the skull and keep wrapping it around to complete the final tie (square knot) where the ends meet. If the final tie will be over an eye, shift the cravat. Pull up the ends of the hanging cloth strip and tie them at the top of the head; this should lift the cravat up off the uninjured eye (Fig. 151).

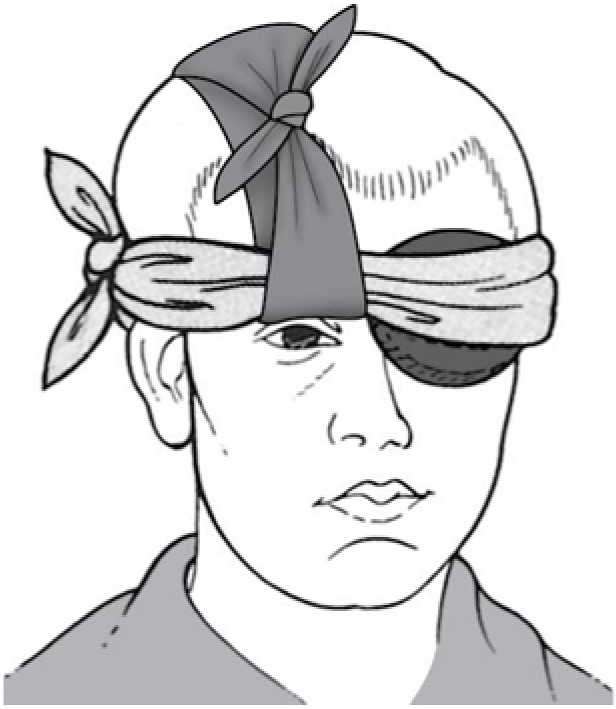


FIG. 151 Holding an eye patch in place with a cravat. Hang a cloth strip over the uninjured eye. Hold the patch in place with a cravat. Tie the cloth strip to lift the cravat off the uninjured eye.

For a scratched cornea, administer an antibiotic in the unpatched affected eye until it is healed, which usually occurs in 3 to 5 days. Use ofloxacin (Ocuflox) ophthalmic solution 0.3%, moxifloxacin 0.5% (Vigamox), or gatifloxacin 0.3% (Zymar) one or two drops to the affected eye every 3 to 4 hours, or a ribbon of erythromycin ophthalmic ointment every 6 hours. If the scratched cornea is caused by contact lens overuse, instruct the victim to not wear contacts until the eye is completely healed. A topical anesthetic, such as tetracaine 1%, can be used safely for up to 24 hours as directed.

A corneal ulcer is an erosion, usually caused by a bacterial infection, that causes a "red eye," pain, and sometimes decreased visual acuity. It can follow a scratched cornea. The white of the eye is very reddened, and if you look closely, you might notice a small, round white or yellowish spot on the surface of the cornea. This is an emergency, because the ulcer might spread rapidly and cause permanent damage. If a corneal ulcer is suspected, immediately use ofloxacin (Ocuflox) ophthalmic solution 0.3%, gatifloxacin 0.3% (Zymar), or moxifloxacin 0.5% (Vigamox) two drops to the affected eye every 30 minutes for the first 6 hours, then every 4 hours and seek immediate medical attention. *Do not patch the eye if a corneal ulcer is seen or suspected.*

Injured eyeball

If the eyeball is perforated, there will be a combination of loss of vision (ranging from hazy vision to blindness), pain, excessive tearing, a dilated pupil, and visible blood in the eye. There might be gelatinous material extruding from the eye, and the pupil will be irregular or jagged in appearance. Do not attempt to rinse out the wound vigorously; remove obvious dirt and debris without placing any pressure on the eye. Close the eyelid gently and cover the eye with a protective shield (not a patch under any sort of pressure). This can be fashioned by cutting gauze pads or soft cloth to the proper size, or by fashioning a doughnut-shaped shield with a cloth, cravat bandage, or shirt (Fig. 152). Another good way to keep pressure off the eye is to cut an eye-sized hole in a stack of gauze pads and place the stack over the eye, taping or wrapping it in place. An eye shield can also be improvised by cutting off the bottom 2 inches (5 cm) of a paper cup and taping it over the eye. If tape is not available, a plastic or paper cup can be held in place by putting two small holes 1 inch from the lip on opposite sides of the cup and running a cord or strip of cloth through the holes across the cup such that the loose ends can be then wrapped around the head and tied off (Fig. 153). Metal or plastic preshaped eye shields can be carried.

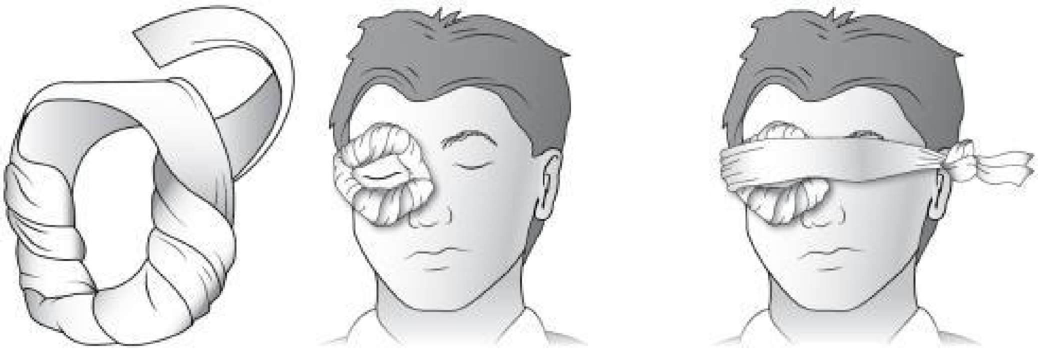


FIG. 152 Bandage for the injured eye. A cravat or cloth is rolled and wrapped to make a doughnut-shaped shield, which is fixed in place over the eye.

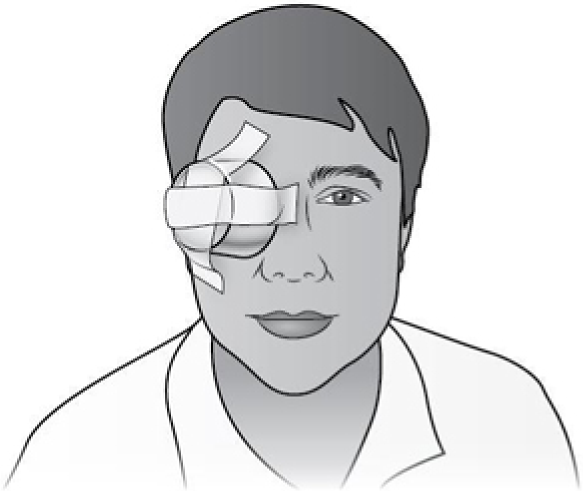


FIG. 153 Using a cup to fashion an eye shield.

Do not exert pressure on the eyeball because this can increase the damage. Instruct the victim to keep both eyes closed and start them on penicillin, doxycycline, cephalexin, or erythromycin. Seek immediate medical attention.

Bleeding into the eye

If the eyeball has been struck (not torn or ruptured), there might be bleeding from small blood vessels within the eye into the clear liquid that fills the space directly behind the cornea and in front of the lens. Such bleeding is called a hyphema. It first appears as diffuse bloody (red) clouding of the fluid behind the cornea, which settles over the course of 6 to 8 hours into a clearly visible layer of blood (Fig. 154). If such a condition is noted, the victim should have their eye patched closed (see the previous section) or wear sunglasses; they should be transported to an eye doctor. If possible, keep their head elevated and in an upright position and apply a rigid eye shield to protect the eye from being struck. The victim should avoid straining.

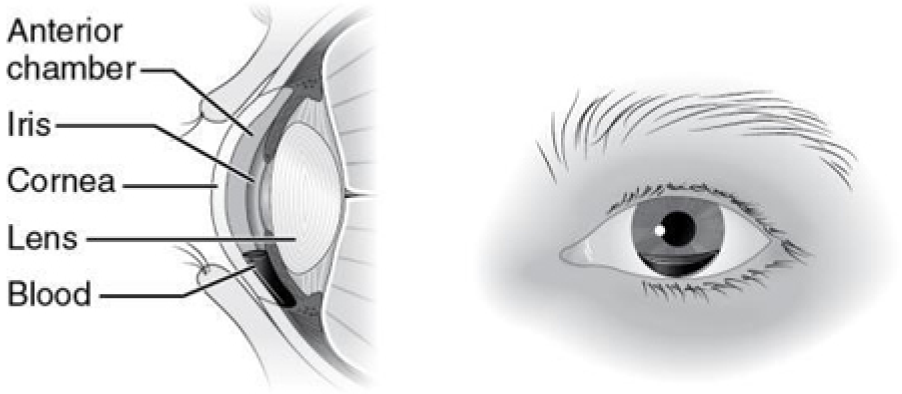


FIG. 154 Hyphemia. Bleeding into the eye causes an accumulation of blood in the anterior chamber, where it settles into a layer behind the cornea. In severe cases, the pupil is obscured by red blood.

Finding a displaced soft contact lens

If a soft contact lens is displaced such that vision is blurred and the victim feels that it is still somewhere underneath an eyelid, you can attempt the following in sequence to try to find it:

- Place a bit of downward pressure to the lower lid to retract it slightly from the eye. See if you can locate the contact lens.
- Gently use a finger to lightly massage the upper lid with the motion directed toward the nose. See if that moves the lens to the nose-side of the eye such that you can see it. The massage can require a few minutes.
- Evert the upper eyelid (see page 202) to get a better view of the top half of the eye.

All of these maneuvers can be facilitated by applying a few drops of artificial tears.

Removing contact lenses

If a victim is severely injured and wearing contact lenses, they should be removed. A contact lens remover can be used, or a slightly sticky surface of mini-marshmallow can be placed carefully against the lens to grasp it. Either soft or hard lenses can be removed by the following technique (Fig. 155):

1. Slide the lens off the clear surface of the eye (cornea) over to the white area away from the nose.

2. Place one finger at the outside edge of the lower eyelid and pull the eyelid taut, while keeping the eye slightly open. This should lift the edge of the lens, so that you can pick it up. If you cannot remove the lens, position it so that as much as possible is over the white (and not on the cornea).
3. Place the lens in a container with contact lens solution, eyewash, or water (if possible, add 1 teaspoon [5 mL] of table salt per pint [473 mL] of water).
4. A soft contact lens can often be removed by simply pinching it gently between your thumb and index finger.

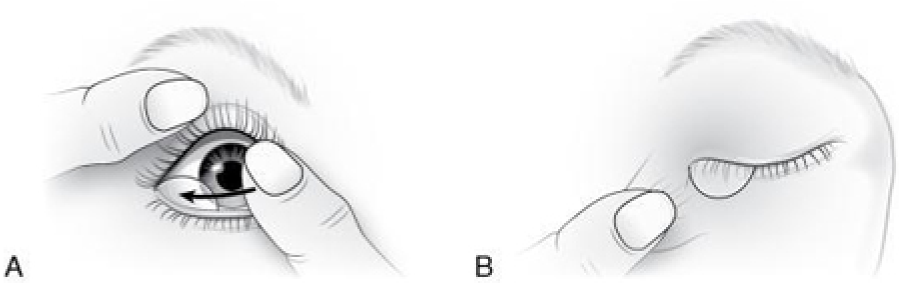


FIG. 155 Contact lens removal. **A,** Push the lens gently to the lateral (away from the nose) white portion of the eye. **B,** A downward and outward pull on the skin at the lateral corner of the eye pops the lens free.

If you cannot remove a contact lens, it is best to close the eye gently, place a soft cloth or gauze pad patch over it, and tape it closed. Be certain that someone knows why this has been done (i.e., the lens is still in the person's eye).

Subconjunctival hemorrhage

Bleeding into the white of the eye (subconjunctival hemorrhage) might occur spontaneously or after coughing, straining (vigorous exertion), vomiting, or strangulation (Fig. 156). The bleeding is painless, does not interfere with vision (the cornea is not involved), and does not require any therapy. The blood will absorb over a period of a few weeks, as from any other bruise. If it does not, seek the care of an eye doctor.

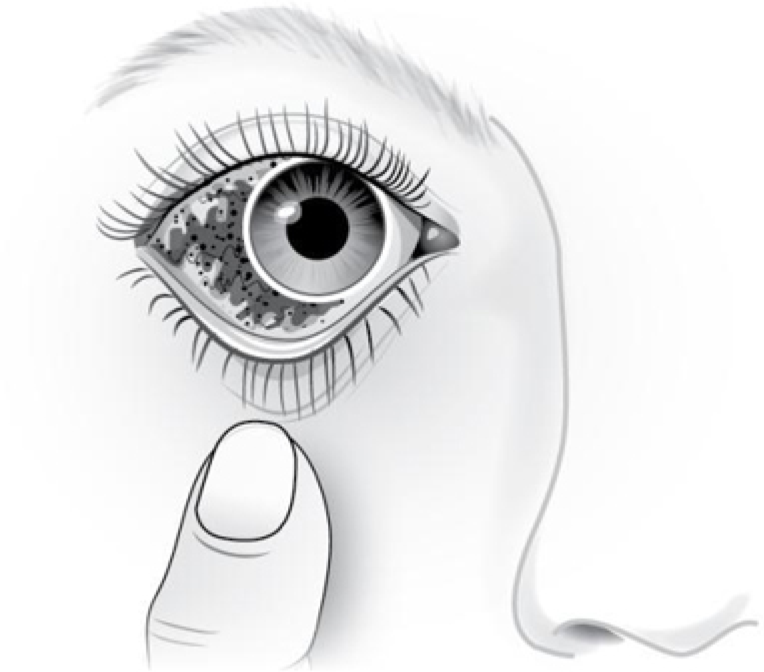


FIG. 156 Subconjunctival hemorrhage. The red discoloration does not involve the cornea, which remains clear.

Red eye

A red or pink, itchy eye is usually caused by a viral infection. Other causes include bacterial infection, insect bite or sting, allergy (see page 228), overuse of contact lenses, corneal abrasion or ulcer (see page 202), foreign body (see page 202), irritation from chemicals or smoke, snow blindness (see page 209), glaucoma (see page 212), or injury (see page 204). If the infection is caused by a virus or bacteria, symptoms include itching, tearing, a gritty sensation, watery (viral) or thick (bacterial) discharge (runny yellow or greenish pus), crusted eyelashes and lids, and swollen eyelids, which are often stuck together on awakening in the morning. You might notice a swollen lymph gland in front of the ear. If fluid collects underneath the loosely attached (to the eyeball) conjunctiva (membrane-like external lining of the eyeball), it might cause it to swell up and balloon away from the eyeball.

If the cause is a known allergy or irritation from smoke, use eye drops with 0.025% oxymetazoline (OcuClear, Visine L.R.), antazoline phosphate 0.5% and naphazoline 0.05% (Vasocon-A), naphazoline 0.1% (Naphcon), or tetrahydrozoline (Visine) every 3 to 4 hours, so long as the victim does not have glaucoma.

If there is much yellowish discharge, suspect a bacterial infection and administer antibiotic eye drops (moxifloxacin 0.5%, gatifloxacin 0.3%, ciprofloxacin 0.3%, tobramycin or gentamicin 0.3%, ofloxacin 0.3%, trimethoprim plus polymyxin B, or sodium sulamyd 10%); the dose is two drops every 2 hours for 4 to 5 days while the victim is awake. Never use steroid-containing eye drops unless directed to do so by a physician. Antibacterial ointments are messy and can blur vision.

Pink eye

The conjunctiva is a thin membrane that covers the whites of the eyes and insides of the eyelids; conjunctivitis is an infection of this membrane and is often referred to as "pink eye." The associated pink or redness of the eye is often accompanied by itching and a thick, yellow or green discharge. Often the lids are stuck together in the morning after sleeping. It is not uncommon to have "pink eye" develop in one eye and then rapidly be spread to the other eye, presumably because of touching the infected eye and then transferring the infection. Treatment consists of cool compresses applied three to four times a day, and sometimes antihistamine eye drops. Viral conjunctivitis is very contagious, so the victim should be advised to avoid close contact with others, including sharing implements of facial washing and hand towels or swimming in shared pools, for 2 weeks after the onset of the infection. Handwashing should be frequent and flawless. Bacterial conjunctivitis is less common in adults than viral, and in comparison, usually has less itching and burning, yet more matting and adherence of the eyelids upon awakening. It usually responds to topical antibiotic eye drops. Allergic conjunctivitis is seasonal, predominantly seen in the spring and summer when such allergies flare. Allergic conjunctivitis causes symptoms of eyelid swelling, runny and itchy eyes, and redness, with or without a bumpy surface ("cobblestones") noted on the inside of the eyelids. This is treated with a variety of types of eye drops to counteract various components of the allergic reaction. Commonly prescribed are antazoline, ketotifen, azelastine, alamast, ketorolac, olopatadine and/or loteprednol or prednisolone. See page 228.

Contact lenses

Serious eye infections can be caused by fungus, such as that of the genus *Fusarium,* which has been discovered to grow in contact lens solution. Some experts believe that multipurpose solutions in general are more prone to transmitting infection, for reasons that have yet to be clearly determined.

Regardless of whether or not multipurpose solutions are riskier than single-purpose solutions, outdoor enthusiasts should note that contact lenses might be more difficult to manage in a wilderness environment for the following reasons:

1. Should a contact lens become displaced (e.g., fall out of the eye), it is often more easily lost than eyeglasses.
2. Contact lens solution can degrade or become contaminated by exposure to extreme temperatures, dehydration, or passing over dust and dirt that can accumulate on the threads of bottle caps.
3. Handling contact lenses with dirty hands can introduce bacteria and fungi to lenses or tissues of the eyes.
4. Contact lenses, particularly "monthly" soft lenses that remain in place, can promote an underlying corneal infection, such as from a freshwater-living amoeba.
5. It might not be easy to change out contact lenses quickly if needed for a different refraction or environmental (e.g., sun or wind exposure) condition.
6. Once an eye becomes infected, contact lenses must be removed. They should not be reused if removed because of infection.

For these reasons, it is important to carry at least one, and preferably two, pairs of eyeglasses. At least one pair should be single-focus if you intend to be hiking or walking where you might trip or fall. If you need reading glasses, carry these as well. Also, be sure that you have sunglasses that block out as much UV light as possible. Include side shields if you are going to be at high altitude, on snowfields, on the water's surface, or traversing other highly reflective terrain, such as bright sand.

Dry eye

Dry eye occurs when the amount or quality of tears is not sufficient to keep the eye surface wet. It is more common in elders and in dry environments, after prolonged exposure to wind, at high altitude, and associated with certain medical conditions (such as seasonal allergies or lupus) in which tear production is diminished or the quality of tears is altered. Symptoms include a sensation of dryness, sensitivity to light, redness, foreign body (scratchy) sensation, pain, and blurred vision. Artificial tears, such as carboxymethylcellulose sodium 0.5% (Refresh Tears), or lubricating ointment (e.g., Lacri-Lube, containing mineral oil, white petrolatum, and lanolin alcohols) or gel (e.g., Refresh Liquigel, containing carboxymethylcellulose) might be soothing. A proven effective topical lubricant is polymer hydroxypropyl guar gellable eye drops (Systane Lubricant Eye Drops). Drops are applied as often as needed. Note that solutions to reduce redness, such as Visine, might worsen dry eye. In the event that dry eye persists despite administration of artificial tears, an ophthalmologist can prescribe cyclosporine (Restasis), an antiinflammatory medication that has been shown to increase production of the recipient's own tears and to relieve symptoms within

3 to 4 weeks. A recently FDA-approved drug is 0.5% lifitegrast ophthalmic solution (Xiidra), which also requires weeks to months to become effective. Avoid wearing contact lenses for prolonged periods of time. Consider using warm compresses or eye massage to unclog the meibomian glands, which are located on the edge of the eyelids and produce an oily substance that helps keep the tear film from evaporating. A device based upon this concept is Lipiflow (TearScience). Some persons report relief of dry, irritated, noninfected eyes from application of a cool or lukewarm moist teabag gently placed upon the closed eyes. The tea that seeps into the eyes contains tannins, which might be soothing.

Wearing wrap-around goggles or glacier glasses to diminish UV and wind exposure might help prevent dry eye. Omega-3 oral supplements do not appear to help dry eye, although they are sometimes recommended.

Blepharitis

Blepharitis is chronic flaking and irritation of the skin at the base of the eyelashes, affecting both eyes. It can become infected and be accompanied by fluctuating vision, itchy and burning eyes, and mucous discharge on awakening. Treatment is the application of bacitracin or erythromycin ophthalmic ointment thinly to the lid margins at bedtime for 4 weeks. Warm, moist compresses should be used a few times a day for 5 to 10 minutes at a time to loosen the debris, which is then gently wiped away. Artificial tears are useful to lessen the sensation of dry eye.

Snow blindness

Exposure to ultraviolet radiation (UVR) from the sun can lead to “sunburn” of the cornea (clear surface of the eye). This occurs when proper precautions are not used at high altitudes, where a greater amount of unfiltered (by the atmosphere) UVR is present; the exposure can be compounded by reflection from the snow. The intensity of UV energy increases by a factor of 4% to 6% for every 1000 ft (305 m) increase in altitude above sea level. Snow reflects 85% of ultraviolet B (UVB, the culprit wavelengths that cause snow blindness); dry sand reflects 17%, and grass or sandy turf reflects 2.5%. Water can reflect 10% to 30% of UVB, depending on the time of day and location.

The cornea absorbs UVR below 300 nanometers (nm), which includes a fair portion of UVB. Radiation of wavelengths longer than 300 nm is transmitted to the lens and, over time, can cause cataracts.

Exposure to UVB can cause a corneal burn within 1 hour, although symptoms might not become apparent for 6 to 12 hours. Symptoms include excessive tearing, pain, redness, swollen eyelids, pain when looking at light, headache, a gritty sensation in the eyes, and decreased (hazy) vision. Similar symptoms occur when the surface of the eye is physically scratched (corneal abrasion). Treatment consists of removing contact lenses and wearing sunglasses, or (less preferred) patching the eye closed (see page 203) after instilling a few drops of ophthalmic antibiotic solution (such as moxifloxacin 0.5%, gatifloxacin 0.3%, sodium sulamyd 10%, or gentamicin). The surface of the cornea will regenerate spontaneously in 24 to 48 hours. It is important to check the eye first for a foreign body (see page 202). After patching, the eye should be rechecked in 24 hours. If the eye appears to be infected with pus, it should be left unpatched; administer a topical antibiotic solution (see page 203) three to four times a day and have the victim wear sunglasses. Pain medicine should be used as appropriate. If both eyes are involved and it is necessary to patch an eye in order to control the pain, only the more severely affected eye should be patched, so that the victim can continue to make their way.

Some experts recommend a topical nonsteroidal antiinflammatory or steroid solution to hasten the resolution of snow blindness. In a situation in which the diagnosis is certain and such medication is available, instillation might indeed improve things. However, if a topical steroid is applied to a misdiagnosed bacterial or viral infection—particularly herpes virus—the effect can be to worsen the situation. Since snow blindness is self-limited, the application of a topical steroid is not imperative and is best left to an ophthalmologist. Useful nonsteroidal topical solutions are ketorolac ophthalmic solution 0.5% (Acular) and diclofenac 0.1% (Voltaren), one or the other instilled one drop four times a day. External (e.g., applied to the closed eye) cool compresses might provide some pain relief.

Protective eyeglasses (sunglasses)

The wavelengths of sunlight that appear to be most damaging to the eye are blue (400 to 500 nm), UVA (320 to 400 nm), and UVB (290 to 320 nm). Ultraviolet C (200 to 290 nm) is filtered out by the ozone layer of the atmosphere. Standards for UV protection in nonprescription sunglasses are set by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI). These state that such lenses should maintain UV absorption up to 400 nm and block 99.8% of UVB light and 95% of UVA. Lenses advertised for mountaineering or specifically for UV protection should meet these standards.

Eyeglasses, contact lenses, and sunglasses often protect the corneas from most UVB and variable amounts of UVA. Check with your optometrist or the manufacturer to confirm the situation with your appliances.

Sunglasses should be equipped with side protectors and, if necessary, optional nose guards. Frames should be prepared with wraparound temples and retaining straps or lanyards. Polycarbonate lenses, which are lightweight, scratch resistant, and shatterproof, can be manufactured to absorb 99% of UV light. Most recreation supply companies manufacture or carry sunglasses and wraparound goggles that meet ANSI standards. At least one pair should be single-focus if you intend to be hiking or walking where you might trip or fall.

In general, amber, yellow, orange, brown, and rose lenses filter out blue light and increase the perception of contrast. Green and gray lenses soften glare and transmit a spectrum that does not increase contrast. Glass ambermatic or photochromic lenses (darker in bright sunlight), which contain millions of silver halide crystals, darken when exposed to UV light close to the visible spectrum. Polarized lenses improve vision by decreasing glare, but this does not decrease exposure to UV light. Standard sunglasses transmit 15% to 25% of visible light; mountaineering sunglasses transmit 5% to 10%, which is necessary to reduce luminance to a comfortable range.

Improvised sunglasses can be made by cutting small slits or puncturing pinholes in cardboard or two layers of a strip of duct tape after the adhesive sides have been stuck together. Fashion a shape that will fit across the eyes like a pair of sunglasses, tie in the back with a string attachment. The opening should be just large enough to allow adequate vision. This serves two purposes: limitation of UV transmission and creation of crude refraction to improve focus in a person who is nearsighted.

For safe driving, sunglasses should transmit at least 8% of visible light during daytime and 80% of visible light during darkness.

Sudden vision loss

Sudden vision loss is an emergency. It can be caused by anything along the “visual pathway” from the eyes to the brain (pupil, lens, retina, optic nerves, brain), so might be impossible to diagnose without special tests and equipment. The loss can be all at once, or can go through a period of blurry, cloudy, or partial vision. It might affect one or both eyes. The following are eye conditions that can cause vision loss.

Vitreous detachment

Floaters are small spots, lines, clouds, cobwebs, or veils that move around in the field of vision, especially when the eyes move. They can be in one or both eyes, but usually show up in one eye at a time. They are easiest to see when one looks at the sky or against a plain white background. Floaters are caused by tiny opacities inside the vitreous, which is the gel that fills the inside of the eye. In childhood and adolescence, the vitreous gel is clear, so that floaters are not seen. In adulthood, floaters can develop when the vitreous gel forms small clumps as part of the aging process. As light passes from the outside of the eye, through the cornea and lens, and then through the vitreous gel before it strikes the retina to record an image, the floaters can cast shadows on the retina. Floaters are annoying, but not dangerous, particularly if they have been present for a long time.

The sudden appearance of floaters can signify separation of the vitreous gel from the retina, which is the layer of tissue in the back of the eye on which visual images are recorded on specialized receptor cells. This occurs because the vitreous gel shrinks as it ages. If it shrinks enough, it begins to peel away from the retina, in what is called a vitreous separation or detachment. It is more common in nearsighted people and in persons who have had cataract surgery or injuries to their eyes or head. When a vitreous separation occurs, the floaters appear suddenly. As the gel peels away from the retina, it tugs on it, which can cause a person to experience the perception of flashes of light, usually on the outer (ear) side of the eye. These usually last no more than a second and are caused by the nerves within the retina (which connect to the large optic nerve) being stimulated mechanically by the tug of the vitreous gel. Flashes are difficult to appreciate in daylight but can be easily seen in the darkness. Moving the head or eyes can cause the flashes. Since flashes mean that the vitreous is pulling on the retina, this is a warning sign, because the traction can cause a retinal tear. If this happens, an ophthalmologist needs to perform laser surgery as soon as possible to prevent a full-blown retinal detachment.

The normal course for a vitreous separation is a 2- to 4-week process in which the separation is completed. This might be punctuated by intermittent addition of new floaters, but usually the burst of opacities is at the beginning of the process. Over time, most of the floaters diminish or disappear, but there might be some residual floaters. During the course of the separation, when a person first notices the floaters, and if a person suddenly develops new floaters, more frequent flashing lights, or a defect in a field of vision (often described as a “dark curtain”), an ophthalmologist should perform an examination to be certain that there is not a retinal tear or detachment. It is important to avoid sudden eye or head movements for several weeks after the onset of a vitreous separation, to decrease the likelihood of developing a retinal tear or detachment.

If a vitreous detachment is suspected, it is wise to begin to head toward civilization to undergo a proper eye examination. However, if it is likely that a retinal detachment has occurred (e.g., there is a “field cut,” or a darkened area of vision as if a curtain was being pulled across the field of vision from any direction), it is prudent to evacuate immediately, including a more expensive mode of transportation if necessary, because treatment for retinal detachment is usually an operation by an ophthalmologist and time is of the essence. A progressive retinal detachment can lead to permanent loss of vision in the affected eye.

In terms of exercise, it is wise to avoid sudden head or eye movements, so no jogging or swimming with rapid head movements, wrestling, significant straining, and so on. Until the vitreous separation process is complete, a person should try to turn the head to look in a direction, rather than hold the head in a fixed position and move the eyes. All of this might be difficult in a precarious situation, such as rock climbing or kayaking, but one should just do the best they can, in the particular circumstances.

Injury to the retina

The retina is the thin inner posterior-surface tissue layer of the eye, the “screen” on which images are transmitted by light. From the retina, nerves from the eye carry signals to the brain. The retina can be injured by the transmission of unrestricted infrared rays (wavelengths of light beyond the red end of the visible spectrum). Usually, this occurs when someone views the sun directly during an eclipse or when a person stares at the sun while under the influence of hallucinogenic drugs. Symptoms include pain and blindness. If such an injury is suspected, sunglasses should be worn or the eye should be patched. The victim should be transported to an eye doctor.

Occasionally, a structural abnormality, the aging process, or a blow to the eye will cause the retina to become separated from the back of the eye (retinal detachment). Early symptoms include flashes of light and persistent floating spots in the field of vision (“floaters”: see description in earlier section on vitreous detachment). As the retina peels off farther, a person loses vision painlessly, as if a curtain (“of darkness”) was descending. Retinal detachment is a serious condition and requires emergency repair.

Optic neuritis

Optic neuritis is inflammation of the optic nerve, which carries signals from the eye to the brain in the process of vision. It causes blurred vision of gradual onset, pain with eye movement, and an aching sensation in the affected eye. Commonly associated with multiple sclerosis, it can also be caused by infections (e.g., Lyme disease), cancer, and autoimmune syndromes. The treatment is high-dose steroids and other agents administered under the care of an ophthalmologist. In any circumstance when vision becomes impaired without an obvious cause such that it cannot be effectively treated in the wilderness, get the victim to an eye doctor as soon as possible.

Glaucoma

Glaucoma is a condition in which the pressure of the fluid within the eye is elevated. If this happens suddenly, the pressure can injure the nerves within the eye that process vision; blindness can result. Symptoms of an acute attack of glaucoma include severe pain, blurred vision or “halos” around lights, clouding of the cornea, intense reddening of the white of the eye, a dilated pupil that does not react to light, nausea, vomiting, and headache. If an attack occurs, the victim should be kept in a sitting or standing position and rushed to an ophthalmologist. If the victim is carrying medication(s), instill a drop of pilocarpine or carbachol *and* (depending on which medications are carried by the victim) a drop of timolol (or betaxolol, carteolol, levobunolol, or metipranolol), latanoprost (or travoprost, unoprostone, or bimatoprost), brimonidine (or apraclonidine), and/or dorzolamide (or brinzolamide) in the affected eye. If you are distant from care, and acetazolamide (Diamox) is available and there are no contraindications to its use (see page 348), it can be administered in a dose of 250 mg by mouth four times a day, or 500 mg sustained release by mouth twice a day. If prednisolone eye drops are available, instill one or two drops in the affected eye(s). Use ondansetron 4 to 8 mg oral dissolving tablet for nausea and vomiting.

Injured eyelid

If the eyelid is injured, wash the eye carefully, apply bacitracin or mupirocin ointment, and then patch the eye closed (see page 203). If the eye cannot be covered with eyelid, apply a thick layer of antiseptic ointment to the eyelid and exposed eyeball and patch the eye. Seek immediate medical attention.

Stye and chalazion

A stye (external hordeolum) is an infection of a small sebaceous gland that appears as a small abscess (see page 262) externally at the base of an eyelash. If the stye appears on the inside or within the eyelid, then it is likely an infection of the oil (meibomian) gland. The infection causes the eyelid to swell, redden, and become painful. The victim might notice increased tear production and the sensation of a foreign body in the eye. Usually, the stye comes to a head on the outside of the lid, but occasionally it will come to a head inside. If a stye begins to develop, the victim should hold warm, moist compresses to their eyelid for 30 minutes four times a day to soften the abscess. Erythromycin or other ophthalmic antibiotic drops or ointment can be applied to the stye twice a day for 7 days. The stye will either disappear or enlarge and come to a head. *Never squeeze an abscess on the face.* If the stye enlarges, comes to a head, and is extremely painful or interferes with vision, but will not open spontaneously, it can be carefully lanced with a sharp blade or needle to drain the pus. A physician should perform this procedure, unless the victim is more than 48 hours from medical attention and the infection has worsened to the extent that there is progressive swelling of the eyelid that impedes vision, or of the cheek or forehead. In this event, also administer dicloxacillin, erythromycin, or cephalexin. After the stye is incised, the pus can be expressed gently by pressing on opposite lateral sides with two cotton-tipped applicators.

A chalazion is an infected gland within the eyelid, rather than at the edge of the lid. It might also turn into an abscess. Treatment is the same as for a stye.

Eyelid infection and periorbital cellulitis

If there is discharge and pain, with or without redness, from an eyelid on the side nearest the nose, this might be an infection in the tear duct. Apply warm compresses and administer amoxicillin–clavulanate, moxifloxacin, levofloxacin, or cephalexin.

Redness and swelling of the eyelid and “soft” tissues around the eye (eyebrow, upper cheek) caused by infection is known as periorbital (around the orbit, or eye) cellulitis. This is extremely serious and must be treated aggressively, because the infection can spread to create an abscess in the brain. Treatment consists of administration of an antibiotic (moxifloxacin, levofloxacin, cephalexin, clindamycin, amoxicillin–clavulanate, dicloxacillin, or erythromycin) and immediate evacuation to a hospital. To differentiate periorbital cellulitis from the swollen eyelids associated with an allergic reaction, note that with cellulitis, the onset will have been more gradual (typically associated with a less severe eye infection, such as conjunctivitis, or a local infection such as a stye or pimple), the affliction is only on one side, there are fever and chills, the soft tissues are painful, there is headache, and there is often a purulent (with pus) discharge from the eye. With an allergy, the eye is more “puffy,” the onset is sudden, the eye is itchy and watering, there is no purulent discharge, and there are associated signs and symptoms of allergy (skin rash, generalized itching, swollen lips, etc.) (see page 78).

Orbital cellulitis involves a deep infection around the eye and presents as a swollen, red eye with significant pain on eye motion, decreased vision, and bulging of the eyeball in its socket. In contrast, victims of periorbital cellulitis have normal vision and painless motion of the eye. Orbital cellulitis is an emergency, so the victim should be started on the antibiotics listed previously and immediately evacuated to hospital medical care.

Pterygium

A pterygium is a noncancerous degeneration of the conjunctiva that occurs in persons who spend large amounts of time outdoors, particularly with exposure to UV light. It appears as a yellow, raised, “fleshy” knob of tissue that appears to begin in the nasal corner of the eye, and extends from there over the white part. It occasionally encroaches on the nasal margin of the cornea. It rarely grows further or requires treatment, because vision is usually not affected.

Nose

Nosebleed

Nosebleed (epistaxis) is classified as anterior or posterior, depending on where it originates within the nose. Generally, anterior nosebleed is less serious, because the victim will usually drain blood outward through the nostrils. Posterior nosebleed is more difficult to control, and the victim often drains blood back into the throat, with coughing and potential choking. Anterior nosebleed is more common and can usually be managed outside of the hospital. *If you suspect a posterior nosebleed* (bleeding from the nose accompanied by brisk bleeding into the throat, so that a lot of blood is continually swallowed, particularly after the anterior bleeding has been controlled), *immediately evacuate the victim to a hospital.*

The most frequent cause of a nosebleed is a small bleeding blood vessel or cut on the inner mucosal surface of a nostril. This is more common at high altitudes and in cold weather, because the drying effect causes the skin to become irritated and crack. In children, a nosebleed might be due to a nasal foreign body. One way to prevent nosebleeds is to keep the inside of the nose lubricated with an ointment such as mupirocin or bacitracin, or to spray regularly with saline solution (such as Ocean saline mist or drops with 0.65% sodium chloride). People on prescription anticoagulant drugs ("blood thinners") are prone to nosebleeds.

To control an anterior nosebleed, attempt simple maneuvers first. Have the victim blow their nose to remove all clots. Keep them upright (sitting leaning forward or backward, whichever is most comfortable and causes the least amount of blood to be swallowed) and calm, and firmly press the fleshy part of both nostrils closed against the nasal septum (middle cartilage). Hold this position for at least 5 minutes without release; letting go before this time will only restart the bleeding, because it takes the small blood vessels and scratched surface a while to stop oozing. There are simple mechanical devices, such as the Nose Aid Emergency Nose Bleed Treatment, that accomplish this compression and free up the hands. After a minimum of 5 minutes, let go or release the device and see if the bleeding has stopped. If not, gently but firmly pack both nostrils with a gauze or cotton roll moistened with phenylephrine 0.25% (Neo-Synephrine 1/4%) or oxymetazoline 0.05% (Afrin) and repeat the pinching maneuver for 15 minutes. (If packing is not available, use the spray alone.) Generally, this does the trick; if it does not, repeat the packing without the nasal spray. After the bleeding has stopped, leave the packing in place for 2 hours and then gently remove it. Cold compresses applied to the bridge of the nose, or a roll of gauze or cotton placed beneath the upper lip are of limited help when dealing with a brisk nosebleed. Packing with hemostatic QuikClot NoseBleed gauze (Z-Medica Corporation) can be helpful. A useful device for packing the nose to stop a nosebleed is the Rhino Rocket (Shippert Medical Technologies), which is a compressed medical-grade foam sponge with applicator. The foam is guided into place, where it swells on contact with moisture (blood) to 8 to 10 times its compressed size. A string is attached to the sponge so that it can be easily removed. Weimert Epistaxis (nosebleed) Packing uses a similar approach. The Rapid Rhino epistaxis products (Smith & Nephew) use hemostatic (stops bleeding) carboxymethylcellulose fabric over an inflatable balloon to apply compression within the nose. Merocel is a polyvinyl alcohol nasal tampon that is inserted into the nose, whereupon exposure to a topical vasoconstrictor (e.g., phenylephrine 0.25%) and saline causes it to expand and create pressure over the bleeding point. NasalCEASE (Catalina Healthcare) is a bundle of fine fibers made from brown seaweed (active ingredient calcium alginate) extract that can be inserted into the nose to aid clotting. A doctor might use FloSeal with nasal packing. A new approach to nosebleed currently available to doctors is topical application of 500 mg of tranexamic acid (TXA) delivered in 5 mL of normal saline combined with nasal compression (without packing); this stabilizes blood clots.

If the nose is packed, administer an antistaphylococcal antiseptic (such as dicloxacillin or trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole) for the duration (usually, one day) of the packing. The nasal packing should be kept moist with moisturizing saline or (if the saline spray is not available) oxymetazoline (Afrin) spray.

After a nosebleed has thoroughly ceased and you are comfortable that you will not disrupt a blood clot and restart the bleeding, gently apply mupirocin or another antibacterial ointment to the affected nostril(s) two to three times per day to keep the interior of the nose moist. Another option for this purpose is after the bleeding has stopped for 24 hours, spray gently with a moisturizing saline nasal spray once or twice a day.

If a person has a significant facial injury or brisk nosebleed, particularly if there is vomiting, allow them to sit in order to lean forward and drain these fluids without choking. If they need to be recumbent, do not place them on their back. Rather, put them in the recovery position (see page 22). If the patient is taking anticoagulant medication and bleeding continues despite your attempts to curtail it, seek prompt medical attention.

Broken nose

A fractured nose might or might not be deformed. If the nose is obviously depressed or pushed to one side, and the victim is having difficulty breathing through their mouth, the nose can be relocated, but this is usually quite painful. Grasp the bridge of the nose firmly and crunch it upward and back over to the midline. In the wilderness, it can be difficult to improvise an external splint. A malleable soft-aluminum nasal splint with adhesive ventilating foam is available as The Denver Splint Series 2000 (Shippert Medical Technologies). Treat any nosebleed as previously discussed. *The only reason to relocate the injury is to improve breathing if mouth breathing is inadequate.* The nasal bones will not begin to set solidly for 5 to 7 days; cosmetic manipulation can easily be performed after such a delay. If the skin is cut deeply over a broken nose, start the victim on an antibiotic (penicillin, amoxicillin, or cephalexin).

Another risk from a broken nose is formation of a blood clot under the skin that lies over the nasal septum (cartilage) between the nostrils. If such a clot is not promptly drained, its resolution can cause collapse of the cartilage, infection, or erosion through the septum, leaving a hole through the septum. Anyone who has suffered a broken nose needs to be examined by a physician within 3 to 5 days of the injury, to avoid erosion of the nasal septum by a blood clot.

Foreign body in the nose

A small child will occasionally stuff a foreign object into a nostril where it will become stuck. Removal of a magnet or battery is urgent; other items are not. Signs and symptoms include pain, foul-smelling drainage, and sometimes fever. This can be a tough problem away from the hospital, because once the sensitive skin inside the nostril becomes irritated, it swells and traps the foreign object within a matrix of mucus, and sometimes blood or pus. If the object cannot be easily seen and extracted without forcing it farther into the nostril or torturing the child, seek a physician's assistance. If you are carrying a flashlight and a small nasal speculum (a device for gently widening the nostril to facilitate access to the inside of the nose—Disposable Nasal Speculum, Bionix), you can attempt to look up the nose, but most small children will be extremely uncooperative, because this is pretty uncomfortable for them. The "parent's kiss" method is to tell the child that they are going to receive a kiss (on the lips). Then, while occluding the unaffected nostril, blow a brisk, quick breath into the child's mouth. This might need to be repeated a few times to dislodge and expel the object. The technique can be facilitated by first putting a drop or two of a nasal vasoconstrictor (e.g., oxymetazoline—see page 495) in the affected side. Another way to remove a nasal foreign body is to put a small dab of cyanoacrylate glue on the tip of a small stick (such as the rod portion of a cotton-tipped swab), and then hold the stick against the object until it adheres, so that the stick can be used to pull out the object. If the object is metallic, try using a magnet.

Sinusitis

The sinuses are spaces filled with air and lined with mucus-producing tissues found in the front of the skull and in the bones of the face (Fig. 157). Sinusitis is inflammation of the lining of the sinuses and nasal cavity (thus also called rhinosinusitis), usually caused by viruses, and less commonly by bacteria. Because most sinusitis is caused by viruses, it gets better in 1 to 2 weeks without antibiotic treatment. Acute bacterial sinusitis is characterized by no improvement in the initial sinusitis or worsening within a week of onset, nasal congestion/obstruction (difficulty breathing through the nose), headache, fever, decreased ability to smell, and tenderness in and over the involved sinus, with foul yellow or green discharge from the nose. Occasionally, the pain radiates to the eyes, bridge of the nose, and upper teeth. It is often made worse by bending forward. A person with bacterial sinusitis can become quite ill and suffer from excruciating headache, nausea, vomiting, and chills. If acute bacterial sinusitis is suspected and for all diabetics, treatment involves administration of an antibiotic (first choice is amoxicillin–clavulanate [particularly in children] or amoxicillin) for 5 to 7 days; other choices include doxycycline or clindamycin. Last choices because of side effects or bacterial drug resistance include trovafloxacin, levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, clarithromycin, azithromycin, trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole, or telithromycin. To relieve symptoms, use nasal saline irrigation and/or decongestants (oral pseudoephedrine and a nasal spray: phenylephrine 0.25% [Neo-Synephrine ¼%] or oxymetazoline 0.05% [Afrin]), as well as warm packs over the affected area(s). Do not use a topical decongestant for more than 3 or 4 consecutive days, to avoid "rebound" swelling of the inside of the nasal passages from chemical irritation and sensitization to the drug. Antihistamine drugs should not be routinely used, because they might dry out nasal and sinus secretions. Antihistamines and decongestants should both be avoided in children.

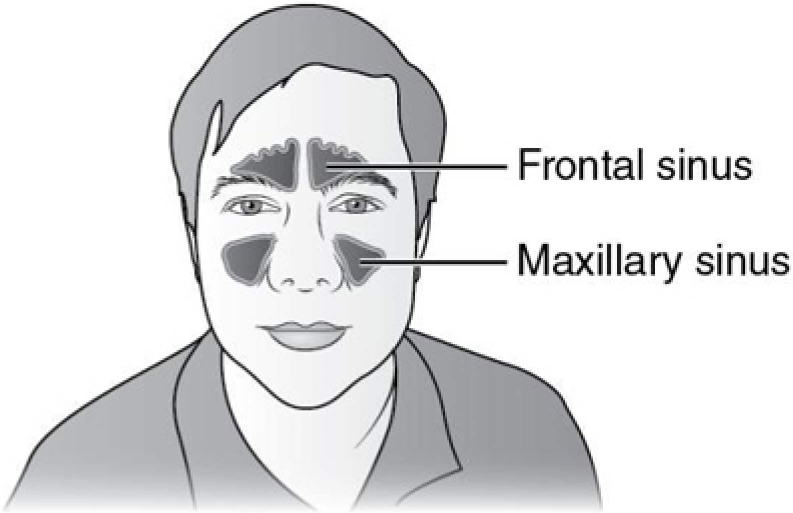


FIG. 157 Location of the sinuses in the front of the skull and the face.

A person suffering from sinusitis should avoid rapid changes in ambient external pressure (such as scuba diving or air travel in unpressurized aircraft). If you use a neti pot or other vessel to perform nasal irrigation, be aware that there is a risk for bacterial contamination, such as from *Staphylococcus aureus*, particularly if the vessel has been used previously by you or another person. Tap water that is safe for drinking is not safe for using with a neti pot. Use only distilled or sterile (previously heated to at least 166.6°F (47°C) or previously boiled water. Rinse the neti pot after each use and allow it to air dry. Inhaling steam is not recommended for treatment of sinusitis; there is also the obvious risk of creating a burn injury.

Throat

Sore throat and tonsillitis

Sore throat (pharyngitis) is a common complication of viral infections (the common cold, infectious mononucleosis associated with Epstein-Barr virus), breathing dry air ("altitude throat"), or primary bacterial throat infection ("strep throat"). Symptoms of an infection include pain with swallowing, fever, swollen lymph nodes ("swollen glands") in the anterior neck, red throat, swollen tonsils, pus over the tonsils and throat (Fig. 158), headache, fatigue, chills, fever, abdominal pain, and nausea and vomiting. Sometimes a person with streptococcal pharyngitis will have a fine, red skin rash, which usually spares the face and is known as scarlet fever.

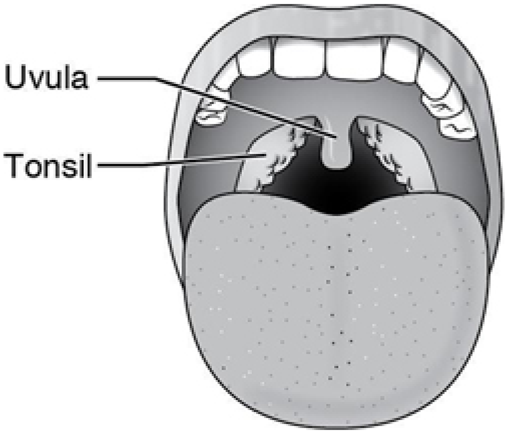


FIG. 158 Inflamed tonsils.

Because the symptoms of a viral throat and tonsil infection and a bacterial strep (group A streptococcus [GAS, or *Streptococcus pyogenes*]) throat are frequently identical, it is hard to make the differentiation without a throat-swab "rapid strep test" or bacterial culture. Below 3 years of age, a child rarely has a strep throat; in young adults, the presence of strep throat in the presence of classic symptoms (fever, pus, and swollen tonsils and lymph glands in the neck) is roughly 50%. However, because the risk for potential complications (heart disease [rheumatic fever], ear infection, peritonsillar abscess [see below]) from an untreated strep throat outweigh the complications of antibiotic use, it is advisable to treat persons older than 3 years of age (and particularly ages 3 to 15 years) with penicillin V or amoxicillin–clavulanate for a full 10-day course. Persons who are allergic to penicillin can take cefadroxil, cephalexin, or clindamycin for a full 10-day course, or azithromycin or clarithromycin for 5 days. Erythromycin for 10 days is fine, but might cause more gastrointestinal side effects than does azithromycin or clarithromycin. Even if the victim improves after 2 to 3 days, the antibiotic should be taken for the full course. Treating with antibiotics does not appear to reduce the risk for developing kidney disease (glomerulonephritis) after suffering streptococcal pharyngitis. Note that if the cause of the sore throat is mononucleosis (see page 218), treating with amoxicillin will very likely cause a bumpy spotted red skin rash, which is not an allergic reaction.

Adjuncts to care include saltwater gargles (½ teaspoon [2.5 mL] of table salt in 1 cup [237 mL] of warm water), throat lozenges, warm fluids (to moisten and soothe the throat), and aspirin or acetaminophen to control fever. *To avoid Reye syndrome (postviral encephalopathy and liver failure), do not use aspirin to control fever in a child under age 17.*

If a person develops an acute sore throat that rapidly becomes extremely uncomfortable (severe pain, difficulty swallowing), a single oral dose of dexamethasone (0.6 mg/kg of body weight, to a maximum of 16 mg for a child) may be given along with an antibiotic, assuming the victim can swallow the medications. This might help decrease inflammation and somewhat hasten resolution of symptoms but should not be given routinely for a "nontoxic," or run-of-the-mill, sore throat. *If someone with a sore throat has a high fever associated with difficult or noisy breathing, altered (e.g., hoarse) or muffled voice ("like talking with a potato in their mouth"), drooling, increasing difficulty opening the mouth or swallowing, stiff neck, or any visible swelling (bulging) in the back of the throat, they should be made as comfortable as possible and transported immediately to a hospital.* Such a condition might indicate an abscess in the back of the throat or next to a tonsil (peritonsillar abscess), infection and inflammation of the epiglottis (epiglottitis), or massively swollen tonsils. Any of these might rapidly obstruct the airway. If the uvula is swollen, this might be due to an infection or form of severe allergic reaction and is similarly an emergency. If evacuation to emergency care is not possible and an infection is suspected, administer the antibiotics one would use for a strep throat (see page 216).

If a person develops tender swelling under the tongue and/or under the chin, particularly associated with swollen lymph glands in the neck, fever, difficulty swallowing, and foul breath, this might indicate an infection in the floor of the mouth. Treat the victim with an antibiotic as for a strep throat and seek immediate physician consultation.

A sore throat can be caused by overgrowth of the fungus *Candida albicans,* which leads to a condition known as “thrush.” This occurs most commonly in persons who are immunosuppressed, have recently taken broad-spectrum antibiotics, use inhaled or oral steroids, wear dentures or orthodontic appliances, have diabetes, or are elders. Symptoms include burning in the mouth and throat, white patches on the palate and in the mouth and throat, painful swallowing, heartburn, drooling, and loss of appetite. If thrush is suspected, it can be treated with nystatin (Mycostatin) oral suspension, swished and swallowed four times a day for 2 weeks, or with nystatin oral lozenges four to five times daily for 2 weeks. Another therapy is oral fluconazole 100 mg by mouth twice a day for 14 days, or itraconazole 100 to 200 mg daily for 7 days.

Infectious mononucleosis

Mononucleosis (“mono”) is a viral (Epstein-Barr virus) disease that most often afflicts persons in the second decade of life and is commonly transmitted through infectious saliva (“kissing disease”). The normal incubation period is 30 to 50 days. Mononucleosis is characterized by low-grade (less than 101°F, or 38.3°C) fever, sore throat, swollen lymph glands (mostly in the neck, but occasionally in the armpits and/or in the groin), headache, fatigue, and, occasionally, skin rash (including dark spots on the roof of the mouth), dark urine, muscle aching, and an enlarged spleen. Treatment consists of increased rest (it sometimes requires weeks for a normal energy level to return) and elimination of any physical activity that requires heavy exertion or risks abdominal injury (and thus rupture of the spleen) for at least 3 weeks after the onset of symptoms or 3 weeks after the date that fever disappears. The diagnosis is confirmed by a blood test; until that can be performed to confirm the presence of mononucleosis, it is reasonable to treat the victim for a possible strep throat (see page 216). Infected people should avoid sharing eating utensils and towels. Note that if the cause of a sore throat is mononucleosis, treating with amoxicillin will very likely cause a bumpy spotted red skin rash, which is not an allergic reaction.

Food stuck in the throat or esophagus

If food becomes stuck in the throat or esophagus, it can be quite disconcerting. So long as the victim can breathe and speak easily, there is not an airway problem (see page 18). Ask the victim to swallow sips of liquid. Sometimes the food will soften over a few hours and pass to the stomach. If the food object feels sharp and stuck in the back of the mouth or throat, use a wooden tongue blade or handle of an eating implement (e.g., spoon) to push down the tongue and try to see it. If that is possible, it can perhaps be grasped with a long tweezers or loosened from its position by rubbing with a cotton-tipped swab. Often, what feels like a bone stuck in the throat is a scratch. So long as the victim can swallow liquids successfully and remain hydrated, it is fine to wait overnight to see if the foreign body sensation disappears.

Common cold

See page 225.

Mouth and teeth (dental)

Fever blisters (cold sores)

Crops of blisters on the face, mouth, and lips that break out in times of stress (viral illness, emotional crisis, intense sun exposure) are often caused by reactivated herpes simplex virus (usually HSV-1). The blisters often weep and might become infected. If no topical medications are available, keep the blisters clean and dry. If the skin cracks and becomes painful, the blisters can be lubricated with bacitracin or mupirocin ointment. Cool compresses might help. Anesthetic ointment (e.g., lidocaine) or solution (see page 496) can be used. An effective topical treatment is an equal mixture of kaolin-pectin (Kaopectate) and diphenhydramine (Benadryl) elixir, with or without added 2% viscous lidocaine, to coat the area. Further sun exposure should be prevented with an adequate lip sunscreen (see page 251) of sun protection factor (SPF) 20 or greater.

Untreated, the lesions will disappear spontaneously in 10 to 15 days. Penciclovir 1% (Denavir) cream applied to the skin or lips every 2 hours while awake for 4 days can be prescribed to hasten resolution of the blisters. Alternatively, apply acyclovir (Zovirax) ointment thinly five times a day for a week. Another treatment is acyclovir 200 mg by mouth five times a day, or 400 mg three times a day, for 7 days. If the oral medication method is selected, consider valacyclovir (Valtrex) 2 g twice a day for 1 day, or famciclovir (Famvir) 500 mg by mouth twice a day for 7 days.

All herpes viruses are contagious. During times of visible blisters, eating and drinking utensils should not be shared. No kissing! To maximize prevention, use a high-SPF sunscreen and consider taking acyclovir (Zovirax) (400 mg twice daily by mouth) the day before and during intense UV light exposure. Docosanol (Abreva) cream applied to the skin at the onset of the prodrome of itching or burning (recognized by the sufferer) at the affected skin site may very slightly decrease the time to healing.

Canker (mouth) sores (aphthous ulcers or stomatitis)

These painful gray-white round or oval patches with reddened (inflamed) edges form inside the mouth and can be associated with viral infections or an immune response to an infection or disease. They can be initiated by minor trauma, such as occurs with dentures or orthodontic braces, or by certain food allergies. Usually, they are a chronic problem. Untreated, they last for 10 to 14 days. There are many different recommended therapies:

- Apply anesthetic lidocaine ointment 2.5% for a minute or two before eating to temporarily eliminate the pain.
- Swish and spit the antacid Maalox.
- Apply the anesthetic 20% benzocaine (HurriCaine, Beutlich Pharmaceuticals), which can be conveniently applied from a prepackaged dry handle swab.
- Apply lidocaine viscous gel 5% to ulcers four times daily for 2 weeks or until ulcers heal.
- Apply antiinflammatory amlexanox 5% oral paste (Aphthasol) four times a day to the affected area after brushing teeth for 2 weeks or until the ulcers heal.
- Apply a pinch of powdered alum (as in a styptic pencil) to initiate healing.
- Apply the topical bioadhesive carmellose (Orabase) four times daily for 2 weeks or until ulcers heal.
- A physician might advise one of these remedies: apply topical tetracycline or sucralfate; apply a mixture of fluocinonide 0.05% cream (Metosyn) and Orabase to the ulcer four times per day; or apply triamcinolone dental paste 1% (Adcortyl, or Kenalog in Orabase) to the ulcer four times per day.

The inside of the mouth should be rinsed thoroughly after eating to prevent food from becoming trapped in the sores. Antimicrobial mouthwashes, such as those containing chlorhexidine gluconate (0.12% or 0.2%), used three times daily might help prevent the onset of new sores. Triclosan is an antibacterial, antiinflammatory chemical contained in toothpaste (Colgate Total) that in certain circumstances might reduce the incidence of aphthous ulcers. Tell the sufferer to avoid spicy, acidic, or abrasive food. Any new sore in the mouth of an elderly person or frequent user of tobacco should be seen by a physician, who must consider a precancerous lesion or oral cancer.

Salivary gland infection/inflammation

The parotid gland is located in front of the ear, the submandibular gland is located under the jawbone, and the sublingual glands are between the tongue and the bottom of the mouth. These salivary glands, which manufacture saliva, might become infected, inflamed, and/or obstructed. This causes pain and swelling (with or without bad-tasting drainage into the mouth), fever, and chills. The pain and swelling might be worse after eating, which is a sign of obstruction. If inflammation/infection is suspected, have the person stay well hydrated, suck on hard candies (particularly lemon drops or flavors that promote salivation) or lozenges, and take amoxicillin-clavulanate or clindamycin for 7 to 10 days.

Black tongue

Black "hairy" discoloration of the tongue can be caused by excessive growth of the papillae of the tongue. It can be associated with topical or systemic antibiotics, poor mouth and dental hygiene, smoking, drinking alcohol, or even certain mouthwashes. Usually, the only symptom is the discoloration, but some patients suffer nausea, bad breath, or altered taste of food. Treatment consists of brushing the tongue with a soft toothbrush. Black hairy tongue may be due to the presence of yeast (e.g., *Candida albicans*) infection and/or use of certain medications, such as bismuth (found in Pepto-Bismol) or doxycycline. If the discoloration does not resolve spontaneously, it can be treated with clotrimazole (10 mg troche dissolved in the mouth five times a day for 14 days) or with a 3-day treatment of fluconazole (150 mg by mouth once a day). "Geographic tongue" is a red, flat, and round (or oval) area with a white rim that appears to move around on the tongue. It is present in a low percentage of the normal population and does not require treatment if it is asymptomatic, which is usually the case. Symptoms include pain or a burning sensation triggered by eating acidic or spicy foods. Any abnormality of the tongue or inside of the mouth should be evaluated at least one time by a physician to be certain that it is not an infection or cancer.

Sore lips

Sore lips can have a variety of causes, usually related to being dry and sun exposed. This condition can be prevented by a sunscreen-containing lip balm, such as ChapStick. If the skin at the angles of the mouth appears to be red and sore, particularly if there are small cracks in the skin, a person can apply a topical antifungal cream, such as ciclopirox olamine 0.77% (Loprox), followed in 3 hours by a topical steroid cream or ointment. Follow this routine once a day for a few days until the situation improves, then switch to ChapStick or something similar.

Toothaches and tooth inflammation/infections

Toothaches occur most often in teeth that are decayed or have lost fillings. In this manner, the central pulp, which carries nerves and blood vessels, becomes inflamed (pulpitis). Symptoms of tooth inflammation or infection include pain in the tooth and jaw that occasionally travels into the neck and ear, pain on contact with cold or hot food or beverage, and headache. Sometimes it is difficult to localize the problem to a specific tooth, since it might not be sensitive when it is tapped. To identify the culprit tooth, apply an ice cube sequentially to each tooth until you elicit a painful reaction. Pain medication appropriate for the degree of suffering should be administered. Have the victim keep their head elevated. If a dental caries (eventually a "cavity" caused by decay) is early, it can be a brown or discolored area that is sensitive to cold for a minute or so after exposure. This can be treated with a high-fluoride or antisensitivity toothpaste and good oral hygiene.

If it hurts to bite down on a tooth, but nothing is obvious on inspection of it, there might be inflammation of the supporting structures. In this case, the victim can point to the affected tooth, or feel pain when you tap on a particular tooth. Treatment is a soft diet, pain medication, and something like a strip of leather positioned on the nonpainful (opposite) side to bite down upon, to create a space and prevent pressure on the affected tooth.

If an abscess (infection) (see page 262) develops in the root of the tooth or in the gum, there might be associated fever; swelling of the gum, jaw, or palate; and swollen lymph glands under the jaw and in the neck. If the abscess extends, the cheek and side of the face might swell. The victim should be started on penicillin, metronidazole, cephalexin, clindamycin, or erythromycin and given appropriate pain medication. If there is a soft, pointing abscess in the gum adjacent to a tooth and the victim is suffering, the abscess can be punctured with a scalpel or knife and drained (Fig. 159). Hold snow or ice against the gum to provide some anesthesia before the incision. A gauze or cotton wick should be placed into the abscess cavity for a day or two (see page 264). After this procedure, the area should be rinsed with salt water after each meal, at least four times a day.

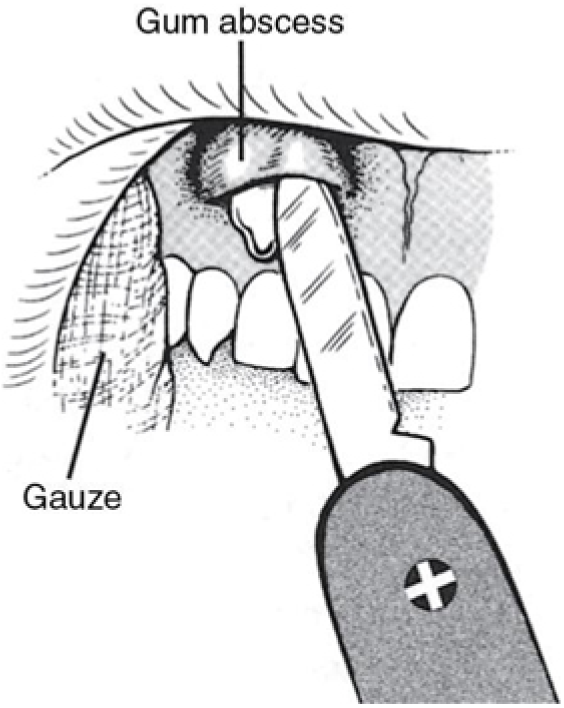


FIG. 159 Incision and drainage of a gum abscess.

To temporarily treat a cavity (decay) or site of a lost filling, dry the affected tooth carefully with cotton. Next, apply a cotton pad moistened with oil of cloves (eugenol) to the tooth cavity. In a pinch, you can use vanilla extract. Take care to keep eugenol off the gums, lips, and inside surfaces of the cheeks. Alternatively, topical benzocaine (Anbesol) can be applied to the gums. The patient needs to be taken to a dentist to have the tooth repaired or removed.

Another remedy for a cavity caused by decay or a lost filling is to fill the cavity with temporary filling material from a dental kit. Such materials include Cavit, which requires no mixing. It is applied directly to the tooth, using a wetted toothpick or cotton-tipped applicator as a packing and shaping instrument. Cavit is easiest to use if it is rolled a bit between the fingers in order to become warm and remain soft. Be sure to apply the material in between the teeth if there is a defect present in that location. Excess material can be removed by flossing. Intermediate restorative material (IRM) is prepared by adding a few drops of eugenol to powdered zinc oxide to make as dry a “dough” as possible. Zinc oxide–eugenol combination cements are advantageous in that they have an anesthetic effect and can be mixed to different consistencies, depending on whether they are to be used as filling material or adhesives. However, the eugenol can leak from its container, and the cement is sticky and more difficult to work with than Cavit. Temporary fillings such as these set after exposure to saliva and usually must be replaced every few days. Another improvised filling is softened candle wax mixed with a few strands of cotton fiber, applied over a drop or two of eugenol.

If the gum line is inflamed or appears to be infected adjacent to a tooth, you can try to “break up” the infection by flossing vigorously or running a toothpick (probe) down into the space between the tooth and gum line. Administer an antibiotic, such as penicillin, metronidazole, or clindamycin.

Pericoronitis is an infection of the gum flap that overlies a tooth that has only partially advanced (“erupted”) into the mouth. This is most common with a lower third molar and usually indicates an infection with *Streptococcus* bacteria. Symptoms include pain and a bad taste in the mouth. The treatment is to scrape and clean underneath and around the flap, initiate warm saltwater (½ teaspoon salt in 1 cup of water) rinses every 2 hours, and if the area is reddened such that it appears infected, begin the victim on dicloxacillin, clindamycin, cefuroxime, or erythromycin. Another good mouthwash would contain chlorhexidine 0.2%.

Good oral hygiene is the key to avoiding many tooth and gum problems. Teeth should be brushed twice a day using a soft-bristled toothbrush with a fluoride-containing toothpaste. Spit out excess toothpaste. Many experts recommend side-to-side brushing in the front of the teeth, and up-and-down brushing on the back surfaces. Flossing should be done at least once per day. Carry an antisensitivity toothpaste, such as Sensodyne.

Broken, displaced, or lost tooth

If a tooth is cracked (with the root still present and in place), there is little for the victim to do other than keep their mouth clean and avoid contact with extremes of temperature. If air, saliva, the tongue, or temperature change coming into contact with an exposed nerve causes intolerable pain, a temporary cap (shield) can be created by mixing melted paraffin (candle wax) with a few strands of cotton. When the mixture begins to harden but can still be easily molded, press a wad onto the tooth, using the teeth on either side as anchors. A cap can also be fashioned from Cavit or IRM (see earlier instructions).

If a tooth is broken or a crown falls off, apply a little eugenol to the tooth for immediate pain control. For a displaced crown, determine its proper orientation and then press it back onto the tooth and see if the crown will hold without cement. If not, it will need to be replaced with an adhesive. First, carefully clean the inside of the crown, to remove any particles of old dried adhesive. This can be done by scraping with a safety pin or other similar object. Then, determine its proper orientation on the tooth. Dry the inside of the crown using a bit of cotton or tissue. Then, mix up a small amount of TempBond NE (a self-curing composite dental material) on top of a slightly waxy or other nonadherent surface and then apply it to the inside of the crown. Dry the top of the tooth. Reposition the crown and push it firmly onto the tooth. Have the victim bite down gently but firmly on a piece of cloth or gauze to be certain that the crown is pushed all the way back onto the tooth and is not elevated. If the bite is not proper, then this will cause problems such as a broken crown or underlying tooth. The TempBond NE will harden within the mouth in a minute or two. If TempBond NE is not available, apply a dab of Cavit and use it as a fastener, scraping away the excess. If that is not available, a dab of toothpaste will do. If all else fails, cover the tooth with paraffin or dental wax.

If a tooth is shifted out of its normal position, but is still embedded in the gum, it might need to be repositioned. If the tooth appears to be longer or off to one side, use a gloved hand, firmly grasp the tooth, and move it into proper alignment. If the tooth has been pushed into the gum and appears to be too short, do not move the tooth.

If an adult tooth is knocked cleanly out of the socket, it can sometimes be replaced successfully if the victim can reach a dentist within 2 hours. After that time, there is little hope for salvage of that tooth. Do not attempt to replace baby teeth. The best treatment for a tooth that has been out of the socket for 15 minutes or less is to *gently* rinse it clean (do not scrub the root of the tooth; handle it by the crown to avoid injuring the delicate periodontal ligament) and reinsert it with firm pressure into the socket to the level of the adjacent tooth. One way to improve alignment is to have the victim bite down gently on a piece of gauze or cloth after the tooth has been inserted.

Once the tooth is in proper position, it can be held in place by using a string or piece of dental floss to tie the affected tooth first to the tooth on one side of it, and then with a separate tie, to the tooth on the other side (Fig. 160). Another method is to splint the tooth in place by fashioning a paraffin bridge or cap to the adjacent tooth. The bridge material should be applied to the front and back of the tooth, but not to where it contacts the occluding (e.g., lower versus upper) tooth. A better material for this purpose is Express Putty, which hardens within 4 minutes after equal amounts of the putty base and catalyst are mixed. Coe-Pak is also used for this purpose. A splint can be fashioned from a small piece of wire or thin, smooth-edged metal and attached using 2-octyl cyanoacrylate (e.g., DERMABOND ADVANCED Topical Skin Adhesive) or Super Glue to the front of the replaced tooth and at least one adjacent tooth on each side (Fig. 161). TempBond NE becomes brittle when it hardens, so is not optimal to use for this purpose. Dry the surfaces of the teeth before applying the glue. The splint should be left in place for 2 weeks. Daily hygiene should include gentle brushing with a soft toothbrush after each meal, and chlorhexidine 0.1% or other mouthwash rinse twice a day for 1 week.

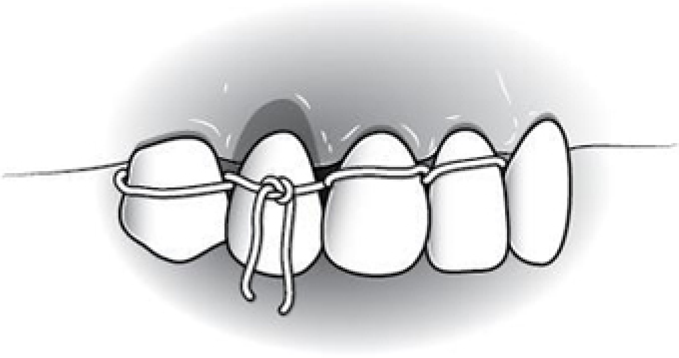


FIG. 160 Tying a repositioned avulsed tooth in place with string or dental floss.

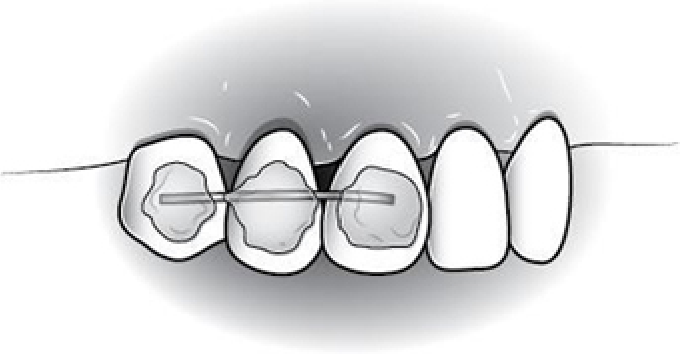


FIG. 161 Holding a tooth next to an adjacent tooth using a splint and glue.

The best storage solution for a tooth that has been knocked out and will be carried to a dentist is pH (acid-base) balanced (i.e., Hank's balanced salt solution). This is accompanied by a cushion to prevent injury to the microscopic ligament cells that hold the tooth in place and must reattach for the tooth to "take." The Save-A-Tooth or EMT Toothsaver storage device is recommended.

Alternatively, the tooth can be placed in a container and covered with a small amount of cool, pasteurized whole milk (not yogurt, low-fat milk, or powdered milk) for transport. Do not carry the tooth on a dry cloth or paper. Do not soak the tooth in tap water. A tooth can also be rinsed and carried by the victim in the space between their lower lip and lower gum (taking care not to swallow the tooth), although saliva is not particularly good for the periodontal ligament. *Do not place a tooth back into the socket unless an antibiotic (penicillin 500 mg four times a day or clindamycin 150 mg three times a day for 1 week) can be administered to avoid an infection, and tetanus toxoid given if necessary.*

If the socket of a broken, extracted, or lost tooth continues to bleed, apply direct pressure by having the victim bite on a gauze pack for at least 30 minutes. If there is a large blood clot, remove it manually or by rinsing, and then apply pressure. Keep the head elevated. If the bleeding does not stop after holding pressure for 30 to 45 minutes, biting on a dry tea bag (tannic acid) might help. Avoid sucking liquids through a straw or vigorous spitting, either of which might dislodge a blood clot that has formed in the socket. Once the bleeding is stopped, avoid rinsing, spitting, tooth brushing, and tobacco use for 24 hours. Gentle rinses with warm saltwater can be started after that time period.

"Dry socket" might occur 2 to 4 days after a tooth is extracted intentionally or accidentally lost. This is characterized by pain, foul odor, and a bad taste. Inspection of the tooth socket might show exposed bone. Treatment is gentle saltwater rinses followed by packing with a strip of eugenol-soaked gauze. The pack should be changed every 1 to 2 days until the symptoms are relieved, which might take up to 10 days. Another way to fill the socket and achieve pain relief is to use a paste of zinc oxide (Alvogyl) mixed with a crushed aspirin and a few drops of eugenol. This should be left in place by covering with a gauze or small piece of cloth for a couple of hours. Yet another anesthetic is topical diphenhydramine (Benadryl), which can be obtained by opening a capsule of the drug intended for oral administration. The powder should be carefully sprinkled into the socket and held in place with gauze. Note that if the powder distributes inside the mouth, areas of contact might become numb. During the recovery period, do not ingest alcohol or carbonated beverages. Taking 4 g of vitamin C by mouth each day has been cited to hasten recovery.

Wearing a properly fitted mouthguard is recommended if there is a high risk for injury to the teeth and the mouthguard will not inhibit success at the activity. Athletes wear them during contact sports, and they are also used by mountain cyclists and stunt skiers.

Temporomandibular joint syndrome

The temporomandibular joint (TMJ)—where the jaw hinges into the face—can become tender if the jaw is struck, from forceful chewing or yawning, or from grinding the teeth at night. If this joint becomes irritated, the pain can be extremely distracting. Therapy consists of an NSAID, warm packs, and avoiding foods (such as beef jerky) that are difficult to chew. Do not chew gum or open the mouth excessively wide.

Mouth ulcer (canker sore)

See page 219.

Trench mouth

Trench mouth is an extreme case of gingivitis, in which a person's gums are severely inflamed. They are red in appearance and bleed easily. This is most caused by poor oral hygiene, with or without concomitant poor nutrition. There might be a gray membrane between the teeth, and the teeth are often loose. Treatment is administration of oral tetracycline, doxycycline, penicillin, or erythromycin for 10 days, plus using antiseptic (e.g., chlorhexidine) mouthwash (swish and spit four times a day) combined with exquisite oral hygiene.

Broken or snagged braces

If a piece of skin or tongue becomes snagged in a sharp orthodontia wire, you need to use your ingenuity to unhook the skin. Sometimes this can be done by manipulating the lip(s) externally to slide them off the wire. You might need to use a forceps or tiny-tipped pliers to do the job. If you are successful, try to prevent the situation from happening again by carefully (do not break teeth) bending over any exposed sharp-edged wire so that it is facing inward toward the teeth, and then cover any rough or sharp exposed metal with wax, cotton, or even chewing gum. If a wire is loose and cannot be fixed into a non-irritating position, you might decide to remove it by cutting or breaking, taking extreme care to have a firm grip on it during the process so that it cannot be inhaled or swallowed.

Upper respiratory disorders

Common cold

Most "colds" are upper respiratory tract infections caused by one of a host (at least 200) of viruses. It is not true that exposure to a cold climate ("catching a chill") causes a cold. Symptoms include runny nose, cough, sore throat, headache, muscle aches, fever, fatigue, weakness, and occasional nausea with vomiting and/or diarrhea. Unfortunately, there is no cure for the common cold. The best medicine is rest (although mild exercise might make you feel better), increased fluid intake to prevent dehydration and loosen secretions, and acetaminophen or aspirin for fever. *To avoid Reye syndrome (postviral encephalopathy and liver failure), don't use aspirin to control fever in a child under age 17. Use acetaminophen in preference to ibuprofen.*

Keep the victim warm (particularly the feet) and dry. For persons ages 6 years and older, treat nasal congestion with an oral decongestant and nasal spray (use the latter for 3 days maximum). Be aware that an oral decongestant can make a child hyperactive. For an infant, use saline nose drops (¼ teaspoon [1.3 mL] of table salt in 1 cup [237 mL] of water) in a dose of two to three drops in each nostril a few times a day; the child will sneeze, or the drops can drain via gravity or be sucked out with a "baby bulb" syringe. When blowing your nose, be gentle, in order to avoid pushing mucus from the nose up into the sinuses.

A person who breathes steam (which has not been proved to improve a common cold) must be careful to avoid burns. There is no scientific evidence to support the use of chest rubs or megavitamins (specifically, vitamin C) in the prevention or diminution of viral illnesses. Probably the most important factor in rehabilitation is adequate rest.

Don't attempt to "sweat out" a cold with vigorous exercise. Such behavior causes worsened fever, dehydration, and debilitation. A person with a cold should see a doctor if they are ill for more than 3 weeks, their temperature elevation becomes extreme (see page 188), they develop a cough productive of yellow-green or darkened phlegm (see pages 55 and 227), or they develop chest pain associated with breathing, shaking chills, a severe earache, or a headache with a stiff neck (see page 196). Since colds are spread by contact, take particular care to wash and gel your hands after contact with an infected person.

The most common complication of a cold in a child is a middle ear infection. If a young child with a runny nose and cough begins to pull at their ear(s) or if a fever returns near the end of the course of a cold, consider treating the child for otitis media (see page 198). Pneumonia can also be a complication (see page 55). It should be suspected in any young child who appears short of breath (respiratory rate above 30 per minute in a child, or 40 per minute in an infant).

A cold can be differentiated from seasonal allergies based on the following: cold—fever, chills, yellowish or green nasal discharge, sore throat, diarrhea, muscle aches; allergies—clear nasal discharge, repetitive sneezing, watery and itchy eyes.

Someone who has a chronic (lasts longer than 3 weeks) cough not clearly associated with a cold or other viral infection of the respiratory tract, who is coughing up blood, or who has another known problem such as pneumonia or lung cancer should seek the attention of a physician. The most common causes of a chronic cough are cigarette smoking, postnasal drip (often stimulated by seasonal allergies), unsuspected asthma, lung disease (such as chronic obstructive pulmonary disease [COPD]—see page 54), chronic sinus infection, or acid reflux from the stomach into the esophagus. In addition, persons who take angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors to treat high blood pressure might develop a cough; this usually disappears a few days after the medicine is discontinued.

A U.S. FOOD AND DRUG ADMINISTRATION ADVISORY PANEL IN 2007 RECOMMENDED THAT THERE IS NO EVIDENCE THAT OVER-THE-COUNTER COLD AND COUGH MEDICINES WORK IN CHILDREN AND THAT THE PRODUCTS SHOULD NOT BE GIVEN TO CHILDREN YOUNGER THAN 6 YEARS OF AGE.

Influenza

The influenza viruses (A, B, and C, with A being the most common and likely to cause sporadic pandemics; A and B cause seasonal epidemics; C generally causes mild disease) are responsible for a predominately respiratory disease. Variants of influenza A are known according to the host species (e.g., humans, swine, birds, horses) in which the viruses are most commonly found. In temperate climates, influenza is a cold weather disease. The illness (3 to 8 days' duration) is recognized by sudden high fever, chills, sore throat, cough, nasal congestion and runny nose, headache, painful eye movements, reddened and/or watery eyes, aversion to light, muscle aches, weakness, lack of appetite, and occasional (more common in children) nausea with vomiting and/or diarrhea. Children with influenza can have higher fever or febrile (with fever) seizures, more common gastrointestinal symptoms, calf muscle soreness, and croup. "Stomach flu" is a misnomer, because it is not caused by influenza virus, but rather, by other viruses and bacteria. Influenza is distinguished from a common cold by its intensity, particularly of the headache and muscle aches. The virus is transmitted from person to person via virus-laden aerosol, large droplets (greater than 5 microns in diameter), and residual virus on surfaces (for up to 48 hours) generated when infected persons cough or sneeze or touch surfaces upon which the virus has come to rest. The incubation period is 1 to 3 days before a person becomes contagious, after which they shed virus for up to another week, with peak shedding during the first 2 days of manifest illness. Therefore, persons might be contagious for 1 to 2 days prior to themselves manifestly becoming ill.

In persons older than 60 years, the abrupt onset of fever and cough is highly suggestive for influenza. Elderly or infirm individuals are at greatest risk for becoming severely debilitated or developing complications, such as pneumonia caused by bacteria. General therapy is the same as that for a cold: rest, adequate nutrition, increased fluid intake, and medicine for fever.

Influenza illness (fever, muscle aches, cough, fatigue) often last for up to a week, but might last longer. It can also directly cause viral pneumonia or injure the lung so that it is more vulnerable to follow-on bacterial infection. The heart might become inflamed or infected.

Vaccines are prepared each year based on the prevailing types of influenza that are somewhat effective in the prevention of types A (which mutates frequently) and B influenza. The vaccines become effective in preventing influenza 10 to 14 days after being administered. They are approximately 60% effective in preventing the illness. Oseltamivir phosphate (Tamiflu) is a drug that is used for treatment of influenza types A and B for 5 days. In adults who have been ill for no more than 2 days, it is given in an adult oral dose of 75 mg twice daily. The pediatric dose is based on age and weight. For a child aged 2 weeks to 12 years: weight less than 15 kg, 30 mg twice daily; 15 to 23 kg, 45 mg twice daily; 23 to 40 kg, 60 mg twice daily; weight greater than 40 kg or age greater than 12 years, 75 mg twice daily. For prevention of influenza, use the same dose once a day for 10 days. An alternative is zanamivir (Relenza) 10 mg inhaled twice a day for (1) treatment of persons older than 7 years of age for 5 days and (2) inhaled once a day for prevention for persons older than 5 years of age for 10 days. Persons at high risk (for severe influenza or complications) who should be treated with oseltamivir or zanamivir are children younger than 5 years of age (particularly younger than 2 years of age), adults older than 65 years of age, persons with chronic diseases (lung, heart, kidney, liver), diabetics, immunosuppressed, pregnant or within 2 weeks of having given birth, on chronic aspirin therapy, American Indians, Alaskan natives, morbidly obese, or residents of nursing homes or long-term care facilities. It should be noted that some experts have called into question the true benefit of treating influenza with oseltamivir or zanamivir, doubting whether the minimal reduction in duration of illness justifies the side effects and expense. So, recommendations for use of these drugs might change.

During an epidemic, victims have in the past benefited from administration of the oral drug rimantadine 200 mg by mouth daily for 5 to 7 days in adults, and 5 mg/kg of body weight per day (up to 150 mg) for 5 to 7 days in children. An alternative was amantadine in a dose of 100 mg twice daily for 5 days in adults, or 2.2 mg/kg of body weight (up to 75 mg) twice daily for 5 days in children. Note that these two medications are available by prescription for the prevention and treatment of type A influenza because they are ineffective against type B. They are also associated with several toxic effects and influenza viruses in the United States have become highly resistant to them, so they are no longer recommended. They are mentioned here in the event that you find yourself in a situation outside of the United States where these are the only drugs available during an epidemic.

Influenza A can be treated with the “neuraminidase inhibitors” zanamivir or oseltamivir, the former in a dose of 75 mg and the latter in a dose of 150 mg by mouth twice a day for 10 days. They are most effective when given early, preferably within the first 2 days of clinical presentation.

H3N2 influenza virus currently causes epidemics of severe disease. Undoubtedly, new strains of influenza A, such as H7N9, will continue to emerge, linked to animal origins and reservoirs for the viruses. They might eventually cause pandemics.

Influenza B less frequently causes severe disease, but it is certainly possible, usually in the form of heart disease. The two lineages of influenza B that circulate in the general population are Victoria-like and Yamagata-like.

With regard to protective masks, a properly fitted N95 (“surgical”) or P100 face mask is supposed to have at least a 95% filtration capability at filtering a 0.3-micron droplet, which carries the virus, but not the virus particles individually.

Bronchitis

Bronchitis is inflammation of the air passages (bronchi), characterized by cough that persists for more than 5 days, production of sputum (clear [white], yellow or green phlegm, or “secretions”), fever, hoarseness, muscle aches, fatigue, and sometimes wheezing. Pneumonia is much more intense than bronchitis and involves severe, progressive pulmonary deterioration; bronchitis is a less debilitating condition. Cigarette smokers are prone to recurrent bouts of bronchitis, because they repetitively paralyze the defense mechanisms of the nose, throat, and lungs with cigarette smoke, and might have scarred lungs. Viruses and bacteria might cause bronchitis.

Treatment is controversial, since in the absence of a documented bacterial infection, no therapy has been shown to shorten the duration of bronchitis. If bronchitis persists for more than 2 to 3 weeks (particularly in persons who smoke cigarettes), or if the sputum changes in color from clear (white) to colored, then therapy can include administration of an oral antibiotic (first choice amoxicillin–clavulanate, azithromycin, or levofloxacin; others include moxifloxacin, amoxicillin, erythromycin, doxycycline, cefixime, cefpodoxime, cefprozil, or trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole). With or without antibiotics, normal fluid intake, inhalation of humidified warm air (taking care to avoid steam burns) in order to loosen secretions and ease coughing, a drug to loosen secretions (e.g., guaifenesin [Mucinex] 600 mg by mouth every 12 hours), and acetaminophen or aspirin (the latter not for children under age 17 years) for fever might diminish symptoms. Oral steroids should not be used to treat bronchitis. It is best to allow the victim to cough up secretions; however, if coughing fits become intolerable, a cough medicine (see page 495) can be used. Dextromethorphan is therefore often more effective than guaifenesin, which does not control coughing. A 7-day course of inhaled or oral corticosteroids might help. If wheezing and shortness of breath are problematic, an inhaled bronchodilator, such as albuterol, can be used. If pneumonia is suspected (see page 55), treat appropriately and seek immediate medical attention.

Pleuritis

The lining of the lung, or pleura, is two layers of tissue separated by a thin film of lubricating fluid, which allows the lung to expand with a gliding motion when the chest wall moves outward during inhalation. When the pleura is irritated by an infection, most often caused by a virus, the inflammation might allow fluid to accumulate in this space and cause pain with breathing, localized to the area of irritation. The pain is sharp and worsened by a cough or deep breath. The treatment for viral pleuritis is rest and aspirin. Encourage the victim to breathe deeply. If they are weak or have a high fever, suspect deterioration into pneumonia (see page 55).

Hay fever

Hay fever (“rose fever,” “catarrh”) is an allergic reaction, usually seasonal (hence the term “seasonal allergic rhinitis”) to dust, animal dander, plant (usually ragweed, sage, trees, and grasses) pollens, or other compounds found in the air. The victim suffers from red, itchy, and watery (from excessive tearing) eyes; swollen eyelids; white, ropey mucus discharge from the eyes; a runny nose with large amounts of clear mucus; irritated nose with or without nasal congestion; sneezing; and general misery. In a severe case, a victim might suffer asthma, sinusitis, loss of smell, and fatigue. Fever is not a component.

Nasal steroid sprays (such as fluticasone propionate 0.05% [Flonase], budesonide 32 mcg nasal spray [Rhinocort Aqua], or beclomethasone dipropionate [Beconase]) alone are a recommended method for initially treating seasonal allergic rhinitis characterized by nasal blockage, runny nose, itching and sneezing in persons 12 years of age and older. Fluticasone plus azelastine (an antihistamine) nasal spray is very effective. Intranasal sprays often require approximately 3 consecutive days of use before a beneficial effect is noted.

Using an oral antihistamine might be helpful, but these have side effects, the most troublesome of which can be drowsiness. Antihistamines that cause drowsiness include triprolidine (Actifed), diphenhydramine (Benadryl), and chlorpheniramine (Chlor-Trimeton). Nonsedating antihistamines, such as fexofenadine (Allegra), loratadine (Claritin), and cetirizine (Zyrtec), cause much less or no drowsiness.

A nasal decongestant (such as oxymetazoline [Afrin]) will clear out the nose, but does not halt the allergic reaction. Furthermore, a nasal decongestant should not be used for more than 5 consecutive days, to avoid "rebound" nasal congestion from drug-induced inflammation.

An allergy doctor can use skin tests to evaluate a victim for desensitization injections or patches. If allergies are debilitating and a change in environment is impossible, the victim will almost certainly benefit from a tapering dose of prednisone (see page 486). Cromolyn sodium nasal spray (NasalCrom), as recommended by some allergists, is another useful adjunct. This requires administration of up to four to six doses per day, and it might be 1 to 4 weeks before any benefit is noted. Oral Montelukast might be prescribed.

Nonsteroidal eye drops for ocular allergy manifestations (seasonal allergic conjunctivitis) include 4% cromolyn sodium, ketorolac tromethamine 0.5% (Acular), lodoxamide 0.1% (stabilizes the cells that release histamine), and levocabastine hydrochloride 0.05% (histamine antagonist). While each of these is effective, it remains to be proved if any is more effective than cold soaks, artificial tears, or over-the-counter topical antihistamine (antazoline or pheniramine, combined with the blood vessel–constricting drug naphazoline hydrochloride) eye drops. Eye symptoms usually respond to oral medications used to treat systemic allergies.

Disorders of the gastrointestinal tract

Diarrhea

Although diarrhea is included here in the "minor problems" section, severe diarrhea can be devastating. Diarrhea can be due to a number of causes, including viral infection (most common), bacterial infection, protozoal infection (such as the protozoan *Cyclospora cayetanensis*, which can contaminate fresh berries, or *Cryptosporidium* species, which are waterborne), food poisoning from toxin(s), unusual parasites, inflammatory bowel disease, allergies, and anxiety. It is not always easy to determine the cause of loose bowel movements, but there is a general approach to therapy that ordinarily suffices until a precise diagnosis can be made. Diarrhea, with or without other manifestations of chronic illness, is a common complaint in travelers returned from foreign countries.

Cholera is an intestinal infection caused by two serogroups (O1 or O139) of the microorganism *Vibrio cholerae,* either of which induces painful watery diarrhea and extreme fluid losses through the gastrointestinal tract. Cholera can reach epidemic proportions. It is estimated that 4 out of every 100 persons who acquire the illness die.

In all cases of diarrhea, a common discomfort is the irritated anus (particularly one that has been wiped with leaves or newspaper). Every traveler should carry a roll of toilet paper, baby wipes, and 1% hydrocortisone lotion or steroid ointment for an irritated bottom. Desitin diaper cream and A&D ointment also work well.

General therapy for diarrhea

Diet. If nausea and vomiting do not prevent eating, adjust the diet based on patient preference and tolerance:

1. When diarrhea is severe, stick to clear fluids such as mineral water, soda, Kool-Aid, or broth. Electrolyte-containing sports beverages are fine. Apple and grape juices are good, but orange, tomato, pineapple, and grapefruit juices might irritate the stomach. Avoid milk products, tea, coffee, raw fruits and vegetables, and fatty foods. Do not take aspirin.

2. As soon as there is improvement (less frequent bowel movements, decreased cramping, increased appetite), begin solid foods, starting with broth, crackers, toast, gelatin, and hard-boiled eggs or any substantial foods preferred by the victim.
3. As the diarrhea subsides, add applesauce, mashed bananas, rice, boiled or baked potatoes, and plain pasta.
4. When stools begin to firm up, add cooked lean meat, cooked vegetables, yogurt, and cottage cheese. Avoid alcohol, spicy foods, and stewed fruit.

Dehydration can be estimated as follows:

1. Mild dehydration: Thirst, dry mucous membranes (mouth, eyes), dry armpits, dark urine, decreased sweating, normal pulse rate.
2. Moderate dehydration: The above plus sunken eyes, doughy skin, weakness, scant darkened urine, rapid and weak pulse rate.
3. Severe dehydration: The above plus altered mental status, elevated body temperature, no urine, no tears, no sweating, collapse, shock (see page 70).
4. In a baby, dehydration manifests as dry diaper (decreased urine output), sunken eyes, sunken “soft spot” (fontanel) on the top of the head, dry tongue and mouth, rapid pulse, poor skin color (blue or pale), lethargy (“floppy baby”), and fast breathing. Normal vital signs for children can be found on page 40.

Fluid replacement

If fluid losses are significant (more than five bowel movements per day), begin to replace liquids as soon as you can. When in doubt as to the severity of dehydration, begin to replace liquids. If only fruit juice (without supplementation) is available, remember to cut it to half strength with water. Otherwise, the sugar content will be too high and might contribute to continued diarrhea. Estimation techniques to measure powdered ingredients (such as a “pinch” of table salt) are notoriously inaccurate and can even be dangerous if you add excessive amounts; use a proper measuring implement whenever possible. If nausea and vomiting are present to a degree sufficient to inhibit or prevent oral rehydration, consider administration of an antiemetic drug, such as ondansetron (Zofran: adult dose 4 mg oral dissolving tablet; pediatric dose 0.15 mg/kg body weight of the oral dissolving tablet every 8 hours). In adults, inhaling isopropyl alcohol fumes from an alcohol-saturated pad (“wipe”) held ½ to 1 inch from the nose, with or without taking ondansetron, has been reported effective to relieve nausea.

1. *Mild diarrhea/dehydration:* Drink soda water, clear juices, broth, and electrolyte-containing sports beverages. Try to replace each diarrheal stool with 10 mL of oral rehydration salts (ORS) per 1 kg (2.2 lb) of body weight. If the child is vomiting, try to replace each episode of vomiting with 2 mL of ORS per 1 kg (2.2 lb) of body weight. Give ORS or any other replacement fluid slowly at first so that it is tolerated without vomiting. For small children, this can be a teaspoonful at a time; for adults it will be sips from a cup (try for two tablespoons [30 mL] every 5 minutes). If the patient vomits, then wait for 10 minutes and try once again to give ORS, but more slowly. Children will sometimes turn their noses at the taste of ORS. You might be able to get them rehydrated by offering preferred beverages, such as one-half strength apple juice.
2. *Moderate diarrhea/dehydration:* Drink diluted (by half, with water) electrolyte-containing sports beverages, mineral water (bottled), or a homemade solution consisting of 1 quart or liter of disinfected water (or orange juice) plus ½ to 1 teaspoon (1.3 to 2.5 mL) of sodium chloride (table salt), ½ teaspoon of sodium bicarbonate (baking soda), ¼ teaspoon (0.6 mL) of potassium chloride (salt substitute), and glucose (6 to 8 teaspoons [30 to 40 mL] of table sugar, or 1 to 2 tablespoons [15 to 30 mL] of honey). Take care not to over sweeten (i.e., do not exceed 2% to 2.5% glucose) the solution with sugar, because this might worsen the diarrhea; too high a sugar concentration inhibits water absorption through the gastrointestinal tract. Each quart of this "home brew" should be alternated with ½ to 1 quart of plain disinfected water. Try to replace fluid losses at least every 2 hours.

    ORS that meet World Health Organization standards are available in a dry mix; use one packet per quart (liter) of water. One packet contains sodium chloride 3.5 g, potassium chloride 1.5 g, glucose 20 g, and trisodium citrate 2.9 g (or sodium bicarbonate 2.5 g). CeraLyte 70 ORS are based on a rice solution. One packet is mixed with a quart (liter) of water. After the solution is prepared, it should be consumed or discarded within 12 hours if kept at room temperature or 24 hours if kept refrigerated. *Rice-based electrolyte-containing drinks, such as CeraSport, are likely more effective than water in replacing fluid losses.* Other ORS products available over-the-counter include Pedialyte, Enfalyte, Naturalyte, and Rehydralyte. Elete is an electrolyte additive (to water) that contains sodium, chloride, potassium, zinc, and magnesium, but no glucose or carbohydrate.

    In greater detail, try to get the victim to ingest a quart per hour until the frequency of urination begins to increase and the urine color becomes light-colored. To begin, start with small (e.g., 5 mL or 1 teaspoon) amounts every 1 to 2 minutes, to avoid collection of a large amount of fluid in the stomach that might cause vomiting. A child should be given 1½ oz (44 mL) of ORS per pound (0.45 kg) of body weight over the first 4 hours, then 1 oz (30 mL) of ORS per pound of body weight per 8-hour period until the diarrhea resolves. Another estimate of fluid replacement for children is 100 mL (approximately 3 oz) of fluid per significant loose bowel movement. For an infant with diarrhea, decrease the amount of milk in the diet and trial Pedialyte or another ORS substitute. Sweetened carbonated beverages (soda pop) are not good replacement fluids, because they contain too much sugar and little or no sodium and potassium. If the child is breast-fed, keep nursing (offer the breast more often). If the child is formula-fed, use ORS for 12 to 24 hours, and then try switching back to formula. If the diarrhea persists, switch back to ORS for another cycle. It is important to continue to provide nourishment with food (and calories) to children with diarrhea, not fluid alone. Avoid foods high in simple sugars (including tea, juices, and soft drinks). Try complex carbohydrates (rice, wheat, potatoes, bread, cereals), yogurt, lean meat, fruits, and vegetables.

If premeasured salts are not available with which to supplement water, you can alternate glasses of the following two fluids, as recommended by the U.S. Public Health Service:

- Glass one—8 oz fruit juice with ¼ teaspoon (a "pinch") table salt and ½ teaspoon honey or corn syrup (237 mL juice, 1.3 mL table salt, 2.5 mL honey or corn syrup)
- Glass two—8 oz disinfected water with ¼ teaspoon baking soda (sodium bicarbonate) (237 mL water, 1.3 mL baking soda)

3. *Severe diarrhea/dehydration:* Same as moderate. After a certain point, as with cholera, intravenous hydration can be lifesaving. See a physician as soon as possible.

Rehydration enema. When it is impossible to administer oral fluids, a rehydration enema can be lifesaving. A Camelbak-style hydration system can be used with the mouthpiece ("bitepiece") removed in such a way as to eliminate sharp edges. Squeeze all the air out of the fluid reservoir so that all that remains is liquid. Position the patient on their left side. Lightly lubricate the anus and tube with a water or petrolatum-based lubricant, using a *very gentle* tube insertion of no more than 4 to 7 inches (10 to 17 cm) to administer 1 pint of an enema solution of 1 liter of ORS or body temperature disinfected water mixed with 5 tablespoons of sugar and 1 tablespoon of salt. If these are not available, use plain water. Have the person try to relax and retain the fluid for as long as possible before evacuating the residual. You might need to use tape to keep the tube in place and the buttock cheeks tight. Use gravity to administer the fluid—do not force it in by squeezing the bag. Try to administer 1 pint every 1 to 2 hours until the person is producing light-colored urine or is able to tolerate oral liquids.

Antimotility (decreased bowel activity) drugs. If fever, severe cramping, and bloody diarrhea are absent, it is safe to use antimotility drugs. They should be immediately discontinued if diarrhea lasts for more than 48 hours. If diarrhea lasts longer than 3 days, if the victim has a fever greater than 101°F (38.3°C), if they cannot keep liquids down because of vomiting, if there is blood in or on the stool, if the abdomen becomes swollen, or if there is no significant pain relief after 24 hours, seek a physician immediately.

The antimotility drug of choice is loperamide (Imodium A-D). The initial adult dose is 4 mg (two 2 mg capsules, or 4 teaspoons [20 mL] of the liquid), followed by 2 mg after each loose bowel movement, not to exceed 16 mg (8 capsules) per day or 2 consecutive days of administration. With uncomplicated watery diarrhea (no fever or blood in stools), this drug can be given to children aged 2 years and older. Give children a dose of 0.2 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight every 6 hours. The liquid preparation contains 1 mg/teaspoon (5 mL). Be aware that higher than recommended doses of loperamide can lead to dangerously abnormal heart rhythms.

For adults, diphenoxylate (Lomotil) is an alternative, but has side effects of dry mouth and urinary retention. Pepto-Bismol is another, less effective choice (see page 493).

Kaopectate (kaolin plus pectin) is of limited value. It does not shorten the course of diarrheal illness and acts only to add a little consistency to stools. Lactobacillus preparations (acidophilus beverages or yogurt) do not shorten the course of acute diarrheal illness, but might be useful to repopulate the gastrointestinal tract with normal bacteria after a severe bout of diarrhea or administration of antibiotics used to treat diarrhea.

Outside the U.S., drugs that have been recommended to treat diarrhea in the absence of a specific diagnosis include chloramphenicol (Chloromycetin), Entero-Vioform, MexaForm, Intestopan, clioquinol, and iodoquinol. This might be dangerous, because these drugs can have adverse direct effects or side effects. Therefore, this approach should not be taken without a specific diagnosis for which these drugs are felt to be indicated.

Antibiotics. These should be used if diarrhea is moderate to severe (more than eight bowel movements per day), particularly if it is bloody and associated with severe cramping, vomiting, and fever. Antibiotics should not be used if *E. coli* O157:H7 is suspected (see page 236). They should not be used for mild traveler-associated diarrhea.

If cholera is suspected, administer azithromycin (adults 1 g single dose; children 20 mg/kg [2.2 lb] body weight single dose). If azithromycin is not available, administer ciprofloxacin (adults 1 g single dose; children 15 mg/kg [2.2 lb] body weight twice daily for 3 days). Another alternative for adults is doxycycline 300 mg in a single dose. Treatment for cholera is largely supportive care, but the duration of cholera caused by *Vibrio cholerae* might be shortened by adding antibiotics. Other beneficial effects of antibiotic administration for cholera include diminished rate of "purging" diarrhea (often in the form of profound "rice water" stools), shortened period of being infectious, and less requirement for rehydration. The antibiotic is most effectively given after rehydration therapy has begun to take effect and vomiting diminished to the point that the antibiotic can be retained. Resistant strains are very common; for instance, in Bangladesh, cholera is resistant to tetracycline, erythromycin, and trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole.

If cholera is NOT suspected, administer azithromycin (1 g single dose or 500 mg per day for 3 days). If this fails to improve the situation within 24 hours, administer trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole (Bactrim or Septra) one double-strength pill twice a day, or ciprofloxacin (Cipro) 500 mg twice a day for 3 days. (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.) These will treat *Escherichia coli* and *Shigella*, might be of use for *Salmonella*, and will not adversely affect the course of viral, *Staphylococcus,* or *Campylobacter* infections. Enteric fever caused by *Salmonella typhi* (typhoid fever) is best treated in adults with ciprofloxacin. However, this germ is becoming resistant to many antibiotics. For instance, in Pakistan, it might only respond to azithryomycin and the carbapenem class of antibiotics.

Alternative drugs include norfloxacin (Noroxin) 400 mg twice a day for 3 days, ofloxacin (Floxin) 200 or 300 mg twice a day for 3 days, or fleroxacin 400 mg once a day for 3 days. Another alternative drug is doxycycline (Vibramycin) 100 mg twice a day. Children younger than 12 years of age should not be given doxycycline, because it might cause discoloration of the permanent teeth. Because ciprofloxacin can affect bone growth in children, it should be given only to adults, with the precaution given previously that it is becoming a drug of last resort because of side effects upon tendon-like tissue.

If the clinical picture clearly points to *Giardia lamblia* (see page 236), administer tinidazole 2 gm one dose or metronidazole (Flagyl) 250 mg three times a day for 7 days. A woman who is possibly pregnant should not use this drug except under the advice of her physician.

Sometimes diarrhea appears as a complication of antibiotic administration. This is called *Clostridioides difficile*–associated disease, antibiotic-associated diarrhea, or antibiotic-associated colitis. It is caused by infection with the organism *C. difficile,* which thrives in the bowel after the normal germs are killed by the initial antibiotic therapy. Another causative factor might be administration of a proton pump inhibitor drug, which lowers gastric acid. This helps *C. difficile* to survive and therefore be able to elaborate its toxin. The affliction can be diagnosed by testing stool for the germ or the toxins it creates. Therapy for persons aged 18 years of age or older against *C. difficile* is vancomycin 125 mg by mouth four times a day or fidaxomycin 200 mg by mouth for 10 days. If neither of these is available, use metronidazole (Flagyl) 500 mg by mouth three times a day or 250 mg by mouth four times a day. It is important to note that *C. difficile* spores are not destroyed by disinfectant hand gels; thus handwashing remains extremely important to prevent the spread of this infectious organism. *C. difficile* infection is also observed in travelers without any history of prior antibiotic use.

Probiotics are harmless microorganisms (mostly bacteria and yeast) that are thought to provide health benefits. Examples include *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* (*casei*) and *reuteri,* which are found in certain yogurt products, and CULTURELLE, which is an all-natural dietary supplement containing the probiotic *L. rhamnosus* strain GG (LGG). Probiotics, therefore, are a class of “friendly” bacteria that live in the digestive tract, where they help to restore and maintain a healthy balance of “good” versus “bad” bacteria. They might be useful in helping the bowel recover its normal function if ingested during and after a bout of diarrhea, particularly if antibiotics have been used to treat the victim. They might also slightly shorten the duration and symptoms of acute infectious watery diarrhea and improve the condition of a person who suffers *C. difficile* infection after being treated with an antibiotic for gastroenteric infection.

Recovery diet after diarrhea. After suffering from diarrhea, the recovering person will have a return of appetite and might wish to make up for lost time. That temptation to overeat should be resisted by using a “recovery diet” that progresses from easily digested foods such as crackers, gelatin, and “simple” carbohydrates; to eggs, potatoes, rice, bananas, and cooked vegetables; to dairy, meat, fatty foods, and raw fruits and vegetables. How quickly one progresses back to a normal diet depends on the reaction to the diet. If there is diminished gastroenteric upset accompanied by the presence of formed stools, then the diet can be advanced. One common problem that persons who have suffered from diarrhea might cause themselves is avoiding fiber and perceived irritating foods for too long to the extent that they now become constipated. After infectious diarrhea is resolved, one should optimally be able to get back to a normal diet and bowel pattern within a few days.

Another possible sequel to a bout of infectious diarrhea is lactose intolerance, generally caused by deficiency or ineffectiveness of lactase, which breaks lactose down into components that can be absorbed. Symptoms include abdominal pain, bloating, diarrhea, and flatulence. Following a bout of infectious diarrhea, it makes sense to eat lactose-free foods or low-lactose dairy foods (e.g., milk, yogurt, cottage cheese, butter) in small amounts.

Traveler’s diarrhea

Traveler’s diarrhea (TD; “turista,” “Kathmandu quickstep,” “Montezuma’s revenge,” “Delhi belly,” “Aztec two-step,” “Hong Kong dog,” and many other synonyms) is frequent, loose bowel movements (three or more loose stools in a 24-hour period) associated with one or more of nausea, vomiting, abdominal cramps, fever, urge to defecate, cramping and straining with defecation, or bloody or mucus-laden stools. It is caused by waterborne or food-borne pathogens, most commonly produced by forms of the bacterium *E. coli,* which is introduced into the diet as a fecal contaminant in water or on food. Someone has described it as “stool that fits the shape of the container.” When caused by *E. coli*, symptoms usually occur 12 to 36 hours after ingesting the bacteria and include the gradual or sudden onset of frequent (four to five per day) loose or watery bowel movements, rarely explosive, and far less violent than diarrhea associated with classic food poisoning (see later). Fever, bloating, fatigue, and abdominal pain are of minor to moderate severity. Nausea and vomiting are less frequently found than with viral gastroenteritis. Most TD is caused by bacteria, but a small percentage might be caused by viruses or parasites.

The affliction will resolve spontaneously in 2 to 5 days if untreated but might be hastened to a conclusion if an antibiotic is administered. The current recommendation is to treat adults with disabling (NOT with mild or moderate) TD with fever with azithromycin 1 g single dose or 500 mg by mouth once a day for 3 days (10 mg/kg [2.2 lb] of body weight in children once a day for 3 days). Treatment with ciprofloxacin 500 mg twice a day for 1 to 3 days or a single dose of 1 g, or norfloxacin 800 mg in a single dose is not recommended because of possible side effects and less efficacy. Trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole is no longer recommended for TD because of bacterial resistance. In Nepal, ciprofloxacin is very poorly effective for TD, and azithromycin appears to be losing its effectiveness, all attributed to bacterial resistance.

Fortunately, another effective drug (so far) is rifaximin in a dose of 200 mg by mouth three times per day for 3 days. For known TD, the addition of loperamide (Imodium A-D) to the antibiotic regimen can be of significant benefit, with the precaution that it should be used only in the absence of high fever or bloody diarrhea. Alternatively, the diarrhea can be treated with bismuth subsalicylate (Pepto-Bismol); give two 262 mg tablets (or the liquid equivalent) every 30 minutes for eight doses, which may be repeated the second day. Kaolin and pectin given orally in combination might make the stools less runny, but do not shorten the duration of the diarrhea. Yogurt and lactobacillus preparations are not effective treatments. During the recovery period, it is fine to advance the diet fairly rapidly over a few days from clear liquids to bland foods to a normal diet.

To prevent TD, a person traveling to high-risk regions with questionable hygiene and municipal water disinfection standards (developing countries of

Latin America, Africa, the Middle East, and Asia) can take rifaximin 200 mg, norfloxacin 400 mg, or ofloxacin 200 mg once a day during the journey. Another drug that can be used is doxycycline (Vibramycin) 100 mg twice a day. Rifamixin is preferred. Using antibiotics to prevent TD has been associated with creating a "carrier state" for antibiotic-resistant bacteria, so should only be done for special circumstances (see below).

Southern Europe (Spain, Greece, Italy, Turkey) and parts of the Caribbean pose a lesser risk. Using an antibiotic to prevent TD should be done under the guidance of a physician, who will explain the risks (allergic reactions, tendinitis, blood disorders, antibiotic-associated colitis, vaginal yeast infection, skin rashes, photosensitivity) versus the benefits (particularly for persons prone to infectious diarrhea or who would suffer unduly from an episode of severe diarrhea). Ingesting lactobacilli might improve certain aspects of digestion but does not prevent TD.

Alternatively, it has been recommended that you can drink 4 tablespoons (60 mL) of Pepto-Bismol (bismuth subsalicylate) four times a day; this necessitates carrying one 8 oz bottle for each day or taking tablets (two 262 mg tablets four times a day). However, this prophylaxis is not intended to substitute for dietary discretion. In addition, large doses of bismuth subsalicylate can be toxic, particularly to people who regularly use aspirin. Anyone with an aspirin allergy should not use bismuth subsalicylate. Side effects include blackened stools and a black tongue, nausea, constipation, and ringing in the ears.

People who would be advised to consider taking a drug to prevent infectious diarrhea include those with a significant underlying medical problem (such as acquired immunodeficiency syndrome [AIDS], inability to produce stomach acid, or inflammatory bowel disease) and those who are on an important assignment and with an itinerary schedule rigid enough that it would be catastrophic to the mission to be laid up with diarrhea.

Persistent diarrhea after travel to a developing country should provoke consideration of parasitic infection, such as with *Giardia*, *Cryptosporidium*, *Entamoeba* or *Strongyloides*, or bacterial infection, such as with *E. coli*, *Shigella*, *Campylobacter*, *Salmonella* or *Vibrio*. Other possibilities include viruses, worms, schistosomes, food intolerance, or inflammatory bowel disease.

Viral diarrhea

TD can also be caused by viruses. Viral gastroenteritis (commonly caused by rotaviruses [perhaps the most common cause of severe gastroenteritis in children less than 5 years of age and for which there are vaccines] or norovirus) includes diarrhea as a symptom. Norovirus (for which there is not yet a licensed vaccine) is the major problem with outbreaks of watery diarrhea on cruise ships, and increasingly common in long-term care facilities and schools. It has contaminated raw oysters. Viral gastroenteritis is often associated with nausea and vomiting, fever, stomach cramps, copious rectal gas, and a flu-like syndrome. The diarrhea is typically watery, frequent (up to 20 movements per day), often foul-smelling, discolored (green to greenish brown), and without significant mucus or blood. Generally, the victim will have cyclic waves of lower abdominal cramps, relieved by bowel movements. The incubation period between viral contact (fecal-oral transmission; usually hand-to-mouth) and illness is 1 to 3 days. Usually viral gastroenteritis is self-limited with recovery in 2 to 5 days. If viral gastroenteritis is suspected, limit contact with the ill persons and for 1 to 2 days after illness, and clean contaminated surfaces with a 1:50 to 1:10 dilution of household chlorine bleach in water solution, or other bleach-based disinfectant. An infected person should not prepare food and optimally should avoid contact with other persons for at least 2 days after symptoms have ceased. Because there are many types of norovirus, a person can become infected a number of times. The most important aspect of personal protection is rigorous hand washing with soap and warm water for at least 20 seconds. Clothing of an infected person should be washed with hot water and detergent and then run through a hot dryer cycle.

It is critical to keep the victim from becoming dehydrated. What comes out below should be replaced from above. Therapy requires continual oral hydration with clear liquids such as apple juice or broth. If they are available, drink electrolyte-containing beverages.

The cramps can be controlled with loperamide (Imodium A-D), which will also help limit the diarrhea. It should be noted, however, that these drugs will slow down the activity of the bowel and allow any toxins that are in the gut to remain in contact with the bowel wall. With certain bacterial and viral infections, these drugs might prolong the carrier state and actually increase the severity and duration of the disease. Therefore, it is prudent to avoid the use of loperamide unless the intake of fluids cannot keep pace with the diarrhea and severe dehydration is becoming a real concern. *Never give an antimotility agent to an infant.* Loperamide can be used in children aged 2 years and older if the diarrhea is watery and nonbloody, there is no associated fever, and diarrhea is leading to debilitating dehydration. Give a child a 0.2 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight dose every 6 hours. The liquid preparation contains 1 mg/teaspoon (5 mL).

Cryptosporidiosis

Cryptosporidiosis is caused by *Cryptosporidium parvum* or *hominis*, which are commonly found in surface water in the United States. It is also commonly associated with non-U.S. travel. Infection is caused by ingestion of the oocysts and manifested by watery diarrhea, abdominal cramps, nausea and vomiting, fatigue, and low-grade fever. Persons who are immunosuppressed might suffer more severe symptoms. The cysts are 2 microns in diameter. Symptoms begin 2 to 14 days after ingestion, and might last for up to 2 weeks, with a carrier state of up to 2 months. Treatment is nitazoxanide 500 mg by mouth twice a day for 3 days in adults, and 100 mg twice a day in children up to age 12. Another effective treatment is azithromycin 500 mg by mouth once a day for 5 days in adults or paromomycin 500 mg three times a day for 7 days. Proper hand washing is essential to prevention, because alcohol-based (gel) hand sanitizers do not kill *Cryptosporidium*. If someone is felt to be suffering from diarrhea that might be cryptosporidiosis, it is advised to not swim (e.g., not contaminate the water) for at least 2 weeks after all symptoms resolve.

Food poisoning

Food poisoning is caused by toxins that are produced by a number of bacteria, with the most common being *Staphylococcus*. Improper preservation (generally, lack of refrigeration) of food allows bacterial proliferation, which is not corrected by cooking. Typically, the symptoms occur 2 to 6 hours after eating and consist of severe abdominal cramps with nausea and vomiting. Diarrhea might be delayed by an hour or two, or might occur simultaneously with the nausea and vomiting. The diarrhea is often explosive. As with viral gastroenteritis, the bowel movements might be foul-smelling and blood-tinged. The disease is self-limited, and generally subsides after 6 to 12 hours. Treatment consists of rehydration with clear liquids. Antimotility drugs, such as loperamide (Imodium A-D) or diphenoxylate (Lomotil), might prolong the disorder, and should not be used unless the victim cannot replenish fluid losses.

Escherichia coli O157:H7

E. coli O157:H7 is a bacterium that has been transmitted by as few as 10 bacteria in raw or undercooked hamburger meat, fruit *E. coli* O157:H7 juices, and other food with fecal contamination. It can be spread person to person, and has also been transmitted by petting animals, contacting animal manure, and swimming in recreational pool water. As has been noted previously, in the presence of someone with any cause of diarrhea, excellent handwashing technique should be observed. If a person is ill with a diarrheal illness, they should not prepare food for others or share common bodies of swimming or bathing water. Try to not swallow lake or swimming pool water.

After ingesting the bacteria, an infection can occur after an incubation period of 1 to 10 days, with 3 days being the average delay between exposure and illness. It causes a syndrome of fever or no fever, abdominal pain, vomiting, and nonbloody diarrhea, followed in a few days by bloody diarrhea, dehydration, weakness, anemia, and kidney failure. There is not yet an effective treatment with antibiotics. In fact, therapy with some antibiotics might contribute to more severe illness (see later). Prevention means strict handwashing before eating and cooking ground beef until it is no longer pink (160°F [71°C]). Do not mix raw and cooked foods, particularly meat. After you cook meat, do not serve it on the unwashed dish that carried the raw food. Since raw meat, especially beef, can be a problem, be certain to wash hands, cooking utensils, cutting boards, dishes, and counters after they have been in contact with raw meat. Milk and fruit juices prepared from crushing processes require pasteurization. Understand that in the absence of pasteurization, which is a heating process, no product can be guaranteed to not be contaminated with the bacteria normally killed in the pasteurization process. Many of us like to drink fresh fruit juice. When we do so, we take a risk, usually quite minor, that it might be contaminated.

For treatment of known or highly suspected *E. coli* O157:H7 infection, antibiotics are not recommended. This is because in some cases, antibiotics might worsen the affliction. The precise reason this happens is not known, but one suggestion is that by causing rapid death of large numbers of bacteria, large amounts of the Shiga toxin (also known as verocytotoxin) are released, which causes the medical problems. Antidiarrheal agents, such as loperamide (Imodium), are also not recommended, because they are thought to possibly keep the bacteria in contact with the bowel for longer periods of time. Most patients recover without antibiotics in approximately a week. Severely dehydrated individuals might require intravenous fluids. Children infected with *E. coli* O157:H7 are at higher risk than are adults for developing hemolytic-uremic syndrome, in which they might suffer anemia and kidney failure.

The difficulty with the recommendation to withhold antibiotics is that it is very difficult to make a precise field diagnosis of any particular cause of diarrhea. So, antibiotics are often given until confirmation of the infectious agent is reported by a laboratory.

Giardia lamblia

G. lamblia is a flagellate protozoan (one-celled organism) that has become a worldwide problem, particularly in wilderness settings in the western United States, Nepal, and the Soviet Union. It is transmitted as cysts in the feces of many animals, which include humans, elk, beavers, deer, cows, dogs, and sheep. Dormant *Giardia* cysts enter water, from where they are ingested by humans. Cysts can live for up to 3 months in cold water.

If more than 10 to 25 cysts are swallowed, the organisms establish residence in the duodenum and jejunum (first parts of the small bowel), and after an incubation period of 7 to 20 days emerge in another form (trophozoite) to cause stomach cramps, flatulence, a swollen lower abdomen, often explosive and foul-smelling watery (“floating”) diarrhea, “rotten” (sulfurous) belching, and nausea. Fever and vomiting are unusual except in the first few days of illness. Foul flatus and abdominal cramping are common. Because of the delay in onset after ingestion of the cysts, many a backpacker develops “backpacker’s diarrhea” or “beaver fever” after they return to civilization and do not recognize the causal link to the recent journey. If the diarrhea becomes chronic, the victim can lose appetite and weight and become weak. Diagnosis is made by a physician who recognizes trophozoites or microscopic cysts in the stool of the victim, takes a sample of mucus from the duodenum, or is confident with a clinical diagnosis.

Untreated, the illness usually resolves after about 6 weeks. However, the diarrhea might go on for months. Therapy for *Giardia* infestation is administration of metronidazole (Flagyl) 250 to 500 mg three times a day for 7 to 10 days; the pediatric dose is 5 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight to a maximum of 250 mg per dose administered three times per day. Another excellent drug is tinidazole (Tindamax, Tiniba, Fasigyn), which is taken in a 2-g dose for 1 or 2 days; the pediatric dose is 50 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight in a single dose. Another prescription therapy is quinacrine hydrochloride (Atabrine) 100 mg twice a day for 7 days; the pediatric dose is 7 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight per day in three divided doses for 7 days. Unfortunately, quinacrine has side effects (which occur in 1 to 4 out of every 1000 people) that include making the person psychotic (lose touch with reality) for up to a few weeks. A good therapy for children is furazolidone (Furoxone) 6 mg/kg of body weight in four divided doses for 7 days. There have been mixed reports of success with albendazole given in a dose of 400 mg/day for 3 to 5 days. Particularly when an expedition will not reach civilization for 3 to 4 weeks, there is no reason to withhold treatment awaiting a definitive diagnosis. If the field diagnosis is correct, in most cases drug therapy will cause dramatic relief from symptoms within 3 days. There is no prophylactic drug that is recommended to prevent infestation.

Other infectious diarrheas

Diarrhea can be caused by a number of parasites and other infectious agents, which include *Campylobacter*, *Shigella*, *Salmonella*, *Yersinia*, *Vibrio*, *Cryptosporidium*, and *Entamoeba histolytica* (and other protozoa that cause amebiasis). *Campylobacter jejuni* are the bacteria that most commonly cause diarrhea in the United States, often noted after eating contaminated poultry. Although up to a quarter of persons who are infected are without symptoms, those who become ill frequently exhibit nausea, severe diarrhea, and abdominal pain. *Campylobacter upsaliensis* causes bloody diarrhea in dogs. *Campylobacter* infection is treated with azithromycin 500 mg by mouth once a day for 3 days. The pediatric dose is 10 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight up to 500 mg by mouth once a day for 3 days. *Campylobacter* infection can also be treated with erythromycin 500 mg four times a day for 5 days.

Amebic dysentery is caused by *E. histolytica*, the symptoms of which are the (usually) gradual onset of diarrhea (watery or bloody, frequent, copious, and sometimes with fever) that does not respond to antibiotics, characterized by severe lower abdominal pain and a swollen abdomen. In an endemic area, presumptive field treatment is with metronidazole 750 mg by mouth three times a day for 10 days or tinidazole 600 mg by mouth for 5 days. This is accompanied by eradication of the cyst forms remaining in the bowel wall with a drug such as paromomycin (25 to 35 mg/kg body weight in three divided doses for 10 days) or diloxanide furoate (500 mg by mouth three times a day for 7 days). *Cryptosporidium* infection is treated with nitazoxanide (Alinia) in a dose of 500 mg by mouth twice a day for 3 days. Algal diarrhea (a cause of diarrhea more commonly noted in Nepal and Peru) is caused by *Cyclospora cayetanensis* and is treated with trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole one double-strength tablet twice a day for 7 days. *Cystoisospora belli* infection is treated with trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole one double-strength tablet four times a day for 10 days.

Diarrhea-causing pathogens cause a constellation of fever, chills, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea (with or without mucus and blood), weakness, and abdominal pain. Because the clinical picture can be similar with infection from any of these organisms, the differentiation between them frequently relies on examination of the stool under the microscope and/or culture of the stool to identify the specific pathogen. For the sake of the brief expedition, the treatment is the same: rehydration with copious amounts of balanced electrolyte solutions, and antimotility agents only when essential to prevent severe dehydration. If the victim suffers from high fever with shaking chills, has persistent bloody or mucus-laden bowel movements, or is debilitated by dehydration, they should seek the care of a physician. Meanwhile, administration of azithromycin 1 g once a day or ciprofloxacin 500 mg two times a day (or 750 mg once a day) for 3 days will treat *E. coli* and *Shigella*. Infection with *Salmonella* can be treated with levofloxacin 500 mg (or another fluoroquinolone antibiotic) once a day for 7 to 10 days. The pediatric dose for either ciprofloxacin or azithromycin for this purpose is 10 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight up to the adult dose, given twice a day by mouth. (Ampicillin or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole are alternatives.) As soon as the victim of persistent diarrhea returns to civilization, they should visit a physician for a thorough evaluation. If the ova or parasitic forms of amoebae are seen during microscopic examination of stool, other drugs, such as tinidazole, metronidazole, diloxanide furoate, paromomycin, or diiodohydroxyquin, can be prescribed. If the ova or parasitic forms of worms are seen, drugs such as ivermectin, mebendazole or pyrantel pamoate can be prescribed. Treating the "chronic carrier" condition in which a person harbors typhoidal salmonella involves 4 to 6 weeks of antibiotic treatment.

Prevention of infectious diarrhea

Some experts and the medical literature argue that conventional advice to avoid specific foods and liquids does not really help prevent TD. However, on the chance that certain behaviors might be helpful, here are some commonly accepted notions of food safety.

General

- Wash your hands and use disinfectant gel before handling food during preparation or before eating.
- Stick to food that is served steaming hot.
- Dry foods, such as bread, are generally safe.
- Avoid casseroles, quiches, lasagna, and other foods that are prepared in advance and then allowed to sit for a prolonged period before consumption. During that time period, they can be contaminated by bacteria from fingers, insect legs, and contaminated serving utensils.
- As the World Health Organization simplifies its advice, "Peel it, cook it, or leave it."
- Spices (particularly originating from Mexico or India), including pepper, coriander, oregano, cumin, and curry, might be contaminated with bacteria such as *Salmonella*. Be certain to cook all foods seasoned with spices to a sufficiently high temperature.
- Cold foods should be maintained below 40°F (4.4°C). Hot foods should be maintained above 145°F (62.8°C).
- Foods with high sugar content, although not necessarily nutritious, are often safe to eat.
- Do not eat food taken from a leaking or swollen can (see Botulism, page 240). Inspect all food before eating for signs of obvious spoilage or contamination.
- Properly wash camp dishes and implements for eating (see page 240).

Food handling and storage

- Keep raw and cooked foods separate and discard all unused cooked food if there is no refrigeration.
- Refrigeration is 40°F (4.4°C) or below by any reasonable method.
- If you are thawing food, try to do so under cold conditions and not allow the food to become warm.
- Food should be prepared immediately before it is to be eaten. If the food is not refrigerated or maintained hot, it should be discarded after 1 hour.
- Foods of high hazard for spoilage or contamination are milk and milk products, meat and poultry, and fish and shellfish. When these foods are

handled, take care to avoid cross-contamination via utensils, cutting boards, and so forth.

Fruits and vegetables

- Salads (particularly lettuce), raw vegetables, and unpeeled fruits and vegetables are risky business.
- Fresh produce should, when possible, be purchased not bruised or damaged. Produce should not be packed with raw meat, poultry, or seafood products.
- If you purchase already (presumably, fresh) cut produce, select items that are refrigerated or surrounded by ice. Perishable fruits and vegetables that are high risk if not refrigerated include strawberries, lettuce, herbs, and mushrooms.
- Remove any damaged or bruised areas on fruits and vegetables before eating. Discard rotten produce.
- Even if you plan to peel produce, wash or disinfect the surface first. Using a clean produce brush is recommended on the surface of firm produce, such as melons and cucumbers.
- Fruits and leafy vegetables should be washed in iodinated or chlorinated water, washed with dilute soap and previously boiled water, or immersed in boiling water for 30 seconds. Leafy vegetables can be immersed in a solution of chlorine in water at a concentration of 100 parts per million (add 1 tablespoon of liquid household bleach to a gallon of water). Remember to separate leaves and stalks before disinfection to allow better contact.
- Drying produce with a clean cloth or paper towel might further reduce bacterial count.
- In some underdeveloped countries, melons are injected with contaminated water to increase their weight before sale.
- Keep melons (with low acidity) cold. Consider all rinds to be dirty.

Meat and seafood

- Raw or undercooked meat (particularly hamburgers) and raw or undercooked snails or seafood are risky business.
- Refrigerated meat should be consumed within 2 days of purchase.
- Cooking temperature above 165°F (74°C) (particularly for poultry) is advised to kill germs that cause human illness.
- With regard to seafood, raw or undercooked products, particularly shellfish, are especially hazardous. *Vibrio* organisms—which cause, among other problems, cholera—frequently reside in crabs and oysters.

Norovirus has been found in oysters. Cook all shellfish for a minimum of 10 minutes of boiling, or 30 minutes of exposure to full steam. Quick steaming might not be effective. The internal temperature of the shellfish should be at least 145°F (62.8°C).

Dairy and sauces

- Packaged butter and packaged processed cheese are usually safe to eat.
- Raw and unpasteurized dairy products should be avoided.
- Cold sauces, ice cream, fresh cheese, and spicy sauces in open containers are risky business.

Water and beverages

- Tap water and ice are risky business. Stick to boiled or properly disinfected water.
- Carbonated beverages in sealed bottles or cans should be safe. Alcohol in mixed drinks does not disinfect water.
- At high altitudes and in pristine wilderness environments, it might be safe to brush your teeth with mountain water, so long as you spit and do not swallow. However, it is safer to use properly disinfected water.

Dining out

- Be cautious with buffets, food from street vendors, and the salads served on flights that originate from developing countries.
- Food prepared in restaurants in developing countries probably poses greater risk than does self-prepared food. Patronize reputable establishments.

The importance of hand hygiene

If possible, wash your hands with soap and water before, during, and after preparing food; before eating food; after using a toilet or latrine; after handling a diaper, cleaning a person who has defecated, or disposing of feces (particularly those of children); after blowing your nose, coughing, or sneezing; after touching an animal, animal feed, or animal waste; after handling garbage; before and after caring for someone who is sick; and before and after treating a cut or wound. If a disinfectant gel (at least 60% alcohol-based) or lotion is available, use it, even after handwashing. This will significantly reduce the risk for transmission of bacteria and viruses that cause infections. Disinfectant gels do not provide protection, however, against spore-forming bacteria, such as *C. difficile*, so handwashing retains its importance when this bacterium is a possible environmental contaminant.

In addition to proper handwashing (or wiping with disinfectant gel or cream) and disinfection of drinking water, there are a number of important actions, such as "food rules" (proper washing, cooking, and serving; what foods to avoid—see earlier), bathroom hygiene, not sharing items such as towels and toothbrushes, and so on.

Washing dishes and cooking/eating utensils

One important topic is how best to wash dishes and cooking/eating utensils to remove diarrhea-causing bacteria and viruses. One effective washing-up system is removal of most food residue with detergent (5 mL or 1 teaspoon) in the water in Bowl One (containing 5 liters of water), followed by a finishing wash (scrub until clean) with bleach (10 mL or 2 teaspoons of 4% chlorine bleach) in the water in Bowl Two (5 liters), followed by a final rinse in drinkable water in Bowl Three (5 liters). The final rinse is felt to remove the taste of the detergent and bleach (the latter considered to be a disinfectant). A few final recommendations are to use hot water in Bowl One, use a scouring pad or brush in Bowl Two with the bleach to avoid contamination of the scourer, allow all utensils to air dry after washing, and clean the washing-up bowls and allow them to dry between uses. Use up to 100 mL or 20 teaspoons (3 teaspoons = 1 tablespoon) of bleach in Bowl Two if there is a current outbreak of diarrhea and vomiting. This increases the disinfection power of the second bowl.

Sometimes it will be necessary to create a chlorine solution for disinfection of hands and skin, floors, clothes, bedding and equipment, or bodily fluids, particularly if someone has suffered diarrhea. For instructions, see page 504.

Water disinfection is discussed on page 433.

Botulism

Botulism is a neurotoxic affliction most caused by the bacterium *Clostridium botulinum* or certain other *Clostridium* species. (Intestinal toxemia, a rare form of botulism, is most commonly caused by *Clostridium baratii*.) *C. botulinum* generates toxins A through H (only some of these cause human disease). Botulism can afflict a person who ingests or inhales the toxin or spores. Wound botulism occurs when a wound is infected with *C. botulinum*. Home-canned foods (particularly vegetables, meat, and seafood) are often the cause if there is a low acid content, such as with peas and beans. Another high-risk setting is farmers' markets. Fermented foods, such as fish, herb-infused oils, potatoes baked in aluminum foil and then stored at room temperature before consumption, and sauces (particularly cheese) are also common causes. Infants might ingest botulinum spore–contaminated honey. After an incubation period of 12 hours to

3 days, adults afflicted with foodborne botulism show initial gastroenteric symptoms of constipation, vomiting, and abdominal pain; dry mouth; diarrhea is less common. Neurologic symptoms include blurred or double vision, drooping eyelids, dilated pupils, slurred speech, difficulty swallowing, and muscle weakness. This can lead to an inability to breathe. Infants might show symptoms of weakness, sleepiness, tiredness, poor feeding, weak cry, constipation, and diminished head control. If botulism is suspected, the treatment is Botulism Antitoxin Heptavalent, which treats botulism A, B, C, D, E, F, and G. Trivalent antitoxin counteracts botulinum toxins A, B, and E, which cause most cases in the United States. There is also a bivalent antitoxin to counteract botulinum toxins A and B.

Irritable bowel syndrome

Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS, sometimes called spastic colitis, nervous colon, or irritable colon) is characterized by abdominal distention, the passage of flatus, cramping (pain) relieved by defecation, onset associated with change in frequency and/or form of the stool, and mucus-laden diarrhea. This can be debilitating. The sufferer might also complain intermittently of constipation. The onset of IBS is often associated with a change of the form of the stool (commonly loose or watery, or sometimes pellets). It is more common in women than men and can be triggered by psychological stress. Many sufferers carry their own antidiarrheal or antispasmodic medication, such as loperamide or clidinium bromide with chlordiazepoxide (Librax). Constipation can be treated with laxatives such as lactulose or polyethylene glycol solution (see Constipation, later). Drugs that diminish hyperactivity of the bowel include dicyclomine hydrochloride and hyoscyamine sulfate. Diarrhea is treated with loperamide. Alosetron is used only for severe diarrhea-predominant IBS that does not respond after 6 months to conventional therapies.

Irritable bowel is a diagnosis of exclusion that should be made by a physician. If a person is known to suffer from IBS with a constipation component, they should be encouraged to eat adequate fiber (indigestible plant carbohydrate: bran, steamed vegetables, or 20 to 30 g fiber supplement) and avoid coffee (caffeine), alcohol, fatty foods, and gas-producing vegetables. A useful (but somewhat controversial) prophylactic measure can be regular ingestion of a probiotic (e.g., *Lactobacillus* or *Bifidobacterium infantis* 35624) preparation. Regular exercise also appears to be helpful for some individuals. There are numerous therapies under investigation for persons with IBS that is refractory to all of these measures. These include antidepressants, serotonin-3 and serotonin-4 receptor antagonists, antibiotics, herbal therapy (including peppermint oil), and other agents to reduce the sensitivity and motility of the bowel. For instance, rifaximin, a minimally absorbed antibiotic that is sometimes used to treat infectious diarrhea (see page 499), has been reported in a medical study to have been used successfully to treat IBS without constipation to relieve symptoms of bloating, abdominal pain, and loose or watery stools. Linaclotide is a drug used to treat constipation-predominant IBS. A “low FODMAP” diet, which eliminates certain carbohydrates that are felt to perhaps be fermented in the bowel and contribute to IBS, might be helpful to reduce symptoms.

Gluten sensitivity

Nonceliac (disease) gluten sensitivity is the presence of any combination of abdominal pain, bloating, diarrhea-constipation-both, headache, joint pain, reduced alertness, alterations in memory and mood, fatigue, and eczematous skin rash associated with eating gluten-containing grains (e.g., wheat, barley, rye). When the grains are removed from the diet, the symptoms resolve.

Constipation

If a person becomes constipated (straining, difficult bowel movements with hard or too-small stools), the retention of stool and sensation of bowel fullness or discomfort can be severe. Significant contributing factors to constipation are diet, dehydration, and lack of exercise. During outdoor activities, take care to drink fluids at regular intervals. In addition, sufficient fiber (20 to 30 g/day in any form: bran, whole-grain cereals, vegetables, fruits, fiber supplements) must be maintained in the diet. The “city backpacker” diet of chocolate bars, peanuts, and cheese sandwiches will turn the most irascible bowels into mortar. Eat at least one ounce of fiber per day. Fiber-rich foods are usually fruits and vegetables. Fiber products (which might cause bloating or increased flatus) include psyllium, methylcellulose, calcium polycarbophil, and wheat dextrin. If you add these to your diet, begin with small amounts to see how they are tolerated. Regular, preemptive doses of a stool softener such as docusate sodium (Colace), or a bulking agent such as psyllium seed hydrophilic mucilloid (Metamucil), must be ingested with at least two glasses of water to be effective. Consider eating foods like chia seeds with copious amounts of water. Eat plenty of fruits and vegetables. Do not ignore the urge to have a bowel movement—when you feel like you need to go, do it.

The squatting position, rather than sitting, might induce a bowel movement by altering the anatomy in such a way as to reduce the need to strain.

To relieve the victim of constipation, try the following measures:

1. Force fluids.
2. Adjust the diet (more for prevention than treatment).
3. Consider the use of stool softeners / laxatives.

Laxatives generally belong to one of four groups: bulk-forming (psyllium: Konsyl, Metamucil, Perdiem, Fiberall; methylcellulose: Citrucel; calcium polycarbophil: Fibercon, Fiber-Lax, Equalactin; wheat dextrin: Benefiber); hyperosmolar (polyethylene glycol [Miralax, Glycolax], lactulose, sorbitol); saline (magnesium hydroxide [Milk of Magnesia], magnesium citrate [Evac-Q-Kwik]); or stimulant (senna [Ex-Lax, Senokot, Castoria] or bisacodyl [Dulcolax, Correctol, Doxidan]).

To "get things going" and induce a bowel movement, first try polyethylene glycol (PEG) 3350 and electrolytes or try a stimulant laxative (bisacodyl or senna). If the first stimulant does not work, try the other. Thus, a very useful drug to treat constipation is polyethylene glycol solution (MiraLAX) given as 17 g powder (1 heaping tablespoon) dissolved in 8 oz (240 mL) of water taken daily for up to 4 days to initiate a bowel movement. On a prolonged expedition, you should also carry at least one stimulant laxative drug, such as bisacodyl. This drug is administered in oral (5 mg) or glycerin suppository (10 mg) form, with onset of effect in a few hours. Bisacodyl causes the bowel to contract, which can be extremely uncomfortable in someone with a large fecal impaction. If these do not work, then one can try a different laxative, such as a saline laxative, a poorly absorbed sugar (e.g., lactulose syrup 10 mg per tablespoon (15 mL) of syrup; administer 1 or 2 tablespoons per day), a commercial enema (e.g., sodium phosphate: Fleet Enema), or natural laxative (prune juice). Some medications might require a doctor's prescription. A stool softener (mineral oil; docusate sodium: Colace, Regulax SS, Surfak) might be useful. Other drugs are listed on page 493.

In general, it is best to avoid the use of repetitive enemas or potent laxatives, because they can cause large fluid losses. A useful enema is a Colace 5 mL (200 mg) "microenema." A child might benefit from a plain glycerin suppository. In general, enemas can cause cramping and bloating. If they contain electrolytes, such as magnesium or phosphate, they can cause elevated levels of these in the bloodstream. Typical enemas include 6 to 12 oz of milk and an equal portion of molasses; 2 tablespoons of Epsom salts per quart of lukewarm water; 45 mL of Phospho-Soda with 2 quarts of water; 9 mL packet of Castile soap in 2 quarts of tap water; 30 mL of mineral oil in 1 to 2 quarts of water; and 1 to 2 quarts of warm (body temperature) tap water. Be very careful with natural product laxatives and homemade enemas, the latter which might cause bowel irritation.

4. In the rare case of opioid-caused constipation, all of the above treatment recommendations might not be sufficient to induce a bowel movement. This situation will not be remedied in the field, because a specific opioid receptor antagonist needs to be administered.
5. If a victim becomes impacted (has not had a bowel movement for 5 to 10 days due to constipation), using stool softeners will probably be ineffective, and piling on an ingested load of bulky fiber is just dumping more backfill behind the dam. Unfortunately, to break the roadblock, you might have to perform the physical removal of stool from the rectum, using a softening enema first and then a gloved finger for the extraction. This should be done gently, to prevent injury to the anus and walls of the rectum. Two fingers are used to dilate the anus, then the stool is broken up with a scissoring motion. After as much stool as possible is removed manually, an enema should be used.

A person with persistent severe constipation, a change in bowel habits for more than 2 weeks, unexplained weight loss, or blood in the stool should see a physician.

Hemorrhoids, anal fissure, and rectal prolapse

Hemorrhoids are enlarged veins that are found outside (external hemorrhoids) or inside (internal hemorrhoids) the anal opening (Fig. 162). They cause problems that range from minor itching and skin irritation to excruciating pain, inflammation, and bleeding. The bleeding is noticed as bright red blood either on the outside of the stool (not mixed in with the excrement), in the toilet water, or on the toilet paper. Bleeding is usually sporadic, associated with difficult bowel movements (constipation) with straining, and passage of hard stools. To avoid problems, keep stools soft (see page 241). Anal itching can be controlled with good hygiene, witch hazel compresses, a steroid preparation, and ice packs. If hemorrhoids flare, the treatment is sitz (sitting) baths in warm water for 30 minutes three times a day, and application of medication in the form of cream, ointment, or suppositories (Preparation H [essentially a petrolatum lubricant]; Anusol or Tronolane [with pramoxine 1% for pain and itching] or Anusol HC-1 [without pramoxine, but with hydrocortisone 1% for inflammation]; Nupercainal [1% dibucaine]; ProctoCream-HC [pramoxine hydrochloride 1% with hydrocortisone acetate 1%]; ELA-Max 5 [lidocaine 5%] anorectal cream; Analpram-HC cream or ointment [hydrocortisone and pramoxine]). Unless bleeding is severe, it can be managed with sterile pads and gentle pressure. If the victim develops a fever associated with severe rectal pain or cannot pass a bowel movement, a physician should be sought.

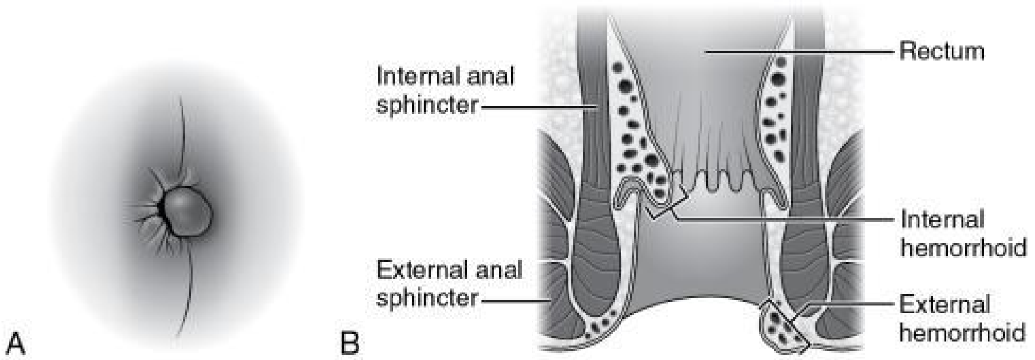


FIG. 162 Hemorrhoids. **A,** External view of the anus with an enlarged external hemorrhoid. **B,** A cross-sectional view of the anus and rectum shows dilated veins that protrude into the rectum (internal hemorrhoids) and externally from the anus.

A thrombosed hemorrhoid is one in which the blood has clotted within the dilated vein and formed a visible and palpable enlarged, hardened, and dark blue-purple knot. Pain is generally severe, and the victim might be unable to complete a bowel movement. The treatment usually involves incision through the wall of the vein and removal of the clot. Until the victim can be brought to a physician, warm soaks might ease the discomfort. Do not sit on a donut cushion because this might worsen the problem. All elderly people with rectal bleeding should be fully evaluated by a physician, to be sure that there is not another, more serious, cause. Sometimes a small grape-like cluster of dilated veins will protrude from the rectum. If this occurs, have the victim go onto their hands and knees or onto their side, and then apply gentle steady direct pressure to the protruding tissue until it slides back inside the rectum. If this is successful, have the victim lie still for about an hour.

To treat and prevent hemorrhoids, be sure that the diet contains adequate fluid and fiber intake to keep stools soft and limit straining.

An anal fissure is a crack of the skin that appears at the top (usually) or bottom of the anal opening. The most common cause is stretching of the skin beyond its ability. The fissure becomes an open sore and might become painful and raw, sometimes with bleeding. Apply the best possible hygiene after each bowel movement and attempt to keep the fissure covered with petrolatum, bacitracin ointment, or zinc oxide ointment. Try to keep the stools soft (e.g., avoid constipation—see page 241) and maintain a brisk fluid intake. If it is possible to soak in a warm sitz (“sitting”) bath from time to time, then do so. If the fissure is making it difficult to have a bowel movement because of the pain, then try using a topical analgesic, such as lidocaine. A doctor might prescribe topical nitroglycerin ointment, which in some fashion promotes wound healing.

Anal itching is a common problem. It is usually caused by less-than-perfect hygiene, although there are other more serious causes; so if it is persistent, you should have a medical practitioner inspect the area. In the outdoors, if the skin area around the anus is moist or soiled, particularly if it is already irritated and itchy, then the first approach should be to try to keep the skin clean and dry. Wash daily with soap and water. Antibacterial soaps containing triclosan or triclocarban have no advantage. Avoid alcohol-based wipes, tight underpants, or constrictive thermal undergarments. A small piece of absorbent cotton, nonperfumed talcum powder, or powdered cornstarch can be used to absorb moisture. For the itching, a zinc oxide–based ointment (such as would be used for diaper rash) might be helpful. Dietary avoidance of coffee, tea, cola beverages, chocolate, citrus, and dairy products has been recommended, but there is no proof that this helps. Using 1% hydrocortisone cream might help, but stronger steroid preparations or repeated use of any steroid can predispose to infections or cause the skin to become thinner. Because people tend to scratch during their sleep, keep fingernails trimmed.

Pinworms can cause rectal itching in children and adults. The female pinworm migrates to the anus and deposits eggs there, which cause itching. Worms sometimes wriggle out of the anus at night, where they can be spotted. The eggs can be captured by adhesive tape. Treatment is with mebendazole or albendazole.

Rectal prolapse is a condition in which a person's "insides" (in this case, the rectum portion of the bowel) have extruded through the anus. This usually occurs in elders, commonly during a bowel movement in which there has been straining. If it is not possible to bring the victim to medical care, then one method used to reduce swelling of the prolapsed rectum and allow it to be pushed back inside the victim is to cover the prolapsed rectum with a thick layer of granulated ("table") sugar and allow everything to rest for 15 to 30 minutes. Do not use a sugar substitute. After that time period, gentle pressure is used to allow the bowel to slide back within the victim. If the maneuver is successful, place the victim on a nonconstipating diet.

Flatus

The rectal passage of bowel gas offers relief and occasional embarrassment. If stomach cramps are due to excessive gas production, the drug of choice is simethicone (Mylicon or Mylicon-80), which causes dissolution of large gas collections and eases the passage of flatus. Charcoal Plus tablets and Flatulex tablets contain simethicone combined with activated charcoal, an absorbent. Beano food enzyme dietary supplement contains the enzyme alpha-galactosidase, which is advertised to be effective in preventing gas formation from vegetables, beans, and grains that contain indigestible sugars that ferment in the bowel to create gas. Because intestinal gas (methane) can be flammable, do not attempt to ignite rectal gas or direct the stream of gas into a campfire. Backflashes and minor burns are a real risk.

Heartburn

Heartburn is a manifestation of esophageal reflux (in medical parlance, sometimes called gastroesophageal reflux disease [GERD]), in which stomach contents containing acid and food travel backward from the stomach into the esophagus. This causes irritation and pain, which is typically sharp or burning and located under the breastbone and/or in the upper abdomen. It can be associated with belching, a sour taste in the mouth, and/or near-vomiting. When severe, the pain can be confused with angina (see page 56). Omeprazole (Prilosec) is a drug that suppresses gastric acid secretion. It can be prescribed for a 1- to 2-week period by a physician for GERD or for up to a 4- to 8-week period for severe erosive inflammation of the esophagus (adult dose 20 to 40 mg by mouth in the morning and 20 mg in the evening). Other drugs in this category ("proton pump inhibitors") are pantoprazole (Protonix) and rabeprazole (AcipHex). Mild heartburn is often managed with antacids, particularly Gaviscon, which forms a "foam" that floats on the stomach contents and protects the esophagus from refluxed acid. Metoclopramide hydrochloride (Reglan) helps control muscle tone at the sphincter (junction) between the stomach and the esophagus, and thus helps prevent reflux. Nizatidine 75 mg (Axid AR ["acid reducer"]) is an H2-blocker drug (see page 494) that inhibits gastric acid secretion. It is swallowed 30 to 60 minutes before eating and can be used up to twice in 24 hours. Cimetidine (Tagamet) 200 mg can be used in a similar manner. Famotidine (Pepcid AC) 10 or 20 mg twice a day (preferably ingested 15 to 60 minutes before eating) for up to 6 weeks is another therapy.

Keep meals small, and do not eat them immediately before reclining (no bedtime snacks). Known gastric irritants (e.g., alcohol, cigarettes, pepperoni sandwiches) should be avoided, as should be carbonated beverages, fatty foods, and chocolate. If possible, sleep with the head of your bed or sleeping bag elevated. Occasionally, it is necessary to sleep in the sitting position, to counteract the forces of gravity and a loose esophageal sphincter. Wear loose-fitting clothing around the stomach. Weight loss is advised for overweight or obese persons.

Nausea and vomiting

Nausea and vomiting might arise from causes as simple as anxiety, or might represent a serious problem such as appendicitis, ingestion of a poisonous plant, or response to a head injury. When vomiting is secondary to a serious underlying disorder, the basic problem must be remedied. Any victim with nausea and vomiting who suffers from altered mental status, uncontrollable high fever, extreme abdominal pain, or chest pain that might represent heart disease—or who is either very young or very old—should be evacuated promptly. Anyone who vomits blood should be taken to a hospital immediately. Vomiting in children is particularly worrisome if it accompanies head trauma (see page 72) or abdominal trauma (see page 137). Severe vomiting (which might represent a bowel obstruction [see page 143] or appendicitis [see page 142]) is concerning. Lethargy or confusion that accompanies vomiting might indicate an infection or poisoning. Cyclic nausea and vomiting syndrome occur in children and rarely in young adults. This is typified by recurrent, self-limited bouts that are frequently accompanied by headache, substance (especially cannabis) use, diabetes, psychiatric problems, menses and/or upper respiratory infection.

If nausea and vomiting due to gastroenteritis become excessive, they can be managed with an antiemetic. One effective drug is ondansetron (Zofran). The adult dose is one 4 mg dissolving tablet every 8 hours; the pediatric dose is 0.15 mg/kg of body weight of the oral dissolving tablet every 6 to 8 hours. The adult dose can be safely repeated after 5 minutes if the first dose is not effective. In adults, inhaling isopropyl alcohol fumes from an alcohol-saturated pad (“wipe”) held ½ to 1 inch from the nose, with or without taking ondansetron, has been reported effective to relieve nausea. Alternative drugs are prochlorperazine (Compazine), which can be administered orally or as a suppository, promethazine (Phenergan), which comes in suppository form, metoclopramide (Reglan), or trimethobenzamide (Tigan), which can be taken orally or by suppository. If the victim is so ill that they cannot keep anything in their stomach, it makes no sense to administer an oral medication, so an injection or suppository must be used. After multiple episodes of vomiting, the victim might suffer from dehydration (see page 341), particularly if there is associated diarrhea as part of a gastroenteritis. Fluid replacement is essential (see page 229). The diet should be advanced slowly as the victim’s hunger returns.

Nausea and vomiting due to motion sickness are discussed on page 437. Cyclical vomiting is a disorder in which the victim experiences fatigue and nausea, and perhaps sweating and pale skin color for approximately 90 minutes before onset of explosive vomiting, which might last for up to 24 hours in children and 3 days in adults. The victims might vomit up to six times per hour. This disorder, which can sometimes be accompanied by abdominal pain, can be triggered by stress, upper respiratory tract infection, menses, sleep deprivation, certain foods, asthma attacks, motion sickness, or environmental allergies. Treatment is supportive and based on symptoms. If an attack is severe, the victim might require intravenous hydration.

Vomiting blood

Bleeding from the gastrointestinal tract can cause the victim to vomit blood (either bright red, or dark brown “coffee grounds”). If the blood is not vomited, it passes through the bowels and emerges as dark black tarry stools (melena) or occasionally as maroon clots or bright red blood. Brisk bleeding in the stomach or bowels can be painless; any bleeding should be considered serious. Even if the bleeding episode is brief (except for bleeding from known hemorrhoids), the victim should be evacuated immediately to a hospital. If the victim is known to have ulcer disease and ceases vomiting, antacids should be given by mouth.

Persistent retching can cause the stomach wall to tear and begin to bleed. For this reason, persistent nausea and vomiting from any cause should be controlled with medications, if possible.

Ulcer disease

A peptic ulcer is an erosion into the stomach or duodenum (first portion of the small bowel) that is worsened by the constant assault from gastric acid and digestive juices. A gastric ulcer is an erosion specifically into the stomach. Many ulcers are caused by infection of the inner lining of the stomach and bowel with the microorganism *Helicobacter pylori*, which can be eradicated with an intensive course of multiple antibiotics. Such therapy is undertaken not in the field, but under the supervision of a physician. Another major cause of peptic ulcers is use of nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs).

The predominant symptom of ulcer disease is burning, sharp, or aching pain in the upper abdomen that is usually relieved by the ingestion of food or antacids, although the latter alone might be therapeutic. Classically, the pain occurs when the stomach is empty, particularly during times of emotional stress. Because the greatest amounts of acid are secreted following meals and between the hours of midnight and 3:00 am, these are times when pain is most frequent. Bleeding is a major complication of peptic ulcer.

If the victim is strongly suspected or known to have an ulcer, and can control the pain readily with medications, the journey can continue. Make every attempt to keep on a regular meal schedule and to take medication properly during waking hours. As noted below, cigarette smoking and alcohol ingestion are strictly prohibited. If pain is not immediately controlled, or if there is any suggestion of bleeding or perforation, rapid transport to a hospital is indicated.

Therapy

- *Antacids.* These are the traditional mainstay of therapy and should be taken in a dose of 2 to 3 tablespoons (30 to 45 mL) 1 and 3 hours after meals, at bedtime, and as necessary to control pain. Liquids are generally more effective than tablets. Solid food and milk are not recommended as antacids. While they might decrease pain briefly, they actually stimulate the secretion of acid.

- *Drugs to inhibit the secretion of acid.* Medications used to decrease acid secretion (antagonists to histamine H2 receptors and proton [acid] pump inhibitors) decrease bowel activity and cramping. An example of the former is famotidine 20 mg by mouth daily; an example of the latter is omeprazole 20 to 40 mg by mouth daily.
- *Drugs to protect the lining of the gastrointestinal tract.* Sucralfate (Carafate) is a drug that binds with the ulcer and protects the bowel lining from further erosion. Because it requires the presence of acid in the ulcer crater to be activated, it should not be given at the same time as antacids.
- *Avoidance of alcohol, tea, coffee, tobacco, and known gastric irritants.*
- *Do not use household baking soda to neutralize acid in the stomach.* Baking soda (bicarbonate) reacts with the acid to liberate heat and gas.

Hepatitis

Hepatitis is inflammation of the liver that is caused by viral infection or parasitic infestation, drugs, toxic chemicals, alcohol abuse, or autoimmune disease. Type A infectious (short-incubation) hepatitis is the more commonly encountered viral form. The virus is excreted in urine and feces and contaminates drinking water and food products (such as raw shellfish). Type B infectious (long incubation) hepatitis is caused by a virus found in many bodily fluids (blood, saliva, semen) and is spread by direct person-to-person contact. Type C infectious hepatitis used to be most commonly associated with blood transfusions; it is now sadly extremely frequent because of opioid drug use involving shared needle injections. Multiple other forms of viral hepatitis have been discovered by medical researchers. Hepatitis D is found only in persons who are currently or previously infected with hepatitis B. Hepatitis E is likely the most common cause of acute hepatitis and jaundice in the developing world, and is transmitted to humans mostly by eating meat and organs of pigs, boars, and deer. Hepatitis F and G are recently described and, as of yet, unknown significance.

Hepatitis causes the victim to have a constellation of signs and symptoms, which include yellow discoloration of the skin and eyes (jaundice—from the buildup of bilirubin pigment, which the diseased liver cannot process properly), nausea and vomiting, fatigue, weakness, fever, chills, darkened urine, diarrhea, pale-colored bowel movements (which might precede the onset of jaundice by 1 to 3 days), abdominal pain (particularly in the right upper quadrant over the swollen and tender liver), loss of appetite, joint pain, muscle aching, itching, and red skin rash. A young child can suffer from type A infection yet show only a mild flu-like illness.

Anyone suspected of having hepatitis should be placed at maximum rest and transported to a physician. Avoid alcohol and medication ingestion, because the metabolism of many drugs is altered in the victim with a diseased liver. They should be encouraged to avoid dehydration and should maintain adequate food intake. If the cause of hepatitis is viral, the victim's disease might be contagious for their first 2 weeks of illness. Do not share eating utensils or washrags. Body secretions (saliva and waste products) frequently carry the virus; therefore, pay strict attention to handwashing. Sexual contact should be avoided during the infectious period. In no case should a needle used for injection of medicine into one person be reused for another individual.

Protection against hepatitis is best accomplished by prevention of virus transmission through good hygiene. Hepatitis A vaccine is available. In countries of high hepatitis incidence (poor sanitation, infested water or food), pooled immune serum globulin (ISG; or gamma globulin) injections are advised these protect unimmunized people against hepatitis A, and diminish symptoms in infected people. In a study that compared hepatitis A vaccine against ISG for postexposure prophylaxis against hepatitis A in persons who had not been previously immunized, it appeared that they were roughly equivalent, with the ISG being slightly more effective at preventing hepatitis A. Hepatitis B vaccine is intended for health care workers or those who will visit or reside in regions of high endemicity. It is of little benefit against hepatitis A. There is not a vaccine against hepatitis C, but there are effective oral antiviral medications that can clear the virus from the body, particularly if treatment is started soon after the onset of infection.

Skin disorders

Sunburn

The solar radiation that strikes the earth includes 50% visible light (wavelength 400 to 760 nanometers [nm]), 40% infrared (760 to 1700 nm), and 10% ultraviolet (10 to 400 nm) (Fig. 163). Energetic rays (e.g., cosmic rays, gamma rays, and x-rays) with wavelengths shorter than 10 nm do not penetrate to the earth's surface to any significant degree. Sunburn is a cutaneous photosensitivity reaction caused by exposure of the skin to ultraviolet radiation (UVR) from the sun. There are four types of UVR: vacuum UVR is 10 to 200 nm (absorbed by air and unable to penetrate Earth's atmosphere), UVA is 320 to 400 nm, UVB is 290 to 320 nm, and UVC is 100 to 290 nm. UVC is filtered out by the ozone layer of the atmosphere. UVB is the culprit in the creation of sunburn and cancer. While UVA is of less immediate danger in relation to sunburn, it is a serious cause of skin aging, drug-related photosensitivity, and skin cancer. Furthermore, persons taking immunosuppressive agents for medical reasons (e.g., AIDS or cancer) might be more predisposed to skin cancer caused by UVA.

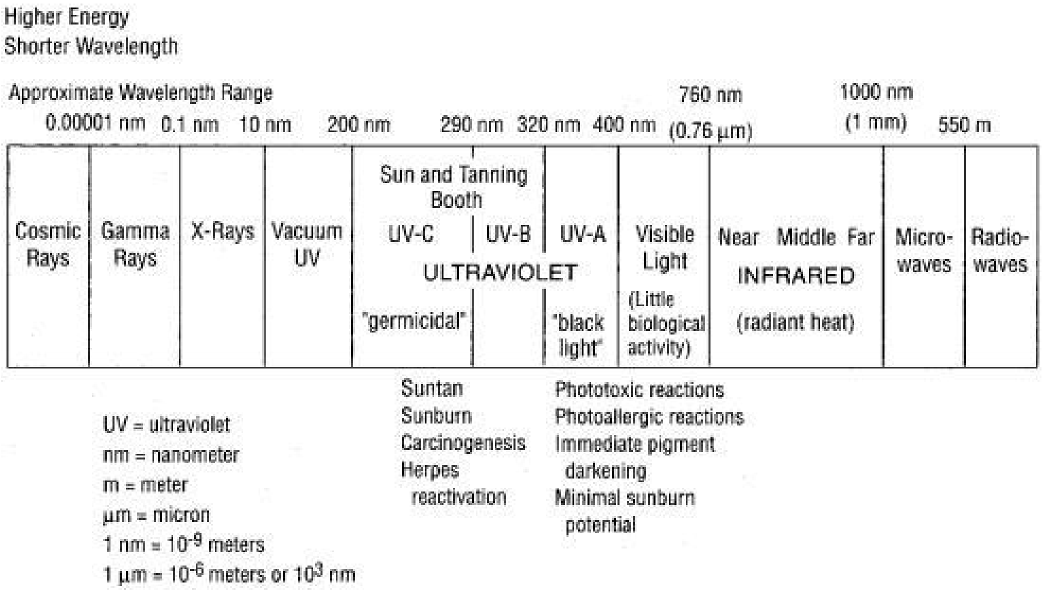

Higher Energy
Shorter Wavelength
Approximate Wavelength Range
0.00001 nm
0.1 nm
10 nm
200 nm
290 nm
320 nm
400 nm
760 nm
(0.76 μm)
1000 nm
(1 mm)
550 m
Cosmic Rays
Gamma Rays
X-Rays
Vacuum UV
Sun and Tanning Booth
UV-C
UV-B
UV-A
ULTRAVIOLET
"germicidal"
"black light"
Visible Light
(Little biological activity)
Near
Middle
Far
INFRARED
(radiant heat)
Micro-waves
Radio-waves
Suntan
Sunburn
Carcinogenesis
Herpes reactivation
Phototoxic reactions
Photoallergic reactions
Immediate pigment darkening
Minimal sunburn potential
UV = ultraviolet
nm = nanometer
m = meter
μm = micron
1 nm = 10-9 meters
1 μm = 10-6 meters or 103 nm

FIG. 163 Solar radiation.

Ultraviolet exposure varies with the time of day (greatest between 9 AM and 3 PM because of increased solar proximity and decreased angle of light rays), season (greater in summer), altitude (8% to 10% increase per each 1000 ft, or 305 m, of elevation above sea level), location (greater near the Equator), and weather (greater in the wind). Snow or ice reflects 85% of UVR, dry sand 17%, and grass 2.5%. Water can reflect 10% to 100% of UVR, depending on the time of day, location, and surface. However, UVR at midday can penetrate up to 24 inches (60 cm) through water. Clouds absorb 10% to 80% of UVR, but rarely more than 40%. Most clothes reflect (light-colored) or absorb (dark-colored) UVR. A dry white cotton shirt has a maximum sun protection factor (SPF) of 8 (see Sunscreens, below). However, it is important to note that wet cotton of any color probably transmits considerable UVR.

Skin darkening occurs immediately on UVA exposure, as preformed melanin is released, and lasts for 15 to 30 minutes. Tanning occurs after 3 days of exposure, as additional melanin is produced. If the skin is not conditioned with gradual doses of UVR (tanning), a burn can be created. A person's sensitivity to UVR depends on their skin type (e.g., Fitzpatrick Skin Type, ranging from 1 to 6, with 1 being white skin-high sunburn susceptibility-poor tanning and 6 being very dark skin-very low sunburn susceptibility-very good tanning) and thickness, the pigment (melanin) in their skin, and weather conditions. Well-hydrated skin is penetrated four times as effectively by UVR as is dry skin, because the moist skin does not scatter or reflect UVR as well.

Depending on the exposure, the injury can range from mild redness to blistering and disablement. Rapid pigment darkening from immediate melanin release is followed by the redness caused by dilation of superficial blood vessels.

This begins 2 to 6 hours after exposure and reaches its maximum (the "burn") in 12 to 36 hours, with associated itching and pain.

Wind appears to augment the injury, as do heat, atmospheric moisture, and immersion in water. "Windburn" is not possible without UVR or abrasive sand. Since windburn is due in part to the drying effect of low humidity at high altitudes, it can be helpful to protect the skin with a greasy sunscreen or barrier cream.

People might be more sensitive to UVR and more readily suffer sunburn or develop skin rashes after they have ingested certain drugs (such as tetracycline, doxycycline, fluoroquinolones, vitamin A derivatives, nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs [NSAIDs], sulfa derivatives, minoxidil, diltiazem, nifedipine, thiazide diuretics, hypoglycemic agents, chloroquine, dapsone, quinidine, carbamazepine, chemotherapeutic drugs, and barbiturates) or have been exposed to certain plants (such as lime, citron, bitter orange, lemon, celery, parsnip, fennel, dill, wild carrot, fig, buttercup, mustard, milfoil, agrimony, rue, hogweed, Queen Anne's lace, and stinking mayweed). Your eyes might become more sensitive to light (e.g., you might need to wear sunglasses at a lower UV threshold) if you are taking certain medications, such as digoxin, quinidine, tolazamide, or tolbutamide.

For a mild sunburn in which no blistering is present, the victim may be treated with cool liquid compresses, cool showers, a nonsensitizing skin moisturizer (such as Vaseline Intensive Care), and aspirin or an NSAID, to decrease the pain and inflammation. Topical diclofenac gel 0.1% might help relieve pain and redness. Pramoxine alone (Prax) is a nonsensitizing topical anesthetic. Because sunburn might cause itching, topical remedies that might be effective include nonsensitizing pramoxine lotion, pramoxine plus camphor plus calamine (Aveeno anti-itch) lotion, and lidocaine plus camphor (Neutrogena Norwegian Formula moisturizer). Sarna lotion contains pramoxine and sometimes contains menthol. Menthol shaving cream may be used to moisturize and soften the skin. Anecdotal remedies for mild sunburn include application for 5 to 10 minutes of Greek yogurt, or application of aloe, baking soda, or bathing in a tub of water augmented by baking soda or oatmeal (Aveeno). Vitamin E is an antioxidant that, when mixed with aloe vera, might soothe the skin. However, this has not been proved to promote healing any better than aloe vera alone, which itself is not an evidence-based recommendation. Topical steroids (e.g., triamcinolone 0.1% cream applied bid when erythema first appears) may blanch reddened skin but should not be used on blistered skin. Pramoxine with hydrocortisone (Pramosone cream or lotion) may be used.

If the victim is deep red ("cooked lobster") without blisters, a stronger antiinflammatory drug, such as prednisone, may be given. A 5-day course of prednisone (80 mg on the first day, 60 mg the second, 40 mg the third, 20 mg the fourth, and 10 mg the fifth) can decrease the discomfort of "sun poisoning," which is the constellation of low-grade fever, chills, loss of appetite, nausea, and weakness that accompanies an extensive nonblistering total-body first degree sunburn. They should be forced to drink enough balanced electrolyte-supplemented liquids to avoid dehydration (see page 230).

With a severe sunburn in which blistering is present, the victim has by definition suffered second-degree burns (see page 128) and should be treated accordingly. Gently clean the burned areas and cover with sterile dressings. Do not use corticosteroids. Administer appropriate pain medication.

Sunscreens

Sunscreens prevent sunburn and skin cancer. There is no evidence that any ingredients in sunscreens cause skin damage or cancer. However, recent evaluations indicate that under manufacturers' maximal recommended use (reapply every 2 hours), certain sunscreen active components (avobenzone, oxybenzone, octocrylene, homosalate, octisalate, octinoxate, and ecamsule) can be measured in the blood at a level (0.5 ng/mL) that warrants safety assessment per the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). There is not yet any change in user directions to indicate that people should refrain from using certain sunscreens, but this might be modified as more safety data are accumulated. The consensus is that the safest sunscreens are zinc oxide and titanium dioxide.

Sunscreens are available as lotions and creams (spread easily and penetrate well); gels (nongreasy but wash or sweat off easily); waxes and ointments (preferable for extreme conditions and resist chapping); oils (spread easily but might cause blackheads); and sprays (wasteful and might form an uneven layer). They either absorb light of a particular wavelength, act as barriers, or reflect light. "Broad-spectrum sunscreens" protect against both UVA and UVB rays. Choose sunscreens based on your estimated exposure and on your own propensity to tan or burn. There is no such thing as a "safe tan," even when sunscreens are used, because sun exposure is directly linked to skin cancer. In addition, long-term exposure to UVR from sunlight causes premature skin aging and loss of skin tone. The term *photoaging* refers to these effects—increased wrinkles, loose skin, brown spots, a leathery appearance, and uneven pigmentation.

Dermatologists classify sun-reactive skin types (based on the first 45 to 60 minutes of sun exposure after winter or after a prolonged period of no sun exposure) as follows:

Type I: Always burns easily, never tans. Fair-skinned people with a high number of moles are at the greatest risk for melanoma.
Type II: Always burns easily, tans minimally.
Type III: Burns moderately, tans gradually and uniformly (light brown).

Type IV: Burns minimally, always tans well (moderate brown).
Type V: Rarely burns, tans profusely (dark brown).
Type VI: Never burns, is deeply pigmented (black skin).

In all cases it is wise to overestimate the protection necessary and to carry a strong sunscreen. To protect hair from sun damage, wear a hat.

Sunscreens come in different concentrations (such as PreSun "8" or "15"). A higher SPF number indicates a greater degree of protection against UVB. SPF ranges from 2 (absorbs 50% of UVB) to 100 (absorbs 99% of UVB). "Minimal erythema dose" (MED) is the amount of UVR exposure required to redden the skin. SPF is derived by dividing the MED of skin covered with sunscreen by the MED of unprotected skin. Thus, an SPF of 15 indicates that it requires 15 times the UVR exposure to achieve a sunburn as it would without protection. The SPF number assumes a liberal (approximately 1 ¼ oz, or 37 mL, per adult) application of the sunscreen. Because sunscreens are rarely perfectly applied, it is best to assume a markedly lower (approximately 50%) SPF than stated on the label. In general, a sunscreen with an SPF number of 8 or less will allow tanning, probably by UVA exposure. There is no standard for measuring UVA protection. Persons with sensitive or unconditioned skin should use a sunscreen with an SPF number of 50 or greater. Fair-skinned people who never tan or who tan poorly (types I, II, or III) or mountain climbers (there is more UV exposure at higher altitudes, and more is reflected off snow) should always use a sunscreen with an SPF number of 50 or greater. Most sun exposure occurs before 18 years of age, so it is very important to apply sunscreens to children and young adults.

Substantivity refers to the ability of a sunscreen to resist water wash-off. Layering sunscreens does not work well because the last layer applied usually washes off. Current specialty sunscreens with high substantivity include Bullfrog Water Pro Body Gel, Aloe Gator Total Sun Block Lotion, and Dermatone Ultimate Fisherman's Sunscreen. Water resistance claims on sunscreen labels must indicate whether the sunscreen remains effective for 40 minutes or 80 minutes while swimming or sweating.

The most effective method of application is to moisturize the skin (shower or bathe) and then apply the sunscreen to cool, dry skin. For maximum effect, chemical sunscreens should be applied liberally (most people only apply ¼ to ½ of what they need) at least 15 to 30 minutes before sun exposure, and the skin should optimally be kept dry for at least 2 hours after sunscreen application. If you are going to enter the water, apply sunscreen at least 15 to 30 minutes before entry. Sun blockers, such as titanium, are effective essentially immediately.

In general, most sunscreens should be reapplied every 20 minutes to 2 hours, depending on the environmental conditions and wash off. Be aware that the concomitant use of insect repellent containing DEET (see page 381) lowers the effectiveness of the sunscreen by a factor of one-third. Although many sunscreens are designed to bond or adhere to the skin under adverse environmental conditions, there are certain situations in which *any* sunscreen should be reapplied at a maximum of 3- to 4-hour intervals:

- Continuous sun exposure, particularly between the hours of 10 AM and 3 PM
- Exposure at altitude of 7000 ft (2135 m) or higher
- Exposure within 20 degrees latitude of the Equator
- Exposure during May through July in the Northern Hemisphere, and December through February in the Southern Hemisphere
- Frequent water immersion, particularly with toweling off
- Preexisting sunburn or skin irritation
- Ingestion of drugs, such as certain antibiotics, that can cause photosensitization

Para-aminobenzoic acid (PABA) derivatives, which are water-soluble, are sunscreens that absorb UVB (not UVA) and that accumulate in the skin with repeated application. The most commonly used PABA derivative is padimate O (octyl dimethyl PABA). When PABA itself is used, a recommended preparation is 5% to 10% PABA in 50% to 70% alcohol. However, PABA is now used infrequently because its absorption peak of UVB at 296 nm is too far from 307 nm, where UVB exerts its greatest effect. Furthermore, it causes skin irritation—a stinging sensation—and can stain cotton and synthetic fabrics. PABA derivatives are less problematic.

Benzophenones (e.g., avobenzone) are sunscreens that are more effective against UVA. These should be used in 6% to 10% concentration. Because they are not well absorbed by the skin, they require frequent reapplication. Photoplex broad-spectrum sunscreen lotion contains a PABA-ester combined with a potent UVA absorber, Parsol 1789. This is an excellent sunscreen for sensitive people, particularly those at risk for drug-induced or plant-induced (e.g., lime juice on the skin) photosensitivity. Other effective UVA blockers include ecamsule and micronized titanium dioxide or zinc oxide. An excellent sunscreen is Sawyer STAY PUT sunscreen, which comes in a variety of SPF ratings.

Some authorities recommend using sunscreens of at least SPF 50, with the rationale that most people underapply or improperly apply them. Bald-headed men should protect their domes. All children should be adequately protected. However, avoid PABA-containing products in children less than 6 months old. Persons sensitive to PABA can use Piz-Buin, Ti-Screen, Sawyer Products STAY PUT Sun Block, Uval, and Solbar products. Eating PABA does not protect the skin.

For total protection against ultraviolet and visible light, a preparation can be composed from various mixtures of titanium dioxide, red petrolatum, talc, zinc oxide, kaolin, red ferric oxide (calamine), and ichthammol. These preparations or similar commercial products ("glacier cream") are used for lip and nose protection. Micronized titanium dioxide and zinc oxide can be prepared in an invisible preparation (such as Ti-Screen Natural 16 and Neutrogena Chemical Free 17) that does not cause skin irritation. In this regard, Blue Lizard Australian Sensitive Sunscreen SPF 30+ is an excellent product. Sunscreens that prevent infrared transmission might help prevent flares of fever blisters caused by herpes virus. An improvised sunscreen can be made by preparing a sludge of ashes from charcoal or wood, or from ground clay. In a pinch, axle grease will work to some degree.

If you are concerned about jellyfish stings, a useful product is Safe Sea Sunblock with Jellyfish Sting Protective Lotion (www.buysafesea.com), which is both a sunscreen and jellyfish sting inhibitor.

Substances that are ineffective as sunscreens and that might increase the propensity to burn include baby oil, cocoa butter, and mineral oil. Promising antioxidant substances under investigation as effective sunscreens are vitamins A, C, and E; and chemicals found in green tea.

Although "tanning tablets" or "bronzers" induce a pigmentary change in the skin that resembles a suntan, they provide minimal, if any, true protection from the effects of ultraviolet exposure. Like the sun, indoor tanning machines induce skin changes that lead to premature skin aging and cancer. The best tan derived from the natural sun's UVB carries an SPF of approximately 2; a tanning bed supplies UVA and therefore no protection. Furthermore, tanning beds do not stimulate enough natural production of vitamin D to be worth the risk of developing skin cancer. There is no such thing as a safe tan.

Taking aspirin or an NSAID at 6-hour intervals three times before sun exposure might help protect the sun-sensitive person.

Many effective sunscreens, particularly those advertised to stay on in the water, are extremely irritating to the eyes, so take care when applying these to the forehead and nose. Near the eyes, avoid sunscreens with an alcohol or propylene glycol base. Instead, use a sunscreen cream.

Take care to cover the lips with a strong sunscreen or lip balm, such as Extreme Weather Lip Balm.

There are also sunscreen/insect repellent combinations, such as Coppertone Bug & Sun. Avon Bug Guard contains Skin-So-Soft (mostly mineral oil) in combination with picaridin or IR3535, and in at least one version, it is enhanced by a sunscreen.

Sun protection from clothing is determined by the nature of the material, tightness of weave (better when not stretched out), color (dark is better), and moisture (dry is better). A line of medical clothing, Solumbra by Sun Precautions, is advertised to be "soft, lightweight and comfortable," and offers 100+ SPF protection. Solar Protective Factory also manufactures high-SPF protective clothing. Women's hosiery has an unacceptably low SPF. The ability of Lycra to block UVR varies depending on whether it is lax (very effective) to stretched (nearly ineffective). Dry, white cotton (T-shirt) has an SPF of 5 to 8. The ultraviolet protection factor (UPF) is a measure of UVR protection provided by a fabric. Thus, a UPF of 15 indicates that 1/15 of the UVR that strikes the surface of the fabric penetrates through to the skin. A chemical UVR protectant, Tinosorb FD (Rit Sun Guard), can be used as a laundry additive, increasing the UPF of washed clothing up to 50.

UVR protection provided by hats depends on the style. Broad-brimmed hats and "bucket" hats provide the most protection for the face and head. Sunday Afternoons manufactures comfortable broad-brimmed hats with neck shields advertised to block 97% of UV. Legionnaires hats do a decent job of protection, but baseball caps leave many facial areas exposed. If you are wearing a helmet, add a visor.

To summarize the most important ways to have sunscreens be effective:

- Apply sunscreens liberally and cover all exposed areas. Sunscreens are tested at 2 milligrams per square centimeter of skin to determine their SPF. That does not directly translate into volume. Use at least ½ teaspoon for each of the head and neck, and arm; 1 teaspoon per leg; 2 to 3 tablespoons to cover your chest and back; and if you are bald or have thinning hair, do not forget the top of your head. Reapply every couple of hours, especially in dry conditions. Use a sunscreen with SPF of at least 50, and do not be afraid to use one of higher SPF.
- Apply sunscreens at least 15 to 30 minutes in advance of exposure.
- Reapply sunscreens after swimming, bathing, sweating, or otherwise washing them off the skin.
- Insect repellent applied at the same time as a sunscreen reduces effectiveness of the sunscreen.
- Anticipate intense UVR exposure at high altitude, on the water, and even on cloudy days.

Photolyase is an enzyme harvested from plankton extract that is reported to lessen damage to the DNA of cells that is caused by UVR exposure. There is evolving science indicating that this might become an important ingredient in topical lotions or creams applied after UVR exposure has occurred. There are "DNA repair" products on the market (promoted for anti-aging) that might one day be recommended to minimize or prevent cell damage and the inflammatory response that are part of sunburn.

Sunscreens that have been banned in Hawaii because they cause damage to coral reefs include the chemicals oxybenzone, octocrylene, and octinoxate. Another reef ecology consideration is to avoid "nanomineral" preparations of zinc or titanium. Inactive sunscreen ingredients that damage coral reefs include parabens, microbeads, and formaldehyde-releasing components. Read the back label to determine what is in the sunscreen.

Sunglasses for eye protection against UVR are discussed on page 210.

Melanoma

Melanoma is a type of skin cancer that can be caused by ultraviolet light exposure (particularly sunburn), with UVB more causative than UVA. Indeed, regular use of a sunscreen with an SPF of at least 15 during the first 18 years of life might reduce the lifetime risk of developing melanoma by more than 75%. People with white skin and a tendency to burn rather than tan are at increased risk for developing melanoma. Tanning bed use is thought to be associated with increased risk for melanoma, particularly in young women.

Although you would not self-treat a melanoma, it is important for those who spend a great deal of time outdoors to recognize the features of skin cancer, which also includes basal cell and squamous cell cancers. Regularly inspect existing moles, birthmarks, and other skin lesions. Since melanoma is often found on a person's back or other area that cannot be easily inspected, it is important to have a knowledgeable person (such as a dermatologist) inspect all suspicious skin lesions from time to time.

Warning signs within a skin lesion (particularly a mole) include the following "ABCDE":

A—Asymmetry: (one portion different from the rest, with respect to shape, color, darkness, or texture).
B—Border: that is irregular, ragged, jagged, notched, or blurred. The color might spread into surrounding skin.
C—Color: that is uneven. Variation in color within the lesion or discoloration (black, dark brown, tan, blue, red, white, mottled)
D—Diameter: changing; usually growing. Melanomas are usually greater in diameter than a pencil eraser but can sometimes be smaller.
E—Evolving: change in appearance or features (size, color, texture, sensation, bleeding, itching, tenderness, scaling). If a mole looks different than others on the body, it is suspicious.

If you notice any of these features, see a dermatologist for a proper evaluation.

Poison ivy, sumac, and oak (genus *toxicodendron*)

The rashes of poison ivy, poison sumac, and poison oak are caused by a resin (urushiol) found in the resin canals of leaves, stems, vines, berries, and roots (Fig.

164). The resin is not found on the surface of the leaves. The potency of the sap does not vary with the seasons. In its natural state, the oil is colorless; on exposure to air, oxidation causes it to turn black. Because the plant parts must be injured to leak the resin, most cases are reported in spring, when the leaves are most fragile. Dried leaves are less toxic, because the oil has returned to the stem and roots through the resin canals. However, smoke from burning plants carries the residual available resin in small particles and can cause a severe reaction on the skin and in the nose, mouth, throat, and lungs.

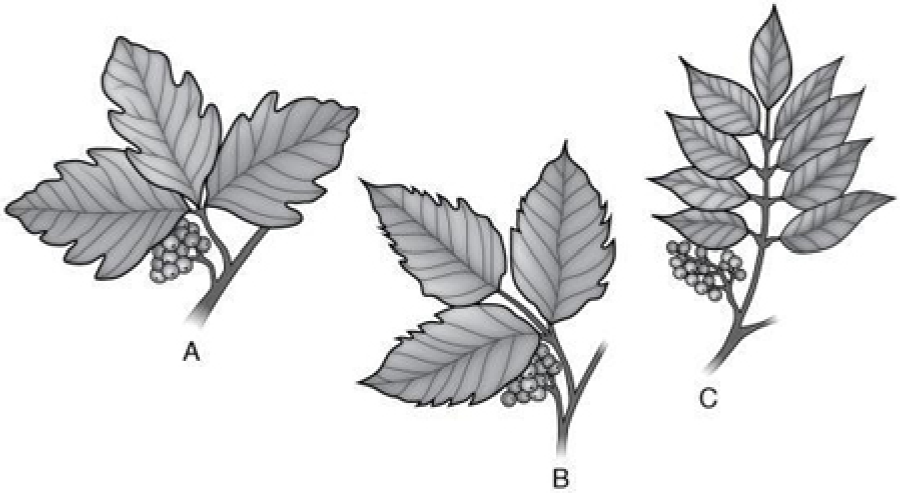


FIG. 164 **A,** Poison oak. **B,** Poison ivy. **C,** Poison sumac.

The poison oak group does not grow in Alaska or Hawaii, and it rarely grows above 4000 ft (1219 m). Other plants or parts of plants that contain urushiol include the India ink tree, mango rind, cashew nutshell, and Japanese lacquer tree. A smaller number of reactions are caused by the poisonwood tree found in the southern tip of Florida. Because the resin is long lived, it can be spread by contact with tents, clothing, and pet fur. Poison ivy and oak have three-leaf clusters, not five to seven leaves. Woody vines with 5 leaves include the Virginia creeper and woodbine.

Sensitivity to the resin varies with each individual and can present for the first time at any age. The first exposure produces a rash in 6 to 25 days. Subsequent exposures can cause a rash in 8 hours to 10 days, with 2 to 3 days most common. Unless the resin is removed from the skin within 10 minutes of exposure, a reaction is inevitable in sensitive individuals. It is generally accepted that the resin binds to the skin within 30 minutes, is completely bound to the skin within 8 hours, and is likely impossible to remove effectively with soap and water after just 60 minutes. Some highly sensitive persons will suffer a reaction even if the resin is washed off within 1 minute of exposure.

The rash begins with itching followed by redness, followed by lines of reddened bumps and blisters. The skin might swell, blisters grow, and weeping/oozing lesions develop. Swelling of the tissues can be quite severe. After approximately a week, the rash begins to dry, and scabs begin to form, particularly if the victim has done much scratching and rubbing. This is followed by thickening and darkening of the skin, which might last for many weeks.

After exposure, it is usually most convenient to remove the resin with soap and cool water, but to be most effective, washing must occur within 30 minutes. Rubbing alcohol is a better solvent for the resin than is water. Zanfel Poison Ivy Wash (Zanfel Laboratories) is a soap mixture of ethoxylate and sodium lauroyl sarcosinate surfactants that binds to urushiol on the skin so that it can be washed off. The instructions for use (to treat an area the size of an adult hand or face) are to wet the affected area; squeeze a minimum 1½ inch ribbon of Zanfel into one palm and then wet and rub both hands together for 10 seconds to work the product into a paste; rub both hands on the affected area for up to 3 minutes to work the Zanfel into the skin until there is no itching; and rinse the area thoroughly. If the itch returns, repeat the process. Tecnu Outdoor Skin Cleanser (alkane and alcohol) (Tec Labs) works quite well when applied soon after exposure, rubbed in for 2 minutes, and rinsed off, with a repeat of the entire sequence. Tecnu Extreme Medicated Poison Ivy Scrub is advertised to be effective after a 15-second application. Another wash designed to remove urushiol is Dr. West’s Ivy Detox Cleanser, which contains magnesium sulfate. Herbal remedies that have been claimed (but never proven) to be effective are jewelweed (*Impatiens capensis,* which is an ingredient in Burt’s Bees Poison Ivy Soap), witch hazel bark, and aloe plant.

For treatment of the skin reaction, shake lotions such as calamine are soothing and drying, and they control itching. A good nonsensitizing topical anesthetic is pramoxine hydrochloride 1% (Prax cream or lotion). Caladryl contains calamine and pramoxine. Avoid topical benzocaine, and tetracaine. Avoid topical diphenhydramine in children under the age of 2 years. Antihistamines (such as diphenhydramine [Benadryl]) control itching and act as sedatives. Nonsedating antihistamines, such as fexofenadine (Allegra) or loratadine (Claritin), can also diminish itching. A soothing bath in tepid (not hot) water with half of a 1-lb box of baking soda, 2 cups (551 mL) of linnet starch, or 1 cup (275 mL) Aveeno oatmeal is excellent. If Aveeno is not available, a woman’s nylon stuffed with regular (not instant) oatmeal can be thrown in the tub. Aluminum acetate in water (1:20) soaks can be soothing, as might aluminum subacetate (Burow’s solution, Domeboro), which comes as a 5% solution that should be diluted to a 1:40 concentration. When these soaks are used, they should be applied as cotton-soaked wet dressings three to four times a day for 15 to 30 minutes per application to dry out the weeping rash. Topical steroid creams are generally of little value. Potent topical steroid ointments are not effective unless they are applied before the appearance of blisters and continued for 2 to 3 weeks, so are not recommended. Alcohol applications are painful and do not hasten resolution of the rash. There are topical agents, such as pimecrolimus (Elidel) 1% cream and tacrolimus (Protopic) 0.03% or 0.1% ointment, which modulate the immune system and are effective without causing skin atrophy, as would be caused by a super potent topical steroid.

If the reaction is severe (facial or genital involvement or intolerable itching), the victim should be treated with a course of oral prednisone (80 to 100 mg each of the first 3 days, then decreased by 10 mg every 2 days until the final dose is 10 mg—80, 80, 70, 70, 60, 60, and so on). At the end of the course of corticosteroids, the victim might suffer a "flare-up" of the rash and symptoms, which can be treated with a repeated course of medication.

Once the resin has been removed from the skin, the rash and blister fluid are not contagious. However, if the resin is still present, touching the involved skin will allow resin to be transferred to other areas. All clothes, sleeping bags, and pets should be washed with soap and water, because the resin can persist for years, particularly on woolen garments and blankets.

For prevention, there are few commercially available topical chemical preparations that act as effective barriers, although it appears that activated charcoal, aluminum oxide, and silica gel might work. Multi Shield (Interpro) is a protective agent for sensitive individuals. It should be applied over any sunscreen and must be washed off carefully after use according to instructions. Stokogard Outdoor Cream is a linoleic acid dimer barrier cream preparation that is advertised to provide up to 8 hours of skin protection. Hollister Moisture Barrier and Hydropel might prove useful as barriers. IvyBlock (Enviroderm Pharmaceuticals) contains bentoquatam, which acts as a barrier. It is applied at least 15 minutes before going outdoors and then every 4 hours. Antiperspirants are used anecdotally as barriers but have not been proven effective.

Other irritating plants

Poodle-dog bush *(Eriodictyon parryi)* is a purple-flowered plant that when touched can cause a reaction ranging from mild skin irritation with or without blistering to breathing difficulty. It is treated like a poison oak exposure.

Some plants produce thorns/spines/spicules, fluids, or crystals that act as primary irritants to the skin, in a nonallergic reaction, causing combinations of burning sensation, itching, and swelling. These plants include buttercup, croton bush, spurge, manchineel, beach apple, daisy, mustard, radish, pineapple, lemon, crown of thorns, milkbush, candelabra cactus, daffodil, hyacinth, stinging nettle, itchweed, dogwood, barley, millet, prickly pear, snow-on-the-mountain, primrose, geranium, meadow rue, narcissus, oleander, opuntia cactus, mesquite, tulip, mistletoe, wolfsbane, and horse nettle.

The skin should be thoroughly washed with soap and water. If barbs are embedded in the skin, removal might be easiest if you apply the sticky side of adhesive tape to the skin, and then peel the barbs off embedded to the tape.

Small cactus spines or the spicules of a stinging nettle can be removed by applying the sticky side of adhesive (duct) tape and peeling it off, or spreading a facial gel (mask or peel) or rubber cement, allowing it to dry, and peeling it off. Large spines can be removed with forceps. This might be necessary if the barbs on the cactus spine inhibit easy removal with the adhesive-tape method. A single cactus thorn can be as sharp as a needle and penetrate easily through the skin without leaving an external mark.

Medicated soaks recommended by dermatologists for plant-induced skin irritation include aluminum acetate solution (1:20) or Dalibour (Dalidane) solution (copper and zinc sulfate and camphor). Administration of corticosteroids (such as prednisone) is not useful for a primary (nonallergic) skin irritation.

Giant hogweed creates sap that when touched makes skin become sensitive to light, with burns and blisters. If it gets into the eyes, it is painful and can cause visual loss. Cow parsnip causes a similar, but lesser, reaction.

Rashes incurred in the water

Seaweed dermatitis

There are more than 3000 species of alga, which range in size from 1 micron to 100 m in length. The blue-green algae *Microcoleus lyngbyaceus* is a fine, hairlike plant that gets inside the bathing suit of the unwary aquanaut in Hawaiian and Floridian waters, particularly during summer months. Usually, skin under the suit remains in moist contact with the algae (the other skin dries or is rinsed off) and becomes red and itchy, with occasional blistering and/or weeping. The reaction might start a few minutes to a few hours after the victim leaves the water. Treatment consists of a vigorous soap-and-water scrub, followed by a rinse with isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol. Apply hydrocortisone lotion 1% twice a day. If the reaction is severe, a more potent topical steroid might be effective, or oral prednisone can be administered in a dose similar to that for a severe poison oak reaction (see page 255).

Swimmer’s itch

Swimmer’s itch (clamdigger’s itch) is caused by skin contact with cercariae, which are the immature free-swimming larval forms of parasitic schistosomes (flatworms) found throughout the world in both fresh and salt waters. Snails and birds are the intermediate hosts for the flatworms; the worms do not colonize humans. They release hundreds of fork-tailed microscopic cercariae into the water.

The affliction is contracted when a film of cercaria-infested water dries on exposed (uncovered by clothing) skin. As the water begins to dry, the cercariae penetrate the outer layer of the skin, but die immediately. An allergic response causes itching to be noted within minutes. Each schistosome that enters the skin causes a single red raised spot. Shortly afterward, the skin can become diffusely reddened and swollen, with an intense rash and, occasionally, hives. Blisters might develop over the next 24 to 48 hours. If the area is scratched, it might become infected, and the victim develop impetigo (see page 260). Untreated, the affliction is limited to 1 to 2 weeks. Those who have suffered swimmer's itch previously might be more severely affected on repeated exposures, which suggests that an allergy might be present.

Swimmer's itch can be prevented by briskly rubbing the skin with a towel immediately after leaving the water, to prevent the cercariae from having time to penetrate the skin. Once the reaction has occurred, the skin should be lightly rinsed with isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol and then coated with calamine or Caladryl lotion. Additional remedies are baking soda or anti-itch oatmeal tub baths. If the reaction is severe, the victim should be treated with oral prednisone as if they suffered from poison oak (see page 255).

Because the cercariae are present in greatest concentration in shallow, warmer water and in weed beds (where the snails are), swimmers should seek to avoid these areas.

Sea bather's eruption

Sea bather's eruption, often misnamed "sea lice" (which are true crustacean parasites on fish), occurs in seawater and often involves bathing suit–covered areas of the skin in addition to exposed areas. The skin rash distribution can be similar to that from seaweed dermatitis, but no seaweed is found on the skin. The cause is stings from the nematocysts (stinging cells) of thimble jellyfish, such as *Linuche unguiculata*, and the larval forms of certain anemones. The victim might notice a tingling sensation on exposed skin or under the bathing suit (breasts, groin, cuffs of wet suits) while still in the water, which is made much worse if they take a freshwater rinse (shower) while still wearing the suit. The rash usually consists of red bumps, which might become dense and confluent. Itching is severe and might become painful. Treatment is often not optimal, because application of vinegar or rubbing alcohol to stop the envenomation might not be very effective. An agent that might work better is a solution of papain (such as unseasoned meat tenderizer), which can be applied using a mildly abrasive pad. Another remedy that might be effective is lidocaine hydrochloride 4%. After the decontamination and a thorough freshwater rinse, apply hydrocortisone lotion 1% twice a day to treat the inflammatory component of the skin reaction. If the reaction is severe, the victim might suffer from headache, fever, chills, weakness, vomiting, itchy eyes, and burning on urination, and should be treated with oral prednisone as if they suffered from poison oak (see page 255). Topical calamine lotion with 1% menthol might be soothing.

The stinging cells might remain in the bathing suit even after it dries, so once a person has sustained a sea bather's eruption, their clothing should undergo a machine washing or be thoroughly rinsed in alcohol or vinegar, then be washed by hand with soap and water.

To prevent sea bather's eruption, an ocean bather or diver should wear, at a minimum, a synthetic nylon-rubber (Lycra [DuPont]) "dive skin." Safe Sea Sunblock with Jellyfish Sting Protective Lotion (www.buysafesea.com) is both a sunscreen and jellyfish sting inhibitor that can be used to diminish the incidence and severity of jellyfish stings.

Soapfish dermatitis

The tropical soapfish *Rypticus saponaceous* is covered with a soapy mucus. When exposed to this slime, the victim's skin becomes red, itches, and undergoes mild swelling. Treatment involves a thorough wash with soap and water, followed by cold compresses of Burow's solution (aluminum acetate dissolved in water), application of calamine lotion, and treatment for a mild allergic reaction similar to that for hives (see below). In a severe case, apply a topical steroid preparation for 3 to 5 days.

Fish handler's disease

When cleaning marine fish or shellfish, the handler frequently creates small nicks and scrapes in their skin, usually on their hands. If these become infected with the bacteria *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae*, a skin rash might develop within 2 to 7 days. There might be a low-grade fever and tiredness. The rash appears as a red to violet-colored area of raised skin surrounding the small cut or scrape, with warmth, slight tenderness, and a well-defined border. The sufferer should be treated with penicillin, cephalexin, or ciprofloxacin for 1 week.

Seal finger

Seal finger is a unique infection (suspected to be due to *Mycoplasma*), usually of a finger, caused by exposure to seals, walruses, and sea lions. The human victim contacts the skin, fur, or a mucous membrane of the animal to initiate the infection, which is characterized by swelling and pain that starts as a small nodule. Swelling and stiffness of the finger progresses to involve the joint, which can lead to bone and cartilage damage. Treatment is with oral tetracycline. The initial dose is 1.5 g, followed by 500 mg four times a day for 4 to 6 weeks. Alternatively, administer an initial oral dose of doxycycline 200 mg, followed by 100 mg twice a day for 4 to 6 weeks. Ciprofloxacin can be used if tetracycline or doxycycline is not available.

Hives

Hives (urticaria) are one skin manifestation of an allergic reaction or might develop as part of a nonallergic reaction (such as to a medication). Hives appear as raised, red, and irregularly bordered welts or thickened patches of skin (Fig. 165). Often, the victim will also complain of itching and/or fever. The treatment for hives presumed to be caused by allergy is to administer an antihistamine (such as diphenhydramine, cetirizine, or levocetirizine) at prescribed intervals until the rash has begun to subside and the itching is relieved, and to observe the victim closely for progression to a serious allergic reaction. Hives can appear in moments yet take days to completely resolve. If the victim complains of shortness of breath or wheezing, or has a swollen tongue (muffled voice) or lips, anticipate a more serious allergic reaction (see page 78). Be prepared to administer epinephrine (see page 484).

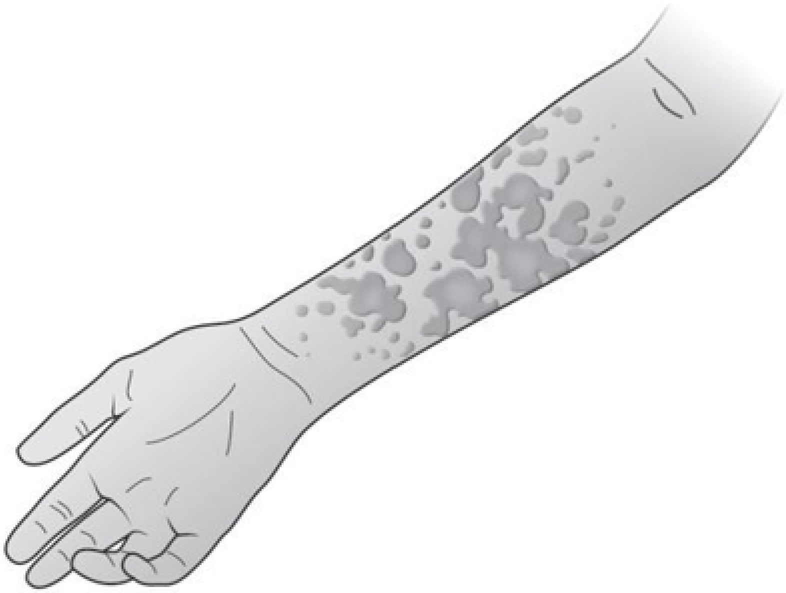


FIG. 165 Hives.

Hives can also be induced by exposure to cold or during rewarming of cold skin (cold urticaria). Accompanying the skin lesions can be fatigue, headache, shortness of breath, rapid heart rate, and, rarely, full-blown anaphylaxis (see page 78). Avoidance of cold might not be totally preventive, since the rate of cooling seems to be as important a factor as the environmental temperature. Avoidance of sudden temperature changes and cold exposure are advised. Certain drugs, such as cyproheptadine (Periactin), can be prescribed by a physician as treatment.

Hives might also be caused by exposure to water of any temperature ("aquagenic urticaria"). This can sometimes be prevented by greasing the skin with petrolatum ointment prior to water exposure or taking an antihistamine one hour before exposure.

Heat rash

Heat rash is a skin irritation composed of small, raised spots that coalesce to form large areas of redness, particularly in the groin, under the arms, in the creases of the elbows, over the chest, under the neck, and under the breasts. It is rarely itchy; more often, it becomes irritated, particularly with rubbing. It should be treated with cool compresses; with light cotton clothing that will absorb sweat; and, if painful, with thin applications of 0.5% to 1% hydrocortisone lotion twice a day.

Intertrigo

Intertrigo is softening and maceration of skin caused by moisture and rubbing where two skin surfaces are in continual close contact, such as in the creases underneath a woman's breasts, in the groin, or in skinfolds of obese persons. Attempts to keep the area dry are usually unsuccessful in hot and humid environments. To soothe the rash, apply a thin layer of antiseptic ointment, such as bacitracin or mupirocin. If the rash begins to show a white curd-like discharge, it might be a yeast infection (see page 149) and might respond to an antifungal preparation.

Chafe

Chafe occurs between the thighs and in the groin creases, particularly in runners and cyclists. The skin is reddened and painful. The best way to treat it is to avoid the offending activity and to lubricate the affected skin with something greasy, such as petrolatum or a nonsensitizing antiseptic ointment, such as bacitracin. Treatment and prevention include wearing clean, absorbent pants and underwear.

Impetigo

Impetigo is a highly contagious, superficial skin infection caused by the bacteria *Staphylococcus*, with or without an antecedent *Streptococcus* infection. It is most often seen in warm and humid climates, and presents as discrete weeping sores, with honey-yellow crusted scabs (with or without yellow pus) of the sort often associated with infected insect bites, small scrapes, or areas frequently scratched. The rash might start as pinhead-sized blisters filled with white or yellow pus. Once a few sores have become infected and ruptured, they coalesce and crop up all over the body (particularly in children), and can cause fevers, fatigue, and swollen regional lymph glands. In the blister form of impetigo, the victim shows large, superficial, and fragile blisters that are commonly seen on the trunk, limbs, armpits, and other skinfold areas.

The skin should be washed twice a day with pHisohex scrub (not for infants and children under 2 years of age), a half-strength solution of hydrogen peroxide, or soap and water, and the sores covered with a thin layer of mupirocin 2% ointment or cream, retapamulin 1% (Altabax) ointment (much more expensive) or bacitracin (less effective) ointment. Before applying the ointment (three times a day until all lesions have cleared), remove the crusts with warm soaks. Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA)–related infections (see later) can be treated with bacitracin (alone or in combination with polymyxin and neomycin), mupirocin, or retapamulin, although topical therapy might not be sufficient to treat the infection. Oral antibiotics can hasten the resolution of a skin infection if the causative bacteria is *Staphylococcus aureus*. If an oral antibiotic is used, treatment involves administration of oral dicloxacillin, cephalexin, azithromycin, erythromycin, or amoxicillin/clavulanate for 7 to 10 days. If there is resistance to these antibiotics or possibility of MRSA, use trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole (particularly for children under 8 years old), clindamycin, doxycycline, or minocycline (the latter two are contraindicated in children younger than 8 years).

If a person is prone to impetigo, they might be a chronic carrier of *Staphylococcus* bacteria inside their nose. This can be controlled for up to 3 months by an intranasal application, using a cotton-tipped swab, of mupirocin calcium ointment 2% (Bactroban Nasal) four times a day for 5 days.

Cellulitis, including from methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*

Cellulitis is inflammation of soft tissues of the body, commonly involving the skin and subcutaneous (under the skin) structures. Signs and symptoms include reddened skin, swelling, tenderness, blistering and “weeping” from the skin (in severe cases), tender and swollen lymph nodes, and fever and chills (severe cases). One way to differentiate cellulitis from other causes of skin reddening is to elevate the affected limb (typically a leg) to a 45 degree-or-higher angle. If the redness is due to cellulitis, it will not fade. Cellulitis is often caused by the bacteria *Streptococcus* or *Staphylococcus.* Many other germs can cause cellulitis, particularly if it follows a dog bite, injury in the aquatic environment, or scratch from a thorn or plant, or if the victim suffers from immunosuppression. Fever, swollen lymph glands, and red streaking that travels in a linear fashion from the infected site toward the trunk indicate the spread of infection into the lymphatic system (lymphangitis, or "blood poisoning") (Fig. 166). Cellulitis associated with air that can be felt by an examiner in the soft tissues, often described as "Rice Krispies," is indicative of a rapidly advancing and potentially life-threatening infection, known as necrotizing fasciitis (caused by "flesh-eating bacteria"). Other features of necrotizing fasciitis are swelling, redness, severe pain, tenderness to touch, skin breakdown, dishwater-grey tissue discharge, and blisters. This is an extreme emergency that requires surgery and intravenous (IV) antibiotics.

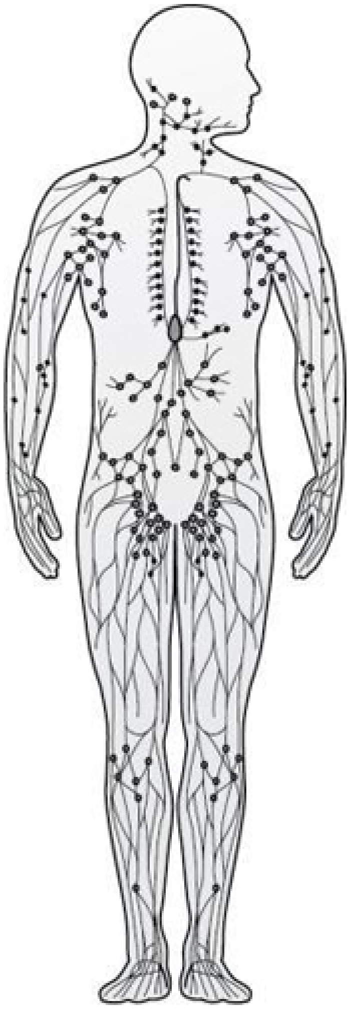


FIG. 166 General location of lymph nodes within the lymphatic system. Tenderness and enlargement of the nodes mark inflammation in the lymph nodes; red streaking can sometimes be appreciated.

A cause of cellulitis and abscesses is MRSA, which can generate prolonged and debilitating infections. These bacteria are resistant to all currently available penicillins and cephalosporins. If MRSA infection is a possibility, the antibiotics of choice in the outdoors are trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, clindamycin, doxycycline, or minocycline. Other drugs that may be prescribed by a physician once that diagnosis is confirmed include daptomycin, linezolid, or rifampin, the latter as part of a combination therapy. The disadvantages of clindamycin are its association with subsequent diarrhea caused by *Clostridiodes difficile* and the emergence of bacterial resistance. If trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole or doxycycline/minocycline is prescribed because of suspicion for a MRSA infection, it is prudent to add a beta-lactam antibiotic (such as cephalexin) to cover possible infection with group A *Streptococcus*. Trimethoprim–

sulfamethoxazole used alone for MRSA has met with mixed results. Rifampin is sometimes used in combination with trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole or doxycycline to treat MRSA infection, but this is not based on scientific data. Fluoroquinolone antibiotics, such as ciprofloxacin, should not be used to treat skin and soft tissue infections caused by community-acquired MRSA, because of bacterial resistance and risk of tendinopathy. If MRSA is not a consideration (unfortunately, this may one day never be the case), initial antibiotics for cellulitis may include cephalexin (500 mg by mouth four times a day; first choice); or if cephalexin is not available, dicloxacillin, amoxicillin-clavulanate, or penicillin VK (last choice). These are usually administered for 7 days. If MRSA is a consideration, then add trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole if there is drainage (liquid or pus) from the infected tissue, presence of an abscess (see page 262) or a history of recurrent abscesses, or a particularly ill patient. If the infection does not improve or if it worsens within 5 days of beginning antibiotics, then the bacteria might be resistant to the antibiotic(s), there might be more than one germ involved, cellulitis might not be the problem, the patient might be immunosuppressed, or there might be a deep space infection that requires more aggressive treatment.

If cellulitis is associated with human or animal bite (see page 415), the initial antibiotic should be amoxicillin–clavulanate (if the patient is allergic to penicillin, use doxycycline or moxifloxacin; consider adding clindamycin or metronidazole); if it is associated with exposure to fresh water or salt water (see page 394), doxycycline or ciprofloxacin should be administered along with an antibiotic to cover *Staphylococcus*; if it is associated with exposure to raw meat, fish or clam processing, or animal handling, infection with *E. rhusiopathiae* ("fish handler's disease") should be suspected, and the initial antibiotic treatment should include amoxicillin or ciprofloxacin.

Important measures to prevent the spread of any skin infection, and in particular MRSA infection, include covering all draining wounds with clean bandages, washing hands after contact with a contaminated wound, laundering clothing after it has been contaminated, bathing regularly using soap, avoiding sharing items (such as towels, clothing, razors, etc.) that might be contaminated, and cleaning equipment with effective agents (such as detergent or disinfectant, such as a quaternary ammonium compound or dilute bleach). For MRSA in particular, to attempt to achieve "decolonization" of a human and eradicate the carrier state, apply 2% mupirocin ointment to the inside of the nostrils with a cotton-tipped swab twice a day, wash intact (not open wounds, the face, or mucous membranes) skin with 4% chlorhexidine gluconate solution, followed by a thorough water rinse, once a day and use chlorhexidine-containing mouthwash twice a day, all measures undertaken for 5 days twice per month for 6 months.

Cellulitis is rarely seen in both legs simultaneously; it usually affects only a single limb at a time.

Abscess

An abscess (boil) is a collection of pus. Although it can occur anywhere on or in the body, it is most frequently noticed on the skin, particularly in an area of high perspiration, friction, and bacteria (particularly *Staphylococcus*) accumulation, such as associated with hair follicles under the arm (Fig. 167) or in the groin. The early abscess first appears as a firm, tender red lump, which progresses over the course of a few days into a reddish-purple, soft, tender, raised area, occasionally with a white or yellowish cap ("comes to a head") (Fig. 168). The surrounding skin is reddened and thickened, and regional lymph glands might be swollen and tender. Fever, swollen lymph glands, and red streaking that travels in a linear fashion from the infected site toward the trunk indicate the spread of infection into the lymphatic system (lymphangitis, or "blood poisoning") (see Fig. 166).

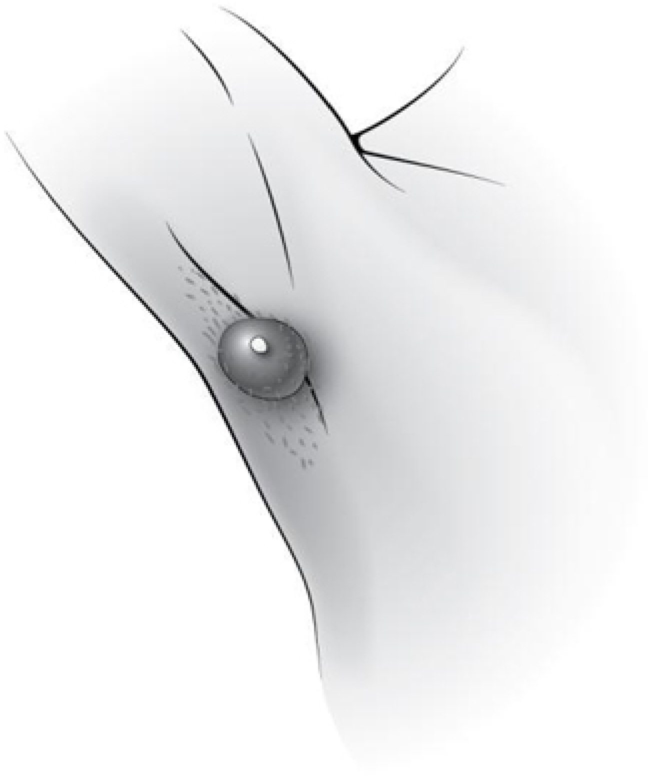


FIG. 167 External appearance of an abscess in the armpit.

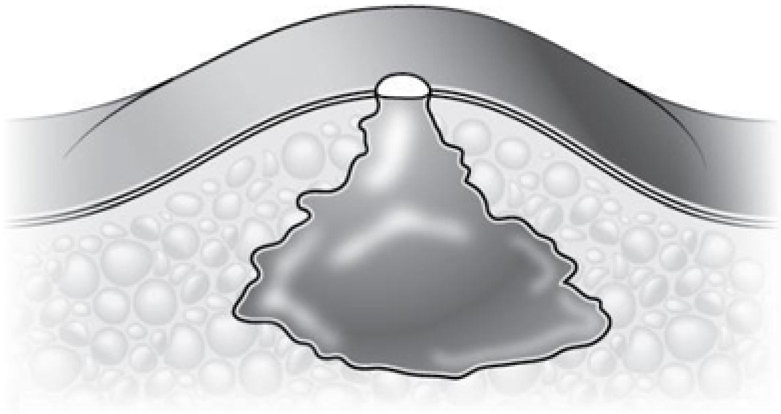


FIG. 168 Cross section of a pus pocket, with a soft cap.

Treatment involves drainage of the pus and dead tissue from within the core of the soft abscess. This is performed by taking a sharp blade and cutting a line into the roof of the abscess at its softest point (Fig. 169A). The incision must be large enough (generally, at least half the size of the soft area) to allow all of the pus to drain. On rare occasions, the pus inside the abscess will squirt from the incision, so take care to protect your eyes and clothes. After the pus is allowed to drain, the cavity should be very gently rinsed (if at all) and then packed snugly with a small piece of gauze (see Fig. 169B) to prevent the skin from sealing closed over the created empty space (and thus merely reaccumulating pus, rather than healing). Each day, the packing is removed (pull it out quickly to minimize pain) and the wound irrigated and then repacked until the cavity shrinks to a small size. If the abscess remains open while it is healing such that continuous drainage is ensured, packing is not necessary. If the abscess is adequately drained, there is no need to begin antibiotic administration.

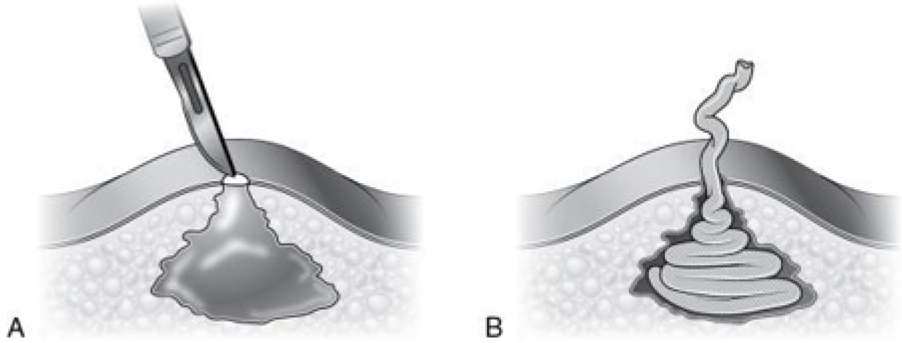


FIG. 169 **A,** To drain an abscess, a stab wound is made in the center of the softest area. **B,** After the pus is removed and the cavity is rinsed, a gauze wick is layered into the cavity.

Another method to manage an abscess is the "loop technique." In this method, the abscess is incised and drained as above, but with a smaller incision. After the abscess is rinsed, instead of packing the abscess, another incision about ¼ to ½ inch in length is made about 1 inch from the center of the abscess (Fig. 170A). A small flexible rubber drain, or the finger of a surgical glove, is inserted into the center incision and pulled out from the lateral incision, then tied off (knotted) so that a loose loop of rubber drain is created (see Fig. 170B). This loop should slide freely within the abscess cavity. It is left in place to promote drainage until the abscess ceases draining and appears to be healing well (usually 3 to 5 days), then it is untied or cut and removed, after which warm compresses can be applied a few times a day to complete the healing process.

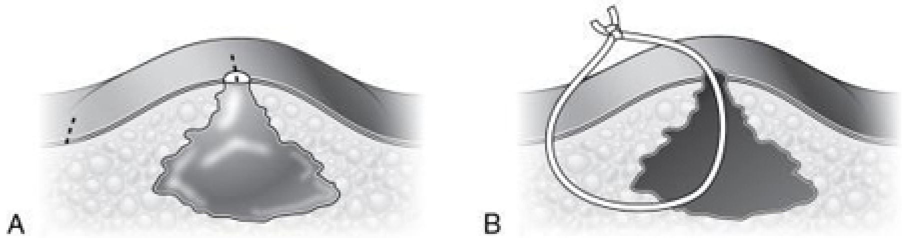


FIG. 170 **A,** Two incisions are placed approximately 1 inch apart to allow the loop technique for abscess drainage. **B,** The rubber is tied off to create a loose loop.

Do not squeeze an abscess to cause rupture, particularly not on the face. This might force bacteria into the bloodstream and create a much more serious infection elsewhere (such as behind the eye or in the brain). After you make an incision into the top of an abscess and it is draining freely, it is all right to push the sides gently to express the pus.

Resist the temptation to stick a needle into an abscess to attempt to drain the pus into a syringe. This does not work and might worsen the situation (e.g., if you accidentally puncture an inside wall of the abscess and spread the infection).

Traditional teaching has been that after an abscess is incised and drained, antibiotics are not needed. This has been challenged with data that support the use of antibiotics to achieve an increased rate of cure. In a wilderness setting, this makes sense. To cover MRSA, use trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole or clindamycin for 5 days.

If the abscess has not yet softened, but is still red, painful, and hard, begin the victim on warm soaks and administer dicloxacillin, erythromycin, or cephalexin. If MRSA is suspected, use an antibiotic recommended previously (see Cellulitis, earlier). Continue the soaks until the abscess softens and a white or yellow cap becomes apparent. If the abscess is soft, but there is evidence of lymphatic infection (see earlier), administer an antibiotic. If the abscess is near the anus, there is a risk that it can extend to become adjacent to the rectum. Suggested antibiotics for a perianal abscess are metronidazole in combination with amoxicillin–clavulanate.

Draining an abscess or dealing with a large wound infection might involve some nasty odors. If you cannot tolerate the smell, try rubbing a bit of toothpaste underneath your nose. If you have a face mask that covers the mouth and nose, such as an N95 or P100 face mask, wear it over the toothpaste, or if you have a dry teabag, place it inside the face mask instead of using the toothpaste.

Ingrown toenail

An ingrown toenail occurs when the lateral edge of a nail penetrates the skin alongside or outside the groove in which it normally advances during growth. This can be caused by an injury to the nail or toe, improperly fitting footwear, fungal infection, or improper trimming. Redness, pain, and swelling are common, and an infection might develop.

Treatment involves relieving the pressure created by the toenail on the soft tissues that surround it. Soak the affected toe for 30 minutes in a basin or bucket of warm water, preferably with a squirt of disinfectant such as povidone–iodine solution. Using a blunt, stiff tweezer, needle driver (see page 288), scissors, or nail clipper, rotate (extract) the ingrown portion of the nail out of the nail bed, and clip or cut it off (Fig. 171). If this is impossible because of pain, which is common when there is an infection, you might need to first administer pain medication. To prevent the nail from growing back into the groove and once again becoming ingrown, pack the groove with cotton or layered strips of gauze or clean cloth. Change the packing every few days until the nail has grown back correctly or you can no longer keep the packing in place. Apply a thin layer of antiseptic ointment, such as bacitracin, underneath the packing or after nail extraction, even if a bandage is not available.

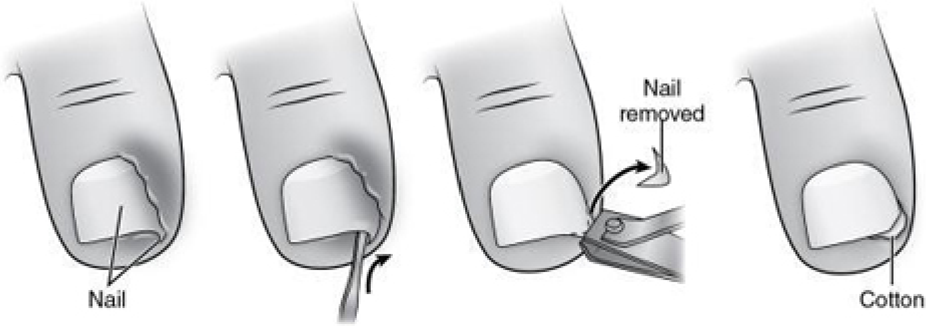


FIG. 171 Removing an ingrown toenail.

If you do not have any tools to trim the nail and wish to relieve the pressure, try taking a piece of tape and placing one edge on the soft tissue of the toe against, but not touching, the edge of the ingrown nail (Fig. 172). Wrap the tape underneath the toe while pulling, to separate the soft tissue from the nail and relieve the pressure. This is a temporary measure at best.

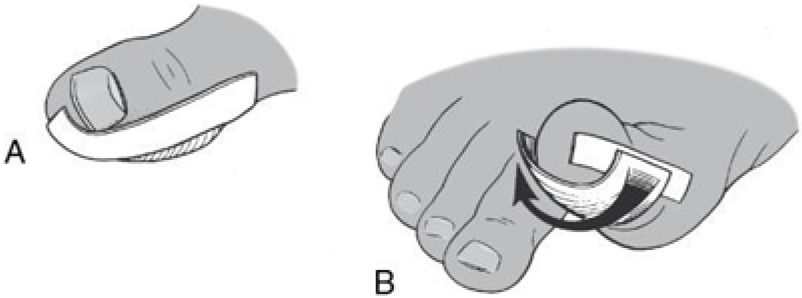


FIG. 172 Relieving the pressure on an ingrown toenail. **A,** Place a strip of tape next to the painful ingrown toenail. **B,** Wrap the tape under the toe to separate the tissue from the nail.

If there are signs of an infection (see page 261), administer dicloxacillin, cephalexin, or erythromycin for 5 to 7 days and continue the warm- or hot-water soaks two or three times a day.

Fingertip cracks

Annoying fingertip skin cracks occur in cold, dry climates or after repeated exposure to saltwater and abrasion. They can be prevented by using skin moisturizers and limiting handwashing. Healing can be accelerated by applying a greasy (petrolatum-based) ointment and covering with a bandage. If the crack is resilient, it can be closed with a small amount of Super Glue (e.g., ethyl-2-cyanoacrylate). Medicinal tissue adhesives that should be used, if available, in preference to ethyl-2-cyanoacrylate are 2-octyl-cyanoacrylate (e.g., DERMABOND ADVANCED Topical Skin Adhesive) or *n*-2-butylcyanoacrylate (e.g., Histoacryl Blue or GluStitch). After you apply the glue and let it set, apply a fingertip bandage to keep the wound dry for 2 to 3 days. As the crack heals, the shed skin carries away the glue. If the glue is dislodged by accident before the crack heals, reapply it.

Paronychia

A paronychia is a small abscess (see page 262) at the base of a nail (just beyond the cuticle) in the space between the soft tissue and the nail. It commonly appears as a red or yellowish, soft, and tender swelling in one corner at the base of the nail (Fig. 173A). If the nail feels mobile, there might be an underlying abscess.

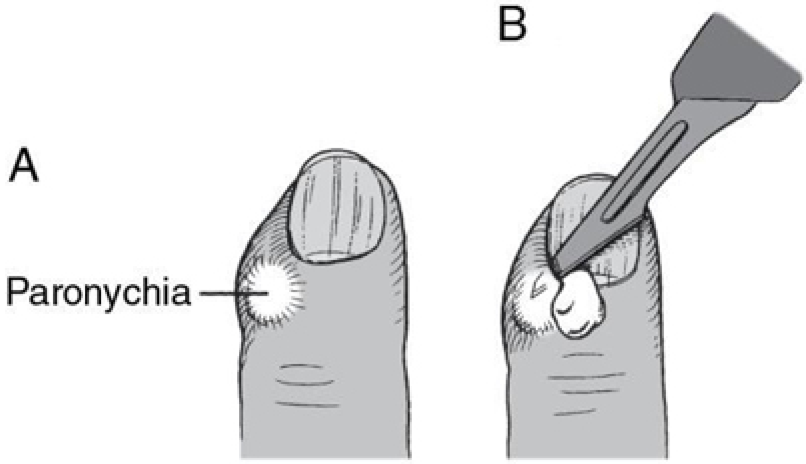


FIG. 173 **A,** Paronychia. **B,** Draining a paronychia.

If the area is firm, it might not yet be ready for incision and drainage, so begin warm water soaks. To treat a soft or draining paronychia, soak the affected finger in nonscalding hot water with a squirt of disinfectant (such as povidone–iodine) for 30 minutes. To drain the collection of pus, slide the tip of a no. 11 scalpel blade or an 18-gauge needle underneath the cuticle, holding the blade flat against the nail, to puncture the pocket and allow drainage (see Fig. 173B). If you do not have a scalpel, you can use a clean, small knife blade, or even the prong of a fork. Lift the tissue gently off the nail. The abscess will be no more than ¼ inch (0.6 cm) below the margin of the cuticle; if you have penetrated that far without the obvious release of pus, cease your digging, start the victim on dicloxacillin, cephalexin, amoxicillin–clavulanate, or erythromycin; and continue with hot-water soaks three times a day. If pus is released, jam a 1-inch (2.5 cm) wick of gauze into the pocket, if the victim will tolerate it; with or without the wick, continue the soaks for a few days to keep the pocket draining.

Felon

A felon is a severe infection (abscess) of the pulpy tip of a finger (Fig. 174A), usually caused by infection with *Staphylococcus* or *Streptococcus* bacteria. It can arise from a nick in the skin, extension of a paronychia, infected hangnail, or puncture wound. The finger becomes swollen and extremely tender, with throbbing pain. Occasionally, there is extension of the infection via the lymphatic system (see page 262), with swollen lymph glands behind the elbow and in the armpit. It is possible to develop a fever because of a felon.

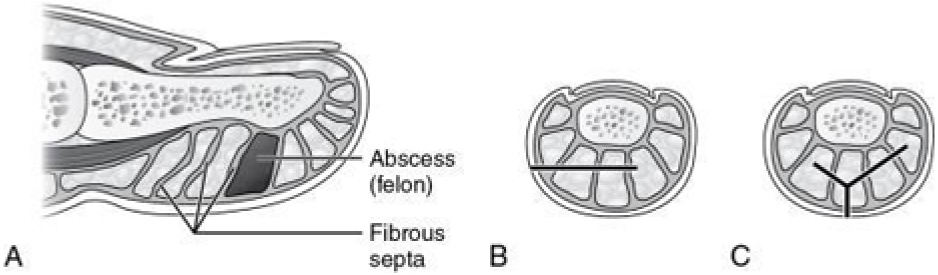


FIG. 174 **A,** Felon. **B,** Linear incision through the pad of the finger for drainage of a felon. **C,** L-shaped incision to allow improved drainage of a felon.

Merely soaking the felon in hot water will not help much. The definitive treatment is drainage, but this can be extremely painful. An incision needs to be made that allows extensive drainage from the fingertip. The most common incision is linear through the pad of the fingertip, sometimes with extension in an L shape to enter into and allow drainage from all the pockets of pus (see Fig. 174B). It can also be performed as a single longitudinal incision from the side of the finger into the depth of the abscess. This may sometimes be extended completely through the finger and out the other side with placement of a gauze or rubber "drain." Following the incision, warm water soaks are undertaken and antibiotics administered. The victim should be started on dicloxacillin, cephalexin, amoxicillin–clavulanate, or erythromycin.

Blisters

Blisters are the bane of hikers. These clear fluid–filled or blood-filled vesicles have probably ended more outings than all major illnesses combined. The cause of a friction blister is the repeated action of skin rubbing against another surface. As the external contact, such as a coarse, sweat- and dust-impregnated sock, moves across the skin, the opposing force is called the frictional force (Ff). The combination of the magnitude of the Ff and the frequency of the rubbing of the object across the skin determines the probability of blister development. Therefore, the greater the Ff, the lower the number of rubbing cycles needed for blister development. In terms of foot blister formation, shear forces extend horizontally between skin layers, between the skin and sock interface, between socks, and between socks and footwear. When the forces within a shoe or boot overcome resistance, sliding occurs. Repeated sliding at a friction point causes irritation that might be perceived as an initial sensation of heat—the so-called "hot spot." Further friction on a hot spot causes blister formation. The separated space in the area under the blister roof quickly fills with fluid. Thick skin like that found on the palms and soles is more likely to undergo blister formation.

Spontaneous blister healing is rapid if one can reduce further friction and worsening of the injury. In a mere 24 hours after blister formation, there is regenerative growth in the blister wound, and at 48 hours, evidence of healing. However, in the presence of continued friction and pressure, as is often the case in the backcountry, the body certainly benefits from medical attention that provides healing assistance.

The best protection for a blister is its own roof. Small intact blisters that are not causing significant discomfort should be left intact (Fig. 175). To assist in protecting this roof, a small adhesive bandage or pad can be applied. Be certain to place a first layer of paper tape under any cloth adhesive tape, so you do not inadvertently unroof the blister when removing the tape.

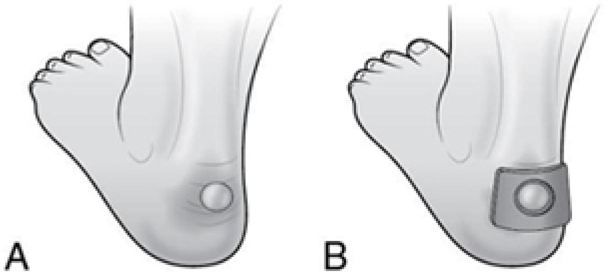


FIG. 175 **A,** Blister on the heel. **B,** A cushion of moleskin protects the area from further irritation.

The pain from a blister is due to pressure on the incompressible fluid trapped between skin layers. As the abrasion and pressure builds, there is further weakening and separation of skin layers and increased potential for rupturing the blister. When a blister opens, raw skin is exposed. If a blister is punctured with a needle and drained, it will often refill within a few hours. If a large hole is made that allows continuous fluid drainage, there is risk for tearing off the roof and leaving a large, damaged area.

Blisters deep to a callus should not be drained, as this is a painful and difficult process. These subcallus blisters quickly refill with fluid after drainage, and the process can introduce bacteria that cause infection. Likewise, blood-filled blisters should be left intact, because of a similar concern for infection.

Any blister with murky fluid, that is draining pus, or that is associated with warm, red skin or red streaking toward the heart might be infected. If the blister appears to be infected, it should be unroofed entirely, an appropriate dressing applied, and the victim treated with dicloxacillin, erythromycin, or cephalexin for 5 days or until the skin appears normal. If the dressing (such as Curad Hydro Heal) keeps the blister slightly moist, it might be less prone to drying out and cracking.

If a blister is caused by a thermal burn (see page 128), it should be immediately immersed in cold water (do not apply ice directly to the burn) for 10 to 15 minutes, to relieve pain and lessen the ultimate injury. Then dry the wound and apply a soft, sterile dressing. Unless there is a reason to suspect infection (cloudy fluid or pus, fever, redness and swelling beyond the blister edges, swollen lymph glands), burn blisters should be left intact. Opening an uninfected blister or sticking a needle into it risks introducing bacteria that can cause an infection. Topical antibacterial creams such as silver sulfadiazine or mupirocin, or ointments such as mupirocin or bacitracin, should be applied if the blister is broken or to prevent the dressing from sticking to the wound. Alternatively, apply a layer of Spenco 2nd Skin or Aquaphor gauze underneath a sterile gauze dressing.

There is no one correct way to manage a blister. For every technique and product mentioned, there are at least several different options. The following blister treatments assume that you must continue on your feet, because resting and staying off your feet is not an option.

Basic blister treatment (for intact blisters)

- Cut moleskin (or a basic blister care product) into a donut of diameter ¼ inch to ⅓ inch around the blister. The blister should fit inside the hole in the donut.

- Place a patch of Spenco 2nd Skin in the donut hole directly over the blister.
- Cover the moleskin donut with another layer of moleskin and patch with benzoin and tape.
- Note that this “traditional” moleskin/donut treatment might cause further pressure points either directly under the moleskin or by transferring pressure and subsequent increased friction to the opposite side of the foot.

Basic blister draining

- Cleanse both the blister skin and a safety pin with an alcohol pad. The diameter of a safety pin is large enough to allow continuous drainage, yet not so large as to risk unroofing the blister. If alcohol is not available, you can disinfect the needle by heating it to red hot and then allowing it to cool.
- Puncture the blister with the pin at several points at the margin of the blister (generally on the outside of the foot), rather than via one large hole. This will allow natural foot pressure to continually squeeze out fluid, limiting the risk for unroofing the blister.
- Gently push out fluid with your fingers.
- Blot away the expressed fluid.
- Cover the drained blister with paper tape (protects the blister roof from being torn away when any other overlying tape is removed).
- Cover the paper tape with benzoin, and then with shaped adhesive tape. All tape should have trimmed and rounded edges to minimize “dog ears” and peeling.
- Reaccumulated fluid can be drained through an intact bandage.

Treatment of open and torn blisters

- Using small scissors or another sharp object, carefully unroof the blister, completely trimming off the dead skin.
- Place Spenco 2nd Skin on raw skin.
- Cover the Spenco 2nd Skin with paper tape.
- Apply a benzoin coating.
- Cover with Elastikon or another tape product.

Toe blister

- Drain the blister with an alcohol-cleansed safety pin.

- Use one piece of Micropore tape to encircle the toe (leaving the torn tape end at the top of the foot to avoid irritating neighboring toes).
- Pinch the tape closed.
- Trim sharp edges or wrinkles in the tape. Avoid cloth tape or Elastikon on the toes, as the abrasive nature of these tape varieties might cause blisters on adjacent toes.

To prevent blisters

- Minimize friction generated by the normal biomechanical forces of walking and the contributors to friction. Reduce the carried load, whether that means losing personal weight or shedding pounds from the backpack. Use a padded insole or arch support to help evenly distribute pressure over the bottom surface of the foot.
- Increase or decrease the ease with which two surfaces rub against each other.
- Shoes or boots should fit properly and comfortably. Shoes that are too tight increase contact points of pressure on the foot. Those that are too loose allow excess movement that allows generation of friction. Overly narrow shoes typically cause blisters on the large and small toes. Loose shoes can create blisters on the tips of toes from sliding and jamming the tips into the toe box. A toe box that is too shallow can cause blisters on the tops of the toes. A toecap will help prevent toe injuries.
- Fit (size) shoes in the evening, because feet tend to swell throughout the day. When trying on shoes or boots, make sure to wear the same socks and/or insoles or orthotics that you will be using on the trails. Size boots to compensate for thicker socks.
- Allow for ample time to break in new footwear. This will stretch the material, sometimes loosen it, and increase flexibility. The breaking-in period also conditions the skin itself by causing the outermost layer to thicken.
- Soft and supple feet are better able to withstand frictional stress than are cracked and horny feet. Many podiatrists recommend preparing feet with Bag Balm, a moisturizer, petrolatum, or other softening agent. Calluses should be filed down or removed with keratolytics (e.g., containing salicylic acid) and toenails kept trimmed short and beveled downward.
- Create a weak shear layer by using two pairs of socks. The goal is to have friction occur between the layers of socks, not between the skin and the socks. Wear a smooth, thin, snug-fitting synthetic sock as an inner layer with a thick, woven sock as an outer layer. The thinner

synthetic liner sock will also assist in moisture control by wicking moisture and perspiration away from the skin surface.

- Barriers are best used as preventive measures before blisters form, either at the beginning of the day or as soon as a hot spot develops. The barrier needs to be adhesive so it can remain fixed to skin, despite the action of friction, warmth, and/or moisture. Blist-O-Ban bandages (SAM Medical Products), Micropore paper tape, cloth tape, Elastikon elastic tape, moleskin, Spenco Blister Pads, Band-Aid Blister Block, and duct tape are methods to prevent blister development. Using an adhesive such as tincture of benzoin or Pedi-Pre Tape Spray will help keep the barrier adherent to the skin. Another way to eliminate friction from a potential hot spot is to use a sandwich bag. Cut off a corner of the bag, put a lubricant between the two surfaces, then tape the prepared bag to the skin in the desired location (Fig. 176).
- A cardinal rule of taping is to smooth out any wrinkles and cut off "dog ears" that might lead to further pressure points. ENGO Blister Prevention Patches are slick fabric-film composite patches that are placed on the inside of the shoe or insole. Silicon gel toecaps and sheaths reduce friction between the toes.
- Keep the skin clean and dry to minimize friction. Skin hydration leads to increasing contact area and friction, so moist skin results in more frequent blisters. However, very wet skin has a low incidence of blister formation, likely due to the lubricating effects of water on the skin surface. High-technology oversocks combine waterproof materials with traditional socks to help keep feet dry when repeatedly exposed to water. Combining GORE-TEX oversocks with wicking liner socks and foot antiperspirant is a method to reduce foot moisture. If your feet are often moist or sweaty, change socks frequently.
- Consider the addition of gaiters to help eliminate dirt, gravel, sand, and rocks from entering the sock-shoe system.
- Drying powders decrease moisture for short periods of time and are useful in the evening to dry out feet, but after about 1 hour might increase the friction between surfaces. Lubricants have been developed that are more advanced than traditional Vaseline, which is greasy and tends to trap grit particles, which are irritating and might increase friction and blister production. Advanced lubricants that combine silicone and petrolatum have a silky feel, prevent friction, and repel moisture from the skin. Lubricants can be applied preemptively, or over tape after hot spots develop. However, after about 3 hours, friction is increased as the lubricants are absorbed into the skin and socks. Lubricants should be tested before use on the trail to assess for allergic reaction and reapplied frequently.

- Antiperspirants irritate and block sweat ducts, reducing the amount of perspiration. People who suffer from a condition called hyperhidrosis experience excessive foot perspiration and subsequently have extremely moist feet. These people might benefit the most from antiperspirants. If possible, wash and dry your feet each day. To control foot sweating—which leads to blisters, fungal infections, and foot odor—spray your feet daily with an aluminum chlorhydrate antiperspirant, unless a fissure or crack appears in the skin, in which case spraying must be discontinued until the skin is healed. An alternative is to use a drying, deodorant foot powder.
- Blisters or reddened skin might also be caused by an allergic (“contact”) reaction to chemicals such as formaldehyde or rubber. If a rash is confined to the soles of the feet (shoe inserts) or top of the feet (shoe tongue dye), suspect this problem. In this case, the footgear must be changed.

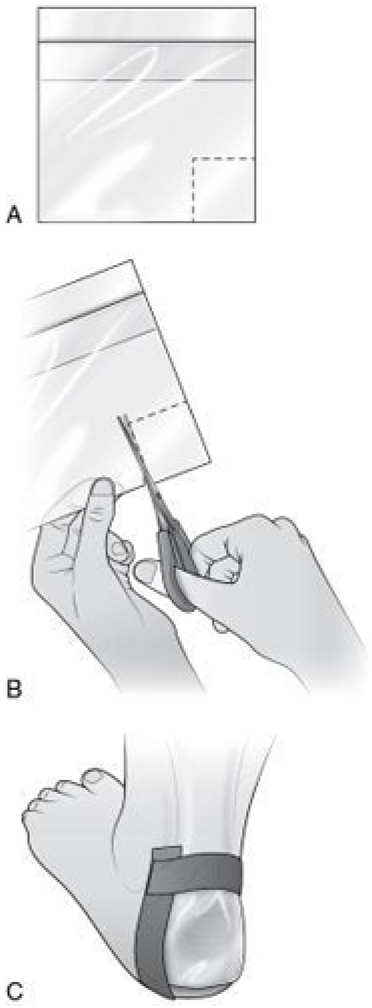


FIG. 176 Using a sandwich bag to eliminate friction from a "hot spot" that might turn into a blister. **A,** Mark a corner of the bag to the size desired to cover the blister with a decent margin. **B,** Cut the bag, taking care to include both thicknesses (double layer, so that the plastic can slide on itself). **C,** Tape the plastic in place to cover the entire "hot spot" without applying any tape directly to the irritated skin.

Plantar warts

Plantar warts occur on the soles of the feet and are attributed to viruses. They might appear in weight-bearing areas and show themselves as thickened skin, sometimes raised from the surface and strewn with black dots, which are tiny, clotted blood vessels. If they are in locations that cause pain with walking, they should be very carefully shaved with a sharp-edged blade or "sanded" down with a nail file so that they are flush to the surrounding skin, without exposing sensitive underlying tissue or causing a bleeding, infection-prone wound. They can ultimately be removed by using a salicylic acid plaster, freezing, topical imiquimod cream, or laser.

Athlete's foot, ringworm, and jock itch

Athlete's foot, ringworm, and jock itch are all caused by fungal infections. These more commonly develop in warm, moist areas, such as between the toes and in the groin. "Tinea" is a superficial fungal skin infection. Athlete's foot (tinea pedis) can be recognized as a red rash, moist or scaling, with small blisters and frequent weeping. Itching is the major symptom. Ringworm appears as one or more ring-shaped red areas on the torso (tinea corporis) or head (tinea capitis). The rash spreads outward in an enlarging circle; the central area might clear slightly as the fungus in the center dies. There is scaling and itching, and occasionally tiny blisters at the expanding margin. Jock itch (tinea cruris, or "groin") is a red rash with a well-demarcated border that causes itching and irritation in the groin and occasionally over the genitals.

These rashes are more common in summer, particularly among those who do a lot of sweating and bathe infrequently. They are managed with antifungal cream (terbinafine 1% [Lamisil], butenafine [Lotrimin Ultra], ketoconazole 2% [Nizoral], econazole [Spectazole], naftifine 1% (Naftin cream or gel), or miconazole [Micatin or Lotrimin AF]) and antifungal powder, such as tolnaftate (Tinactin) or clotrimazole 1% (Lotrimin), applied two or three times a day for 2 to 4 weeks (continue for 1 week after the rash clears). If the rash is refractory to topical therapy, a physician can prescribe an oral antifungal agent, such as terbinafine 250 mg by mouth daily for 2 weeks, or fluconazole 150 mg by mouth once a week for up to 4 weeks. Because a fungal infection is contagious, socks and underwear should not be shared.

Sometimes a person can have horrible foot odor from wearing the same sweaty socks repeatedly combined with bad hygiene. This might be due to isovaleric acid formation. If the smell is horrible, one way to quickly eliminate it from the feet is to soak the feet in an antacid liquid (e.g., Mylanta or Maalox). Follow that with a brisk soap and water scrub.

Tinea versicolor

Tinea versicolor (sometimes called pityriasis versicolor) is a superficial infection caused by yeasts of the *Malassezia* species that creates skin discoloration with minimal itching or scaling. It appears as multiple discolored (white, gray, pink, or darkened [like a tan]) spots or patches on the shoulders, arms, chest, and back. It is treated with topical applications of selenium sulfide (Selsun) solution for 15 minutes a day for 10 days. Another way to apply Selsun is to moisten the affected area at bedtime, allow it to dry, and then wash it off in the morning. If that is ineffective, it can be treated with topical antifungal preparations (see earlier) or itraconazole (Sporanox) 800 to 1000 mg daily for 5 days.

Onychomycosis

Onychomycosis is a fungal infection under a nail, most commonly a toenail. This causes the nail to become discolored and deformed. The condition can be associated with chronic fungal infection in the skin, either as an itchy, scaling, or moist rash, or as recurrent blisters between the toes and on the sole of the foot.

If a fungal infection is confirmed, a physician might prescribe the antifungal medication terbinafine (Lamisil) 250 mg per day for 3 months, or itraconazole (Sporanox) 200 mg once a day for 12 weeks or twice a day for 1 week per month for 3 consecutive months. Because these medications can induce side effects—such as headache, liver and gastrointestinal disturbances, and skin rash—and because they might interact adversely with certain drugs (such as terfenadine, cisapride, midazolam, triazolam, cimetidine, and rifampin), their administration should strictly be guided by a physician. Topical therapies, such as amorolfine, ciclopirox nail lacquer, and tioconazole, might be effective in cases where less than half of the nail is involved. Tavaborole topical solution 5% (Kerydin) has been approved for treatment of toenail onychomycosis. It is applied once daily for 48 weeks to the affected toenail(s). Topical efinaconazole 10% solution (JUBLIA) is available.

Prevention involves excellent foot hygiene and avoidance of fungal infection between the toes (athlete's foot) (see page 271). Each day, gently massage your feet and apply antifungal powder. Keep your nails trimmed. When hiking, use two pairs of socks—an inner thin liner sock of polypropylene or polyester and a thicker outer sock densely woven from a wool (or similar material) blend.

Good foot care

A lot of foot problems can be prevented by practicing good foot care:

- Wash your feet every day. Dry them fully and apply lubricating cream or lotion.
- Trim toenails straight across.
- Change socks every day. Change them if your feet become wet for any reason.
- Do not sunburn your feet. Remove residual adhesive from tape.

Diaper rash

If a baby develops a diaper rash, keep the diaper area clean and dry. For redness alone, apply Desitin diaper cream or A&D ointment. If a fungal infection is suspected, as evidenced by a more intensely red rash, raised bumps, and faint whitish discharge in the groin creases, add an antifungal cream, such as miconazole (Micatin). Do not apply steroid cream or ointment preparations, which can cause an infant's skin to atrophy. If the rash persists and circumstances permit, it might be helpful to have the child go without diapers, particularly during nap time.

Armpit odor

Armpit odor is common. Most of the time, adequate hygiene and deodorants are sufficient to eliminate this problem. However, sometimes the odor (particularly with sweating) becomes rancid and also causes staining of light-colored shirts. If the armpit is inspected and yellow, red, black, or cream-colored granular material is seen to be adherent to the armpit hairs, it might represent a superficial corynebacterial infection. Treatment is to shave the hair and to use for a few weeks a topical preparation of 15% aluminum chloride and/or topical 2% erythromycin solution. Prevention includes using an aluminum chloride–based antiperspirant and/or washing-gelling with benzoyl peroxide (e.g., Clearasil), or shaving the armpit hair.

Lice

In a situation of poor hygiene and shared living quarters, particularly overseas, you might acquire head and/or body lice, which make their homes predominantly in hair-covered areas of the body. The overwhelming symptom is itching. To search for head lice, inspect the scalp carefully. On close inspection, you might discover nits (white, ovoid 0.5 to 1 mm empty egg cases) attached to the hair shaft, or tiny 3 to 4 mm crawling adult forms in the scalp, or rarely on the eyelashes. The nits remain attached to the hair and move out with hair growth at a rate of approximately 0.4 inch (1 cm) per month. A common finding is swollen lymph glands behind the ears or running down the back of the neck. Body lice and their nits live in the seams of clothing. The bites are most abundant on the shoulders, trunk, and buttocks. The pubic louse, or "crab" louse, prefers to reside in pubic hair, but might also appear on the eyebrows, on the eyelashes, or under the arms. Bites are hard to find, but if the infestation has been present for a few weeks, steel gray–colored spots might be seen on the trunk and thighs.

Fortunately, lice cannot leap or fly. It is often difficult to identify lice and mites by simple visual inspection of the scalp. A fine "nit comb" run through the scalp is better for detection. Wetting the hair might help. The treatment is to lather the body and scalp vigorously with crotamiton 10% (Eurax) lotion, leave the lather in place for 10 minutes, and then rinse. For pubic lice, it might be necessary to rub crotamiton lotion into the affected area daily for several weeks to destroy hatching ova.

For head lice, children can be treated with 5% permethrin (Elimite) cream in a single application; this is safe for infants over 2 months of age. Rub the cream into the skin and scalp and wash it off after 8 to 12 hours. Thoroughly comb the hair in a direction toward the scalp to remove all nits. To be most effective, the process should be repeated in 1 week.

One percent permethrin cream rinse (Nix) or 0.5% malathion lotion (Ovide; approved for age 2 years and older) is also effective for removing lice from the hair. Apply it after the hair has been washed and towel-dried, leave it on for 10 to 20 minutes, and then rinse it off. Use a fine-toothed comb to remove the nits after rinsing. Comb again in 1 to 2 days. Repeat the treatment in 10 days to eliminate emerging lice. Another head lice treatment for persons ages 4 years and older is spinosad (Natroba) topical suspension 0.9% applied for 10 minutes and repeated a week later if live lice are still seen. A treatment for resistant head and body lice is 0.3% pyrethium and 3% piperonyl butoxide (R and C shampoo, or RID) applied to all affected areas and washed off after 10 minutes. Other pyrethrins are A-200, Licide, and Pronto. Pubic lice can be treated with the same medications used for head lice. Topical ivermectin 0.5% lotion (Sklice) applied for 10 minutes to dry louse-infested hair has been effective when other methods failed. Benzyl alcohol lotion (Ulesfia) suffocates head lice. If it is used, it should be repeated in 10 days.

All hats, scarves, clothing, and bedding (including sleeping bags) should be washed thoroughly with laundry soap in hot water or dry-cleaned. All people in close contact should be evaluated for lice and treated if necessary.

Lindane 1% (Kwell) shampoo and other lindane-containing products have been banned in the state of California.

Scabies

Scabies is caused by the human scabies mite *Sarcoptes scabiei* var. *hominis,* which completes its entire life cycle on the skin of a human. It is usually acquired during sexual contact but can also be acquired from clothing and bedding. The usual manifestations are severe nocturnal itching, which is provoked by body warming, such as occurs from the heat of a fire. A serpentine burrow is seen on the surface of the skin, which is created as an impregnated adult female burrows into the skin and deposits eggs along a path that usually does not exceed ⅕ to ⅓ inch (5 to 10 mm) in length. Common sites for infestation are the web spaces between fingers, sides of fingers, wrists, elbows, buttocks, feet, ankles, and belt line. Infants can be infested on the scalp and soles of the feet. Involvement of the fingernails and toenails can occur with or without skin manifestations.

Untreated, the disorder can persist indefinitely. Permethrin cream 5% (Elimite) rinsed off after 8 to 14 hours is an effective therapy approved for use in persons over 2 months of age. To complete the treatment, it should be repeated after 1 week. A cure can be affected with a single 8-hour application of 1% gamma benzene hexachloride (Kwell) lotion or cream, but this product should not be used in children or pregnant women. Other treatments available in Europe are benzyl benzoate 10% or 25% lotion rinsed off after 24 hours, and allethrin 0.6% aerosol rinsed off after 12 hours. Symptoms can persist (up to a month) after the mites have been killed, until the uppermost layer of skin is shed. The chemical should also be applied beneath the fingernails, where mites might be deposited during scratching. Other therapies are crotamiton ointment or cream 10% for 2 consecutive nights (not very effective), or sulfur in petrolatum (5% to 10%) for 3 consecutive nights. A continuous application (3 weeks) of crotamiton cream under an occlusive dressing has been used successfully to treat infested nails.

Delusional parasitosis is the (erroneous) belief that one is infested with mites or other parasites. It can accompany emotional depression or certain other psychiatric conditions, be a manifestation of a psychosis (either primary or due to a medical condition), drug (e.g., alcohol) withdrawal or intoxication (e.g., amphetamines, hallucinogens, marijuana), or “bath salts” ingestion. If a person is delusional, they will not have the clinical signs of parasitosis and the tiny critters will not be found. Regardless, a full skin examination should be accomplished by a dermatologist—the patient gets the full benefit of the doubt.

Creeping eruption

Creeping eruption is the common term for cutaneous larva migrans, which is caused by the larvae of hookworms *(Ancylostoma* species*)* that infest cats and dogs. Humans pick up the larvae on exposure to dirt, particularly moist, sandy soils or beach sand following a rainfall. The larvae invade the skin, most commonly on the feet, lower legs, hands, and buttocks (from sitting). The larvae tunnel through the top layer of skin (epidermis), leaving a serpentine, threadlike trail of inflamed (raised, red) tissue, which itches and might be slightly painful. The trail might extend up to a few centimeters per day. Older tunnels appear dry and crusted. The preferred treatment is ivermectin 200 mcg/kg as a single daily oral dose for 1 to 2 days. Usually, the affliction resolves over a few weeks, even without treatment.

Shingles

“Shingles” is the common name for herpes zoster, a skin eruption caused by reactivation of latent varicella zoster virus (VZV), often related to stress. Individuals carry VZV (the same agent that causes chickenpox [varicella] in children) dormant in nerve roots. On stimulation, usually in an elderly individual or someone with impaired or waning immunity, it causes outcropping of a series of blisters in patterns that correspond with skin areas served by particular nerve roots originating from the spinal cord (Fig. 177).

Classically, the victim will have a day or two of unexplained itching or burning pain in the area that is going to break out and then will notice the onset of the rash, which appears as crops of clear blisters over 3 to 5 days. Symptoms that occur before the appearance of the rash often include headache, aversion to light, and fatigue. The discomfort can be tremendous and might necessitate liberal use of pain medication. The rash itself should be kept clean and dry and covered with a light, dry dressing to prevent further irritation from rubbing or the sun. The rash contains high concentration of VZV, which can be spread through the air or by touching. Therefore, a person suffering shingles should not come in contact with someone who is immunosuppressed.

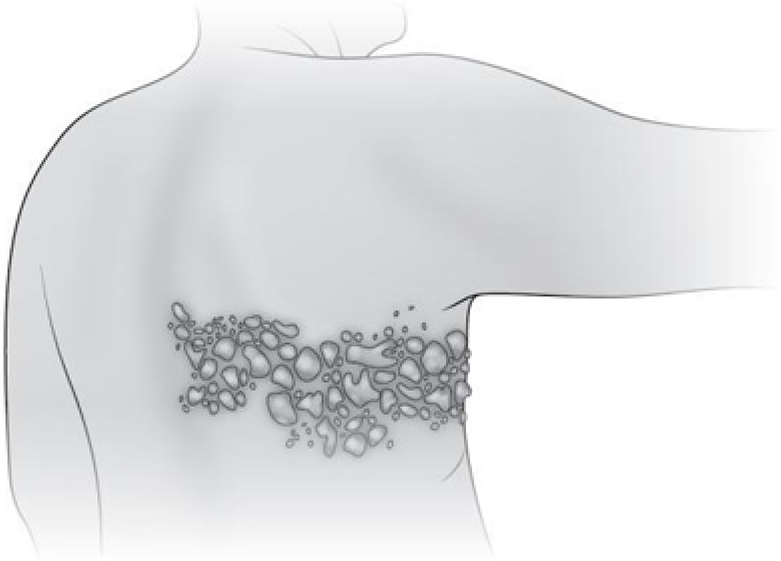


FIG. 177 Shingles (herpes zoster) eruption.

The disorder is self-limited and resolves spontaneously over the course of approximately 10 days to 4 weeks, as the blisters become cloudy, crust over, and then disappear. If the victim becomes moderately ill (fever, chills, severe headache) or if the rash involves the eyes, mouth, or genitals, see a physician, who can prescribe acyclovir (Zovirax) 800 mg five times a day, valacyclovir (Valtrex) 1 g three times a day, or famciclovir (Famvir) 500 mg three times a day for 5 to 7 days. While it is felt that the sooner an antiviral drug can be started (e.g., within 72 hours), the better, there is not a specific number of elapsed days from symptom onset and during the illness that is a cutoff for starting therapy. There is some early evidence that promptly treating with an antiviral agent might decrease the risk for suffering a stroke within 6 months following the episode of herpes zoster. Unfortunately, after the rash resolves, pain ("postherpetic neuralgia") can persist for 1 to 3 months, or even for years.

Topical lidocaine 5% patches, capsaicin 0.075% cream, and oral gabapentin (Neurontin) or pregabalin (Lyrica) are treatments that can be prescribed by a physician to treat postherpetic neuralgia.

Recombinant zoster vaccine (RZV) is given in two intramuscular doses. Persons previously immunized with Zostavax should be vaccinated with two doses of RZV, because it is the preferred vaccine by the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices. Zostavax is a vaccine to reduce the risk for herpes zoster ("shingles") in adults ages 60 years and older. It is given in a dose of 0.65 mL one time subcutaneously. Because it contains live attenuated virus, it should not be given to anyone who is immunosuppressed for any reason. It appears to be quite effective in preventing shingles in persons who have never suffered from this condition.

Herpes simplex virus genital infection

Herpes simplex virus 1 infection is associated with lesions (e.g., fever blisters) on the face and mouth, whereas herpes simplex virus 2 infection typically causes infection in the genital region, as well as occasionally on the face. After an incubation period of 2 to 10 days from the time of sexual contact, the victim suffers 1 or 2 days of tingling and burning pain precisely where the sores will develop. These skin irritations are painful or itchy and may appear as reddened patches of blisters or ulcers. The victim may also suffer headache, fever, muscle and joint aches, and nausea and vomiting. The recommended treatment for a first episode is acyclovir 400 mg by mouth three times a day or 200 mg by mouth five times a day, famciclovir 250 mg by mouth three times a day, or valacyclovir 1 g by mouth twice a day for 7 to 10 days. A recurrent episode is treated for 5 days.

Fever blisters

See page 218.

Minor bruises and wounds

Bruises

A bruise is a collection of blood that develops in soft tissue (muscle, skin, or fat), caused by a direct blow to the body part, a tearing motion (such as a twisted ankle), or spontaneous bleeding (ruptured or leaking blood vessel). With trauma, tiny blood vessels are torn or crushed and leak blood into the tissue, so that it rapidly becomes discolored. Pain and swelling are proportional to the amount of injury. People on anticoagulants (such as warfarin or a direct oral anticoagulant, such as apixaban) and hemophiliacs tend to develop larger bruises; elders and those taking steroid medications tend to bruise easily, often spontaneously.

The immediate (within the first 48 hours) treatment of a bruise is to apply cold compresses or to immerse the injured part in cold water (such as a mountain stream). This decreases the leakage of blood, minimizes swelling, and helps reduce pain. Cold applications should be made for intermittent 10-minute periods until a minimum total application time of 1 hour is attained. To avoid frostbite, don’t apply ice directly to the skin. Wrap the ice in a cloth before application.

If the swelling progresses rapidly (such as with bleeding into the thigh), an elastic bandage can be wrapped snugly to try to limit the swelling. Continue cold applications over the wrap. It’s important to keep the wrap loose enough to allow free circulation. Fingertips and toes should remain pink and warm; wrist and foot pulses should remain brisk. Elastic wraps can be helpful if pain and swelling will not allow the victim to extricate themself to seek medical attention.

Elevation of the bruised and swollen part above the level of the heart is essential, to allow gravity to further keep swelling to a minimum.

Never attempt to puncture or cut into a bruise to drain it. This is fraught with the risk of uncontrolled bleeding and the introduction of bacteria that cause infection. The exception to this rule is a tense and painful collection of blood under the fingernail (see below).

After 48 to 72 hours, application of moist or dry heat will promote local circulation and resolution of swelling and discoloration. Heat ointments, balms, and liniments don’t transfer real heat. They are chemical or botanical substances that make the skin feel warm by stimulating nerve endings in the outermost layers of the skin and sometimes causing small blood vessels to dilate. This does not hasten healing but might help a bit with soreness and stiffness. These substances should only be used on intact skin and never on mucous membranes.

People who have prolonged blood-clotting times and/or who have large bruises should avoid products that contain aspirin, which might cause increased bleeding. A hemophiliac who sustains an expanding bruise will likely need to be transfused with a blood-clotting "factor" to promote coagulation; transport to a medical facility should be prompt.

A severe bruise, usually caused by a direct blunt force, can on rare occasion develop into a compartment syndrome (see page 85).

Black eye

A black eye is a darkened blue or purple discoloration in the region around the eye. It can be caused by a direct blow (bruise) or by blood that has settled into the area from a broken nose, skull fracture, or laceration of the eyebrow or forehead. "Raccoon eyes" are black eyes caused by a skull fracture. If a black eye is due to a direct injury (with swelling and pain), first examine the eyeball for injury (see page 204). The skin discoloration can be treated with intermittent cold compresses for 24 hours.

Blood under the fingernail

When a fingertip is smashed between two objects, there is frequently a rapid blue discoloration of the fingernail, which is caused by a collection of blood underneath the nail. Pain from the pressure can be quite severe. To relieve the pain, it's necessary to create a small hole in the nail directly over the collection of blood, to allow the blood to drain and thus relieve the pressure. This can be done during the first 24 to 48 hours following the injury by drilling a small hole in the nail by twirling a scalpel blade, sharp knife, or needle. As soon as the nail is penetrated, blood will spurt out, and the pain will be considerably lessened. Another technique is to heat a paper clip or similar-diameter metal wire to red-hot temperature in a flame (taking care not to burn your fingers while holding the other end of the wire; use needle-nose pliers, if available). Quickly and steadily press the glowing-hot wire through the nail until it is penetrated (Fig. 178). Before and after the procedure, the finger should be washed carefully. If the procedure was not performed under sterile conditions, administer dicloxacillin, erythromycin, or cephalexin for 3 days.

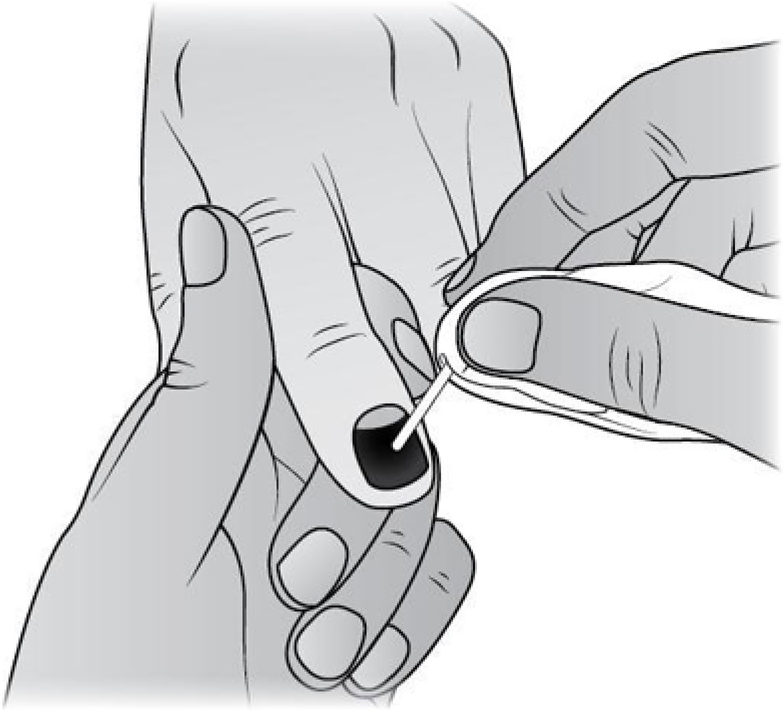


FIG. 178 Hot paper clip technique to drain blood from under the fingernail.

Torn fingernail

If a fingernail is torn in such a manner that it is partially removed from the nail bed, carefully clean the wound and decide whether you can leave the nail in place as is or whether you need to trim it in order to make it easier to apply a clean dressing. If you decide to trim the nail, take care to not cut away any of the nail root (lowest portion of the nail that tucks under the skin). If the nail has been torn off, then cover the nail bed with something nonadherent, such as a piece of Vaseline gauze, or bacitracin underneath a nonstick piece of Telfa. If you use a dressing that sticks to the nail bed, it will become encrusted and be difficult and painful to remove without soaking.

Puncture wounds

Puncture wounds are most frequently caused by nails, tree branches, thorns, fishhooks, and the like. Because they don't drain freely, these wounds carry a high risk for retained bacteria and subsequent infections. A puncture wound should be irrigated copiously with the cleanest solution that's available and left open to heal. Bleeding washes bacteria from the wound, so a small amount of bleeding should be encouraged. Never suture or tape a puncture wound closed, unless necessary to halt profuse bleeding; doing so promotes the development of infection. Similarly, don’t occlude the opening of a puncture wound with a “grease seal” or plug of medicinal ointment; apply any antiseptic sparingly. If the wound is more than ¼ inch (0.6 cm) at its opening, you can leave a piece of sterile gauze in the wound as a wick for a day or two, to allow drainage and prevent formation of an abscess cavity (see page 262). If the wound becomes infected (see page 295), apply warm soaks four or more times a day. Treat the victim with dicloxacillin, erythromycin, or cephalexin for 4 days.

Impaled object

See page 68.

Scrapes

Scrapes (abrasions) are injuries that occur to the top layers of skin when it is abraded by a rough surface. They are generally very painful because large surface areas with numerous nerve endings are involved. Bleeding is of an oozing, rather than free-flowing, nature.

An abrasion should be scrubbed until every speck of dirt is removed. Although it hurts just to think about this, scrubbing is necessary for two reasons. The first is the infection potential when such a large area of injured skin is exposed to dirt and debris. The second is that if small stones or pieces of dirt are left in the wound, these in essence become like ink in a tattoo, leaving the victim with permanent markings that sometimes require surgical excision. Soap-and-water scrubbing with a good final rinse should be followed with an antiseptic ointment such as bacitracin or mupirocin, or cream such as mupirocin, and a sterile nonadherent dressing or Spenco 2nd Skin. You can also place Hydrogel occlusive dressing over an abrasion; it will absorb up to 2 ½ times its weight in fluid weeping from the wound. It should be covered with a dry, light dressing. This technique is useful for burns as well. If the surface area is not particularly large or is on a difficult-to-bandage area, such as the nose or ears, the bandage (not the ointment) can be omitted.

The pain of cleansing can be relieved by applying pads soaked with lidocaine 2.5% ointment to the abrasion for 10 to 15 minutes before scrubbing. To avoid lidocaine toxicity, don’t do this if the surface area of the abrasion exceeds 5% of the total body surface area (an area approximately five times the size of the victim’s fingers and palm). In some cases, particularly when there is deeply embedded grime that will be extremely painful to remove, it’s useful to inject the wound with a local anesthetic (see page 282).

Cuts (lacerations)

How does a cut heal? First, blood clots and there is inflammation (24 hours to a few days). If the wound edges are aligned closely together and there are no complicating factors (e.g., crushed tissue, infection), the wound is essentially waterproof during a brief wet exposure after 2 days. Within a week, there is tissue remodeling such that within a month, the wound is somewhat strong. It contracts and forms a scar over 6 to 12 months. Wounds at high risk for poor healing include bite wounds, deep or jagged wounds, contaminated wounds, and wounds in patients with diabetes.

Remove all clothing covering a wound to determine the origin and magnitude of any bleeding. Try to wash your hands with soap and water and then don protective gloves before contacting blood or other potentially infectious bodily fluids. After you have cared for a cut or wound, you should wash your hands again.

- *Control bleeding.* This can be done in almost every instance by direct pressure (see page 60). Apply firm pressure to the wound using a wadded sterile compress, cloth, or direct hand contact (wearing surgical gloves, if possible; if you're allergic to latex, use nonlatex synthetic, such as nitrile). Hold pressure for a full 10 to 15 minutes without release. If this does not stop the bleeding, pack the wound or apply a sterile compress and wrap with an elastic bandage, taking care to not wrap so tightly as to occlude the circulation (check for warm and pink fingers and toes). If bleeding is not controlled with pressure alone, you might need to apply a hemostatic (stops bleeding) dressing, compress, or tourniquet. These are described on page 60. During all of these maneuvers, keep the victim calm and elevate the injured part as much as possible.

  To control bleeding from a cut finger in order to allow its inspection and cleaning, sometimes pressure is not sufficient. In this case, one can improvise a tourniquet effect by wrapping the base of the finger tightly with a piece of tape, using the donned single finger cut from a rubber glove and then rolled back from the tip upon itself (Fig. 179), or applying a commercial donut-style finger tourniquet (e.g., Tourni-Cot or Tourni-Cot Universal ["Uni-Cot"], MAR-MED).
- *Anesthetize (numb) the wound.* The wound should be cleansed of all major debris and dirt before injecting an anesthetic, so as not to plunge the needle through grime. Depending on the severity of the wound, however, it may be necessary to anesthetize prior to cleaning and closure, particularly if the cleansing process will be extremely painful (as when an abrasion needs to be scrubbed).
  - Local anesthesia of a wound can be achieved by injecting sterile 1% lidocaine or 0.25% bupivacaine solution into the edges of the

wound using a 25-, 27-, or 30-gauge needle attached to a 10 mL syringe. There will be less stinging sensation with injection if you add 1 mL of 8.4% sodium bicarbonate solution to each 10 mL of the lidocaine solution before using it, and also if you allow the product to come to room temperature if it was previously refrigerated. Bicarbonate should not be added to bupivacaine, because it causes precipitation if the solution is not used immediately. Once bicarbonate has been injected, the shelf life of the multidose vial of anesthetic decreases considerably, so this maneuver might not be practical in the field. Whenever possible, use a new ampule or vial of anesthetic for each episode (event, or victim). This minimizes the risk of injecting a contaminated (with bacteria) product and causing a wound infection. *Never* share needles between victims.

To draw up medication into a syringe, follow the instructions given for intramuscular injection on page 469. The onset of anesthesia from injection of lidocaine or bupivacaine is 2 to 5 minutes, with duration of action 1 hour for lidocaine and 4 hours for bupivacaine. The maximum safe adult dose (volume) of 1% lidocaine is 30 mL; for 0.25% bupivacaine, it is 70 mL. For a child, the maximum safe dose for 1% lidocaine is 0.4 mL/kg of body weight, up to 30 mL; the maximum safe dose for 0.25% bupivacaine is 1 mL/kg, up to 70 mL. Of course, it is best to stay as far as possible below the maximum safe dose.

Inject through the open (cut or torn) portion of the wound, rather than through the surface of the skin, unless this is necessary to avoid gross contamination. One useful technique is to insert the short needle up to its hub, and then inject while you slowly withdraw the needle back out from the skin, rather than injecting during entry. In order to not have to reinject the wound because the anesthetic has worn off, have all of your supplies gathered and your helpers ready to assist before you inject. As with any other medical intervention, it is important to have practiced ahead of time before attempting to numb a wound by injecting it with an anesthetic.

- *Clean the wound.* In many cases, “the solution to pollution is dilution.” After you have controlled the bleeding, the minor wound(s) should be properly cleansed. If you have needed to use hemostatic gauze or other blood-stopping agent to control the bleeding, you should wait for at least 60 minutes before attempting to clean the wound. Otherwise, brisk bleeding might reoccur. Wear sterile, nonpermeable, nonlatex (such as nitrile) gloves if these are available; if you are not allergic to latex, then latex gloves are acceptable. If sterile gloves aren't available, wear nonsterile gloves. Examine the wound and remove all obvious foreign debris.

The best way to clean a wound is to irrigate away the dirt and bacteria. Along with removing foreign bodies from within a wound and dirty or destroyed tissue from the wound edges, irrigation is the most important factor in preventing wound infections. The irrigating stream should be forceful enough (approximately 8 to 10 pounds per square inch) to dislodge the foreign material without injuring the tissues beneath the stream or forcing harmful material deeper into the wound. Use the cleanest disinfected water available. The best irrigants are "normal" saline (0.9% NaCl) solution (add 1½ level teaspoon [9 g] of table salt per quart or liter of disinfected saline or water) or plain disinfected water. Tap water without the addition of povidone–iodine is fine for irrigation purposes. Addition of no more than 1 fluid oz (30 mL) of povidone–iodine (Betadine) solution (not soapy "scrub") into a liter of irrigating fluid has been recommended in the past but has fallen out of favor. Certainly, don't use a povidone–iodine solution to irrigate eyes, and don't drink this stuff. Hydrogen peroxide and other antiseptics are tissue toxic. Try to use at least 500 mL (roughly 1 pint) of irrigation fluid per wound. There is no benefit from soaking a wound in water, disinfected or not. Soaking might actually increase the bacterial count. If there is grease in the wound, it is best to avoid commercial degreasing agents; use soap and water, followed by water irrigation.

Use a syringe (10 to 15 mL is best, but any size can be used) with a 16- to 20-gauge (18-gauge is best) plastic catheter or steel needle attached to draw up the irrigating fluid and act as a "squirt gun." Hold the syringe so that the tip of the catheter or needle is an inch or two above and perpendicular to the wound. This creates a stream of the appropriate force (range of 5 to 12 pounds per square inch). Hold the wound edges open and push down forcefully on the plunger. If you don't have a splash shield (see below), then wear goggles or a pair of eyeglasses.

Wound irrigation syringes with blunt tips are available commercially. Another way to obtain the appropriate stream diameter and force is to attach a Zerowet Splashield or Supershield (www.zerowet.com) to a plastic syringe (Fig. 180). A complete wound irrigation system (Klenzalac) with a 10 mL syringe, fill stem, and Splashield is also available. This technique protects the operator from splash exposure to blood and tissue fluid. A way to improvise a splash shield is to push the catheter or needle through the bottom of an upside-down plastic or paper cup. Another pump for irrigating a wound might be a water disinfection filter, if a properly sized tip to direct the stream can be connected. If you don't have these supplies, you can fill a small (as sturdy as possible) plastic bag with the irrigating solution, punch a tiny hole in the bag, and squeeze out the liquid (Fig. 181). The pressure generated by this method is much less than that using a syringe and catheter. Irrigate the wound until it appears clean, usually with at least a pint to a quart (½ to 1 liter) of liquid. Take care to avoid splashing yourself.

Sometimes irrigation isn't enough to remove all of the dirt from the wound, or you won't be carrying irrigation equipment. In that case, the wound needs to be scrubbed out with a gauze or cloth, using a disinfectant solution or hand soap and the cleanest disinfected water available. This can be painful, so get everything ready in advance and then try to accomplish the task as quickly as possible. Rinse the wound thoroughly when you are finished.

Don't forcefully irrigate a puncture wound, because you might push fluid deeper into the tissues and force germs and other contaminants further into the wound.

Scrubbing and irrigation will often cause a wound to begin bleeding again as blood clots are dislodged from tiny blood vessels. After cleaning the wound, stop this bleeding by holding absorbent gauze with pressure against the wound.

Don't pour tincture of iodine, rubbing alcohol, merthiolate, mercurochrome, or any other over-the-counter antiseptic into the wound (except for potentially rabid animal bites—see page 415). These preparations inhibit wound healing and are extremely painful. Although recommended by healers in ancient civilizations, herbal doctors, and professional woodsmen, the use of butter, pine sap, ground charcoal, hard liquor, or wine as an antiseptic is not recommended.

- *Close the Wound*. The longer one waits to close a wound, the greater the chance for infection. Traditional medical teaching instructs to close the wound within 6 hours of injury to lessen the chance for infection from bacterial contamination. This has largely been disproven in an urban setting, which allows for wound closure up to 24 hours after injury. However, it's likely that outdoors, where cleansing is improvised and the environment is "dirty," it's prudent to not close wounds overly tightly, watch closely for infection and treat appropriately. In general, if properly cleansed, wounds on an arm or leg should be closed within 8 hours of injury, on the torso within 12 hours, and on the face or scalp within 24 hours. High risk wounds that should not be closed in the backcountry are human or animal bites to the hand, wrist, or foot; wounds over a major joint or where an underlying broken bone is suspected; wounds through-and-through the cheek; very deep puncture wounds; deep wounds on the hand or foot; bad crush injuries; or "old" wounds as described above. If the wound is high risk, then clean it and leave it open with an overlying dressing and bandage, using a thin layer of antiseptic ointment. For a high-risk wound or if the victim suffers from immunosuppression, administer an oral antibiotic, such as amoxicillin/clavulanate or cephalexin 500 mg every 6 hours. Change the dressing and bandage once or twice a day.

Reapproximate the anatomy (close the wound) as best as possible. Most cuts don't involve tissue loss, so that edges fit together like a jigsaw puzzle. Because of the infection risk away from the hospital or doctor's office (a relatively germ-free environment), don't close a wound tightly with stitches of thread (sutures) unless necessary. Instead, bring the wound edges together with paper tape with adhesive specifically made for wound closure (such as elastic or nonelastic Steri-Strips) or with butterfly bandages (see page 285, Taping a Wound Closed). The latter can be fashioned from regular surgical adhesive tape (Fig. 182). A small scar is preferable to a wound infection caused by tight closure that requires hospitalization for surgical management of the infection. If nothing else is available to hold together the edges of a widely gaping wound that prevents the victim from seeking help, use one or more safety pins.

No matter what method you use to close a wound, the best way to make the opposite sides match up properly, and to take tension off the wound while the remainder of the closure is completed, is to place the first piece of tape, staple, or suture (thread) at the midpoint of the wound ("halve the wound") (Fig. 183). The second fastener should then "halve the halves" (Fig. 184), so that the wound is now quartered, and so forth until the closure is complete. A final long locking strip can be placed over the ends of the crossing strips to complete the closure (Fig. 185).

When aligning the two sides of a cut lip, be sure to match the vermilion border (the line where the skin of the lip meets the skin of the face) perfectly (Fig. 186). The same concern holds for aligning a laceration of the eyebrow. Never shave an eyebrow, because it might not grow back! In fact, there is no absolute need to shave hair from the skin around any wound. Shaving hair might increase the risk for infection, because you create micro-nicks in the skin with your razor or knife edge.

Regardless of which technique you choose to close the wound, it's useful to splint the repair (see page 86) for at least a few days, to allow healing to begin without the wear and tear of motion, particularly across a joint.

One way to close a laceration of the scalp is to twirl hair (if it is at least 1.2 inches [3 cm] in length) on direct opposite sides of the wound to form strands, pull these strands toward each other to pull the skin together, and then twirl them around each other (see page 76). Then put a drop of rapid-cure cyanoacrylate glue (such as Super Glue) at the lowest junction of the strands while you are holding them together, and allow the glue to set up, which will occur very quickly. If a cyanoacrylate glue is not available, another way to do this is to first lay a long piece of string or dental floss along and beyond the length of the wound. Then, twirl the hair to form the strands, and twirl the strands together as described above. Next, use the string to tie the hair strands together (see Fig. 56). Repeat the gluing or tying process as necessary to account for the entire open length of the wound. If the wound is large and you don't have a cyanoacrylate glue or any string, you might be able to hold the edges together by directly tying the twirled hair taken from opposite sides of the wound, but this is usually quite difficult.

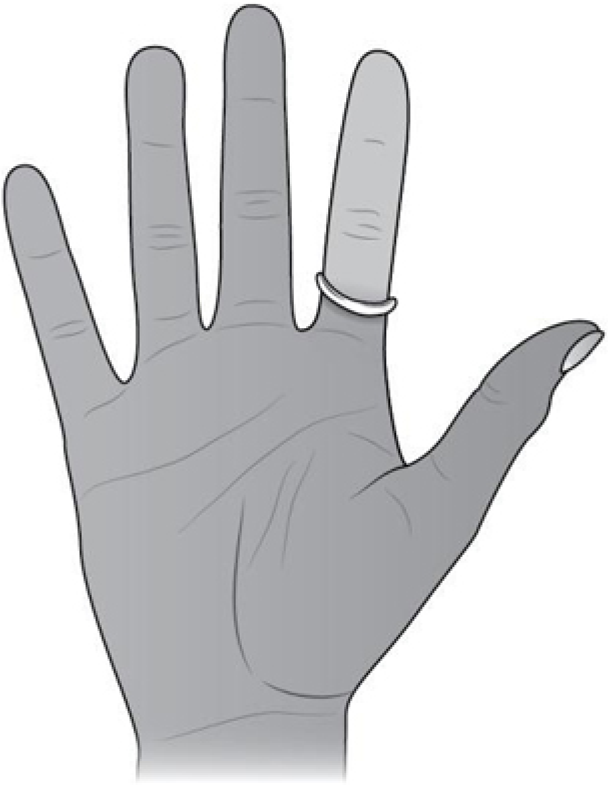


FIG. 179 To control bleeding, cut a single finger from a rubber glove, then place it on the bleeding finger. Cut a small hole in the tip, then roll it back down over the finger so that it becomes tight at the base of the finger.

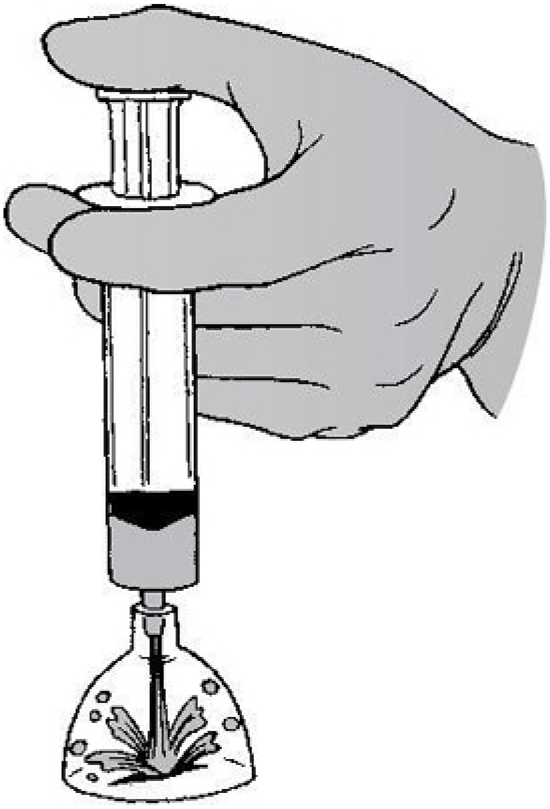


FIG. 180 Using a Zerowet Splashield attached to a syringe to irrigate the open wound.

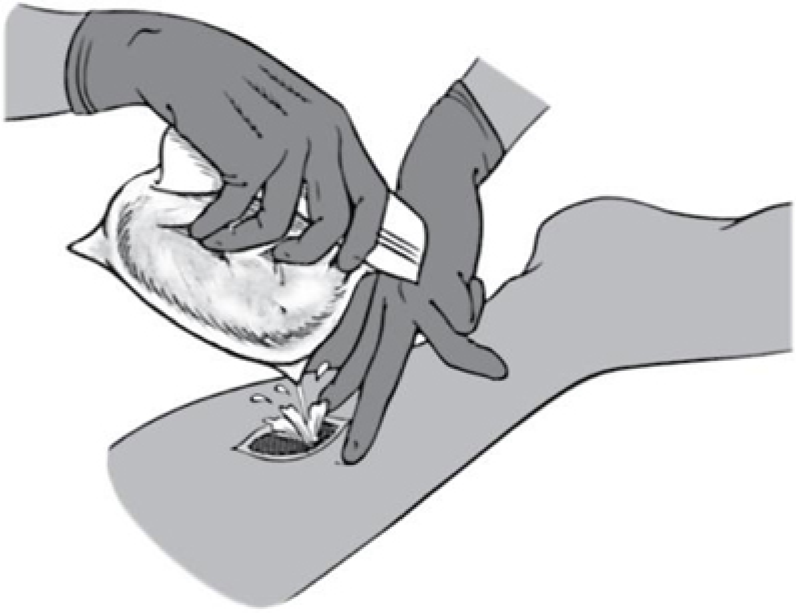


FIG. 181 Using a small plastic bag filled with water to irrigate a wound.

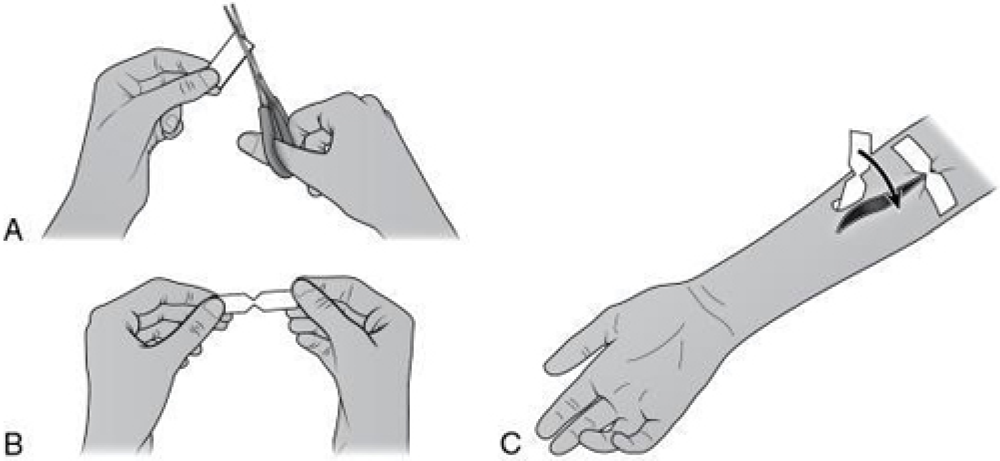


FIG. 182 Fashioning a butterfly bandage. **A,** Fold a piece of tape so that the smooth (nonadhesive) sides are touching (e.g., do not let the tape stick together) and cut off both corners at the crease. **B,** The straightened tape reveals the "butterfly." **C,** The bandage is used to hold the wound edges close together.

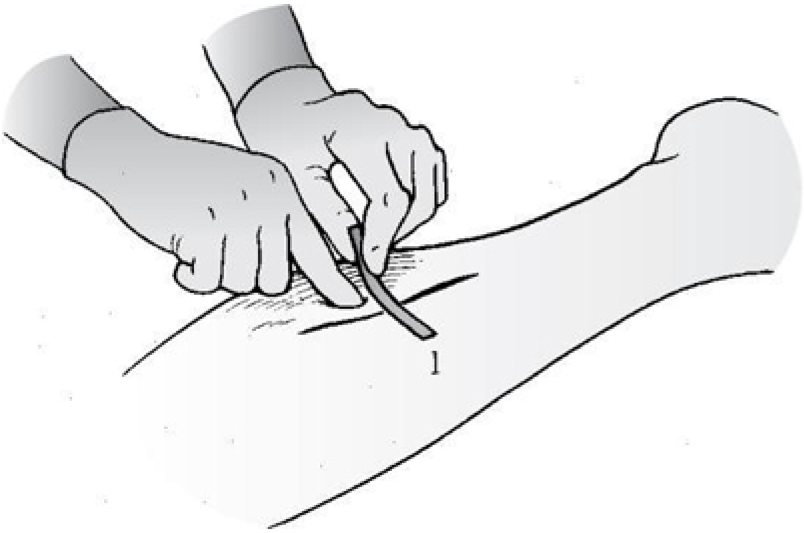


FIG. 183 “Halving” a wound for the first act of closure.

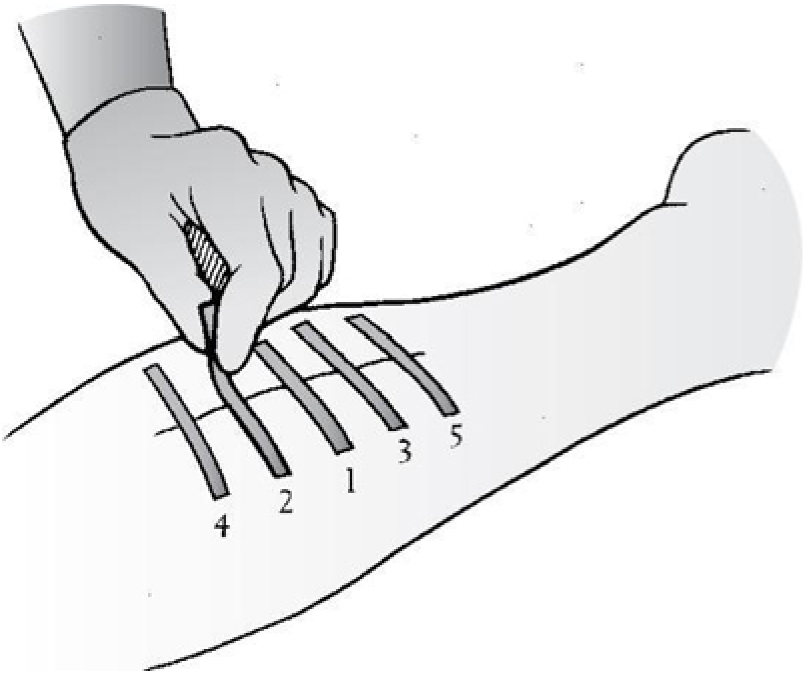


FIG. 184 Halving a half, or “quartering the wound.” This helps keep the wound in alignment and prevent mismatched sides (of different lengths).

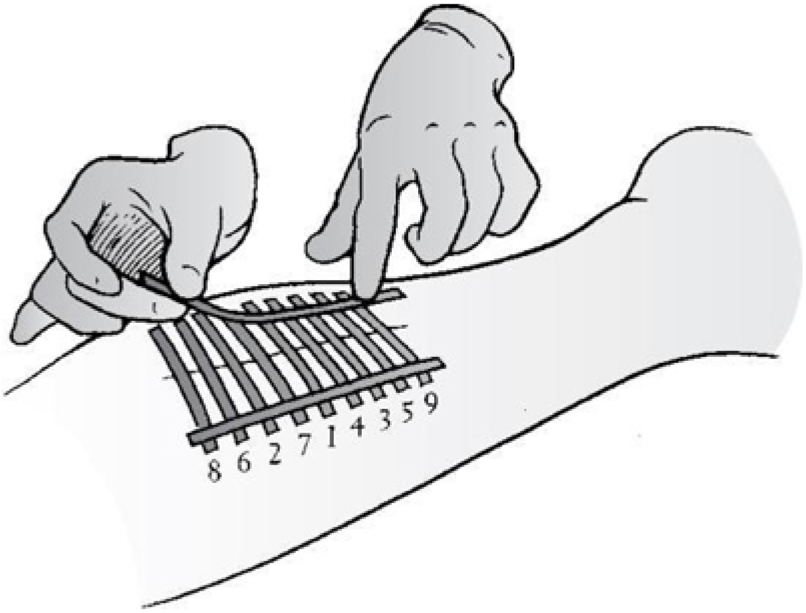


FIG. 185 Completed wound closure using tape.

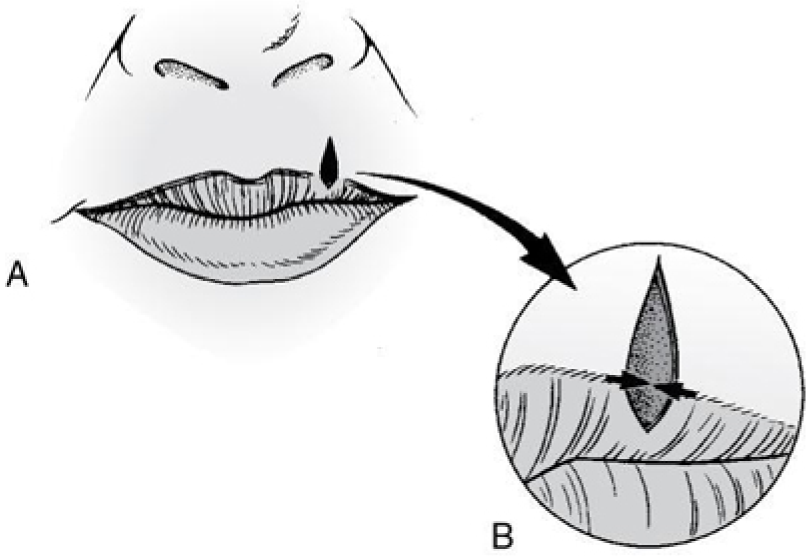


FIG. 186 Matching the vermilion border of the lip.

Skin flaps and avulsions

If a cut occurs at an oblique angle to the skin, so that a very thin layer of skin is "shaved" away, the wound should be cleaned carefully and the flap repositioned and held in place with tape (see later). If the flap is extremely thin or if its base of attachment is small, the blood supply might not be sufficient to allow survival of the tissue. In this circumstance, it will turn dusky blue and then blacken, harden, shrivel, and fall away. Unless there is an underlying infection—in which case the obviously dead or dying tissue should be removed—the flap might provide a biologic covering, much like a skin graft, to allow the underlying tissue to proliferate and heal. Since it's difficult to tell which dusky flaps will survive and turn pink and which will deteriorate and "mummify," it's best to give the flap at least a few days before trimming to see which way things are headed. If a large chunk of skin is cut away entirely, or avulsed, the wound must either be closed, allowed to fill in as it heals with new tissue, or covered with a skin graft. The first two options are available to you in the field. If fat or muscle is showing and the wound edges will not easily pull together for field closure, the wound should be cleaned carefully, a sterile bandage (see later) applied, and the victim transported to definitive medical care.

Taping a wound closed

To apply tape to a wound, prepare the skin surrounding the cut by drying it thoroughly. Next, apply a thin layer of tincture of benzoin using a cotton-tipped swab, taking care not to get any into the open wound (it will sting like crazy). Another product that makes skin sticky and allows tape to adhere is Mastisol Liquid Adhesive. Push the two sides of the wound together so that they are perfectly opposed, and then lay the first adhesive strip across the wound at the midpoint of its length. Continue to apply strips perpendicular to the long axis of the wound until it is closed. Use diagonal or crisscross strips for extra strength. One can improvise wound closure strips using duct tape or strips of clothing or nylon from packs or tents (fastened to the skin with "superglue," taking care to keep the glue out of the wound. Don't use superglue on the face.

If you don't have an assistant and it's difficult to hold the wound edges together and lay down an adhesive strip at the same time, you can attach a strip to one side of the wound, attach a second strip immediately next to the first one on the opposite side, and then use the two loose ends to pull the wound together (Fig. 187). If the strips keep popping off the skin because it's slippery or too much tension is required to keep the edges together, you can run a strip of adhesive tape or duct tape longitudinally along the wound edges on either side of the gash about ¼ inch (0.6 cm) away from the opening and use these as anchors for the crossing strips (Fig. 188).

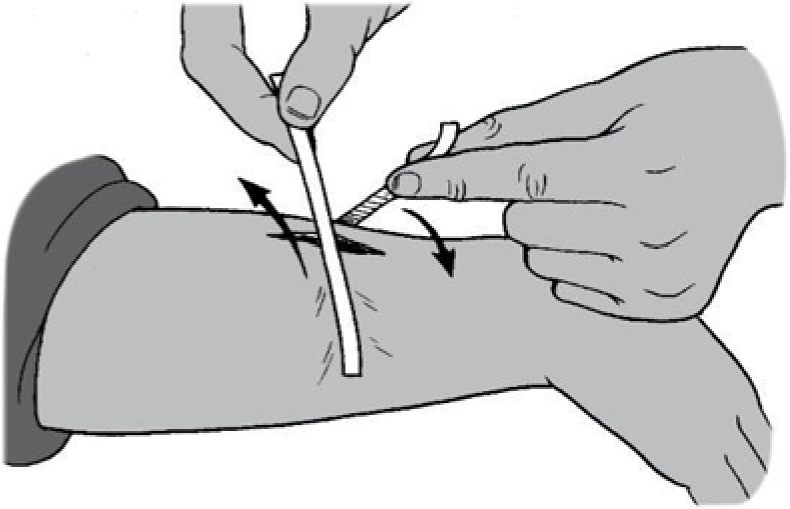


FIG. 187 Using opposite-facing tape strips to pull a wound closed.

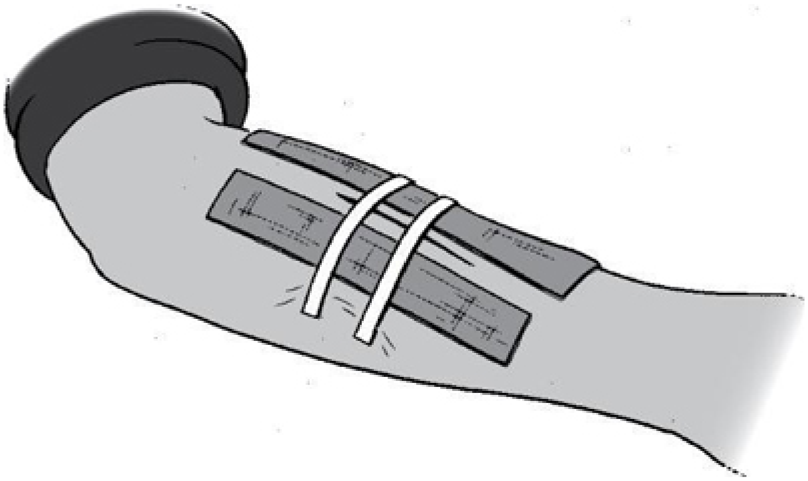


FIG. 188 Longitudinal tape strips used as anchors for the cross (closing) pieces.

Another method of wound closure using tape, which might be more appropriate for a longer wound, is to cut two strips of adhesive tape 1 inch (2.5 cm) longer than the wound. Fold one quarter of each strip of tape over lengthwise (sticky to sticky) to create a long nonsticky edge on each piece (Fig. 189). Attach one strip of the tape on each side of the wound, ¼ to ½ inch (0.6 to 1.3 cm) from the wound, with the folded (nonsticky) edge toward the wound. Using a needle and thread, sew the folded edges together, cinching them tightly enough to bring the wound edges together properly (Fig. 190). The tape will stick much better if you first apply a thin layer of benzoin or Mastisol Liquid Adhesive to the skin. Don't apply antiseptic ointment to a wound before trying to tape it closed, because after you apply the ointment, the tape (or "butterfly" bandages) will not stick.

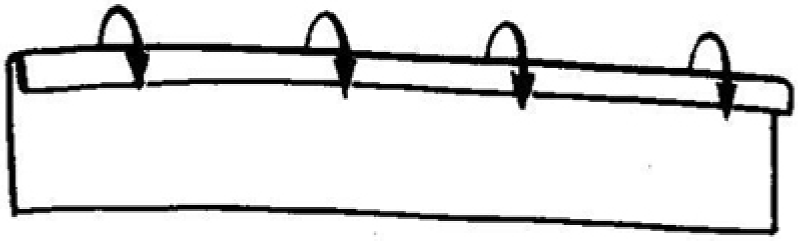


FIG. 189 Folding a longitudinal piece of tape to prepare for a suture anchor strip.

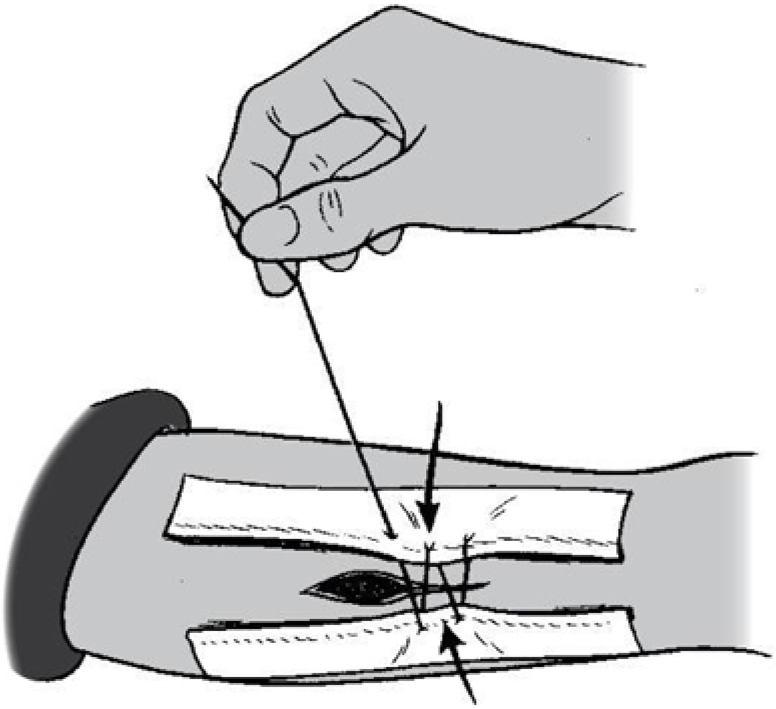


FIG. 190 Sewing the tape suture strips together to close the wound.

If you don't have adhesive tape, you can fashion strips from cloth or sturdy nylon-like material. Use superglue to attach the first end and allow it to dry. Pull the strip across the wound to achieve closure and then glue the other end in place. Take care to keep the glue out of the open wound.

If you intend to apply antiseptic ointment to a wound, don't apply it before attempting to tape it closed, because the tape will not stick. It should be applied sparingly only after the tape closure has been completed.

Sewing (suturing) a wound closed

In general, it's best to avoid sewing (suturing) a wound closed outside of the sterile environment of the hospital. However, sometimes this is necessary, particularly if the wound is large and cannot be closed with taping methods.

Sutures come in a variety of sizes attached to many different types of needles, depending on their purpose. For an expedition kit intended for use by a layperson, we recommend carrying nonabsorbable 3/O monofilament nylon suture (such as Ethilon, Dermalon, or Prolene) attached ("swaged on") to a large curved "cutting" needle, and 4/O monofilament nylon suture attached to a large, curved cutting needle. The 3/O suture is larger in diameter and should be used to close large wounds on the scalp, trunk, and limbs. The smaller-diameter 4/O suture is used to close smaller wounds on the trunk, limbs, hands, and feet. Although there are other suture types (such as nonabsorbable silk and absorbable gut and synthetics), sizes (thick to so fine [ophthalmic] that it requires a magnifying glass to see them), and needles (such as small curved and straight), these two suture setups will suffice for most situations in which a layperson might wish to stitch a wound. Ideally, you would use 5/O and 6/O (smaller diameter) suture material on the face, but this is more difficult to manipulate and tie if you're inexperienced.

Absorbable sutures can also be used to close skin surface wounds and have the added benefit that they will eventually dissolve and fall out. Fast-absorbing gut suture material absorbs in 5 to 7 days and can be used on the face; plain gut absorbs in 8 to 9 days and can be used on the torso and limbs.

The instrument used to push the needle through the skin is a needle holder (Webster-style "needle driver"). It has finger handles like scissors and clamps open and shut with finger pressure to hold the needle firmly in its finely grooved jaws. It is held in a certain way to allow the wrist rotation that forces the curved needle through the skin.

The goal of stitching a wound is to bring the skin edges neatly together without excessive tightness, which would be manifested by a wound that's puckered up and stitches that become buried. Most wounds swell a bit; thus, it's not necessary to cinch them closed with too much tension. After a wound is stitched, it should lie flat.

Wear sterile, nonlatex (such as nitrile), nonpermeable surgical gloves if they are available. If you aren't allergic to latex, then latex gloves may be worn. If sterile gloves aren't available, nonsterile gloves are acceptable. The needle should be placed into the jaws of the needle driver so that it can be clamped just behind (toward the suture) the midpoint of the curve (Fig. 191). The needle should be oriented perpendicular to the skin and pushed through using a gentle rotating motion at the wrist; this pushes it out into the base of the wound (Fig. 192). Then release the needle, reach down into the wound and regrip the needle that has exited into the wound, and pull the needle and suture through the wound until a 2-inch (5-cm) tag is left outside the skin (Fig. 193). The needle is once again grasped with the needle driver as before, pushed into the opposite side of the base of the wound at exactly the same depth as it entered into the wound on the other side (Fig. 194), and rotated out through the external skin surface on the same side (Fig. 195). Now, once again release the needle from the needle driver. The ideal suture placement is square or bottle-shaped (U shaped) (Fig. 196). As shown in this figure, the suture ideally crosses the wound close to its deepest point; slightly above (see Figs 193 to 196) or below (see Fig. 196) is acceptable.

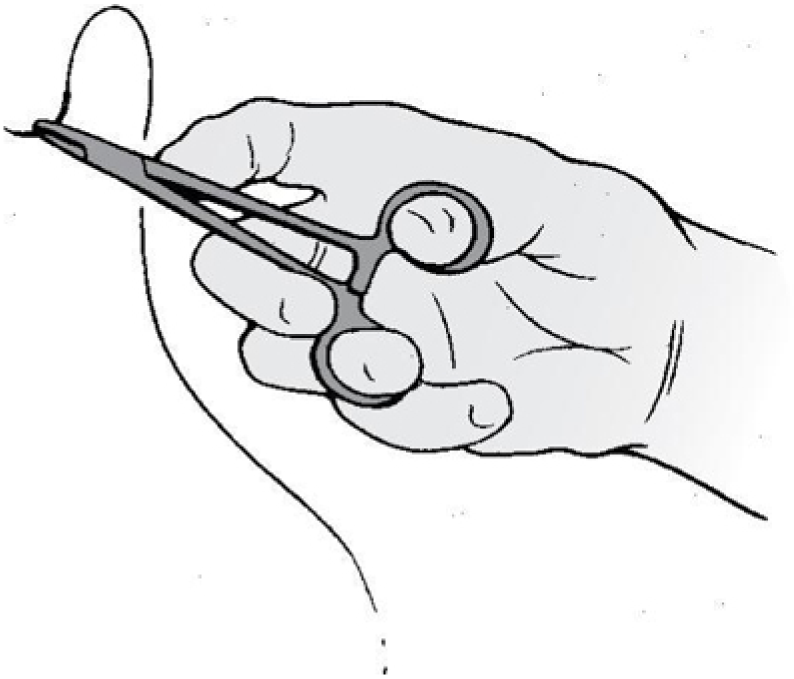


FIG. 191 Gripping a suture needle with a needle driver.

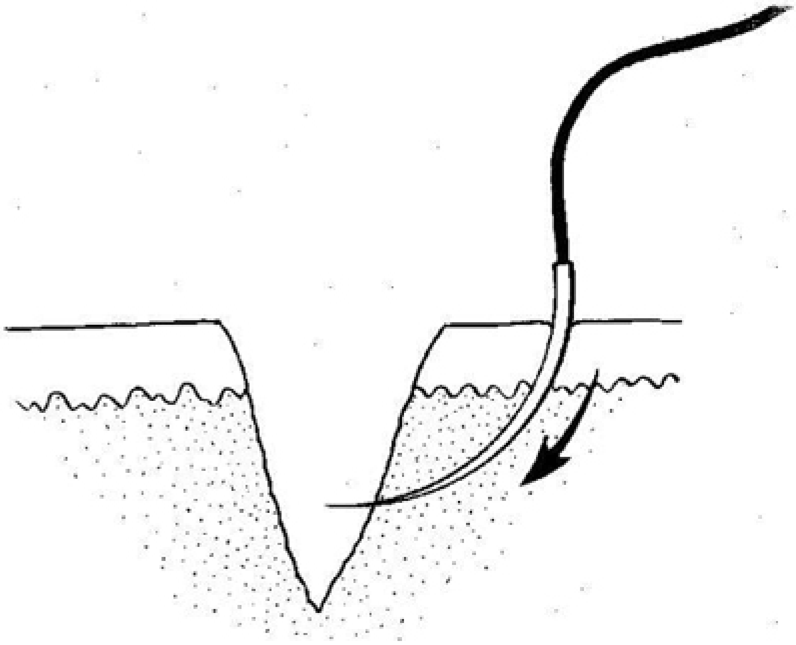


FIG. 192 Pushing the needle through the skin and out into the base of the wound.

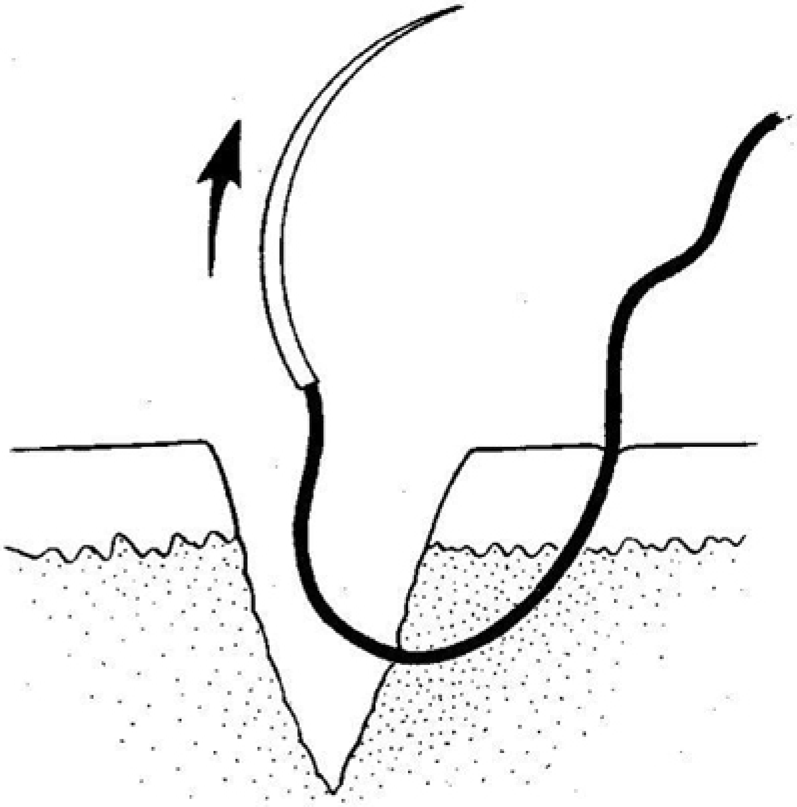


FIG. 193 Pulling the suture through the first side of the wound.

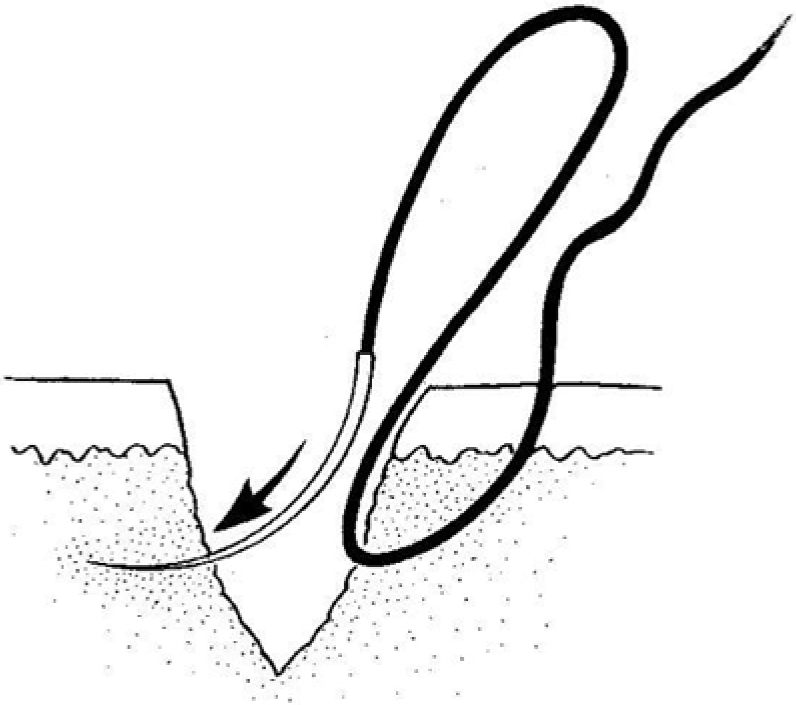


FIG. 194 Pushing the needle into the base of the opposite side of the wound.

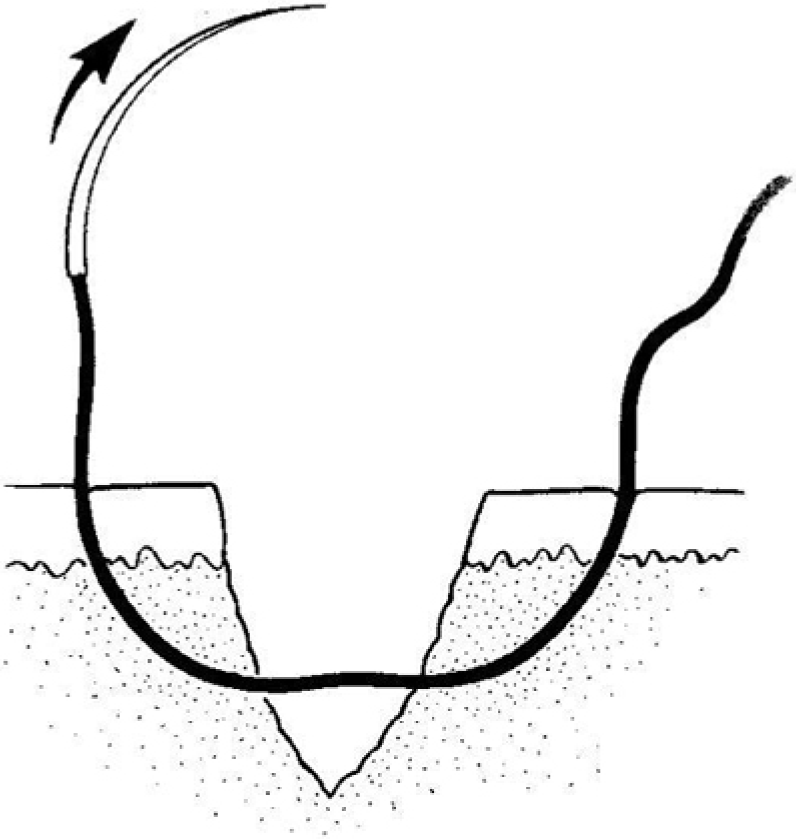


FIG. 195 Rotating the needle out through the second (final) side of the wound.

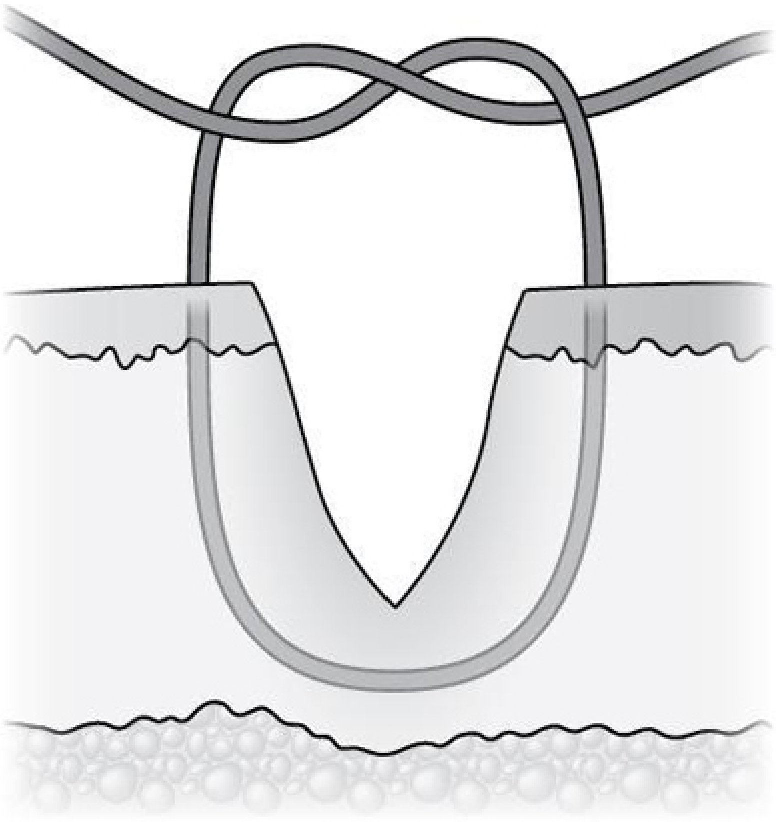


FIG. 196 The U shape of proper suture placement.

To tie a modified square knot, the long end (with the needle) of the suture is looped around the needle holder twice (Fig. 197); then the short end of the suture—which was left as a 2-inch (5-cm) tag—is grasped and lock-clamped tightly in the jaws of the needle driver (Fig. 198). Holding the needle in one hand and the needle driver in the other, lay the double loop down flat against the skin to pull the wound together (Fig. 199). To complete the knot, a single loop is thrown around the needle driver in the direction opposite the first (clockwise versus counterclockwise, or "over" versus "under") (Fig. 200), the short end of the suture once again grasped with the needle driver (Fig. 201), and the knot pulled tight; cross your hands properly to lay the second loop-tie down flat ("square") against the first (Fig. 202). The knot completion process should be repeated three more times for a total of five "throws" to ensure that the knot won't unravel. Cut the long ends ¼ inch (0.6 cm) from the knot.

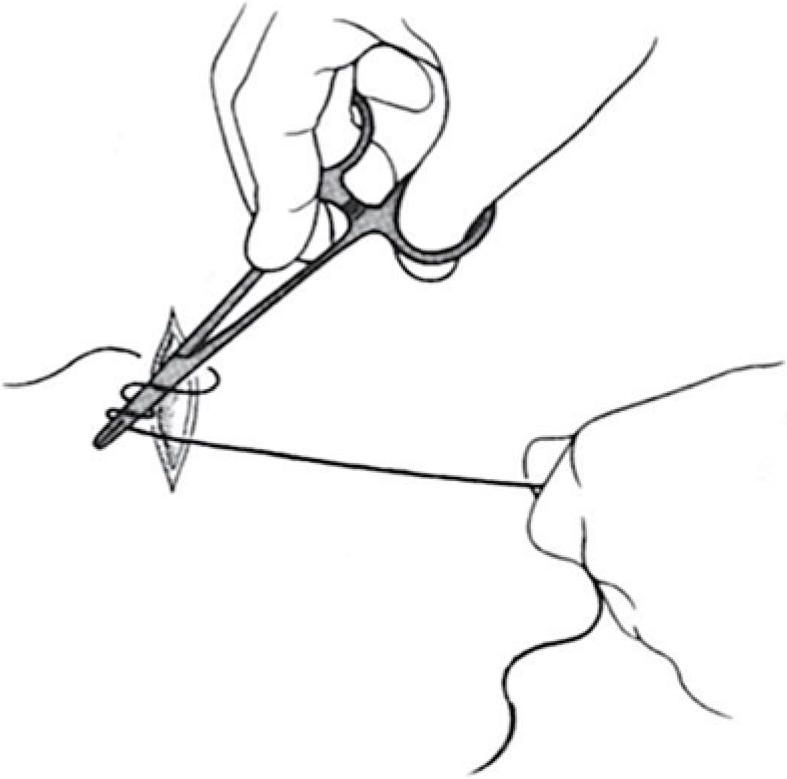


FIG. 197 To tie a suture, first loop it around the needle driver twice.

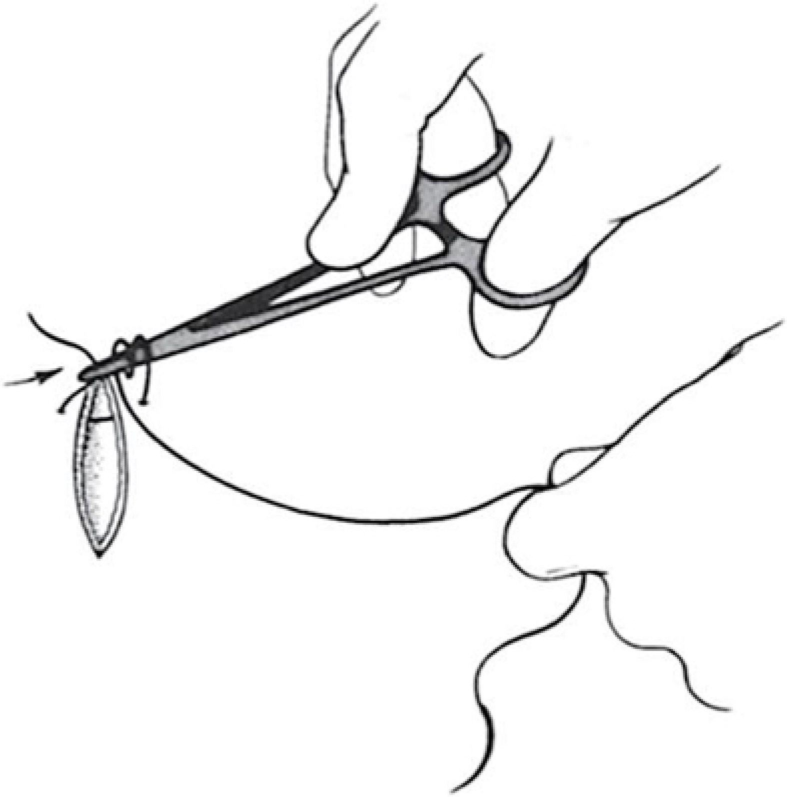


FIG. 198 Grab the short end of the suture with the needle driver.

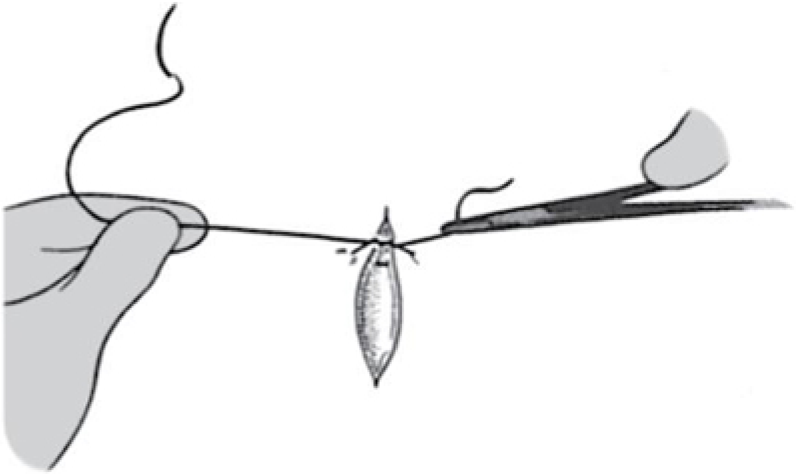


FIG. 199 Laying down the first loop of a knot.

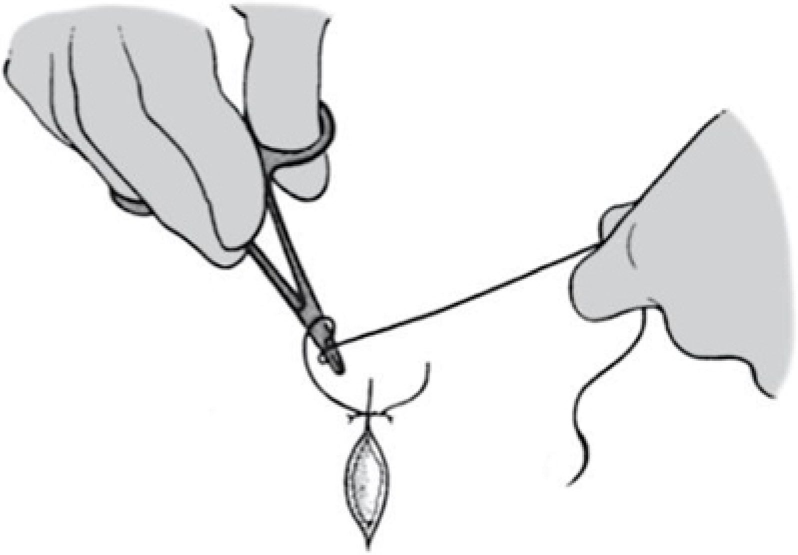


FIG. 200 Creating the second loop of a square knot over the needle driver.

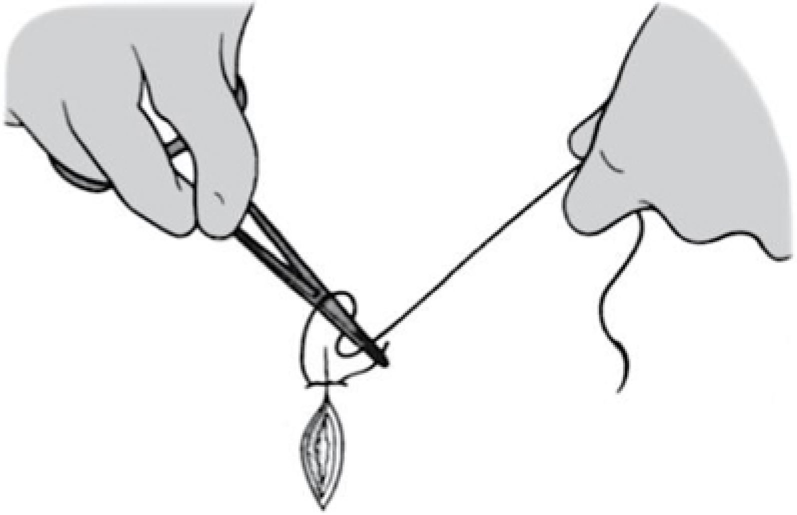


FIG. 201 Once again, grab the short end of the suture with the needle driver.

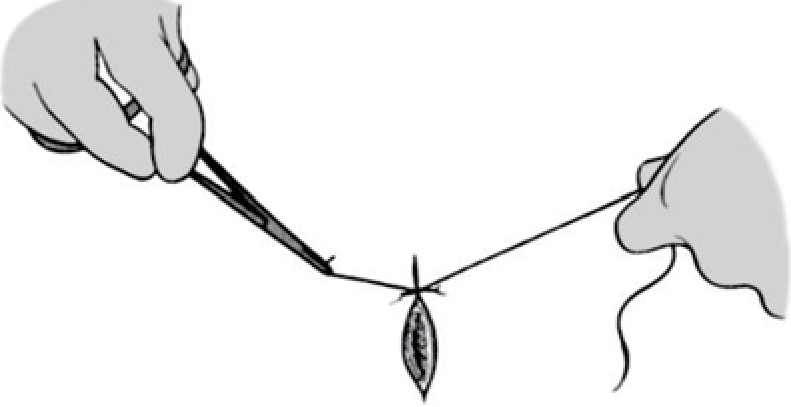


FIG. 202 Completing the first square knot.

Place the stitches close enough together (approximately ¼ inch [0.6 cm]) so that the wound is closed and there is no fat showing from underneath the skin. A nice way to close a wound is to place enough stitches to bring the wound edges into reasonable approximation and support the tension, and then close the remainder with cloth or paper adhesive strips. Put the first stitch at the midpoint of the wound, then at the midpoints of the remaining segments, and so forth. If you begin stitching at one end and work your way to the other, you run a much greater chance of misaligning the wound edges and ending up with a tear-shaped "dog-ear" that can't be easily closed; this might force you to remove all of the stitches and begin all over again.

Sometimes the skin wound that you wish to close is in the midst of very thin skin, such as the delicate skin found on the arms or legs of older people. It's usually impossible to pull these skin edges together with a needle and stitches without tearing through the skin. One method to make this possible is to put adhesive wound closure strips (such as Steri-Strips) over the skin in a parallel orientation on opposite sides of the wound close to the wound edges to bolster the skin. Then sew through the skin-strip combination.

After you stitch a wound, it might ooze blood from the needle holes or the center of the wound. Apply firm, direct pressure with a gauze bandage or cloth for 10 to 15 minutes. To dress the wound, apply a thin layer of bacitracin or mupirocin ointment and an absorbent sterile bandage. Inspect the wound daily for signs of infection (see page 295). If an infection develops, remove a few stitches over the worst area to see if any pus is released. Allowing the wound to drain in one area might allow you to keep the other stitches in place for the normal duration of healing. When in doubt, however, take all of the stitches out and let the wound heal open or under loose approximation with adhesive strips.

Try to keep the wound dry for at least 4 days. Stitches are left in place for 14 days across the joints of the finger and hand, 10 days on the arms and legs, 7 days on the trunk and scalp, and 4 days on the face. After you remove a stitch, you can reinforce a wound with adhesive strips for a week to allow a margin of safety for healing.

If you're going to carry sutures with the intention of sewing a wound, you should have a skilled medical practitioner teach you how to suture before you need to do it yourself. You can practice the technique on a pig's foot, a chicken leg, or even a thick-skinned orange.

To remove a stitch from a healed wound, wash the wound carefully and then cut the stitch on one side only of the visible knot. If you cut on both sides of the knot, you might not be able to retrieve the buried portion of the stitch. Grasp the knot with tweezers and pull the stitch out of the skin. If a crust has formed over the stitch, soften it up by applying moist compresses for 30 minutes before removing it.

Stapling a wound closed

An excellent technique for closing relatively straight lacerations on the arm, leg, trunk, and scalp is stapling. A disposable surgical stapler, such as the Precise 5-, 15-, or 25-staple Disposable Skin Stapler (3M Medical-Surgical Division), allows precise placement of stainless-steel staples. The proper technique takes practice. Hold the skin edges together and press the business end of the stapler against the wound closure line, and then squeeze the stapler to discharge a staple into the skin (Fig. 203). The recipient feels a quick pinprick. The closure is rapid and sturdy. The staples are left in place for 7 days on the scalp and trunk, and 10 days on the arm or leg. A disposable scissors-handle staple remover or smaller pinch-handle-style staple remover (Precise SR-1, 3M) is used to painlessly remove the staples (Fig. 204).

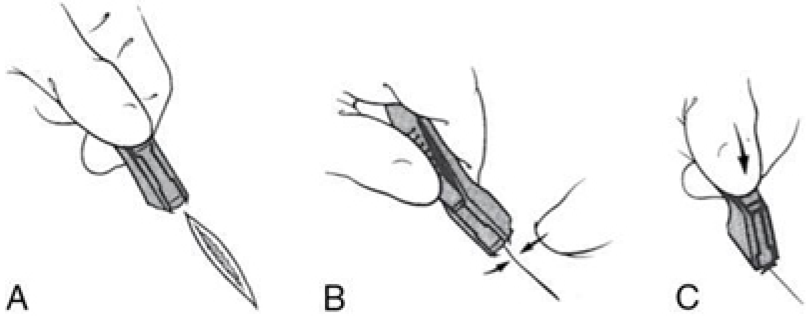


FIG. 203 **A,** Preparing to staple a wound. **B,** Pressing the surgical tissue stapler against the skin while pushing the wound edges together. **C,** Squeezing the stapler in order to discharge the staple into the skin.

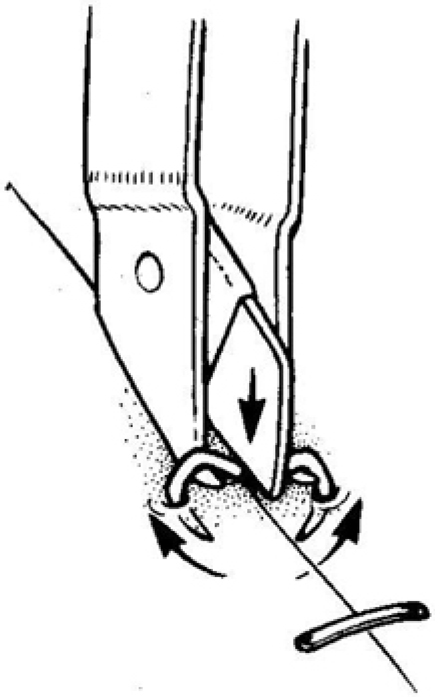


FIG. 204 Removing a surgical staple.

If you're going to carry surgical staples with the intention of stapling a wound, you should receive proper instruction before the journey.

Gluing a wound closed

Topical tissue adhesives ("glue"), which can be applied in a thin layer on top of a wound (*not* within the wound) to bond the edges together, have been recommended for superficial cuts. The two classes of these adhesives marketed in the United States are the octyl-cyanoacrylates (e.g., DERMABOND, DERMABOND ADVANCED, and SurgiSeal) and butyl-cyanoacrylates (e.g., Histoacryl Blue, Indermil, GluStitch, and LiquiBand). In a recent evaluation, DERMABOND ADVANCED was the strongest and most flexible, and set in the shortest time, but this might not make a difference in terms of the totality of wound healing. DERMABOND ADVANCED is available in a ProPen applicator that makes this product quite easy to apply (see later). Other brands of over-the-counter tissue glue products are likely not as strong as prescription items but might be quite adequate for outdoor use. Industrial (nonmedical) superglues are nonsterile and might cause a bit of skin irritation but are likely relatively effective and safe.

Tissue adhesive wound closure creates a closure that, while not initially as strong across a highly stressed area, like the skin overlying a finger joint, ultimately results in a similar cosmetic outcome to sewing the skin together. It cannot be used on the eye, inner moist surfaces of the mouth and lips, or areas with dense body hair.

To glue a wound shut, first clean it carefully, then blot it dry. Push the wound edges together so that they are perfectly aligned. The goal is to apply the glue so that it touches external skin only and does not enter the wound. It attaches to the dead tissue that forms the external surface of skin. Have an assistant apply a thin layer of glue over the surface while the edges are held evenly together and the wound is flat. Allow that layer to dry, then repeat two or three more times. When using the DERMABOND ADVANCED topical skin adhesive applicator, follow these instructions:

- Hold the applicator away from the patient with the tip pointed downward.
- Squeeze the bulb to crush the ampule inside, then release the pressure.
- Gently squeeze the bulb again to moisten the internal filter with adhesive.
- Hold the wound edges together with a gloved (if possible) hand or tweezers.
- Apply DERMABOND ADVANCED in a single continuous layer while maintaining steady bulb pressure. Don’t push the applicator into an open wound.
- Hold the skin edges together for 60 seconds. The adhesive sets fully in about 90 seconds.

Routine tape-strip reinforcement is recommended, and topical petroleum-based ointments should not be used, as they will weaken the glue and cause the wound to break open. A variation of this to create much greater breaking strength is to use the tape-strips to close the wound first (see page 285), and then paint the glue over them. After the wound is closed with tissue adhesive, the victim may wash off or shower, but should not soak the wound, swim, or bathe in a tub, because prolonged moisture loosens the bond. Blot, rather than wipe, the area dry. Superglue should not be used to close deep wounds, because if it leaks into the wound, it can cause an intense inflammatory reaction.

Dress the wound

The goal is to keep the wound clean and slightly moist (not dry). This is generally done in layers. The first layer is antiseptic cream or ointment, which should be sparingly applied to the surface of the wound, provided there is good drainage and there are no large, open (deep) pockets in the wound. A thick antiseptic grease seal that prevents drainage might actually promote the development of a deep-space infection. Antiseptic ointment might soften and weaken a tissue glue closure, so should not be used if this method is chosen for wound closure. If an antiseptic is not available, honey applied topically on a wound might reduce infection and promote wound healing. It's also useful for infected wounds. Medical-grade honey is "manuka" honey, a honey derived from *Leptospermum* trees. Honey intended for human consumption is fine for wound care purposes.

A nonadherent next (inner) layer of a bandage keeps the overlying dressing from sticking. This should be nonstick (preferably sterile) product such as Telfa, Adaptic, Xeroform, or Aquafor. If an antiseptic ointment or cream will prevent adhesion of the bandage, a prepackaged square of fine-mesh gauze can be used but be advised that the ooze from a wound usually negates the lubricating features of most creams and allows bandages to stick. A nonadherent dressing can be improvised by applying antiseptic ointment, petrolatum, or honey to a gauze pad.

Special wound coverings include Spenco 2nd Skin, an inert hydrogel composed of water and polyethylene oxide. It absorbs fluids (so long as it doesn't dry out), which wicks serum and secretions away from the wound and promotes wound healing. Other occlusive hydrogel-type dressings are NU-GEL (preserved polyvinyl pyrrolidone in water) and Hydrogel, which can absorb up to 2½ times its weight in fluids exuded from the wound. A covering film, such as Tegaderm, sticks to nongreasy skin surrounding the wound and if not further covered, allows easy wound inspection. Tegaderm is also available as a small patch packaged with a short (2⅜ inch) Steri-Strip in a Wound Closure System (3M). Dressings should be replaced every 4 to 7 days unless made of gauze, in which case they should be replaced every 1 to 2 days.

The next layer is composed of absorbent sterile dressings, such as dry gauze pads (see Bandaging Techniques, page 296). If these aren't available, use clean white cloth (the more absorbent, the better). Apply the entire bandage assembly snugly enough to control bleeding, but not to impede circulation (as judged by warm and pink fingers and toes). Keep dressings in place with conforming rolled gauze, which can also allow some air circulation. If a prepackaged rolled gauze is not available, one can be created by taking a tee shirt and cutting a continuous strip in a spiral from the bottom of the shirt. All dressings should be changed as frequently as they become soaked; if there is no significant drainage, they should be changed daily. If the skin is becoming macerated (wrinkled and pale colored; kept perpetually moist), lighten up on the ointment or cream and apply a less occlusive dressing, while keeping the wound protected.

If you use tape to secure a dressing, you can apply tincture of benzoin or Mastisol Liquid Adhesive to increase the stickiness of the skin. Don't let any benzoin run into the wound—it really stings. When dressings are applied, keep the body part in the position of function (normal resting position) (see Fig. 59). Check all dressings daily for soaking, a snug fit, and underlying infection. If you wish to remove a dressing that's stuck to a wound, soak it off by moistening it with warm water or a brief application of hydrogen peroxide. Bandaging techniques are addressed in the next section.

Splint the wound (see page 86). For instance, if the injury involves the hand, also place the arm in a sling to minimize motion of the injured part. Movement delays healing and promotes the spread of infection.

Wound infection

There is always the risk of infection. If the wound is lengthy (more than 2 inches [5 cm]) or very deep, is an animal bite (particularly of the hand or foot), is on the hand or foot, is a puncture wound, has inadequate drainage, is within the mouth, is deep or complex (e.g., with visible bone or tendon; entering into a joint), is sustained by someone who is immunosuppressed (e.g., human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] infection, diabetes, chronic corticosteroid use), has resulted from a crush injury, or is very dirty (particularly if contaminated with soil)—or if you are more than 24 hours from medical care—the situation carries a high risk for infection and the victim should be treated with an oral antibiotic (dicloxacillin, erythromycin, or cephalexin) until the wound is healed or help is reached.

Despite your best efforts, a wound can become infected. The most common bacteria that cause wound infections are *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Streptococcus pyogenes.* Common signs of an infection include redness and swelling surrounding the wound, pus or cloudy discharge (pink, green, or cream colored), foul odor (this is variable), fever, increased wound tenderness, red streaking that travels to the trunk from the wound, and swollen lymph nodes in the vicinity of the infection (see Fig. 166).

If a wound is infected, its edges should be spread apart to allow the drainage of any pus. To do this, you need to remove some or all fastening bandages (such as butterfly bandages). The wound should then be irrigated copiously and dressed with a dry, absorbent, sterile bandage without bringing the wound edges tightly together. Begin to apply warm, moist compresses, using disinfected water, to the wound at least four times a day.

If not already initiated, start the victim on an antibiotic (dicloxacillin, cephalexin, or erythromycin). For a cat bite, use amoxicillin–clavulanate, cefuroxime axetil, azithromycin, clindamycin plus norfloxacin, or penicillin plus dicloxacillin. For a wound incurred in ocean, river, or lake water, administer doxycycline or trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole as an additional antibiotic.

If a wound infection is advancing, the victim should be brought rapidly to a physician. If you see gas bubbles in a wound, if it's draining foul reddish-gray fluid, and/or if there is a feeling of "Rice Krispies" (crepitus) in the skin surrounding a wound, it might be the onset of necrotizing ("flesh-eating," leading to cell death) tissue infection, resulting in gangrene. This is a life-threatening infection and requires immediate surgical attention.

Seek medical care

Seek appropriate medical attention. Field cleansing and dressing are no substitutes for proper irrigation, trimming, and wound management undertaken in a medical facility. Small nicks don't require fancy intervention, but if you are in doubt as to the seriousness of the injury, get good advice. The nuances of optimal wound healing are many, but general basics to remember are that it might require many months to a year for scars to contract into their final appearance; topical silicone gel (available over-the-counter) combined with gentle massage might keep a scar soft and minimize its size; vitamin E is unproven as a beneficial topical substance to promote wound healing or minimize scar formation; and sunscreen should be applied to all "red" scars to protect them from ultraviolet light exposure for at least a year after the wound appears to be healed.

Bandaging techniques

Bandage application is an art form. The only way to become proficient is to practice. There is no inviolable rule other than to avoid excessive tightness, which might compromise circulation. Use square knots to tie bandage ends securely. Signs that a bandage is too tight are blue discoloration of the fingernails/fingertips/toenails/toes, cool and pale skin color, tingling or loss of feeling beyond the bandage, difficulty moving the fingers or toes, and pain underneath or beyond the bandage.

A triangular bandage is a three-cornered bandage, usually approximately 42 inches (1 m) across the base. A cravat is a triangular bandage folded two or three times into a long strap (Fig. 205).

Finger bandage. Fold a 1-inch (2.5-cm) rolled gauze back and forth over the tip of the finger to cover and cushion the wound (Fig. 206). Then wrap the gauze around the finger until the bandage is snug and not overly bulky. On the last turn around the finger, pull the gauze over the top of the hand, so that it extends beyond the wrist. Split this tail lengthwise. Tie a knot at the wrist and wrap the two ends around the wrist; tie again to secure the bandage. Another technique involves not splitting the tail, wrapping it around the wrist twice, and then bringing it up over the top of the hand around the base of the finger from the side opposite where it originated, looping it over the hand back to the wrist, and tying it off (Fig. 207).

Hand bandage. The hand should be bandaged as if for a fracture, in the position of function (see Fig. 67). Take care to place gauze or cotton padding between the fingers to separate and cushion them. Use a simple figure-of-eight wrap across the palm.

Wrist bandage. Begin by wrapping the wrist two to three times (Fig. 208). Continue over the top of the hand, and then through the space between the thumb and fingers, across the palm. Repeat the process in a figure-of-eight pattern until the desired thickness and rigidity is obtained.

Arm or leg bandage. Cover the wound(s) with a gauze pad(s). Overwrap the wound using simple spiral turns of rolled gauze or a figure-of-eight pattern (Fig. 209). Secure the bandage with adhesive tape in a spiral pattern to avoid a tourniquet effect. Whenever possible, don't apply tape directly to the skin.

Thigh and groin bandage. Wrap a 6-inch elastic bandage around the mid-thigh in an inner to outer direction and continue up toward the pelvis (Fig. 210). At the groin crease, continue up and around the waist one time. This anchors the bandage. Then proceed back down the thigh to complete the figure-of-eight pattern. If the injury is to the quadriceps ("quads") or hamstrings ("hammies") muscles, put additional wraps on the thigh. If the injury is to the groin, alternate wrapping around the hip with wrapping the thigh. Since this is a large bandage, a double-length wrap serves best.

Foot bandage. The foot should be bandaged as if wrapped for an ankle sprain, using gauze instead of elastic wraps (see page 307).

Shoulder bandage. To make a shoulder bandage (Fig. 211) from a triangular bandage, lay the base over the shoulder at a downward diagonal across the chest (front and back) with the apex pointed down the arm. Roll or fold the apex back down a few turns to create the beginning of a cravat; tie this just in front of the opposite armpit. Roll or fold the apex up the arm in the same manner until the bandage achieves the desired coverage, and then tie off this smaller cravat segment with the knot visible on the outside of the arm.

Chest bandage. To wrap the chest with gauze, circle the chest and upper abdomen for a few turns. To keep the bandage from slipping toward the hips, bring it up over the shoulder every third or fourth turn. Secure with adhesive tape. Do not impede breathing.

Head bandage. Place the base edge of a triangular bandage just over the eyes (Fig. 212). Fold the base edge 1 inch (2.5 cm) under to create a hem. Allow the bandage to fall back over the top of the head, with the apex point (tail) dropping over the back of the head. Then cross the other two free corners (at the ends of the hem) over the tail and tie them in a single turn (half of a knot). Continue to bring them around to the forehead and tie a complete square knot. Tuck the hanging tail over and into the half knot behind the head. If more pressure is necessary, tie a cravat directly over a gauze or cloth bandage.

Another way to secure a bandage to the side of the head, ear, or chin is to lay a cravat over the wound at the cravat's midpoint, and then wrap it vertically over the head and under the chin (Fig. 213). Cross the cravat on the side of the head at ear level and wrap the ends in opposite directions horizontally so that one side loops across the forehead. Tie the knot behind the ear.

Eye bandage. See page 204.

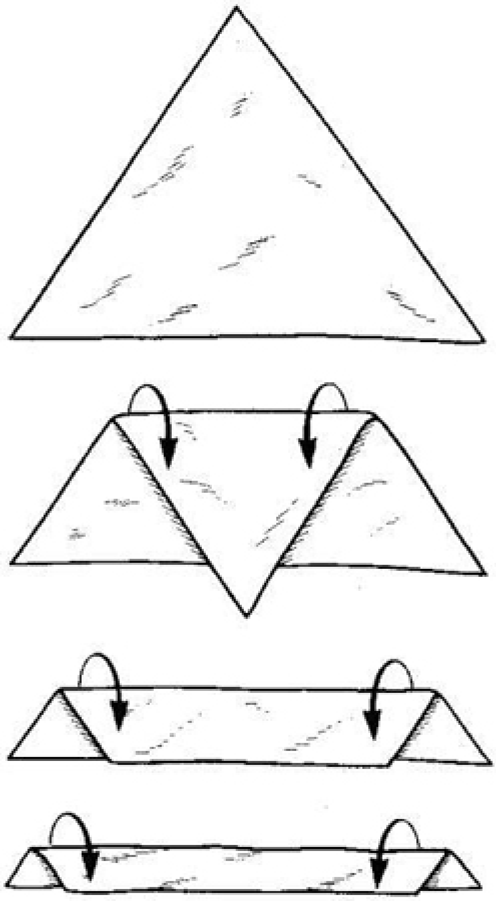


FIG. 205 Making a cravat from a triangular bandage.

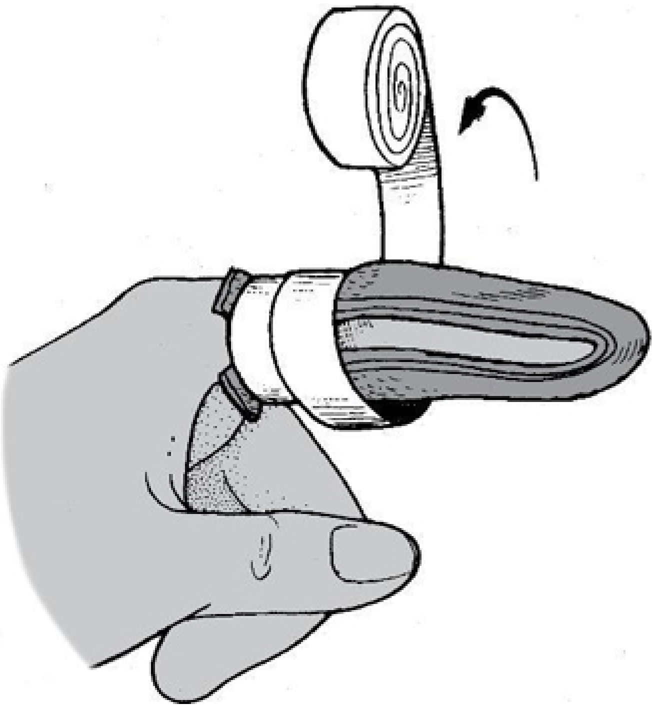


FIG. 206 To begin a finger bandage, place layers of gauze over the fingertip.

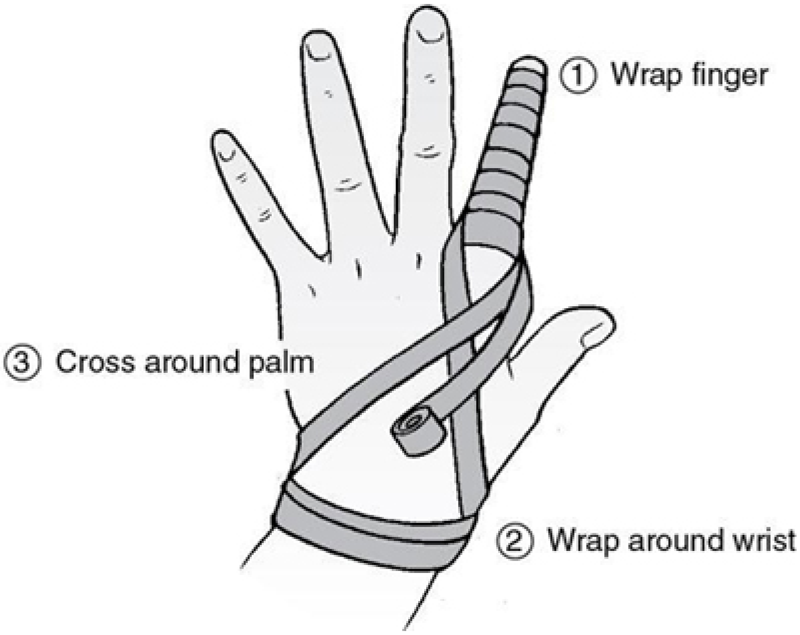

① Wrap finger
③ Cross around palm
② Wrap around wrist

FIG. 207 To complete a finger bandage, wrap the gauze around the finger, then bring it across the palm and around the wrist to tie off.

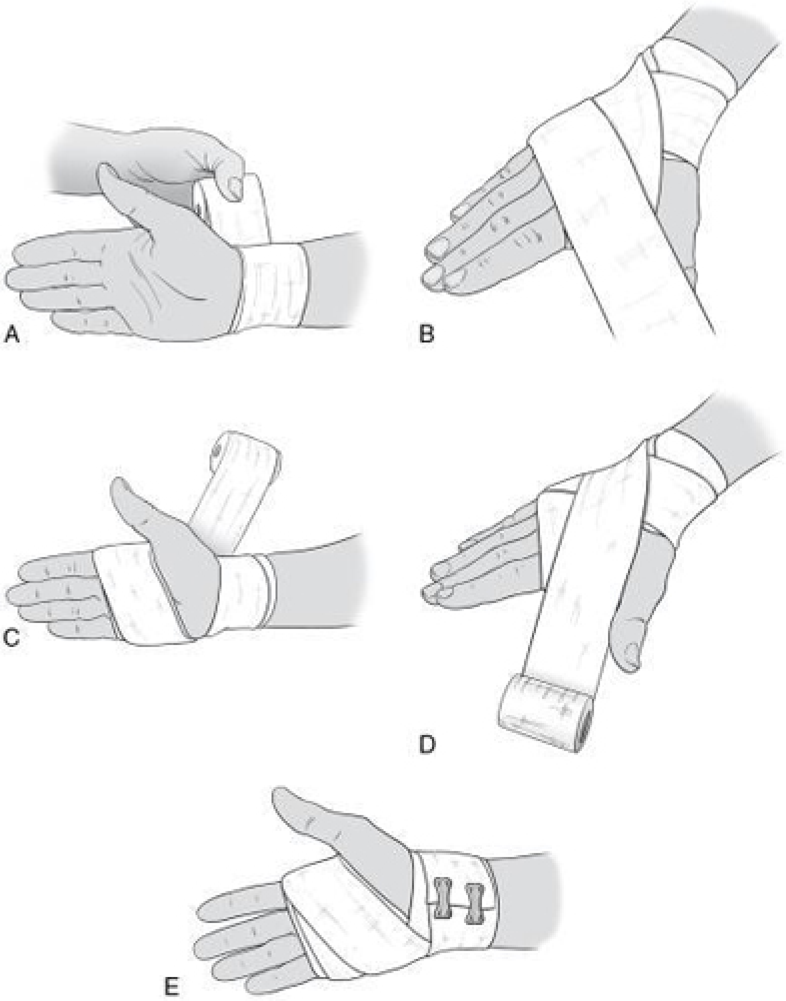


FIG. 208 Creation of a wrist bandage. **A,** First, wrap around the wrist a few times. **B,** Continue across the top of the hand and then in the “web space” between the thumb and index finger. **C,** Continue back across the top of the wrist, and then **(D)** continue back over the hand in **(E)** a figure-of-eight pattern. *Source:* (Redrawn from Auerbach PS [ed]: Wilderness medicine [ed 5], Mosby, 2007, p. 436.)

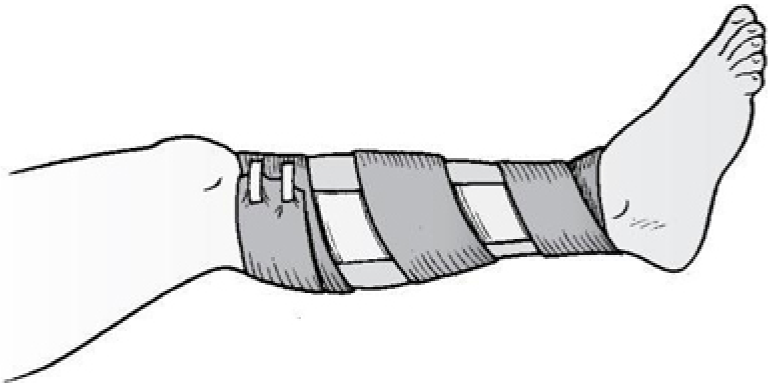


FIG. 209 Spiral leg bandage.

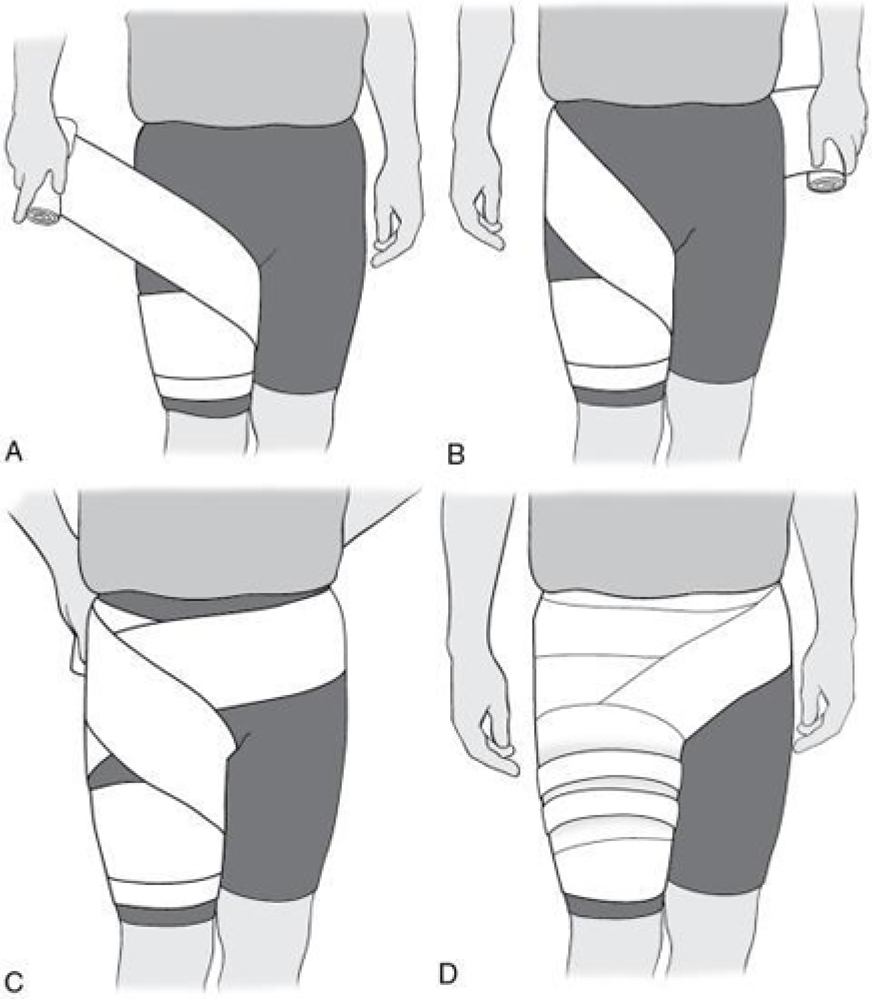


FIG. 210 Creation of a thigh and groin bandage. **A,** Wrap a long 6 inch elastic bandage around the mid-thigh in an inner-to-outer direction working upward. **B,** At the groin crease, continue to wrap around the waist one time, then **(C)** wrap back down the thigh. **D,** Finish by wrapping around the thigh. *Source:* (Redrawn from Auerbach PS [ed]: Wilderness medicine [ed 5], Mosby, 2007, p. 443.)

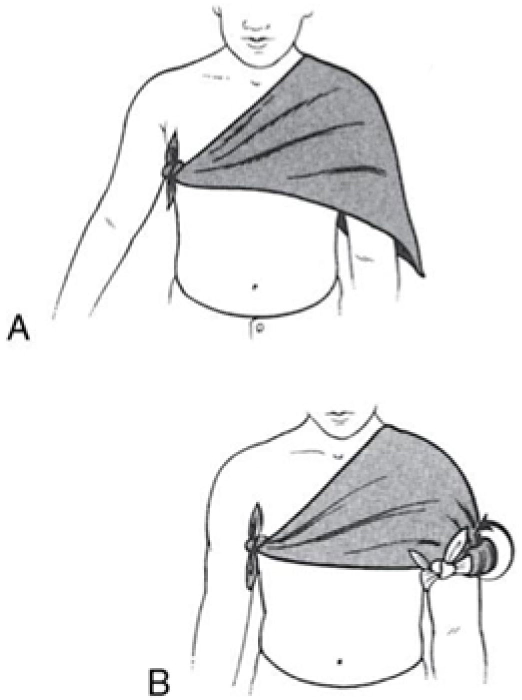


FIG. 211 Shoulder bandage. **A,** Drape a triangular bandage over the shoulder. Begin to form a cravat and tie off in front of the opposite armpit. **B,** Complete the bandage.

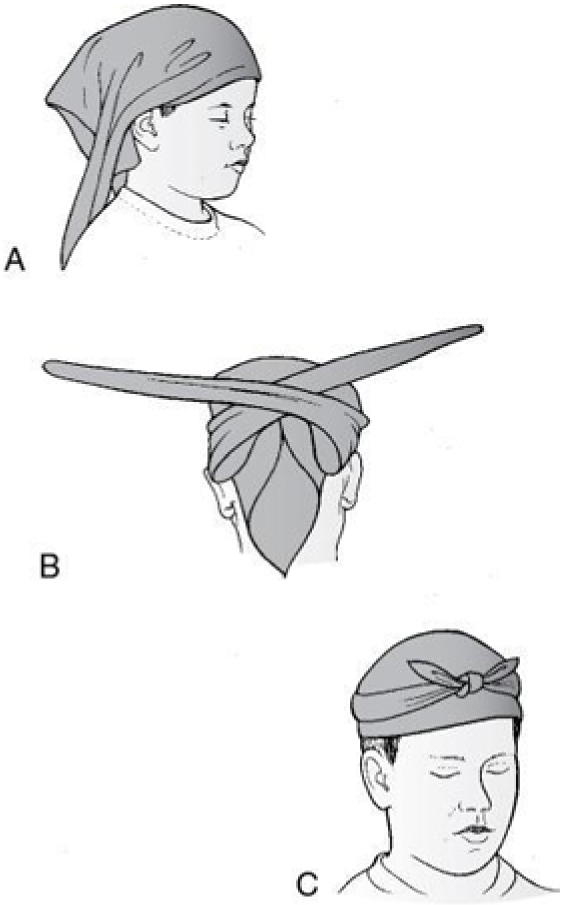


FIG. 212 Head bandage. **A,** Drape a triangular bandage just over the eyes. **B,** Create a hem and cross behind the head, tying with a half knot in order to **(C)** fashion a square knot in the front. Tuck the tail that remains behind the head into the half knot.

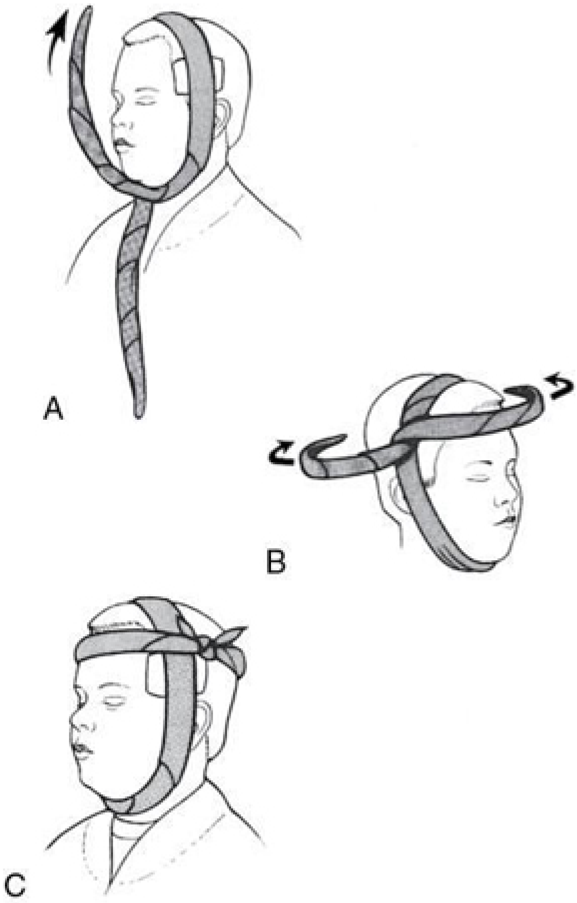


FIG. 213 Securing a bandage to the side of the head. **A,** Lay a cravat over the wound. **B,** Cross the cravat and **(C)** tie it off behind the ear.

Bandages are changed for wound inspection and to avoid infection. If it's difficult to remove tape adhered to the skin, this can be accomplished by lifting one edge and then swiping at the stuck adhesive margin with an alcohol wipe or cloth soaked in rubbing alcohol. Take care to keep the alcohol out of any open wound. An excellent way to avoid this situation is to tape bandage-to-bandage, if possible, by using rolled gauze to secure the bandage.

Abscess (boil)

See page 262.

Scalp laceration (cut on the head)

See page 76.

Fishhook removal

See page 469.

Splinter removal

See page 471.

Blisters

See page 267.

Musculoskeletal injuries

Overuse syndromes

Whenever a muscle is overused—that is, exercised past its state of conditioning—there is actual destruction of the muscle tissue and generation of lactic acid. Given a reasonable rest period, the products of metabolism are carried away in the circulation and the muscle tissue regenerates to a healthy, sometimes even stronger, condition. However, if the exercise has been vigorous and unrelenting, the participant might suffer from a variety of aches and pains that are generally categorized as overuse syndromes.

Carpal tunnel syndrome

Carpal tunnel syndrome is caused by elevated pressure in the carpal tunnel, which is a space at the base of the wrist through which pass nine tendons that flex (bend toward the palm) the fingers, along with the median nerve. It can be caused for a number of reasons, which include forceful, repetitive use of the wrist. People with short, wide hands and square-shaped wrists might be at greater risk to develop this syndrome. The pressure causes the median nerve to have diminished function, which leads to the signs and symptoms. These include pain, numbness, tingling, and/or burning sensation on the palm side of the thumb, index finger, middle finger, and thumb side of the fourth finger. The "pinkie" side of the fourth finger and entire fifth finger are spared, as they are serviced by the ulnar nerve, which lies outside the carpal tunnel. Treatment is to avoid the offending activity and to splint the wrist in a "neutral" position of function (see page 85), both night and day if possible. A nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drug (NSAID) might be helpful. If the case is severe, a physician can prescribe oral steroids or inject steroids into the carpal tunnel. Medical evidence does not support the use of vitamin B_6. If carpal tunnel syndrome persists and the victim shows loss of nerve function or muscle wasting at the base of the thumb, surgery might be advised to decrease the pressure.

Cyclist's palsy

If a cyclist leans on the handlebars for an extended period, they might compress the ulnar nerve as it passes through the wrist. Symptoms include numbness and tingling of the fifth finger and the outside half of the fourth finger. Treat with a wrist splint and administration of an NSAID. On rare occasion, steroid injection or surgical decompression of the nerve is necessary.

Saturday night palsy

This occurs if a person sleeps with his arm draped over the back of a chair or against a hard object, such as a log. The radial nerve is compressed as it wraps around the upper long bone (humerus) of the arm. Symptoms include diminished or no sensation on the top of the hand over the first and second fingers, as well as over the thumb. When the hand is held straight out, palm down, the hand drops down at the wrist into a limp position (Fig. 214). Even though it might have only taken one night to affect the nerve, it might take a few weeks for recovery, so the wrist should be splinted in a position of function (see page 85). Add a sling if necessary to support the forearm and hand.

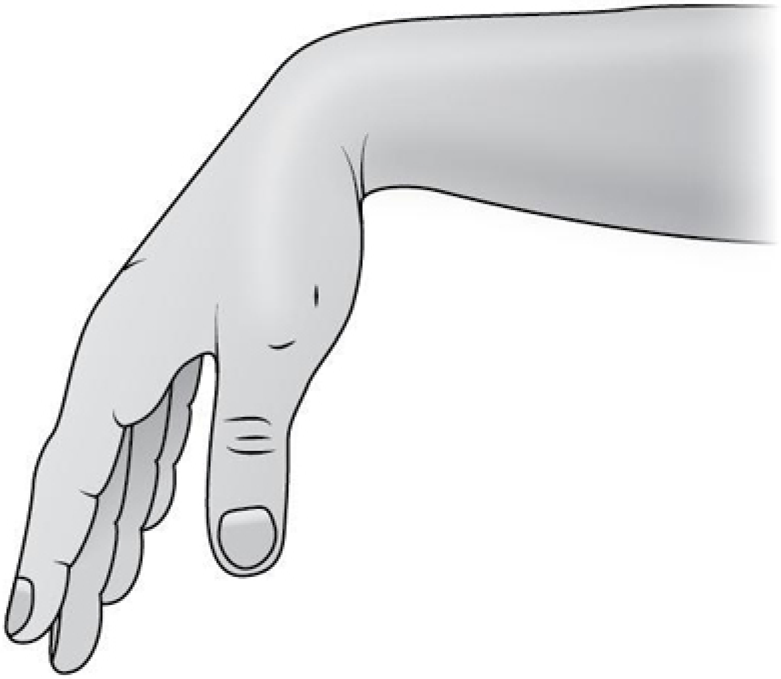


FIG. 214 Position of the hand when suffering from "Saturday night palsy."

Rotator cuff tendinitis

The rotator cuff comprises four muscles: supraspinatus, infraspinatus, teres minor, and subscapularis. Each of these muscles is connected to the scapula, traverses over the shoulder, and attaches to the upper arm bone. These muscles stabilize the shoulder and lift and rotate the arm. When they are stretched or strained, motion at the shoulder can be quite painful. Rest, avoiding painful motion, intermittent cool compresses or ice packs, and taking an NSAID are recommended for relief and recovery. If the pain persists, then there might be a rotator cuff tear that requires surgical repair.

Turf toe

Turf toe refers to a condition in which the ligaments around the metatarsophalangeal joint (large joint) of the great toe are sprained by overuse. This is usually seen in athletes, but sometimes in long distance walkers, hikers, and climbers. Pain, swelling, and decreased joint movement at the base of the great toe are the most common symptoms, with occasional bruising and altered gait, leading to difficulty with ambulatory activities. Treatment includes diminishing or eliminating the offending activity and using rest, application of cold, and administration of nonsteroidal antiinflammatory medication. With proper therapy, it might take a few weeks to return to normal.

Muscle fatigue

Simple fatigue, with depletion of energy stores within the muscle, is manifested as weakness, pain on exertion, soreness to the touch, and cramping. In many cases, this is compounded by dehydration, deficiencies of electrolytes (usually sodium and/or potassium), lack of sufficient caloric intake, or a specific injury. The sufferer has been informed by their body that it’s time to rest. Sufficient time should be allowed to remove waste products, restore energy sources, correct dehydration, and regenerate muscle tissue. The victim should avoid vigorous physical activity for 12 to 24 hours and should eat and drink amply. For overuse syndromes, pharmaceutical muscle relaxants are of little value and pain medication is generally not necessary. Massage of the involved muscle groups is relaxing, although it probably does not hasten recovery.

Shin splints

Shin splints is the term used to describe a painful disorder (medial tibial stress syndrome) generated by excessive walking, running, or hiking. The sufferer has irritated the thin membrane that connects the two lower leg bones along the longitudinal axes where the membrane attaches to the bones. With every footstep, there is further irritation of the membrane, so that it can become impossible to walk rapidly. Rest is the most important treatment. The victim should attempt to curtail running or vigorous walking activity and might benefit from administration of aspirin or an NSAID. A shoe that is well cushioned (particularly its ball and heel) is very important for prevention and recovery. More complex orthotics might be required.

Taping might help. Find the area of maximal tenderness by pressing on the skin. Place a foam or thick cloth pad over that spot and hold the pad in place by first using pre-wrap (preferably) (Fig. 215, A), then covering the pre-wrap with tape from the tops of the malleoli to the lower calf (see Fig. 215, B).

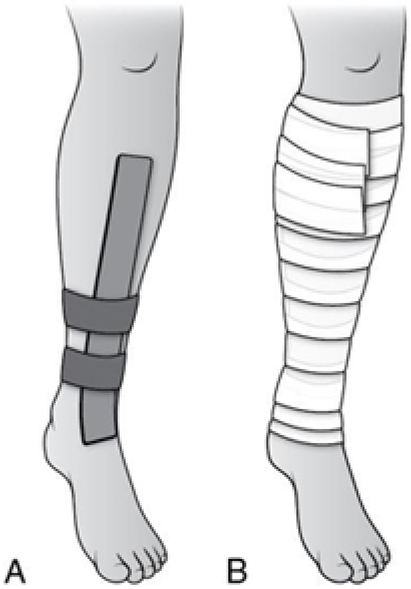


FIG. 215 Taping for shin splints. **A,** Place a foam pad on the affected area. **B,** Cover the foam with pre-wrap and tape.

Plantar fasciitis

Plantar fasciitis is inflammation of the fascia (tough connective sheath tissue) that encloses the muscles and tendons that traverse the bottom of the foot. It is a syndrome of overuse, caused by excessive walking or running, particularly associated with repetitive impact on the bottom of a foot that's improperly cushioned or without appropriate arch support. There is pain in the bottom of the foot (ball, arch, and/or heel) that is worsened by repetitive weight bearing. The pain is often worse with the first steps in the morning or after a period of inactivity. It occurs commonly in athletes and long-distance hikers, particularly if they wear poorly fitting shoes or boots. When examining the foot, pain can sometimes be elicited by applying pressure to the forward-inside area of the heel. If heel pain was sudden in onset and included a tearing sensation, then the plantar fascia might have been torn. This is more serious and mandates rest.

Treatment consists of rest, elevation of the foot with cold (ice packs) applied to the tender areas at the end of the hiking day, wearing orthotics, gentle stretching (e.g., pulling back the toes and front part of the foot), and administration of an NSAID. Worn at night, a splint that holds the foot in neutral position—thus keeping the plantar fascia slightly stretched—might help, as might avoiding walking barefoot or in flat-soled shoes.

If the victim must continue to walk on the painful foot, it can be taped to provide arch support. This is accomplished as follows: Apply a thin layer of benzoin or spray tape adhesive onto the bottom of the foot. Fix an anchor strip of ¾ inch (1.9 cm) adhesive tape in a U-shape around the heel from just under the malleoli (prominences of the ankle) up to just behind the level of the "knuckles" of the toes (Fig. 216, A). Next, lay fairly tight cross-strips of ½ inch (1.3 cm) tape across the bottom of the foot, with the ends torn to lay on the anchor strip (see Fig. 216, B). This creates a "sling" of tape under the foot for support. Finally, apply another U-shaped piece of tape around the heel that crosses under the center of the arch and locks down the crosspieces (see Fig. 216, C).

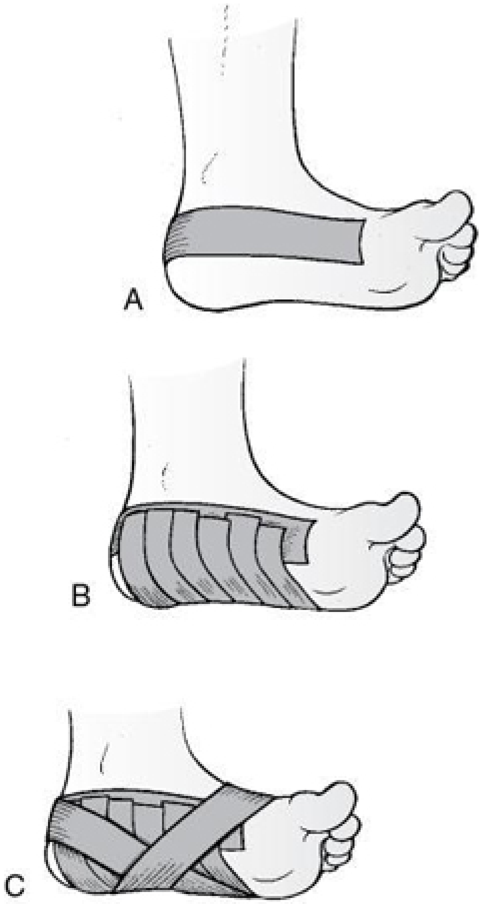


FIG. 216 Taping for arch support. **A,** Fix an anchor strip under the heel. **B,** Attach strips across the bottom of the foot. **C,** Lock the crosspieces.

Prevention of plantar fasciitis includes wearing properly fitted shoes and boots, performing Achilles tendon stretch exercises, avoiding harsh impacts to the bottoms of the feet, and maintaining proper body weight. It's too soon to tell if wearing minimalist footwear designed with less, or even no cushioning will increase the incidence of plantar fasciitis or other foot conditions affected by different types of support. It has been observed that barefoot-style running encourages a forefoot, rather than a heel-strike, landing, which consumes additional energy. The extrapolation of this observation to the trekking condition remains to be determined.

Torn muscle

A torn muscle ("pulled" muscle) is recognized as sudden pain in a muscle group associated with a particular vigorous exertion, such as sprinting or lifting a heavy object. Depending on the severity of the injury, there might be associated bruising, swelling, loss of mobility, and/or weakness. For instance, a small tear in the deltoid muscle of the shoulder might cause minor discomfort on lifting the arm over the head, while complete separation of the quadriceps group in the anterior thigh will cause inability to straighten the leg at the knee, extreme local pain, blue discoloration of the knee, and a defect in the shape of the muscles above the knee that's easily felt and seen.

In general, a minor muscle injury can be distinguished from a bone injury by evaluating active and passive range of motion. Active range of motion is the range of normal activity the victim can manage without rescuer assistance; this will be painful with both muscle and bone injuries. Passive motion is movement of a body part performed only with the aid of the rescuer; no effort is provided by the victim, who should attempt to relax the muscle completely. If there is no pain on passive (assisted) motion, but pain is present on active motion, the injury is most likely muscular, because an injured bone will hurt no matter how it is moved. If there is pain on passive motion, with or without pain on active motion, suspect a bone injury.

Minor muscle injuries should be treated in the first 24 hours with immobilization, application of cold (insulated ice packs or chemical cold packs; don't apply ice directly to the skin) for 5 to 10 minutes once an hour, and elevation. After 72 hours, application of heat (warm water or a heating pad, *not* ointments) and gentle movement should be started. If a significant injury is suspected (e.g., complete tear of the biceps muscle, or hamstrings or quadriceps muscle group), the injury should be immobilized as for a fracture (see page 86) and the victim transported to a physician.

The best way to prevent a pulled muscle is to be flexible at baseline and to stretch and warm up adequately. This allows local blood flow to increase and minimizes the risk for small tears that can cause spasm, which in turn leads to decreased flexibility.

Sprains, strains, and tendon rupture

Sprains and strains are injuries to ligaments (which attach one bone to another) and tendons (which attach muscle to bone) that are incurred by twisting, direct blunt trauma, or overexertion. Symptoms include pain, swelling and/or deformity, decreased range of motion secondary to pain, and bruising. The treatment is the same as for a suspected fracture. The injured part should be elevated, immobilized (see page 86), and treated with cold applications for the first 24 to 48 hours ("RICE": rest/rehabilitation, ice, compression, and elevation for symptom control). The more important components are elevation and immobilization. If ice is applied, then it should be insulated a bit to keep it directly off the skin and applied for 5 to 10 minutes every hour for the first 4 to 6 hours after the injury. The ice might only provide pain relief, but not promote healing in the long term. After 72 hours, heat can be applied. It's important to prevent reinjury (ankles are notorious) by proper wrapping or application of a splint. Because the injured joint is immediately weakened, it should not be relied on for great exertion.

The most common sprain is of an ankle. It can be challenging to tell the difference between an ankle sprain and a broken ankle. The Ottawa Ankle Rules help physicians determine whether or not to obtain ankle x-rays and can also be useful to help decide to what degree a person is injured. It's more likely than not that a person might have suffered a broken ankle if there is:

- Bony pain over the medial or lateral malleoli
- Bone pain along the distal (toward the ankle) 6 cm of the posterior edge of the tibia ("shinbone"), which is the larger and stronger of the two bones in the leg below the knee (the other being the fibula) and connects the knee with the ankle bones
- Pain at the tip of the medial malleolus
- Bone tenderness along the distal 6 cm of the posterior edge of the fibula
- Pain at the tip of the lateral malleolus
- Inability to bear weight both immediately and for four walking steps

While taping or otherwise immobilizing an ankle sprain might not affect the long-term ankle function, it might allow a person to bear weight and walk sooner and with less assistance. If the injury is minor (no chance of a fracture) and/or if the victim needs to put weight on the ankle to seek help, the ankle may be wrapped snugly with an elastic wrap in a figure-of-eight method (Fig. 217) or taped in a crisscross weave (Fig. 218). Elastoplast bandaging is a good alternative to an elastic wrap.

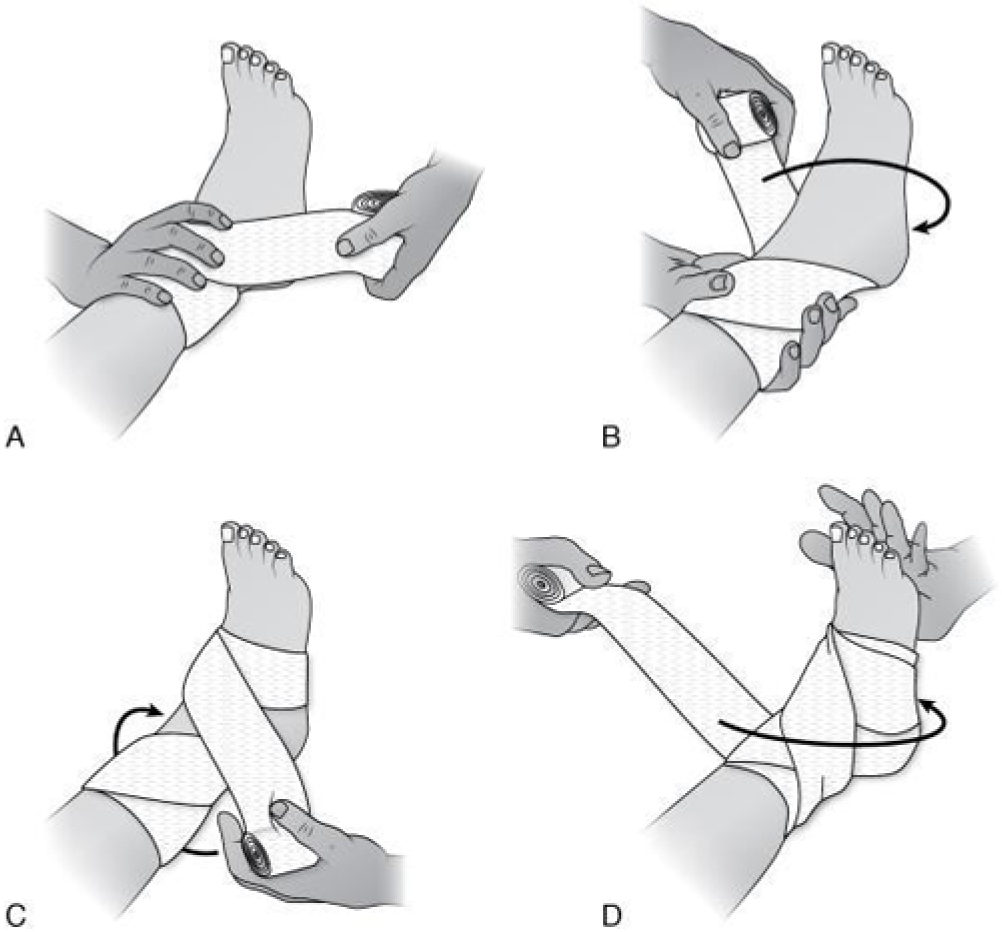


FIG. 217 Wrapping the ankle with a figure-of-eight bandage. **A,** Start above the ankle and **(B)** wrap down under the foot. **C,** Cross back and forth over the top of the foot and **(D)** continue in a figure-of-eight pattern to secure the ankle.

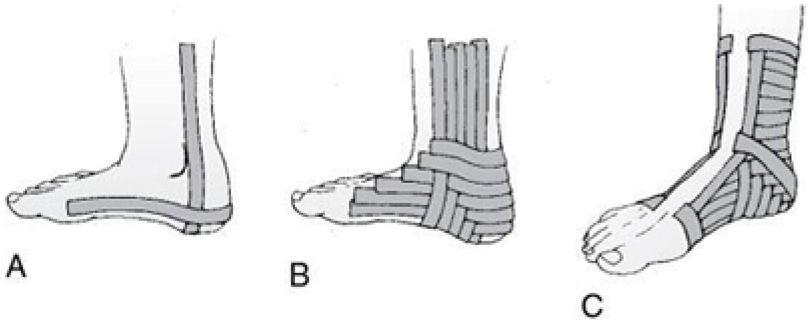


FIG. 218 Taping a sprained ankle. **A,** Strips of adhesive tape are placed perpendicular to each other to **(B)** lock the ankle with a tight weave. **C,** The tape edges are covered to prevent peeling.

Another method to tape an ankle is that favored by athletic trainers (Fig. 219). The taping is focused on keeping the ankle from turning inward (inverting). This method uses anchor strips of tape on the lower leg and foot; then stirrups running from the inside of the ankle, underneath the foot, and then to the outside of the ankle; and a figure-of-eight technique.

- Position the ankle at 90 degrees and apply a ring of tape high above the ankle.
- Apply three strips of tape as stirrups, with a slight fanning to achieve width.
- Apply horizontal strips to cover the malleoli and the Achilles tendon.
- Apply the first figure-of-eight strip of tape. Run the tape across the front of the ankle in the left-to-right direction.
- Continue to wrap the tape under the foot to the opposite side, and then cross back over the top of the foot.
- Finish off the strip by wrapping around the leg and tear or cut the tape in front of the ankle.
- Repeat the figure-of-eight process with a new strip, applying it this time in the right-to-left direction. Alternate directions once or twice more with new strips, then use circumferential tape wraps to fill in the gaps and finish off the entire process to the desired thickness and support.

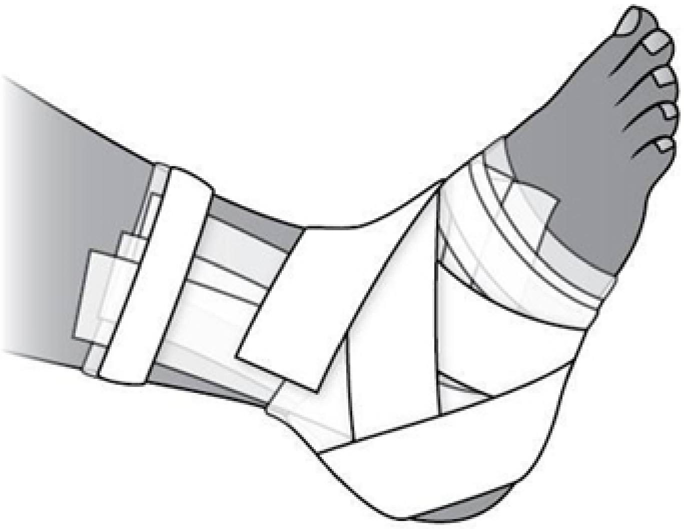


FIG. 219 Ankle taping method favored by athletic trainers.

During the wrapping or taping, have the victim point his toes and ankle upward by passing a slender rope or strap around the ball of the foot and pulling toward the body (Fig. 220). This allows the ankle to be strapped with the foot perpendicular to the leg and the ankle ligaments in the shortened position in which they should heal. A splint can be fashioned from a SAM Splint (see Figs. 323–325) to provide additional support. If the sprain is severe, splint the ankle as for a fracture. An Aircast Air-Stirrup or AirSport ankle brace is excellent for in-shoe support.

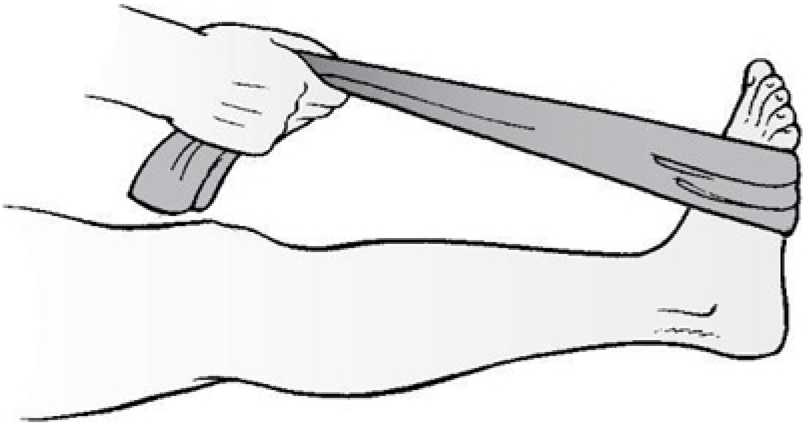


FIG. 220 Pulling up on the toes to attain proper ankle position for wrapping.

The Achilles tendon, which runs from the heel into the lower calf, might become irritated or inflamed due to recurrent impact or repetitive stretching, particularly if the heel is not well padded. An inflamed Achilles tendon that's painful should be protected against further irritation by limiting vigorous exercise and using a heel cup or extra padding underneath the heel to reduce stretch forces on the tendon. Achilles tendon rupture is usually caused by a sudden forceful impact on the foot that is "flexed," with toes pointed down, commonly during a jumping activity. There is pain and a sensation that something has torn or "popped." The victim has difficulty walking and pushing down with the forefoot. A simple test that can detect a complete Achilles tendon rupture is to have the victim lie face down with the leg bent at the knee. Squeeze their calf and see if the foot moves in such a way that the toes point downward. If there is no motion (in comparison to the uninjured side), the tendon might be ruptured. For treatment, splint the foot and ankle with the toes pointed slightly downward, and try to eliminate weight bearing. If they are available, insert heel lifts in both shoes. Achilles' tendon rupture usually causes the victim to be unable to walk, so be prepared to provide assistance.

Other tendons that might rupture include the biceps tendon (causing a bulging biceps muscle belly known as the "Popeye" sign or the quadriceps (large muscle group in the front of the thigh) tendon, which cause pain, visible defects in the muscle and decreased function. Treat either with support, intermittent application of cold for pain relief, and evaluation by an orthopedic doctor upon return to civilization.

Knee sprain is discussed on page 124.

Muscle cramps

Muscle cramps are commonly attributed to overuse, with or without overheating. The muscles become firm to quite hard, with spasm and pain. Treatment is rest, massage, rubbing the affected muscle with ice packs, gentle stretching, and proper hydration with water and electrolytes. Because overzealous water ingestion can lead to hyponatremia (see page 342), this should be avoided.

Arthritis

Arthritis is irritation and inflammation of a joint that can be caused by overuse, infection, or various diseases (such as gout, caused by deposition of uric acid [monosodium urate] crystals). Osteoarthritis is a degenerative disease that afflicts the entire joint, and is most common in the knee, hand, and hip. Rheumatoid arthritis is a chronic inflammatory joint disease with an autoimmune component. Symptoms of arthritis include pain in the joint with motion, swelling (fluid collection), redness, and warmth. If there is an infection within the joint, the condition can rapidly become serious. Generally, people with such infections have high fever, shaking chills, weakness, a recent infection elsewhere in the body, or recent direct injury (often penetrating through the skin) to the joint. Differentiating between an arthritic and an infected joint is often impossible until a physician inserts a needle to see if bacteria-laden fluid or pus is present within the joint, and to obtain fluid for a culture. If infection is a possibility, the victim immediately should be started on dicloxacillin, erythromycin, or cephalexin.

If there is little chance of infection and you know the joint problem is due to overuse, have the victim take aspirin or an NSAID. A topical NSAID, such as diclofenac sodium topical solution, might be helpful. Rest the affected joint, keep it elevated if it is swollen, and adjust goals for the trip accordingly. If the victim is known to have gout and experiences an acute flare, they can be treated with an NSAID, with colchicine 1.2 mg followed by 0.6 mg in 1 hour, or with prednisone 40 to 60 mg by mouth per day for 3 days, with a tapering dose over the ensuing 7-day period.

Glucosamine and chondroitin are dietary supplements taken by some persons who suffer arthritis, particularly osteoarthritis, or overuse syndromes. These are natural substances reputed to repair and maintain cartilage by suppressing inflammation and stimulating cartilage growth, strength, and resilience. The evidence for benefits is more on the “not effective” than “effective” side, so that most testimonials are anecdotal. These supplements are generally considered to be safe, but can carry side effects of headache, drowsiness, abdominal pain, constipation, diarrhea, heartburn, nausea, skin rash, insulin resistance, and (rarely) allergic reaction.

Because obesity, old age and overuse contribute to osteoarthritis, it is prudent to maintain a proper body weight, use walking aids and show good judgment about exercise when arthritis flares. Orthotics and knee braces might or might not be helpful.

Bursitis

Bursitis is irritation and inflammation of the lubricating sac (bursa) that allows muscles to move freely around a joint. Common areas of irritation include the shoulder (irritated by arm swinging), the sac in front of the kneecap (irritated by prolonged kneeling), on the outside of the hip (irritated by walking, hiking, or falling), and behind the elbow (irritated by a fall) (Fig. 221). In the field, evaluation and treatment are the same as for arthritis.

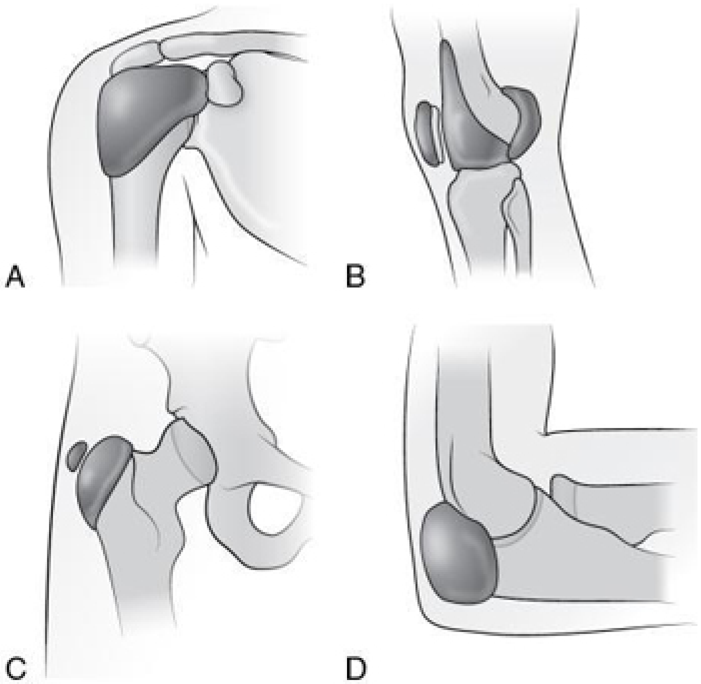


FIG. 221 Bursitis affects the lubricating sacs (bursae) near the **(A)** shoulder, **(B)** knee, **(C)** hip, and **(D)** elbow.

Venous thrombosis and thrombophlebitis

Thrombophlebitis is inflammation in a vein associated with the development of a blood clot (known as venous thrombosis: “DVT” means deep venous thrombosis). This occurs in conditions of injury to the veins (cuts, bruises) or after periods of prolonged rest in a single position (sitting on a plane, cramped in a cave). Other factors include genetic predisposition, pregnancy, tobacco use, cancer, and varicose veins. A blood clot irritates the lining of the vein and causes local redness or purplish discoloration, swelling, warmth, and pain. If the clot enlarges, an entire limb length can become affected. These clots are most common in the lower leg, so the calf muscle might be tender to compression or there might be pain in the calf when the foot is flexed upward (toes toward the head). If the clot is in a deep vein, it can break off and travel to the lungs, where it causes a serious condition known as pulmonary embolism (see page 53).

It’s easy to confuse the presentation of thrombophlebitis with that of an infection. If you suspect the former, have the victim elevate the limb and apply hot packs or soaks for 60 minutes every 3 hours. Seek immediate medical attention. If you’re more than 24 hours from help and not certain whether you are treating infection or inflammation, administer an antibiotic (dicloxacillin, erythromycin, or cephalexin).

To avoid venous thrombosis, avoid prolonged periods of inactivity; get up and walk around once an hour when traveling on a plane, bus, or train; remain fit, active, and well hydrated; consider compression sock/stocking/support hose if you have varicose veins or a history of blood clot formation in your legs or pelvis; and don't use tobacco products.

Back pain

Back pain, particularly low back pain, is a common medical complaint. It might be caused by an anatomic abnormality (e.g., scoliosis), or acute or chronic injury of muscle, bone, intervertebral disk, or other anatomic structure. It might be indicative of a kidney infection (see page 153), aortic dilation/rupture (see page 145), cancer, or infection.

The most common back injury in an outdoor setting is muscle strain. Symptoms include muscle pain and spasm adjacent to the vertebrae. If these occur in the lumbar (lower back) region, treatment consists of maximum rest while lying supine on a firm supporting surface. The knees can be drawn up to straddle a pillow or rolled blanket. All possible heavy lifting and forward bending should be discontinued. The victim should take aspirin or an NSAID to control pain and inflammation, and additional pain medicine as necessary (noting that combining pain medicines may not be effective and increase adverse side effects). Gentle massage and alternating applications of ice packs and heat are sometimes soothing. Corsets and lower back braces aren't particularly helpful. For severe muscle spasm, a physician can prescribe a skeletal muscle relaxant, such as metaxalone (Skelaxin) 800 mg by mouth three to four times per day, or baclofen 5 to 10 mg three times a day, but this might not be any more effective than an NSAID alone. These medications are for short term use only.

After the pain is gone, which might take a few days to a week or more, consider beginning stretching exercises, particularly for the hamstrings, and strengthening the abdominal muscles. These activities might help reduce back problems in the future. Other useful exercises include lying flat while doing ankle pump repetitions, single-leg (alternating) knee-to-chest raises (while relaxing the back and neck), and partial sit-ups. Under the guidance of a physical therapist, you might be instructed to do toe raises and back-against-the-wall partial squats, as well as back arches ("cat/cow yoga poses") or prone press-ups to a forearm rest position.

For any treatment regimen intended to improve back pain, if it worsens the back pain, then stop. While you're on the mend, avoid forward-bending toe-touches, straight-leg or full sit-ups, leg lifts ("squats"), or any exercise that involves heavy lifting and straining.

If one of the cushioning intervertebral (between the vertebrae) disks has been injured (Fig. 222), additional symptoms might be noted. This can be from disk bulging, herniating and protruding or extruding, or having a small fragment become sequestered within the spinal canal. These include low back pain, numbness and/or tingling of parts of the leg (indicating impingement of the disk on a nerve root arising from the spinal cord), shooting pains through the buttocks and anterior/lateral or posterior leg (indicating irritation of the sciatic nerve [sciatica]), leg weakness, foot drop, constipation, or difficulty with urination. The acute treatment is the same as for muscular back strain. If there is weakness or altered sensation in a leg or foot, bowel or bladder dysfunction, or numbness in the perineum and/or buttocks, seek immediate medical attention.

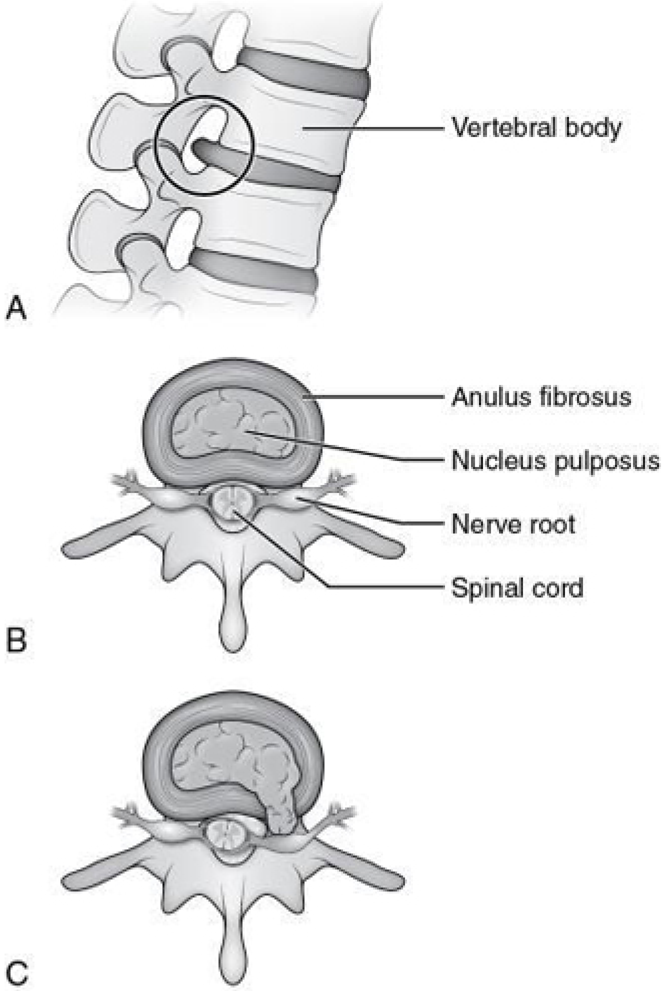


FIG. 222 Herniated (slipped) disk. **A,** Posterior protrusion of the disk into the spinal (cord) canal. **B,** Cross section of the normal disk. **C,** Protruding disk impinges on the nerve root.

Lumbar spinal stenosis is a condition in which there is narrowing of the spinal canal in such a fashion that the spinal cord or nerve roots originating from the spinal cord and exiting the spinal canal are compressed. The most common symptom is discomfort that radiates from the back into the buttocks, thigh(s), and lower leg(s), made worse by walking, prolonged standing, and arching (extending) the back, and lessened by rest and bending (flexing) forward. Sitting usually provides relief, whereas walking and hiking worsen the pain. Exercises in which the person leans forward, such as cycling, might be better tolerated. Treatment is with an NSAID. More severe cases require injection of anesthetic into the space immediately outside the spinal cord, or surgery to widen the bony space(s) through which pass the affected nerve root(s).

If a person with back pain develops a fever, then infection should be suspected. This might involve a bone, soft tissue (such as an abscess adjacent to the spinal cord), or kidney. Fever with severe or unrelenting back pain is a reason to seek medical attention.

Backpacks are the quintessential symbol of trekking and mountaineering. A well-fitted, sturdy and durable backpack gives the user the freedom of the hills. Along with hiking boots, a backpack is essential for any sort of expedition in which someone is responsible for carrying his or her supplies. What is less well known is that a poorly fitted backpack can contribute to significant back pain, inefficient travel, or even the ruin of a trip. A backpack that weighs on its carrier can cause muscle spasm, sore neck and shoulders, numbness and tingling in the hands and fingers, sore hips, and irritated skin.

Features in a backpack that will allow it to fit properly, distribute weight evenly and across the correct body parts, and withstand extremes of environment are, in no particular order:

- Proper size. It fits the torso closely, in particular the upper part of the body. When the padded waist strap is tightened, the weight of the pack should be distributed evenly across the hips. The padding should fit snugly over the tops of the hip bones.
- The shoulder straps should be wide and well padded, to avoid compressing the front of the shoulders and armpits. They should be easily loosened and tightened. There should be a connecting strap that can be opened, closed, and adjusted traversing the front of the chest attached to and between the shoulder straps. One should be able to fit at least two fingers underneath the tightened shoulder straps.
- Adjustable straps to fine-tune the tightness of the waist strap and the proximity of the pack to the back of the wearer are desirable.
- Multiple compartments allow rational storage, ease of finding carried items, and more even weight distribution than possible with a single-compartment pack. Side pockets, top pockets, tie-down loops, an adjustable top cover, and other features to partition objects into discrete

locations while protecting them from the elements are all good to have. Store the heaviest items in the high center of the pack.
- Water bottle pockets should be easily accessible while wearing the pack to allow for easy hydration.
- The pack should be designed so that it can be donned from a sitting or standing position, using the legs for stabilization. If it can be put on only by hoisting it and slinging it across the back, muscle strain is inevitable.
- For a child-carrier pack, be certain that it is designed so that an active child can't easily self-extricate from the pack and wind up dangling or on the ground.

Outdoor enthusiasts have a unique set of activities that might cause back pain. Advice for them to avoid this condition includes:

- Learn how to lift heavy objects using the deep knee bend, positioning the weight properly on the torso, minimizing rotation or twisting when lifting, and lifting with a controlled, measured pace.
- Be particularly careful with overhead lifts, which require more strength and balance.
- If multiple persons are involved in a lift, perfect communications are important to coordinate movements.
- If a heavy object is falling, don't attempt to catch it or slow its fall.
- Use mechanical hoist systems when feasible.
- If minor back pain is present, avoid any heavy lifting.

Mental health (psychiatric) emergencies

The wilderness experience can be quite stressful, and a member of the party might behave in an unusual fashion. This can be directly related to the events at hand or reflect an underlying mental health disorder. It's imperative that someone recognize warning signs early and evacuate anyone who cannot retain mental stability, to avoid placing the impaired individual and their traveling companions at risk for injury. Don't be afraid to inquire about a past history of psychiatric illness. Florid emotional decompensation can make the scene unsafe, so pay close attention to persons who are capable of harming themselves or others as they warrant formal evaluation by a trained mental health specialist.

When dealing with mental health problems, always consider if they might have an underlying physical component. For instance, the apathetic, confused person might be suffering from hypothermia, or an agitated, hostile person be recovering from an unwitnessed seizure. While dementia (including some or all of loss of memory, impaired thinking and speech, lack of spatial orientation, learning disability, mood swings, and other cognitive impairment) is rarely an emergency, it is increasingly prevalent in our aging population. Sadly, depression often accompanies dementia. Under stressful environmental situations, persons with dementia may worsen or decompensate. Take care to provide appropriate supervision of persons with dementia.

Anxiety

Anxiety is the most common psychiatric symptom and can range from appropriate and adaptive minor doubts about success to a full-blown panic reaction. Specific fears, such as an aversion to heights, are called "phobias." Minor anxiety is expressed as general apprehension about a situation that is perceived in some way to be dangerous. The excessive worrier might become timid and withdrawn, and might lose their enthusiasm for participation. Their anxiety might be clothed in criticism of plans or refusal to cooperate. Some people suffer from general, free-floating anxiety. It's important that every member of the expedition voice fears and objections at the outset, so as not to be caught in a panic when crossing treacherous terrain or performing rescues.

The treatment is reassurance and support. Frequently, practice sessions that build up to a completed effort will relieve anxiety and improve the performance of the group. In no case should anyone be made to feel ashamed of their fears. Rather, the leader should seek to help the victim conquer them.

Approach what problems you can directly. Most people do much better if fear is identified and managed than if it is never confronted.

In certain circumstances, in which anxiety must be treated to allow extrication, rescue, or even survival, judicious use of an antianxiety drug, such as lorazepam (Ativan) 0.2 to 2 mg, alprazolam (Xanax) 0.5 mg, or diazepam (Valium) 2 to 5 mg, might be useful. Persons who suffer chronically from anxiety might already be taking one of these medications. If they run out of medication or stop taking it for another reason, they can enter a withdrawal (from their physiological addiction) state. They will be agitated, perhaps paranoid, unable to sleep, have diffuse muscle aching, be shaky, complain of rapid heart rate, and perhaps suffer a seizure. They can become very seriously ill from benzodiazepine (type of drug) withdrawal and need to be promptly properly medicated.

Panic

Panic is anxiety in the extreme. Signs and symptoms can include heart palpitations, sensation of pounding heart, rapid heart rate, sweating, trembling or shaking, shortness of breath or a sensation of "smothering," choking sensation, chest discomfort, nausea, dizziness, fainting, a sensation of loss of reality, and fear of dying. The victim loses all judgment and becomes consumed with efforts at escape and self-preservation. Panic renders the victim unable to make reasonable decisions and immediately places them and all around them at risk for injury. The rescuer might need to assume a strong authoritative posture with the panic victim, assuring them in no uncertain terms that the situation is under control and the panic behavior is detrimental. Depending on the situation, this can be done with verbal explanations, convincing arguments, or demonstrations of safety. As for anxiety, antianxiety drugs such as lorazepam might be helpful. If the victim places other individuals at immediate risk for injury, they should be subdued, with force if necessary.

Persons who use cocaine, marijuana, phencyclidine (PCP, angel dust), methamphetamine (speed), or hallucinogens are prone to panic reactions under conditions of stress. Certain drugs, such as PCP and methamphetamine, are associated with violent behavior. If a person appears to be under the influence of drugs, do your best to keep them from hurting themself or anyone else, but be careful not to become injured yourself in the process.

One manifestation of anxiety that verges on panic is the hyperventilation syndrome, in which the victim overcome by their fears, begins to breathe at a rate of 40 to 100 times per minute. This causes the level of carbon dioxide in their blood to fall precipitously and to render the blood alkaline (from its normal neutral state). The symptoms are dizziness; fainting spells; numbness and tingling in the hands, feet, and around the mouth; muscle spasm in the hands and wrists; and, occasionally, seizures. If you're certain that the victim is hyperventilating because of anxiety (that is, there is no reason to suspect a collapsed lung [see page 47], pneumonia [see page 55], asthma [see page 52], diabetic ketoacidosis [see page 163], or other medical problem), encourage slow regular breathing. The old-fashioned therapy used to be to place a paper bag or similar device over the mouth and nose for about 5 minutes and have the victim breathe in and out of this bag to rebreathe their own expired carbon dioxide, theoretically allowing more rapid normalization of the level in the bloodstream and correction of symptoms. However, since insufficient oxygen is available to the victim while rebreathing from the bag, this technique might be dangerous for persons with heart or lung disease. If there is a clean length of wide tubing (e.g., garden hose) of approximately 12 to 18 inches, the victim can breathe through the tubing to increase the amount of retained carbon dioxide while still having access to adequate oxygen, until symptoms abate. However, since this tubing is not likely to be present, the most important intervention will probably be to attempt to calm the victim in order to lessen the breathing rate. After the episode, make an attempt to identify the cause of the anxiety.

Depression

Depression that occurs in the outdoor setting is most often pre-existing, but it can also occur in response to situations that are perceived as hopeless. Some victims who are injured, lose their way, or are weakened by starvation and exposure might lose the will to continue. They become listless, fatigued out of proportion to their physical condition, uninterested, inattentive, without appetite, sleepy, and tearful. Clearly, the rescuer must encourage all party members to maintain their survival instincts, continue to help others, and help themselves. In a cold environment, remember that hypothermia (see page 321) is a significant cause of apathy and should be corrected if possible. An individual with chronic depression might go on a vacation trip with the enthusiastic expectation that their psychiatric disease will be alleviated or that their most recent depression has lifted. The sudden realization that such expectations are not fulfilled might put that person at risk for severe mood depression. Persons who suffer depression might appear sad and hopeless, show little interest or lack of pleasure, have low self-esteem (e.g., feel like a failure), be physically tired, suffer sleep disturbance, have a poor appetite, and not be able to concentrate. At the extreme, someone suffering from depression might have thoughts about harming themselves or attempt to do so. Don't be afraid to inquire about a past history of psychiatric illness. If depression becomes disabling, bring the patient to medical attention.

Manic depressive disorder (sometimes called "bipolar") denotes a situation of mood swings from mania (high energy, poor judgment, impulsive behavior, pressured speech, up to and including psychosis—see below) to depression (low mood) for no apparent reason. You need to treat each extreme as it presents and be certain that if the person has prescribed medication, they are taking it properly.

Delirium

Delirium is a condition in which the patient is not aware of surroundings and circumstances. It is not a memory disorder, and might appear in intervals, between which the patient behaves normally. When it occurs, the patient can be confused, poorly attentive, have inappropriate or incomprehensible speech, and/or not understand speech. It can have physiological causes (e.g., infection, low oxygen, medication effect, environmental exposure, substance abuse) or be in advance of an emotional breakdown. While dementia might appear similar, it is different because it is usually gradual in onset and the psychomotor changes seen with delirium do not occur. The goal is to identify a treatable cause and attempt to remedy the situation. Nonmedication therapies include verbal reassurances and orientation to reality, conveying a safe environment, and protecting the patient from themself or harming others.

Psychosis

Psychosis (which includes schizophrenia) is a change in behavior in which the victim loses touch with normal reality and might suffer from any combination of auditory or visual hallucinations; paranoid (extremely fearful) behavior; delusions; extreme agitation (including combative behavior) or, conversely, lack of emotion or even profound lack of activity (including catatonia); disorganized thoughts and speech; impaired memory and reasoning; and inability to care for self (inattention to the activities of daily living, such as eating, bathing, sleeping, etc.). Psychosis is a symptom of something physical or emotional, so can be due to a medical problem, drug effect, or psychiatric disorder. If psychosis represents a psychiatric disorder, it might first present during teenage or young adult years. Elderly persons with psychosis might have suffered a stroke, be under the influence of or withdrawing from a medication(s), have dementia, or have a central nervous system infection.

A person with psychosis should be evacuated promptly, while protecting the person from harming himself or others. Always consider low blood sugar (see page 162), meningitis (see page 196), hyperthermia (see page 337), drug effect (e.g., methamphetamine), and hypothermia (see page 321) in any person with altered mental status. It's possible that a person with psychosis-driven anxiety might benefit a bit from a dose of diazepam (Valium), but this also might not be effective.

Reaction to an injury or illness (acute stress disorder)

People's reactions to stress differ. They might become irrational, angry, apathetic, confused, or withdrawn following an accident or harsh environmental exposure. The most common reaction, given the presence of a strong leader, is to become dependent. It's crucial for the rescuer to bolster the victim's self-confidence and self-esteem at every opportunity, for it might take extraordinary physical and mental effort to survive a catastrophe in the wilderness.

Try to individualize your approach to each person. To best understand the changing needs of victims and families, try to maintain regular dialog intended solely for the purpose of psychological support. Stay with the victim as much as possible. Use frequent touch and reassurances to relay your sense of concern and offer comfort. As best as possible, involve the victim in their treatment and rescue, so that their thoughts are attuned to survival rather than to fear or grief.

When you are under stress, do your best to be supportive to others with less emotional control. Anger is rarely successful and commonly worsens an already difficult situation.

Equally important, the rescuer must constantly be alert for other medical problems that masquerade as psychological disorders. The uninterested victim might be hypothermic, the belligerent climber hyperthermic, the intoxicated hiker hypoglycemic, or the irritable child stricken with acute mountain sickness.

Posttraumatic stress disorder

Posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD) is a condition of anxiety in which the victim who has been exposed to an extreme stress or event, to which they might have reacted with fear and helplessness, reacts in a manner that includes involuntarily reliving the event, avoiding reminders of the event, and/or showing a condition of hyperarousal. There is often a trigger—direct or indirect exposure to a traumatic event. Reliving the event can include nightmares or flashbacks. Symptoms of avoidance include eliminating any locations, persons, or situations that serve as reminders or showing loss of memory for the event. Hyperarousal means difficulty sleeping, being irritable or short-tempered, having difficulty concentrating, or being exceptionally fearful. Furthermore, a person suffering from PTSD might be having difficulty with activities of daily living, be apathetic, and become fatalistic.

This condition is different from the less complicated responses of fear, grief, anxiety, panic, and even depression. In a wilderness setting, it's more likely to follow a natural disaster with many casualties than one in which there were a small number of victims. Personal pain and violence contribute to the propensity for PTSD, as perhaps do extreme environmental exposures.

Treatment includes habituation that allows confrontation with and understanding of fears (prolonged exposure therapy), creating an environment of education and support, and stress reduction, including the techniques of prolonged exposure and cognitive therapy. In some situations, antidepressant and antianxiety medications have been recommended after thorough evaluation by a mental health professional.

Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder

Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) denotes a condition where someone has difficulty concentrating and learning, is sometimes impulsive or disruptive, and is hyperactive. This is usually noted in childhood but might persist well into adulthood. The wilderness consideration is the ADHD patient who overestimates their abilities to successfully accomplish a multitude of tasks and thus puts themself and others at risk. Therefore, critical medical and survival decisions should generally not be assigned to someone with uncontrolled ADHD.

PART FOUR

Disorders Related to Specific Environments

OUTLINE

Injuries and illnesses due to cold
Injuries and illnesses due to heat
Wildland fires
High altitude–related problems
Snakebite
Insect and arthropod bites

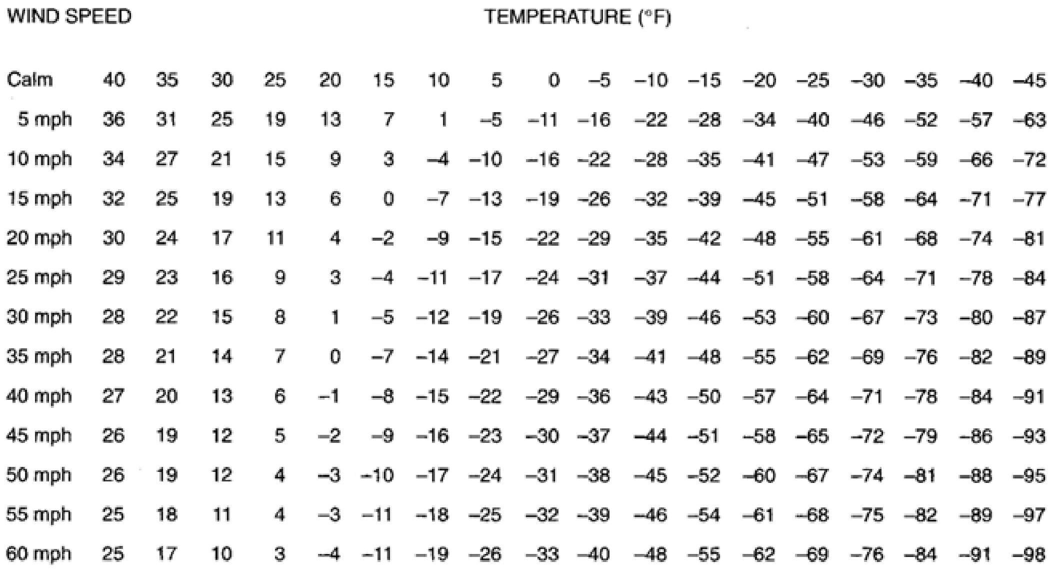
Lightning strike, tornado (cyclone), hurricane (typhoon), flood, earthquake, tidal wave (tsunami), landslide (mudslide), volcano, and snow avalanche
Hazardous aquatic life and aquatic infections
Underwater diving accidents
Drowning
Animal attacks
Wild plant and mushroom poisoning

Injuries and illnesses due to cold

Hypothermia (lowered body temperature)

The body generates heat through metabolic processes that can be maximized with involuntary shivering to roughly five times the basal level (up to 10 times with maximum exercise). However, shivering is abolished after a few hours of exposure, because of exhaustion and depletion of muscle energy supplies. When a victim loses the ability to shiver, the cooling process becomes quite rapid. Skin, surface fat, and superficial muscle layers then act as an insulating "shell" for the core of vital organs (heart, lungs, liver, kidneys, and so on). People are tropical beings—that is, when they are naked and at rest, the environmental temperature at which body heat is neither gained nor lost is 82°F (28°C). Normal oral temperature is 98.6°F (37°C). Accidental hypothermia occurs when there is an unintentional decrease of 3.6°F (2°C) or more from the normal core body temperature.

Heat is lost from the body to the environment by direct contact (conduction), air movement (convection), infrared energy emission (radiation), conversion of liquid sweat to a gas (evaporation), and exhalation of heated air from the lungs (respiration). It's important to note that the rate of heat loss via conduction is increased 5-fold in wet clothes and at least 25-fold in cold-water immersion. Windchill (Fig. 223) refers to the increase in the rate of heat loss (convection) that would occur when a victim is exposed to moving air. This chill can be compounded further if the victim is wet (conduction, convection, and evaporation).



WIND SPEED	TEMPERATURE (°F)																	
Calm	40	35	30	25	20	15	10	5	0	–5	–10	–15	–20	–25	–30	–35	–40	–45
5 mph	36	31	25	19	13	7	1	–5	–11	–16	–22	–28	–34	–40	–46	–52	–57	–63
10 mph	34	27	21	15	9	3	–4	–10	–16	–22	–28	–35	–41	–47	–53	–59	–66	–72
15 mph	32	25	19	13	6	0	–7	–13	–19	–26	–32	–39	–45	–51	–58	–64	–71	–77
20 mph	30	24	17	11	4	–2	–9	–15	–22	–29	–35	–42	–48	–55	–61	–68	–74	–81
25 mph	29	23	16	9	3	–4	–11	–17	–24	–31	–37	–44	–51	–58	–64	–71	–78	–84
30 mph	28	22	15	8	1	–5	–12	–19	–26	–33	–39	–46	–53	–60	–67	–73	–80	–87
35 mph	28	21	14	7	0	–7	–14	–21	–27	–34	–41	–48	–55	–62	–69	–76	–82	–89
40 mph	27	20	13	6	–1	–8	–15	–22	–29	–36	–43	–50	–57	–64	–71	–78	–84	–91
45 mph	26	19	12	5	–2	–9	–16	–23	–30	–37	–44	–51	–58	–65	–72	–79	–86	–93
50 mph	26	19	12	4	–3	–10	–17	–24	–31	–38	–45	–52	–60	–67	–74	–81	–88	–95
55 mph	25	18	11	4	–3	–11	–18	–25	–32	–39	–46	–54	–61	–68	–75	–82	–89	–97
60 mph	25	17	10	3	–4	–11	–19	–26	–33	–40	–48	–55	–62	–69	–76	–84	–91	–98

FIG. 223 Windchill determination. To determine windchill, find the ambient air temperature on the top line, then read down the column to the line that corresponds with the current wind speed. Example: When the air temperature is 10°F and the wind speed is 20 mph, the rate of heat loss is equivalent to –9°F under calm conditions. To convert to metric or Celsius, use the following: 1 mile = 1.61 kilometers; C = 5/9 (F – 32).

At a core body temperature of 96.8°F (36°C), metabolic rate, blood pressure, and preshivering muscle tone increase. At 95°F (35°C), the body reaches its maximum effectiveness at generating heat by shivering.

The progression of hypothermia leads to predictable physiologic responses, which roughly correspond to different body temperatures. Although not invariable, the signs and symptoms are as follows:

91.4°F to *98.6°F (33°C* to *37°C). Mild hypothermia.* Sensation of cold; shivering; increased heart rate; urge to urinate; slight incoordination in hand movements; hunger; nausea; fatigue; dizziness; difficulty speaking; increased respiratory rate; increased reflexes (leg jerk when the knee is tapped); red face; muscular incoordination, stumbling gait, amnesia, maladaptive behavior, poor judgment; rapid heart rate converting to slow heart rate, apathy.

84.2°F to *91.4°F (29°C* to *33°C). Moderate hypothermia.* Stupor progressing to unconsciousness; decreased or absent shivering; weakness; apathy, drowsiness, and/or confusion; poor judgment; slurred speech; inability to walk or follow commands; paradoxical undressing (inappropriate behavior); complaints of loss of vision; amnesia; rapid heart rate converting to slow heart rate; low blood pressure; rapid breathing rate converting to shallow breathing; possibly nonreactive (to light) or dilated pupils; abnormal heart rhythms; diminished breathing; decreased neurological reflexes.

71.6°F to *84.2°F (22°C* to *29°C). Severe hypothermia.* Minimal breathing; coma; decreased respiratory rate; decreased neurologic reflexes progressing to no reflexes; no voluntary motion or response to pain; very slow heart rate; low blood pressure; fluid in the lungs; increased bleeding tendency; maximum risk for ventricular fibrillation. The victim no longer can control their body temperature and rapidly cools to the surrounding environmental temperature.

*Below 71.6°F (22°*C*). Profound hypothermia.* Rigid muscles; barely detectable or absent blood pressure, heart rate, and respirations; dilated pupils; no response to pain; risk for ventricular fibrillation; heart stoppage; little or no brain activity; appearance of death.

The first principle of therapy is to suspect hypothermia. Any person who is found in a cold environment should be suspected of suffering from hypothermia. The definition of "cold environment" is variable. Someone who is wet, improperly dressed, and intoxicated with alcohol can become hypothermic in 70°F (21°C) weather. Don't use yourself as an indicator of warmth—you might be perfectly comfortable while your companion is lapsing into hypothermia.

Unless the victim is found frozen in a block of ice or has been recently pulled from frigid waters, the most likely clue to a hypothermic state is altered mental status. The winter hiker who gradually loses interest and lags behind the group ("Just leave me behind. I'll catch up."), who dresses inappropriately for the weather or begins to undress, or who begins to stumble and make inappropriate remarks should be immediately evaluated for low body temperature. A hypothermic individual might become anxious, repeat themself, or even become delusional. *Never leave a victim of even mild hypothermia to fend for themself.*

The second principle of therapy is to measure the victim's temperature. This should be done, if possible, with a thermometer calibrated to read below 94°F (34.4°C), which is the cutoff for most standard oral thermometers. Hypothermia thermometers with a range of 75°F to 105°F (23.9°C to 40.6°C) are available. Temperature ideally should be measured rectally, although this is often impractical. Oral and axillary (armpit) temperatures are unreliable in this situation and should be used only to screen for low body temperature. That is, if they are normal, the victim will have at least a normal body temperature, but could be hotter. However, if they are low, they might grossly understate how cold the victim really is and should be followed with a rectal measurement. Digital electronic eardrum (tympanic membrane) or forehead skin scanners used to measure temperature might also yield a false (compared to the core) reading.

Unless the victim has suffered a full cardiopulmonary arrest, the hypothermia itself might not be harmful. Unless tissue is frozen, cold is in many ways protective to the brain and heart. However, if a hypothermic victim is improperly transported or rewarmed, the process might precipitate ventricular fibrillation, in which the heart does not contract, but quivers in such a fashion as to be unable to pump blood. *The burden of rescue is to transport and rewarm the victim in a way that does not precipitate ventricular fibrillation.*

Prevention of hypothermia

1. Carry adequate food. Anticipate the worst possible weather conditions. Dress in layers so that you can adjust clothing for overcooling, overheating, perspiration, and external moisture. Use a foundation layer to wick moisture from the body to outer layers. The first layer (such as CoolMax) should keep the skin cool and dry (to avoid perspiration). Add an insulation layer to provide incremental warmth. For shirts, use wool, fleece, Capilene, or polypropylene. Consider a turtleneck or neck gaiter. For pants, wear wool or pile, with a Velcro, zipper, or button fly. Carry windproof and waterproof outer garments, mittens or gloves (with glove liners), socks, and a hat. Wear a hat to avoid heat loss by radiation from the uncovered head. Boots should be large enough to accommodate a pair of polypropylene socks (“liner socks”) plus at least one pair of heavy wool socks without cramping the toes.
2. Stay dry. Avoid sweating. Adjust and vent layers frequently as needed.
3. Keep hands and feet dry. This is important to avoid frostbite as well. Hand Sense is a cream that can be applied to the hands to keep them dry by reducing perspiration. It was designed as a topical protectant and is not a moisturizer. For the feet, aluminum chlorohydrate–containing antiperspirant sprayed onto the skin can help control sweating. Do this three times a week for the first week of winter, then once a week after that. Avoid leather boots that become soaked with moisture and don’t dry out easily.
4. Don’t exhaust yourself in cold weather.
5. Seek shelter in times of extreme cold and high winds. Don’t sit on cold rocks or metal. Insulate yourself from the ground with a pad, backpack, log, or tree limb. Carry a properly rated (for the cold) sleeping bag

stuffed with PolarGuard, Quallofil, or down. Consider using a bag in which the down has been treated to achieve water repellency. Insulate hands and feet well, even when you are in your sleeping bag, which should be fluffed up before entry. Don't enter a sleeping bag if you're wet without drying off first if possible.

6. Don't become dehydrated. In the cold, dehydration is caused by evaporation from the respiratory tree, increased urination, and inadequate fluid intake. Drink at least 3 to 4 quarts (liters) of fluid daily. During extreme exercise, drink at least 5 to 6 quarts (liters) per day. Ingesting snow is an inefficient way to replace water and may worsen hypothermia. Drink cold water from a stream in preference to eating snow. Don't skip meals. Don't consume alcoholic beverages. They cause an initial sensation of warmth because of dilation of superficial skin blood vessels, but this same effect contributes markedly to heat loss. At night, fill a canteen or water bottle with at least 1 quart (liter) of water (warm if possible), and sleep with it to keep it from freezing. Sleep with medicines (epinephrine, etc.) and batteries that need protection from freezing.
7. Consume adequate calories.

Mild hypothermia

The victim of mild hypothermia is awake, can answer questions intelligently, complains of feeling cold, and might or might not be shivering.

Prevent the victim from becoming any colder. Get them out of the wind and into a shelter. If necessary, build a fire or ignite a stove for added warmth. Gently remove wet items of clothing and replace them with dry garments. This is very important, even if the victim will be very briefly exposed out in the open. If no dry replacements are available, the clothed victim should be covered with a waterproof tarp or poncho to prevent evaporative heat loss. Cover the head, neck, hands, and feet. Insulate the victim above *and below* with blankets, sleeping bags, cloth pads, or other suitable material. If the victim is coherent and can swallow without difficulty, encourage ingestion of warm sweetened fluids. Good choices include warm gelatin (Jell-O), juice, or cocoa because carbohydrates fuel shivering. If only cool or cold liquids are available for drinking, this is fine. Avoid heavily caffeinated beverages. If a dry sleeping bag is available use it. Try to keep the victim in a horizontal position until they is well hydrated. Don't vigorously massage the arms and legs because skin rubbing suppresses shivering, dilates the skin, and does not contribute to rewarming.

Moderate hypothermia

The victim of moderate hypothermia has become apathetic and mildly confused, wishes to be left behind, and is uncooperative. Speech is often slurred, and logic is on the wane. The victim rapidly becomes uncoordinated and clumsy, often stumbling. They have ceased to shiver and shows signs of muscle stiffness. Unless you have a thermometer to measure this victim's temperature, you must assume that they are severely hypothermic or will soon become so.

Follow the directions for mild hypothermia, with the added caution that it's best not to allow this victim to walk about until they are fully alert; in addition, don't give them fluids to drink until they become wide awake and understands what is going on. When the victim can purposefully and easily drink fluids, these should be sweetened with sugar to avoid the complication of low blood sugar (hypoglycemia). Some experts advise placing heated water bottles or padded heat packs in the armpits and groin areas and around the neck to assist with rewarming. Be very careful to not burn the victim's skin. Wrap heated water bottles with insulation (e.g., fleece) to prevent burns.

Severe and profound hypothermia

Depending on the body temperature, a victim who appears to be asleep might be in a complete coma. Below 86°F (30°C), humans become poikilothermic, like a snake, and take on the temperature of the environment.

Examine the victim carefully and gently for signs of life. Listen closely near the nose and mouth and examine chest movement for spontaneous breathing. If the victim's breathing is very shallow, you might not see a vapor trail. Feel for at least 1 minute at the groin (femoral artery) and neck (carotid artery) for a weak and/or slow pulse (see page 28).

If the victim shows any signs of life (movement, pulse, respirations), don't initiate the chest compressions of cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR). If the victim is breathing, even at a subnormal rate, their heart is beating. Because hypothermia is protective, the victim does not require a "normal" heart rate, respiratory rate, and blood pressure. Pumping on the chest unnecessarily is "rough handling," and might induce ventricular fibrillation. Administer supplemental oxygen (see page 431) by face mask if it is available.

If the victim is breathing at a rate of less than 6 to 7 breaths per minute, you should begin mouth-to-mouth breathing (see page 26) to achieve an overall rate of 12 to 13 breaths per minute.

If help is on the way (within 2 hours) and there are no signs of life whatsoever, or if you're in doubt (about whether the victim is hypothermic, for instance), you should begin standard CPR (see page 30). If possible, continue CPR until the victim reaches the hospital. Rescue breathing should take priority over chest compressions, particularly in the victim of cold-water immersion. There have been documented cases of "miraculous" recoveries from complete cardiopulmonary arrest associated with environmental hypothermia after prolonged resuscitation, up to nearly 9 hours, presumably because of the protective effect of the cold. Remember, "no one is dead until they are warm and dead." In the absence of an obvious fatal injury (such as decapitation), resuscitation and transport to a hospital should be undertaken. Fixed and dilated pupils, failure to identify a pulse or breathing, skin mottling, and stiff muscles all might be mistaken for the condition of death in the setting of hypothermia. A hospital that can provide sophisticated "extracorporeal" (such as heart-lung bypass, similar to what is used for heart surgery, to facilitated rewarming) life support might salvage a patient who suffers prolonged cardiac arrest with the initial appearance of death.

A victim of severe hypothermia cannot be rewarmed in the field. If a hypothermic victim suffers what you determine to be a cardiac arrest in the wilderness, transport should be the first priority. If enough rescuers are present to allow CPR and simultaneous transport, do both. Continue CPR until the patient is brought to a hospital, the rescuers are fatigued, or the rescuers are endangered.

If you are the only person present, don't bother with CPR, because you will not be able to resuscitate the victim until they are rewarmed. Your only hope is that the victim is in a cold-protected state ("metabolic icebox") and that you can extricate them (as gently as possible) to sophisticated medical attention.

In any case of severe hypothermia, transport should be undertaken as soon as possible. Take care to cover the victim with dry blankets and to handle them as gently as possible.

Rewarming and preparing a hypothermic victim for transport

The following general rules of therapy apply to all cases:

1. Handle all victims gently. Rough handling can cause the heart to fibrillate (cause a cardiac arrest). Secure the scene and avoid creating additional victims via unstable snow, ice, or rock fall.
2. If necessary, protect the airway (see page 18) and cervical spine (see page 33). Stabilize all other major injuries, such as broken bones. Cover open wounds.
3. Prevent the victim from becoming any colder. Provide shelter. Remove all their wet clothing and replace it with dry clothing. Don't give away all of your clothing, however, or *you* might become hypothermic. Replace wet clothing with sleeping bags, insulated pads, bubble wrap, blankets, or even newspaper. Products from Blizzard (www.blizzardsurvival.com) or GrabberWorld

(www.grabberworld.com) can be used to provide protection from the elements. These include familiar items such as the SPACE Brand Emergency Blanket. If a hypothermia prevention and management kit (containing a ready-heat blanket and heat-reflective shell) is available, use it. An excellent (but much more expensive) product is a hypothermic stabilizer bag. An improvised insulation wrap can be prepared (Fig. 224).

Cover the victim's head and neck. This is very important. Insulate the victim from above *and below* with blankets. Don't change blankets unless necessary to keep the victim dry. Another technique is to use skin-to-skin contact by having a warm human rescuer lie inside a sleeping bag with the victim. But remember that in this situation, no heat is really contributed by the bag itself, these rescuers may be needed for other tasks, the healthy rescuer may become cold, and a sleeping bag will not work as well if unable to be zipped closed. Don't count on a sleeping bag to be adequately prewarmed by a normothermic rescuer's body heat. Another method is to blow warm air from an electric hair dryer into the bag with the victim. Hot water in bottles, *well insulated with clothing to prevent skin burns,* may be placed next to the victim in areas of high heat transfer, such as the neck, chest wall, and groin. Don't apply commercial heat packs, hot-water-filled canteens, or hot rocks directly to the skin; they must be wrapped in blankets or towels to avoid serious burns. A great deal of warmth can be conserved by using a thin liner bag inside a normal sleeping bag.

4. Don't attempt to warm the victim by vigorous exercise, rubbing the arms and legs, or immersing in warm water. This is "rough handling" and can cause the heart to fibrillate if the victim is severely hypothermic. If warm water (no hotter than 104°F [40°C]) is available and can be kept warm, the victim's hands and feet can be immersed.
5. Keep the victim horizontal. Rapid rewarming or restoration of circulation will release cold, acid-laden blood from the limbs back to the core organs, which might cause a profound deterioration of the victim.
6. Seek assistance as soon as possible.

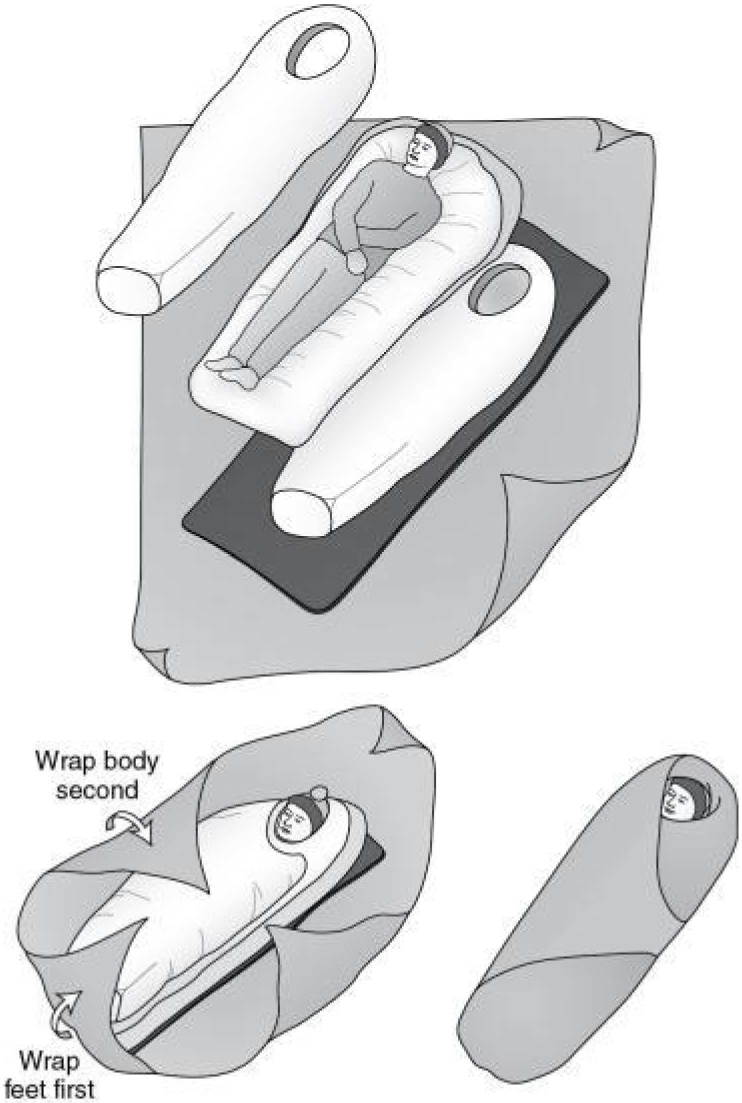


FIG. 224 Improvised insulation wrap.

Cold water immersion

Water has a thermal conductivity approximately 25 times greater than that of air, and a person immersed in cold water rapidly transfers heat from their skin into the water and can suffer from immersion hypothermia. The actual rate of core temperature drop in a human is determined in part by these phenomena and in part by how quickly heat is transferred from the core to the skin, skin thickness, the presence or absence of clothing, the initial core temperature, gender, fitness, water temperature, drug effects, nutritional status, and behavior in the water.

A sudden plunge into cold water causes the victim to hyperventilate (see page 316), which might lead to confusion, muscle spasm, aspiration of water, and loss of consciousness. Cold water rapidly cools muscles, and the victim loses their ability to swim or tread water. Muscles and nerves might become ineffective within 10 minutes. Over the ensuing hour, shivering occurs and then ceases. Anyone pulled from cold water should be presumed to be hypothermic.

If a victim is pulled from icy waters and appears to be clinically dead (fixed dilated pupils, no respirations, no detectable pulse), perform CPR until a qualified medical person is available to intervene or you become exhausted. Because of the physiology of cold-water immersion, the victim might be sufficiently protected to survive the event.

What to do if you fall through the ice

In terms of survival, the “1-10-1 Principle” states that when a person is plunged into very cold water (32°F or 0°C), they have 1 minute to control breathing (e.g., to stop hyperventilating from the “gasp reflex”), 10 minutes of purposeful movement before the muscles are numb and not responsive, 1 hour before hypothermia leads to unconsciousness, and 2 hours until profound hypothermia causes death.

1. When a person falls into extremely cold water, they begin to gasp and hyperventilate. Control your breathing. Calm down and slow your breathing rate, so that you are not hyperventilating. This generally takes 30 seconds to 2 minutes.
2. Keep clothing on in the water—it contributes to insulation and helps with flotation.
3. Keep your hands and arms on top of the ice and kick your feet vigorously, to bring your body to a horizontal position and propel you up onto the ice. Otherwise, keep swimming at a minimum. If you are able to, slide your body out of the water onto the ice, but don’t stand up. Roll or slide your body away from the opening onto thicker ice, where you may then be able to stand. Try to leave in the direction from which you first approached, as this ice has already proved that it can withstand your weight.
4. If you cannot exit the water, try to hold your arms on top of the ice, so that they freeze to the ice, which will prevent you from submerging under the surface of the water. This might give you an extra hour of survival time.

How to assist someone who has fallen through the ice

If someone has fallen through the ice, it is an urgent and dangerous situation. Although it’s important to rescue the victim, it is equally important to not create additional victims.

1. Scene safety. Recognize that ice conditions are unsafe. No one else should approach the area.
2. Resist the urge to rush up to help the victim, so that you don't also fall through the ice. Encourage the victim to remain calm and not panic. Direct the victim to an area of strong ice and to attempt a self-rescue, as described above.
3. If self-rescue is not accomplished, you can throw a buoyant object to the victim to help them remain floating. Before it is thrown, tie a rope or cord to the object, so that if the victim can hold onto it, you might be able to pull the victim. If only a rope is available, tie a large loop at the end, which the victim can grab. Instruct the victim to put the loop over their body and under their arms, put one arm through the loop and bend their elbow around the rope, or just hold on.
4. The victim might be reached with a long tree branch, ladder, or other object that can be pushed along the surface of the ice. It's important for the rescuer to not get too close to the hole in the ice.
5. If the victim cannot be removed from the water using the techniques above, they should be instructed to hold the arms up on the ice for the purpose of letting them freeze to the ice while help is summoned.
6. To prevent falling through ice in the first place, you should look for signage that might indicate its safety or unsafety; check with local authorities if they have any information; travel across ice under observation of someone else; bring safety equipment; wear a life jacket or other flotation device; avoid traveling on ice at night; select "blue ice" over white ice or gray ice; and avoid ice with cracks or slushy areas.

Winter storm preparedness

Outdoor, and indeed urban, travelers should always plan for the unusual and unexpected. Tools include familiarity with weather forecasts, strategizing worst-case scenarios, carrying emergency items, avoiding solo travel, and leaving notice of the projected route and expected time of return. With good planning, deteriorating weather or a forced unexpected night outdoors might then become more of an inconvenience than a life-threatening ordeal. While we usually consider a life-or-death situation related to the elements to be associated with a remote expedition or natural disaster, it can happen during a routine drive along the highway on the way to a ski destination.

Winter storm preparedness is essential for anyone who drives a motor vehicle in snow country. One must always be aware of the possibility of spending an unplanned night out in a vehicle. Causes include bad weather, breakdown, having an accident, running out of fuel, becoming lost, and getting stuck. Winter driving is especially hazardous because of the dangers of driving on snow or ice, losing visibility and orientation, fewer people on the road from whom to receive assistance, and the threats of frostbite and hypothermia. Accepting the possibility of trouble, carrying a vehicle survival kit (see later), and giving some thought to survival strategies will help prevent a night out in your car from deteriorating into a life-threatening experience.

Most travelers dress to arrive at a destination and not to survive a night out; in other words, they dress "to arrive, not to survive." A vehicle survival kit (listed later) should include extra clothing, blankets or sleeping bags, food, water, signaling equipment, and communications equipment (cell phone, citizen's band radio, etc.). It's usually better to stay with the vehicle, which provides significant protection and is more visible to rescuers than a person on foot. Most laypersons are not experienced trail-blazing in wilderness environments, particularly when landmarks are obscured by rain or snow, and darkness and cold weather conspire to alter orientation and judgment.

In cold weather, and especially for long-distance travel, drivers should keep their vehicles in the best possible mechanical condition. Drivers should use winter-grade oil, the proper amount of radiator antifreeze, deicer fluid for the fuel tank, and antifreezing solution in the windshield-cleaning fluid. Windshield wiper blades that are becoming worn should be replaced, and special snow-and-ice–resistant blades used when available. A combination snow brush and ice scraper should be carried. A can of deicer is useful for frozen door locks and wiper blades. Snow tires, preferably studded (illegal in some states), are desirable, but even with special tires and/or four-wheel drive, chains should be carried. All-wheel drive or four-wheel drive is optimal, and front-wheel drive is superior to rear-wheel drive. The battery should be kept charged, the exhaust system free of leaks, and the gas tank at least ¾ full ("drive on the upper half of your tank"). Be sure to carry jumper cables, a strong flashlight with extra batteries, signal devices (e.g., flares), a shovel, drinking water, and nonperishable food.

Despite best efforts, you might become stranded or lost. If that happens, tie a brightly colored piece of cloth (such as a length of surveyor's tape) to the antenna. At night, leave the inside dome light illuminated so that it might be seen by snowplow drivers and rescuers. Headlights use too much current, so use the dome light. If necessary for heat, the standard recommendation has been that the motor and heater can be run for 2 minutes each hour (after checking to see if that exhaust pipe is free of snow). However, a more recent recommendation is that since it takes more gasoline to start a cold engine than a warm one, one should initially turn the heat up all the way and run the car engine until the inside is comfortable. Then, shut off the engine and wait until it becomes uncomfortably cold inside the car (which could be 10 to 30 minutes depending on outside temperature). The engine, however, will still be "warm." Start the engine again and run the heater until the occupants feel warm. Keep repeating this process. While the car is running, charge your cell phone.

Keep the tailpipe free from snowpack. Carbon monoxide poisoning can be a threat, so don’t go to sleep inside the car with the engine running; if the engine is running, keep a downwind window cracked 1 to 2 inches in case there is a carbon monoxide leak into the interior of the vehicle. A reusable carbon monoxide detector is a wise addition to the survival kit. One or two large candles (“fat Christmas candle” size) should be carried to provide heat and light if the gasoline supply runs out, since two lit candles can raise the interior temperature well above freezing. However, resources should be used sparingly because you’re never sure how long you will be stranded.

Foresight enough to include heavy clothing and blankets or sleeping bags in the cold-weather vehicle survival kit is better than relying excessively on external heat generation. Don’t smoke tobacco products or drink alcohol. If you must exit the vehicle in a snowstorm, put on additional windproof clothing and snow goggles, and tie a lifeline to yourself and the door handle before moving away from the vehicle.

You must decide whether to wait for rescue or attempt to walk out under your own power. If rescue is possible, it’s almost always better to remain in a snug shelter and conserve your strength. If you decide to leave, you must effectively mark your trail, to aid rescuers and enable you to return to the site if necessary. Travel should never be attempted in severe or extremely cold weather, or in deep snow without snowshoes or skis. If no chance of rescue exists, prepare as best as possible, wait for good weather, and then travel in the most logical direction.

The best way for a lost or stranded person to aid potential rescuers is to do everything possible to draw attention to their location. Most modern rescues utilize ground parties, helicopters, and fixed-wing aircraft. Besides radios, cell phones, and other electronic equipment, signaling devices are either auditory or visual. Three of anything is a universal distress signal: three whistle blasts, three horn blasts, three fires. The most effective auditory device is a whistle. Blowing a whistle is less tiring than shouting, and the distinctive sound can be heard farther than a human voice. An effective visual ground-to-air signal device is a glass signal mirror with a sighting device, which can be seen up to 10 miles away but requires sunlight. Special rescue beacons are available and can be carried as emergency equipment. These include strobe lights, laser signal lights, special beacons with both signaling and GPS capability, and personal locator beacons (PLBs).

Smoke is easily seen by day and a fire or flashlight by night. On a cloudy day, black smoke is more visible than white; the reverse is true on a sunny day. White smoke stands out well against a green forest background but not against snow. Black smoke can be produced by burning parts of a vehicle, such as rubber or oil, and white smoke by adding green vegetation to a fire. The lost person who anticipates an air search should keep a fire going with large supplies of dry, burnable material (wood and brush) and have a large pile of cut green vegetation close by. When an aircraft is heard, the dry materials are placed on the fire and allowed to flare, and then armloads of the green vegetation are piled on top. This produces lots of smoke and a hot thermal updraft to carry it aloft.

A vehicle cold weather survival kit should include the following items:

1. Sleeping bag or two blankets for each occupant
2. Extra winter clothing, including gloves, boots, and snow goggles, for each occupant
3. Emergency food
4. Metal cup
5. Waterproof matches
6. Long-burning candles, at least two
7. First aid kit
8. Spare doses of personal medications
9. Swiss army knife or Leatherman-type multitool
10. Three 3 lb empty coffee cans with lids, for melting snow or sanitary purposes
11. Toilet paper
12. Cell phone and/or citizen's band radio, with chargers
13. Portable radio receiver, with spare batteries
14. Flashlight with extra batteries and bulb
15. Battery booster cables and/or car battery recharging unit (plugs into cigarette lighter)
16. Extra quart of automobile oil (place some in hubcap and burn for emergency smoke signal)
17. Tire chains
18. Jack and spare tire
19. Road flares
20. Snow shovel
21. Windshield scraper and brush
22. Tow strap or chain
23. Small sack of sand or cat litter
24. Two plastic gallon drinking water jugs, full
25. Tool kit
26. Gas line deicer
27. Flagging, such as surveyor's tape (tie to top of radio antenna for signal)
28. Duct tape
29. Notebook and pencil/marker
30. Long rope (e.g., clothesline) to act as safety rope if you leave the car during a blizzard

31. Carbon monoxide detector
32. Axe
33. Saw
34. Full tank of gas

Safe sledding

In terms of injuries, sledding leads the list for winter sports activities. This includes a large number of head injuries. To avoid sledding mishaps:

1. Select a safe hill:
   a. Not too steep
   b. Long, flat run-out at the bottom to allow a safe stop
   c. Does not end near a roadway, parking lot, fence, stream, lake, or drop-off
   d. Free from obstacles, including trees, dips, bumps, rocks, and stumps
   e. Little or no ice
2. Sled in conditions of good visibility (daytime, no fog, excellent lighting at night).
3. Dress for the cold. Dress for protection. Do not wear any dangling clothing that can get caught up in the sled.
4. Wear a helmet (e.g., ski helmet).
5. Use a well-constructed sled for which you can control the direction and speed. Understand that your risk for an accident is greater when tubing, sitting on a sheet of cardboard, or flying down the hill on a plastic saucer or toboggan that cannot be steered.
6. Sit on the sled face-forward toward the bottom of the hill. Do not sled while standing or facing backward. Never sled head-first.
7. An adult should accompany a small child on the sled.
8. Don’t pile more than one person on a sled, except for an adult with a small child.
9. Keep arms and legs inside the border of the sled.
10. Avoid sudden sharp turns.
11. Don’t attempt to go over a jump.
12. If you lose control of the sled, roll off it and get out of the way.
13. Don’t ride a sled pulled by a motor vehicle.
14. Don’t sled under the influence of alcohol or mind-altering drugs.
15. Don’t sled across a frozen body of water unless it is known to absolutely be safe.

Frostbite

Frostbite is an injury caused by the actual freezing of tissues. Factors that predispose a person to frostbite include poor circulation (caused by previous cold injuries, tobacco use, alcohol ingestion, diseases of the blood vessels, constricting garments, poorly fitting boots, old age), fatigue, and extremes of cold exposure. Windchill contributes markedly to frostbite risk. For instance, at an air temperature of 15°F (−9.4°C), a 55-mph (88 km/hr) wind causes the same rate of heat loss as a 5-mph (8 km/hr) breeze at an air temperature of 0°F (−17.8°C). Furthermore, since a human in motion creates their own wind (while riding a snowmobile, for example), the risk for frostbite for such a person increases. Humidity and wetness also increase the propensity for frostbite.

During exposure, once the temperature of a hand or foot drops to 59°F (15°C), the blood vessels maximally constrict and minimal blood flow occurs. As the limb temperature declines to 50°F (10°C), there might be brief periods of blood vessel dilation, alternated with constriction, as the body attempts to provide some protection from the cold. This is known as the “hunting response” and is seen more commonly in the Inuit (Eskimos) and persons of Nordic descent. Below 50°F (10°C), the skin becomes numb and injury might go unnoticed until it’s too late. Tissue at the body surface freezes at or below a temperature of 24.8°F (−4°C) because of the effect of underlying warm tissue. Once circulation is abolished, the skin temperature might drop at a rate in excess of 1°F (0.56°C) per minute. Once tissue freezes, it cools rapidly to attain the temperature of the environment.

The major immediate symptom of a frostbite injury is numbness, occasionally preceded by itching and prickly pain. The frostbitten area will appear to be white, with a yellow or bluish (grayish) waxy (sometimes mottled) tint. If the injury is superficial, as commonly occurs on the face, the skin is firm and might indent with a touch, because the underlying tissue is still soft and pliable. If the injury is deep, the skin might feel hard and actually be frozen solid. A hand or foot might feel clumsy or absent. The areas most affected are the fingertips and toes (particularly in cramped footwear), followed by the earlobes, nose tip, cheeks, and other exposed skin. These parts have little heat-generating capability and no significant insulation. Male joggers have had their genitals frostbitten.

Treatment of frostbite

In general, persons should not walk on frostbitten feet unless this is necessary to save one’s life. Rapid rewarming is the standard therapy. However, *don’t thaw out a frostbitten body part if it cannot be kept thawed.* In other words, if you come upon a lost hiker 10 miles (16 km) back in the woods who has frostbitten toes, don’t use your stove to heat water to thaw out their feet if they will then have to put their wet boots back on and hike out—refreezing their toes in the process. Frostbitten tissue is severely damaged and is prone to reinjury; refreezing causes an injury that will far exceed the initial frostbite wound. It's much better to walk out on frostbitten toes until safety is reached than to thaw and allow refreezing. Thus, if a victim needs to be transported to another site for rewarming, don't allow "slow" or partial rewarming, particularly if there is a chance that the tissue will be allowed to refreeze. Pad the affected body part, apply a protective splint, and hustle the victim to the site where the definitive thaw will take place. Don't allow tobacco or alcohol use. Don't rub frozen tissue with snow or ice or massage the tissue.

Once the victim has reached a location (shelter) where refreezing will not occur, remove all constrictive jewelry and wet clothing. Replace wet clothes with dry garments. Immerse the frostbitten part in water heated from 104°F to 108°F (40°C to 42.2°C). Some authorities advise using water heated from 98.6°F to 102°F (37°C to 39°C), which decreases pain associated with rewarming while just slightly reducing rewarming time. Don't induce a burn injury by using hotter water. You can estimate 108°F (42.2°C) water by considering it to be water in which normal skin can be submerged for a prolonged period with minimal discomfort. Heated tap water might be too hot. Never use a numb frostbitten finger or toe to test water temperature. It's best to use your own hand or the victim's uninjured hand to test the temperature. Circulate the water to allow thawing to proceed as rapidly as possible. When adding more hot water, take the body part out, add the water, test the temperature, and then reimmerse the part. It's best to use a container in which the body part can be immersed without touching the sides; for instance, a 20-quart (20-liter) pot will accommodate a foot. If the skin is frozen to mittens or metal, use heated water to remove them. *Never rewarm the tissues by vigorous rubbing or by using the heat of a campfire, hand warmers, meals ready-to-eat (MRE) heaters, camp stove, or car exhaust,* because you have a high likelihood of damaging the tissues.

If the victim is hypothermic, attend first to the hypothermia. Thawing should not be undertaken until the core body temperature has reached 95°F (35°C) (see page 321).

Thawing of the tissues usually requires 30 to 45 minutes. It is complete when the skin is soft and pliable, and color (usually quite red; rarely, bluish) and sensation have returned. Allowing the limb to move in the circulating water is fine, but massage can be harmful. Moderate to extreme burning pain might occur during the last 5 to 10 minutes of rewarming, particularly if the frostbitten tissue was numb before rewarming.

Stages of frostbite

Thawed frostbite might be present in a number of stages, much like a burn injury. These are recognized as follows:

First degree: Numbness, redness, and swelling; no tissue loss.

Second degree: Superficial blistering, with clear (yellowish) or milky fluid in the blisters, surrounded by redness and swelling. There is little, if any, tissue loss.

Third degree: Deep blistering, with purple blood-containing fluid in the blisters. There is usually tissue loss.

Fourth degree: Extremely deep involvement (including bone); induces mummification. There is always tissue loss.

Wound management after thawing

Sensation might remain until blisters appear at 6 to 24 hours after rapid rewarming. These often don't extend to the ends of fingers and toes (Fig. 225). Leave these blisters intact. After thawing the skin, protect it with fluffy, sterile bandages (aloe vera lotion, gel, or cream should be applied, if available). Pad gently between the digits with sterile cotton or wool pads, held in place by a loose, rolled bandage. Transport the victim to a medical facility. Administer ibuprofen 400 mg three times a day. If ibuprofen is not available, administer aspirin 325 mg once a day. If frostbite involves the feet, try to minimize walking. Don't allow tobacco use or the drinking of alcohol. Keep the victim well hydrated with warm beverages. Administer pain medications as needed.

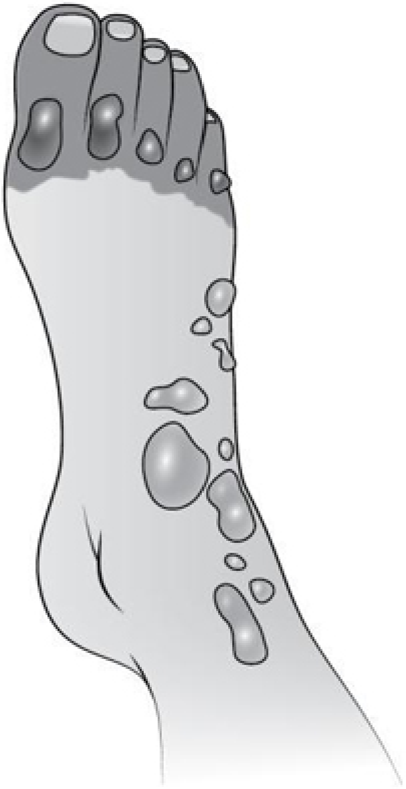


FIG. 225 Blisters of frostbite might not extend to the ends of fingers and toes.

After the thaw, if the victim is days away from hospital care, manage the wound as follows:

1. If you don’t have sufficient sterile bandages to redress the wounds at least once a day until you reach a hospital, allow blisters to remain intact. Apply topical aloe vera gel or lotion twice a day. Cover with sterile gauze.
2. If white or clear blisters begin to leak, trim them away and apply antiseptic ointment (mupirocin or bacitracin) or cream (mupirocin). If tense or white or clear blisters prohibit evacuation by walking (e.g., they will rupture spontaneously), then drain and cover them with bandages. Don’t drain bloody blisters. If antiseptic ointment is not available, continue with aloe vera gel or lotion. Cover with a sterile dressing (see page 294), taking particular care to pad with cotton or gauze between fingers and toes.
3. If at all possible, keep purple or bloody blisters intact, because they provide a covering that keeps the underlying damaged tissue from drying out. Apply topical aloe vera gel or lotion twice a day. Cover with sterile gauze.

4. Elevate the affected part.
5. Apply a protective splint (see page 86) if necessary to surround the bulky cushion dressing.
6. For the first 72 hours after the injury, administer dicloxacillin, cephalexin, or erythromycin for open wounds.
7. If the skin blackens and begins to harden, apply topical mupirocin or bacitracin ointment, or mupirocin cream, daily to the margin where the dying skin meets the normal skin.

Throbbing pain might begin a few days after rewarming and continue for up to a few weeks. After the pain subsides, it's not unusual for the victim to notice a residual tingling sensation. If there is no tissue loss, the duration of abnormal sensation might be only a month; with extensive tissue loss, it can exceed 6 months. Intermittent burning pain or electric current–like sensations might be present.

Tissue that has been destroyed by frostbite will usually harden and turn black in the second week after rewarming, forming a "shell" over the viable tissue underneath. If the destruction is extensive, the affected area will wither and shrivel beneath the blackness and self-amputate over 3 to 6 months. If the victim cannot seek medical care in that interval, the wound should be kept clean and dry, and signs of infection (see page 295) treated appropriately with antibiotics.

The corneas can be frostbitten if people (such as snowmobilers) force their eyes open in situations of high windchill. Symptoms include blurred vision, aversion to light, swollen eyelids, and excessive tearing. The treatment is the same as for a corneal abrasion (see page 202).

Prevention of frostbite

1. Dress to maintain body warmth. Wear adequate, properly fitting (not tight) clothing, particularly boots that can accommodate a pair of polypropylene socks and at least one pair of wool socks without cramping the toes or wrinkling the socks. Dress your feet for the temperature of subsurface colder snow, not the "warm" snow at the surface. Take care to cover the head, neck, hands, feet, and face (particularly the nose and ears). Wear mittens in preference to gloves, to decrease the surface area available for heat loss from the fingers. Mitten shells and gloves should be made of synthetics or soft, flexible, dry-tanned leather (e.g., moose, deer, elk, caribou) that won't dry stiffly after it becomes wet. Don't grease the leather. Mitten inserts and glove linings should be made of soft wool. Tie mittens and gloves to sleeves or string them around the neck, so they aren't dropped or lost.

2. Carry pocket, hand, and/or foot warmers and use them properly. Choices include fuel-burning warmers or chemical (such as Grabber hand warmer) packs, reusable sodium acetate thermal packs, or air-activated, single-use hand and pocket warmers. Don't rely upon a single warmer to reduce cold exposure. Carry several warmers to compensate for failures and short duration of warming. Don't expect the devices to work if they become wet. The heavier device, the longer the heat production.
3. Keep the head warm to help prevent reflex blood vessel constriction in the fingers and toes.
4. Keep clothing dry. This is particularly important for socks. Avoid perspiring during extremely cold weather. Keep skin dry and avoid moisturization.
5. Don't touch bare metal with bare skin. Certain liquids (such as gasoline) become colder than frozen water before they freeze and can cause frostbite. Cover all metal handles with cloth, tape, or leather. Take care when handling cameras. For brief periods of exposure when dexterity is required, wear silk or rayon gloves.
6. Don't maintain one position in the cold for a prolonged period. Avoid cramped quarters.
7. Wear a sunscreen with a cream or grease base to prevent windburn.
8. Stay well hydrated. Eat enough food to maximize body-heat production. Avoid becoming fatigued.
9. Don't over wash exposed skin in freezing weather. The natural oils are a barrier to cold injury. Shave sparingly or not at all for cosmetic reasons. If skin becomes exceedingly dry, apply a thin layer of petrolatum-based ointment. Keep fingernails and toenails properly trimmed.
10. Don't drink alcohol or use tobacco products.
11. Don't climb during extreme weather conditions.
12. Perform "cold checks." If a hand or foot (fingers or toes) becomes numb, apply warmth promptly, including skin to skin rewarming of hands or feet to the armpit, core, and groin.

Frostnip

Frostnip is reversible ice-crystal formation that occurs on the surface of the skin. It is distinct from frostbite in that actual freezing of the tissues does not occur. However, because the symptoms (numbness, tingling, tissue blanching, frosted appearance) might resemble those of frostbite, it should be taken as a serious warning that the skin is not adequately protected.

Immersion foot (trench foot)

Immersion, or "trench," foot (affecting lower limbs) is caused by prolonged (hours to days) exposure to cold water or to conditions of persistent cold (32°F to 59°F, or 0°C to 15°C) and high humidity, without actual freezing of tissues. Symptoms include itching, tingling, and eventually numbness. At first, the skin appears red, blanched, yellowish-white or mottled, but rarely blistered. It then turns pale and/or mottled and swollen. It is not painful, but muscle cramps might be present.

If you suspect immersion foot, carefully cleanse and dry the limb, and rewarm it. After the limb has initially been fully rewarmed, it might become very reddened, warm to the touch, swollen, and painful. Then, maintain it in an environment in which the victim can be kept warm while the injured limb(s) can be kept cool (not cold). Don't rub the limb. Pain reaches its maximum intensity in 24 to 36 hours and might be worsened at night. If the limbs are held in a dependent position, they might turn purplish in color; when raised, they might blanch. Treat the injury as a combination of frostbite and a burn wound, using daily dressing changes, topical antiseptic ointments, and antibiotics if necessary to treat any infection. If left unattended, immersion foot can lead to prolonged disability. In a severe case, the skin might become gangrenous.

Prevention of immersion foot involves keeping the feet dry and warm. Maintain body core temperature. Check the feet every day. Change socks as often as necessary to keep them dry and attempt to promote circulation to the feet. Avoid sweat accumulation. Avoid constrictive or nonventilated (rubber) footwear. Take special care if wearing "vapor barrier boots." Wear properly fitted boots. Silicone ointment applied to the soles might be preventive. There are special boots (OTB by New Balance) designed with perforations through the sole to drain water. These should be considered in special circumstances. However, if the socks and feet remain cold and wet, then you are still prone to immersion foot.

Chilblain (pernio)

Chilblain is less severe than immersion foot. It mostly afflicts women, who develop patches of redness or blue discoloration, nodules, and, rarely, blisters or ulcerations on the lower legs, feet, thighs, toes, hands, and ears. The skin changes appear approximately 12 hours after cold exposure and are accompanied by intense itching and burning or tingling sensations.

Treatment involves rewarming the affected skin, keeping it washed and dried, gentle massage, and covering the nodules with dry, soft, and sterile bandages. Affected limbs should be elevated to minimize swelling. Rewarming should not exceed 86°F (30°C), to minimize pain. In a severe case, nifedipine 20 mg by mouth three times a day for a few days has been shown to be effective. Ibuprofen 400 mg by mouth two or three times a day might be helpful. After rewarming, the tender blue skin nodules might persist for up to 3 weeks. Once healing has occurred, the skin might remain darkened.

Women with a history of pernio or history of Raynaud’s phenomenon (constriction of small blood vessels, leading to painful hands and feet that become pale or blue on exposure to cold—see below) seem to be more prone to an episode. A topical lanolin-based lotion or emollient (hydrating) cream might be helpful in prevention. Pernio might possibly be prevented or lessened by taking ibuprofen 400 to 600 mg by mouth two or three times a day.

Raynaud’s phenomenon

Raynaud’s phenomenon is constriction of tiny blood vessels (“vasospasm”) in the fingers and/or toes after exposure to cold or an emotionally stressful situation. The initial appearance is one of severely blanched (whitened) or bluish skin, often with a sharp “cutoff” margin in the midportion of the digit(s). This is caused by decreased circulation. The episode ends with vigorous reflow of blood into the digit, which causes it to become warm and reddened, usually within 20 minutes of rewarming. This phenomenon is different and much more pronounced than the normal mottling or diffuse and persistent discoloration sometimes seen in hands and feet exposed to cold. Raynaud’s phenomenon is usually symmetrical, involving both hands or both feet, and is usually apparent in sufferers by age 40 years. Because Raynaud’s phenomenon can be associated with a number of underlying diseases or anatomic abnormalities, a first-time sufferer should seek medical evaluation. Prevention in the outdoors involves primarily protecting the hands and feet and keeping them warm, avoiding drugs that cause blood vessel constriction, and prohibiting tobacco use. Keeping the entire body warm should be a priority. Many drugs have been recommended to treat Raynaud’s phenomenon, but at the current time the calcium-channel blockers (such as nifedipine) and drugs that block the sympathetic nervous system (which causes blood vessels to constrict) are most in favor as therapies for use outside of the hospital. Blood vessel dilators, such as nitroglycerin or niacin, have not consistently been proved effective, but nitroglycerin paste applied topically to fingertips overnight has been reported to relieve the affliction. Some sufferers have found that “windmilling” the arms and hands during an episode might help to reverse the vasospasm. Local hand warming with warm water immersion, covering with gloves, and seeking a warm environment are effective treatments.

Hives induced by exposure to cold

See page 259. Treatment is not as satisfactory as for hives due to an allergic reaction, in that antihistamines don’t seem to be of great benefit.

Snow blindness

See page 209.

Injuries and illnesses due to heat

Burn injuries

See page 128.

Heat-related illness (hyperthermia)

Human core temperature is maintained at 98.6°F (37°C), with little variation from individual to individual. Heat is generated by all of the metabolic processes that contribute to life, from the blink of an eyelid to the running of a marathon and must be shed constantly to avoid a condition of overheating. The resting person generates enough heat (60 to 80 kilocalories per hour) to raise body temperature by 1.8°F (1°C) per hour. A person exposed to the sun can absorb 150 kilocalories of energy an hour. Vigorous exercise can increase endogenous heat production 10-fold. As outlined in the section on hypothermia (see page 321), heat is lost to the environment through conduction, convection, radiation, and evaporation:

Conduction: Heat exchange between two surfaces in direct contact. Lying uninsulated on hot (or cold) ground can result in significant heat exchange. The same is true for immersion into hot or cold water.

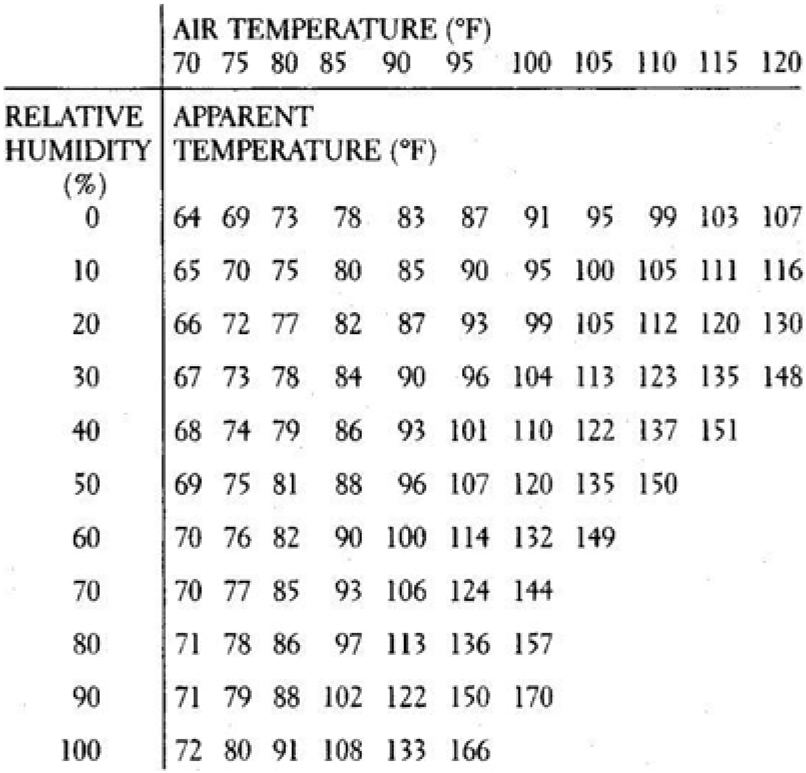
Convection: Heat transferred from a surface to a gas or liquid, commonly air or water. When air temperature exceeds skin temperature, heat is gained by the body. Loose-fitting clothing allows air movement and assists conductive heat loss.

Radiation: Heat transfer between the body and the environment by electromagnetic waves. Clothing protects the body from radiant heat, and the skin radiates heat away from the body. Highly pigmented skin absorbs more heat than does nonpigmented skin.

Evaporation: Consumption of heat energy as liquid is converted to a gas. Evaporation of sweat is an effective cooling mechanism.

In the normal situation, skin is the largest heat-wasting organ, and radiates approximately 65% of the daily heat loss. The skin is also largely responsible for evaporation (of sweat). Extreme humidity impedes evaporation and greatly diminishes human temperature control. The National Weather Service heat index

(Fig. 226) roughly correlates air temperature and relative humidity to derive an "apparent temperature." At all temperatures, humidity makes the situation worse. For instance, at an air temperature of 85°F, [29°C] if the relative humidity is 80%, the apparent temperature is 97°F. [36°C]



	AIR TEMPERATURE (°F)										
	70	75	80	85	90	95	100	105	110	115	120
RELATIVE HUMIDITY (%)	APPARENT TEMPERATURE (°F)										
0	64	69	73	78	83	87	91	95	99	103	107
10	65	70	75	80	85	90	95	100	105	111	116
20	66	72	77	82	87	93	99	105	112	120	130
30	67	73	78	84	90	96	104	113	123	135	148
40	68	74	79	86	93	101	110	122	137	151	
50	69	75	81	88	96	107	120	135	150		
60	70	76	82	90	100	114	132	149			
70	70	77	85	93	106	124	144				
80	71	78	86	97	113	136	157				
90	71	79	88	102	122	150	170				
100	72	80	91	108	133	166					

FIG. 226 Heat index. Humidity contributes greatly to the accumulation of heat; when both air temperature and relative humidity are excessive, human temperature control is diminished.

To summarize these recommendations:

Apparent Temperature Range	Dangers/Precautions at This Range
80°F–90°F (27°C–32°C)	Exercise can be difficult; enforce rest and hydration
90°F–105°F (32°C–41°C)	Heat cramps and exhaustion; be extremely cautious; provide constant supervision
105°F–130°F (41°C–54°C)	Anticipate heat exhaustion; strictly limit activities
130°F and above (54°C and above)	Setting for heatstroke; seek cool shelter

When maximally effective, the complete evaporation of 1 quart (liter) of sweat from the skin removes 600 kilocalories of heat (equivalent to the total heat produced with strenuous exercise in 1 hour). The scalp, face, and torso are most important in terms of sweating. Sweat that drips from the skin without evaporating does not contribute to the cooling process, but might contribute to dehydration. World-class distance runners who are acclimated to the heat can sweat in excess of 3 ½ quarts per hour. Since the maximum rate of gastric emptying (a surrogate for fluid absorption) is only 1.2 quarts per hour, it's easy to see how a person can become dehydrated. Thus, a person should be able to tolerate a 1 quart per hour sweat rate and manage rehydration with oral fluids.

When heat-control mechanisms are overloaded, the body responds unfavorably. As opposed to hypothermia, in which moderate cooling might offer a protective effect, the syndromes of true hyperthermia (in which core body temperature is measurably elevated) can rapidly become life threatening as elevated temperature destroys vital organs and dismembers chemical systems essential to life. Fever in and of itself can set off a vicious cycle, because raising the body temperature by 1.8°F (1°C) can increase metabolism by approximately 13%, which hastens the generation of more heat. Dehydration might by itself raise body temperature. For all of these reasons, it's crucial to be familiar with heat illness, and to be prepared to respond promptly and decisively.

Heat exhaustion and heat stroke

Heat exhaustion and heat stroke are part of the same continuum, but of differing severity. Heat exhaustion is illness caused by an elevation of body temperature that does not result in permanent damage or altered mental status. Heat stroke is life threatening and can permanently disable the victim.

The signs and symptoms of heat exhaustion are fatigue, a rapid weak pulse, dizziness, nausea, diarrhea, headache, and minor temperature elevation (up to

104°F [40°C]). It’s important to note that *sweating might be present or absent,* and that *the skin of the victim might feel cool to the touch.* It is the core temperature that is elevated and that must be measured (rectally).

The signs and symptoms of heat stroke are extreme confusion, weakness, dizziness, unconsciousness, low blood pressure or shock (see page 70), seizures, increased bleeding (bruising, vomiting blood, bloody urine), diarrhea, vomiting, shortness of breath, red skin rash (particularly over the chest, abdomen, and back), tea-colored to deeply darkened (“machine oil”) urine (caused by breakdown of muscle tissue that releases pigment into the bloodstream), and major core body temperature elevation (> than 104°F [40°C]) (up to 115.7°F [46.5°C] has been reported in a heat stroke survivor). Again, it’s important to note that *sweating might be present or absent.* At the time of collapse, most victims of heat stroke are still sweating copiously. It’s rare for someone to feel cool externally when their temperature exceeds 105°F (40.5°C), but it is not impossible.

The skin will usually be warm or hot to the touch when a victim suffers heat exhaustion or heat stroke, but, again, this is not constant. *Carry a rectal thermometer so you can take a temperature reading.* If no thermometer is available, and you’re fairly certain that the victim is suffering from heat exhaustion or heat stroke, proceed with therapy.

The most important aspect of therapy is to *lower the temperature as quickly as possible.* “Cool first and transport second.” The body might lose its ability to control its own temperature at 106°F (41.1°C), so from that point upward, temperature can skyrocket. Manage the airway (see page 18) and administer oxygen (see page 431) at a flow rate of 10 liters per minute by face mask. Don’t give liquids by mouth unless the victim is awake and capable of purposeful swallowing. Cooled liquids don’t assist the cooling process enough to risk choking the uncooperative or confused victim.

Cooling the victim

1. Remove the victim from obvious sources of heat. Shield them from direct sunlight and remove their clothing. Stop them from exercising.
2. The most efficient method of cooling is to drench the victim with large quantities of crushed ice and water, accompanied by vigorous massage. If you have a limited amount of ice, place ice packs in the armpits, behind the neck, and in the groin, but do not do this in preference to application of cold to the entire body surface. Note that chemical cold packs don’t provide the same cooling power as do real ice packs, and rapidly lose their effectiveness. A way to retain the water and ice is to use “tarp-assisted cooling,” in which the patient lies on a water-proof

tarpaulin or sheet and has water and ice poured over them, to be retained underneath by the tarp (Fig. 227). Rescuers hold up the edge of the tarp to limit the amount of water and ice that leaks out, so the patient might become semi-recumbent and is partially immersed.

3. Alternatively, you can cover the victim with ice water–soaked sheets or towels or clothing, keeping them continuously moist and cold.
4. There are safety issues to consider with total body immersion in cold water to treat hyperthermia, including access to the victim and even the risk for drowning. However, in a life-threatening field situation, if the only method available for cooling is immersion in a cold mountain stream, do it! Be alert for the need to remove the victim from the water to accomplish resuscitative measures. Never leave the victim unattended. If you immerse someone in cold water for cooling, circulate the water as best possible to maximize the cooling effect.
5. If ice is not available, wet down the victim and begin to fan them vigorously. Evaporation is a very efficient method of heat removal. Use cool or tepid water; *don't sponge the victim with alcohol.* If electric fans are available, use them. Don't be concerned with shivering, so long as you continue to aggressively cool the victim. Note that fanning works to cool because it causes evaporation of moisture from the skin. If the skin is hot and dry, it will not work and might worsen the situation. Humid weather that causes sweating is the right situation in which to use a fan. If the weather is very hot and dry, and there is no sweating, don't use a fan unless you can also wet down the patient.
6. There is a device (CoreControl) for athletes that increases circulation through the hand to allow a cooling mechanism to have its effect on this area of brisk heat transfer.
7. Recheck the temperature every 5 to 10 minutes, to avoid cooling much below 98.6°F (37°C). When you have cooled the victim to 99.5°F to 100°F (37.5°C to 37.8°C), taper the cooling effort. After the victim is cooled, recheck their temperature every 30 minutes for 3 to 4 hours, because there will often be a rebound temperature rise.
8. *Don't use aspirin or acetaminophen unless the victim has an infection.* These specific drugs are used to combat fever that is caused by the release of chemical compounds from infectious agents into the bloodstream. Such compounds affect the portion of the brain (hypothalamus) that serves as the body's thermostat, causing body temperature to rise. Aspirin or acetaminophen acts to block this chemical interaction in the brain, and thus eliminates the fever. If elevated body temperature is not caused by an infection, aspirin or acetaminophen will not work—and might in fact be harmful, leading to bleeding disorders or liver inflammation, respectively.

9. If the victim is alert, begin to correct dehydration (see page 341) using oral rehydration. This is particularly important if the urine is seen to be darkened in color. Be certain that the concentration of carbohydrates or sugar in the beverage does not exceed 6%, so as not to inhibit intestinal absorption. Try to get 1 to 2 quarts (liters) into the victim over the first few hours. For every pound (0.45 kg) of weight loss attributed to sweating, have the victim ingest a pint (473 mL or 2 cups) of fluid. Adequate rehydration might take up to 36 hours.

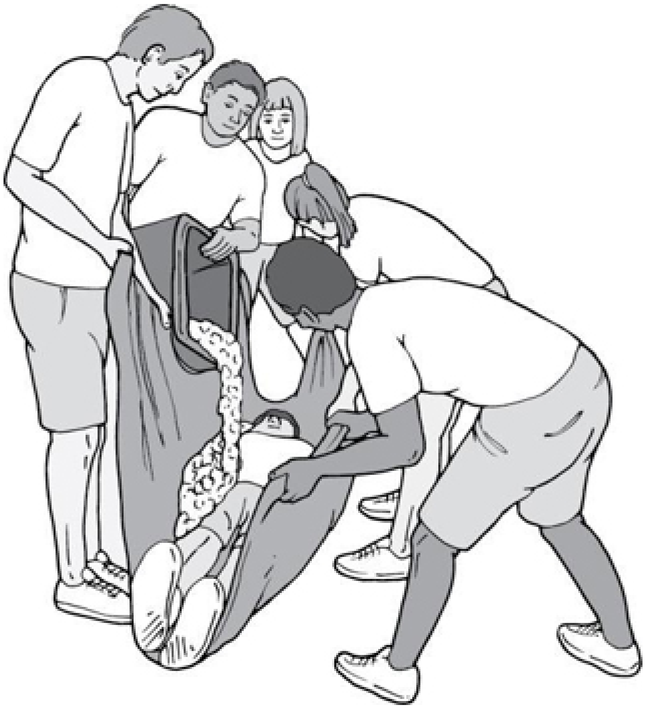


FIG. 227 Tarp assisted cooling. Use a tarp, tent fly, or plastic sheet to improvise a cold-water bath.

Muscle cramps

Muscle cramps in a warm environment accompany overuse (see page 303) or water and salt losses in the individual who exerts strenuously. A well-trained athlete can lose 2 to 3 quarts (liters) of sweat per hour (a potential 20 g sodium loss each day). In most cases, these painful cramps are caused by replacement of water without adequate salt intake. Heat per se doesn't cause the cramps—they accompany exercise.

Treatment for cramps consists of gentle motion, massage, and stretching of the affected muscles, accompanied by fluid and salt replacement. This can be done by drinking water and balanced salt solutions or sports beverages before and during heavy exertion. One recommendation is to drink a solution that contains 3.5 g of sodium chloride and 1.5 g of potassium chloride in a quart (liter) of water. As a rough measure, ¼ to ½ teaspoon (1.3 to 2.5 mL) of table salt in water will suffice. With proper fluid and electrolyte replacement, salt tablets (which irritate the lining of the stomach) are usually unnecessary. Some experts favor eating a banana or other piece of fruit and drinking water instead of using sports beverages to support postexercise hydration.

Sometimes rubbing the affected muscles with ice or ice packs for 5 to 10 minutes might hasten resolution of heat-related muscle cramps.

Muscle cramps that occur at night might have no identifiable cause. Some doctors treat these with quinine sulfate or with a glass of tonic water at bedtime.

Heat swelling

In warmer climates, normal people, particularly elders, might suffer from swelling (sometimes called *edema*) of the feet and ankles. This is noted after prolonged periods of walking or sitting and is not necessarily indicative of heart failure. Often, the swelling will disappear as a person becomes adjusted to the warm environment over several days. The swelling is painless and there is no sign of infection (redness). Body temperature is not elevated.

Treatment for heat swelling is to minimize periods of walking and to use support stockings that rise at least to midthigh. The legs should be elevated whenever possible. There is no reason to use fluid pills (diuretics). If the sufferer is short of breath or otherwise ill in association with leg swelling, they should seek the advice of a physician.

Fainting

Fainting has many causes (see page 187). Fainting due to heat exposure occurs when a person (particularly an elder) adapts by dilating blood vessels in the skin and superficial muscles to deliver warm blood to the surface of the body, where the excess heat energy can be delivered back to the environment. Expansion of the superficial blood vessels allows a greater-than-normal proportion of the circulating blood volume to be away from the central circulation, which supplies, among other organs, the brain. This lack of sufficient central pressure is worsened when a person is on their feet for a prolonged period of time, because gravity allows a significant blood volume to pool in their lower limbs. Combined with fatigue and mild dehydration, the diversion of blood leads to a fainting episode, because not enough blood (with oxygen and glucose) is pumped to the brain. Dehydration can also stimulate the vagus nerve, which causes the heart rate to slow and blood pressure to drop (“vasovagal” or “vagal” episode). A person with anemia, fever, low blood sugar, or acute injury might be particularly prone to fainting. Other risk factors for fainting due to a vasovagal episode include prolonged standing, vigorous exercise in a warm environment, fear, emotional distress (e.g., the sight of blood), nausea, and severe pain.

A victim who has suffered a fainting episode in the heat should be examined for any head or neck injuries, as well as other possible breaks or cuts. Other causes of fainting (low blood sugar, abnormal heart rhythm, and so on) must be considered. If fainting is due to the heat, the victim will reawaken shortly, because assuming a horizontal position returns blood to the brain and solves the major problem. In general, body temperature is not elevated.

The victim of a fainting spell due to heat should be rested in a horizontal position for 15 to 30 minutes and should not immediately assume a standing posture without first sitting for 5 minutes. Encourage them to consume a pint or two (½ to 1 liter) of cool sweetened liquid (such as Gatorade). To avoid further episodes, efforts should be made to avoid dehydration, missing meals, or standing in one position for a prolonged period. Support hose might help, as might regular leg muscle exercise. The victim should learn to recognize the warning signs of a fainting spell, which include episodes of dizziness, lightheadedness, nausea, weakness, sweating, blurred vision, or seeing flashing lights. When a warning sign occurs, the victim should immediately assume a horizontal position or at least sit and lower their head to a position between their knees. If a person is wearing a tight collar and feels faint, loosen the collar. Any person over age 40 who suffers a fainting episode should eventually be examined by a doctor to be certain that the red blood count is normal and that there is no heart disease.

Hydration, dehydration, and hyponatremia

Avoid dehydration. Drink 1 pint (473 mL) of liquid 10 to 15 minutes before beginning vigorous exercise. Drink at least 1 pint to 1 quart (½ to 1 liter) of liquid with adequate electrolyte supplementation (see later) each hour during heavy exercise with sweating in a hot climate. *Adequate water ingested during exercise is not harmful, does not cause cramps.* Encourage rest and fluid breaks. DON'T WITHHOLD WATER FROM ATHLETES DURING PRACTICE AND COMPETITIONS. The temperature of the fluid ingested should be cool, to encourage it to empty from the stomach. It is a myth that ingesting cold fluid causes abdominal cramps, so long as the amount ingested is prudent. There is no evidence that "hyper-hydrating" before heat exposure, or cooling the body before exercise, lessens the risk for heat-related illness.

A terrific method for carrying water is the CamelBak hydration system, or any similar setup, which allows you to sip continuously from an over-the-shoulder delivery tube.

If the urine becomes darkened or scant, fluid requirements aren't being met. ("Cloudy," or unclear, urine might indicate a different sort of problem, such as protein in the urine or a urinary tract infection.) It is often stated that light-colored urine is a sign of adequate hydration. This is generally true, but not always, such as after a brief exposure to very cold weather. The best time to check urine color is after a comfortable sleep period. Pale yellow urine indicates adequate hydration.

As a general rule, people outdoors should consume at least 3 quarts (liters) of fluid each day to replenish that lost through urination, exhaled moisture, skin evaporation, and defecation. With moderate activity, this should be increased to at least 4 to 5 quarts (liters). Don't rely on thirst as an absolute guide to fluid requirements. In general, merely quenching thirst might not adequately replace fluid losses in heat stress or high-altitude conditions. It is possible to sweat up to 3 quarts (liters) per hour when exercising in extremely hot and humid conditions. During heavy exertion in hot weather, consider drinking at least a quart (liter) of liquid per hour.

With a normal diet, there is no need to take salt tablets. Electrolyte requirements can be met with food salted to taste. Electrolyte- and sugar-enriched drinks, such as Gatorade, should be used when normal meals cannot be eaten or when sweating is excessive (during athletic training or military forced marching, for example). A home brew (see page 230) might be used if a Gatorade-type beverage is not available. Accelerade is a sports beverage that contains 15 g of carbohydrate and 4 g of protein per 8 fluid oz. This combination might be muscle-sparing during periods of high exertion, in warm or cold weather.

The normal daily diet can be safely supplemented during times of extreme sweating (greater than ¼ to 1 quart, or liter, per hour) with 5 to 10 g of sodium (normal daily dietary intake is 4 to 6 g; most adults would be fine with 1 to 3 g) and 2 to 4 g of potassium. Supplemental salt is advised when weight loss from sweating exceeds 5 lb (2.3 kg) in a single session, particularly early in the acclimatization period when salt losses in sweat are great. Consume 0.5 g (⅒ teaspoon) sodium chloride (table salt) with a pint (473 mL) of water for each pound (0.45 kg) of weight loss over 5 lb (2.3 kg). If large quantities of electrolytes are lost and not replaced (e.g., if large quantities of water are consumed without salt, typically during an endurance athletic event), a person can become quite ill.

Hyponatremia

(Low serum [in the blood] sodium) is a condition that occurs when excessive water drinking [typically, more than 3 liters] occurs without salt replenishment. Symptoms include difficulty speaking, nausea, vomiting, vertigo, headache, lightheadedness, weakness, fatigue, muscle weakness, difficulty with balance and walking, confusion, fluid in the lungs (shortness of breath and coughing, sometimes productive of frothy and/or blood-tinged sputum), and seizures. The condition might become fatal. Similarly, salt without water can be harmful. Salt tablets can be very irritating to the stomach and should not be used unless salt-containing solutions (such as concentrated bouillon or salt-supplemented beverages) aren't available. Coffee, tea, and alcohol-containing beverages cause increased fluid loss through excessive urination (diuretic effect) and should be avoided. The best avoidance is to drink palatable electrolyte-balanced liquids when thirsty, realizing that even drinking too much of these ("forcing fluids") can also seriously lower serum sodium. Gaining weight from one's starting weight solely by drinking fluids during an episode of exercise is an enormous risk factor for hyponatremia. When exercising vigorously, stay well hydrated, but don't overdo it.

Avoiding heat illness

1. Be watchful of the very young and very old. Their bodies don't regulate body temperature well and can rapidly become too hot or too cold. Don't bundle up infants in warm weather. *Never leave children alone in hot automobiles or other enclosed vehicles. Always check the back seat.*
2. Stay in shape. Obesity, lack of conditioning, insufficient rest, and ingestion of alcohol and/or illicit drugs all contribute to an increased risk for heat illness. The herb ephedra contains ephedrine, which is reputed to enhance athletic performance; however, it increases metabolic rate and has caused many cases of heat illness and, on occasion, deaths.
3. Condition yourself for the environment. Gradual increased exposure to work in a hot environment for a minimum of an hour or two a day for 8 to 10 days will allow an adult to acclimatize. Children require 10 to 14 days. More time spent in the heat hastens the process. Sitting in a hot sauna is not the same as exercising in the heat, so it will likely require additional days of exposure to achieve acclimatization. Acclimatization is manifested as increased sweat volume with a decreased electrolyte concentration (more efficient sweating), greater peripheral blood vessel dilatation (more efficient heat loss), lowered heart rate, decreased skin and rectal temperatures during exercise, increased water and salt conservation by the kidneys, and enhanced metabolism of energy supplies. Eat potassium-rich vegetables and fruits, such as broccoli and bananas. Don't restrict fluid intake during acclimatization. On the contrary, it's necessary to increase fluid intake to accompany increased sweat volume.

4. Wet bulb globe temperature (WBGT), which is a fairly precise predictor of human physiologic heat strain, takes into account ambient temperature, wind, solar radiation, and humidity. It is measured with a sling psychrometer, which most people will not be carrying. WBGT temperature values used as a guide to recommend activity levels to avoid heat-related illnesses cannot be equated to simply measured ambient temperatures. Furthermore, WBGT can be too liberal a measure because it does not take into account exercise, clothing, and other factors. The following recommendations (based on WBGT measurements) thus need to take into account any restriction on sweating, ability to spend partial time in a cooler situation (e.g., shade), the presence of a cooling breeze or dip in a stream, and so forth.
   a. 60°F (15.5°C): No precautions
   b. 61°F to 70°F (16.1°C to 21.1°C): No precautions if adequate hydration
   c. 71°F to 75°F (21.7°C to 23.8°C): If not acclimatized, minimal exercise; if acclimatized, exercise with caution with rest and water breaks every 20 to 30 minutes
   d. 76°F to 80°F (24.4°C to 26.6°C): If not acclimatized, avoid hiking, vigorous sports, and sun exposure; if acclimatized, moderate to heavy work with caution
   e. 81°F to 85°F (27.2°C to 29.4°C): If not acclimatized, no significant exercise; if acclimatized and fit, limited brief exercise under close observation
   f. 88°F (31°C) and above: No exercise or sun exposure
5. In general, curtail heavy exercise when it’s hot, and particularly when it’s humid. Above 75% humidity, you will have difficulty evaporating sweat, so your natural cooling mechanism is impeded.
6. Wear clothing appropriate for the environment. Dress in layers so that you can add or shed clothing as necessary. Clothing should be lightweight and absorbent. Wear a loose-fitting broad-brimmed hat to shield yourself from the sun, but don’t wear a hat if you don’t need protection from the sun. Don’t wear plastic or rubber sweat suits in the heat. Be careful when wearing a neoprene wetsuit to avoid overheating in the sun. Open or remove the top half of the wetsuit if you are feeling hot when out of the water. Don’t try to lose water weight as part of any weight loss program.
7. Remove headgear when possible to allow evaporation from the head. Allow the scalp, face, and upper torso access to air circulation since these are the major areas of sweating and therefore provide opportunity for sweat evaporation.

8. Keep out of the sun on a hot day. When you feel hot, seek a cooler location. Resting on hot ground increases heat stress; the sun can heat the ground by more than 40°F (22.2°C) above the air temperature. If you must lie on the ground, dig a shallow (a few inches, or centimeters) trench to get down to a cooler surface.
9. Avoid taking drugs that inhibit the sweating process (such as atropine, antispasmodics, anti–motion sickness; the anticonvulsant topiramate causes reduced sweating and on rare occasion, blue sweat), diminish cardiac output (beta blockers), disrupt certain features of physiologic activity (antidepressants, antihistamines), increase muscle activity (hallucinogens, cocaine), or promote dehydration (diuretics).
10. To find water in the desert, look for green plants. Near the ocean shore, drinkable water might be found below a sandy or gravel surface at an elevation above seawater. Look for green plants. Water might be found at the foot of cliffs that have become waterfalls after a rainstorm or flood. Look under rocks, even if the surface appears dry.
11. If you are prone to fainting episodes, particularly of the ("vagal") type, learn to recognize the warning symptoms that occur before fainting, which include weakness, feeling light-headed, sweating, blurred vision, nausea, headache, warm or cold feeling, yawning, nervousness, and growing pale. You might also feel "out of body" or disoriented. If any of these occur and you recognize that you might faint, immediately try to lie face down on the ground, so that you don't fall, and allow gravity to assist in bringing blood from your limbs back to the central circulation and your brain.

Wildland fires

The wilderness adventurer or casual hiker in a forest or timbered park might find themself face to face with a wildland fire. This section will discuss high-risk situations, survival techniques, and medical considerations. Review the sections on burns (see page 128), lightning injuries (see page 386), heat illness (see page 337), and inhalation injuries (see page 133) as well.

High-risk situations

The risk for a wildland fire is increased under certain environmental conditions. Pay heed to posted warnings of fire hazard and don't venture into the woods unprepared to escape. Be particularly cautious when:

1. There are drought conditions. Low humidity, higher air temperatures, and gusty winds create dry fuel for a fire.
2. You are in an area rich with abundant fuel, such as dead grass, pine needles, shrubs, fallen trees, and the like.
3. You travel through gullies, in canyons, along steep slopes, or in other regions where wind and fuel are ideal for rapid advance of an established fire.
4. Fires have occurred recently in the vicinity.
5. You cannot see the main fire and are not in contact with anyone who can.
6. Terrain and fuels make escape to safety zones difficult.

Standard fire encounter principles

1. Have advance knowledge of weather conditions and forecasts before undertaking an expedition. Don't travel in hazardous regions in times of high fire risk. Local ranger stations are the best source of information. *Never plan an extended journey without leaving an itinerary with the proper authorities.* In the event of a fire, try to maintain communication with firefighters or other rescuers.
2. At every campsite, take a few moments to prepare a plan for an evacuation, with at least two escape routes. Be certain that everyone understands the routes.

3. If a fire is in the area, pay attention to it, so that you will know what the fire is doing. Obtain current information on fire status. If there is any chance that it can involve your party, *get out early.*
4. If you see smoke or fire at a distance, post a lookout to watch for any changes that might indicate increased danger.
5. In all situations, stay calm and act with authority. Give orders concisely and be sure that they are understood. Base your actions on the current and expected behavior of the fire.
6. Don't attempt to fight the fire unless you have provided for safety first. Your first responsibility is to evacuate all potential victims and provide necessary first aid. In general, it's best to leave firefighting to professionals. If you become a fire fighter, provide for safety first. Determine safety zones and escape routes.
7. Don't sleep near a wildland fire. If the wind and fire direction change, you might be overcome with smoke and unable to escape.

What to do when caught in a wildland fire

A safe area is one with light or no fuels, such as a rocky surface, marshy area, large area of pavement, center of a sufficiently large body of water, or recently burned area. This option only works if the distance between the fire and entry into the safe area is short, the fire is advancing slowly, and it is easy to reach the safe area.

1. Try not to panic. This is difficult, but if anything will save your life, it will be a clear head.
2. Don't move downhill toward a fire because fires tend to run uphill.
3. Unless the path of escape is clear, don't start running. Conserve your strength and seek the flank of the fire. Continually observe changes in speed and direction of the fire and smoke to choose travel away from fire hazards. Be alert, keep calm, and avoid injury from rolling or falling debris.
4. Enter a burned area, particularly one with little fuel (grass or low shrubs). Although there is a chance that the area might burn again, you're better off here than in an area of fresh fuel. If you have to cross the fire line, cover your skin as well as possible, take a couple of deep breaths, and dash through the lowest flames (less than 5 ft, or 1.5 m, tall and deep and where you can see through them). If smoke is dense, crawl along the ground for better air and visibility.
5. If you cannot enter a burned area, ignite grass or other fine fuels between you and the fire edge. Carry wind-resistant matches for this purpose. After this area burns, step into it and cover your exposed skin with

clothing or dirt. This is not an effective technique in areas of heavier fuels.

6. Try to avoid breathing smoke. Hold a moistened cloth over your mouth. If the air is very hot, use a dry cloth (dry heat is less damaging to the lungs than is steam). If you have a choice of clothing, cover your skin with closed-toe shoes, a long-sleeved cotton or wool shirt, cotton or wool pants, a hat, and gloves.
7. Seek refuge from the radiant heat. Take shelter in a trench, in a pond, behind rocks, or in a stream, vehicle, or building. Don’t climb into elevated water tanks, wells, caves, or any other place where you might be trapped or quickly use up the available oxygen.

If all else fails and you cannot escape the advancing flames, lie face down on the ground and cover your exposed skin as best possible to shield from radiant heat. This is better than standing or kneeling. If available, a fire-retardant blanket or shield is desirable. Radiant heat can kill a person long before the flames reach them.

High altitude–related problems

Altitudes of 8000 to 14,000 ft (2438 to 4267 m) are attained regularly by skiers, hikers, and climbers in the continental United States. Outside the United States, mountain climbers can reach altitudes of up to 29,032 ft (8849 m) (Mount Everest height updated 2020). Appendix 2 (see page 503) lists common conversion numbers from feet.

Most difficulties at high altitude are a direct result of the lowered concentration of oxygen in the atmosphere. Although the percentage of oxygen in the air is relatively constant at about 20%, the absolute amount of oxygen decreases with the declining barometric pressure. At 19,030 ft (5800 m) there is half the barometric pressure, and therefore half the oxygen, which is available at sea level. A person transported suddenly to this altitude without time to acclimatize or without the provision of supplemental oxygen would probably lose consciousness; sudden transport to the summit of Mount Everest (where the amount of inspired oxygen is 28% that at sea level) would cause rapid collapse and death. Experts define "high altitude" as 4921 to 11,483 ft (1500 to 3500 m). Although high-altitude illness is common with rapid ascent above 8202 ft (2500 m), the most common range for severe high-altitude illness is 11,483 to 18,045 ft (3500 to 5500 m; "very high altitude"). Above 18,045 ft (5500 m), altitude is considered "extreme," and a human deteriorates rather than adapts. Commercial airplanes are pressurized to an atmospheric pressure equivalent to that at approximately 8000 ft (2438 m) above sea level.

Being at high altitude causes a generalized decreased tolerance for exercise and physical stress. However, to a certain extent, humans can adapt to high altitude and become more efficient in the oxygen-poor environment. The prevention of high altitude–related disorders is best accomplished by gradual acclimatization to the lowered oxygen content of atmospheric air. In this process, you increase the rate and depth of your breathing; this delivers more oxygen to and removes more carbon dioxide from your body. This, along with changes that occur in kidney function, causes your blood to become more alkaline, which allows it to take up and deliver more oxygen to your tissues. Resting heart rate gradually increases. Over time, red blood cell production is increased, and your heart and skeletal muscles become more efficient.

In addition to the effects of less oxygen available at high altitude, mountaineers are subjected to other environmental hazards, such as temperature. As one ascends, for each 3281 ft (1000 m) gain in altitude, temperature drops by 11.7°F (6.5°C). Cold temperatures can contribute to high-altitude illnesses by adding the complications of hypothermia (see page 321) or frostbite (see page 331). Also, for each 984 ft (300 m) gain in altitude, ultraviolet light (see page 209) increases its penetration through the atmosphere by 4%. This increases risks for sunburn, skin cancer, and snow blindness. Dehydration is also common at high altitude, because of exertion, low humidity, rapid breathing, and inadequate oral fluid intake. Sunlight reflecting off glaciers absent a cooling wind can transfer intense radiant heat.

Prevention of high altitude–related disorders

Avoid direct or sudden ascent to a sleeping altitude above 9000 ft (2743 m). If you travel from sea level to 8000 ft (2438 m) in one day, rest there for a day or two before going higher. Acclimatization requires gradual exposure to high altitude, with a rate of ascent not to exceed 1500 ft (457 m) per day at altitudes above 9000 ft (2743 m). Rest days at a constant altitude are essential at heights above 10,000 ft (3048 m). Add an extra night of acclimatization for every 1969 to 2953 ft (600 to 900 m) of ascent. For acclimatization purposes, mild exercise is fine, but extreme exercise might be deleterious. Make day trips to a higher altitude with a return to a lower (proper for acclimatization) altitude for sleep. Acclimatization is achieved by adhering to a schedule of ascent:

For any climb above 9843 ft (3000 m), spend an initial 2 to 3 nights at 8202 to 9843 ft (2500 to 3000 m) before proceeding higher. The first day should be a rest day. Don’t sleep at an altitude more than 984 ft (300 m) above the previous night’s sleeping altitude. If anyone shows signs of high altitude–related illness, spend additional time at this altitude. Don’t ascend to sleep at a higher altitude if you have any symptoms of high-altitude illness.

For any climb above 13,000 ft (3962 m), all members of the party should add 2 to 4 days for acclimatization at 10,000 to 12,000 ft (3048 to 3658 m). Subsequent climbing should not exceed 1500 ft (457 m) per day. A rest day every 2 to 3 days is advised, along with an extra night for acclimatization with any ascent of 2000 ft (609 m) or more. The party should sleep at the lowest altitude that does not interfere with the purpose of the expedition and should sleep no higher than 1312 to 1968 ft (400 to 600 m) above the sleeping altitude of the previous night. The mantra is “Climb high—sleep low.” After a person has acclimatized by adhering to a schedule of slow ascent, it’s important to remember that even a few days at low altitude might cause the adjustments to

> disappear, so that a person is once again susceptible to high-altitude illness, particularly high-altitude pulmonary edema (HAPE).

The drug acetazolamide (Diamox) has proved to be useful in stimulating breathing, diminishing the sleep disorder associated with acute mountain sickness (AMS; see page 351), facilitating the body's normal adjustment to high altitude, and thus improving nocturnal oxygenation and preventing AMS. It is administered in an adult dose of 125 mg twice a day (pediatric dose 2.5 mg per kg [2.2 lb] of body weight to a maximum dose of 125 mg) beginning 24 hours before ascent and continued for a period of 2 days after the highest altitude to be attained; within this period, the initial physiologic acclimatization process should become operative. It can also be given as a 500-mg sustained-action capsule every 24 hours. Acetazolamide should be used if an ascent will be unavoidably rapid. *Don't use acetazolamide in persons with a history of a severe allergic reaction (including anaphylaxis—see page 78) to sulfa or penicillin-derivative drugs.* If you intend to use acetazolamide, take a trial dose of the medication at sea level well in advance of the high-altitude travel, to identify any adverse side effects. Be aware that acetazolamide commonly causes increased urination, altered (bitter) taste of carbonated beverages, numbness and tingling of hands and feet (particularly in cold weather or accompanying sudden temperature changes, such as washing in hot water), and sometimes bone marrow suppression or even impotence. The "usual" allergic reaction is a rash beginning a few days after starting the drug. Acetazolamide can also cause skin rashes (photosensitivity) upon sun exposure.

Ibuprofen has recently been shown to be somewhat effective in reducing the incidence of AMS. It was given to adults in a dose of 600 mg by mouth every 8 hours, beginning 6 hours before ascent. It has not yet been determined for how long after the maximum altitude is attained that the drug should be continued in order to maintain its beneficial effect. Furthermore, ibuprofen is a painkiller in and of itself, so if using it "masks" the hallmark headache symptom of AMS, which might be dangerous. Furthermore, there is a realistic concern that it might cause or worsen gastrointestinal bleeding at high altitude. Until more is known, if ibuprofen is used to prevent AMS, pay particularly close attention to the users.

Acetazolamide has a diuretic (increased urination) effect, so that it's extremely important to drink sufficient fluids to prevent dehydration. Begin administering acetazolamide a day before ascent in order to get past the diuretic (excessive urination) effect, which is maximal in the first 24 hours. Fluid losses are generally greater at high altitude, so don't rely on thirst as a gauge of adequate fluid intake. Drink enough to keep the urine clear and light colored. *Acetazolamide is no substitute for proper acclimatization!*

Using dexamethasone (Decadron), a steroid medication, to prevent AMS (and presumably, high-altitude cerebral edema [HACE; see page 352]), is controversial in the wilderness medicine community. Proponents note that it is very effective; opponents argue that it encourages too-rapid ascents and removes a "rescue drug" that should be reserved for treatment and not used for prevention. If it is used to prevent AMS (such as for persons who are allergic to acetazolamide and who must make a rapid ascent), it can be administered to adults in a dose of 2 mg by mouth every 6 hours or 4 mg by mouth every 12 hours, beginning 24 hours before ascent and optimally continued for no more than 48 hours, at which time the recipient should return to an altitude at or below the origin of the ascent. It is not recommended for use in children as a preventive drug.

Other substances have been advocated for prevention of high-altitude illnesses. These include drugs to prevent HAPE (see later for these recommendations), *Gingko biloba* (inconsistent results, perhaps related to purity of the compound and/or dose), antioxidant "cocktails" (not yet proved effective), and other medications such as naproxen, acetaminophen, antacids, and diuretics (none yet proved effective). *Gingko biloba* seems harmless but is not a substitute for acetazolamide. While adequate hydration is important, overhydration has never been shown to be of benefit to prevent or treat high-altitude illness. Chewed coca leaves, coca tea, and other coca-derived products should not be substituted for proven prevention methods.

"Pre-acclimatization" refers to a method where one attempts to mimic high altitude using a hypobaric (low ambient oxygen content) chamber, with or without exercise. It takes about 7 hours per day for a week at a simulated altitude of 2500 m, or not more than 2000 m below the target altitude of travel, to achieve acclimatization by this method. Wearing suffocating masks and exercising at sea level in the absence of low ambient oxygen does not achieve pre-acclimatization.

When you're traveling at high altitudes, avoid the use of alcohol, stay hydrated and warm, keep out of the wind, avoid exhaustion, and eat regularly to avoid weight loss. Bring tasty foods so that you ingest sufficient calories. A diet relatively high in carbohydrates might be preferable to one high in fat and protein. Avoid the use of alcohol or any drugs for sleep during the first few days at high altitude. Disturbed (poor quality, interrupted) sleep is common at high altitude. Acetazolamide 62.5 to 125 mg by mouth at bedtime diminishes the "periodic breathing" that has traditionally been associated with sleep disturbance, but it might be the enhancement of oxygenation and acclimatization achieved by taking acetazolamide that improve sleep quality. If insomnia is severe *after the acclimatization process has occurred,* zolpidem (Ambien) 5 mg, temazepam (Restoril) 10 to 15 mg, or zaleplon (Sonata) 5 to 10 mg by mouth can be used with caution under the guidance of personnel extremely experienced with high-altitude medical syndromes. Impaired performance (e.g., driving), behavior without conscious thought or intentions, or confusion might be present the morning after using zolpidem, particularly extended-release forms of the medication. A sleeping aid drug can be used in combination with acetazolamide.

It is not known if obstructive sleep apnea contributes to AMS or HAPE. However, a person with sleep apnea should be extremely cautious when traveling at high altitude. Sleep apnea is a condition of episodes that occur during sleep where a person's upper airway collapses and becomes obstructed, accompanied by reduction or stoppage of breathing, all of which leads to low oxygen and high carbon dioxide levels in the blood and often awakening from sleep. An important risk factor for obstructive sleep apnea is obesity. Findings suggestive of sleep apnea include the following: daytime—excessive sleepiness, feeling tired on awakening, fatigue, irritability, difficulty with simple tasks, and shortness of breath; nighttime—loud snoring, witnessed episodes of diminished or absent breathing, poor sleep, frequent awakening, frequent urination at night, and bedwetting. Acetazolamide used in combination with an auto-adjusted continuous positive airway pressure (auto-CPAP) device might be more effective than auto-CPAP alone in reducing breathing disturbances in persons with obstructive sleep apnea.

Since oxygen is transported in red blood cells, it's advisable to avoid being anemic at high altitude. Don't donate blood within four weeks before traveling to high altitude. Iron-deficiency anemia related to menstrual bleeding is common in women. If this is recognized, it should be corrected under the supervision of a physician with administration of ferrous sulfate 300 mg per day; note that a side effect is constipation.

A pregnant woman who wishes to travel to high altitude should be certain that she has a normal pregnancy (e.g., normal blood pressure, no abnormal bleeding, placenta in proper position as determined by ultrasound if necessary). There is a possible increased risk for dangerous hypertension associated with pregnancy (preeclampsia) at high altitude, usually developing after 20 weeks of pregnancy and for up to 1 month after childbirth. Proper acclimatization is essential. Try to keep the sleeping altitude no higher than 10,000 ft (3048 m) and never above 12,000 ft (3658 m). Arterial oxygen saturation measured by pulse oximeter should remain at or above 85%. If a woman has a complicated pregnancy in which her obstetrician has advised caution or restrictions beyond those associated with a normal pregnancy, she should not hike higher than an altitude of 12,000 ft (3658 m). Additionally, ondansetron as an antivomiting drug, which is sometimes used to treat AMS, should probably be avoided in the first trimester of pregnancy if possible, although there is emerging evidence that it is safe.

Regarding children at high altitude, don't bring children younger than 4 to 6 weeks of age to high altitude. Infants who required supplemental oxygen during the neonatal period are at particular risk for high-altitude illness. Avoid traveling to altitude with children who have suffered recent viral infection or situations associated with high pressure in the lungs' vascular system. Children with trisomy 21 are more prone to HAPE than are those with normal chromosomes.

Physical fitness, while desirable for mountaineering, does not protect against high-altitude illness. It is, of course, good to be in excellent physical condition, but this does not substitute in any way for proper acclimatization.

In terms of preexisting conditions and the risk for high-altitude illness or high altitude-related illness, here are some other general guidelines:

Probably no extra risk: Extremes of age, obesity, diabetes, stable condition (e.g., no ongoing angina) after coronary artery bypass surgery, mild chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), controlled asthma, normal (low risk) pregnancy, controlled high blood pressure, controlled seizure disorder, stable psychiatric disorder, cancer, inflammatory diseases

Caution: Moderate COPD, congestive heart failure, sleep apnea, worrisome irregular heart rhythms, recurrent episodes of angina, sickle cell trait (can suffer splenic infarction), cerebrovascular diseases, abnormal lung circulation, poorly controlled seizure disorder, radial keratotomy

High risk: high risk pregnancy, sickle cell anemia with history of crises (can suffer splenic infarction), severe COPD, pulmonary hypertension, poorly controlled congestive heart failure, recent unstable heart condition (e.g., abnormal rhythm requiring intervention)

Persons with unstable preexisting neurologic conditions should not travel to high altitude, because resultant low blood oxygen levels might impair or prevent recovery from the condition. Absolute contraindications to active (e.g., trekking or climbing) or passive (e.g., motorized vehicle transport) ascent are an unstable condition, high risk for a repeat stroke, or a transient ischemic attack (TIA, see page 165) within the past 90 days. Persons with a residual "central" neurologic deficit (e.g., from a stroke) or peripheral (e.g., from multiple sclerosis or severe diabetic neuropathy) deficit should not actively ascend, but they may passively ascend. Relative contraindications (speak to your physician for advice) include a severe narrowing or occlusion of a cerebral artery, space-occupying lesion (e.g., brain tumor), poorly controlled seizure disorder, or cerebral aneurysm (dilated blood vessel that might leak or burst). Any person who has suffered a stroke should consult with their physician to determine whether a high-altitude sojourn should be allowed, and if so, if antiplatelet (anti blood clotting) therapy should be started. Persons with dementia should be watched very closely for increase in impairment. Preexisting headaches are not a contraindication for a trip to high altitude.

If a person suffers from any chronic condition, they should clear travel of an extreme nature (high altitude, cold, hot, exertion) with a physician and become educated on potential problems and solutions.

High-altitude pulmonary edema

Pulmonary edema is excess fluid in the lungs, either in the lung tissue itself or in the space normally used for gas exchange (oxygen for carbon dioxide). Fluid in the lungs renders them unable to perform their normal task, and thus the victim cannot get enough oxygen.

HAPE usually occurs in an unacclimatized individual—typically a male—who rapidly ascends to an altitude that exceeds 8000 ft (2438 m), particularly if heavy exertion is involved. Prior traditional physical conditioning is not protective; many cases involve young, previously healthy individuals. If the victim exercises above 8000 ft (2438 m) but sleeps at a lower altitude (such as 6000 ft or 1829 m), their risk for developing HAPE is much less.

Symptoms begin 1 to 3 days after arrival at high altitude. They include decreased exercise tolerance and increased recovery time, shortness of breath (very worrisome if it occurs at rest), cough, weakness, easy fatigue (especially when walking uphill), new inability to keep up with the group, and difficulty sleeping. Signs of AMS (see page 353) are often present. As greater amounts of fluid accumulate in the lungs, the victim develops drowsiness, severe shortness of breath, and rapid heart rate; their initial dry and gentle (“soft”) cough produces white phlegm and then blood (pink, frothy sputum—a late sign); they exhibit confusion and cyanosis (bluish discoloration of the skin, particularly noticeable in the nail beds and lips). If you place an ear to the victim’s chest, you might hear crackling or gurgling noises. The symptoms worsen at night. Rapidly, the victim becomes extremely agitated, disoriented, and sweaty; they are in obvious extreme respiratory distress. Confusion, collapse, and coma follow (which might represent coexisting HACE—see below). The victim might show a fever of up to 101.3°F (38.5°C).

As soon as the earliest signs of HAPE are present, the victim should be evacuated (carried, if necessary) to a lower altitude at which there were previously no symptoms. Such early warning signs include rapid heart rate (greater than 90 to 100 beats per minute at rest), weakness, shortness of breath, cough, difficulty walking, inability to keep up, and poor judgment. Maximum rest is advised.

The definitive treatments are descent and administration of oxygen; if it is available, oxygen at a flow rate of 4 to 6 liters per minute should be administered by face mask (see page 431). Improvement is rarely noted, until oxygen is administered or descent of at least 1640 to 3281 ft (500 to 1000 m) is accomplished. If the victim improves, diminish the flow rate of oxygen to 2 to 4 liters per minute (try to maintain arterial oxygen saturation above 90% as measured by pulse oximeter) to conserve supplies.

In no case should a victim be left to descend by themself. Always have a healthy person accompany them. If the victim must be carried down, they should be kept in a sitting position, if possible. Keep them warm.

Consider having the victim inhale albuterol or salmeterol from a metered-dose inhaler according to the directions. Administration of fluid pills (diuretics) is controversial and should be done only under strict medical supervision, as should administration of morphine.

A drug that may help treat HAPE is nifedipine, which lowers obstructive pressure in the pulmonary arterial circulation (which carries deoxygenated blood from the heart through the lungs). The first dose is 10 mg chewed and then swallowed. This is followed by 10 mg every 4 to 6 hours, or 30 mg sustained-release preparation every 12 hours (or 20 mg extended-release every 8 hours). The dose in children for HAPE is 0.5 mg per kg (2.2. lb) of body weight (to a maximum dose of 10 mg) by mouth every 8 hours. Since this drug is also used to treat high blood pressure, a side effect can be low blood pressure and dizziness, particularly if the victim is dehydrated. These particular side effects seem to be minimal when the sustained-release preparation is used. Sildenafil (Viagra) 50 mg by mouth every 8 hours, or tadalafil (Cialis) 10 mg by mouth every 12 hours, has been used to prevent HAPE because of its effect on lowering pressure in part of the circulation within the lungs but has not been well studied for treatment.

Nifedipine has also been used successfully to prevent HAPE in subjects with a history of repeated episodes. The dose for prevention is 20 mg of the extended-release preparation every 8 hours or 30 mg of the extended-release preparation every 12 hours. Other drugs that have been suggested for prevention include tadalafil and sildenafil (see above), and inhaled salmeterol 125 μg by inhalation twice a day (in conjunction with oral medication; not to be used alone for prevention). Dexamethasone in a dose of 8 mg twice a day beginning 2 days before high altitude exposure has been suggested to prevent HAPE, particularly in persons with a history of this condition.

Some aid stations and expedition teams in high-altitude regions are equipped with an inflatable pressure bag (such as a "Gamow bag") large enough to enclose a human (see page 355). This portable hyperbaric chamber is used to simulate conditions at lower altitude and can be used to treat moderate or severe high-altitude illness including HAPE and HACE. If a Gamow-type bag is used, note that foot pumping to keep it inflated must be continuous, so it's wise to recruit additional rescuers.

Once a victim has been judged to suffer from any degree of HAPE, they should no longer be a candidate for high-altitude travel until cleared by a physician. Such a precaution does not include routine jet airplane transportation.

High-altitude cerebral edema

HACE is the medical term for a disorder (theoretically linked to brain swelling) that involves an alteration of mental status seen at high altitude, related to diminished atmospheric oxygen. It might be present in someone who has worsened from AMS (see below) or who is suffering from HAPE. When HACE occurs, it is often after two or more days at an altitude of 13,123 ft (4000 m) or more. The hallmark symptom is staggering (ataxic) gait (difficulty walking: loss of balance, inability to walk a straight line, or frank inability to walk). Symptoms include headache (often throbbing), clumsiness, amnesia, difficulty in speaking, drowsiness, vomiting, mild fever, and, in severe cases, confusion, blurred vision, blindness, unconsciousness, paralysis, and/or coma. Other symptoms might include mood changes, hallucinations, paralysis of an arm and/or leg, and seizures. Victims are often gray or pale in appearance. Imbalance or the inability to walk heel to toe in a straight line is a very worrisome sign and should prompt immediate action to treat the victim. An extremely drowsy person might slip rapidly into a coma. "High-altitude headache" is often the first noxious symptom noted on exposure to high altitude and might be the harbinger of AMS (see later). There is emerging thought that psychosis (see page 317) can be triggered by very high altitude. This would need to be differentiated from HACE.

Treatment for HACE is immediate descent to an altitude below one at which the victim previously had no symptoms, and administration of oxygen at a flow rate of 5 to 10 liters per minute by face mask or nasal cannula (tube) (see page 431). Attempt to descend at least 3000 ft (914 m). If the victim becomes severely ill, they should be brought (carried, if necessary, and preferably in the sitting position) to a lower altitude (below 5000 ft or 1524 m). In addition, administration of the steroid drug dexamethasone (Decadron) 8 mg first dose, and then 4 mg every 6 hours until descent is accomplished, is often helpful and absolutely indicated. The pediatric dose of dexamethasone is 0.3 mg per kg (2.2 lb) of body weight for the first dose, followed by 0.15 mg per kg (maximum dose 4 mg) every 6 hours. Again, *never leave a potentially seriously ill person to fend for themself.* A victim of HACE or HAPE can deteriorate rapidly, and most will need to be transported down the mountain. As with HAPE, a Gamow bag can be used for treatment (see page 355). Because the early symptoms of AMS (see later) and HACE are similar, pay close attention to the condition of ill members of your climbing party. If all appropriate measures are taken to treat HACE, and the person doesn't completely recover, they should be evacuated to see if there is another neurological problem, such as a stroke or brain tumor.

If a person has suffered any form of traumatic brain injury (see page 72), it is prudent to allow at least 90 days after resolution of all symptoms before ascending to high altitude. Acclimatization should be very gradual; pre-acclimatization is recommended; and use acetazolamide if there is not time for slow ascent. Be accustomed to the intended exercise and always carry dexamethasone as a "rescue drug" (see above). Anyone with persistent symptoms (even if improving) should not sleep at an altitude above ft (3000 m). If there is any residual fluid collection within the skull (such as hydrocephalus), then be extremely cautious, because brain volume expands with increasing altitude.

Acute mountain sickness

AMS is the most common high altitude–related disorder. It affects persons who ascend to altitudes above 8200 ft (2500 m) from below 4921 ft (1500 m) and are unable to keep pace with acclimatization. A person who is partially acclimatized might be stricken if they ascend rapidly to a higher altitude.

Clinicians and researchers have used the Lake Louise Scoring System for Acute Mountain Sickness to diagnose and score the severity of AMS. It underwent consensus revision in 2017. The current Lake Louise AMS Score is:

- Headache:
  - 0 None
  - 1 Mild headache
  - 2 Moderate headache
  - 3 Severe (incapacitating) headache
- Gastrointestinal symptoms:
  - 0 None
  - 1 Poor appetite or nausea
  - 2 Moderate nausea or vomiting
  - 3 Severe (incapacitating) nausea and vomiting
- Fatigue and/or weakness:
  - 0 Not tired or weak
  - 1 Mild fatigue or weakness
  - 2 Moderate fatigue or weakness
  - 3 Severe (incapacitating) fatigue or weakness
- Dizziness or lightheadedness:
  - 0 None
  - 1 Mild
  - 2 Moderate
  - 3 Severe (incapacitating)
- Overall Functional Score:
  - How did these AMS symptoms affect your activities?
    - 0 Not at all
    - 1 No change in activity or itinerary
    - 2 Symptoms forced me to stop the ascent or to descend under my own power
    - 3 I had to be evacuated to a lower altitude

Symptoms of AMS can start within 2 hours after arrival at altitude and rarely begin after 48 hours at a given altitude. They might be quite subtle in the beginning and are most commonly headache (in its mildest form sometimes called "high-altitude headache") of a throbbing nature, combined with one or more of the following: fatigue (tiredness), dizziness or lightheadedness, loss of appetite, nausea or vomiting, and frequent awakening during sleep. The headache can be global, located on both sides of the head or in the back of the head; made worse by simultaneously straining and holding one's breath; and is worse at night or when bending over. Other symptoms include insomnia, poor appetite, nausea, vomiting, drowsiness, dizziness, lightheadedness, weakness, fatigue, and loss of motivation or apathy. Poor sleep is not currently considered a diagnostic criterion for AMS, but anyone who has sudden change in sleep patterns should be watched closely. Some people have described the suffering associated with AMS as similar to a hangover. Children are prone to nausea and vomiting as a manifestation of AMS, as well as fussiness, lack of playfulness, poor appetite, and poor sleep. The lips and fingernails might have a blue discoloration (cyanosis) if HAPE is present.

The most common and disabling symptom of AMS is headache that typically occurs on the second or third day at high altitude and might be complicated by difficulty in walking (particularly if HAPE is present) and impaired memory. The headache is mild to severe and as described earlier. Mild symptoms of HACE accompany AMS; they include decreased appetite, mood swings, and lack of interest in activity. Some victims complain of a deep inner chill. AMS is sometimes mistaken for a viral illness, such as the flu, or exhaustion or dehydration. Lassitude might be so severe that the victim is too apathetic to contribute to their own basic needs. The symptoms of AMS can be confused with dehydration, exhaustion, bacterial or viral infection, hypothermia, carbon monoxide poisoning, migraine headache, low blood sugar, TIA or stroke, illicit drug ingestion, or psychiatric disease.

One cause of AMS, known as periodic breathing, is an alteration of the normal sleeping pattern. Sleep is fitful, with periods of wakefulness or disturbing dreams. The pattern of breathing becomes irregular, such that the sleeper has periods of rapid breathing (very deep breaths) alternated with periods of no breathing. The latter can be quite startling to the casual observer—intervals of 10 seconds can pass without a breath. Acetazolamide, 125 mg at bedtime, diminishes periodic breathing, improves oxygenation, and is safe to use as a sleeping aid. Insomnia from other causes might respond to short-acting drugs for sleep, such as zolpidem (Ambien) 5 to 10 mg, zaleplon (Sonata) 5 to 10 mg, triazolam (Halcion) 0.125 mg, or temazepam (Restoril) 10 to 15 mg. As mentioned previously, these medications must be used with extreme caution in a person who is suffering incipient AMS, because any amount of respiratory depression might lead to decreased oxygenation. Also, sleep medication might mask the symptoms of HACE.

Treatment for AMS includes rest, adequate fluid intake to avoid dehydration, light exercise, and mild pain medicine for the headache. *First and foremost, do not proceed to a higher sleeping altitude unless all symptoms have completely resolved.* Oxygen administration (0.5 to 1.5 liters per minute by nasal cannula or simple open face mask to raise arterial oxygen saturation to greater than 90% as measured by pulse oximeter) might be effective for the headache, as might be acetaminophen or an NSAID. The victim can be led to a lower altitude, preferably at least 1640 to 3281 ft (500 to 1000 m) below that where symptoms began. This should be done particularly when the victim is felt to suffer from severe AMS or does not improve after 24 hours at the altitude where AMS began. Many victims of AMS will adjust to the current altitude in a period from 12 hours to 3 to 4 days, and therefore may remain at a stable altitude if symptoms are mild and improving. *Again, in no case should a person attempt to climb to (or, particularly, sleep at) a higher altitude until the symptoms of AMS have completely subsided.* If symptoms worsen appreciably while a person remains at rest at a constant altitude, descent is indicated. Attempt to descend at least 1500 ft (457 m). The goal is to descend to lowest reasonable possible altitude. With mild AMS, acetazolamide (Diamox) can be administered in a dose of 250 mg by mouth every 12 hours until symptoms diminish. The dose in children is 2.5 mg per kg (2.2 lb) of body weight every 12 hours, up to 250 mg per dose. Give this medication for 2 days while at altitude or until symptoms have diminished, whichever is shorter.

Prochlorperazine (Compazine) 10 mg by mouth or 25 mg by suppository can be given for nausea and vomiting, with the added benefit that it might stimulate the beneficial ventilatory (breathing) response that is triggered by a low oxygen content in the blood (associated with high altitude and called the “hypoxic ventilatory response”). The dose in children older than 2 years of age is 0.4 mg per kg (2.2 lb) of body weight per day, by mouth or by oral suppository, in three or four divided doses. Promethazine (Phenergan) is fine as an alternative for adults, in a dose of 25 to 50 mg by mouth or suppository. Another effective drug is ondansetron (Zofran) 4 mg oral dissolving tablet. Aspirin, acetaminophen, or ibuprofen can be given for headache. Avoid the use of alcohol or other respiratory depressants. Minimize excessive physical exertion.

If an oxygen cylinder is available (see page 431), low-flow (0.5 to 2 liters per minute) oxygen by nasal cannula (tube) or face mask is particularly effective if used for sleep. This alone might be adequate to halt the progression of mild AMS and allow a victim to acclimatize without descent to a lower altitude. However, if this approach is taken, the victim should not be left alone until all symptoms of AMS have resolved. The victim who spends a few hours in a hyperbaric chamber, which simulates descent, will notice diminution of symptoms and benefit from hastened acclimatization (see Gamow bag page 355).

If AMS is moderate to severe and certainly if there is reason to suspect that HACE is developing (the victim wishes to be left alone or is becoming confused, cannot perform simple tasks such as eating and dressing, is vomiting, and cannot walk a straight line), administer dexamethasone as previously recommended for HACE and descend to a lower altitude (at least 1640 to 3281 ft (500 to 1000 m). AMS can progress to HACE with coma in less than 24 hours.

As noted previously, dexamethasone is used by some climbers to prevent AMS. Dexamethasone should not be used for routine prevention, because it does not enhance acclimatization, but rather, masks symptoms. It might be useful for persons who are performing a rapid ascent and who cannot tolerate acetazolamide, but with extreme caution, as it does nothing to prevent HAPE and if descent is delayed and dexamethasone discontinued, the rebound effect can cause rapid onset of severe AMS or HACE. It can be used to treat AMS in an adult dose of 8 mg by mouth first dose, then 4 mg every 6 hours. It should optimally be used for no more than 48 hours, during which time descent should be undertaken, from where acclimatization may proceed. A person should not ascend until they are asymptomatic and not taking dexamethasone. At that point, if reascent is attempted, strong consideration should be given to using acetazolamide at an adult dose of 250 mg by mouth twice a day.

Ginkgo biloba administered in a dose of 100 mg by mouth twice a day has been suggested to reduce the incidence of AMS, and perhaps to be helpful as a therapy. This is not as reliable as acetazolamide. Choose a commercial product that has a validated quantity of active ingredient(s).

Untreated, AMS might resolve spontaneously within approximately 3 days. If symptoms of AMS worsen despite 24 hours of additional acclimatization and/or treatment, have the victim descend immediately to a lower altitude. A reasonable descent is a minimum of 1640 to 3281 ft (500 to 1000 m). The goal is to descend to lowest reasonable possible altitude.

Normally at high altitude as people acclimatize, they urinate more, whether they are taking acetazolamide. They should awaken at least once during the night to urinate. If this does not happen or if they infrequently urinate during the daytime, they might be dehydrated and should be watched closely for signs of AMS.

Gamow bag (portable hyperbaric chamber)

The definitive treatment for severe altitude illness is rapid descent to an elevation where symptoms resolve. If an actual descent can't be achieved because of weather, darkness, injuries, group resources, etc., then a portable hyperbaric chamber such as a Gamow bag (Fig. 228) can be used to simulate descent and treat a victim of high-altitude illness.

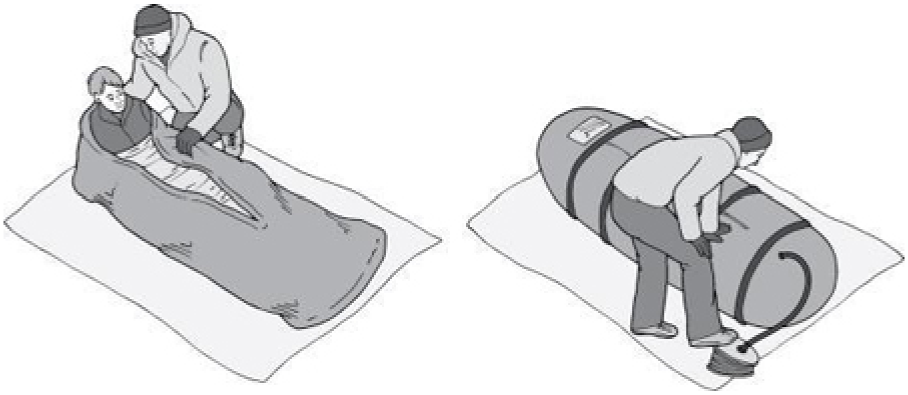


FIG. 228 Gamow bag. A portable hyperbaric chamber that can be used to temporarily treat severe high-altitude illness by simulating descent.

The cylinder-shaped Gamow container is a small, portable hyperbaric chamber that can be pressurized with a foot pump to 2 lb (0.9 kg) per square inch, which simulates a descent of approximately 5000 ft (15240 m) from a starting altitude of 12000 ft (3658 m). The exact equivalent of descent depends on the altitude at which the bag is deployed with a higher starting altitude having a larger simulated descent. The victim should be placed in the bag for 1 to 6 hours. Treatment sessions can be repeated. When the victim is removed from bag symptoms may promptly return. In addition, oxygen from a tank can be administered to the victim by face mask (see page 431) within the bag, but this limited resource may be better used during the victim's evacuation.

If your expedition group carries a Gamow bag, then train with it in a practice scenario before needing it for real.

Guidelines for using a Gamow bag include:

1. Assess and manage ABCs (see page 18). A victim needs to be breathing on their own and protecting their own airway before being placed in the Gamow bag.
2. Place the Gamow bag on a smooth, flat surface. Sleeping bags and pads can be used inside the bag to keep the victim warm.
3. Have the victim climb, or lift them, inside the bag so their head is by the window. Put an altimeter watch and a pulse oximeter, if available, on the victim to monitor while the bag is pressurized. The victim should be dressed in warm, dry clothes and placed into a sleeping bag as needed.

4. Attach foot pump and begin pumping. The foot pump may have one port for initial inflation that outputs a larger volume and another port to which the hose should be switched after the bag is mostly inflated to achieve the desired pressure. Foot pumping must be continuous for the duration of the treatment in the bag. Plan for shifts of foot pumpers and have a flat stable surface.
5. Zip the bag closed. Attach any exterior straps. Continue pumping. The airtight bag will become firm.
6. The Gamow bag has a pressure relief valve that should begin to vent once full bag pressure (2 psi) has been achieved. If the relief valve is damaged or fails, the zipper can be slightly vented to allow for air exchange. As the pressure increases the victim may feel pressure on their ears (ear squeeze, see page 410) and should open and close their mouth to equilibrate their ears and signal to rescuers if ear pain becomes extreme.
7. Continue pumping to maintain air exchange (relief valve) and the desired pressure. The simulated altitude can be monitored by the altimeter watch on the victim. Ten to 20 foot pumps per minute must be continued at all times to maintain pressure and fresh air flow through the bag.
8. Monitor the victim continuously while in the bag.
9. To remove the victim: Stop pumping. Detach pump hose, depress valve stem to begin air release then fully unzip bag. Warn the victim to not hold their breath to avoid theoretical risk of barotrauma during rapid pressure release.
10. The Gamow bag is a temporary treatment tool. The definitive treatment for severe altitude illness is rapid evacuation to an actual lower altitude.

Other disorders of high altitude

High-altitude headache

The first unpleasant symptom of high-altitude exposure is often headache, which might or might not be a prelude to AMS (which would be accompanied by nausea, vomiting, fatigue, dizziness, or difficulty sleeping). It can be effectively treated with an NSAID, acetaminophen, or aspirin, and has been effectively treated with the drugs used to prevent or treat AMS (acetazolamide and dexamethasone), or oxygen inhalation at low flow rates (0.5 to 2 liters per minute by nasal cannula to raise arterial oxygen saturation as measured by pulse oximeter to greater than 90%). Avoid narcotics because they can suppress breathing and predispose to AMS. High-altitude headache can be confused with migraine headache (see page 194), which would be better treated with antimigraine medication (such as sumatriptan [Imitrex]). If headache is present at high altitude, it should be presumed to be a high-altitude headache and the victim not allowed to ascend further until the headache is completely gone.

Fluid retention

Swelling of the face, hands, and feet might occur after 4 to 10 days at increased altitude. Women are more commonly affected than are men, and they note puffiness of the hands, feet, eyelids, and face, particularly in the morning after a night's sleep or just before a menstrual period. Ten or more pounds (4.5 kg) can be gained in fluid retention. The swelling persists for 1 to 3 days after return to lower altitude, and then spontaneously disappears (increased urination is noted at this time). The disorder is a nuisance, but of no real medical hazard. Salt intake should be controlled so as not to be excessive. Avoid fluid pills (diuretics), which promote dehydration and rarely reduce the swelling to any significant degree. These should be used only in the absence of AMS under the supervision of trained medical personnel. If the swelling is bothersome to the person, acetazolamide 125 to 250 mg once a day may be taken, which hastens acclimatization. A person who retains fluid at high altitude should be examined for signs and symptoms of HACE and HAPE.

Visual changes after radial keratotomy

Visual changes might occur at high altitude in persons who have undergone radial keratotomy, in which 4 to 8 incisions are made in the cornea to cure nearsightedness. Perhaps because the cornea is now not as strong, or for other reasons yet to be determined, there might be a significant farsighted shift and corneal flattening, which cause blurred vision. This does not appear to be the case following photorefractive keratectomy or laser-assisted in situ keratomileusis (LASIK). A person who has undergone radial keratotomy should consider carrying "plus" glasses or goggles to correct an unexpected condition of farsighted vision.

High-altitude flatus expulsion

High-altitude flatus expulsion (HAFE) is the spontaneous and unwelcome passage of increased quantities of rectal gas noted at high altitude. It might become an embarrassment but is of no true medical concern. Avoid foods such as chili and beans that are known to induce flatulence at low altitudes and show consideration for other members of the party in sleeping arrangements. If stricken, a traveler might benefit from chewable tablets of simethicone (Mylicon 80 mg) or simethicone 80 mg with activated charcoal 250 mg (Flatulex tablets) once or twice a day. Charcoal Plus is another simethicone-activated charcoal preparation.

Altitude throat

Altitude throat (pharyngitis) is a sore throat caused by nasal congestion and mouth breathing during exertion at high altitudes. Because the air is dry and cold, the protective mucous coating of the throat is dried out and the throat becomes extremely irritated, with redness and pain. In general, this can be distinguished from a bacterial or viral infection (see page 216) by the absence of fever, swollen lymph glands in the neck, or systemic symptoms (fatigue, muscle aches, sweats, and the like). Prevention is difficult and treatment is only mildly satisfying. The victim should keep their throat moist by sipping liquids and sucking on throat lozenges or hard candies (Life Savers, for instance). As soon as convenient, nighttime breathing of warm humidified air should be instituted. Avoid anesthetic gargles, since they will mask the signs of a true infection. If the inside of the nose becomes dried out, this can be treated with topical ointment (e.g., bacitracin, mupirocin, or petroleum jelly).

High-altitude bronchitis and cough

Most bronchitis has an infectious cause (see page 227). High-altitude bronchitis is more likely to be caused by relative hyperventilation of cold, dry air. This causes the secretions in the respiratory passages to thicken. The resulting airway irritation causes a persistent cough, which can cause coughing fits sufficiently severe to lead to broken ribs. Treatment consists of humidification of inspired air, which can be accomplished transiently by cautiously breathing steam, and over the longer term by breathing through a porous scarf or balaclava that allows retention of moisture and heat. High-altitude cough has been treated successfully empirically by inhalation of an inhaled fluticasone propionate–salmeterol (steroid-bronchodilator) combination drug (Advair Diskus). An alternative would be inhaled fluticasone furoate and vilanterol (Breo), noting that neither combination has been studied formally for high-altitude cough. Anticough medication can be used (see page 495).

Snow blindness

See page 209.

Snakebite

Venomous snakes

Snake bites are an enormous problem worldwide, leading to death and disfigurement. A global agenda will hopefully encourage production of improved region- and snake-specific antivenoms.

Two types of venomous snakes are indigenous to the United States: pit vipers (rattlesnake, cottonmouth [water moccasin], copperhead) and coral snakes. Their distributions are as follows:

Northeast: Cottonmouth, copperhead, timber rattlesnake
Southeast: Cottonmouth, copperhead, eastern diamondback rattlesnake, pygmy rattlesnake, eastern coral snake
Central: Cottonmouth, copperhead, massasauga rattlesnake, timber rattlesnake, prairie rattlesnake
Southwest: Cottonmouth, copperhead, pygmy rattlesnake, massasauga rattlesnake, northern black-tailed rattlesnake, prairie rattlesnake, sidewinder, Mojave rattlesnake, western diamondback rattlesnake, red diamondback rattlesnake, Texas coral snake, Sonoran coral snake
Pacific Coast: Northern Pacific rattlesnake, southern Pacific rattlesnake, Great Basin rattlesnake, western diamondback rattlesnake, red diamondback rattlesnake, sidewinder, Mojave rattlesnake

In the United States, 98% of venomous bites are from pit vipers. In addition, many "nonvenomous" species, such as colubrid (rear-fanged) snakes (including the red-neck keelback), are capable of producing painful bites. There are no indigenous venomous snakes in Hawaii or Alaska.

Pit vipers are typified by rattlesnakes, which have a characteristic triangular head, vertical elliptical pupils ("cat's eyes"), two elongated and hinged fangs in the front part of the jaw, heat-sensing (infrared-sensing) facial pits on the sides of the head midway between and below the level of the eyes and the nostrils, a single row of scales on the underbelly leading to the tail (not seen in nonvenomous snakes, which have a double row of scales on the underbelly), and (often) rattles on the tail (Fig. 229). The snake's age and potency of venom are not determined by the number of rattles, since molting can occur up to four times a year. Because fangs are replaced every 6 to 10 weeks in the adult rattlesnake, bites might demonstrate from one to four large puncture marks. An adult pit viper can strike at a speed of 8 ft (2.4 m) per second. The rattlesnake might strike without a preliminary warning rattle.

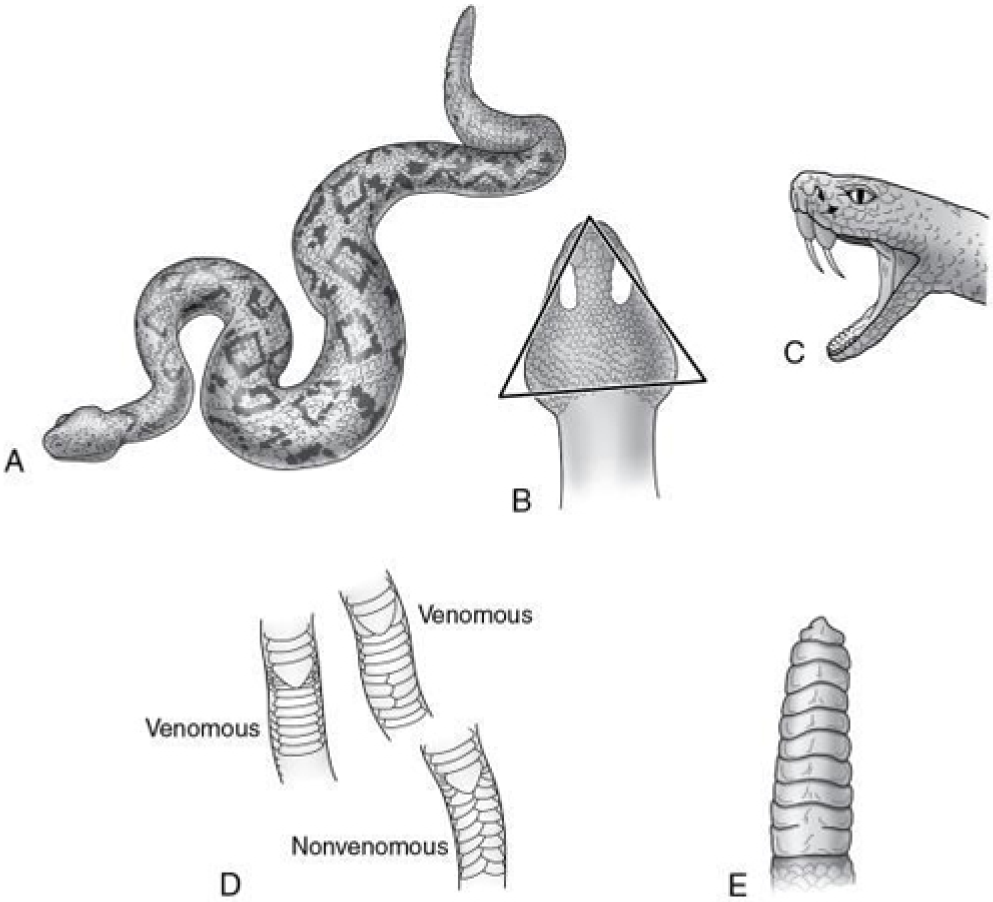


FIG. 229 Rattlesnake. **A,** Typical rattlesnake appearance, with features of identification that include *triangular* head **(B),** hinged fangs **(C),** single row of underbelly scales leading up to the anal plate **(D),** and a rattle on the tail **(E).**

Coral snakes are characterized by their color pattern, with red, black, and yellow or white bands encircling the body (Fig. 230). With the venomous species, the rings completely encircle the body, and every other mid-body ring is yellow (or white). A general rule is “red on yellow (or white)—kill a fellow (venomous); red on black—venom lack (nonvenomous).” This rule applies to coral snakes native to the United States, but does not apply to species in non-U.S. countries. Because of the average person’s inability to accurately identify a snake, another rule is “Red on yellow...Don’t pick up snakes!” The fangs are very short and fixed; the snakes have round pupils, and they bite with a chewing, rather than striking, action. They also might have a double row of scales on the underbelly.

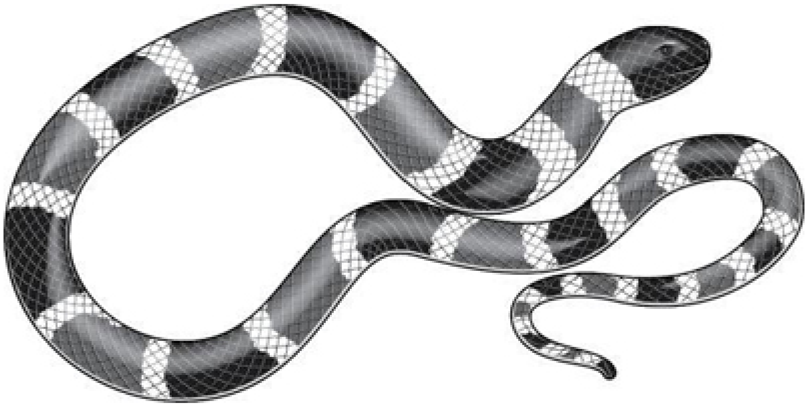


FIG. 230 Coral snake.

A three-step identification method has been proposed to recognize dangerous snakes in the United States and Canada. The mid-dorsal (top) scales of native pit vipers have a longitudinal ridge like a keel; these ridged scales can be easily distinguished from smooth scales without ridges. As previously noted, all native pit vipers have a single row of scales on the underbelly, while harmless native snakes have a double row of scales on the underbelly. The tree snakes that are exceptions to this rule, in that they are harmless but have a single row of subcaudal scales, also have smooth dorsal scales, indicating that they are not venomous. So, to determine whether a snake is a venomous species, one first asks, “Are scales near the top surface midline keeled? If the answer is “no,” then the snake is not dangerous. If the answer is “Yes,” then the question is asked, “Are most of the underbelly scales in a single row?” If the answer is “No,” then the snake is not dangerous. If the answer is “Yes,” then the snake is dangerous. Rattlesnakes have both ridged dorsal scales and a single row of underbelly scales, but it is entirely reasonable to forego inspection when a rattle is obviously present.

For venomous coral snakes in the United States, the rings completely encircle the body, and every other mid-body ring is yellow or white. So, to determine a venomous species, one first asks, “Is every other mid-body ring yellow or white?” If the answer is “No,” then the snake is not dangerous. If the answer is “Yes,” then the question is asked, “Do all three colors completely encircle the body, including across the belly?” If the answer is “No,” then the snake is not dangerous. If the answer is “Yes,” then the snake is dangerous.

Snake wine is created by marinating a snake in wine, sometimes for months. Drinking it can cause abnormal blood clotting. This usually occurs in Asian countries. If someone is known to have drunk snake wine, bring them to medical attention.

Signs of envenomation

Most snakebites don't result in envenomation, because the snake does not release venom, the skin is not penetrated, or the venom is not potent. Therefore, it's important to recognize the signs of envenomation, in order to avoid needless worry, evacuation, and improper therapy.

The most common signs of envenomation are as follows:

Pit vipers

1. One or more fang marks. Most snakebites (venomous and nonvenomous) will demonstrate rows of markings from the teeth. In the case of venomous snakes, there will be one to four larger distinct markings from the elongated fangs that inoculate the victim with venom (Fig. 231). Venomous snakebite wounds tend to bleed more freely than bites from animals and insects.
2. Burning pain at the site of the bite. *This might not be present with the bite of the Mojave rattlesnake.*
3. Swelling at the site of the bite. This usually begins within 5 to 10 minutes of envenomation and might become quite severe. *This might not be present with the bite of the Mojave rattlesnake.*
4. Numbness and tingling of the lips, face, fingers, toes, and scalp 30 to 60 minutes after the bite. This can also be present if the victim hyperventilates with fear and excitement (see page 316). If a victim of a snakebite has immediate symptoms, these are likely to be due to hyperventilation.
5. Twitching of the mouth, face, neck, eye, and bitten extremity muscles 30 to 90 minutes after the bite.
6. Rubbery or metallic taste in the mouth 30 to 90 minutes after the bite.
7. Sweating, weakness, nausea, vomiting, and fainting 1 to 2 hours after the bite. Additional symptoms include chest tightness, rapid breathing rate (20 to 25 breaths per minute), rapid heart rate (125 to 175 beats per minute), palpitations, headache, chills, and confusion.
8. Bruising at the site of the bite. This usually begins within 2 to 3 hours. Large blood blisters might develop within 6 to 10 hours. The risk of developing bleeding after a rattlesnake bite is greater in persons who take anticoagulant medications ("blood thinners").
9. Difficulty breathing, increased bleeding (bruising, bloody urine, bloody bowel movements, vomiting blood), and collapse 6 to 12 hours after the

bite.

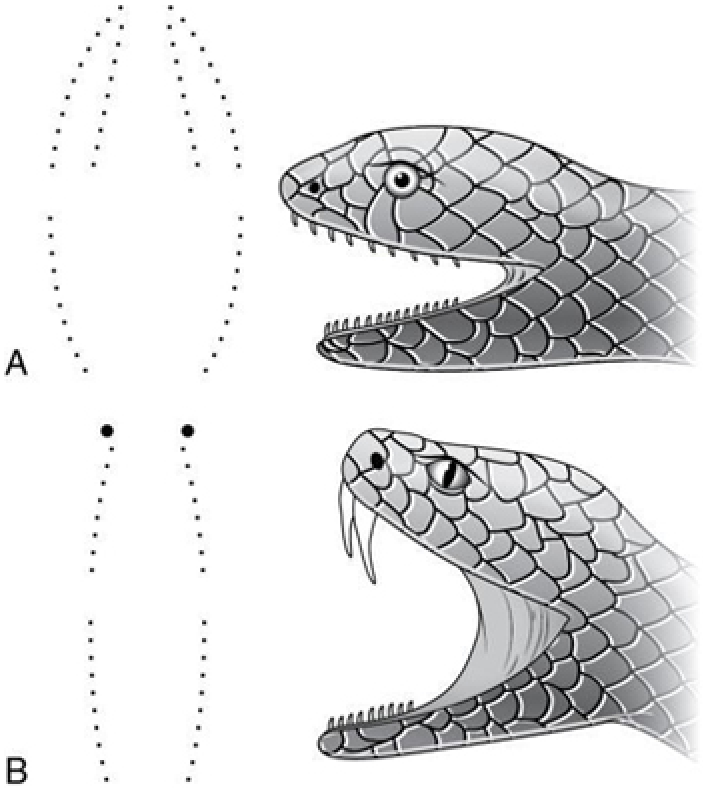


FIG. 231 Snakebite patterns. **A,** Nonvenomous snake. **B,** Venomous snake.

Predictive features of a severe envenomation include time from the bite to treatment of 6 or more hours; victim 12 years of age or younger; and bites from large snakes. In the field, this would advise someone to seek definitive care as soon as possible.

Coral snakes

1. Burning pain at the site of the bite might be present or absent. There is generally very little local swelling or bruising, and certainly much less than that seen with the bite of a pit viper.
2. Numbness and/or weakness of a bitten arm or leg within 90 minutes.
3. Twitching, nervousness, drowsiness, giddiness, increased salivation, and drooling in 1 to 3 hours. Vomiting might occur.
4. Slurred speech, double vision, difficulty talking and swallowing, and impaired breathing within 5 to 10 hours.

5. Death from heart and lung failure.

Treatment of snakebite

If a person is bitten by a snake that could be venomous, act swiftly. *The definitive treatment for serious snake venom poisoning is administration of antivenom. The most important aspect of therapy is to get the victim to an appropriate medical facility as quickly as possible.*

1. Don't panic. Most bites, even by venomous snakes, don't result in medically significant envenomation. Reassure the victim and keep them from acting in an energy-consuming, purposeless fashion. If the victim has been envenomed, increased physical activity might increase their illness by hastening the spread of venom. If the victim is hyperventilating from fear, manage according to the instructions on page 316. For pit vipers, signs and symptoms that seem to portend more difficulty in initially diminishing the adverse clinical effects using antivenom (and therefore should encourage prompt evacuation to medical attention) are increased bleeding, neurologic symptoms, or a severe bite (as judged by the combination of progressive swelling and pain, and the presence of more than two other venom effects as listed previously).
2. Retreat out of the striking range of the snake, which for safety's sake should be considered to be the snake's body length (for pit vipers, it is actually approximately half the body length). A rattlesnake can strike at a speed of 8 ft (2.4 m) per second.
3. Locate the snake. If possible, identify the species. If you cannot do this with confidence (which is only important for the Mojave rattlesnake and coral snake), photograph the snake using a digital camera. Don't attempt to capture or kill the snake, for fear of wasting time and perhaps provoking another bite. Never delay transport of the victim to capture a snake. If the snake is dead, take care to handle it with a very long stick or shovel, and to carry the dead animal in a container that will not allow the head of the snake to bite another victim (the jaws can bite in a reflex action for up to 90 minutes after death). If you aren't sure how to collect the snake, it's best just to get away from it.
4. If materials are readily available, a splint can be fashioned to fit the bitten body part, to avoid unnecessary motion. Allow room for swelling within the splint. Maintain the bitten arm or leg in a position of comfort. Remove tight clothing and in particular any jewelry, which could become an inadvertent tourniquet. If a person needs to walk to get to medical attention, then a splint on the leg might be impractical. Don't

waste time making a fancy arm splint—a sling will suffice. Some snakebite authorities are ambivalent about splinting, so if it can't be done, it's probably not a big problem.

5. Transport the victim to the nearest hospital. If you are alone, walk—don't run—toward help. If you travel for a few hours and nothing happens other than a bit of pain and swelling, then the prognosis is probably good. If you are so far away from help that walking for a few hours isn't going to accomplish anything, you might wish to stay put and conserve your strength. If there is any chance that the envenomation is significant, seek medical attention as soon as possible, so that antivenom can be administered under the guidance of a qualified health professional.
6. *Don't apply ice directly to the wound or immerse the part in ice water.* An ice pack placed over the wound (as one would do for a sprain) is of no proven value to retard absorption of venom but might be useful for pain control. Application of extreme cold can cause an injury similar to frostbite, and possibly lead to enough tissue loss to require amputation.
7. *The impression of most snakebite experts is that incision and suction are of no value and should be abandoned.* It appears that little venom can be removed from the bite site. Furthermore, the incision might set the stage for inoculation of bacteria, infection, and a poorly healing wound. Mouth contact with the incision can cause a nasty infection that leaves a noticeable scar; there is also the risk of transmission of blood-borne disease to the rescuer.
8. Application of the Sawyer Extractor Pump (Sawyer Products) is not recommended. There is no evidence that the device can remove venom, and there is reason to believe that by using the device for a rattlesnake bite, it might cause concentration of tissue-toxic venom under the suction cup, leading to a more severe local reaction.
9. If the victim is more than 2 hours from medical attention, and the bite is on an arm or leg, one can consider the pressure immobilization technique (Fig. 232): Place a 2-inch × 2-inch (5 cm × 5 cm) cloth pad (¼ inch, or 0.6 cm, thick) over the bite and apply an elastic wrap firmly around the involved limb directly over the padded bite site with a margin of at least 4 to 6 inches (10 to 15 cm) on either side of the wound, taking care to check for adequate circulation in the fingers and toes (normal pulses, feeling, and color). An alternative method is to simply wrap the entire limb at the described tightness with an elastic bandage. Be certain that it is not too tight; arterial pulsations should be felt beyond the wrap, indicating the presence of arterial circulation. The wrap is meant to impede absorption of venom into the general circulation by containing it within the compressed tissue and microscopic blood and lymphatic vessels near the limb surface. You should then splint the limb

to prevent motion. If the bite is on a hand or an arm, also apply a sling. Keep the bandage in place until the victim is at a medical facility and antivenom is being infused. Until that occurs, check at least once an hour to be certain that pulses are present. It should be noted that as is the case for splinting, use of the pressure immobilization technique is somewhat controversial, in that certain experts believe that it is not particularly helpful, and that localizing venom in a single area might even lead to an increased chance for tissue damage.

An alternative to the pressure immobilization technique is a constriction band (*not* a tourniquet) wrapped a few inches closer to the heart than the bite marks on the bitten limb. This should be applied tightly enough to only occlude the superficial veins and lymph passages. To gauge tightness, the rescuer should be able to slip one or two fingers under the band, and normal arterial pulses should be present. The band may be advanced periodically to stay ahead of the swelling. It is of questionable usefulness if 30 minutes have intervened between the time of the bite and application of the constriction band (or pressure immobilization technique). Again, this recommendation is controversial, for the reasons mentioned in the previous paragraph.

10. Have the victim drink liquids to encourage proper hydration. However, "snakebite medicine" (whiskey) is of no value and might be harmful if it increases circulation to the skin.
11. There is no scientific evidence that electrical shocks applied to snakebites are of any value. On the contrary, there are experiments that refute this concept.
12. The bite wound should be washed vigorously with soap and water. If medical care at a hospital will not occur for 5 or more hours, the victim should be treated with dicloxacillin, erythromycin, or cephalexin for 7 days.
13. If the victim is many hours or days from a hospital, assist them to walk out or arrange for a litter rescue, allowing frequent rest periods and adequate oral hydration. Splinting and positioning (e.g., elevating or lowering) the bitten part is secondary to any effort to reach a facility where antivenom can be administered.
14. Watch for an allergic reaction (see page 78) caused by the snakebite. This might cause the victim to be short of breath with or without an airway obstruction from swelling of the mouth, tongue, and throat. Once the victim is in the hospital, the severity of envenomation will be ascertained, and the victim treated with antivenom if necessary. (At the time of this writing, there is a serious shortage of coral snake antivenom.) The criteria that doctors in the United States use to treat

with antivenom are worsening tissue injury, systemic symptoms (e.g., low blood pressure or difficulty breathing), or abnormal blood clotting tests. Antivenom therapy must be carried out under the supervision of a physician because serious allergic reactions to antivenoms are possible, although with modern antivenom products, only about 10% of recipients suffer allergic (immediate or delayed) manifestations.

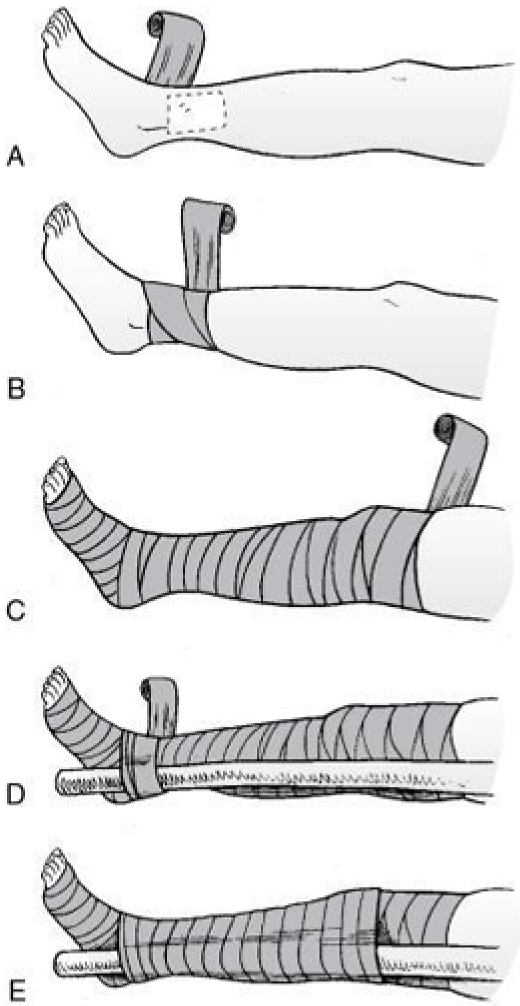


FIG. 232 The pressure immobilization technique. **A,** Begin to wrap the limb directly over the bite site with an elastic bandage. The *dotted square outlines* a pad that can be placed over the bite site. **B,** Continue wrapping up the limb. **C,** Wrapped limb. **D,** Begin to apply a splint. **E,** Wrapped and splinted limb.

Venom Locc Snakebite First Aid Kit uses pressure directly around a bite and claims to hold venom in place until advanced medical attention can be reached.

Dogs also might be bitten by venomous snakes (see page 359).

Avoidance of venomous snakes

- Know the behavior and habitats of snakes in your area. Avoid the known habitats of venomous snakes, such as rocky ledges and woodpiles.
- Don't reach into areas that you cannot visually examine first. Walk on clearly marked trails and use a walking stick to move suspicious objects. Don't reach blindly behind rocks. In flooded areas, avoid touching tree limbs and brush.
- Wear adequate protective clothing, particularly loose-fitting bloused trousers and boots to cover your feet and lower legs. Even tightly worn pants, such as denim, might provide a certain amount of benefit in terms of the amount of venom injected by a snake into a victim.
- Never hike alone in snake territory. Carry an elastic wrap and a SAM Splint (see page 86).
- Avoid hiking at night in snake territory. Carry a flashlight and walking stick. Sleep in a building, tent, or within a mosquito net that prevents entry of snakes.
- Don't handle snakes unless you know what you're doing. Some authorities mention that a defensive bite by a snake might release more venom than an offensive (feeding) bite. You can be bitten and envenomed by seemingly dead or nonvenomous snakes. Stay at least one body length away from a snake.

Nonvenomous snakes

Many snakes (e.g., the gopher snake and king snake) are nonvenomous and don't create serious medical problems with a bite. However, identifying a snake from the bite puncture wounds is often extremely difficult for the amateur. Unless the snake can be positively identified as a nonvenomous species, the victim should be considered to have been bitten by a venomous snake and managed appropriately. The snake may be very carefully captured or photographed for identification (see page 362). If the snake is absolutely known to be nonvenomous, the wound should be washed vigorously with soap and water, and the victim treated with dicloxacillin, erythromycin, or cephalexin.

Gila monster and Mexican beaded lizard

The Gila monster *(Heloderma suspectum)* and Mexican beaded lizard *(H. horridum),* which can grow to 14 inches (35 cm) long, are found in the Great

Sonoran Desert area of southern Arizona and northwestern Mexico. They possess grooved teeth and venom glands. Most envenomations occur when an animal bites and holds on, or when a tooth is shed into the bite wound. If the Gila monster holds on, the grip might need to be loosened by mechanical means or incision of the jaw muscles.

Symptoms of an envenomation include burning pain at the site of the bite, swelling of the bite wound, red or blue discoloration, nausea and vomiting, weakness, anxiety, rapid heart rate, and sweating. Low blood pressure is the most serious complication. Intense pain from the bite might last for 3 to 5 hours, and then subside after 8 hours.

The wound should be washed vigorously, and all pieces of teeth removed. The victim should have their arm or leg splinted and should be transported to a hospital. Severe reactions are unusual; most victims recover uneventfully. Be prepared to treat the victim for shock (see page 70). Don’t administer alcohol, stimulants, or narcotic pain medicines. Don’t apply ice directly to the wound or immerse a bitten limb in ice water.

If it will be more than 24 hours before you can reach medical care, administer an antibiotic (cephalexin, erythromycin, or amoxicillin-clavulanate).

Insect and arthropod bites

Bees, wasps, hornets, and ants

Honeybees, bumblebees, wasps, hornets, and yellow jackets each possesses a stinger, which is used to introduce venom into the victim. Most stings occur on the head, neck, arms, and legs.

"Killer bees" are an Africanized race of honeybees created by interbreeding of the African honeybee *Apis mellifera scutellata* (originally brought for experiments into Brazil) with common European honeybees. The hazard from these bees is that they tend to be more irritable, sense threats at farther distances than do their European counterparts, swarm more readily, defend their nests more aggressively, stay agitated around the nest for days, and impose mass attacks on humans. The venom of an Africanized bee is not of greater volume or potency than that of a European honeybee. However, the personality of the Africanized bees is such that they might pursue a victim for up to ⅔ mile (1 km) and might recruit other attacking bees by up to the thousands. A victim can be stung from 50 to more than 1000 times; it is estimated that 500 stings achieves the lethal threshold. The bees are established in Arizona, New Mexico, and California, and unfortunately appear to be increasing their habitat as they adapt to colder temperatures and as climate change increases their range.

The sting mechanism for a honeybee is composed of a doubly barbed stinger attached to a venom sac that pumps venom into the victim. When the bee attempts to escape after a sting, the stinger and sac remain in the victim (this kills the bee) and continue to inject venom. Unless the stinger is removed within 30 seconds, the venom sac is usually emptied into the victim. The honeybee can sting only once, whereas a wasp, with a smooth stinger that does not become entrapped, can sting multiple times, as can yellow jackets, hornets, and bumblebees.

Pain from a bee, wasp, or hornet sting is immediate, with rapid swelling, redness, warmth, and itching at the sting site. Blisters might occur. Sometimes the victim will become nauseated, vomit, and/or suffer abdominal cramping and diarrhea. If the person is allergic to the venom, a dangerous reaction might follow within minutes, but occasionally might be delayed by up to several hours. This consists of hives, shortness of breath, difficulty breathing, tongue swelling, weakness, vomiting, low blood pressure, and collapse (see page 78). People have swallowed bees (undetected in beverage bottles) and sustained stings of the esophagus, which are enormously painful.

A common diagnostic dilemma is whether a bee, wasp, or hornet sting has become infected. A sting commonly causes a skin reaction with redness (including streaking along the lines of the lymphatic vessels [see page 261]), swelling, itching, and pain. This is very similar to the appearance of skin that is inflamed by a bacterial infection (cellulitis, see page 261). A wasp sting might also cause blistering with or without "brawny" swelling, which is when the skin feels thickened, warm, and bumpy to the touch. Either a sting or an infection can cause lymph nodes ("glands") that service the affected tissue to become swollen and tender. Therefore, determination of an infection becomes a judgment call. Infection following a sting usually develops 48 to 72 hours after the sting, so if someone has suffered a sting, appears to be improving, and then has their condition deteriorate, infection should be suspected. Fever can be present with a sting or an infection but is more common with an infection. If the area of skin initially affected by the sting seems to be stable for a few days, then the redness and swelling begins to spread, particularly if there is any reddish streaking traveling up an arm or leg toward the heart, increasing skin warmth, or increasing skin tenderness, an infection might be present. If any liquid leaks from the site of the sting, particularly if it is cloudy or thickened, like pus, suspect an infection.

A severe allergic reaction might follow the sting(s) of a fire (red) ant *Solenopsis invicta,* because it marches along the victim and leaves a trail of small, painful blisters. The fire ant hangs onto the victim's skin with pincers, and then uses a posterior stinger to deliver up to eight stings while it pivots around. The bites and stings cause itching and swelling. A day or two after the ant bite, the fluid in the blister turns cloudy or white, and a small, sterile pseudo-pustule develops. This might continue to be painful and itch for a week or more. Harvester ants generally produce less severe reactions.

In rare cases, stings from killer bees, fire ants, and certain wasps, particularly if the stings are in large numbers, might cause breakdown of muscle tissue. If this is the case, then the urine will appear very darkened, and the victim should be brought promptly to medical attention in order to receive treatments designed to protect the kidneys from pigment (myoglobin) released from the injured muscle cells. If you are in a remote location, keep the victim well hydrated (see page 341).

Treatment for insect sting

1. Be prepared to treat a severe allergic reaction (see page 78). If the victim develops hives, shortness of breath, and profound weakness, and

appears to be deteriorating, *immediately* administer epinephrine. *Anyone known to have insect allergies who travels in the wilderness should carry epinephrine.* Epinephrine (adrenaline) is injected intramuscularly (see page 469 and 484) as an aqueous solution of 1:1000 concentration in a dose of 0.3 to 0.5 mL for an adult and 0.01 mL/kg of body weight for a child (not to exceed 0.3 mL). For weight estimation, 1 kg equals 2.2 lb. It should be injected into the lateral thigh. If the thigh is obese, whether in an adult or a child, such that the needle might not reach into muscle, then inject into the lower thigh. If obesity is extreme, consider injecting into the mid-calf. The only reason to administer the drug subcutaneously is if the equipment is not available for an intramuscular injection. The drug is available in preloaded syringes in certain allergy kits, which include the EpiPen autoinjector (0.3 mg) and EpiPen Jr. autoinjector (0.15 mg), Auvi-Q autoinjectors, Adrenaclick autoinjectors, and SYMJEPI pre-filled (with epinephrine) syringes. FDA-approved generic products are sometimes less expensive. Other devices worldwide are the Jext, Emerade, Allerject, and Anapen. Instructions for use accompany the kits. For dosing purposes, a 0.3-mg autoinjector should be used for adults and children over 66 lb (30 kg) in weight. Children 66 lb and under should be injected with a 0.15-mg autoinjector. According to manufacturers, epinephrine should be stored between 68°C to 77°F (20°C to 25°C) with brief excursions permitted to 59°F to 86°F (15°C to 30°C). When injecting into a child's leg, be sure to hold the leg firmly so that it does not move in order to prevent creating a cut. Never re-insert an autoinjector needle (See page 484).

Take particular care to handle preloaded syringes properly, to avoid inadvertent injection into an unintended location, such as a finger or toe. Do not intentionally inject epinephrine into the buttocks or a vein. Epinephrine should not be exposed to heat or sun, but does not need to be kept refrigerated. If clear (liquid) epinephrine turns cloudy or discolored, it should be discarded. When administering an injection, *never* share needles between people.

2. Administer diphenhydramine (Benadryl) by mouth, 50 to 100 mg for an adult and 1 mg/kg of body weight for a child. This antihistamine drug can be used by itself for a milder allergic reaction. Topical antihistamine lotions or creams might be beneficial.
3. Stingers or pieces of stingers left in the skin should be removed as soon as possible (Fig. 233). It used to be taught that pulling the stinger out with fingers or forceps squeezed more venom into the victim, but this is currently not believed to be true. So, it is better to flick or pull a stinger and venom sac out of the skin of the victim using tweezers or your fingers than to waste precious time searching for a straight-edged object,

such as a knife or credit card, to scrape away the stinger. Furthermore, crude scraping runs the risk of breaking off the stinger and leaving it embedded in the skin. An alternative is to try to pull out the stinger, then apply the Extractor device (Fig. 234), if it is available, immediately after the sting has occurred.

4. Apply ice packs to the site of the sting.
5. Home topical remedies, such as crushed aspirin, a 20% aluminum salt-containing preparation (including many household antiperspirants) or paste of baking soda or papain-containing meat tenderizer (such as Adolph's unseasoned meat tenderizer) and water applied directly to the wound (for no more than 15 minutes), are of unproven value. Do not apply mud. The commercial product After Bite (Tender Corporation), a mixture containing ammonia 3.5%, is moderately effective for relief of pain and itching following insect bites but will not abort an allergic reaction. StingEze liquid (Wisconsin Pharmacal) is a mixture of camphor, phenol, benzocaine, and propylene glycol. StingEze MAX^2 contains twice the benzocaine. StingEze products are good to control itching and mild pain following any insect bite. Lidocaine 4% applied topically might help diminish discomfort.
6. If a person suffers an extensive skin and soft tissue reaction (swelling, itching, blisters), they might benefit from administration of a corticosteroid, such as prednisone (60 mg by mouth day 1, tapered by 10 mg per day over the next 5 days) or methylprednisolone (24 mg by mouth day 1, tapered over the next 5 days).
7. If a person stung by an insect develops more than a mild to moderate local reaction, transport them to a hospital. If a person stung by a bee, hornet, wasp, etc. develops a severe allergic reaction (anaphylaxis) they should be referred to an allergy specialist after treating anaphylaxis for possible venom immunotherapy.
8. A bee sting in general does not pose a large risk for tetanus infection, unless there is concern for significant soil contamination simultaneously (see tetanus prophylaxis on page 183).
9. Fire ant pseudo-pustules should be kept clean and not be unroofed or otherwise disturbed, in order to avoid infection.

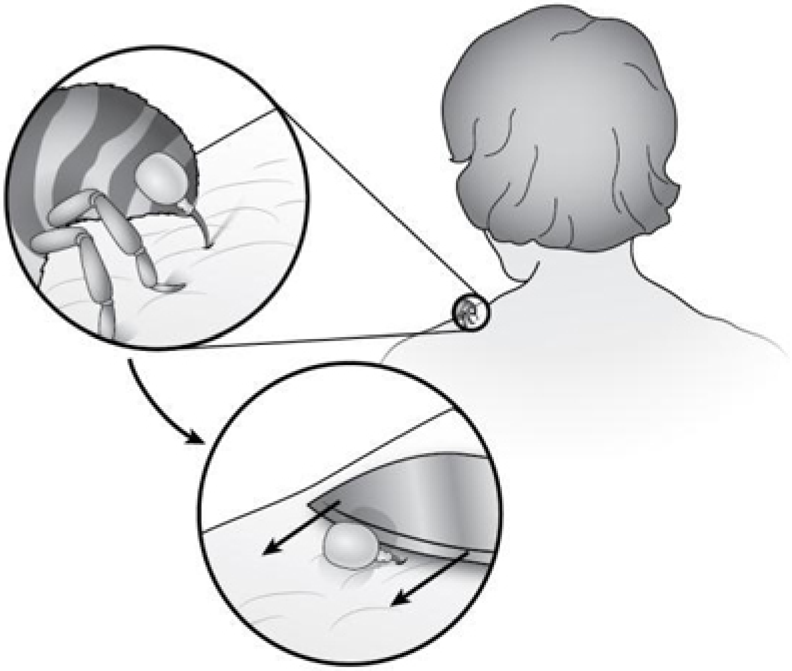


FIG. 233 Honeybee sting. Because the venom sac is still attached to the stinger, both should be scraped or pulled free from the skin as soon as possible.

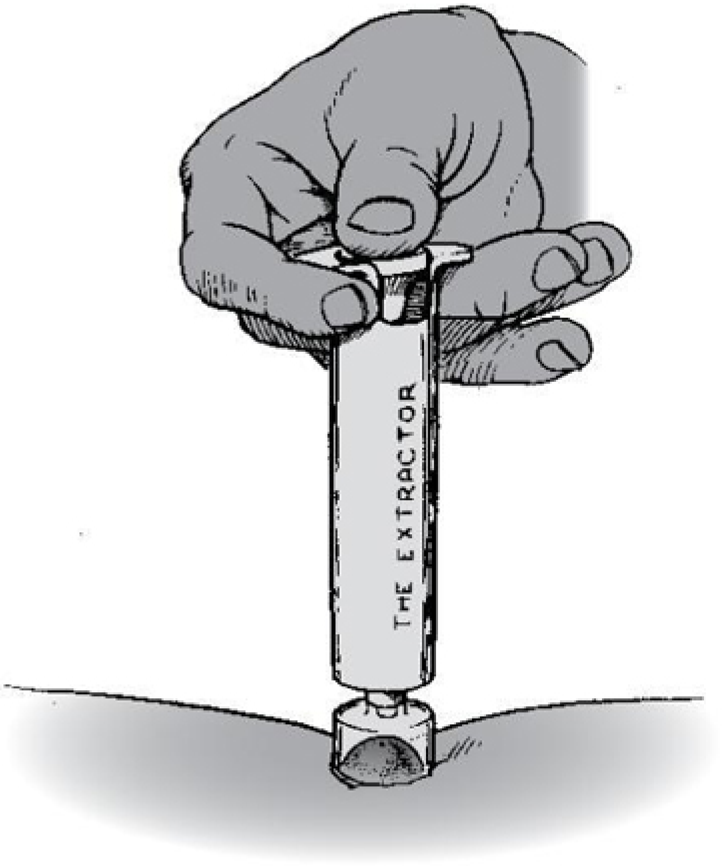


FIG. 234 Application of the Extractor to a bee sting.

Avoidance of stinging insects

1. Store garbage, particularly fruit, at a distance from the campsite.
2. Remove *(carefully)* beehives and wasp nests from children's play areas.
3. Wear light-colored clothing. Dark- and bright-colored clothing is attractive to insects and might evoke a defensive (sting or bite) response. Keep shirt sleeves closed and tuck pants into boots. Wear light-colored socks. Be aware of nests near or on the ground.
4. Avoid wearing sweet fragrances that make you smell like a flower. Avoid carrying sweet-smelling soft drinks and fruit juices.
5. Avoid orchards in bloom, fields of clover, and areas with lots of flowers.
6. Do not anger bees or wasps. If confronted by a swarm, cover your face (eyes, nose, and mouth) and move rapidly from the area. If necessary, throw a blanket or towel over your head. Run if you must. Maneuver through bushes or weeds to confuse the bees. Do not jump into a pool—the bees might wait for you and a severe allergic reaction from a sting

while in the water might be extremely dangerous. Do not poke sticks or throw rocks into bee holes.

7. Avoid rapid or jerky movements near bees. Do not swat at them. Remain calm.

Spiders

Although more than 20,000 different species of spiders live in the United States, only a few pose any real hazard to humans. The troublemakers are those that bite and deliver toxins from venom glands. The nature of the reaction depends on the type and quantity of venom. Most spiders only bite their victims one time in a defensive effort, so if there are multiple bites or lesions, you should suspect an insect like a flea or mite, or an infection.

To avoid spider bites, remove trash carefully and keep dwellings and sleeping areas clean. Shake out clothing and shoes before wearing them. Store equipment and apparel in sealed plastic bags when not in use for prolonged periods. Wear gloves for protection when handling wood, particularly that taken from piles.

Black widow spider

In the United States, the female black widow spider *(Latrodectus mactans)* is about ⅝ inch (15 mm) in body length, black or brown, and with a characteristic red (or orange or yellow) hourglass marking on the underside of the abdomen (Fig. 235). The top side of the spider is shiny and features a fat abdomen that resembles a large black grape. The longest legs are directed toward the front. This species and other *Latrodectus* species are found scattered in rural regions, in barns, within harvested crops, and around outdoor stone walls. Some are arboreal.

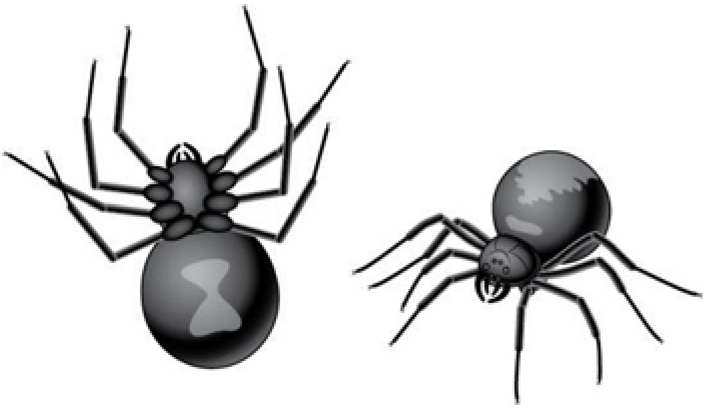


FIG. 235 Female black widow spider with typical hourglass marking on the underside of the abdomen.

The bite of the black widow spider is rarely very painful (usually more like a pinprick) and often causes little swelling or redness, although there can be a warm and reddened area around the bite. If much venom has been deposited, the victim develops a typical reaction within an hour, largely due to latrotoxin. Symptoms include muscle cramps, particularly of the abdomen and back; muscle pain; muscle twitching; numbness and tingling of the palms of the hands and bottoms of the feet; headache; droopy eyelids; facial swelling; drooling; sweating; restlessness and anxiety; vomiting; chest muscle spasms that cause difficulty breathing; fever; and high blood pressure. A man might develop a persistent penile erection (priapism). A small child might cry persistently. A pregnant woman might develop uterine contractions and premature labor.

Untreated, most people recover without help over the course of 8 hours to 2 days. However, very small children and elderly victims might suffer greatly, with possible death. There is antivenom available to medical practitioners for treating the bite of the black widow spider. It is used to treat moderate to severe symptoms.

Treatment for a black widow spider bite

1. Apply ice packs to the bite.
2. *Immediately* transport the victim to a medical facility.
3. Once the victim is in the hospital, the doctor will have several therapies to use, which include intravenous calcium solutions and muscle relaxant medicines for muscle spasm; antihypertensive drugs for elevated blood pressure; pain medicine; and, in very severe cases, antivenom.
4. If you will be unable to reach a hospital within a few hours and the victim is suffering *severe* muscle spasms, you can administer an oral dose of diazepam (Valium) or lorazepam (Ativan), if you happen to be carrying it. The starting dose of diazepam for an adult who does not regularly take the drug is 5 mg, which can be augmented in 2.5 mg increments every 30 minutes up to a total dose of 10 mg, so long as the victim remains alert and is capable of normal, purposeful swallowing. The starting dose for a child aged 2 to 5 years is 0.5 mg; for a child aged 6 to 12 years the starting dose is 2 mg. Total dose for a child should not exceed 5 mg; *never* leave a sedated child unattended. The starting adult dose of lorazepam for an adult is 1 mg, which can be augmented in 0.5 mg increments every 30 minutes up to a total dose of 2 mg.

Recluse spiders

At least 11 species of recluse spiders are found in the United States. The brown recluse spider *(Loxosceles reclusa)* is the best known and found most commonly in the South and southern Midwest. However, interstate commerce has created habitats in many other parts of the country for the brown recluse and related species. The spider is brown, with an average body length of just under ½ inch (10 mm). A characteristic dark violin-shaped marking ("fiddleback" or "violin" spider) is sometimes, but not always, found on the top of the upper section of the body (Fig. 236). Recluse spiders have six equal-sized eyes arranged in three pairs. The brown recluse spider is found in dark, sheltered areas, such as under porches and in storage areas, in attics and woodpiles, and in crates of fruit. It is most active at night. It commonly bites when it is trapped but is not otherwise aggressive toward humans.

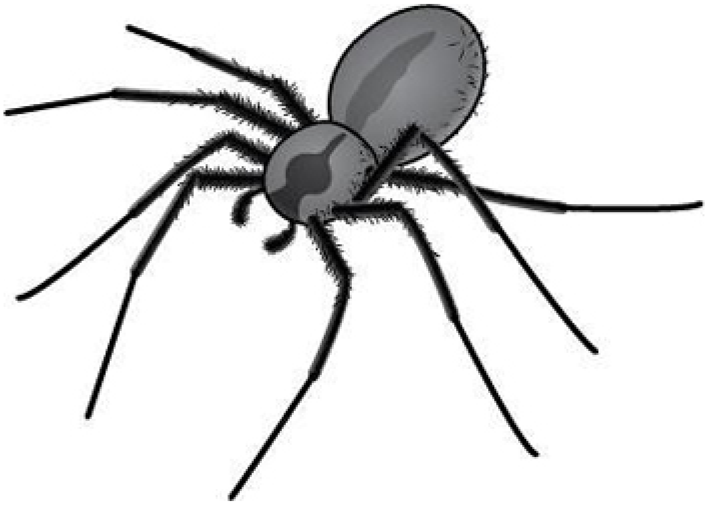


FIG. 236 Brown recluse spider with typical violin-shaped marking on the top side of the cephalothorax.

The bite of the brown recluse spider might cause very little pain at first, or a sharp sting might be felt. The stinging subsides over 6 to 8 hours and is replaced by aching and itching. Within 1 to 5 hours, a painful red or purplish blister sometimes appears, surrounded by a bull's-eye of whitish-blue (pale) discoloration, with occasional slight swelling. The red margin might spread into an irregular fried-egg pattern, with gravitational influence, such that the original blister remains near the uppermost part of the lesion. The victim might develop chills, fever, weakness, and a generalized red skin rash. Severe allergic reactions within 30 minutes of the bite occur infrequently. Over 5 to 7 days, the venom causes a violet discoloration and breakdown of the surrounding tissue, leading to an open ulcer that might take months to heal. If the reaction has been severe, the tissue in the center of the wound becomes destroyed, blackens, and dies.

A rare reaction is "systemic loxoscelism," in which the venom binds to red blood cells and induces severe symptoms within 24 to 72 hours. These include a flu-like presentation with fever, chills, headache, fatigue, weakness, nausea, vomiting, muscle and joint aches, blood in the urine, yellow skin discoloration (jaundice), kidney failure, and even shock, seizures, coma, and rarely death. This is more common in children and requires intensive medical therapy.

Treatment for a brown recluse spider bite

Because the bite of the brown recluse spider typically causes severe tissue destruction, the victim should see a physician, who will prescribe medicine or another therapy as soon as possible. In the meantime, apply cold packs to the wound for as long as is practical and administer an antibiotic (erythromycin, azithromycin, or cephalexin). Do not apply a heating pad or hot packs. Depending on the severity of the reaction, the doctor might advise taking medicines. There are therapies that have been reported, but not been proven, effective. These include surgical excision of the bite; dapsone (a drug used to inhibit certain cells that are part of the inflammatory response); topical application of nitroglycerin; and hyperbaric oxygen therapy.

Until you receive other advice, treat the wound with a thin layer of mupirocin or bacitracin ointment, or mupirocin cream, underneath daily dressing changes. Don’t apply topical steroids.

Other spiders

Other spiders that might produce painful bites and a small amount of local tissue breakdown (ulcers) include the tarantula, wolf spider, jumping spider, yellow sac spider, orb weaver, and hobo spider *(Tegenaria agrestis)*. The bites should be treated with ice packs, pain medicine, and standard wound care.

Some tarantulas (Fig. 237) carry hairs that can irritate the skin, eyes, and mucous membranes of humans. When the spider is threatened, it rubs its hind legs over its abdomen and flicks thousands of hairs at its foe. These hairs can penetrate human skin and cause swollen bumps, which can itch for weeks. If any hairs or hair fragments remain in the skin, they can be removed by applying and peeling off sticky tape. After that, treatment is with an oral antihistamine and topical medication such as StingEze liquid. A topical antihistamine or corticosteroid preparation might provide some relief.

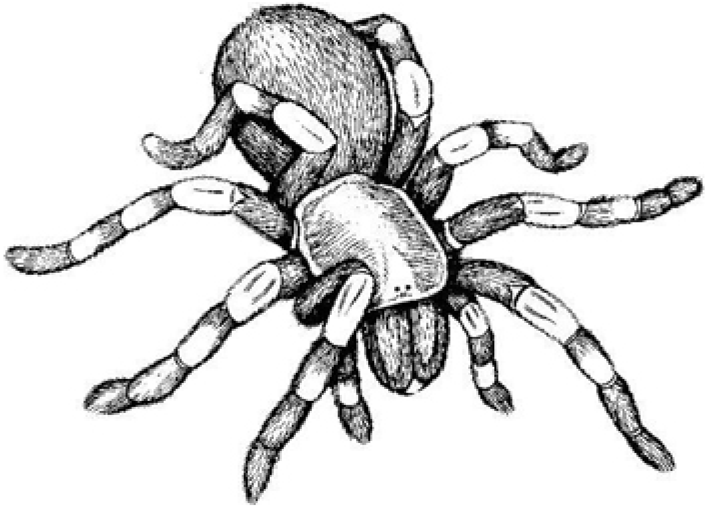


FIG. 237 Tarantula.

Scorpions

Scorpions are hardy nocturnal creatures found in deserts and warm tropical climates, hidden under stones, fences, wood, shed tree bark, and garbage. They can survive easily in adverse environmental circumstances. In the United States, the most dangerous species is the bark scorpion *Centruroides exilicauda,* which is found almost exclusively in the southwestern states and can be up to 2 inches (5 cm) long. This yellowish-brown (straw-colored), solid or striped species is distinguished from other scorpions by its slender body and a small tubercle (telson) at the base of its stinger (Fig. 238). The sting is inflicted with the last segment of the tail, and it is immediately exquisitely painful; the pain is made much worse by tapping on the site of the injury. Other symptoms include excitement, increased salivation, sweating, numbness and tingling around the mouth, nausea, double vision, nervousness, muscle twitching and spasms, rapid breathing, rapid heart rate, shortness of breath, high blood pressure, priapism, seizures, paralysis, and collapse. Depending on the species of scorpion, sometimes sweating is noted only at the site of the sting. Extremely low blood pressure might follow the period of high blood pressure. Children under age 2 years are at particular risk for severe reactions. Stings by nonlethal scorpion species are similar to bee stings.

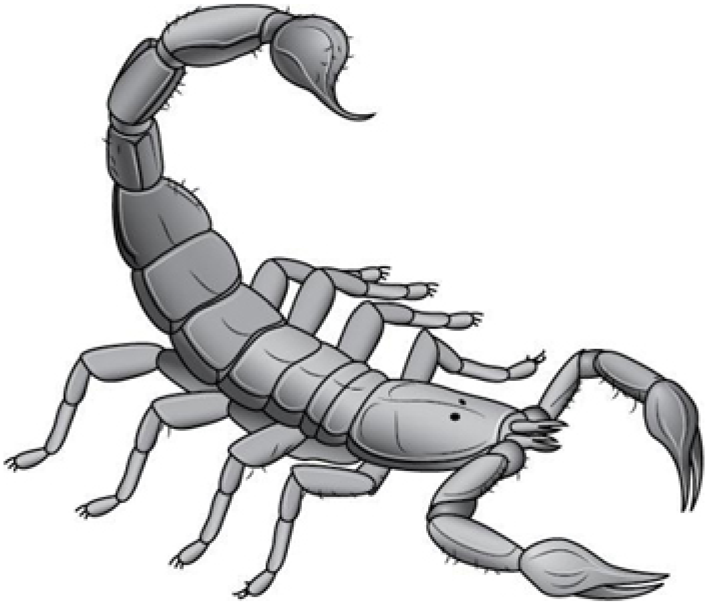


FIG. 238 Scorpion.

If someone is stung by a scorpion, immediately apply an ice pack to the wound and immobilize the affected body part. Seek immediate care, particularly for stings of *C. exilicauda.* If a health care professional has a local anesthetic that can be injected into the sting site, this might provide some relief from the pain. Antivenom (Anascorp) is sometimes available to physicians in Arizona and Nevada to treat victims of *C. exilicauda* scorpion sting.

To prevent scorpion stings, be careful when handling dead wood and working in piles of leaves. Clothing, shoes, bedrolls, and sleeping bags should be shaken out and inspected before use. The cuticle of *C. exilicauda* fluoresces under an ultraviolet light (Wood's lamp or "black light") and can be spotted glowing green at night in this manner. When traveling abroad in scorpion habitat, sleep under mosquito netting and don't sit on the floor in mud huts with your back against the wall.

Mosquitoes

Female mosquitoes bite humans in quest of a blood meal, in order to lay eggs. Because they breed in water, they are most frequently found in marshy, wetland, or wooded areas. Although many tend to swarm at dusk, different species feed at different times. The insects are attracted to host odors (long-range), exhaled carbon dioxide (mid-range), and heat and moisture (short-range). During a bite, mosquito saliva is injected into the victim. This liquid contains the substances that cause the classic reaction—a small white or red bump that itches and then disappears. Persons who have been sensitized because of previous bites can have delayed (12 to 48 hours) reactions, which include intense swelling and itching. In addition, mosquitoes transmit diseases such as malaria (see page 167) and various types of encephalitis.

Therapy for mosquito bites is limited to cool compresses and skin hygiene to prevent infections. If someone is bitten intensely and suffers a severe delayed allergic reaction, they might benefit from a course of prednisone similar to that used to treat poison oak (see page 255). Oral antihistamines, such as cetirizine hydrochloride, given before mosquito exposure, might lessen the reaction to mosquito bites in highly sensitized persons.

Mosquito avoidance

Prevention of mosquito bites is essential to decrease risk of disease (see page 381). Here are some recommendations:

1. Don’t maintain standing water that serves as a breeding ground for mosquitoes which lay eggs in water. Drain or dump all standing water weekly. This includes water as shallow as 1 inch deep in flowerpots, planters, old tires, child pools, etc.
2. Be sure door and windows have tight-fitting screens. Sleep under mosquito netting.
3. Most bites occur at dawn and dusk, so limit outdoor activities at these times.
4. Use effective insect repellents. See page 378.
5. Wear clothing designed to cover your arms and legs.

Biting flies

A midge (also called a gnat or no-see-um) is a small biting fly that creates a painful red bump that seems out of proportion to the insect’s size. After your immune system has become sensitized to these bites, your reactions might become worse with repeated bites, and you might develop blisters or small sores.

Blackflies, buffalo gnats, turkey gnats, and green-headed flies create larger punctures that might bleed. The immediate pain, swelling (welt), and redness are usually intense and persistent. The sores might last for weeks and be accompanied by weakness and fever when there are multiple bites. Swollen lymph glands might occur, particularly in children. Horsefly, deerfly, mango fly, breeze fly, and sand fly bites are generally less noxious, but might on occasion be severe. In addition, they can transmit diseases, such as is the case with sand flies and leishmaniasis.

Treatment is symptomatic and similar to that applied under step 5 for the local reaction to an insect sting (see page 364).

Fleas

Fleas are parasitic on mammals and birds. The wingless body enables the critters to run and jump with ease. They live on blood. They are more active in warmer climates and are commonly associated with domestic animals. A flea bite usually is a small dark red or purplish dot surrounded by a circular area of lighter redness and swelling. Itching is common. Persons who have been sensitized might develop blisters or ulcers. Flea bites can appear in unpatterned clusters, most commonly on the legs, ankles, and feet.

Treatment is symptomatic and similar to that applied under step 5 for the local reaction to an insect sting (see page 364).

The female *Tunga penetrans* flea (sand flea, burrowing flea, chigo, jigger) causes tungiasis in Central and South America and in tropical Africa, particularly in soil near cattle and pigs. The impregnated female flea burrows into a human's skin until only the flea's posterior end remains external. The insect sucks blood, becomes larger, and appears as a firm, itchy nodule the size of a small pea, which has a dark spot in the center (the hind end of the flea). Within a few weeks of penetrating the skin, the flea deposits hundreds of eggs, which appear as white grains. The most common sites of infestation are the feet, buttocks, or perineum of humans who don't wear shoes or who squat on dusty soil. The burrowed flea can be surgically removed, or first killed with topical ether, dimethicone, cryotherapy (cold), or certain drugs, such as ivermectin, prior to surgical removal. To prevent tungiasis, don't walk barefoot or wear open-toed footwear in risky areas. The insect repellent mixture of aloe, coconut oil, and jojoba oil applied at least twice daily might discourage fleas from entering the skin.

Chiggers

Chiggers (red bugs, harvest mites) are a nuisance, particularly in the southeastern United States. The adult mites lay their eggs on vegetation (such as grass). The newly hatched larvae attach themselves to a human and inflict the bites; each is terribly itchy and marked initially with a small red dot that becomes a red welt over the next 24 hours. Bites might number in the hundreds. Blisters, weeping, and severe swelling might appear. The feet and ankles are most commonly affected. The lesions resolve over 2 weeks, but not without flare-ups of intense itching and discomfort.

Treatment is symptomatic and similar to that applied under step 5 for the local reaction to an insect sting (see page 364). One percent phenol in calamine might be helpful. Home remedies for chigger bites are common and include application of dabs of clear nail polish or meat tenderizer. None are of proven benefit. If a person is bitten intensely and suffers a severe reaction, they might benefit from a course of prednisone similar to that used to treat poison oak (see page 255), or application of super potent topical corticosteroid cream or ointment, such as

0.05% clobetasol applied thinly several times daily, but for only a few days' duration. Prevention is key; pretreatment of clothing with permethrin, similar to the approach taken to repel ticks, is beneficial.

Certain chigger larvae in South America cause typhus by the bacterium *Orienta tsutsusgamushi*. Scrub typhus is also a problem in Southeast Asia, Oceania, Korea, and China, where rodents become infected and harbor the chigger mites. The mite bites a human, who develops a hard darkened eschar, swollen lymph nodes near the bite site, muscle aches, fever, headache, and nausea/vomiting/diarrhea. Fever and different forms of rash respond promptly to treatment with tetracycline or doxycycline, or azithromycin.

Centipedes and millipedes

Centipedes bite their victims with their fangs, not with their feet or rear-end appendages. *Scolopendra* species bites have been reported to cause burning pain, swelling, redness, and swollen lymph glands. More severe reactions are rare. Treatment is symptomatic and similar to that applied under step 5 for the local reaction to an insect sting (see page 364), with the exception that the application of meat tenderizer has never been suggested to be of benefit for a centipede bite.

Millipedes do not bite their human victims; instead, they eject secretions that can cause skin irritation. This can cause brown or purple skin staining, followed sometimes by a burning sensation with blisters. Millipede secretions that enter the eye might cause severe irritation similar to a corneal abrasion (see page 200). There is no specific treatment, other than to irrigate the affected area (particularly the eyes) promptly and thoroughly with disinfected water or saline solution, and then treat as a burn (see page 126) or, if the eye is injured, as a corneal abrasion (see page 200). If the skin is stained, soap and water, or rubbing alcohol, might remove some or all of the discoloration. Adhesive tape can be used to remove tiny residual millipede hairs.

Ticks

Ticks (Fig. 239) are blood-feeding arthropods. There are "hard ticks" and "soft ticks." Ticks are ubiquitous in wooded regions and fields, and readily attach to the skin of victims, most commonly on the legs, lower abdomen, genitals, back, and buttocks. They might also attach to the scalp, armpits, groin, and other cozy (for a tick) areas. They like shade and moist skin, and might wander for a while in search of a comfortable spot. Up to 20% of tick attachments are in locations that cannot be visualized by the victim. Once in place, ticks hang on with their mouthparts and feed on the victim's blood. The tick is the intermediate host for the vectors of many diseases, such as Rocky Mountain spotted fever (see page 173), Colorado tick fever (see page 173), relapsing fever (see page 172), ehrlichiosis (see page 175), babesiosis (see page 177), Powassan virus, and Lyme disease (see page 173). Ticks are the most common insect vectors of disease in the United States.

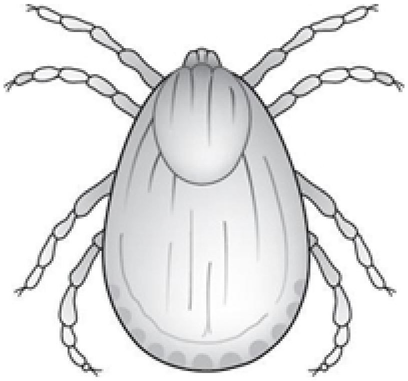


FIG. 239 Tick.

A tick bite can cause a local reaction that ranges from the common small, itchy nodule to an extensive ulcer. It is common to see redness, swelling, and itching at the site of a tick bite. Some tick mouthparts are barbed, and there might also be a cement secreted by the tick to anchor it into the victim. With large or multiple bites, the victim might suffer fever, chills, and fatigue in the absence of infection. Normally, the bite wounds resolve over a week or two. A persistent lump might be a collection of reactive (to tick saliva) tissue that requires surgical excision.

Tick avoidance

When traveling in forests and fields, it's a good idea to inspect the body (particularly the hairline, groin, underarms, navel, scalp, and other hair-covered areas) thoroughly for ticks each day. Try to bathe or thoroughly wash each day. Have a companion check areas of your body that you cannot visualize. Don't forget to brush ticks out of the fur of all dogs and pack animals.

Wear proper clothing to prevent tick attachment. Ticks have a more difficult time attaching to smooth, tightly woven fabrics. Keep shirts tucked into pants and trouser cuffs tucked into socks. Light-colored clothing displays ticks. If clothing is worn loosely fitting, it will not be pulled close to the skin, and it will be more difficult for a tick or insect to bite through and reach the skin. If mesh clothing or a head net is deployed, the mesh size should be less than 0.3 mm. Wear a light-colored, broad-brimmed hat to protect the head and neck. If ticks are seen on clothing, they can be removed by trapping them on a piece of cellophane tape or using a sticky tape lint roller device. Unless a hot cycle in a clothing dryer is employed, washing clothing might not remove tick nymphs. The deer tick, which transmits the infectious agent of Lyme disease, is extremely small, particularly in juvenile stages. The best repellent is permethrin (Permanone) applied to clothing, *not to skin* (see page 377), but DEET is also effective. Insect Shield Repellent Apparel and Insect Shield Repellent Gear are impregnated with a proprietary permethrin formula. The clothing is claimed to withstand 70 launderings and retain repellency.

Here's more advice about how to avoid ticks. At home, keep grass trimmed short. Remove thick piles of grass and leaves. Avoid walking through tall grass; stick to the barren center of trails. Remove brush from woodpiles and areas adjacent to dwellings. Keep the woodpiles distant. Don't tempt deer to approach your dwelling by landscaping with plants that are tasty. If you have pets (particularly dogs that can hide ticks in their fur), inspect them regularly, particularly if they have access to wooded areas or have been along with you on a hike. Use veterinarian-approved pesticide sprays, powders, treatments, and tick collars. Wood chips, mulch, and gravel don't tend to harbor ticks, so can be used against wooden fences, under sandboxes and playgrounds, or to create borders adjacent to tick habitat. Apply a perimeter of pesticides around the perimeter of your property. Mice and chipmunks carry fleas, so discourage their presence.

Tick removal

Use a fine-toothed comb to check your hair and a mirror to inspect skin you cannot see directly. The proper way to remove a tick is to grasp it close to the skin, preferentially encompassing its mouthparts, with tweezers or with the fingernails and pull it straight out with a slow and steady motion (Fig. 240). Another excellent way to remove a tick is with a grooved or V-shaped device designed to slide between the tick and the skin to trap the tick and allow it to be pulled from the skin. Don't twist the tick. If you must remove it with your fingers, use tissue paper or cloth to prevent skin contact with infectious tick fluids. Don't touch the tick with a hot object (such as an extinguished match head) or cover it with mineral oil, alcohol, kerosene, camp stove fuel, or Vaseline; these remedies might cause the tick to struggle and regurgitate infectious fluid into the bite site. Viscous lidocaine 2% applied to a tick for 5 minutes will cause it to detach its grip, but it is not known if the tick regurgitates because of using this technique. If a tick head is buried in the skin, you can apply permethrin (Permanone insect repellent), using a cotton swab, to the upper and lower body surfaces of the tick. After 10 to 15 minutes, the tick will relax and you will be able to pull it free. After the tick is removed, carefully inspect the skin for remaining head parts, and gently scrape them away. Wash the bite site with soap and water or with an antiseptic (or rubbing alcohol), and also wash your hands.

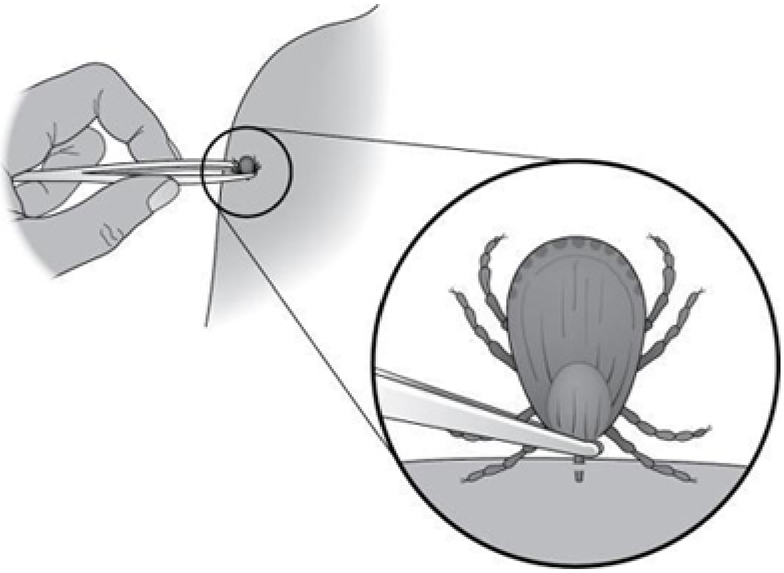


FIG. 240 Removing a tick with tweezers.

Tick bite and red meat allergy

Tick bites from the Lone Star tick (*Amblyomma americanum*) can cause a person to develop severe allergy to a type of sugar (galactose-alpha-1,3-galactose, also known as alpha-gal) found in red meat (e.g., beef, pork, lamb). This can lead to a anaphylaxis (see page 76) and is treated accordingly. The cause of the allergic reaction might be mysterious because a delay of up to a few hours might occur between eating the meat and the onset of the reaction. Often the first symptoms are nausea, diarrhea, and/or itching. The diet must be modified.

Caterpillars

The puss caterpillar, *Megalopyge opercularis* (Fig. 241), is found in the southern United States. The gypsy moth caterpillar, *Lymantria dispar* (Fig. 242), and the flannel moth caterpillar, *Megalopyge crispata,* are found in the northeastern United States. The numerous bristles that cover the bodies of these species cause skin irritation when the caterpillar is directly touched, or when there is contact with detached bristles deposited on outdoor bedding or hung clothes. Shortly after exposure, the victim suffers a rash with redness, itching, burning discomfort, and hives. Blisters are rare. If a large area of skin is involved, the victim can become nauseated and weak and can suffer from high fever. If the small bristle hairs are inhaled, shortness of breath or asthma-like (see page 52) symptoms might follow. If the eyes come into contact with these hairs, symptoms include redness, itching, tearing, and swollen eyelids. Handling particularly venomous species can cause intense pain, headache, fever, vomiting, and swollen lymph glands.

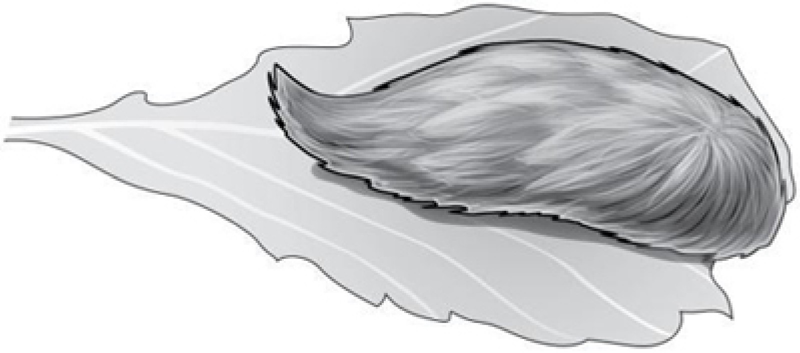


FIG. 241 Puss caterpillar.

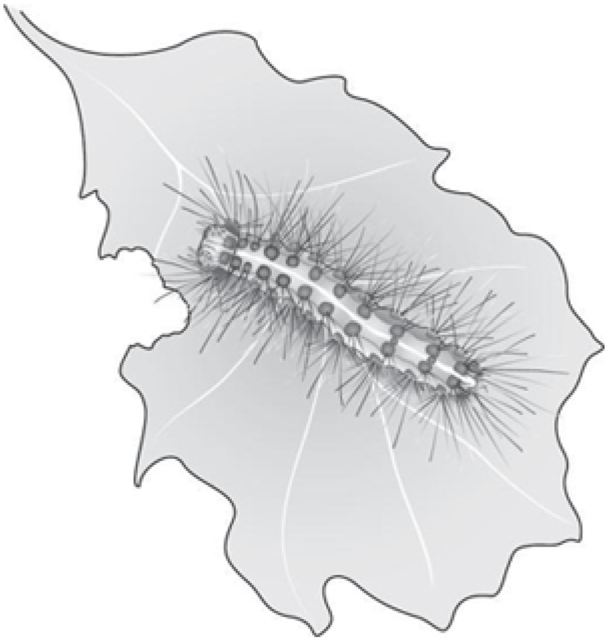


FIG. 242 Gypsy moth caterpillar.

Treatment of the skin consists of applying adhesive tape (duct tape is best) to attempt removal of the bristles, followed by an application of calamine lotion. A good alternative is to apply a commercial facial peel or thin layer of rubber cement, allow it to dry, and then peel it off; the bristles will be carried with it. Management of an allergic reaction similar to that from poison oak is described on page 255. If the redness and swelling are prominent, the victim may be treated with an oral antihistamine, such as fexofenadine (60 mg twice a day) or loratadine (Claritin) 10 mg once a day, and a nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drug (NSAID) for 5 days. If the pain is severe, administer a potent pain medicine.

Beetles

Beetles are the largest group of insects. Fortunately, no beetle has a bite or sting that can envenom a human, although some types produce toxic secretions that can be deposited on the skin.

Blister beetles of the *Epicauta* species (Fig. 243) are found throughout the eastern and southern United States. These insects are usually about ½ inch (1.3 cm) long and extremely agile. When they make contact with the skin, they release a chemical substance (cantharidin) that's very irritating. Initial contact is painless. Within a few hours, blisters appear, which are not particularly painful unless they are large and broken. If a blister beetle is squashed on the skin, an enormous blister follows.

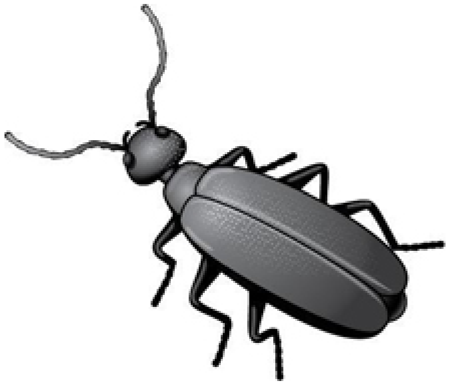


FIG. 243 Blister beetle.

The treatment is the same as for a second-degree burn (see page 128). If "beetle juice" enters the eye, the eye should be irrigated copiously, and the injury managed as you would snow blindness (see page 209). In general, it is a good idea to wash the skin with soap and water after any insect contact.

Sucking bugs

These insects have sucking mouthparts and are typified by the assassin bugs and their subset of triatomine bugs ("kissing bugs," "wheel bugs," "cone-nosed bugs," and Mexican bed bugs). Certain triatomine bugs, such as *Trympanosoma cruzi* and *Triatoma sanguisuga*, can transmit parasites that cause Chagas disease. Aquatic sucking bugs include the giant water bugs and "water scorpions."

Triatomids (Fig. 244) usually bite humans during the night on exposed body parts, and feed for up to 30 minutes. The initial bite is painless, without any immediate reaction. However, a bite from a wheel bug, black corsair, or masked bed bug hunter might cause pain similar to that of a hornet sting.

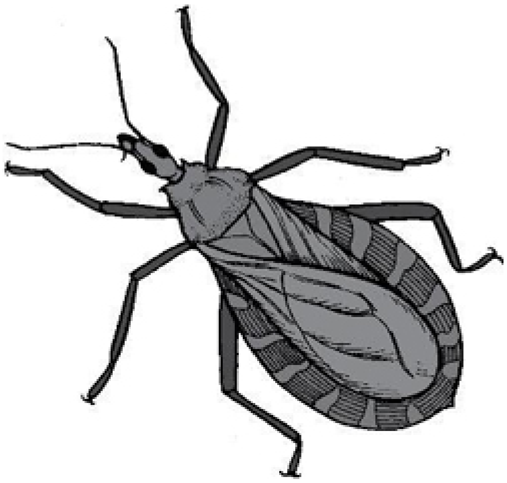


FIG. 244 Triatomid “kissing bug.”

A triatomid can continue to bite until there is a cluster or line of red, itchy bumps that might last for up to a week. If the reaction is more severe, there are large hives, swollen lymph glands, fever, and blisters.

The common bed bug and tropical bed bug are found worldwide. These tiny (about the size of an apple seed) creatures bite mostly at night in a painless fashion. Bed bug bites often create an itchy bump with a central red spot. After the bugs bite, they move on. If you believe that you have been bitten by bedbugs, wash all clothing and bedding in very hot water.

Treatment is symptomatic and similar to that applied under step 5 for the local reaction to an insect sting (see page 368).

Skin infestation by fly larvae

Skin infestation by fly larvae is called myiasis, and is most commonly noted in Mexico and Central and South America, the latter two involving the botfly *Dermatobia hominis.* The fly egg, which might actually be carried by another species of insect (such as a mosquito), is deposited onto human skin, where it hatches, allowing the emerging larva to burrow into the skin through the insect bite or another opening (such as a hair follicle or small scratch or nick). The Tumbu fly *Cordylobia anthropophaga* in sub-Saharan Africa is a blowfly that lays eggs in the ground or on clothing, from which they approach human skin.

The larva then develops within a dome-shaped cavity (swelling) that enlarges over 4 to 7 weeks. A central breathing pore drains clear or slightly bloody fluid. Drainage can begin within the first 2 weeks after penetration. There is often redness and itching. Movement might be felt under the skin as the larva wiggles. This might also feel like a crawling sensation or brief flash of sharp pain, because the larva has many parallel rows of bristly spines.

The mature larva will attempt to exit the skin through the breathing pore, and is noticed as a small white object "peeking" through the hole. To test to see if a larva is present, place a small amount of the victim's saliva over the hole—if it bubbles, the larva is likely there and breathing. You can force it to exit through the hole by suffocating it. Cover the breathing pore with bacon or pork fat, a strip of meat, chewing gum, wax, fingernail polish, paraffin, or a plug of grease. Usually, 12 hours of occlusion will cause the larva to exit the hole or die from asphyxiation. Moistened tobacco leaves or nicotine drops will paralyze the larva. It is unwise to make an incision to remove the larva, because if the creature is ruptured, it will leak substances into the wound that cause inflammation and promote infection. It is sometimes possible to simply squeeze the lesion and force extrusion of the larva, but care must be taken not to rupture the larva. If nothing is done to force the larva to leave the skin, it will do so on its own in a few weeks, but this is generally not recommended because of the pain and potential for abscess (see page 262) formation.

Another way to remove the larva is to use the Extractor Pump. First, apply an occlusive layer of antiseptic cream covered by thin plastic wrap, or other occlusive method (see earlier), over the breathing hole for 30 minutes. Next, wipe the area clean with alcohol or soap and water. Then apply the Extractor with the suction cup selected to completely cover the skin bump and opening. Activate the Extractor. If the technique works, the larva will slide to the surface within a few minutes.

Other fly larvae that can invade humans and cause myiasis might "migrate," or travel under the skin, usually settling over the head or shoulders. They might emerge from the lesions or die where they are, in which case they don't need to be removed.

Wound myiasis describes the situation in which flies (including the green- or bluebottle fly, housefly, black blowfly, and flesh fly) have deposited eggs into a wound, where the larvae feed on the decaying tissue. This is seen most commonly in elderly victims with underlying chronic diseases. In the wilderness, "maggots" are unsightly and might transmit disease. Screwworms, which originate from outbreaks among livestock, might invade humans and cause destructive ulcers, particularly if they enter through the nose.

For wound myiasis confined to the skin, a mixture of 5% chloroform in olive oil kills the larvae, so that they can be removed manually. After the creature is extracted, rinse the wound with a solution of 5% povidone–iodine in water. A solution of 5% to 10% povidone-iodine in water will also directly cause maggots to flee, or more easily be extracted, as will topical 10% ivermectin solution. Finally, occluding the wound with a petroleum-based ointment or dressing for at least 24 hours will work. In the absence anything, except disinfected water, simple irrigation and mechanical removal of the larvae might suffice.

Insect repellents and other protection against insects

Clothing

In insect-laden areas, where contact is inevitable, the traveler should wear proper clothing. Cover the head and neck with a full-brimmed hat (with or without netting) and scarf (temperature permitting). Shield the ankles and wrists. Tuck pant cuffs into socks. Light-colored clothing is less attractive than dark clothing to biting insects, and also makes it easier to spot any mosquitoes, ticks, and flies that have landed.

Nylon (particularly double layered) and sailcloth are more difficult for insects to hang on to or penetrate and are generally preferred over cotton or cloth with a loose weave. Loose-fitting clothing made with tightly woven fabric, along with a T-shirt underlayer, makes for reasonable upper body protection. Where clothing can be pulled tight against the skin, a mosquito can bite through.

Clothing needs to be checked regularly and brushed free of insects; this is best done with the sticky side of adhesive tape. Insect repellents applied to clothing are extremely effective and avoid skin irritation. It’s a good idea to test the repellent on a small area of clothing before general application, to be certain that it will not blemish the fabric.

Screens, bed nets, coils, candles, shields, and traps

Portable insect screens and bed nets (insecticide-treated or untreated) should be deployed when necessary. Place screens over windows. Use screened enclosures, particularly on outhouses and other places where insects would tend to congregate. Don’t use lights that attract insects unless necessary. Select a campsite that is dry, elevated, and not cluttered. Use bed nets, particularly in malaria-endemic areas. Insect coils (typically made from pyrethrum powder) and candles are sometimes useful to lower the number of flying insects in a relatively confined area. In areas of dense flying insect populations, particularly at night, smoke is a weak deterrent. Repellent candles contain paraffin and substances such as citronella, linalool, or geraniol. In one test in which the repellent substance was present in an amount of 5% of the total candle, geraniol was more effective than linalool than was citronella, but none should be considered as effective as a potent insect repellent applied to skin.

If you use a bed net, be certain that it is free of holes and has its edges tucked in. The net needs to be woven to a tightness of 18 threads per inch (6 to 7 per centimeter). Tighter mesh might hinder ventilation and create an uncomfortable environment. A net that has been dipped in an insecticide, usually permethrin, is more effective. Recent insecticidal nets that have showed effectiveness against malaria transmitted by pyrethroid-resistant mosquitoes include those that utilize the synergist piperonyl butoxide. A head net might be invaluable during times of high mosquito infestation.

Electric-light traps with electrocution grids, ultrasound devices, and audible sound devices have not been shown scientifically to repel insects or to decrease the concentration of biting insects in their vicinity. Mosquito traps, such as The MegaCatch Premier Mosquito Trap or the Mosquito Magnet are advertised to be effective. They emit combinations of chemical attractants, carbon dioxide, heat, and moisture to draw mosquitoes and certain other biting insects close enough to a suction intake to be captured. Solar-powered mosquito traps that mimic human odor are being tested. Mosquito repellent “shields,” such as certain THERMACELL devices, sometimes use allethrin (insecticide) and are reputed to be effective. Become familiar with the supporting studies and possible human toxicity before selecting one of these devices.

Repellents

Chemical insect repellents are mandatory when you travel through mosquito, sand fly, or tick territory. Different repellents work by different mechanisms, and therefore their effectiveness varies for different types of insects, but I can offer some general recommendations that will be applicable in most situations.

Effective repellents contain the chemicals DEET (*N*,*N*-diethyl-3-*m*-toluamide), Indalone (butyl 3,4-dihydro-2,2-dimethyl-4-oxo-2H-pyran-6-carboxylate), Rutgers 612 (2-ethyl-1,3-hexanediol), and DMP (dimethyl phthalate). DEET is effective against mosquitoes and ticks, as well as other insects. While it is available in higher concentrations, maximum effect is seen at 50%. A minimal concentration of 20% is recommended. For children ages 2 month to 12 years, a concentration of 10% to 30% is advised. Its duration of action can be up to 12 hours in liposomal (e.g., Sayer 30% DEET Insect Repellent) or polymer-based formulations. One annoying effect of DEET is that it can damage plastic eyeglass lenses or coatings, as well as synthetic clothing and tents.

Picaridin is a repellent that is odorless and nongreasy, and is effective against mosquitoes, ticks, flies, chiggers, and fleas. It doesn’t damage plastics or synthetic fabrics. It should be applied liberally in a concentration of at least 15% to 20%. For children, use 5% to 10%. It is proving to be as effective as DEET in similar concentrations. It is generally well tolerated on the skin and is safe to use during pregnancy. Sawyer Picaridin Lotion in a 20% concentration is an excellent choice for prolonged protection. Higher concentrations provide longer duration of protection.

Oil of lemon eucalyptus (Repel Lemon Eucalyptus Repellent) is a popular repellent that's thought to be as effective as 7.5% DEET—providing protection against mosquito bites for up to 6 hours. It is actually not from eucalyptus, but is a product from the lemon-scented gum tree *Corymbia citriodora.* The product is water-distilled from the leaves, and the repellent is found in the spent fraction as *para*-menthane-3,8-diol (PMD). Oil of lemon eucalyptus can be used on children ages 3 years and older. Along with isopulegol and citronellal, oil of lemon eucalyptus is contained in the product Mosi-guard Natural. Of particular note, true eucalyptus oil does not work as an insect repellent.

Di-n-propyl isocinchomeronate (R-326) has been promoted as useful against biting flies. Ethyl butylacetylaminopropionate (IR3535)-containing repellent is far less useful (1 to 2 hours maximum protection at 10% concentration) than DEET. Mosbar soap is a product sold abroad that contains 20% DEET and 0.5% permethrin. *N*-octyl bicycloheptene dicarboximide synergist combined with DEET (Sawyer Products' Broad Spectrum; S. C. Johnson's Ticks OFF or Deep Woods OFF) is a tick repellent, also effective against biting flies and gnats, that can be applied directly to the skin. Neem *(Azadirachta indica),* used in India for millennia, reputedly has both insecticide and repellent properties. Soybean oil, sometimes used in combination with other repellent substances, might in and of itself have repellent properties.

Citronella and Avon Skin-So-Soft bath oil or skin stick are far less effective (15 minutes of protection versus 6 hours with 25% DEET) against mosquitoes, and useless against ticks. Other relatively ineffective (protection from a few minutes to [rarely] 2 hours) repellents include essential oils of cedar, peppermint, lemongrass, verbena, pennyroyal, lavender, pine, cinnamon, vanilla, rosemary, basil, thyme, allspice, garlic (topical or ingested), and geranium. Bite Blocker contains soybean, geranium, and coconut oils and has been claimed effective for up to 3.5 hours against mosquitoes. Bite Blocker for Kids (soybean oil, 2%) provides approximately 90 minutes of protection. Ingesting vitamin B_1 has not been proved to deter biting insects. It might decrease the skin irritation that follows an insect bite, but this would not diminish the transmission of infectious disease(s) via the bite.

2-Undecanone (BioUD) is a repellent derived from the wild tomato plant. A concentration of 7.5% provides repellency comparable to 25% DEET. It is particularly effective against ticks. It may have a strong odor.

To be effective, a repellent should be applied to the skin (liquid) and clothing (spray). After you swim, bathe, or perspire excessively, reapply it. If you are being bitten by insects, reapply the repellent. In windy conditions, repellents evaporate quickly and might need to be reapplied. Children under 2 years of age should not have insect repellent applied to the skin more than once in 24 hours (it's more effective to apply it to the clothing anyhow). If you're applying both a sunscreen and an insect repellent, apply the sunscreen first, so that it can be absorbed; wait 30 minutes, and then apply the insect repellent. There are also sunscreen–insect repellent combinations, such as Coppertone Bug & Sun. Bug Guard contains Skin-So-Soft (mostly mineral oil) in combination with citronella, enhanced by a sunscreen.

With regard to DEET-containing products, don't use repeated applications or concentrations greater than 15% in children under age 6 (Skedaddle, Skintastic, and other preparations intended for use on children contain approximately 6.5% to 10% DEET). In adults, skin irritation and/or rare severe side effects might be seen following the use of concentrated (75% to 100%) products. Most authorities recommend avoidance of concentrated products, noting the effectiveness of a 50% concentration in jungle settings. A concentration not to exceed 30% to 50% for routine adult use seems reasonable. One recommended product is Ultrathon Insect Repellent (34% DEET). A product that is advertised to significantly decrease absorption through human skin of DEET is Sawyer Controlled Release DEET Formula, which uses a protein that encapsulates the DEET and allows slow (sustained) release of its 20% concentration. Sawyer Ultra 30 Insect Repellent Lotion is formulated in a liposome base for slow release.

Insect repellent containing DEET should be applied to skin, not clothing. Care should be taken to avoid contact of DEET with plastics (including contact lenses), rayon, spandex, leather, or painted and varnished surfaces, because DEET might cause damage to these.

The following recommendations are offered to avoid toxicity:

1. Apply repellent sparingly, and only to exposed skin or clothing. Keep it out of the eyes. Don't apply repellent underneath clothing.
2. Avoid high-concentration products on the skin, particularly with children.
3. Don't apply repellent to cuts, wounds, or irritated skin. Apply to face by dispensing into the palms of your hands, and then using these to apply a thin layer to the face. Then, wash your hands.
4. Don't inhale or ingest repellents. Don't spray aerosol or pump products directly onto your face. Spray your hands and then use them to rub the repellent onto the face, avoiding the eyes and mouth. Don't spray around food.
5. Use long-sleeved clothing and apply repellent to fabric rather than to skin.
6. Don't use repellent on children's hands, which might be rubbed in the eyes or placed in the mouth.
7. Repellent applied to a wristband is not sufficient protection—you must apply the repellent directly to all the skin areas to be protected.

8. Don’t reapply repellent in normal weather conditions (unless it is a non-DEET repellent).
9. Wash repellent off the skin after the insect bite risk has ended.

Permethrin, a synthetic pyrethroid based on the naturally occurring pyrethroids that are extracted from the East African pyrethrum flower (a chrysanthemum), is actually an insecticide; that is, permethrin-containing products kill insects and ticks. While *permethrin carries little potential toxicity to humans, it should be used only on clothing (or on shoes, certain camping gear, bed nets, etc.), not on skin.* For instance, permethrin is known to cause eye irritation if the chemical comes in contact with a person’s eyes. Although permethrin in a 5% lotion or cream is sometimes prescribed by physicians for application to skin for treatment of mite (e.g., scabies) infestation, these medical dermatologic preparations aren’t recommended for use as insect repellents. In the past, combination DEET-permethrin (the latter in very low concentration) soaps have been field tested for use as an insect repellent. While they have been acceptable to the persons who used them, a commercial product based on this concept has not yet come to market.

There is ongoing discussion about the toxicities possibly associated with permethrin. These include potential cancer-causing potential, and perhaps abnormalities of the immune system. Properly used (e.g., applied to clothing and not directly to skin), permethrin has not yet been directly linked with serious adverse effects on humans, so it remains an effective barrier against insect-borne infections, such as Lyme disease and West Nile virus. It is best used in combination in its application to clothing with an approved insect repellent (such as picaridin or DEET), when the latter is applied to skin.

There are sprays to treat clothing, and permethrin-treated clothing on the market. It’s important to closely follow label instructions. Clothing that is sold pretreated with permethrin is often advertised to be effective (as a repellent) for up to 25 washings. Insect Shield Repellent Apparel and Insect Shield Repellent Gear are impregnated with a proprietary permethrin formula. The clothing is claimed to withstand 70 launderings and retain repellency. If you’re going to be in a high-risk (for an insect or arthropod bite capable of transmitting a disease) situation, to play it safe, the effectiveness should be assumed to begin to decrease after half the advertised allowable number of washings. Also, it should not be assumed to protect skin adjacent to the clothing, only to keep insects from biting through the clothing.

If you decide to apply permethrin spray to clothing, be certain to do the following:

1. Follow the manufacturer’s instructions closely. Don’t exceed recommended spraying times.

2. Treat clothing only. Don’t apply to skin, not because it is terribly toxic, but because it breaks down quickly and becomes ineffective. Permethrin is generally safe to use on dogs, but not on cats, which are very sensitive (it is toxic to their nervous systems) to wet permethrin.
3. Apply the permethrin in a well-ventilated outdoor area, protected from the wind.
4. Only spray the permethrin on the outer surface of clothing and shoes.
5. In a concentration of 0.5%, it can be sprayed on both sides of clothing to lightly moisten the outer surface of the clothing item; it’s not necessary to have the clothing soaked through (saturated).
6. Be certain to apply completely over socks, trouser cuffs, and shirt cuffs, where insects might attempt to crawl or fly through openings to your skin.
7. Hang treated clothing outdoors and allow to dry for at least 2 to 4 hours in nonhumid conditions and for at least 4 hours in humid conditions.
8. Treat clothing no more often than every 2 weeks.
9. Launder treated clothing separately from other clothing at least once before retreating.
10. Assume that your treated clothing is effective for repellency for 2 weeks or more. Wear it only when you need to repel insects and arthropods. Store it in a separate impermeable (to permethrin) bag when not in use.

Permethrin (Permanone tick repellent; Duranon tick repellent) can be applied to clothing, netting, and footwear. A single application is usually good for 1 to 2 weeks, or 20 washings. To apply permethrin to clothing or netting, add 2 oz of permethrin to a quart of water in a plastic bag. The solution will turn milky white. Put the garment or netting in the bag, seal the bag, and let the item soak for 10 minutes. After the soak, allow the clothing or netting to effectively dry (in the sun or hung) for a few hours.

PermaKill 4 Week Tick Killer is a 13.3% permethrin liquid concentrate that is diluted (⅓ oz, or 10 mL, in 16 oz, or 473 mL, of water) to be sprayed from a pump bottle. It can also be diluted 2 oz (59 mL) in ½ (355 mL) cup of water to soak a bed net, shirt, and pants, which are then air-dried.

Fleas, horseflies, blackflies, sand flies, deerflies, chiggers, gnats, and other assorted nuisances might not be repelled by insect repellents. Protective netting and a lot of swatting might be your only defenses.

Leeches

Leeches are parasitic annelid worms that live on land or in water. They attach to human skin with a painless bite to extract blood through the skin. Some of them release a substance called hirudin, which is an anticoagulant (causes increased tendency to bleed). Aquatic leeches are found in fresh water and are considered more dangerous than those on land, because they can attach inside the mouth, throat, lungs, vagina, urethra, and other internal sites.

To remove a leech, don’t pull it off—the residual sore might be larger. Instead, apply lemon juice, brine, salt, vinegar, tobacco juice, rubbing alcohol, menthol oil (peppermint or mint camphor), or insect repellent. Using a lighted or recently extinguished match or glowing ember might cause a skin burn. If the detached leech sticks to your fingers, roll it between them. If a leech is attached to someone’s eye, shine a flashlight close to it; it might move toward the light and away from the eye. The medical considerations for a leech bite are persistent bleeding, itching, and secondary infection. After removing a leech, inspect the wound for retained mouthparts and remove them. Bleeding usually stops spontaneously or with pressure. If the oozing is continuous, apply a styptic pencil or hemostatic (blood-stopping) dressing, such as QuikClot gauze, under pressure for 15 minutes. Treat wounds once or twice daily with an antiseptic solution or ointment.

Insect repellents (see page 382), particularly DEET applied to clothing and skin, will discourage leech attachment. Slippery grease (such as petroleum jelly) applied to exposed skin might also help. Wear waterproof boots when wading in leech-infested water, and tuck in pant legs.

Lightning strike, tornado (cyclone), hurricane (typhoon), flood, earthquake, tidal wave (tsunami), landslide (mudslide), volcano, and snow avalanche

Natural phenomena have medical considerations, such as broken bones, lacerations, crush wounds, hypothermia, drowning, and others discussed throughout this book. Because it can be lifesaving, it's very important to know how to seek safety and behave during a severe weather event or natural disaster.

Lightning strike

Lightning strikes the earth at least 100 times per second during an estimated 3000 thunderstorms per day. Fortunately, the odds of being struck by lightning aren't very great. Approximately 50 persons per year are victims of fatal strikes in the United States, but the number has been declining because of better education and awareness. The wise traveler respects thunderstorms and always seeks shelter during a lightning storm. If you hear thunder or see lightning, then seek shelter.

Lightning is the direct-current electrical discharge associated with a thunderstorm; it releases an initial charge (the vast majority of which travels from ground [positive] to cloud [negative]) of average 30 million volts to neutralize a potential difference (within a hundredth to a ten-thousandth of a second) of 200 million to a billion volts. A lightning flash can be made up of multiple (up to 30) strokes, which causes lightning to seem to flicker. Each stroke lasts less than 500 milliseconds. The diameter of the main stroke is 2 ½ to 3 inches (6 to 8 cm); the temperature has been estimated to be anywhere from 14,432°F to 90,032°F (8000°C to 50,000°C—four times as hot as the surface of the sun). Within milliseconds, the temperature falls to 3632°F to 5432°F (2000°C to 3000°C).

Thunder, which is always present with lightning, is attributed to the nearly explosive expansion of air heated and ionized by the stroke of lightning. To estimate the approximate distance in miles from your location to the lightning strike, time the difference in seconds between the flash of light and the onset of the thunder and divide by five. For instance, a lightning strike 1 mile away causes sound to reach you in 5 seconds. A “crack” is relatively close by, while a “rumble” indicates multiple strikes of varying distances, with the “high notes” filtered out by the air. Note that thunder is seldom heard if it is generated more than 10 miles (16 km) away.

Lightning can injure a person in many ways:

1. Direct hit, which most often occurs in the open.
2. Splash, which occurs when lightning hits another object (tree, fence, building). The current seeks the path of least resistance and might jump to a human. Splashes might occur from person to person.
3. Contact, when a person is holding on to a conductive material that is hit or splashed by lightning.
4. Step (stride) voltage (or ground current), when lightning hits the ground or an object nearby. The current spreads like waves in a pond.
5. Ground current.
6. Surface arcing.
7. Upward streamer current.
8. Blunt injury, which occurs from the victim’s own muscle contractions and/or from the explosive force of the shock wave produced by the lightning strike. These can combine to cause the victim to be thrown, sometimes a considerable distance.

When lightning strikes a person directly, splashes at them from a tree or building, or is conducted along the ground, it usually largely flows around the outside of the body (flashover phenomenon), which causes a unique constellation of signs and symptoms. The victim is frequently thrown, clothes might be burned or torn (“exploded” off by the instantaneous conversion of sweat to steam), metallic objects (such as belt buckles) might be heated, and shoes removed. The victim often undergoes severe muscle contractions—sufficient to dislocate limbs. In most cases, the person struck is confused and rendered temporarily blind and/or deaf. In some cases, there are linear (1 ½ to 2 inches [1.3 to 5 cm] wide, following areas of heavy sweat concentration), “feathered” (fernlike; keraunographism; Lichtenberg’s flowers—cutaneous imprints from electron showers that track over the skin) (Fig. 245, A), or “sunburst” patterns of punctate burns over the skin (see Fig. 245, B), loss of consciousness, ruptured eardrums, and inability to breathe. Occasionally, the victim ceases breathing and suffers cardiac arrest. Seizures or direct brain damage might occur. Eye injuries occur in half of victims.

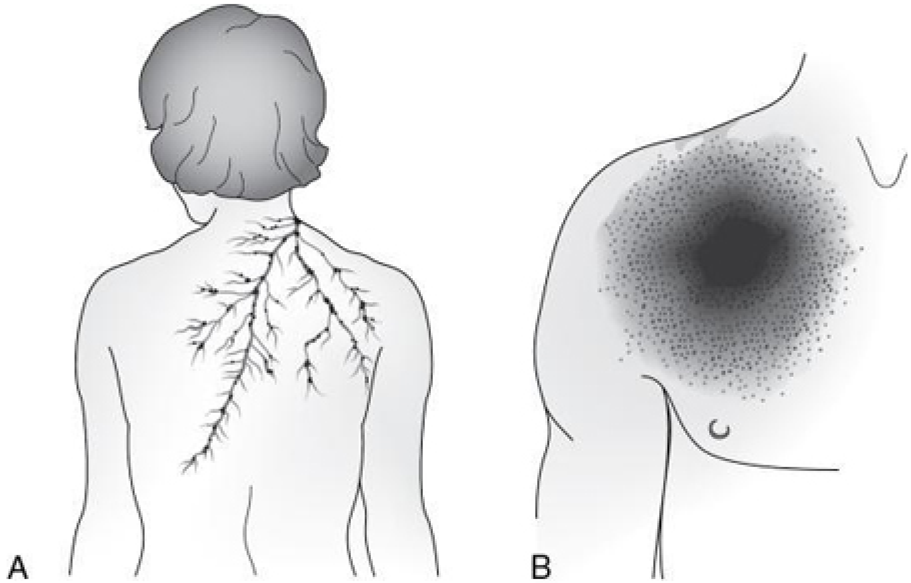


FIG. 245 **A,** Ferning lightning burn. **B,** Punctate (starburst) lightning burn.

A victim struck by lightning might not remember the flash or thunder, or even recognize that they have been hit. The confusion, muscle aches, body tingling, and amnesia can last for days. With a more severe case, the skin might be mottled, the legs and/or arms might be paralyzed, and it might be difficult to locate a pulse in the radial (wrist) artery (see page 28), because the muscles in the wall of the artery are in spasm. First-, second-, or third-degree skin burns might be present. Broken bones are not uncommon.

If a person is found confused, burned, or collapsed in the vicinity of a thunderstorm, consider the possibility that they were struck by lightning. The victim is not "electrified" or "charged"—you will not be jolted or stunned if you touch them.

1. Maintain the airway and assist breathing (see page 18). Continue to perform artificial respiration and cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) (see page 28) until advanced help can be obtained. Victims of lightning strike might have paralysis of the breathing mechanism for a period of up to 30 minutes, and then make a remarkable recovery. A seemingly lifeless individual might be saved if you breathe for them promptly after the injury. Do not assume that dilated or nonreactive (to light—see page 74) pupils are a sign of death, because they might represent direct injury to the eye(s).
2. Assume that the victim has been thrown a considerable distance. Protect the cervical spine (see page 33).
3. Examine the victim for any other injuries and treat accordingly.

4. Transport the victim to a hospital.
5. If you are in the vicinity of a thunderstorm, seek shelter for the victim and yourself. Lightning *can* strike twice in the same place!

Lightning avoidance and how to seek safety

1. If you hear thunder, it's best to curtail activities and seek shelter from lightning. Know the weather patterns for your area. Don't travel in times of high thunderstorm risk. Avoid being outdoors during or before a (threatening) thunderstorm. Carry a radio to monitor weather reports. Lightning can lash out from many miles in front of a storm cloud, in seemingly clear weather. If you calculate (see earlier) that a nearby lightning strike is within 3 miles (5 km) of your location, anticipate that the next strike will be in your immediate area. Don't resume activities outdoors for at least 30 minutes after the lightning is seen and the last thunder heard.
2. If a storm enters your area, immediately seek shelter. Enter a hard-roofed auto or large building. Tents and convertible autos offer essentially no protection from lightning. Rubber tires are not protective. Metal sheds are dangerous because of the risk of side splashes. Indoors, stay away from windows, open doors, fireplaces, and large metal fixtures. Inside a building, avoid plumbing fixtures, telephones, and other appliances attached by metal to the outside of the building.
3. Don't carry a lightning rod, such as a fishing pole or golf club. Rubber-soled shoes and raincoats don't provide protection. Don't touch long conductors, such as wet ropes, metal fences, and handrails. Avoid tall objects, such as ski lifts and power lines. Avoid being near boat masts or flagpoles. Don't seek refuge near power lines or tall metal structures. Avoid being near metal pipes and fences. If you're in a boat, try to get out of the water. If you're swimming in the water, get out. Don't stand near a metal boat. Get off bicycles, motorcycles, and golf carts.
4. Move off ridges and summits. Thunderstorms tend to occur in the afternoon, so attempt to summit early and be heading back down by noon. In the woods, avoid the tallest trees (stay at a distance from the nearest tree that's at least equal to that tree's height) or hilltops. Shelter yourself in a thick stand of smaller trees (e.g., saplings). Don't shelter under an isolated tree. Avoid clearings—you become the tallest tree. If you are in a clearing, seek the lowest point, such as a valley or ravine. Don't stay at or near the top of a peak or ridge. Avoid cave entrances. If you are out in the open and cannot find shelter, then put your feet together and try to stand on insulation, such as a foam hiking pad.

Crouch down and try to put your chest against your thighs or knees, and keep your head low. This might be an uncomfortable position to hold but do your best. Never lie flat on the ground. Insulate yourself from ground current by crouching on a sleeping pad, backpack, jacket, or coiled rope.

5. Stay in your car and roll up the windows. The rubber tires are not protective. If it is a convertible, huddle on the ground at least 50 yards (46 m) from the vehicle.
6. If you are part of a group of people, spread the group out so that everyone isn't struck by a single discharge.
7. If your hair stands on end, you hear high-pitched or crackling noises, or see a blue halo (St. Elmo's fire) around objects, there is electrical activity near you that precedes a lightning strike. If you can't get away from the area immediately, crouch down on the balls of your feet and keep your head down. Don't touch the ground with your hands.
8. The StrikeAlert Personal Lightning Detector (Outdoor Technologies, Inc.) is the size and configuration of a pager and uses an audible warning and LED display to show the wearer how far away lightning is striking and if a storm is approaching or leaving. The StrikeAlert HD is larger and has additional features.

Tornado avoidance and how to seek safety

1. Be alert for a tornado if the weather conditions are rapidly changing, particularly if a stormy sky is dark gray or green and you see large hail or dark rotating clouds or hear a loud roaring noise. If you see revolving, funnel-shaped clouds, you're in danger.
2. As soon as you note an approaching storm, seek shelter. If a storm shelter is available, use it. The best location is an underground cave or concrete structure. Otherwise, go to the lowest floor of a sturdy building. Don't remain in a tent or camper. Mobile homes are not adequate protection.
3. If you are already indoors, go to a shelter area such as a storm cellar or basement; otherwise stay in the center of an interior room on the lowest level away from corners, windows, doors, and outside walls. Don't open windows. Get under a sturdy table and protect your head and neck.
4. If a tornado is in your vicinity and you are caught outside in open country, hunker down or lie flat in a depression, ditch, culvert, or ravine. Cover your head with your arms and hands. Don't get under an overpass or bridge—you're safer in a low, flat location.

5. Don’t try to outrun a tornado. There is no way to predict when it will change direction. Flying debris is everywhere, and also be alert for flooding.

Hurricane: How to seek safety

1. Listen to a National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) weather radio, television, or internet for weather updates.
2. Evacuate if so advised. Don’t remain in a mobile home or temporary structure. Don’t remain on the coast, on a floodplain, near a river, or on an inland waterway.
3. If you are not advised to evacuate, prepare any permanent dwelling for the storm. Close storm shutters, board the windows, brace external doors, and secure outdoor objects or bring them indoors.
4. If so instructed, turn off utilities. Turn off propane tanks. Anticipating power loss, turn the refrigerator and freezer settings to their coldest, and keep the doors to these appliances closed.
5. Moor all boats.
6. Fill toilets and tubs with water.
7. Don’t stay in higher levels of high-rise structures unless a storm surge is possible (see Tidal Wave, later).
8. If caught in the storm, stay indoors away from doors and windows, close all interior doors, and keep the curtains and blinds closed. Shelter in an interior room or closet on the lowest level or lie on the floor under a table or other sturdy object.

Flood: How to seek safety

1. Floods occur in streams, rivers, drainage channels, and canyons. It’s possible that a storm many miles away can cause flooding in your vicinity with no warning other than a color change of the water, sudden appearance of debris in the flowing water, and sudden water level rise. Take care to camp far from flood zones during times of bad weather.
2. In flood conditions, avoid walking in moving water. Don’t try to drive into flood waters. If your vehicle stalls or becomes trapped, abandon it quickly and seek dry ground.
3. When walking through water, use a walking stick for balance and to check your footing.

Earthquake: What to do and how to seek safety

If you are caught in an earthquake in a wilderness setting, do the following:

1. Seek a safe location, out of the path of rockfall, mudslides, or snow avalanches. If you can, move into a clearing away from buildings, trees, and power lines. If the ground shaking is extreme, position yourself on your hands and knees. Stay away from walls of buildings that might collapse.
2. If you are in a moving vehicle, drive to a clearing, set the parking brake, and stay in it until the shaking stops. Some experts recommend leaving the car because if something collapses on it while you are inside, you might be crushed, and if you are outside the vehicle, it might compress and create a safe space adjacent to it. There is no absolute right or wrong about whether to stay in the car or exit it. In either case, don't stop near or under buildings, bridges, trees, overpasses, or utility wires.
3. If you're indoors, stay put until you are certain that it's safe to go outside. Move away from glass windows. Curl into a fetal position and position yourself next to or under something that can compress, but not crush, and thereby protect you by leaving an adjacent void. If you're in a bed during an earthquake, roll off the bed and remain next to it. Don't remain in a doorway and try to stay off stairs.
4. Near the ocean coast, move to higher ground at least 100 ft (30.5 m) or 2 miles (3.2 km) inland in anticipation of a tidal wave.
5. If you are trapped under debris, don't light a match or kick up dust. Cover your mouth and nose with a cloth, and if you have a whistle, blow on it to be located. Avoid shouting and taking deep breaths of dust-laden air.
6. Eliminate any obvious fire hazards. If you're in a cabin supplied with natural gas, turn it off at the source if there is any odor or you believe there might be a leak.
7. Be prepared for aftershocks.
8. Secure a supply of drinking water. Be certain that you're prepared for a period of time without electrical power.
9. Prepare a shelter, store sufficient food, and locate equipment necessary for survival. Keep first aid supplies and a flashlight in a waterproof container and within easy reach.
10. If a small earthquake ("foreshock") occurs, anticipate a larger earthquake within days. If a sizeable earthquake occurs, anticipate at least one and likely many aftershocks over the next few days.

Tidal wave: How to seek safety

1. Heed all warnings and storm sirens.
2. Near the ocean coast, move to higher ground (at least 100 ft [30.5 m]) or 2 miles (3.2 km) inland in anticipation of a tidal wave. Remain there until you are instructed that it is safe to return.
3. If you see the surf water pulled far out as if it is low tide (or lower), then make haste to seek higher ground.
4. If you cannot move to higher ground, seek refuge at the highest level of a tall reinforced concrete building. If a life jacket is available, put it on.

Landslide: How to seek safety

1. During any storm in which a landslide might occur, remain awake and alert. Listen to a NOAA weather radio.
2. Have a preplanned escape route.
3. Watch and listen for indications of moving debris. Examples are stones hitting against a building or trees cracking.
4. Try to move from the path of the flow or future flow.
5. If you can't escape, curl into a ball and protect your head and face.
6. Unless absolutely necessary to save a life, don't enter into a slide area. The ground might be unstable and there might be another slide.

Volcano

The eruption of a volcano can be a cataclysmic event. Since recorded time, pyroclastic flows (described later) have killed the greatest number of people, while flying solid objects (called "tephra" by volcanologists) thrown out by the volcano are the most frequent killers. Usually, when an explosive volcano erupts, a cloud of gas, ash, and lava fragments rise up into the atmosphere. If the eruption cloud becomes more dense than the surrounding air, it might fall back toward the ground, propelled by the forces of gravity. This can lead to formation of an incredibly hot (more than 1500°F [816°C]), high-speed (faster than 180 miles/hr [290 km/hr]) avalanche of ash, volcanic gases, lava fragments, and heated air, which is called a pyroclastic flow. Because of the forces and temperatures involved, no living being caught in this infernal river can survive. Most human victims die from suffocation, exposure to the heat, or burial under the volcanic debris. The extreme temperatures might also generate gale-force winds. Anyone who travels in the vicinity of an active volcano should be aware of the risks and have a realistic evacuation plan.

What to do if working or traveling near an active volcano

1. To learn any volcano's pattern of eruption, read about past eruptions and accidents.
2. Know the current volcano warning level where you will be traveling. Obey local authorities.
3. Travel with an experienced guide.
4. Leave details about your itinerary with someone who can report you as delayed or missing.
5. Wear a hardhat and carry goggles, a protective mask, flashlight, radio, and if you might become isolated, food and water.
6. Beware of rockfall, avalanche, and hazardous gases. Know that if you are driving, your vision may become obscured. If it is safe, maintain a low traveling speed—this also might protect your engine.
7. Observe for warning signs of an eruption. Leave immediately if the area becomes dangerous. Be prepared and know escape routes. Be ready to move.
8. Don't approach lava that is flowing through vegetation. Avoid mudflows, low-lying regions, and river areas.
9. If you will be indoors, close windows, doors, vents, and any other openings that might allow ash to enter. Wear an N95 or P100 mask. If a mask is not available, try to filter ash from breathing by tying a damp cloth over your mouth.

Snow avalanche

If you are going to be traveling in avalanche country, take a proper avalanche safety and rescue course.

Some of the factors that influence a buried victim's chances for survival are time buried, depth buried, clues on the surface (to facilitate location of the victim and rescue), rescue equipment, injury, ability to fight the avalanche, body position, snow density, presence of air (breathing) pocket and size of air pocket, and luck. A victim who is uninjured and able to fight on the downhill ride usually has a better chance of ending up only partly buried, or if completely buried, a better chance of creating an air pocket for breathing. A victim who is severely injured or knocked unconscious is like a rag doll being rolled, flipped, and twisted. Being trapped in an avalanche is a life-and-death struggle, with the upper hand going to those who fight the hardest.

Avalanches kill in two main ways. Snow burial causes asphyxiation (either obstructed airway or exhausted oxygen supply). Second, serious injury is always possible in a tumble down an avalanche path. Trees, rocks, cliffs, and the wrenching action of snow in motion can do horrible things to the human body. A very small percentage of avalanche victims die from hypothermia, probably because they succumb to injuries or asphyxia before they have a chance to become sufficiently hypothermic to expire.

The problem of breathing in an avalanche does not start with being buried. A victim swept down in the churning snow has an extraordinarily hard time breathing. Inhaled snow clogs the mouth and nose; asphyxiation occurs quickly if the victim is buried with the airway already blocked. Snow that was light and airy when a skier carved turns in it becomes viselike in its new form.

Snow sets up hard and solid after an avalanche. It is almost impossible for victims to dig themselves out, even if buried less than a foot deep. Hard debris makes recovery very difficult in the absence of a sturdy shovel. The pressure of the snow in a burial of several feet sometimes is so great that the victim is unable to expand their chest to draw a breath. Warm exhaled breath freezes on the snow around the face, eventually forming an ice lens that cuts off all airflow.

Another factor that affects survival is whether the victim is buried face up or face down. The most favorable position is face up. Data from a limited number of burials show that the victim is twice as likely to survive if buried face up rather than face down. If buried face up, an air pocket forms around the face as the back of the head melts into the snow; if buried face down, an air pocket cannot form as the face melts into the snow. Light, powdery snow offers more of a survival advantage than does wet, heavy snow.

A completely buried victim has a poor chance of survival. Survival is interrelated with both time and depth of burial. Survival probabilities diminish with increasing burial depth. To date, no one in the United States who has been buried deeper than 7 ft (2.1 m) has been recovered alive.

Time is the true enemy of the buried victim. In the first 15 minutes, more persons are found alive than dead. At 30 minutes, an equal number are found dead and alive. After 30 minutes, more are found dead than alive, and from there the survival rate continues to diminish. In favorable circumstances, buried victims can live for several hours beneath the snow; therefore rescuers should never abandon a search prematurely. For instance, in 2003, two snowshoers caught near Washington’s Mt. Baker survived burials of 22 and 24 hours.

If a person is extricated from an avalanche (or you gain access to their upper body), and you are the rescuer, clear the airway and do your best to ensure adequate breathing (see page 18). If the victim is being or has been extricated and you are concerned about a possible injured spine, then take appropriate precautions (see page 33). A person who is found unconscious but with a pulse after a long snow burial might be hypothermic. Handle and treat accordingly (see page 324).

An air pocket for breathing, or use of an AvaLung, and an open airway must be present for an avalanche burial victim to survive long enough to develop severe hypothermia. If an air pocket for breathing or AvaLung is not present or if the airway is obstructed, the avalanche victim who is extricated from snow burial and has no pulse has most likely died from injuries or asphyxiation. Prolonged CPR might be unsuccessful, but if it is safe for the rescuers, it is proper to initially start CPR to see if return of circulation can be achieved in a reasonable time. This is because the rescuer can never know precisely when the avalanche burial victim went into cardiac arrest. Follow the instructions for resuscitation with the condition of hypothermia (see page 321).

To maximize your chance of not being caught in an avalanche and surviving should you be caught in an avalanche:

1. Check the avalanche forecast. These may be put out by local ski areas, the National Weather Service, U.S. Forest Service or other agencies. If there is recent avalanche activity where you intend to travel, you are taking a risk. The most dangerous time is within 24 hours of a storm.
2. Know the snow and weather conditions that contribute to avalanche danger. These include the nature of the snowpack, history of recent snowfall and temperatures, wind conditions and snow drifting, and so forth.
3. Carry and know how to use appropriate avalanche safety and rescue equipment. This might include a proper snow shovel, collapsible probe pole or ski pole probe, avalanche rescue beacon (transceiver), avalanche airbag system, AvaLung, and Recco Rescue System. Stay current on equipment advances and proper use techniques.
4. Never ski alone in dangerous conditions. These include slopes with an angle of only up to 45 degrees and that trigger slides of 150 feet or less.
5. Most avalanches are triggered by the eventual victims. Know how to cross an avalanche-prone snow-covered slope:
    a. Pick the safest route. Don’t take chances to save a bit of time crossing the snow.
    b. Tighten up clothing, fasten zippers, and wear hats, gloves, and goggles.
    c. Loosen or remove heavy backpacks.
    d. Remove ski pole straps and ski runaway straps. In avalanche terrain, use releasable bindings on snowboards and mountaineering (including telemark) skis.
    e. Check rescue beacon (transceiver) batteries and set the beacon to “transmit.”
    f. Plan an escape route before crossing the slope.
    g. Cross the slope at a high point and try to stay on ridges.
    h. Cross far out from “runout zones.”
    i. Cross slopes as quickly as possible.
    j. When climbing or descending a potential avalanche path, try to keep to the sides.

    - k. Cross one person at a time. Have following persons stay in the same path.
    - l. If you hear a “whumpf,” the snow is moving or collapsing, and an avalanche might be imminent.
    - m. Try to move toward natural safety islands.

6. Know how to survive an avalanche:
    - a. If the snow fracture at the top of the avalanche started just underneath you, try to jump up onto stable snow that isn’t sliding.
    - b. Escape to the side.
    - c. Shout and then close your mouth.
    - d. If knocked off your feet, kick off your skis and discard your ski poles. Get your hands up to your face. Grab a jacket collar or pack strap.
    - e. Snowmobile riders should try to stay on their vehicles.
    - f. Try to grab onto a fixed object or otherwise slow yourself down.
    - g. Try to create an air pocket in front of your mouth and nose.
    - h. If you sense you are near the surface, particularly when the avalanche is slowing or stopping, thrust an arm and hand up through the snow.
7. Rescue:
    - a. Assess the danger. Avoid triggering a second avalanche.
    - b. Assign a leader.
    - c. Call for help.
    - d. Safely access the avalanche debris and go to the spot where the victim was last seen.
    - e. Spread searchers out to scan the debris.
    - f. Turn all transceivers to “receive” to pick up signals.
    - g. Make shallow probes at likely burial spots with an avalanche probe, ski pole, or tree limb. Likely burial spots include the uphill sides of trees, exposed rocks, and other fixed structures; bends in the direction of the debris; and at the toe of the debris.
    - h. Shovel quickly and efficiently.

Hazardous aquatic life and aquatic infections

Anyone who gets an infection following a wound acquired in a natural aquatic environment should be treated with an antibiotic to cover *Staphylococcus* and *Streptococcus* species (use dicloxacillin, erythromycin, or cephalexin), and a second antibiotic to cover *Vibrio* or *Aeromonas* species (use trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, doxycycline or ciprofloxacin). (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498) An infection from *Vibrio* or *Aeromonas* bacteria is more likely in deep puncture wounds, if there is a retained spine (such as from a stingray), and in people who suffer from an impaired immune system (diabetes, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome [AIDS], cancer, chronic liver disease, alcoholism, chronic corticosteroid therapy). Both bacteria cause rapid onset of cellulitis (see page 261) which can very quickly (within 24 to 48 hours) transform into an aggressive infection characterized by the formation of gas within the tissues, blisters, and extensive tissue destruction leading to overwhelming infection. If *Vibrio* or *Aeromonas* infection is suspected, the victim needs to immediately seek emergency care.

A very rare brain infection acquired from natural freshwater (lakes, rivers, and hot springs) is amebic meningoencephalitis caused by *Naegleria fowleri,* an ameba. This infects people by entering the nose, usually from swimming in or diving into natural freshwater or inadequately chlorinated pool water. It has occurred after using a neti pot with contaminated water (which may be filled with tap water that was heated to less than 117°F [47°C]) to irrigate the sinuses. One to seven days after infection, symptoms of headache, fever, vomiting, and stiff neck occur. Death might follow rapidly. To avoid this infection, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention recommends that persons avoid water-related activities in warm freshwater during periods of high water temperature and low water levels, hold the nose shut or use nose clips while taking part in water-related activities in bodies of warm freshwater, and avoid digging in or stirring up sediment while taking part in water-related activities in shallow warm freshwater areas. Irrigation of sinuses should only be undertaken using distilled or sterile (previously heated to at least 117°F [47°C]) or previously boiled water, and the irrigation device should be thoroughly rinsed and allowed to fully air dry after each use.

Sharks

The jaws of the shark contain rows of razor-sharp teeth, which can bite down with extreme force. The result is a wound with loss of tissue that bleeds freely and can lead rapidly to shock (see page 70).

The basic management of a major bleeding wound is described on page 60. Even if a shark bite appears minor, the wound should be washed out and bandaged, and the victim taken to a doctor. Often, the wound will contain pieces of shark teeth, seaweed, or sand debris, which must be removed to avoid a nasty infection. Like other animal bites, shark bites should not be sewn or taped tightly shut, to allow drainage. This helps prevent serious infection. The victim should be started on an antibiotic to oppose *Vibrio* bacteria (trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, doxycycline, or ciprofloxacin). (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.)

The skin of many sharks is rough, like sandpaper, and can cause a bad scrape. If this occurs, it should be managed similar to a second-degree burn (see page 128).

Shark avoidance

1. Seek the advice of locals before entering waters where shark attacks have occurred.
2. Don’t enter waters posted with shark warnings.
3. Obey lifeguards if they request you to leave the water. Do so slowly and quietly.
4. Avoid shark-infested waters, particularly at dusk and after dark. Don’t dive in known shark feeding grounds. Avoid pinniped (e.g., sea lions and seals) rookeries and congregation areas.
5. Swim in groups. Sharks tend to attack single swimmers. Don’t splash on the surface or create a commotion in the water.
6. When diving or swimming, avoid deep drop-offs, sandbars, jetties, areas where birds are diving into the water, where there are leaping baitfish, murky water (e.g., recent storm), river mouths, or areas near sewage outlets. Don’t stray far from shore.
7. Don’t swim in waters frequented by recreational or commercial fishers.
8. Don’t swim with dogs or horses in the water.
9. Pods of dolphins or porpoises might indicate the presence of sharks. If they head inshore, exit the water.
10. Don’t tether captured (speared, for example) fish to your body.
11. Don’t corner or provoke sharks. Don’t touch or harass any shark.
12. If a shark appears, leave the water with slow, purposeful movements. *Don’t panic or splash.* If a shark approaches while you’re diving in deep

water, attempt to position yourself so that you are protected from the rear. If a shark moves in, attempt to strike a firm blow to the snout.

13. If you're stranded at sea and a rescue helicopter arrives to extract you from the water, exit the water at the earliest opportunity.

Barracudas

Barracudas might bite victims and create nasty wounds with their long canine-like teeth. These wounds are managed similar to shark bites (see earlier). Because barracudas seem to be attracted to shiny objects, the swimmer, boater, or diver is advised to not wear bright metallic objects, particularly not a barrette in the hair or anklet dangled on a leg near the surface from a boat or dock.

Moray eels

Although they look quite ferocious, moray eels seldom attack humans, unless provoked. They have muscular jaws equipped with sharp fanglike teeth, which can inflict a nasty bite. The usual wound is one or more punctures but can be a large and deep cut. A moray tends to bite and hold on.

A moray bite should be managed similar to a shark bite (see page 394). Even if the bite is very small, it should be examined by a physician to be sure that all tooth fragments have been removed. If the bite is more than superficial and, on the hand, on the foot, or near a joint, the victim should be started on an antibiotic (trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, doxycycline or ciprofloxacin) to oppose *Vibrio* bacteria. Avoid sewing, or otherwise tightly closing a moray bite unless absolutely necessary. (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.)

Sponges

Natural sea sponges can be toxic "fresh" or dried. They can cause two types of skin reaction. The first is an allergic type similar to that caused by poison oak (see page 257), with the difference that the reaction generally occurs within an hour after the sponge is handled. The skin becomes red, with burning, itching, and occasional mottling or blistering. The second type of reaction is caused by small spicules of silica from the sponges that are broken off and embedded in the outermost layers of the skin. This causes irritation, redness, and swelling. When large skin areas are involved, the victim might complain of fever, chills, fatigue, dizziness, nausea, and muscle cramps. Untreated, minor sponge-induced rashes resolve in 3 to 7 days; more severe reactions might cause the skin to peel after a week to 10 days.

Because it's difficult to tell precisely which type of skin reaction has occurred, if a person develops a rash after handling a sponge, undertake the following therapy:

1. First, gently dry the skin. Then, apply the sticky side of adhesive tape to the skin and peel it off. This will remove most sponge spicules that are present. An alternative is to apply a thin layer of rubber cement or a commercial facial peel, let it dry and adhere to the skin, and then peel it off.
2. Soak the affected skin with white vinegar (5% acetic acid) for 15 minutes three times a day. This can be done by wetting a gauze pad or cloth with vinegar and laying it on the skin. If vinegar is not available, use isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol 40%.
3. Again dry the skin, and then apply hydrocortisone lotion (0.5% to 1%) thinly twice a day until the irritation is gone. Don't use topical steroids before decontaminating with vinegar; this might worsen the reaction.

If the rash worsens (blistering, increasing redness or pain, swollen lymph glands), this might indicate an infection, and the victim should be started on an antibiotic to oppose *Vibrio* bacteria (trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, doxycycline, or ciprofloxacin). (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.) If the rash is persistent but there is no sign of infection, a 7-day course of oral prednisone in a tapering dose (for a 150-lb, or 68-kg, person, begin with 70 mg and decrease by 10 mg/day) might be helpful. Corticosteroids should always be taken with the understanding that a rare side effect is serious deterioration of the head ("ball" of the ball-and-socket joint) of the femur, the long bone of the thigh. Corticosteroids are interchangeable to a certain degree. If you must substitute, here is a rough measure of equivalence: 20 mg prednisone equals 16 mg methylprednisolone equals 3 mg dexamethasone.

Jellyfish

Jellyfish is the term commonly used to describe an enormous number of marine animals that are capable of inflicting a painful, and occasionally life-threatening, sting. These include fire coral, hydroids, jellyfish (including sea wasps), and anemones. The stings occur when the victim comes into contact with the creature's tentacles or other appendages, which can carry millions of microscopic stinging cells (cnidocytes), each cell equipped with a toxin-laden microscopic stinging apparatus (nematocyst). Depending on the species, size, geographic location, time of year, and other natural factors, stings can range in severity from mild burning and skin redness to excruciating pain and severe blistering with generalized illness (nausea, vomiting, shortness of breath, muscle spasms, low blood pressure, and so on). Broken-off tentacles that are fragmented in the surf or washed up on the beach can retain their toxicity for months and should not be handled, even if they appear to be dried out and withered.

The dreaded box jellyfish *(Chironex fleckeri)* of northern Australia and the Indo-Pacific contains one of the most potent animal venoms known. A sting from one of these (or related) creatures can induce death in minutes from cessation of breathing, abnormal heart rhythms, and profound low blood pressure (shock). A sting from the Irukandji *(Carukia barnesi)* causes a syndrome of muscle spasm (back pain), sweating, nausea and vomiting, high blood pressure, and perhaps death. Priapism occurs rarely.

Be prepared to treat an allergic reaction following a jellyfish sting (see page 78).

The following therapy is recommended for all unidentified jellyfish and other creatures with stinging cells, including the box jellyfish, Portuguese man-of-war ("bluebottle"), Irukandji, fire coral, stinging hydroid, sea nettle, and sea anemone:

1. Don't rub the wound.
2. If the sting is thought to be from the box jellyfish *(C. fleckeri),* immediately flood the wound with vinegar (5% acetic acid). A sting from the Australian *Physalia physalis*, a recently differentiated species, should not be doused with vinegar.
3. Treat a severe allergic reaction if such is present (see page 78).
4. Keep the victim as still as possible. Continually apply the vinegar until the victim can be brought to medical attention. If you are out at sea or on an isolated beach, allow the vinegar to soak the tentacles or stung skin for 10 minutes before you attempt to remove adherent tentacles or further treat the wound. In Australia, surf lifesavers (lifeguards) might carry antivenom, which is given as an intramuscular injection at the first aid scene. The pressure immobilization technique is no longer recommended as a therapy for jellyfish stings.
5. For all other stings, if a topical decontaminant (vinegar or isopropyl [rubbing] alcohol) is available, pour it liberally over the skin or apply a soaked compress. Some authorities advise against the use of alcohol on the theoretical grounds that it has not been proved beyond a doubt to help. However, some clinical observations support its use. Since not all jellyfish are identical, it's extremely helpful to know ahead of time what works for the stingers in your specific geographic location. Vinegar might not work as well to treat sea bather's eruption (see page 258); a better agent might be a solution of papain (such as unseasoned meat tenderizer—see below for precaution about duration of therapy). For a fire coral sting, citrus (e.g., fresh lime) juice that contains citric, malic, or

tartaric acid might be effective. Topical lidocaine 4% might effectively numb any jellyfish sting, and also perhaps lessen the envenomation.

6. Until the decontaminant is available, you can rinse the skin with seawater. Don't rinse the skin gently with fresh water or apply ice directly to the skin, as these might worsen the envenomation. A brisk freshwater stream (forceful shower) might have sufficient force to physically remove the microscopic stinging cells, but nonforceful application is more likely to cause the cells to fire, increasing the envenomation. A nonmoist ice or cold pack may be useful to diminish pain, but take care to wipe away any surface moisture (condensation) before the application. Observations from Australia suggest that hot (nonscalding to tolerance) water (113°F [45°C]) application or immersion might diminish the sting of the Portuguese man-of-war from that part of the world. The generalization of this observation to treatment of other jellyfishes, particularly in North America, should not automatically be assumed because application of fresh water worsens certain envenomations.
7. Apply soaks of vinegar or lidocaine for 30 minutes or until pain is relieved. Baking soda powder or paste is recommended to detoxify the sting of certain sea nettles, such as the Chesapeake Bay sea nettle. A paste made from unseasoned meat tenderizer (don't exceed 15 minutes of application time, particularly not on the sensitive skin of small children) or papaya fruit might be helpful. These contain papain, which might also be quite useful to alleviate the sting from the thimble jellyfish that causes sea bather's eruption (see page 258). Don't apply any organic solvent, such as kerosene, turpentine, or gasoline. Perfume, aftershave, or high-proof liquor may worsen the skin reaction. While likely not harmful, urinating on a jellyfish, or any other marine, sting has never been proved to be effective.
8. After decontamination, apply a lather of shaving cream or soap and shave the affected area with a razor. In a pinch, you can use a paste of sand or mud in seawater and a clamshell. If a topical decontaminant (see numbers 1 and 2) is not available, simply applying a lather of shaving cream and shaving the affected area might lessen the pain from a sting.
9. Reapply the lidocaine, vinegar, or rubbing alcohol soak for 15 minutes.
10. Apply a thin coating of hydrocortisone lotion (0.5% to 1%) twice a day. Anesthetic ointment (such as lidocaine hydrochloride 2.5% or a benzocaine-containing spray) might provide short-term pain relief.
11. If the victim has a large area involved (an entire arm or leg, face, or genitals), is very young or very old, or shows signs of generalized illness (nausea, vomiting, weakness, shortness of breath, chest pain, and the like), seek help from a doctor. If a child has placed tentacle fragments in

their mouth, have them swish and spit whatever potable liquid is available. If there is already swelling in the mouth (muffled voice, difficulty swallowing, enlarged tongue and lips), don't give anything by mouth, protect the airway (see page 18), and rapidly transport the victim to a hospital.

Be aware that a jellyfish sting can cause a persistent or recurring rash for a year or more. If this happens, seek the care of a dermatologist, who can prescribe drugs that modify this type of allergic reaction.

To prevent jellyfish stings, an ocean bather or diver should wear, at a minimum, a synthetic nylon-rubber (Lycra [DuPont]) dive skin. Safe Sea Sunblock with Jellyfish Sting Protective Lotion (www.getsafesea.com), which is both a sunscreen and a jellyfish sting inhibitor, has been shown to be effective in preventing stings from many jellyfish species. Give all jellyfish a wide berth when swimming or diving.

Other prevention measures include being aware of surface jellyfish, not diving into water headfirst, checking snorkel and scuba mouthpieces carefully for tentacle fragments, watching out for stinging tentacles on ropes—anchor lines—fishing lines, and obeying posted warnings. If "stinger enclosures" are present, don't venture beyond them.

Coral and barnacle cuts

Cuts and scrapes from sharp-edged coral and barnacles tend to fester and become infected wounds. Treatment for these cuts is as follows:

1. Scrub the cut vigorously with soap and water, and then flush the wound with large amounts of water.
2. Flush the wound with a half-strength solution of hydrogen peroxide in water. Rinse again with water.
3. Apply a thin layer of bacitracin or mupirocin ointment, or mupirocin cream, and cover with a dry, sterile, nonadherent dressing. If no ointment or dressing is available, the wound can be left open. Thereafter, it should be cleaned and redressed twice a day.
4. If the wound develops a poorly healing pus-laden crust, you can use wet-to-dry dressing changes to remove the upper nonhealing layer to expose healthy, healing tissue. This is done by putting a dry, sterile gauze pad over the wound (without any underlying ointment), soaking the gauze pad with saline or a dilute antiseptic solution (such as 1% to 5% povidone–iodine in disinfected water), allowing the liquid to dry, and then "brutally" ripping the bandage off the wound. The dead and dying tissue adheres to the gauze and is lifted free. The pink (hopefully),

slightly bleeding tissue underneath should be healthy and healing. Dressings are changed once or twice a day. Use wet-to-dry dressings for a few days, or until they become nonadherent. At that point, switch back to the treatment in the previous paragraph.

If the wound shows signs of infection (extreme redness, pus, swollen lymph glands) within 24 to 48 hours after the injury, start the victim on an antibiotic to oppose *Vibrio* bacteria (e.g., trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, doxycycline or ciprofloxacin), as well as an antibiotic to oppose *Staphylococcus* bacteria (e.g., dicloxacillin or cephalexin). (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.)

5. Coral poisoning occurs if coral cuts are extensive, or the cuts are from a particularly toxic species. The symptoms include a coral cut that heals poorly or continues to drain pus or cloudy fluid, swelling around the cut, swollen lymph glands, fever, chills, and fatigue. An antibiotic (see step 4) should be started, and the victim seen by a physician, who may elect to treat the victim for a week or two with an oral corticosteroid.

Sea urchins

Some sea urchins are covered with sharp venom-filled spines (Fig. 246) that can easily penetrate and break off into the skin, or with small pincer-like appendages (Fig. 247) that grasp the victim and inoculate them with venom from a sac within the pincer. Sea urchin punctures or stings are painful wounds, most often of the hands or feet. If a person receives many wounds simultaneously, the reaction might be so severe as to cause difficulty in breathing, weakness, and collapse. The treatment for sea urchin wounds is as follows:

1. Immerse the wound in nonscalding hot water to tolerance (110°F to 113°F, or 43.3°C to 45°C). This frequently provides sufficient pain relief. Administer appropriate pain medicine.
2. Carefully remove any readily visible spines. Don’t dig around in the skin to fish them out as it risks crushing the spines and making them more difficult to remove. Don’t intentionally crush the spines. Purple or black markings in the skin immediately after a sea urchin encounter don’t necessarily indicate the presence of a retained spine fragment. Such discoloration is often dye leached from the surface of a spine, commonly from a black urchin (*Diadema* species). The dye will be absorbed over 24 to 48 hours, and the discoloration will disappear. If there are still black markings after 48 to 72 hours, a spine fragment is likely present.
3. If the sting is caused by a species with pincer organs, use hot-water immersion and then apply shaving cream or a soap paste and shave the

area.

4. Seek the care of a physician if you feel that spines have been retained in the hand or foot, or near a joint. They might need to be removed surgically, in order to minimize infection, inflammation, and damage to nerves or important blood vessels.
5. If the wound shows signs of infection (extreme redness, pus, swollen lymph glands) within 24 to 48 hours after the injury, or if the spine is felt to have penetrated a joint, start the victim on an antibiotic to oppose *Vibrio* bacteria (e.g., trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, doxycycline or ciprofloxacin), as well as an antibiotic to oppose *Staphylococcus* bacteria (e.g., dicloxacillin or cephalexin). (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.)
6. If a spine puncture in the palm of the hand results in a persistent swollen finger without any sign of infection (fever, redness, swollen lymph glands in the elbow or armpit), it might become necessary to treat a 150-lb (68-kg) victim with a 7-day course of oral prednisone in a tapering dose (begin with 70 mg and decrease by 10 mg per day). Corticosteroids should always be taken with the understanding that a rare side effect is serious deterioration of the head ("ball" of the ball-and-socket joint) of the femur, the long bone of the thigh.

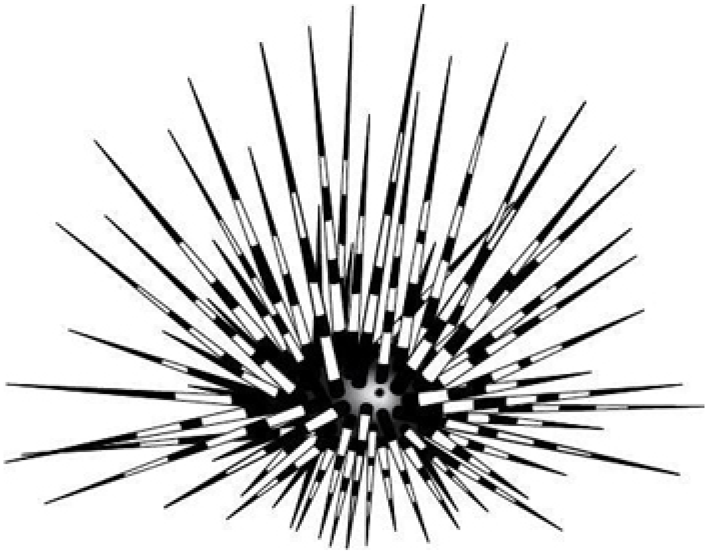


FIG. 246 Spiny sea urchin.

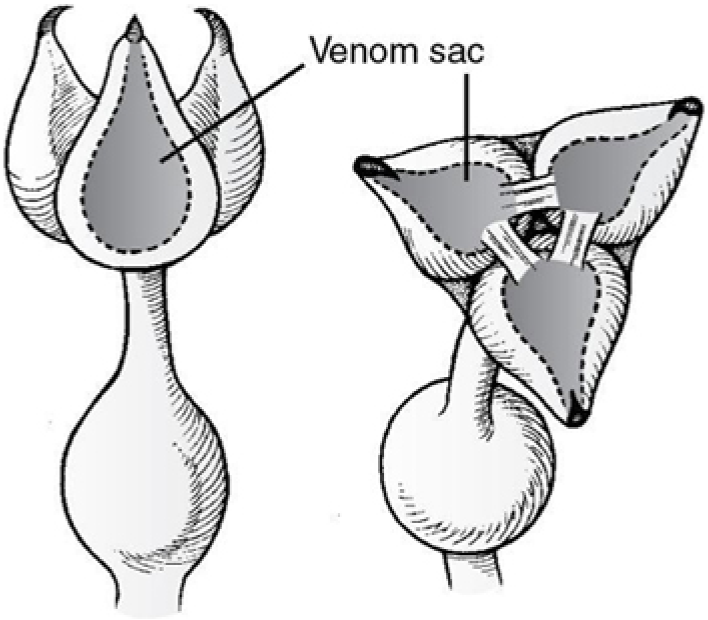


FIG. 247 Sea urchin pincer with embedded venom sac.

Starfish

The crown of thorns starfish *(Acanthaster planci)* is a particularly venomous starfish found in tropical oceans worldwide. It carries sharp and rigid spines that can grow to 3 inches (7.5 cm) in length. The cutting edges easily penetrate a diver’s glove and cause a very painful puncture wound with copious bleeding and slight swelling. Multiple puncture wounds might lead to vomiting, swollen lymph glands, and brief muscle paralysis.

The treatment is similar to that for a sea urchin puncture (see page 398). Immerse the wound in nonscalding hot water to tolerance (110°F to 113°F, or 43.3°C to 45°C) for 30 to 90 minutes. This frequently provides pain relief. Administer appropriate pain medicine. Carefully remove any readily visible spines. If there is a question of a retained spine or fragment, seek the assistance of a physician.

Other starfish, such as the rose star, can cause a skin rash. This can be treated with topical calamine lotion with 1% menthol or topical hydrocortisone 1% lotion.

Cucumbers

Sea cucumbers (Fig. 248) are sausage-shaped creatures that produce a liquid called holothurin, which is a contact irritant to the skin and eyes. Because some sea cucumbers dine on jellyfish, they might excrete jellyfish stinging cells and venom as well. Therefore, in addition to washing the skin immediately with soap and water after contacting a sea cucumber, anyone who sustains a skin irritation from handling this creature might benefit from the treatment for jellyfish stings described beginning on page 396. If the eyes are involved, they should be irrigated with at least a quart (liter) of water, and immediate medical attention should be sought. If the victim is out at sea, treat the eye injury as a corneal abrasion (see page 202).

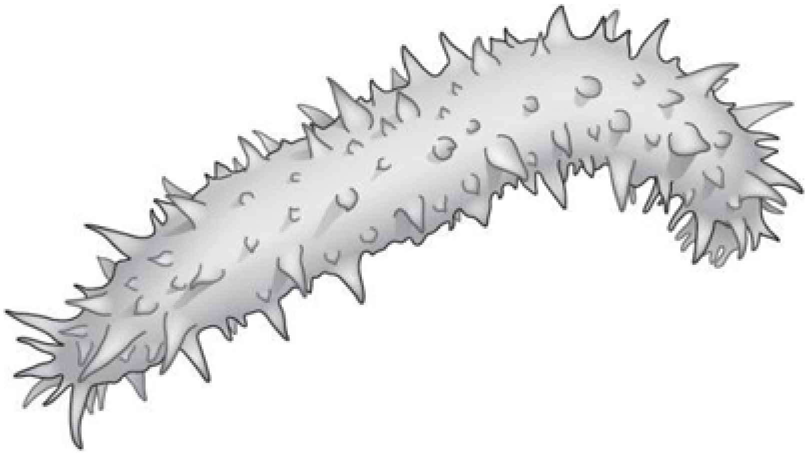


FIG. 248 Sea cucumber.

Bristleworms

Bristleworms are small, segmented marine worms covered with chitinous bristles arranged in soft rows around the body (Fig. 249). When a worm is stimulated, its body contracts and the bristles are erected. Easily detached, they penetrate skin like cactus spines and are difficult to remove. Some marine worms are also able to inflict painful bites.

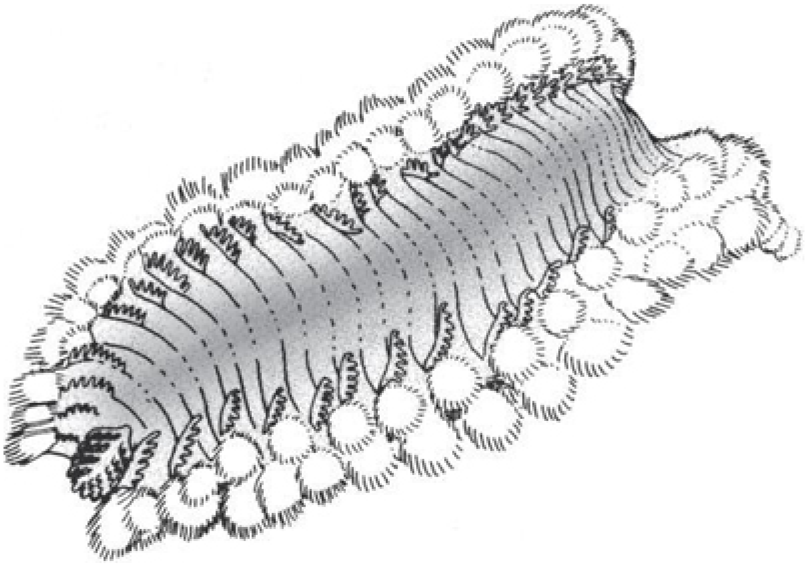


FIG. 249 Bristleworm.

The bite or sting of a marine worm might induce intense inflammation typified by burning sensation with a raised, red, and itchy rash, most frequently on the hands and fingers. Untreated, the pain is generally self-limited over the course of a few hours, but the redness and itching might last for 2 to 3 days. With multiple punctures, there might be marked swelling.

Remove all large visible bristles with tweezers. Then gently dry the skin, taking care to avoid breaking or embedding the spines farther into it. Apply a layer of adhesive tape, rubber cement, or a facial peel to remove the residual smaller spines. If the residual inflammation is significant, the victim might benefit from administration of topical hydrocortisone 1% lotion.

Cone snails (shells)

Cone snails (shells) are beautiful, yet potentially lethal, cone-shaped mollusks that carry a highly developed venom apparatus, consisting of a rapid-acting poison that is injected by means of a dartlike, barbed tooth (Fig. 250). The venom causes a mild sting (puncture wound) that initially is characterized by bee sting–like pain or, rarely, numbness and blanching. This is rapidly followed by numbness and tingling at the wound site, around the mouth and lips, and then all over the body. If the envenomation is severe, the victim is afflicted with muscle paralysis, blurred vision, and breathing failure. A sting can be fatal.

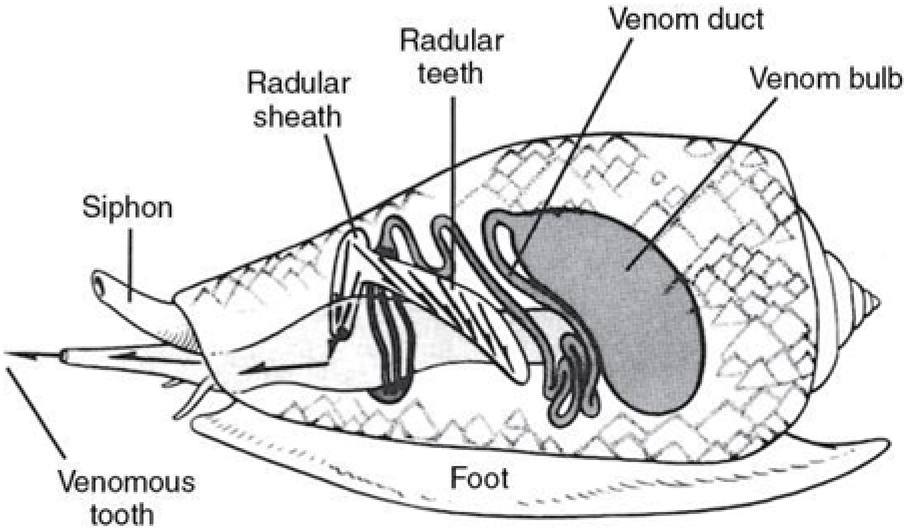


FIG. 250 Cone snail, with a depiction of its venom apparatus.

There is no antivenom for a cone snail envenomation. While many first aid remedies (such as hot-water immersion, surgical excision of the sting site, and injection of a local anesthetic) have been recommended, the one that makes the most sense is the pressure immobilization technique (see page 365) to contain the venom until the victim can be brought to advanced medical attention. Be prepared to offer the victim assistance for breathing (see page 25).

Stingrays

Stingrays live in the ocean and some rivers (e.g., in South America). A stingray does its damage by lashing upward in self-defense with a muscular tail-like appendage, which carries up to four sharp, swordlike stings (Fig. 251). The stings are supplied with venom, so that the injury created is both a deep puncture or laceration and an envenomation. The pain from a stingray wound can be excruciating and accompanied by bleeding, weakness, vomiting, headache, fainting, shortness of breath, paralysis, collapse, and occasionally, death. Most wounds involve the feet and legs, because unwary waders and swimmers tread on the creatures hidden in the sand. If a person is struck by a stingray, immediately do the following:

1. Rinse the wound with whatever clean water is available. Immediately immerse the wound in nonscalding hot water to tolerance (110°F to 113°F, or 43.3°C to 45°C). This might provide some pain relief. Generally, it's necessary to soak the wound for 30 to 90 minutes. Gently extract any obvious piece of stinger, unless it's felt to have penetrated a location (e.g., chest, neck, abdomen, or groin) where it might have cut and is now

occluding a large blood vessel, such as the heart or a major artery or vein. In such a case, leave the stinger in place, regardless of pain, and rush the victim to a hospital. Don't try to use your mouth to suck out the venom—it won't work and might cause a wound infection.
2. Scrub the wound with soap and water. Don't try to sew or tape it closed; doing so could support a serious infection.
3. Apply a dressing and seek medical help. If more than 12 hours will pass before a doctor can be reached, start the victim on an antibiotic (e.g., trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, doxycycline, or ciprofloxacin) to oppose *Vibrio* bacteria. (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.)
4. Administer appropriate pain medication.

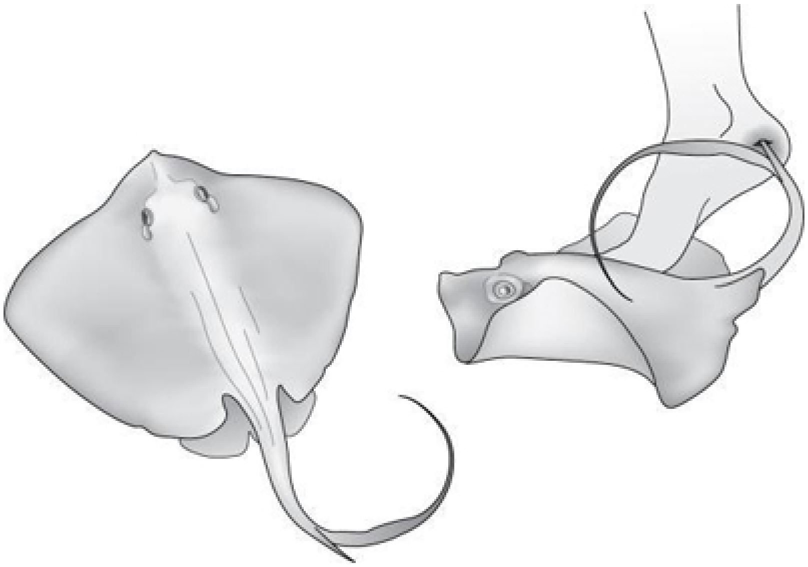


FIG. 251 Stingray. The ray thrusts upward in self-defense with venom-laden spine(s) into the foot of an unwary victim.

Avoidance of stingray injuries

1. Always shuffle your feet when wading in stingray waters.
2. Always inspect the bottom before resting a limb in the sand.
3. Never handle a stingray unless you know what you're doing. Even seemingly "domesticated" stingrays, such as those at "Stingray City" off Grand Cayman Island in the British West Indies, have bitten victims with their grinding plate mouths, resulting in serious bite wounds, when handled.

4. Don’t approach a stingray within striking distance of its barbed appendage.

Catfish

Catfish sting their victims with dorsal and pectoral fin spines, which are charged with venom. When a fish is handled, the spines are extended and “locked” into position. The wound can be exceedingly painful, resembling the sting of a stingray. The treatment is the same as that for a stingray wound. Soaking the wound in nonscalding hot water to tolerance (110°F to 113°F, or 43.3°C to 45°C) might provide dramatic pain relief.

Tiny South American catfish of the genus *Vandellia* are known as “urethra fish” in English. They can swim up the human urethra or other urogenital openings and lodge within the victim, where they extend short spines on their gill covers. This can be extremely painful. Nonsurgical treatment is the ingestion of megadose (1 to 2 g per day) ascorbic acid (vitamin C); when excreted in the urine, this supposedly slowly softens the spines and allows the fish to be excreted as well. Surgical removal is generally required because the victim cannot tolerate the discomfort caused by a retained urethra fish.

Scorpionfish

Scorpionfish include zebrafish (lionfish, turkeyfish) (Fig. 252), scorpionfish, and stonefish. They possess dorsal, anal, and pelvic spines that transport venom from venom glands into puncture wounds. Common reactions include redness or blanching, swelling, and blistering. The injuries can be extremely painful and occasionally life threatening. The treatment is the same as that for a stingray wound. Soaking the wound in nonscalding hot water to tolerance (110°F to 113°F, or 43.3°C to 45°C) might provide dramatic relief of pain from a lionfish sting, is less likely to be curative for a scorpionfish sting and might have little effect on the pain from a stonefish sting, but it should be undertaken nonetheless, because the heat might perhaps destroy some of the harmful proteins contained in the venom. If the victim appears intoxicated or is weak, vomiting, short of breath, or unconscious, seek immediate advanced medical aid. Scorpionfish stings frequently require weeks or months to heal, and therefore require the attention of a physician. A stonefish sting can be fatal. There is an antivenom available to physicians to help manage the sting of the dreaded stonefish.

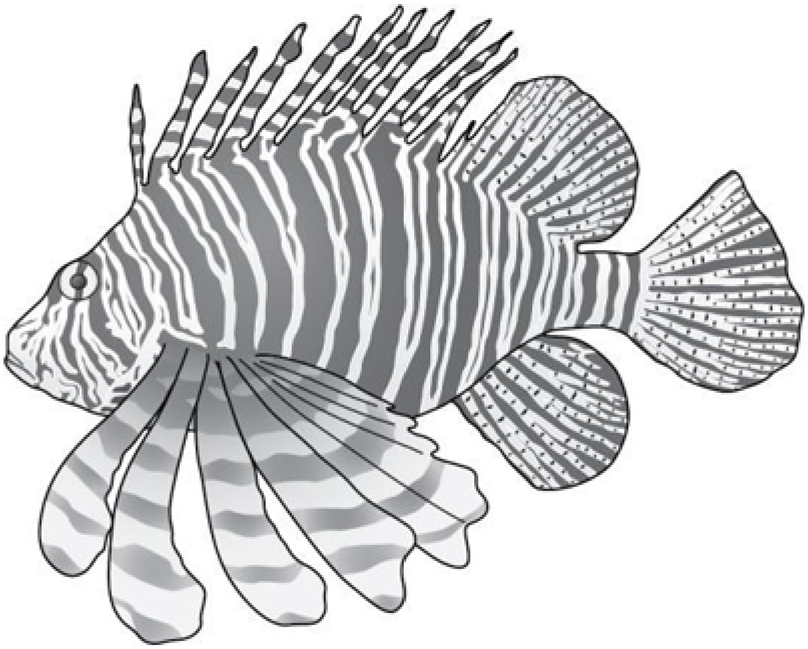


FIG. 252 Lionfish (zebrafish).

Surgeonfish

Surgeonfish are tropical reef fish that carry one or more retractable jackknife-like skin appendages on either side of the tail. When a fish is threatened, the appendage(s) is extended, where it serves as a blade to inflict a cut. The appendage might carry venom, which contributes to the pain.

Treatment is to soak the wound in nonscalding hot water to tolerance (110°F to 113°F, or 43.3°C to 45°C) for 30 to 90 minutes or until the pain is relieved, and then scrub vigorously to remove all foreign material. Watch closely for development of an infection.

Octopuses

Octopus bites are rare. A nonvenomous octopus bite causes a local irritation that does not require any special therapy, other than wound cleansing and observation for infection. However, a bite from the Indo-Pacific blue-ringed or spotted octopus inoculates the victim with a substance extremely similar to tetrodotoxin, one of the most potent poisons (also found in pufferfish—see page 405) found in nature.

Most victims are bitten on the hand or arm as they handle the creature or "give it a ride." The bite consists of one or two small puncture wounds and might go unnoticed. Otherwise, there is a small amount of discomfort, described as a minor ache, slight stinging, or pulsating sensation. Occasionally, the site is initially numb, followed in 5 to 10 minutes by discomfort that might spread to involve the entire limb. By far the most common local reaction is the absence of symptoms, a small spot of blood, or a tiny, blanched area.

More serious symptoms develop within 15 minutes of the bite and include numbness of the mouth and face, followed by blurred vision, double vision, difficulty speaking, difficulty swallowing, incoordination, weakness, vomiting, muscle paralysis, and breathing failure. The victim might collapse quickly and die from inability to breathe.

First aid is the pressure immobilization technique (see page 60). Be prepared to provide artificial respiration (see page 25) until the victim can be brought to advanced medical attention. If oxygen (see page 431) is available, it should be administered by face mask at a flow rate of 10 liters per minute.

Sea snakes

Sea snakes are the most abundant reptiles on Earth, although they are found only in the Pacific and Indian Oceans. They can attain a length of 9 ft (2.7 m) and are equipped with a paddle-like tail that allows them to swim forward and backward with considerable speed and agility.

A sea snake can bite a victim with two to four fangs supplied by a pair of associated venom glands. The venom is extremely toxic, and causes paralysis, destruction of red blood cells, and widespread muscle damage.

The diagnosis of sea snake envenomation is determined as follows:

1. Unless you are handling a snake (commonly, fishermen emptying nets), you must be in the water to be bitten by a sea snake. The animals cannot move easily on land and don’t survive very long there. However, you must be cautious when exploring regions of tidal variation, particularly in mangrove vegetation or near inlets where snakes breed.
2. Sea snake bites rarely cause much pain at the bite site other than the initial pricking sensation.
3. Fang marks. These are like pinholes and might number from one to four (rarely, up to 20).
4. If symptoms don’t occur within 6 to 8 hours of the bite, significant poisoning has not occurred. The symptoms include euphoria, tiredness, or anxiety; muscle aching and stiffness (particularly of the bitten extremity and neck muscles; weakness, ascending (beginning in the lower limbs and moving upwards in the body) paralysis, lockjaw, drooping eyelids, difficulty speaking, drooling, and vomiting. Within a few hours, the victim might complain of moderate to severe pain with muscular exertion. Later, the victim will develop darkened urine and

difficulty breathing, and might complain of loss of vision as they descend into a coma.

5. If a person is bitten by a sea snake, seek *immediate* medical attention while you implement the pressure immobilization technique (see page 363). Be prepared to assist breathing. The definitive therapy is similar to that for a land snakebite—namely, administration in a hospital of the proper antivenom.

Skin rashes caused by aquatic plants (seaweed dermatitis) or creatures (sea bather's eruption, swimmer's itch)

See page 257.

Poisonings from seafood

A number of fish and seafood products cause poisonings because they contain natural toxins or accumulated man-made toxins. For instance, in the past, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration has issued an advisory cautioning women who are or might be pregnant, small children, and nursing mothers to not eat shark, swordfish, king mackerel, or tilefish because of accumulations of methylmercury.

Scombroid fish poisoning

Scombroid fish poisoning is caused by improper preservation (inadequate refrigeration or drying) of fish in the family Scombridae, which include tuna, mackerel, bonito, skipjacks, and wahoo. Nonscombroid fish that can also cause this syndrome include mahi-mahi (dolphinfish), anchovies, sardines, and Australian ocean salmon. Most of these fish are dark fleshed. When they aren't preserved properly, bacteria break down L-histidine in the muscle to form the chemical histamine, which causes an allergic-type reaction in the victim. Although the fish might have a peppery or metallic taste and "dull" appearance, they might also have normal color, flavor, and appearance. Tuna burgers may have been seasoned for consumption, which masks any abnormal taste.

Minutes (15 to 90) after eating the fish, the victim becomes flushed (particularly in the face, neck, and upper torso; worsened with ultraviolet light [sunlight] exposure), with itching, nausea and sometimes vomiting, abdominal cramps, diarrhea, difficulty swallowing, headache, sensation of warmth with or without low-grade fever, red eyes, abdominal pain, and the development of hives (see page 261). These are symptoms of an allergic reaction (see page 78), so scombroid fish poisoning is sometimes referred to as "pseudoallergic fish poisoning." Occasionally, a victim will develop low blood pressure and become weak and short of breath, sometimes with wheezing. The reaction is similar to that seen with monosodium glutamate (MSG) sensitivity ("Chinese food syndrome"). Treatment is the same as for an allergic reaction (see page 78). If the victim does not improve with diphenhydramine (Benadryl), they might benefit by adding cimetidine (Tagamet) 300 mg, fexofenadine (Allegra) 60 mg, or loratadine (Claritin) 10 mg by mouth. Alternatives are nizatidine 150 mg or famotidine 20 mg. Administer cimetidine, fexofenadine, nizatidine, or famotidine until symptoms resolve—generally, within 8 to 12 hours. Treat persistent headache with acetaminophen or an antihistamine.

To prevent scombroid fish poisoning, be certain that all captured fish are immediately gutted and then cooled, refrigerated, or placed on ice. Don't eat any fish that has not been handled properly or carries the odor of ammonia. Fresh fish usually has a sheen or oily rainbow appearance, so avoid fish that are dull in color or that don't smell fresh.

Pufferfish poisoning

Certain pufferfish (blowfish, globefish, swellfish, porcupinefish, and so on) contain tetrodotoxin or saxitoxin, among the most potent poisons in nature. These fish are prepared as a delicacy (fugu) in Japan by specially trained and licensed chefs. The toxin is found in the entire fish, with greatest concentration in the liver, intestines, reproductive organs, and skin. The toxin is a "neurotoxin" that interferes with signal transmission in nerves that control muscle activity. After the victim has eaten the fish, symptoms can occur as quickly as 10 minutes later (usually 30 minutes) or be delayed by a few hours. They might even be delayed by up to 20 hours. These include numbness and tingling around the mouth, dilated pupils that constrict poorly to light exposure, light-headedness, drooling, sweating, vomiting, diarrhea, abdominal pain, weakness, headache, difficulty walking, tremor, incoordination, paralysis, increased secretions in the airway that cause coughing, difficulty breathing, low blood pressure, and collapse. Many victims die.

If someone is suffering from pufferfish poisoning, immediately transport them to a hospital. Pay attention to their ability to breathe and assist their breathing if necessary (see page 25). Unfortunately, there is no antidote, and the victim will need sophisticated medical management until they metabolize the toxin. Eating pufferfish, unless they are prepared by the most skilled chefs, is dietary Russian roulette.

Ciguatera fish poisoning

Ciguatera fish poisoning involves a number of tropical and semi-tropical bottom-feeding fish that dine on plants or smaller fish that have accumulated toxins from microscopic dinoflagellates, such as *Gambierdiscus toxicus.* Therefore, the larger the fish, the greater the toxicity. The ciguatoxin-carrying fish most commonly ingested include the barracuda, jack, grouper, and snapper. Ciguatoxin has been identified in lionfish caught in U.S. coastal waters. The toxic fish do not have an unusual odor, color, or taste. Symptoms, which usually begin 15 to 30 minutes (up to 3 hours) after the victim eats the contaminated fish, include metallic taste to food, sense of "carbonation" when swallowing, abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, tongue and throat numbness, tooth pain, difficulty walking, blurred or decreased vision, red bumpy skin rash, blisters, itching (particularly of the palms and soles after a delay of 2 to 5 days; itching is provoked by anything that increases skin temperature, such as exercise), increased salivation, muscle and joint pain, tearing of the eyes, weakness, twitching muscles, incoordination, difficulty sleeping, and occasional slow heart rate and/or difficulty in breathing. A classic sign of ciguatera intoxication is the reversal of hot and cold sensation (hot liquids seem cold and vice versa), which might reflect general hypersensitivity to temperature. The overall symptoms worsen over the next 4 to 6 hours; abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea might last for up to 2 days. Unfortunately, some of the most annoying symptoms persist in varying severity for weeks to months. Victims can become severely ill, with heart problems, low blood pressure, deficiencies of the central and peripheral nervous systems, and generalized collapse.

Treatment is for the most part supportive, although certain drugs are beginning to prove useful for aspects of the syndrome. An example is intravenous mannitol for abnormal nervous system behavior or abnormal heart rhythms. These therapies must be undertaken by a physician. Prochlorperazine or ondansetron might be useful for vomiting; hydroxyzine or cool showers might be useful for itching. There is not yet a specific antidote. Anyone who displays symptoms of ciguatera fish poisoning should be seen promptly by a physician. Cool showers might help with the skin itching, and nifedipine 10 mg by mouth every 8 hours has been used to relieve headache.

During recovery from ciguatera poisoning, the victim should exclude the following from their diet: fish, fish sauces, shellfish, shellfish sauces, alcoholic beverages, nuts, and nut oils.

Paralytic shellfish poisoning

Paralytic shellfish poisoning is caused by eating filter-feeding creatures, such as shellfish (e.g., clams, oysters, scallops, mussels) chitons, limpets, murex, starfish and sandcrabs, that contain concentrated toxins produced originally by certain planktons and protozoans in the ocean. These same microorganisms are responsible for the "red" (blue, brown, white, black, and so on) tides that occur in warm summer months. The shellfish (such as California mussels, which are quarantined each year from May through October) dine on the microorganisms and concentrate the poison in their digestive organs and muscle tissues. Generally, crabs, shrimp, and abalone are safe to eat. The toxins are usually soluble in water and resist heat (e.g., cooking) and gastric acid (e.g., digestion).

Minutes (usually 30 to 60) after eating contaminated creatures, the victim complains of numbness and tingling inside and around their mouth, and of their tongue and gums. This spreads to the neck, hands, and feet. They soon become light-headed, dizzy, weak, and incoherent, and begins to suffer from drooling, difficulty swallowing, incoordination, headache, thirst, diarrhea, abdominal pain, blurred vision, sweating, and rapid heartbeat. There might be a sensation of loose teeth. Even if a victim becomes paralyzed (occurs 2 to 12 hours after ingestion), they might be awake and alert and continue to be aware of what is happening, unless they do not receive enough oxygen to the brain (because they stop breathing).

The victim of paralytic shellfish poisoning should be brought immediately to a hospital. If they are having trouble breathing, assist them (see page 25).

Hallucinatory fish poisoning

Certain reef fish of the tropical Pacific and Indian Oceans carry heat-stable toxins in their head parts, brain, and spinal cords, and (to a lesser degree) in their muscles. Typical species include surgeonfish, goatfish, mullets, sergeants major, damselfish, and rudderfish. The toxicity of the fish can vary with the season.

Symptoms occur within 90 minutes of ingestion, and include dizziness, numbness and tingling around the mouth and lips, sweating, weakness, incoordination, auditory and visual hallucinations, nightmares, shortness of breath, brief paralysis, and sore throat. People don’t die from this affliction. Treatment is supportive. The victim should be observed closely to see that they do not injure themself by exercising bad judgment.

Anisakidosis

Anisakidosis (formerly called anisakiasis) is caused by penetration of the nematode *Anisakis simplex* or *Pseudoterranova decipiens* worm larvae through the lining of the stomach. This occurs when someone eats raw or undercooked fish, such as sushi. The most common carriers, which serve as intermediate hosts via sea mammals, are mackerel, Pacific herring and cod, coho salmon, hake, anchovies, squid, silvergray and yellowtail rockfish, bocaccio, and, in rare cases, tuna.

Symptoms usually begin within 1 hour (up to 12 hours) of eating the fish and include severe pain in the upper abdomen, nausea, and vomiting. The victim might appear quite ill. Occasionally, they might have the symptoms of an allergic reaction.

If the worm(s) is not removed by a physician, who must do this physically through an endoscope passed through the esophagus into the stomach, it dies within a few days. However, implantation can initiate an abscess. Some worms don’t implant, but are coughed up, vomited up, or passed in the stool. If a worm crawls into the esophagus or throat, a tingling feeling can develop.

A worm that passes through the stomach and implants in the intestine (up to 7 days after ingestion; typically in 12 to 24 hours) causes abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and fever. It might penetrate completely through the bowel. When this happens, an operation might be performed for suspected appendicitis or intestinal cancer, only to discover the true cause of the victim’s symptoms.

Unfortunately, there is no drug or purgative treatment that will eliminate the parasite once it has been ingested. It’s either regurgitated or passed in the stool, or has to be physically removed, which can be as complicated as surgically removing a section of intestine. Albendazole 200 mg by mouth twice a day for 3 days has been recommended, but it’s not clear if it helps.

To prevent this problem, any fish should be cooked to a temperature above 140°F (60°C) or frozen for 24 hours to −4°F (−20°C) before it is eaten. Smoking, marinating, pickling, brining, and salting might not kill the worms. A fish should be gutted as soon as possible after it is caught to prevent migration of the worms from its internal organs into its muscle tissue. An allergic reaction might still occur from eating properly preserved or cooked, but parasitized, fish.

Underwater diving accidents

The Divers Alert Network (www.diversalertnetwork.org) maintains a 24-hour hotline (919-684-9111) to assist with care coordination and evacuation assistance for diving accidents.

On land at sea level, the human body is constantly exposed to 14.7 lb (6.7 kg, or 1 atmosphere) of pressure from the weight of the atmosphere (an air column 165 miles [266 km] high). As a human descends underwater in the ocean, with every 33 ft (10 m) of depth an additional atmosphere of pressure is exerted. With increasing pressure (P) that occurs on descent, the volume (V) of gas in an enclosed space is diminished, as determined by Boyle's law: $P_1V_1 = P_2V_2$. Conversely, during ascent from the depths, the gas in an enclosed space expands. Underwater, the greatest relative volume changes with increasing and decreasing pressure occur near the surface (Fig. 253).

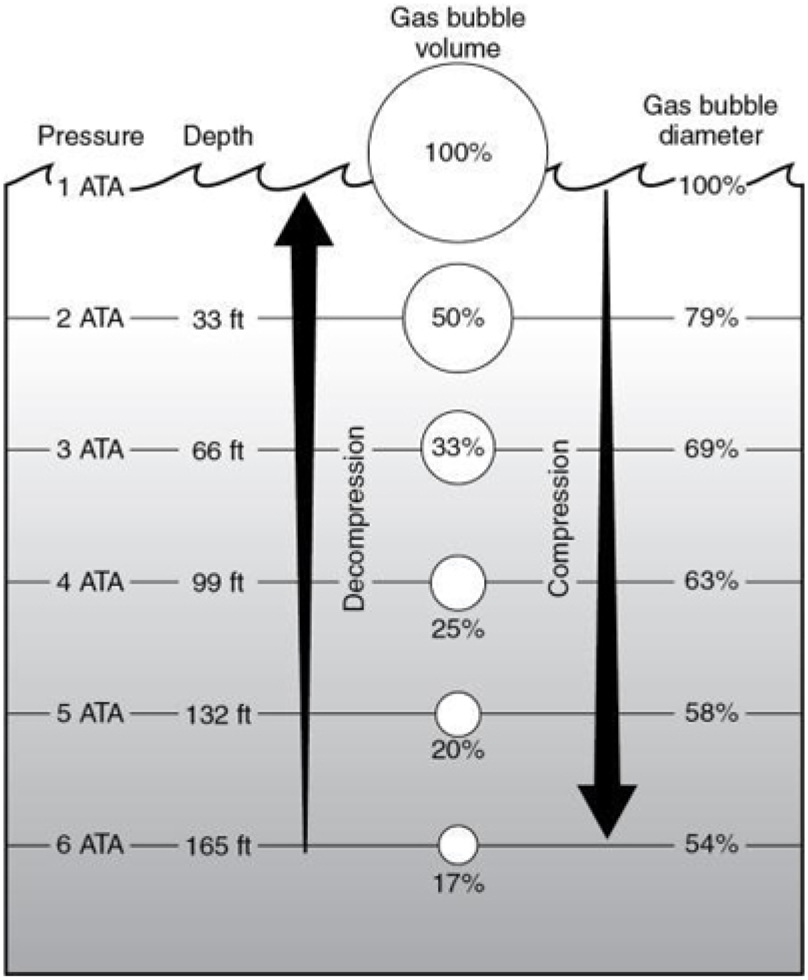

Gas bubble volume
Pressure
Depth
Gas bubble diameter
1 ATA
100%
100%
2 ATA
33 ft
50%
79%
3 ATA
66 ft
33%
69%
4 ATA
99 ft
25%
63%
5 ATA
132 ft
20%
58%
6 ATA
165 ft
17%
54%
Decompression
Compression

FIG. 253 Volume changes with depth and pressure.

Any diver who is recovered from the water in an unconscious, pulseless, and nonbreathing condition should be treated as a drowning victim (see page 412), with rescue breathing and CPR as indicated for drowning.

Air embolism

An air embolism occurs when there is a rupture in the barrier between the microscopic air space of a lung and its corresponding blood vessel, which carries oxygenated blood back to the heart (where it can be distributed to the body). With air embolism, bubbles of air are released into the arterial bloodstream, where they act as physical barriers to circulation, and can cause a stroke (see page 165), heart attack (see page 57), headache, spinal cord injury, and/or confusion. Typically, the victim is a scuba (self-contained underwater breathing apparatus) diver who ascends too rapidly without exhaling, thus allowing overexpansion of the lungs—and rupture of the tissue—as the external water pressure decreases with ascent. In other words, as a diver ascends from the depths, the air in their lungs (which was delivered from the scuba tank through a regulator at a pressure equal to the surrounding water pressure on the lungs, thereby allowing lung expansion) expands. If the rate of exhalation does not keep pace with this lung expansion, the increased pressure within the lungs causes air to be forced through the lung tissue, where it appears in the bloodstream in bubble form and travels directly to the heart. From the heart, the air circulates to and might occlude critical small blood vessels that supply the heart, brain, and spinal cord.

The most common symptoms are unconsciousness, confusion or disorientation, seizures, and/or chest pain immediately on surfacing. Others include dizziness, visual blurring, loss of vision, headache, abnormal personality, confusion, total or partial paralysis, and weakness. Any disorder that appears in a previously normal diver more than 10 minutes after surfacing is probably not due to air embolism.

Anyone suspected of having suffered an air embolism should be placed in a head-down position (with the body at a 15- to 30-degree tilt), turned onto their left side, assisted with breathing, if necessary (see page 25), and *immediately transported to an emergency facility.* If oxygen (see page 431) is available, it should be administered by face mask at a flow rate of 10 liters per minute. The treatment for arterial gas embolism is recompression in a hyperbaric oxygen chamber, which pressurizes the victim's environment and shrinks the bubbles. This must be accomplished as rapidly as possible to save the victim's life and to minimize disability. A portable recompression chamber manned by trained personnel might be used to initiate field treatment. If the victim is capable of purposeful swallowing, administer one adult aspirin by mouth.

If the air that expands on ascent does not rupture into a blood vessel and become an air embolism, it can rupture into the actual lung tissues or into the pleural space between the lung and the inside of the chest wall and cause a collapsed lung (pneumothorax) (see page 47). Other symptoms include air that escapes into the soft tissues, so that there is swelling of the chest and neck, and sometimes a "Rice Krispies" feel to the skin. If the air dissects into the neck, it can cause hoarseness, difficulty swallowing, and sore throat. In this case, oxygen administration is advised. Recompression in a hyperbaric chamber is not advised for a pneumothorax unless there are also severe symptoms associated with an air embolism.

When transporting a victim of air embolism, it's recommended that you use an aircraft that can be pressurized to 1 atmosphere or keep the flight altitude (in an unpressurized aircraft) below 1000 ft (305 m).

Decompression sickness (the "bends")

When a scuba diver descends in the water, nitrogen present in the compressed air they breathe is absorbed into the tissues of their body. This process is analogous to the introduction of carbon dioxide into a beverage for the purpose of carbonation. In the human case, there is a limit to the time and depth that a diver can tolerate before exceeding the amount of nitrogen they can absorb safely without a staged decompression (ascent). If this limit is exceeded, and/or if the diver ascends too rapidly, this nitrogen leaves their tissues and enters their bloodstream in the form of microscopic bubbles (like opening a bottle of soda pop).

The signs and symptoms caused by these bubbles in the body represent decompression sickness, also known as the "bends." Symptoms might begin immediately after ascent from a dive or might be delayed by a number of hours. These include deep boring joint pain without swelling/warmth/redness, numbness and tingling of the arms and legs, difficulty walking, back pain, fatigue, weakness, inability to control the bladder or bowels (spinal cord "hit"), paralysis, double vision, diminished vision, headache, confusion, dizziness, nausea, vomiting, difficulty speaking, itching, skin mottling ("marbling"), shortness of breath, cough, and collapse. A rapid, simplified neurologic examination (see page 165), such as administered to a suspected stroke victim, might identify a subtle abnormality.

If you suspect someone of suffering the bends, immediately have them begin to breathe oxygen (at a flow rate of 10 liters per minute by face mask) (see page 431) and begin rapid transport to an emergency facility. Oxygen breathing should occur for at least 30 minutes. The definitive treatment is recompression in a hyperbaric chamber. *Don't put the diver back into the water to attempt in-water recompression;* this can be very hazardous. If possible, have the victim lie down in a comfortable position, preferably on their side, but don't let them obstruct blood flow to a limb by resting their head on an arm or crossing their legs. A portable recompression chamber manned by trained personnel might be used to initiate field treatment.

Because the pressure inside a commercial jet aircraft flying at 30,000 ft (9150 m) is equivalent to an unpressurized environmental altitude of 8000 ft (2440 m), a diver should not fly for 24 hours following a scuba dive. When transporting a victim of decompression sickness, it is recommended that you use an aircraft that can be pressurized to 1 atmosphere or keep the flight altitude (in an unpressurized aircraft) below 1000 ft (305 m).

Nitrogen narcosis

When absorbed into the bloodstream in sufficient concentration, nitrogen acts as an anesthetic agent. Thus, at depths that exceed 90 ft (27 m), divers are at risk for euphoria, confusion, inappropriate judgment, and unconsciousness induced by nitrogen absorbed into the bloodstream from air breathed under pressure. The treatment is prompt (but cautious) ascent, to allow the absorbed levels of nitrogen to decrease. *No one should ever dive alone. Always pay attention to your dive buddy's behavior. If they act in a strange manner, assist them to the surface.*

Ear squeeze

As a diver descends in the water, the external water pressure on their eardrum increases rapidly. If they cannot equalize this pressure from within by forcing air into the eustachian tube (a small passageway that connects the middle ear and the throat) and into the middle ear, the eardrum stretches inward (extremely painful) and then ruptures (Fig. 254). This rupture allows water to rush into the middle ear, with resultant severe pain, hearing loss, vertigo (see page 411), nausea, vomiting, and disorientation. If the diver cannot make their way to the surface, they might drown. If the eardrum is injured but not ruptured, the pain is similar to that of an ear infection. In this situation, the eardrum is intact, but tissue fluid and blood have collected in the middle ear, partially or completely filling it. In addition to pain, the victim notes decreased hearing and a sense of fullness in the ear. If this occurs, diving should be prohibited (see later) and the person treated with decongestants and, in a severe case, with prednisone (begin with 60 mg first dose for an adult and decrease by 10 mg each day for 5 days) to decrease inflammation.

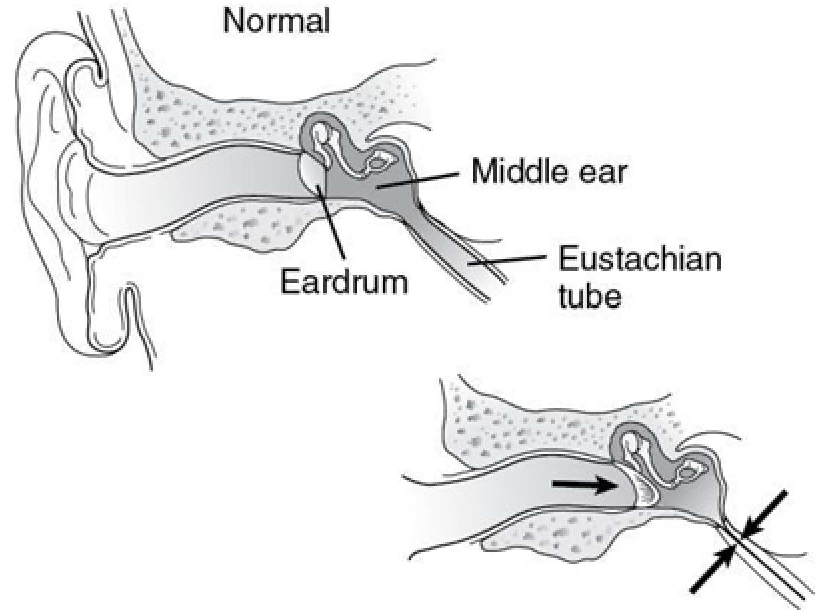


FIG. 254 Middle ear squeeze. When a diver descends, air in the middle ear contracts, the eustachian tube collapses, and the eardrum bulges inward, causing pain. If the external water pressure is sufficient, the eardrum can rupture.

Inability to "clear" the ears (equalize pressure from within) to prevent inward bulging and rupture of the eardrum should keep a diver out of the water. A person with an upper respiratory tract infection (and narrowed eustachian tube) should not dive and should avoid travel in an unpressurized aircraft.

If a diver suddenly feels pain in their ear and is stricken with dizziness, nausea, or visual difficulty, they should remain calm and slowly ascend to the surface. The ear should be allowed to drain and dry on its own. Don't insert cotton swabs into the ear, because you may poke the eardrum and increase the damage. Don't instill any medicines into the ear, unless you are carrying ofloxacin otic solution 0.3% or Cortisporin solution (*not* "suspension"). Transport the victim to an ear specialist. Suspend all diving activities until the eardrum is healed or repaired. If dizziness is profound, administer a drug(s) for motion sickness (see page 437). The victim should be started on an antibiotic (e.g., trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, doxycycline or ciprofloxacin) to oppose *Vibrio* bacteria. (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.) If one of these antibiotics is not available, use amoxicillin–clavulanate. An oral or topical nasal decongestant (such as 0.5% oxymetazoline) is useful for the first few days after the episode. Because sudden dizziness might also be due to an air embolism or the bends, the victim should be observed closely for worsening of their condition.

Alternobaric vertigo refers to a condition in which the pressure in the middle ear can be different between the two ears, usually on ascent. This might cause a person to suffer from vertigo of relatively short duration, ringing in the ears, and hearing loss. The treatment is patience until the pressures in the middle ears equalize; decongestants might help hasten the process.

Sinus squeeze

Sinus squeeze occurs if pressurized air cannot be forced into the sinuses during descent. In such a case, the air within the sinus contracts, causing the walls of the sinus to bleed, accompanied by intense, sharp pain. Symptoms include pain over the affected sinus, in the upper teeth (when the maxillary, or cheek, sinus is involved), and nosebleed. A “reverse squeeze” occurs during ascent, when air expands in the sinus without being able to escape. This is also very painful, but fortunately self-limited, because the air will be absorbed slowly into the tissues that line the sinuses.

If a sinus squeeze occurs, slowly ascend to the surface. This generally alleviates most of the pain, but it might take a while for the bleeding to stop. Because the sinus might now be blood-filled, the victim is at high risk for developing sinusitis (see page 215) and should be placed on amoxicillin–clavulanate or azithromycin for 4 days, along with oral and nasal decongestants to promote drainage. If the pain is severe and persists for more than 12 hours after the initial incident, the victim might benefit from a short course of prednisone, 60 mg the first day, 40 mg the second, and 20 mg the third. This combats the inflammation but should not be given if the victim has symptoms of a sinus infection (foul nasal discharge, fever, facial tenderness).

Tooth squeeze

Increasing pressure during descent into the water can cause entrapped gas in the interior of a tooth or in the structures surrounding a tooth to contract (tooth squeeze). In an extreme case, this can cause a tooth to crack or implode. Conversely, air under a filling or within a cavity or abscess can expand on ascent, causing a minor (and painful) “explosion.” To minimize the risk of a tooth squeeze, don’t enter the water for at least 24 hours after dental treatment.

Drowning

One of the most common tragic accidents, particularly of children, is drowning. Drowning is defined as submersion or immersion into liquid that causes breathing impairment. If a person is rescued, it is considered a "nonfatal drowning." Drowning can occur in a variety of settings, but the medical problems encountered seldom vary:

1. Lack of oxygen. If death occurs during the drowning episode, it is most likely because of suffocation due to being submerged or immersed in water. Another factor is spasm of the vocal cords, which blocks the passage of air through the windpipe (most commonly seen in cold-water drowning). If a drowning victim inhales forcefully against a closed airway, this in and of itself can create a lung injury. When submerged, the body is starved of oxygen, which is essential to survival. If the submersion lasts long enough, the victim loses consciousness and ultimately suffers a cardiac arrest. A person who has experienced a drowning episode and survived might have delayed complications related to aspiration of water and hypoxia.
2. Body chemistry abnormalities. Because of the lack of oxygen delivery to the organs and tissues of the body, there is rapid accumulation of waste products that cannot be effectively removed. This results in accumulation of acid and other chemicals that alter the function of the heart, brain, kidneys, liver, and other organ systems. There is no fundamental physiologic difference between drowning in freshwater and saltwater.
3. Accompanying problems, such as hypothermia (see page 321), injuries, and serious illnesses (e.g., heart attack or stroke). Sadly, alcohol figures prominently in adult boating and drowning accidents.

Recognizing a victim of drowning

A person who is drowning might be obviously struggling, but often it takes an astute observer to recognize that a person in the water is in trouble, because the victim might not be strong or alert enough to call or signal for help. Less obvious indications of drowning include:

- Bobbing up and down in the water with wide open mouth and rapid or gasping breaths
- Head tilted back in the water with open mouth
- Mouth at or below water level
- Eyes “glassy” or closed; blank stare
- Eyes and forehead covered with hair
- Not using the legs at all to swim or remain afloat while remaining upright in the water
- Purposeless swimming
- Swimming hard without forward progress
- Within earshot but not responding to your call for a response
- Children who are quiet in the water

If a drowning incident occurs, do the following:

1. Remove the victim from the water, while ensuring that you and others remain safe. If immediate rescue is difficult or impossible, and at the earliest opportunity, send someone for help. In-water resuscitation is difficult at best. It should be attempted only by a trained rescuer. Administering a couple of rescue breaths to a nonbreathing victim while they are still in the water (see page 25) might be helpful; the chest compressions of CPR should not be attempted. If the victim is placed on the beach, keep them far enough from the water to avoid incoming waves.
2. After the victim is removed from the water, open airway and check for breathing by feeling over the mouth and nose while watching the chest rise. Open the mouth and sweep it clean with two fingers. Align the victim on the ground with their head at the level of their trunk (not head down). Begin mouth-to-mouth or mouth–to–mouth-and-nose (for a child) breathing, if necessary (see page 25). Administer five initial rescue breaths (recommended by some authorities since lack of oxygen is most likely cause of arrest).
3. Check for pulses and begin chest compressions if necessary (see page 28). For drowning, use the “ABC” (airway, breathing, circulation/chest compressions) order for CPR, rather than the currently recommended CAB (circulation/chest compressions first then airway, breathing) sequence. Chest-compression—only CPR is not recommended for drowning. Administer five initial rescue breaths.
4. If the victim is unconscious but breathing adequately, place them in the lateral lying rescue position (see page 22) with the head higher than the trunk.

5. If the victim is short of breath or worse, administer oxygen (see page 431) at a flow rate of 15 liters per minute by non-rebreathing face mask.
6. Suspect a broken neck in the appropriate circumstances. For instance, someone who has been seen to collapse in a swimming pool probably has not broken their neck. (If they dove into the pool, that is another story!) However, someone who tumbles into the waves off a surfboard and washes up unconscious onto the beach might well have a neck injury. However, even if you suspect a broken neck, if the victim is unconscious, CPR protocols are the priority. Do not delay resuscitation procedures in an attempt to address possible spinal injuries. Do what is necessary to aid the victim, then remember to protect their neck (see page 33) if dictated by the circumstances.
7. The Heimlich maneuver (see page 23) and other choking protocols (e.g., back slaps, chest hugs) are not recommended for use in the rescue of drowning victims, because they might cause the victim to regurgitate and inhale vomit.
8. Hypothermia (see page 321) is commonly associated with drowning. Cover the victim above and below with blankets. Gently remove all wet clothing. Because hypothermia might be protective for the heart and brain (with regard to lack of oxygen) to a considerable degree, if the victim is cold, continue the resuscitation until trained rescuers arrive or until you are fatigued. Remember, "no one is dead until they are warm and dead."
9. If the victim responds to your measures, the following guidelines for further medical assistance are recommended by the International Life Saving Federation:

    Persons who require further evaluation/assistance (likely at a hospital): Loss of consciousness (even if briefly) at any point; received rescue breathing; underwent CPR; serious condition (e.g., heart attack, spinal or other significant injury, asthma, marine animal sting, intoxication, altered mental status) suspected. A person who is already short of breath and coughing might deteriorate quickly.

    Persons who may be considered to be safely released from care at the scene: Victim should be observed for 15 minutes and seen to have *all* of the following: no coughing, normal rate of breathing, normal pulse (strength and rate), normal skin color and temperature, no shivering, fully awake and alert. These victims will nearly always do well. However, it should be noted that on occasion a person who has suffered a drowning event and appears well at first might develop cough, shortness of breath, or fever. If this happens, they should be brought promptly to medical attention.

Prevention of drowning

1. Watch your children. Toddlers are at greatest risk for drowning. Children under the age of 14 years are at high risk for drowning. Additional risk factors are poor education, inadequate supervision, rural location, and risky behavior.
2. Completely fence in all pools and swimming areas to a height of at least 4 ft. Install a self-closing, self-latching gate. Maintain the water level in a pool as high as possible to allow a person who reaches the edge to pull themself out. Don’t leave inflatable pools unattended if small children can gain access. Consider using effective pool covers and pool alarms. Don’t leave floats, balls, and other toys in a pool or surrounding area unless an adult supervisor is present.
3. Don’t leave large pails or buckets full of water near small children.
4. Children might become entrapped in pool or spa drains, either by inserting a foot or hand into an open drainpipe and becoming trapped by suction that causes tissue swelling or by hair entanglement. These incidents can be avoided by using special drain covers, safety vacuum-release systems, filter pumps with multiple drains, and other pressure-venting filter construction techniques.
5. Teach children to swim but be advised that such teaching does not absolutely “drown-proof” a child. In other words, never let a small child out of your sight when they are near the water, even if they know how to swim. In a drowning situation, children might not have the body strength, judgment, or emotional reserve to allow self-rescue. Furthermore, new swimmers and children might have a false sense of security and take undue risks after being taught how to swim. Swimming lessons in the 1- to 4-year-old age group might reduce drowning risk, but once again, small children should never be left unattended in potentially dangerous situations.
6. Never place nonswimmers in high-risk situations: small sailboats, whitewater rafts, inflatable kayaks, and the like.
7. Don’t swim alone. Obey safety signs and warning flags.
8. Watch for dangerous water conditions (big waves, rip currents) and weather conditions (e.g., thunderstorm with lightning).
9. When boating or rafting, always wear a properly rated personal flotation device (PFD, commonly called a “life vest” or “life jacket”) with a snug fit and a head flotation collar. Don’t substitute air-filled swimming aids,

such as “water wings,” for properly fitted PFDs. In a kayak or raft traversing whitewater, wear a proper helmet.

10. Don’t jump or dive headfirst into unknown water for the first entry.
11. Persons at risk for a seizure should not be left alone in the water.
12. Don’t mix alcohol and water sports.
13. Know your limits. Feats of endurance and demonstrations of bravado in dangerous rapids or surf are for idiots.
14. Be prepared for a flash flood. In times of unusually heavy rainfall, stay away from natural streambeds, arroyos, and other drainage channels. Signs of an impending abrupt rise in water level include clear water turning muddy or the appearance of floating debris. Use a map to determine your elevation and stay off low ground or the very bottom of a hill. Know where the high ground is and how to get there in a hurry. Absolutely avoid flooded areas and unnecessary stream and river crossings. Don’t attempt to cross a flowing stream where the water is above your knees. Abandon a stalled vehicle in a flood area. If a vehicle plunges into the water and will sink below the surface, attempt to leave the vehicle (from a door or window) before the vehicle submerges, assuming that the hazard of entering the water is acceptable for the escaping person(s).
15. If you anticipate that you might need to rescue a drowning person, you should know how to swim and how to complete an in-water rescue. You should be prepared to start rescue breathing, CPR, and summon help.

Animal attacks

Animal attacks

Most animal attacks are from “man’s best friend,” the pet dog. Other animals that will attack humans, given provocation, include the cat, rat, raccoon, tiger, lion, skunk, squirrel, camel, cougar (mountain lion), elephant, bear, alligator, crocodile, bat, wolf, rhinoceros, and hippopotamus. Although there are unique variations to the nature of the wounds created by different animals (in most part related to the size of the animal, types of teeth and claws, and risk of infection), the basic out-of-hospital management of an animal bite or mauling is the same for all creatures.When around wild animals in either a wilderness or domestic setting, use good hygiene and avoid handling the animals, their feces, or the dirt in which they have their nests or latrines. For instance, these precautions apply to avoid becoming devastatingly ill from infestation with the *Baylisascaris procyonis* roundworm, which is carried by raccoons, or afflicted by *Ascaris lumbricoides* (roundworm), which causes ascariasis.

General treatment

1. If a person is bitten or mauled by an animal, apply direct pressure to stop any brisk bleeding, and follow the instructions for management of bleeding and cuts (see pages 60 and 279).
2 It is important to clean the wounds well. Flush any injury that has broken the skin with at least 2 quarts (liters) of disinfected water, scrub with mild soap, and flush again. If you’re carrying povidone–iodine (Betadine) solution 10% (not soap or scrub); benzalkonium (Zephiran) liquid 1% antiseptic; or, in a pinch, Bactine antiseptic (benzalkonium 0.13%), rinse the wound with one of these for 1 minute (to help kill rabies virus), and then rinse away the solution until there is no discoloration of the wound.
3. Don’t tightly sew or tape closed any animal bite unless it’s absolutely essential to allow rescue. If a large tear is present, the wound edges can be held together with tape and wraps (see page 285). Tight closure of a contaminated wound (all animal bites and scratches introduce bacteria

into the wound) can lead to a devastating infection. Apply a thin layer of bacitracin or mupirocin ointment or mupirocin cream into the wound.

4. If the victim is more than 5 hours from a physician, administer amoxicillin–clavulanic acid. If a person no longer has a spleen, either because it is not present or not functioning properly (e.g., persons with sickle cell anemia), then be certain to administer an antibiotic as soon as possible after the bite occurs. Alternative antibiotics include cefuroxime axetil, dicloxacillin, azithromycin, cefixime, cephalexin, trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, or norfloxacin with clindamycin. If the victim is allergic to penicillin, and if the bite is from a dog, administer clindamycin with levofloxacin, or for children clindamycin with trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole; if the bite is from a cat, use cefuroxime axetil or doxycycline; if the bite is from a raccoon or skunk, use doxycycline. If the bite is from a cat, domestic or wild, administer an antibiotic as soon as possible. (see fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498). Animal bite wounds of the hands and feet seem particularly prone to bacterial infection. If an animal bite becomes infected, the same antibiotics are recommended, with the exception that for cat (domestic and "big" cat) bites, dicloxacillin should be given with penicillin.

Special considerations

High-risk wounds to hantavirus

Wounds at high risk for infection include bites to the hands and feet and all puncture wounds (see page 278). These should be rinsed copiously and never cinched shut by any method. Anyone who sustains such a wound should be given antibiotics for 4 days (see step 4 above). Cat, human, and primate bites are enormously prone to infection, and require prompt attention by a physician. In a typical human bite, which occurs when a closed fist strikes an opponent's teeth, the cut extends deeply into a knuckle and inoculates the underlying tendon sheath with saliva and bacteria. As the fist is opened, the wound becomes "closed," and an infection can develop quickly. If a human bite is incurred in this manner, splint the hand in the position of function (see Fig. 59) and administer cefuroxime axetil, norfloxacin plus erythromycin, or dicloxacillin plus ampicillin for 7 days (see fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498).

Cat-scratch disease

Cat-scratch disease is most commonly caused by bacteria of the genus *Bartonella.* After the victim is scratched by a cat (most often a kitten), commonly on the hand, wrist, or forearm, a reddened or purplish sore forms at the scratch site within a few days. The sore might blister and then settle into an ulcer that remains for days to weeks. Along with the sore, the victim typically complains of swollen lymph glands (nodes) directly upstream from the injury. In the case of a scratch on the hand, these would appear behind the elbow and in the armpit. The swollen nodes are often tender and sometimes matted together. On occasion, they might become severely inflamed, soften, and drain through the skin surface. The victim might also complain of fever and fatigue. Although the response to antibiotics is not consistent, the victim might benefit from azithromycin once a day for 5 days, or from a 5-day course of trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole or clarithromycin.

Rabies

Rabies virus infection occurs more frequently in wild than in domestic animals. In some foreign countries where immunization of animals is infrequently practiced, the risk is great even in domesticated animals. The virus is carried in saliva and is transmitted by bite or lick (if the skin is broken). It has been transmitted by bats in caves either by aerosolized saliva or undetected bites. Raccoons, dogs, cats, foxes, coyotes, skunks, wolves, bats, woodchucks, and groundhogs are the most common carriers. Rabies has not been reported in bears. Although rabbits, hares, mice, squirrels, chipmunks, rats, guinea pigs, and ferrets might be rabid, they are rarely involved in the transmission of rabies to humans. Domestic animals such as cattle, horses, and sheep become infected in regions where skunk or raccoon rabies is found. In developing countries in Asia, Africa, and South and Central America, dogs are the most common carriers.

Animals with rabies show abnormal behavior. In the “furious” phase, they are hyperactive, might have a fever, are overtly aggressive, and salivate excessively. With “dumb” rabies, they appear tired, lack coordination, and might become paralyzed.

Because of rabies risk, all wild animal bites or scratches, and bites or scratches of unregistered or strangely behaving cats and dogs, should be reported to the appropriate public health authority. If the animal is a pet with otherwise normal behavior, it should be observed for 10 days. If the animal is rabid, it will become very ill or die during that time, and its brain tissue can be analyzed for the presence of rabies. If the animal is a pet with unusual behavior, or a captured high-risk wild animal, it should be killed and examined. *If it is a high-risk animal and cannot be captured, it must be presumed to be rabid.*

Immediately scrub an animal bite wound or a wound that has been licked by a potentially rabid animal vigorously with soap and water for approximately 15 minutes. If benzalkonium chloride 1% (Zephiran); 10% povidone–iodine (Betadine) solution (less effective) or other iodine-containing solution; or, in a pinch, Bactine (benzalkonium 0.13%) antiseptic is available, one of these should be used to irrigate and deeply swab the wound, since they might kill rabies virus.

If rabies is a consideration, the victim should seek the assistance of a physician, who will determine the need for postexposure rabies vaccination (a series of injections) and injection of antirabies serum (human rabies immune globulin [HyperRAB]; as much as possible is injected around the bite wound, and the remainder intramuscularly). A new, more potent formulation of HyperRAB allows the same dose to be administered in a lower volume. A person who has been previously immunized against rabies still needs two booster doses of rabies vaccine after high-risk contact with a rabid animal. Beyond 7 days after a previously unvaccinated person has the first injection of rabies vaccine, human rabies immune globulin is not recommended because an antibody response to the vaccine will have occurred. In countries (Africa, Asia) where rabies is very prevalent in dogs and cats, the vaccination status of the biting animal should be ignored, because the vaccination might not have occurred or might have been ineffective. Begin postexposure vaccination of the human victim and then discontinue after 10 days if the biting animal is observed to remain healthy during that time period.

Preexposure vaccination against rabies should be administered to people at high risk of exposure (animal handlers, cavers, hunters, and trappers in rabies-endemic areas, along with travelers to certain foreign countries). This is given as a series of two intramuscular injections over 1 week. An intradermal regimen can be used for immunization, but this technique might result in lower antibody level.

The incubation period of rabies ranges from 9 days to more than 1 year but is usually between 2 and 16 weeks. The first symptoms are fatigue, weakness, anxiety, irritability, fever, headache, nausea and vomiting, sore throat, abdominal pain, and loss of appetite. Some victims complain of numbness and tingling where they were initially bitten. After a few days to 2 weeks, the virus shows its devastating effect on the nervous system, with symptoms of increased agitation, hyperactivity, seizures, hallucinations, increased salivation, uncontrollable behavior, and inability to drink (hydrophobia: fear of swallowing liquids) because of muscle spasms in the throat. This constellation is called “furious rabies.” Occasionally, a victim might suffer from aerophobia (fear of air), because these same spasms can be caused by air blowing across the face or traversing the airway. With paralytic (“dumb”) rabies, a person becomes progressively weak, uncoordinated, and paralyzed. Unfortunately, rabies is virtually always fatal, with the terminal events being one or more of coma, respiratory failure, seizures, abnormal heart rhythms, high blood pressure, paralysis, and pneumonia.

To avoid rabies, be certain that all pets and livestock are properly vaccinated, don’t feed or handle wild animals, don’t feed or touch stray animals, avoid sick or strange-acting animals, keep garbage and food (including feed for animals) covered and away from wild animals, don’t keep wild animals as pets, don’t touch or pick up dead animals, and don’t handle bats.

Skunks

In addition to biting a person and inoculating them with rabies virus, a skunk can spray secretions from its anal sacs. The main component of skunk musk is butyl mercaptan, which carries a horrible odor and causes skin irritation, eye redness and temporary blindness, and occasional seizures or loss of consciousness. The odor can be neutralized by strong oxidizing agents, such as household bleach diluted 1:5 with water. This solution can then be washed away with tincture of green soap, followed by a more dilute bleach rinse. An alternative mixture is 1 quart of 3% hydrogen peroxide, ¼ cup of baking soda, and 1 teaspoon of liquid laundry detergent. An effective product to neutralize skunk spray odor is Summer’s Eve douche (C.B. Fleet Company, Inc.). To “deskunk” an animal, such as a dog, the method is to apply this product directly to the fur and work it into the deeper layers by hand. It might take many bottles to accomplish the task. For the animal’s face, use a washcloth with the solution to apply the product. Tomato juice has been recommended, but might not be very effective, to deodorize hair, which might need to be bleached or cut short. Two other methods that have been recommended are:

1. Fels Naphtha soap. Wet an affected dog with water and rub it down with the soap. Be sure to rinse the animal well.
2. One box of baking soda. Slightly moisten the animal and then rub the fur thoroughly with the baking soda, using gloved hands. Then, take a bottle of white household vinegar—keeping vinegar far away from eyes, nose, and mouth of the animal—and pour it directly onto the baking soda impregnated coat. The immediate and violent effervescence (carbon dioxide) is supposed to lift out the musk and odor. Spray or otherwise rinse the animal thoroughly after allowing for full interaction between baking soda and vinegar. This process sometimes generates enough heat to frighten the animal.

Other effective products to use on the pet or fabric (not on human skin) are Neutroleum Alpha, Skunk-Off, and Odormute.

Bubonic plague

Cases of bubonic plague are still reported in the United States. The disease is transmitted by the bites of fleas that have acquired the plague bacillus, *Yersinia pestis,* from infected squirrels, rats, prairie dogs, chipmunks, marmots, rabbits, and mice. Rarely, the disease can be contracted from direct contact with infected pets, particularly cats. It can also be contracted from skinning an infected wild animal, such as a coyote or bobcat.

The incubation period for bubonic plague is 2 to 8 days after exposure. At first, the victim complains of high fever, chills, severe fatigue, abdominal pain, vomiting, diarrhea, muscle aches, and headache. At the same time, they develop extremely enlarged and tender lymph nodes associated with the entry point for the disease, such as in the groin if an insect bite has occurred on the leg. Ulceration at the site of inoculation usually does not occur—that is more typical of tularemia. Thereafter, as the bacteria overwhelm the victim, they might collapse and develop a skin rash with large dark patches of hemorrhage ("Black Death"). If pneumonia develops, the victim coughs bloody sputum.

Treatment should be initiated promptly and requires intramuscular or intravenous antibiotics. If you're isolated away from a hospital, start the victim on tetracycline 1 g for the first dose, then 50 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight in six divided doses every 4 hours for the first day, then 30 mg/kg of body weight in four divided doses every 6 hours for 14 days. This is extremely suboptimal therapy; the victim needs to get to a hospital as soon as possible. The best available drug is streptomycin, which is administered by intramuscular injection.

The disease is contagious. All adults in direct face-to-face contact with a victim suffering from plague pneumonia (pneumonic plague; cough productive of sputum) should take tetracycline 500 mg four times a day, or trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole one double-strength tablet twice a day, for 8 days. Children should take a pediatric dose of trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole for 8 days. All contact people should have their temperature measured twice a day. If anyone develops a fever greater than 100°F (37.7°C), they should begin taking an antibiotic and be taken immediately to a physician.

With regard to prevention, pay attention to local public health warnings and don't travel with pets in areas of plague infestation. Take care to spray or dust your canine and feline companions with flea repellent regularly (after each time they get wet) when traveling in wooded areas. Don't allow children to handle small dead animals.

Preexposure immunization against bubonic plague is available (see page 418). The vaccine is not effective against pneumonic plague. If you have not been immunized against plague and will be actively exposed to plague-infected animals, ingest tetracycline 500 mg four times a day during the period of exposure.

Murine typhus

Murine typhus (endemic or fleaborne typhus) is a disease transmitted by the bite of rat or cat fleas (the latter also found on opossums), which carry *Rickettsia typhi* bacteria. It can also be transmitted by having dirt into which fleas have excreted ("flea dirt") come in contact with an open wound. The symptoms are fever, headache, fatigue, cough, chills, body aches and muscle pain, nausea and vomiting, and abdominal pain, all accompanied by a faint red rash and multiple organ involvement, including the liver, kidneys, heart, lungs, spleen, and eyes. Treatment is with doxycycline 100 mg by mouth twice a day for 10 days (and until 3 days after symptoms have disappeared).

Anthrax

Anthrax is a communicable disease caused by the bacterium *Bacillus anthracis* transmitted by spores via inoculation into the skin (cutaneous; most common), inhalation, or ingestion. The spores can persist in the environment for years and are typically present in infected animals or contaminated animal products (e.g., hides, wool). Anthrax is not transmitted from person to person. With cutaneous anthrax, following an incubation period of 1 to 12 days, there is often itching soon followed by the first lesion, which is usually a painless red raised area on the head, neck, or limb, usually at the site of a small cut or scrape through which the spore enters. In a day or two, a clear blister(s) forms, surrounded by swelling. The blister ruptures, and then turns into a sunken ulcer covered by a black crust in approximately a week. This disappears in a few weeks. With inhalation anthrax (the most lethal form), following an incubation period of 1 day to 6 weeks, the victim initially has a nonspecific flu-like illness (fever, fatigue, muscle pains, dry cough, and chest or abdominal pain) for 1 to 2 days, followed by severe respiratory distress and overwhelming infection that leads to shock and death. There might be an intervening few days of improvement after the flu-like illness and before the serious illness. With gastrointestinal anthrax, the victim suffers first (approximately 3 days after eating the undercooked spore-containing meat) from ulcers in the mouth and/or esophagus with difficulty swallowing and swollen lymph glands in the neck, followed by abdominal pain and swelling, nausea, vomiting, and bloody diarrhea. They might also suffer from dizziness, fatigue, muscle aching, and fever. Anthrax might rarely cause primary infection of the lining of the brain and cause a clinical presentation similar to that of meningitis (see page 196).

Any adult known to be exposed to anthrax or who is believed to be suffering from anthrax should be administered ciprofloxacin 500 or 750 mg by mouth or doxycycline 100 mg by mouth twice a day for 10 days, or until it is determined if the anthrax is susceptible to penicillin or amoxicillin, at which time the antibiotic therapy can be altered. Moxifloxacin and levofloxacin are also effective. Cephalosporin antibiotics and trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole aren't effective.

Although ciprofloxacin and doxycycline are usually avoided in children because of potential damage to teeth or bone growth, in the setting of anthrax exposure, the benefits probably outweigh the risks. The pediatric doses are ciprofloxacin 10 to 15 mg/kg of body weight or doxycycline 4.4 mg/kg of body weight daily in two divided doses. Anthrax vaccine can be administered in three doses—on the day of exposure, day 14, and day 28—so antibiotic therapy should be continued for 28 days if the vaccine is administered, and for 60 days if the vaccine is not available. For inhalational anthrax, raxibacumab (Abthrax), which is an antibody that targets the toxins produced by the anthrax bacteria, is stored in the Strategic National Stockpile.

To avoid anthrax, avoid handling the carcasses of animals from areas known to harbor anthrax and do not eat meat from animals that were known to not be healthy when they were killed.

Hantavirus pulmonary (lung) syndrome

Hantaviruses (such as the Sin Nombre virus) cause a syndrome characterized by a combination of fever, lung failure, kidney failure, shock, and bleeding. The viruses are spread in the excreta of rodents; in the United States, hantavirus pulmonary syndrome (HPS) has been linked to the deer mouse *(Peromyscus maniculatus)* and white-footed mouse *(Peromyscus leucopus)*, as well as to the cotton rat *(Sigmodon hispidus)* and rice rat *(Oryzomys palustris)*. The animals shed the virus in saliva, urine, and feces. Aerosols are the most likely route of transmission from rodents to humans. Insect bites have not yet been implicated in transmission.

HPS has now been reported in most states west of the Mississippi River as well as in a few eastern states. In Louisiana and Florida, two hantavirus species, bayou virus and Black Creek virus, have been identified. Seoul virus has been identified in pet rats. A person infected by the virus has an incubation period of typically 2 to 4 weeks (range, a few days to 6 weeks) after exposure, and then suffers from any or all of fever, muscle aches, chills, headache, nonproductive cough, fatigue, lightheadedness, dizziness, abdominal pain, back pain, nausea and vomiting, and diarrhea for a few days; this is followed by difficulty breathing, mottled skin on the limbs, shock, and, sometimes, bleeding. In the early stage, rash is conspicuously not present. Up to 35% of victims might die.

Most victims have had an interaction with rodents, such as when cleaning a barn or capturing the animals. So far, the disease does not appear to transmit from human to human. Unfortunately, there is not yet any specific therapy beyond supportive care.

To avoid unnecessary exposure to hantavirus, it’s recommended that wilderness enthusiasts observe the following precautions: keep food and water covered and stored in rodent-proof containers; dispose of food clutter; spray dead rodents, nests, and droppings with disinfectant or 10% household bleach solution before handling (wear gloves) for disposal in sealed bags; clean and disinfect cabins and other shelters thoroughly before using; seal holes and cracks in dwellings; don't make camp near rodent sites; don't sleep on bare ground; burn or bury garbage promptly; and use only bottled or disinfected water for campsite purposes.

Avoidance of hazardous animals

Most wild animal encounters can be avoided with caution and a little common sense. Follow these rules:

1. Don't surprise or otherwise provoke animals. Unless they are apex predators, starving, senile, or ill, most animals will not attack humans without provocation. Don't corner or provoke a carnivore. Don't tease animals. Don't approach an animal when it is with young or during breeding season. If you're a photographer approaching a wild animal that might become provoked and charge, don't come any closer to the animal than 100 yards distance. Some experts say that you should attempt to stay even further away from a bear.
2. Don't leave young children alone with wild or potentially biting animals, regardless of the animal's demeanor.
3. Dogs, even though not necessarily "wild," are the most common biters of travelers abroad and in most outdoor settings. In addition to the general precautions for how to avoid hazardous animals, never pet an unfamiliar dog, particularly if it is confined or tied up. Don't feed an unfamiliar animal by hand.
4. Don't disturb a feeding or nursing animal. Don't explore into its feeding territory, approach during rut, or disrupt mating patterns. Avoid sudden movements around animals.
5. Don't separate fighting animals using your bare hands. If possible, drive animals apart using a long stick or club, or a strong stream of water or dousing with a bucketful of water.
6. After eating, wash hands before touching a hungry animal. Don't pet or feed stray animals, particularly dogs and monkeys.
7. In bear country, make your presence known by calling out, clapping your hands, or otherwise making noise, particularly when approaching streams and blind spots on the trail. Hang all food off the ground in trees away from the campsite. Sleep in a tent and have a flashlight handy. Keep sleeping bags unzipped or partially unzipped to allow a fast exit. Never keep food or captured game inside a tent. Use proper food storage to keep food away from bears. Cook at a site away from the

sleeping area. Don’t leave garbage or food buried or poured into the ground. Don’t sleep in clothes worn while cooking or eating. Make noise when hiking, particularly on narrow paths or through tall grass. An “upwind bear” is more likely to be surprised than one that’s “downwind,” so be alert ahead of you, or if you’re in a heavy forest, along a noisy river, or in the rain or fog. Bears frequent berry patches, streams with spawning fish, and elk calving grounds, so avoid these areas.

8. If you confront a brown (grizzly) bear, avoid eye contact and try to slowly back away. If you confront a black bear, shout, yell, throw rocks or sticks, or do whatever you can to frighten off the animal. Consider carrying a “bear horn,” which can be used to create periodic loud blasts to inform bears of your presence and avoid startling them, or used in self-defense in the immediate presence of a bear.
9. If attacked by a bear, don’t try to outrun it; you can’t. Bears can climb trees.
10. If you’re carrying pepper spray (at least 1% capsaicin or capsaicinoids) in a canister intended for use against a bear (“bear spray” or “bear pepper spray” that meets EPA (Environmental Protection Agency) standards; a spray distance of 25 ft under optimum conditions, minimum spray duration of 6 seconds, minimum net content of 7.9 oz or 2.25 g; there should be rapid intensive coverages of the attack area), use it if you have time. One product is UDAP 12HP Bear Spray and another is Frontiersman Bear Spray. Personal defensive spray, such as Mace, will likely not work because the canister shoots a relatively thin stream and the substance is not sufficiently potent. Carry the spray where it is prominently visible and can be immediately deployed. It should be on a holster on your waist or chest, not in the bottom of your pack. Show your companions its location.

    If you’re carrying pepper spray and discharge the canister in such a way that it burns your skin, applying the antacid Mylanta (unflavored), which contains magnesium and aluminum hydroxide, or cool milk promptly to the affected skin might lessen the pain. If the spray gets into the eyes, rinse them with a copious amount of fresh water (see page 202). It may take 20 minutes or more of continuous rinsing to find relief. Direct water carefully in a continuous direction from bridge of nose to edge of eye to avoid washing spray from surrounding skin into eye. Wash skin with mild detergent such as dish soap. Avoid scrubbing. Commercial decontaminant sprays are available. Monitor breathing of anyone exposed to bear spray. Isolate contaminated clothes in plastic bags to avoid recontamination.

11. If you’re not carrying bear pepper spray and are attacked by a bear, cover your head and the back of your neck with your arms and curl into a fetal position or lay flat on the ground, face down, to protect your abdomen (Fig. 255). If you’re wearing a backpack, keep it on for additional protection. Use your elbows to cover your face if a bear turns you over. After a bear attack, remain on the ground until you’re certain that the bear has left the area. More than one victim has successfully protected themself during the initial attack, only to arise too soon (before the bear has lost interest and left the area) and be mauled during the second attack.
12. In cougar (mountain lion) country, be aware that these animals hunt like a domestic cat: crouching, slinking, sprinting, pouncing, and then breaking the prey’s neck. Like many potentially dangerous wild animals, the cougar can often be scared off by the victim’s aggressive behavior, even after the attack has begun.

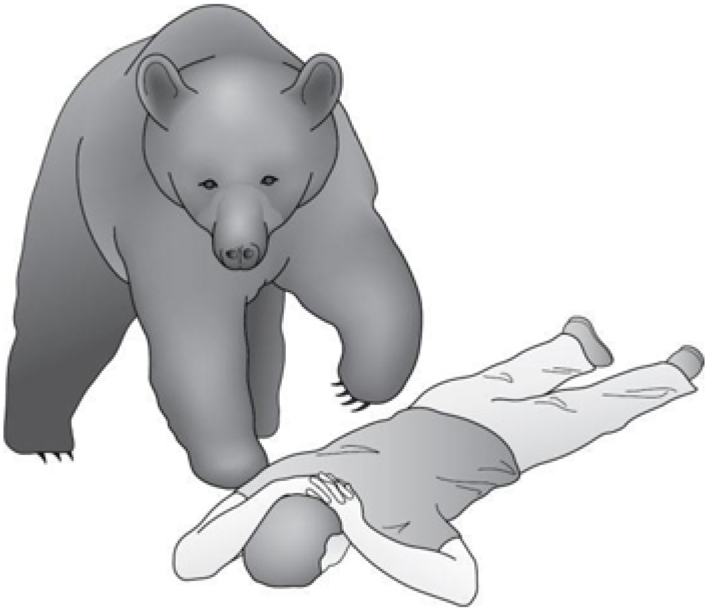


FIG. 255 Protective position when confronted by an attacking bear.

Wild plant and mushroom poisoning

Toxic plants and mushrooms might be eaten by curious children, or by hikers and amateur herbalists who mistake their selections for edible species. *Never eat wild plants, mushrooms, roots, or berries unless you know what you're doing.* Bees that are bred to intentionally collect nectar from poisonous plants might manufacture poisonous honey.

Medical history

Although the narrative description of the ingestion will have little bearing on the immediate management of a toxic ingestion, it's important to gather as much information as possible for the benefit of the physician who will ultimately care for the victim:

1. When was the plant eaten?
2. What parts of the plant were eaten? How many different plants were eaten?
3. What symptoms does the victim have? What were the initial symptoms (sweating, hallucinations, vomiting, abdominal pain)? What was the time interval between the ingestion and the onset of symptoms? Did anyone who did not eat the plant(s) develop similar symptoms? Did everyone who ate the plant(s) become ill?
4. Was the plant eaten raw, or was it cooked? How was it cooked? Was alcohol consumed within 72 hours of the plant ingestion?

It is also important to obtain as much of the original plant as possible for identification. If the patient vomits, save their vomitus, because it might contain part of the plant or spores that can be identified by an expert.

There are few specific antidotes for toxic plant ingestions, so most victims are managed according to their symptoms, which might include sweating, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, shortness of breath, slow or rapid heartbeat, pinpoint or dilated pupils, salivation, increased frequency of urination, weakness, difficulty breathing, hallucinations, and many others.

Treatment for poisonings

The national Poison Control Center number in the United States is 1-800-222-1222. Keep this number with you at all times to obtain expert medical advice. If it is known that someone has eaten or handled a toxic plant or mushroom, remove plant parts from the mouth and hands, and wash any affected skin with soap and water. Encouraging a victim who has eaten a plant to vomit has largely fallen out of favor with toxicology experts, so is no longer advised. However, if someone has just eaten a known poisonous plant or mushroom (within the last 2 hours), they can be encouraged to vomit, so long as they are awake and alert and the airway is not compromised. Inducing vomiting might not be easy. Gagging the victim with their fingers is the safest method. Drinking mustard solution, salt solution, egg whites, okra slime, or dishwashing soap is usually ineffective and might be dangerous. Syrup of ipecac is no longer recommended by poison centers. *If the victim is drowsy or having difficulty breathing, regardless of when the ingestion occurred, don't induce vomiting.* Whether or not vomiting occurs, immediately seek the attention of a physician. Don't wait for symptoms because early treatment is sometimes very important. Bring the plant or part of the plant with you for identification.

Children will eat just about anything. Nontoxic ingestions include stones, dirt, sand, candles, sunscreen, shampoo, and single doses of birth control pills, antacids, laxatives, and vitamins (without iron). Keep all toxic substances, particularly camp stove fuel, kerosene, iodine crystals (for water disinfection), and prescription drugs, out of the reach of small children.

Commonly ingested toxic plants and mushrooms

Oleander (Fig. 256) is a shrub, up to 20 ft (6 m) tall, commonly found along highways and in gardens. It carries attractive clusters of red, pink, or white flowers. The entire plant is toxic, including smoke from burning cuttings and water in which the flowers are placed. There have been deaths from use of the branches as skewers for roasting hot dogs. Symptoms begin 1 to 2 hours after ingestion and include nausea, vomiting, abdominal cramps, diarrhea, confusion, and blurred vision. In serious ingestions, the heart's rhythm might be disturbed.

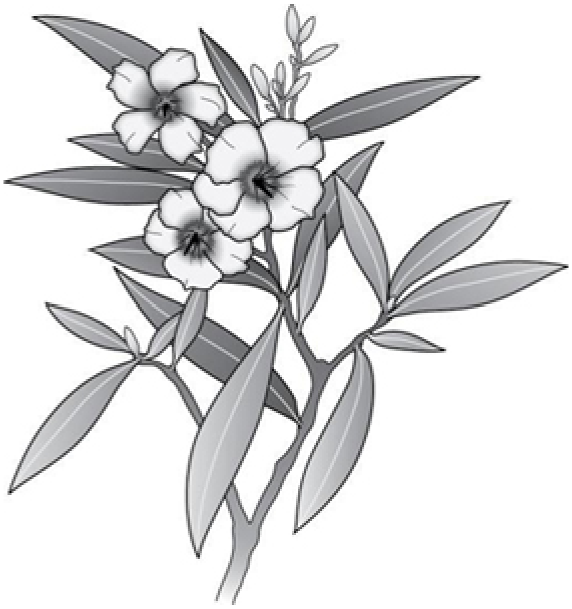


FIG. 256 Oleander.

Foxglove (Fig. 257) is a European import that has toxic leaves and toxic tubular pink or purple flowers. Poisonings occur from ingestion of the plant parts or from foxglove tea. The symptoms are the same as those of oleander ingestion.

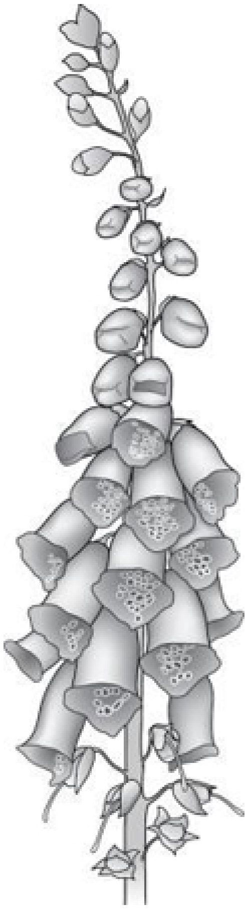


FIG. 257 Foxglove.

Water hemlock ("beaver poison") (Fig. 258) is found in saltwater and freshwater marshes and along riverbanks. A member of the carrot family, the plant grows to 6 ft (1.8 m) and has clusters of whitish, heavily scented flowers, along with a bundle of tuberous roots. It is easily confused with wild parsnip, celery, or sweet anise. When injured, the stem and trunk exude a yellow oil that smells like celery or raw parsnip. The entire plant is toxic. Symptoms begin 15 to 60 minutes after ingestion and include excessive salivation, abdominal pain, diarrhea, and vomiting. In a serious ingestion, the victim might suffer seizures and collapse, while having difficulty breathing. Death might occur.

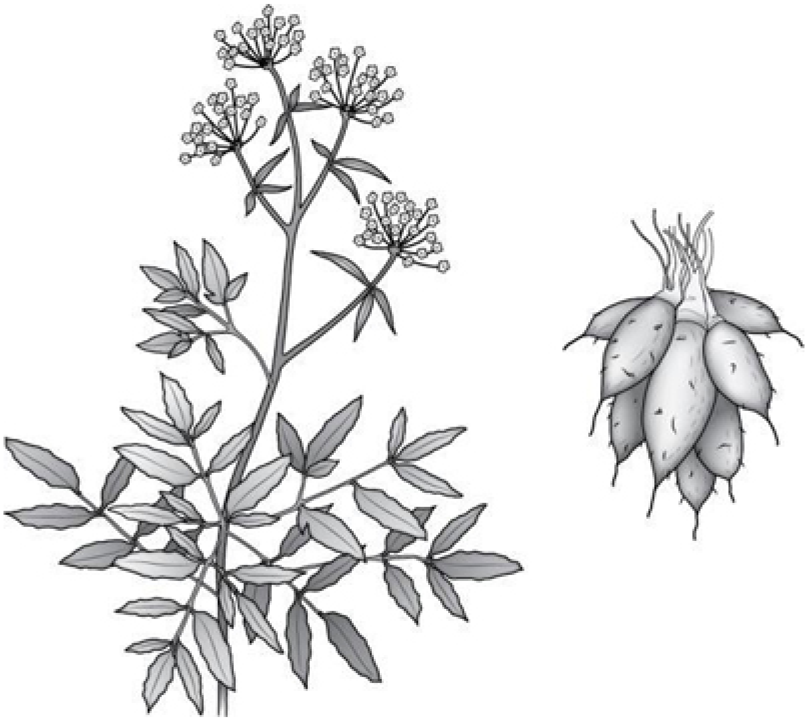


FIG. 258 Water hemlock, with tuberous roots.

Castor bean (Fig. 259) is a treelike shrub that might grow to 15 ft (4.6 m) with clusters of spiny seedpods, which contain seeds with coats that resemble pinto beans. The seeds contain a potent toxin (ricin) that causes immediate mouth burning and abdominal pain, followed by vomiting, diarrhea, abnormal heart rhythms, and collapse.

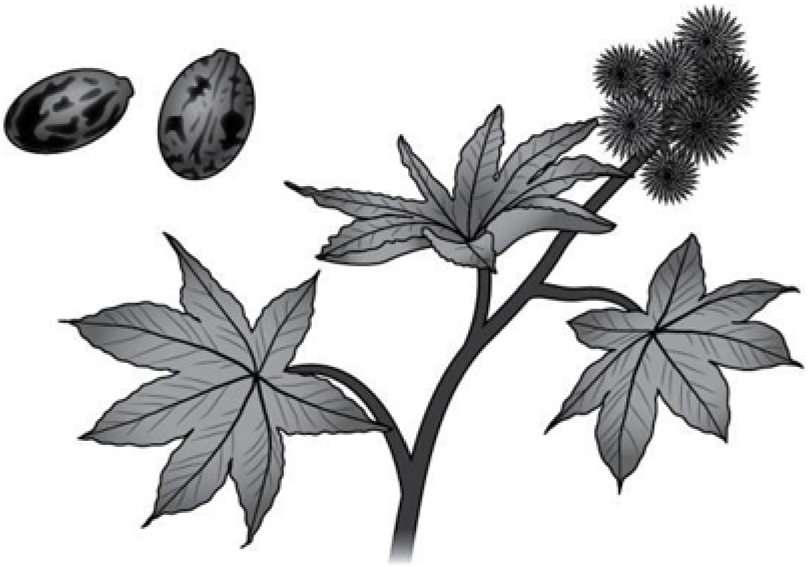


FIG. 259 Castor bean.

Monkshood (Fig. 260) is a flowering plant with tuberous roots and blue helmet-shaped flowers. The leaves and roots are particularly toxic. Ingestion causes immediate mouth and throat burning, followed by vomiting, diarrhea, headache, muscle cramps, sweating, drooling, blurred vision, and confusion. In a serious ingestion, there might be abnormal heart rhythms and collapse.

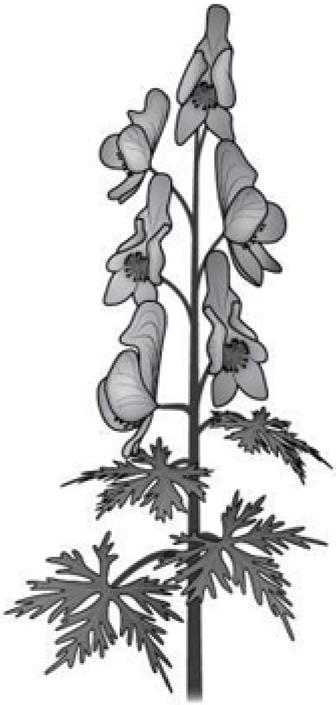


FIG. 260 Monkshood.

Poison hemlock (Fig. 261) is a marsh plant that grows to 9 ft (2.7 m) with leaves that resemble a carrot top. The white flowers are clustered and smell like urine if they are crushed. The seeds and white unbranched tuberous roots are also toxic. The symptoms are similar to those of water hemlock ingestion, without significant abdominal pain or diarrhea. Death might follow seizures or paralysis with breathing failure.

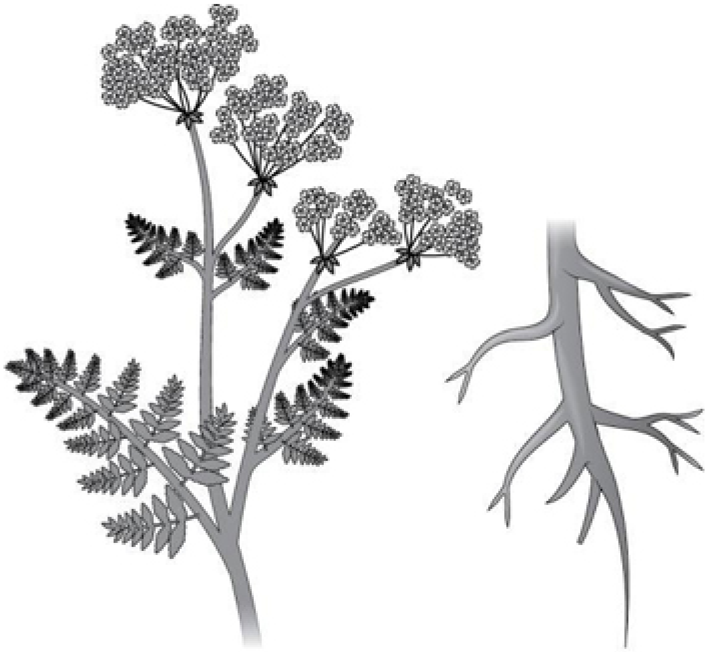


FIG. 261 Poison hemlock.

Pokeweed (Fig. 262) is a widely distributed plant with clusters of white flowers and plentiful round purple berries. Ingestion of the root (commonly mistaken for horseradish) or the berries (a favorite of children) causes the intoxication. Symptoms include sore mouth, tongue, and throat (delayed by 2 to 3 hours); thirst; nausea; vomiting; abdominal cramps; and diarrhea, which might become bloody. The illness can be severe and last for up to 2 days, particularly if the roots were ingested. Young pokeweed shoots contain very low levels of toxins. These are eaten as poke salad in the southern United States, after the shoots are boiled in water that is changed twice during boiling.

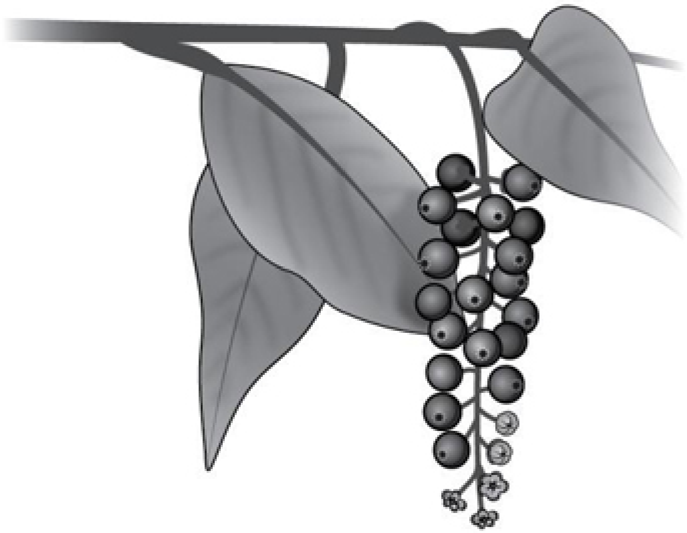


FIG. 262 Pokeweed.

Rhododendrons (Fig. 263) are common flowering plants that contain a number of toxins. Poisoning has occurred following ingestion of honey made from the flower nectar. Symptoms include mouth burning, followed by drooling, vomiting, diarrhea, headache, and numbness and tingling. Serious ingestions cause weakness, blurred vision, seizures, fainting, low blood pressure, and collapse. "Mad honey poisoning" refers to ingestion of honey produced from toxic nectar from the rhododendron plant *Rhododendron ponticum*.

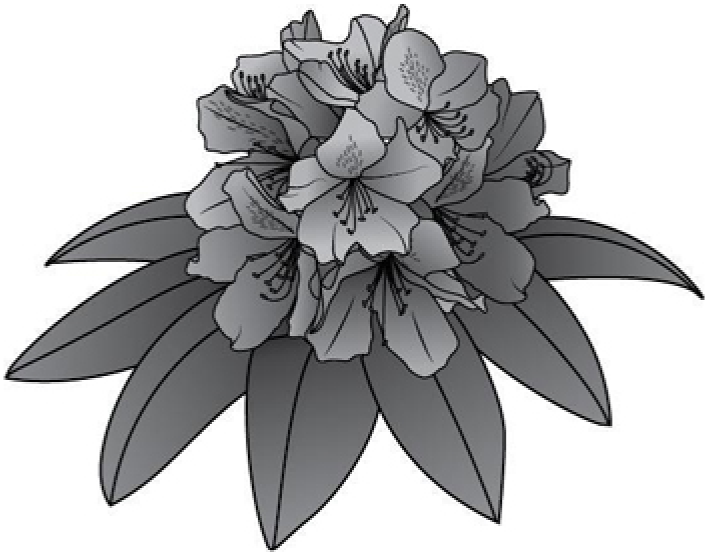


FIG. 263 Rhododendron.

Jimsonweed (Fig. 264) has white or purple flowers, with prickly seedpods. Adults sometimes ingest a tea made from the leaves or flowers. The entire plant is toxic. Symptoms include dry mouth, rapid heartbeat, hot and dry skin, weakness, difficulty walking, dilated pupils, and inability to urinate. Severe poisonings cause fever and collapse.

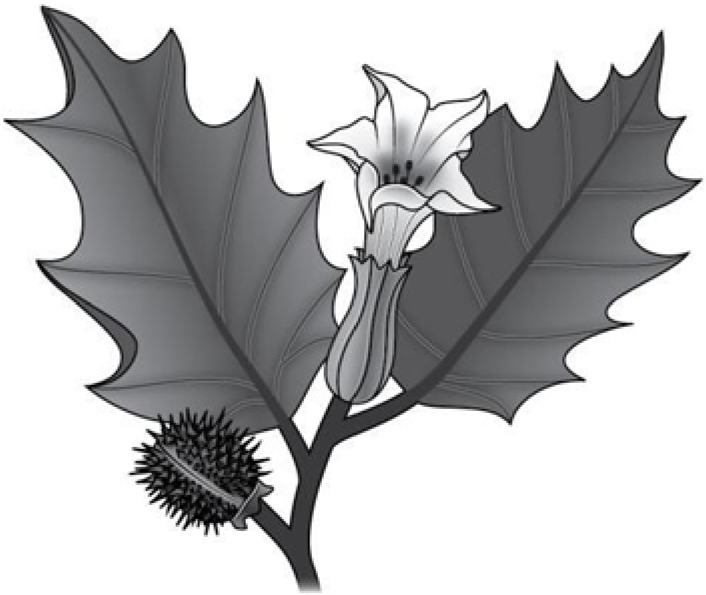


FIG. 264 Jimsonweed.

Skunk cabbage (Fig. 265) is a marsh and forest plant that grows to 6 ft (1.8 m) and has broad pleated leaves. The entire plant is toxic and causes symptoms similar to those that follow ingestion of monkshood, but generally much less severe.

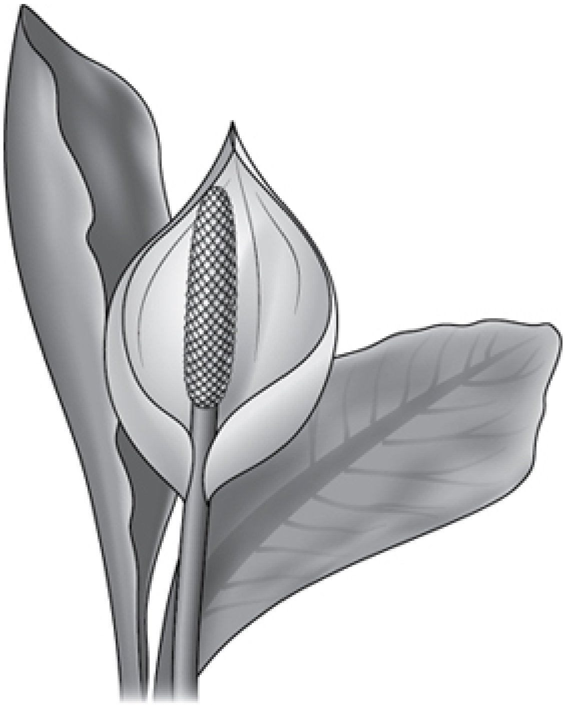


FIG. 265 Skunk cabbage.

Pyracantha (Fig. 266) is a thorned shrub with white flowers and clusters of small red berries. Ingestion of the berries in large quantities causes nausea and diarrhea. Birds sometimes eat fermented pyracantha berries and become intoxicated. Scratches from the thorns might cause a burning skin irritation.

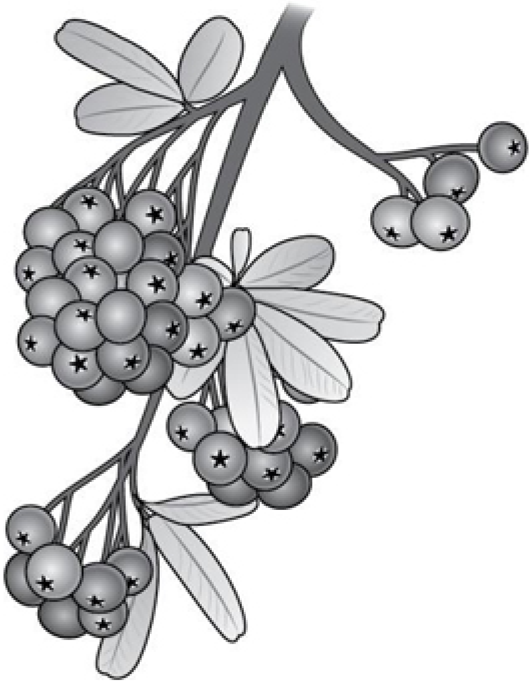


FIG. 266 Pyracantha.

Amanita phalloides (death cap) is a gilled mushroom (Fig. 267) with a shiny yellow to greenish cap found in the western United States. The entire mushroom is toxic and cannot be detoxified by cooking. Symptoms occur 6 to 12 hours after ingestion and include abdominal pain; persistent nausea, vomiting, or diarrhea; low blood pressure; and rapid heartbeat. The victim might appear normal for the next few days, but then rapidly shows signs of massive liver inflammation and destruction, which include jaundice (yellow skin and eyeballs, darkened urine), easy bleeding, and altered mental status. Fatalities are frequent with this species, as well as with *Galerina autumnalis.*

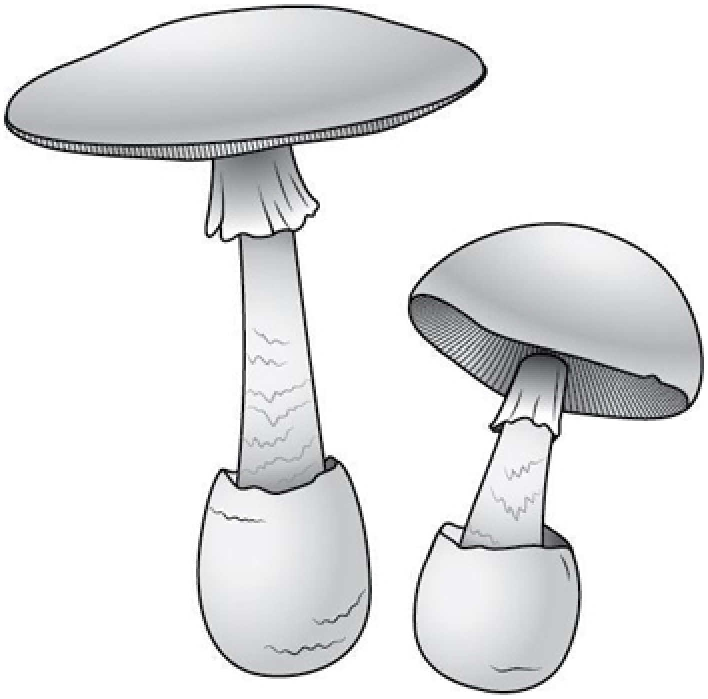


FIG. 267 *Amanita phalloides* (death cap).

Most nonfatal mushroom toxins act rapidly, producing symptoms of nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and headache within 1 to 4 hours. Severe abdominal pain and headache approximately 6 hours after ingestion are likely due to *Gyromitra esculenta.* Typically, diarrhea and vomiting caused by ingestion of *Amanita phalloides* are delayed by 6 to 12 hours. However, because most unknowledgeable mushroom foragers eat a mixture of species, a rapid onset of symptoms does not rule out a potentially disastrous ingestion. Approximately 10 species of the several thousand varieties of wild mushrooms in the United States can cause death by ingestion.

Amanita muscaria (fly agaric) is a gilled mushroom (Fig. 268) with a variably colored (yellow, red, warty, and so on) cap. Most poisonings are intentional because people brew and drink *Amanita* tea for its hallucinogenic effects. Symptoms occur 30 minutes to 2 hours after ingestion and include euphoria, difficulty walking, dizziness, hallucinations, and blurred vision. Severe ingestions can result in seizures and death.

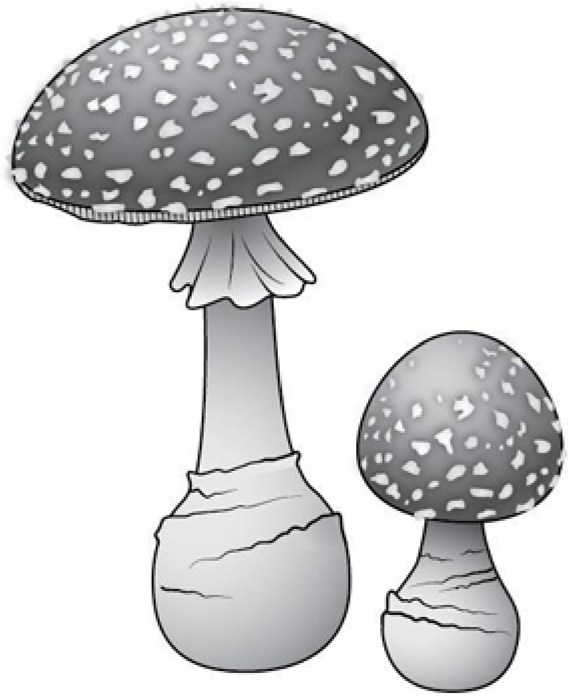


FIG. 268 *Amanita muscaria* (fly agaric).

Coprinus atramentarius (inky cap) is a gilled fungus (Fig. 269) with a conical cap that liquefies and turns black when picked. If alcohol is consumed within 24 to 72 hours after ingestion of the fungus, the victim suffers abdominal pain, vomiting, sweating, facial flushing, and headaches. *Cortinarius rainierensis* might cause the victim to have enormous thirst and increased urination 3 to 17 days after ingestion, due to a toxic effect on the kidneys.

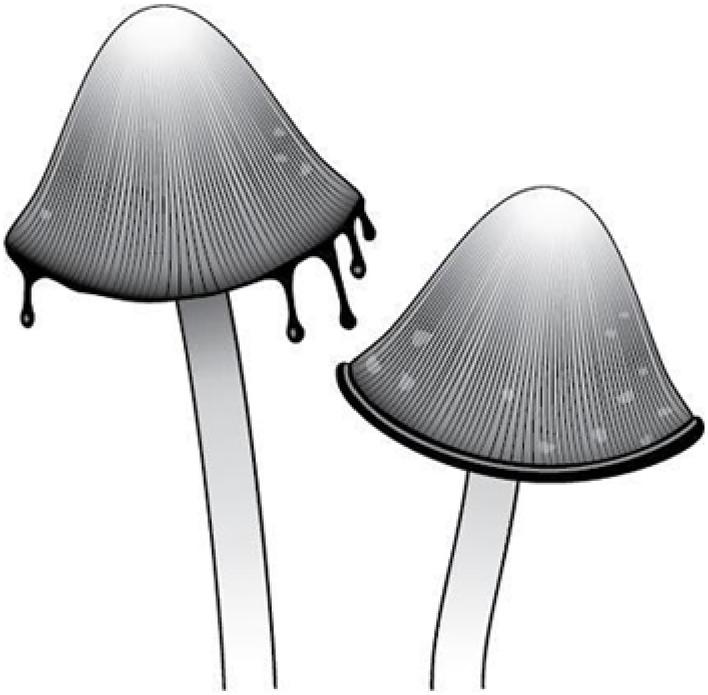


FIG. 269 *Coprinus atramentarius* (inky cap).

Many other plants (wild and houseplants) can cause illnesses if consumed in sufficient quantities (one apple seed will not poison you). When in doubt as to the identity of a plant ingested, its quantity, or its potential toxicity, it's wise to immediately consult a certified poison (control) center or a physician.

Toxicity of common plants

Toxins from common plants (used in decoration and landscaping) can cause problems ranging from skin redness, itching, and rash to painful blisters, to swelling of the mouth and throat, to nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, to serious effects on heart, liver, kidneys, or brain, to even death.

It is very important to know that the common (familiar) name of two or more different plant species (as designated by the precise Latin or common scientific name) can be identical or similar. For identification in the field, it would be best to also be able to compare the plant to a picture, if that resource is available to you.

If a plant has been ingested that may be poisonous, contact a poison center immediately.

PART FIVE

Miscellaneous Information

OUTLINE

Oxygen administration
Water disinfection
Motion sickness
Jet lag
Personal safety in an age of conflict, kidnapping, and terrorism
First aid kits
Physicians abroad

Immunizations
Transport of the injured victim
Ground-to-air distress signals
Lost people
Procedures
Dealing with death

Oxygen administration

It might be advisable or necessary under certain circumstances to administer supplemental oxygen gas (O_2) to a person who would benefit from such therapy. Examples include those stricken with severe high-altitude pulmonary edema, acute severe congestive heart failure, carbon monoxide poisoning, decompression sickness (the bends), and so forth. Anyone who might be called on to use oxygen delivery equipment should be properly trained in its use ahead of time.

The equipment required to deliver oxygen includes a medical oxygen cylinder (tank), pressure gauge, pressure-reducing valve, flowmeter, tubing, and nasal cannula (tube) or face mask (with or without a reservoir bag).

Oxygen cylinders (aluminum or steel) in the United States are usually painted green or have distinctive green markings. They come in two practical field sizes: D (20 inches [50.8 cm] in length; carries 360 liters of oxygen) and E (30 inches [76.2 cm] in length; carries 625 liters of oxygen). The length of time that oxygen can be delivered is calculated by dividing the tank capacity by the flow rate. For instance, a D-cylinder can deliver 10 liters per minute for 36 minutes. To make the oxygen last longer, keep the flow rate to the lowest effective number.

The pressure gauge reading indicates how much oxygen remains in the cylinder. At full capacity, an oxygen tank is pressurized to 2015 lb per square inch (psi). Thus, when the gauge indicates a pressure of 500 psi, one-fourth of the tank's capacity for oxygen remains. At a reading of 200 psi, a tank is near empty.

The pressure gauge, pressure-reducing valve, and flowmeter combine to create the regulator, which reduces the pressure of the oxygen from that inside the tank to approximately 50 psi. This allows delivery to the victim at flow rates between 1 and 15 liters per minute.

The delivery device attached to the victim is either a two-pronged (one for each nostril) nasal cannula, or a face mask, the latter with or without a reservoir bag. The oronasal face mask with cushioned edges is most common. A nonrebreathing face mask ("nonrebreather") is a face mask with a reservoir bag attached by a one-way valve such that the victim can breathe oxygen that is delivered into the bag but cannot exhale carbon dioxide back into the bag (they cannot "rebreathe" from the bag). The nonrebreather is used to deliver high concentrations (as a percent of inspired air, 80% to 90% oxygen at flow rates of 10 to 15 liters per minute) of oxygen. The reservoir bag should be kept at least half full of oxygen. This can be accomplished with flow rates of 6 liters per minute or greater.

The oxygen setups used for high altitude mountaineering are slightly different in design to maximize weight, comfort, and oxygen delivery time. The principles discussed here largely apply to both systems.

If lesser concentrations of oxygen are adequate or desired, a nasal cannula can be used. The cannula will deliver 25% to 40% oxygen at flow rates of 1 to 6 liters per minute (anything above 4 liters per minute might be quite uncomfortable and cause drying of the inside of the nose). The nasal cannula is less confining in that the victim can speak, drink, and eat without having to remove a face mask. To use the nasal cannula, place the prongs in the patient's nostrils and then loop the tubing over the top of the ears. Adjust the tightness at the neck to be comfortable.

The bag valve mask is used when a rescuer is assisting breathing. It can be used with or without oxygen. It is best operated by two persons—one to hold the mask in place and the other to squeeze the oxygen (air) reservoir bag.

Since O_2 is dry, it is often desirable to interpose a humidifying device when O_2 delivery will be prolonged.

To administer oxygen:

1. Place the cylinder upright. Open and close the tank valve slowly ("crack the tank") with a wrench to clean debris from the outlet.
2. Close the regulator flow valve and attach the regulator to the tank. Tighten securely by hand. Never use a regulator without the proper O-ring fitting. *Never use tape to hold a loose regulator in place.*
3. Open the tank valve slowly one full turn, and then a half a turn beyond where the regulator becomes pressurized and there is a maximum reading on the pressure gauge.
4. Attach the plastic delivery tubing to the regulator outflow nipple. Attach the breathing face mask or nasal cannula to the other end of the tubing, if it is not already attached.
5. Open the regulator flow valve to the desired flow rate in liters per minute (LPM). A regulator marking of "low" indicates 2 to 4 LPM, "medium" is 4 to 8 LPM, and "high" is 10 to 15 LPM. Use 1 to 6 LPM for a nasal cannula. The flow rate for a nonrebreather face mask should not be less than 6 LPM and is more commonly 10 to 15 LPM.
6. Position the face mask or cannula on the victim's face. Adjust for comfort. Observe the victim to be certain that the device is tolerated, and that the reservoir bag fills properly.
7. When transporting the victim, be sure to secure the tank in a position where it can be reached and monitored.

Precautions

- Never allow an open flame near an oxygen-delivery system.
- Don’t allow contaminants, particularly petroleum products, to come in contact with the regulator.
- Where feasible, don’t expose an oxygen tank to excessive heat (above 125°F [52°C]) or freezing cold.
- Don’t position any part of a person directly over a tank valve—a loose regulator can be blown off the top of the cylinder with tremendous force.
- Don’t drop a cylinder; don’t roll a cylinder.
- Close all valves when the cylinder is not in use.
- Service the oxygen delivery mechanism every 2 years or as recommended by the manufacturer.

In general, oxygen therapy should be administered to achieve an oxygen saturation level (as measured with a pulse oximeter—see page 41) of 94% or more. In certain circumstances (e.g., carbon monoxide poisoning), a higher saturation level target is recommended. In others (e.g., high altitude illness, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease [COPD]), a lower target is acceptable.

Water disinfection

Water *purification* is the removal of chemical pollutants by filtration through activated charcoal or active resin compounds. This usually improves the taste, but does not decrease the incidence of infectious disease, because microorganisms are not removed. Water *disinfection* is the treatment of water with chemicals, boiling, or filtration to remove agents of infectious disease, such as bacteria and cysts. Water *sterilization* is the removal of all life forms.

If possible, carry disinfected water with you. If you must drink water from a stream or lake that you cannot disinfect, try to use small tributaries that descend at right angles to the main direction of valley drainage. Clean melted snow is of less risk than ice taken from the surface of a lake or stream. Most bacteria that cause diarrhea can survive for months in ice.

The principal offending agents in contaminated water or on unwashed food that cause illness and diarrhea are the bacteria *Escherichia coli, Salmonella, Shigella,* and *Campylobacter,* and the flagellate protozoan *Giardia lamblia* (see page 236). Drinking nondisinfected water in parts of Africa, India, and Pakistan can cause dracunculiasis (guinea worm disease). In countries where water is improperly disinfected, stick to bottled or canned carbonated beverages, beer, and wine. However, be advised that bottled water in developing countries can be contaminated with bacteria that cause diarrhea, so even bottled water should be boiled or disinfected with chemicals, ultraviolet (UV) light, or ozone before drinking. All containers should be wiped clean to remove external moisture and dirt. All ice should be considered contaminated. For purposes of preserving the environment, it's preferable to carry a reusable water container that is filled with disinfected water than to discard multiple plastic or glass containers.

Don't urinate or defecate (inadvertently) into or near your water supply. Build a latrine 8 to 10 inches (20 to 25 cm) deep into the ground at least 100 ft (31 m) and downhill from the water supply. Try to keep the latrine away from a gully or other formation that might become a runoff stream during a thaw or after heavy rainfall.

"Raw" drinking water should be allowed to rest for several hours to allow large particles to settle to the bottom. The top portion can be poured off, if possible, through a filter or fine cloth. Coagulation and flocculation techniques remove smaller suspended particles. Add a pinch of alum (an aluminum salt) to a gallon (3.8 liters) of water and mix well, then stir occasionally for 60 minutes.

Allow the water to rest while the aggregated particles settle, and then pour off the upper (hopefully clearer) part through a paper filter (such as a laboratory-grade filter with a pore size of 20 to 30 microns).

Water can be disinfected by any of the following methods:

The usual advice—to **boil** water for 5 to 10 minutes plus 1 minute for each 1000 ft (305 m) of altitude above sea level—is probably overkill. Sterilization (killing of all microorganisms) occurs after 5 to 10 minutes of boiling at sea level. *Giardia* cysts are instantly killed in water heated to 158°F (70°C). To play it safe, bacteria and most viruses require a few minutes at this temperature. Hepatitis A virus requires a full minute of boiling to ensure inactivation.

Time and temperature have an inverse relationship with respect to water disinfection. The higher the temperature, the less time is required, and vice versa. For instance, pasteurization of food products can occur at a lower temperature (158°F [70°C]) if 30 minutes at this temperature is allowed.

The temperature at which water boils varies with altitude because of the surrounding barometric pressure. Barometric pressure is expressed in terms of the height (in inches or millimeters) of a column of mercury (Hg) that exerts a pressure equal to that of a column of air with the same size base. At sea level (barometric pressure 760 mm Hg), water boils at 212°F (100°C); at 5000 ft or 1525 m (632 mm Hg), 203°F (95°C); at 10,000 ft or 3050 m (522 mm Hg), 194°F (90°C); at 14,000 ft or 4270 m (446 mm Hg), 187°F (86°C).

Thus, boiling water is effective for disinfection at any altitude below 18,000 ft (5490 m). The time required to heat the water to boiling contributes to the disinfection process. To provide a wide margin of safety, boil the water for 3 minutes.

Halogens, such as iodine and chlorine, are effective chemical disinfectants. The rate at which they kill microorganisms depends on the concentration (measured in milligrams per liter, or parts per million [ppm], which are equivalent) of halogen and time allowed for disinfection. At a given water temperature and pH, contact time is inversely related to concentration. Thus, you double the contact time if half the concentration of halogen is present. Decreased (cold) water temperature or cloudy (more organic material) water requires a longer contact time or higher halogen concentration. Halogens can create an unpleasant taste if the concentration exceeds 4 mg/liter. They can lose effectiveness after prolonged exposure to moisture, heat, or air and might be corrosive or stain clothing. In general, to improve taste, use a lower concentration of halogen for a longer contact time. 8 mg/liter (or ppm) is considered the concentration of iodine effective for water disinfection in room-temperature, clear water. A pregnant woman or a person with thyroid disease or iodine allergy should consult a physician before using any iodine compound for water disinfection.

Water disinfection tablets, such as Potable Aqua (see later) and other iodine- and chlorine-based products, can be used inside plastic hydration bladders, such as those found in the CamelBak. While they might discolor the plastic, they don't degrade it.

Add one tablet of fresh **tetraglycine hydroperiodide (e.g., Potable Aqua)** to 1 quart (liter) of water and allow the water to stand for 15 minutes. If the water is cloudy, use two tablets. If the water is cold, allow 1 hour after adding the tablets before drinking. Each tablet releases approximately 8 mg/liter of iodine. Don't leave an open bottle exposed to high heat and/or humidity.

Potable Aqua - Add to 1 Quart (Liter) of Water:

Water	**Clear**	**Cloudy**
Warm (>15°C, 59°F)	1 tablet for 15 minutes	2 tablets for 30 minutes
Cold	1 tablet for 60 minutes	2 tablets for 60 minutes

After adequate time for disinfection has elapsed, add a few grains of sodium thiosulfate per quart (liter) of water; this kills the iodine taste. Ascorbic acid (vitamin C) is also effective. Any fruit flavorings that contain vitamin C should be mixed in after full time for disinfection has elapsed. Potable Aqua Plus treatment includes an oxidizing tablet to remove the iodine taste. Granular activated charcoal removes organic material, chemicals, and radioactive particles by adsorption, but does not remove all microorganisms, and thus cannot be relied on to disinfect water. Rather, it should be used to improve taste and clarity. Use it after water has been properly disinfected.

Zinc metal reduces free chlorine or iodine in solution through a chemical reaction. A wand of zinc bristles stirred into a quart (liter) of water for 4 minutes will remove 10 mg/liter of residual chlorine.

Because a 50-tablet bottle of tetraglycine hydroperiodide contains only 0.4 g of iodine (1/50 the lethal dose), the tablet method is very safe. If you use military surplus iodine tablets, they should be steel gray in color and not crumble when pinched by two fingers; discard older, crumbled tablets. Also, no matter what chemical disinfection system you use, allow disinfected water to seep around the cap and threads of your canteen or water bottle, to disinfect them.

Add 8 to 10 drops (0.5 mL in each drop) of **standard 2% iodine tincture** per quart (liter) of water and allow it to stand for 15 minutes. Use a dropper for measurement. If the water is not at least 68°F (20°C), this technique might not eliminate *Giardia*. If the water is cold, allow it to stand for 1 hour before drinking. If you have extra time and don't like the iodine taste, use four to five drops of iodine and allow the water to stand for 8 hours or overnight. Five drops of tincture of iodine disperses to approximately 4 mg/liter.

Iodine - Add to 1 Quart (Liter) of Water:

Water	Clear	Cloudy
Warm (>15 C, 59°F)	5 drops for 15 minutes	10 drops for 30 minutes
Cold	5 drops for 60 minutes	10 drops for 60 minutes

Another iodine product that can be used to disinfect water but has not definitively been proved effective for this purpose, is **10% povidone-iodine (Betadine)** solution (not “scrub”).

Betadine - Add to 1 Quart (Liter) of Water:

Water	Clear	Cloudy
Warm (>15°C, 59°F)	8 drops for 15 minutes	16 drops for 30 minutes
Cold	8 drops for 60 minutes	16 drops for 60 minutes

Fill a 1-oz (30 mL) glass bottle with **iodine crystals** (U.S. Pharmacopeia [USP] grade, resublimed: 2 to 8 g), and then fill the bottle with water. The bottle should have a paper-lined Bakelite cap. Warm the water to 68°F to 77°F (20°C to 25°C). Shake vigorously, and then allow the crystals to settle to the bottom for 1 hour. This will create a saturated solution of iodine. As a crude measure, pour at least half of this liquid (not the remaining crystals), or approximately 12.5 to 15 mL, through a fine filter (such as Teflon) into a quart (liter) of water and allow it to stand for 30 minutes. If the water temperature is not at least 68°F (20°C), this technique might not eliminate *Giardia.* The crystals may be reused up to 1000 times. Two grams (0.07 oz) of iodine represents a potentially lethal dose if ingested, so it is absolutely essential to keep the iodine crystals out of the hands of children.

If one capful from a 2-oz (59 mL) bottle equals approximately 2.5 mL, then using a saturated solution prepared from iodine crystals in water:

Iodine crystals - Add to 1 Quart (Liter) of Water:

Water	Clear	Cloudy
Warm (>15°C, 59°F)	5 capfuls for 15 minutes	10 capfuls for 30 minutes
Cold	5 capfuls for 60 minutes	10 capfuls for 60 minutes

An **alcohol-iodine solution** can be prepared by adding 8 g of iodine crystals to 100 mL of 95% ethanol. The resulting supernatant yields 8 mg iodine per 0.1 mL. To add to water, measure with an eyedropper:

Alcohol-iodine Solution - Add to 1 Quart (Liter) of Water:

Water	Clear	Cloudy
Warm (>15°C, 59°F)	0.1 mL for 15 minutes	0.2 mL for 30 minutes
Cold	0.1 mL for 60 minutes	0.2 mL for 60 minutes

Filter the water through a category-three (as set for purification by the Environmental Protection Agency) water treatment device. New devices regularly come on the market. If the filter doesn't come with a "prefilter" (nylon mesh or screen) to remove large particles, pour the water through filter paper (see later) or fine cheesecloth. This helps keep your expensive water filter from clogging, allows it to work more efficiently, and will improve the appearance and taste of the water.

Maximum filter pore sizes (in material or microns) for removing microorganisms are as follows: dracunculus (guinea worm) larvae—coffee filter or fine cloth; schistosome cercariae—coffee filter or fine cloth; parasitic eggs and larvae—20; *G. lamblia* cyst, *Entamoeba histolytica* cyst, *Cyclospora*—3 to 5; *Cryptosporidium* oocyst—1; enteric bacteria (such as *E. coli*)—0.2 to 0.4; and viruses—0.004 to 0.01.

Halazone (a mixture of monochloraminobenzoic and dichloraminobenzoic acids) and other chlorine (bleach) products have been considered less effective for field water disinfection. Halazone has been characterized as losing 75% of activity after 2 days' continuous exposure to air with high heat and humidity; having a shelf life of 6 months; and decreasing potency by 50% after storage above 104°F (40°C). Therefore, you should obtain a new bottle every 3 to 6 months.

Each Halazone tablet releases 2.3 to 2.5 mg/liter of chlorine. To disinfect water:

Halazone - Add to 1 Quart (Liter) of Water:

Water	Clear	Cloudy
Warm (>15°C, 59°F)	5 tablets for 15 minutes	7 tablets for 15 minutes
	2.5 tablets for 30 minutes	5 tablets for 30 minutes
Cold	5 tablets for 60 minutes	7 tablets for 60 minutes

Liquid bleach (hypochlorite solution; household bleach, usually 5.25%) can be used to disinfect water via chlorination. There should be a faint smell or taste of chlorine before drinking.

Liquid Bleach - For 5.25% Bleach, Add to 1 Quart (Liter) of Water:

Water	Clear	Cloudy
Warm (>15°C, 59°F)	2 drops (0.1 mL) for 30 minutes	4 drops (0.2 mL) for 30 minutes
Cold	2 drops (0.1 mL) for 60 minutes	4 drops (0.2 mL) for 60 minutes

Liquid Bleach - For 1% Bleach, Add to 1 Quart (Liter) of Water:

Water	Clear	Cloudy
Warm (>15°C, 59°F)	10 drops (0.5 mL) for 30 minutes	20 drops (1 mL) for 30 minutes
Cold	10 drops (0.5 mL) for 60 minutes	20 drops (1 mL) for 60 minutes

Superchlorination followed by dechlorination is an effective technique. This is a more complicated method. Add 27 g or more of calcium hypochlorite crystals to a gallon (3.8 liters) of water to attain a chlorine concentration of 27 to 30 parts per million. After the requisite disinfection time (10 to 30 minutes), add six drops of concentrated (30%, caustic) hydrogen peroxide to dechlorinate the water. The chemical reaction produces calcium chloride (which remains in solution), water, and oxygen.

Chlorination can be combined with flocculation. WATERMAKER sachets contain alum and sodium dichloroisocyanurate. This moves solids to the bottom of the container and also allows disinfection.

Aquamira water treatment uses stabilized 2% chlorine dioxide combined with an activator (5% food grade phosphoric acid) to improve the taste of water. One kit can be used to treat more than 120 liters of water. Mix seven drops of the two bottles together, let sit for 5 minutes, and then pour the contents into 1 quart of water. Oxygen is released in a highly active form to kill odor-causing bacteria. The process takes approximately 20 minutes.

The **SteriPEN** carries the promotional byline of "safe drinking water anywhere." This unique handheld water purifier that uses **UV light**. According to the distributor, only 48 seconds of exposure to the UV light is required to disinfect 16 oz (½ liter) of water and 90 seconds for 32 oz (1 liter). The claim is that the device is effective against common outdoor and household pathogens, as well as less common microorganisms, to include bacteria, viruses, and protozoa. According to the product literature, the SteriPEN meets U.S. Environmental Protection Agency standards for microbiologic water purifiers. A filter can be used to remove particulates from the water before UV treatment.

UV light works for water disinfection by destroying the DNA of microbes. This keeps the germs from reproducing, which is necessary for them to make a person ill. The light emitted by the SteriPEN device is in the UV-C range, of wavelength 254 nanometers. This wavelength is germicidal (kills germs) by causing adjacent thymine base nucleotides in DNA to bond together, which prevents them from being properly recognized ("read") in the replication process, which is necessary for DNA to allow a microorganism to reproduce. Thus, the germ(s) is (are) rendered harmless. Used as directed, the UV light exposure is of no consequence, as this wavelength of UV light does not pass through most materials (e.g., glass, metal, ceramic, and nearly all plastics). Furthermore, the underside of the air/water surface in a water container acts as a reflector for UV-C. So, if the SteriPEN lamp is completely immersed in water and used according to the instructions, the UV-C is contained and does not pose any health risk to the user. For additional safety, the SteriPEN is equipped with water sensors and will not operate unless the lamp is under water. The SteriPEN contains a microcomputer that controls operation time, according to information it receives from integrated temperature sensors and user indication of the volume of water to be disinfected. During use, the device should be used to gently stir the water. It is intended for use in clear water, so cloudy water must be filtered or otherwise made clear before using the SteriPEN. Disposable lithium or rechargeable AA nickel metal hydride batteries will provide many more disinfection cycles than will alkaline batteries. All batteries must be protected from the cold.

Motion sickness

Motion sickness (seasickness, or “mal de mer”) is a common, annoying, and sometimes disabling problem for boaters and divers. Motion sickness is a complex phenomenon that involves the cerebellum (the part of the brain that controls, among other things, balance), vestibular system (labyrinth of the inner ear that plays a major role in the control of equilibrium), the nerve connections between the eyes and the inner ear, and the gastrointestinal tract. It is made worse by alcohol ingestion, emotional upset, noxious odors (e.g., boat exhaust fumes), and inner ear injury or infection. Most persons adapt to real motion after a few days but might require treatment until they are adjusted to the environment.

Signs and symptoms of motion sickness include a sensation of dizziness or spinning, a sensation of falling, pale skin color, sweating, nausea, headache, drowsiness, weakness, yawning, and increased salivation. Vomiting might provide temporary relief, but prolonged salvation doesn’t occur until the inner ear labyrinth acclimatizes to motion or you are able to intervene with an anti–motion-sickness device or medication. Persons who suffer from prolonged vomiting become dehydrated and exhausted.

To manage motion sickness:

- Keep your eyes fixed on a steady point in the distance. If on board a ship, stay on deck. Splash your face with cold water. If the seas are rough, be careful to not slip or fall overboard. If you can have someone next to you who is not suffering, that is better than leaning over the rail by yourself to vomit when you’re dizzy.
- Use the ReliefBand device. This is advertised to relieve nausea and vomiting with gentle, noninvasive electrical stimulation on the underside of the wrist. It can be used before or after symptoms begin; carries no restrictions on food, beverages, or the use of medications; and has no drug-like side effects. The device looks like a wristwatch. The Adventurer model contains a battery-powered electrical stimulator that’s easily adjustable for five different stimulation levels. The device is positioned over the P6 acupuncture site (the Neiguan, or Eni Kuan, point on the pericardial meridian). This is located two fingerbreadths toward the heart from the wrist joint between the two prominent finger

flexor tendons. When the device is turned on, a pulse is generated every 4 seconds and the user feels the episodic tingling sensation. It's theorized that the electrical signal transmitted via the median nerve in the wrist interrupts the nausea and vomiting messages that are transmitted between the brain and the stomach. The only side effect noted so far with the device is rare irritation where the electrodes contact the skin. This is easily managed by moving the device to the other wrist.

- Some persons report that wearing a "sea band" is helpful. This is a knitted, elastic stretch band with a button(s) that applies pressure to an acupuncture point(s). This would not be expected to be nearly as effective as the ReliefBand device but might help in a pinch.
- Ingest meclizine (Antivert, Bonine) 25 mg, cyclizine (Marezine) 50 mg, or dimenhydrinate (Dramamine) 50 mg orally every 4 to 6 hours, or cinnarizine (Stugeron) 15 mg every 8 hours as necessary to prevent and control motion sickness. These are adult doses. Children ages 2 to 12 years can be given dimenhydrinate 1 mg/kg body weight 1 hour before travel and then every 6 hours during the period of risk for motion sickness. An alternative drug is diphenhydramine (Benadryl) 0.5 mg/kg body weight, up to 25 mg. It's possible for children to have "paradoxical" hyperactivity instead of sedation with these medications. Therefore, a test dose should be given before travel. To be most effective, the first dose of medication should precede the environmental change by 1 hour. Medication given after the onset of seasickness will often be ineffective. Obviously, if you're vomiting so severely that you cannot keep any medication down, you might need to use a suppository, such as prochlorperazine (Compazine) 25 mg or promethazine (Phenergan) 25 mg, noting that these drugs won't cure the motion sickness—they might control vomiting, but have the side effect of drowsiness. Scopolamine 0.4 to 0.8 mg (1 or 2 tablets) taken 1 hour before anticipated seasickness and then every 8 hours is effective.
- Place a transdermal scopolamine patch (Transderm Scop 1.5 mg) on the skin behind the ear. This patch releases the drug slowly through the skin and can be very effective against motion sickness for up to 3 days. Side effects include drowsiness, blurred vision (sometimes with a dilated pupil in the eye on the side of the patch), decreased sweating, fever, red flushing of the skin, difficulty with urination (particularly in elderly males with enlarged prostate glands), dry mouth, and a propensity to be susceptible to heat illness during times of heat exposure. Persons with glaucoma should not use the patch. On a rare occasion, a person who uses a patch can become delirious or even psychotic as a side effect. Normal behavior returns within a few hours

after the patch is removed.The patch should be positioned at least 3 hours before rough seas are encountered. If you touch the medicated (sticky) side of the patch with a finger and then let that finger come in contact with your eye, your pupil will almost certainly dilate and stay that way for up to 8 hours. *Be sure to wash your hands thoroughly with soap and water immediately after handling the patch, so that any drug that might get on your hands will not come in contact with your eyes.* Also, local absorption of the drug through the skin can dilate the pupil of the eye on the same side of the patch, causing difficulty with focusing of vision.

- Reduce head movement. If you're on a large boat that is rocking bow to stern, seek the middle (equilibrium) of the vessel, so that motion is minimized. Look out from the boat and find a broad view of the horizon. Sit in the front seat of an automobile and bus, and prefer the seat adjacent to the wing of an airplane. Don't do close-focused visual tasks such as reading, writing, and navigation. If you're becoming motion sick and can't control your symptoms, you might find some relief by lying face up in a well-secured and ventilated bunk. Close your eyes and try to sleep.
- Some people recommend "keeping something in your stomach" during a bout of motion sickness. You can put something in there, but if you are truly sick, it won't stay there for long. Try to maintain your fluid intake with sips of something like an electrolyte-containing sports beverage (e.g., Gatorade or Gatorade G2). If you're known to suffer from motion sickness, take particular care to be well hydrated before your journey, because you will at a minimum have decreased appetite and fluid intake, and in the worst case, lose a fair bit of fluid by vomiting. While some persons recommend a light diet with predominantly carbohydrates, there is no evidence that any particular food or diet is beneficial. Don't consume alcoholic beverages because these make you more prone to vertigo. Ginger *(Zingiber officinale)* is sometimes recommended to curb nausea. It is taken as 1000 mg (two 500 mg capsules) every 6 hours, supplemented by gingersnap cookies, ginger ale, and candied ginger. Another formulation is ginger extract 125 to 250 mg by mouth every 6 to 8 hours.
- Headache, ringing in the ears, weakness in an arm or leg, difficulty with speech, difficulty swallowing, decreased vision, and palpitations are not features of motion sickness and should raise suspicion for another cause of dizziness. If any of these occur, especially if the seas are not particularly rough and no one else is suffering, the victim should seek medical attention. Similarly, if the symptoms occur after a dive, one must consider the possibility of central nervous system decompression sickness (bends) or arterial gas embolism.

- Finally, don’t try to cure serious motion sickness by putting on your dive gear and heading underwater. Mild nausea attributable to seasickness might disappear when you get under the surface (and the objectionable motion ceases), but if you are ready to vomit, you shouldn’t put yourself and your companions in a situation in which you throw up underwater. It’s not easy to vomit underwater and coordinate breathing through your regulator in order to avoid inhaling water or vomitus, and getting sick when you are in the water can lead to panic and a serious diving accident. Don’t dive until you’re feeling well.

Jet lag

Wilderness medicine and outdoor persons are commonly world travelers. Jet lag is a sleep disorder that results from crossing time zones too rapidly for the human biologic circadian "clock," which is synchronized to the sun's cycle of light and darkness, to keep pace. It has been estimated that the circadian clock resets an average of approximately 90 minutes later each day after a westward flight and approximately 60 minutes earlier each day after an eastward flight. Many people notice that it's more difficult from a jet lag perspective when traveling from west to east. Diet and exercise don't have any known effect on jet lag, but when optimized, might make a person feel better and therefore be conducive to restful sleep.

Here are strategies recommended by sleep experts for managing jet lag:

- Reset the circadian clock by using appropriately timed exposure to light. One shifts the clock to a later time by exposure to light in the evening and shifts it to an earlier time by exposure to light in the morning. To keep it simple, when traveling eastward across up to eight time zones, one should seek exposure to bright light in the morning. When traveling westward across up to eight time zones, one should seek exposure to bright light in the evening. An additional recommendation for travel across more than 8 time zones is to stay indoors (e.g., avoid sunlight) for the first few hours of daylight after long eastward flights or for a few hours before dusk after long westward flights.
- Take the hormone melatonin, which is normally secreted by the body for roughly 10 to 12 hours at night. It can be considered to be a darkness signal, with effects opposite those of exposure to light. Therefore, if melatonin is taken in the evening before it would normally be secreted, it resets the body clock to an earlier time, and when it is taken in the morning, it resets the clock to a later time. To promote shifting of the body clock to a later time (when you're traveling westward), take 0.5 mg (a short-acting dose) during the second half of the night until you have become adapted to local time. To promote shifting of the body clock to an earlier time (when you're traveling eastward), take 0.5 to 3 mg at local bedtime nightly until you have become adapted to local time.

Most people simply try to power through jet lag, but there is a science to it. To make a coordinated effort to minimize jet lag, here are additional recommendations, depending on whether a person is traveling westward or eastward:

In flight

- Try to be comfortable.
- Drink plenty of water to stay hydrated. Don't drink caffeine if you wish to sleep. Avoid alcohol in general.
- Consider taking a short-acting sleep medication. Don't take sleep medication combined with alcohol, or if there is a risk for deep-vein thrombosis (blood clot formation in the legs or pelvis).
- Take measures to avoid deep vein thrombosis (see page 311). These include staying well hydrated, wearing support stockings, changing positions frequently, and walking around when possible. Wear comfortable clothing and shoes.

For traveling westward

Before travel

- Shift the timing of sleep to 1 to 2 hours later for a few days before the trip; seek exposure to bright light in the evening.
- Try to get an adequate amount of sleep.
- Eat a healthful diet and get adequate rest.

On arrival

- Expect to have trouble sleeping until you become adjusted to local time.
- If you are sleep deprived, it's OK to take a nap after arrival. Continue to take daytime naps if you're sleepy, particularly if you need to be alert for driving and technical activities but keep the naps as brief as possible to avoid ruining bedtime sleep.
- Consider using sleep medication at bedtime for a few nights until you're adjusted to local time.
- Take melatonin as noted earlier.
- Seek exposure to bright light in the evening.
- If you've traveled more than 8 time zones, for the first 2 days after arrival, avoid bright light for 2 to 3 hours before dusk. Starting on the third day, seek exposure to bright light in the evening.

- If caffeine keeps you awake, then avoid it after mid-day because it might interfere with sleep at night.

For traveling eastward

Before travel

- Shift the timing of sleep to 1 to 2 hours earlier for a few days before the trip. Seek exposure to bright light in the morning.
- Try to get an adequate amount of sleep.
- Eat a healthful diet and get adequate rest.

On arrival

- Expect to have trouble sleeping until you become adjusted to local time.
- If you're sleep deprived, it's OK to take a nap after arrival. Continue to take daytime naps if you are sleepy, particularly if you need to be alert for driving and technical activities but keep the naps as brief as possible to avoid ruining bedtime sleep.
- Consider using sleep medication at bedtime for a few nights until you're adjusted to local time.
- Take melatonin as noted earlier.
- Seek exposure to bright light in the morning.
- If you've traveled more than 8 time zones, for the first 2 days after arrival, avoid bright light for 2 to 3 hours after dawn. Starting on the third day, seek exposure to bright light in the morning.
- If caffeine keeps you awake, avoid it after mid-day because it might interfere with sleep at bedtime.

Personal safety in an age of conflict, kidnapping, and terrorism

We live in an age of conflict and travel subjects one to criminal behavior, including acts of piracy, kidnapping, terrorism and war. It is wise to be cautious, safe, and prepared to react to situations in which you might become a victim. As with any other adverse event, prevention and avoidance is key.

Safe travel

General crime avoidance

- Don't flaunt expensive items, such as jewelry, (dive) watches, phones, luggage, and cameras.
- If you're in a hotel room with an electronic safe, use it to store valuables. Don't leave precious items unprotected. Lock all windows and doors when you are not in the room. Leave a light on in the room when you're not present.
- Avoid unsafe neighborhoods. Use common and well-lit routes.
- Avoid arguments with strangers.
- Travel in groups.
- Be particularly careful at night. Don't walk alone at night.
- Don't accept rides from strangers or hitchhike. If you're going to be met at an airport, be informed ahead of time about who is picking you up, preferably with a name, photo, and vehicle license plate number.
- Don't accept medicine or drugs from strangers.
- Carry money in a travel money belt.
- Don't become intoxicated in public.
- Plan for an emergency evacuation.
- Be cautious at checkpoints and military barriers.

Kidnapping and hostage behavior

Proper hostage behavior

A person might be taken hostage by a kidnapper or as part of a larger conflict. If this occurs, proper hostage behavior can make the difference between life and death.

- Do not resist.
- Avoid sudden or threatening movements.
- Do not try to be a hero.
- Cooperate as best possible and follow orders.
- Do not be belligerent and avoid complaining.
- Keep answers to questions short. Don’t volunteer information.
- Try to relax.
- Prepare yourself emotionally for a long ordeal.
- Avoid direct eye contact and do not be obvious about observing your captor’s activities.
- Don’t drink alcohol.
- Eat what you are given. Do not overeat.
- Attempt to establish rapport with your captors if the situation is prolonged.
- Avoid discussions about politics and religion.
- Get into a daily routine.
- Be as positive as possible and avoid despair.

Avoiding acts and consequences of terrorism

- Don’t congregate in public areas.
- Avoid demonstrations, crowds, and protests.
- Schedule direct flights and avoid stops in high-risk airports.
- Minimize time spent in public areas of airports.
- Refuse unknown luggage or packages.
- Avoid shopping malls, nightclubs, and tourist destinations.
- Note the location of police stations, hotels, and hospitals.
- Have an escape plan.
- Take taxicabs at random and compare the face of the driver with the posted license.
- Drive with windows closed in crowded areas.
- If you hear or witness shooting, take cover and drop to the ground. Move by crawling.
- Do not attempt to assist rescuers or handle weapons unless you have been properly trained.

Piracy

Pirates are thieves who board boats in order to steal, rob, kidnap, or worse. They are frequently armed. Unquestionably, safe boating practices are essential to lessen the chance of being pirated. Boating organizations and expert seagoers offer the following advice.

How to lessen the risks associated with pirates

- Travel with other boats. Avoid high-risk areas. Register your itinerary with proper authorities and be in regular communication.
- Bring your dinghy on board or along the toe rail at night, to lessen its attraction to pirates.
- Keep the transom boarding ladder lifted to make it more difficult to board your boat.
- Maintain an infrared alarm that emits a loud shrieking noise in the cockpit.
- Keep the companionway hatch and other cabin hatches closed tightly when you perceive there to be a pirating risk.
- Have internal hatches open toward the companion hatch, and jam toward the cabin.
- Stow knives and other implements that might be used as weapons.
- Keep valuables in a hidden safe.
- Keep fake valuables, worthless credit cards, and cash available to give to pirates.
- If anchored, have a quick get-away course charted and kept near the wheel. Be prepared and checked out to leave at a moment’s notice.
- Keep watch for pirates.
- Have a red parachute flare easily available to fire out of a hatch as an alarm.

Blast injuries

Blast injuries occur from explosions, often caused by improvised explosive devices (IEDs). They can release enormous quantities of energy. Other causes include land mines and other ordinance, such as grenades. Some bombs that have survived conflicts from many years ago, such as World War II, might still be active and can be triggered by unsuspecting curious persons.

Blast injuries are categorized, with a fair amount of overlap, as:

1. Primary: Injuries caused by the air pressure wave (“blast wave”) caused by the explosion. This affects organs such as the eardrum (rupture—see page 200), lung (bruising, bleeding, and torn tissue leading to air embolism—see page 408), brain (see page 72), and bowel (often a torn

colon, because gas-filled structures are very prone to effects from the pressure wave).

2. Secondary: Injuries caused by bomb fragments and flying debris, such as nails, which cause cuts and bleeding (see page 60), bruises (see page 277), amputations (see page 127), and penetrating injuries akin to gunshot wounds (see page 68).
3. Tertiary: Injuries caused by the victim being thrown by the blast wave, such as broken bones (see page 83), head injuries (see page 72), penetrating injuries (impalement), and internal injuries (see page 68).
4. Quaternary: All other injuries, such as crush injuries (see page 85), burns (see page 128), asphyxia (see page 18), toxic exposures (such as to chemicals or radiation), and worsening of a chronic disease(s), such as asthma.

How to avoid blast injuries

- Don’t handle weapons or ordinance, regardless of its age or appearance.
- Don’t stray from frequently used paths in areas that are known to have been possible sites for land mines.
- If there is a perceived risk for terrorist or war activities, don’t congregate in public areas.

First aid kits

First aid kits should be designed according to the environment to be encountered, number of travelers, medical training of the party leaders, and distance from advanced medical care. The following lists include items that could be included to deal effectively with the most common problems. They are not camping lists (shelter, food, toiletries, and the like). Basic survival supplies must be adequate. The more multipurpose your selections, the less the weight of your pack.

In all cases, what you should carry depends on your predetermined needs. Select the items that make sense for your group or expedition. As you review the sections of this book, you will be able to decide what to carry. For instance, a day hiker need not carry a portable traction splint, but a rock climber on a lengthy expedition should consider bringing one along. A scuba diver in Australia should carry a bottle of vinegar to pour on a box jellyfish sting. Carry a realistic quantity of supplies; you should be prepared to treat more than one person at a time. Specific medications to choose from are described in Appendix 1 and throughout the book. Remember to bring along pediatric doses (in liquid form, if necessary) when traveling with children.

First aid supplies should be packed to be readily accessible and marked clearly to allow rapid identification. *Before the trip, show all members of the expedition where the medical supplies are stored and explain how they are to be used.*

The supplies must be carried in a container(s) that can withstand physical abuse, extremes of temperature, and exposure to water. Conterra offers many options for medical carry packs and backpacks. On boating, rafting, or diving adventures, carry medical supplies in a plastic (a Pelican Case or OtterBox, for example) or metal container equipped with a rubber O-ring gasket for a tight, waterproof seal, or store the supplies in a "dry bag." Use Ziploc-type bags within the kit for extra material and to sort your supplies. For instance, it's helpful to partition supplies into modules "for wound care," "for an allergic reaction," and so forth.

Certain medications (such as epinephrine) might fare poorly when exposed to extreme cold or heat. To the best extent possible, they should be stored within a temperature range of 59°F to 86°F. Keeping medications close to one's body in a comfortable storage container is a tenable solution for cold environments; a "cooling towel" might be useful in hot environments.

Carry a small notepad and waterproof writing instrument. A preprinted first aid report form, designed for use on mountain or backcountry expeditions, is a convenient way to record a victim's medical condition and treatment, while serving as a good checklist for proper evaluation. Space is usually provided for a written rescue request to be carried by a messenger in an emergency.

An excellent selection of first aid kits is available in stores or by mail order from companies like Chinook Medical Gear, Inc. (www.chinookmed.com).

Basic supplies

Brand names are shown to indicate representative products, not to indicate that these are the best or only products that might be used. Quality, availability, cost, and preference will influence which specific products you choose. Before you embark on an outdoor expedition, go through the relevant sections of this book and this list carefully and decide to include or exclude these items from your medical kit.

General supplies to consider

- Medical guidebook
- First aid report form
- Hand sanitizer
- Duct tape
- Pencil or pen with small notepad
- Steel sewing needle
- Paper clip
- Safety pins
- Disposable scalpels (#11 and/or #12 blades)
- Trauma shears (scissors)
- Swiss Army knife or Leatherman-type tool
- Seam ripper
- Sharp-pointed surgical scissors
- Bandage scissors
- Splinter (sharp tip) forceps (tweezers)
- Standard oral thermometer: digital, mercury, or alcohol
- Low-reading hypothermia thermometer
- Wooden tongue depressors ("tongue blades")
- Rolled duct tape (3 inches × 1 yd, or 91 cm)
- ⅛ to ¼ inch diameter braided nylon cord (minimum 10 ft, or 3 m)
- Water bottle (such as Nalgene ½ to 1 liter)
- Blue "baby bulb" or "turkey baster" suction device
- Waterproof flashlight

- Headlamp (and spare batteries), preferably with floodlight and flash settings, and able to withstand moisture and temperature extremes
- Cyalume fluorescent light sticks
- Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) mouth barrier or pocket face mask (such as a Microshield X-L Mouth Barrier or NuMask CPR Kit)
- Sterile and nonsterile nitrile surgical nonpowdered gloves because some people are allergic to latex, do not carry only latex gloves
- Signal mirror
- Magnifier
- Eyeglasses for protection and to allow close-up inspection; bring spares
- Ziplock plastic bags, assorted sizes
- Waterproof pill containers for distributing medication
- Waterproof matches
- Fine-mesh head net, mosquito bed net (insecticide-treated or untreated), or travel tent to repel insects
- Quick-dry travel towel
- Oral rehydration salts (ORS) or CeraLyte 70 oral electrolyte powder
- Point-of-care urine pregnancy test
- Condoms
- Blood glucose (sugar) testing kit and supplies
- Mobile telephone or other communication device with solar charger (adequate for the task)
- Whistle
- Superglue

Wound care: Preparations and dressings

- Elastic bandages (Band-Aid or Coverlet), assorted sizes (strip, knuckle, and broad); cloth with adhesive is preferable
- Band-Aid Liquid Bandage
- Butterfly bandages
- Adhesive strips for wound closure (Steri-Strip or Cover-Strip II), assorted sizes (such as ¼ inch × 4 inches, ⅛ inch × 3 inches, ½ inch × 4 inches), reinforced (plain or impregnated with an antimicrobial agent) or elastic
- Hemostatic gauze
- Tourniquet
- 3 inch × 3 inch or 4 inch × 4 inch sterile gauze pads (packets of 2 to 5) (such as Nu-Gauze highly absorbent)
- 5 inch × 9 inch or 8 inch × 10 inch sterile gauze (“trauma”) pads (packets of 2 to 5)

- 2 inch and 4 inch Army Battle Dressing (ABD) pads
- Nonstick sterile bandages (Telfa), assorted sizes
- 1 inch, 2 inch, 3 inch, and 4 inch rolled conforming gauze (C-wrap or Elastomull)
- 1 inch × 10 yd (9.1 m) rolled cloth adhesive tape
- 1 inch × 10 yd (9.1 m) rolled paper or silk (hypoallergenic) adhesive tape
- 1 inch × 10 yd (9.1 m) rolled waterproof adhesive tape
- ½ inch × 10 yd (9.1 m) rolled waterproof adhesive tape
- Blist-O-Ban blister bandages (assorted sizes)
- Molefoam (4⅛ inches × 3⅜ inches)
- Moleskin Plus (4⅛ inches × 3⅜ inches)
- Spenco 2nd Skin (1.5 inch × 2 inches, 3 inches × 4 inches, 3 inches × 6.5 inches) and Spenco Adhesive Knit Bandage (3 inches × 5 inches)
- Aquaphor moist nonadherent (petrolatum-impregnated) dressing (3 inches × 3 inches)
- Hydrogel occlusive absorbent dressing (4 inches × 4 inches × ¼ inch)
- Tegaderm transparent wound dressing (also comes in combination with a Steri-Strip in a Wound Closure System)
- Liquid soap
- Sterile disposable surgical scrub brush
- Cotton-tipped swabs or applicators, sterile, 2 per package
- Safety razor
- Syringe (10 to 60 mL) and 18 gauge intravenous catheter (plastic portion) for wound irrigation. Don’t use plastic disposable syringes to administer oral medications, because the small caps can dislodge and inadvertently eject into the patient’s throat.
- Zerowet Splashield or Supershield (two)
- Tincture of benzoin, bottle or swabsticks
- Mastisol Liquid Adhesive
- Benzalkonium chloride 1:750 solution (Zephiran)
- Povidone-iodine 10% solution (Betadine), 1 oz bottle or swabsticks
- Suture material (nonabsorbable monofilament nylon on curved needle, suture sizes #3-0 and #4-0; consider sizes #2-0 [thicker] and #5-0 [finer])
- Stainless-steel needle driver
- Disposable skin stapler (15 staples)
- Disposable staple remover
- Tissue glue, such as DERMABOND ADVANCED Topical Skin Adhesive

Splinting and sling material

- Cravat cloth (triangular bandage)

- 2 inch, 3 inch, and 4 inch elastic wrap (ACE)
- $4^1/_4$ inch × 36 inch SAM Splints (two)—consider other sizes
- Aluminum finger splints
- Kendrick femur traction device

Eye medications and dressings

- Prepackaged individual sterile oval eye pads
- Prepackaged eye bandages (Coverlet Eye Occlusor)
- Metal or plastic (rigid) eye shield
- Sterile eyewash, 1 oz (30 mL)
- Contact lens remover (or mini-marshmallows)
- Ofloxacin, moxifloxacin, or gatifloxacin eye drops
- Oxymetazoline hydrochloride 0.025% eye drops

Dental supplies

- Oil of cloves (eugenol), 3.5 mL
- Cavit, 7 g tube
- Intermediate Restorative Material (IRM)
- Express Putty
- TempBond NE unidose packets
- Zinc oxide powder
- Dental floss
- Mouth mirror
- Paraffin (dental wax) stick
- Wooden spatulas
- Cotton (rolls and pellets)
- Dry tea bags

Topical skin preparations

- Hydrocortisone cream, ointment, or lotion (0.5% to 1%)
- Potent corticosteroid ointment
- Bacitracin ointment
- Mupirocin ointment
- Mupirocin calcium 2% cream
- Bacitracin-neomycin polymyxin B sulfate ointment
- Miconazole nitrate 2% antifungal cream
- Silver sulfadiazine 1% (Silvadene) cream

- Insect repellent
- Sunscreen lotion or cream
- Lip balm or sunscreen
- Sunblock
- Adolph’s meat tenderizer (unseasoned) for pain relief of stings
- Kenalog in Orabase (oral adhesive steroid for canker [mouth] sores), 5 g container
- Aloe vera gel
- Hemorrhoidal ointment with pramoxine 1%

Nonprescription medications

- Buffered aspirin, 325 mg tablets
- Ibuprofen, 200 mg tablets
- Acetaminophen, 325 mg tablets
- Antacid
- Decongestant (such as pseudoephedrine) tablets
- Decongestant (such as oxymetazoline) nasal spray
- Loperamide (Imodium A-D), 2 mg caplets
- Glutose (liquid glucose) paste tube
- Stool softener (such as docusate calcium, 240 mg gel caps)
- Polyethylene glycol powder (MiraLAX) to promote bowel movement
- Caffeine, 200 mg tablets (to stay awake for survival purposes, such as during a rescue). The average cup of coffee contains 135 mg of caffeine; a 12-oz can of soda contains approximately 50 mg of caffeine. Energy drinks typically contain up to 200 mg of caffeine; check the label. There are caffeine-laden food products, such as JAVA Mallows, FOOSH Energy Mints, and Turbo Truffles. A 70-kg adult can ingest about 400 mg of caffeine a day before having adverse effects, such as agitation, jitters, vomiting, heart palpitations, and even seizures.

Prescription medications (select what you feel you might need; the drugs listed are “for example”)

- Pain medication(s): e.g., hydrocodone 5 mg with acetaminophen 500 mg
- Asthma medication(s): e.g., metered-dose bronchodilator (albuterol)
- Allergy medication(s): e.g., epinephrine (injectable) and prednisone, 10 mg tablets
- Antibiotics: e.g.,
    - Penicillin V potassium, 250 mg tablets
    - Azithromycin, 250 mg tablets

    - Dicloxacillin, 250 mg tablets
    - Ampicillin, 250 mg tablets
    - Amoxicillin–clavulanate, 500 mg tablets
    - Erythromycin, 250 mg tablets
    - Cephalexin, 250 mg tablets
    - Ciprofloxacin, 500 mg tablets
    - Tetracycline, 500 mg tablets; or doxycycline, 100 mg tablets
    - Trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole, double-strength tablets
- Antinausea medication(s): e.g.,
    - Prochlorperazine (Compazine) suppositories, 25 mg
    - Promethazine (Phenergan) suppositories, 25 mg
    - Ondansetron (Zofran ODT) oral disintegrating tablet, 4 or 8 mg.
    - In adults, inhaling isopropyl alcohol fumes from an alcohol-saturated pad ("wipe") held ½ to 1 inch from the nose, with or without taking ondansetron, has been reported effective to relieve nausea.

Allergy kit

- Allergy kit with injectable epinephrine (EpiPen autoinjector [0.3 mg] and EpiPen Jr. autoinjector [0.15 mg]; the Auvi-Q autoinjector [0.3 or 0.15 mg dose] or generic Adrenaclick autoinjector [0.3 or 0.15 mg]). FDA-approved generic products are sometimes less expensive. Other devices worldwide are the Jext, Emerade, Allerject, and Anapen.
- Diphenhydramine, 25 mg capsules

Forest and mountain environments

- Water disinfection equipment (filter; ultraviolet light) or chemicals (such as Potable Aqua tablets or iodine crystals)
- Calamine lotion
- SPACE Emergency Blanket (2 oz, 56 inches × 84 inches) (alternatives include Pro-Tech Extreme bag or vest, SPACE brand emergency bag, SPACE brand all-weather blanket)
- Hypothermia thermometer
- Hyperthermia thermometer
- Pulse oximeter
- Acetazolamide (Diamox), 250 mg tablets
- Dexamethasone (Decadron), 4 mg tablets
- Nifedipine (Adalat CC), extended-release 30 preparation
- Powdered electrolyte beverage mix (oral rehydration salts)

- Instant chemical cold pack(s)
- Hand warmer (mechanical or chemical)
- Kendrick Traction Device (leg splint)

Aquatic environments

- Waterproof dry bag or hard case (such as Pelican or Storm), to carry first aid supplies
- Antimotion sickness medicine
- Acetic acid (vinegar) 5%
- Isopropyl alcohol 40%
- Lidocaine-based jellyfish sting spray
- Hydrogen peroxide
- VoSoL otic solution
- Ofloxacin 0.3% ear drops
- Safe Sea Sunblock with Anti-Jellyfish Sting Protective Lotion

Physicians abroad

A traveler to a foreign country might become ill enough to require the services of a physician. The International Association for Medical Assistance to Travelers (IAMAT) is a nonprofit organization that provides a list of approved doctors who adhere to international standards, which include standard fees. IAMAT (www.iamat.org) also distributes, free of charge, updated material on immunization requirements, malaria and other tropical diseases, and sanitary (food and water) and climatic conditions around the world. The directory of affiliated institutions can be obtained by calling or writing to IAMAT in Ontario, Canada. Other international medical assistance and rescue programs include the following (since specific street addresses, web addresses, and phone numbers are constantly changing, check for up-to-date information):

- Air Ambulance Network
- Divers Alert Network
- Global Rescue
- International SOS
- FrontierMEDEX
- Travel Assistance International
- Ripcord Travel Protection

Immunizations

Because the spectrum of infectious diseases changes with time and location, all should be aware of the necessity for immunizations (also known as vaccinations) to prevent severe illness and mitigate the spread of disease. One should work with their health care provider to ensure that they are up to date on vaccines, especially before travel. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) serves as a comprehensive resource to this end, with the CDC Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP) providing recommended adult and pediatric routine immunization schedules, by vaccine and age group (www.cdc.gov/vaccines). A detailed, regularly updated list of required immunizations by country can also be obtained in the publication *Health Information for International Travel* (CDC), also known as the "Yellow Book."

Vaccinations should be given under the supervision of a licensed physician or other authorized health care provider. All travelers should carry a completed International Certificate of Vaccination with proper signature and validation for all vaccinations administered. Yellow fever and cholera vaccinations must be officially recorded and stamped. Failure to secure validation at an authorized city, county, or state health department renders the certificate invalid, and might force you to be revaccinated or quarantined.

It's extremely important to plan immunizations as far in advance of an expedition as possible, since some vaccines interact in ways that diminish effectiveness. For instance, yellow fever and cholera vaccines need to be given either on the same day or at least 3 weeks apart. Vaccine recommendations might be altered on a vaccine-by-vaccine basis for persons with medical conditions, such as pregnancy, immunocompromise, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection, diabetes, heart disease, chronic lung disease, chronic alcoholism, lack of a spleen, and chronic liver or kidney disease.

Transport of the injured victim

The decision to transport (i.e., evacuate) a victim is critical. Moving a patient can be incredibly complicated, arduous, and can increase the risks for a bad outcome for both the victim and rescuers. First and foremost is to consider the ability and rescue experience of the group. This is not medicine—it is logistics, including having the right people and equipment, knowing the terrain and how to navigate, and adhering to the following general advice about which persons require evacuation:

- Persons who are at risk of serious complications or death, and who do not improve or who deteriorate despite treatment.
- Persons for whom severe pain cannot be controlled.
- Persons with persistent severe abdominal pain.
- Persons with severe high-altitude illness.
- Persons with severe infections.
- Persons with severe chest pain.
- Persons with injury or illness beyond the comfort or skill of the group to manage.

Never move a victim unless you know where you are going. If you're lost and caring for an injured victim (or yourself), prepare a shelter. Try to position yourself so that visual distress signals can be fashioned in an open field, in the snow, or near a visible riverbank. Keep the victim covered and warm. Assume that the victim is frightened and needs frequent reassurance. If they cannot walk, you must attend to their bodily functions. A urinal can be constructed from a wide-mouthed water bottle. Defecation is more complicated but can be assisted by cutting a hole in a blanket or sleeping pad placed over a small pit dug in the ground.

- Unless you are in danger, never leave a victim who is unconscious or confused.
- If possible, send someone for help and wait with the victim, rather than perform an exhausting and time-consuming solo extrication. If someone is to be sent for help, choose a strong traveler and provide them with a written request that details your situation (exact location, number of

victims, injuries, need for supplies, specific evacuation method required). While you certainly don't want to underestimate the seriousness of the situation, don't request a helicopter evacuation for someone with a broken ankle who can easily be carried out in a litter. Anyone sent to obtain assistance should contact the closest law enforcement agency, which will seek the appropriate rescue agency.
- Conserve your strength. Don't create additional victims with heroic attempts at communication or feats of strength and exertion.
- If a victim can walk on their own, or with some support, then this might be the best option.

Attempt to transport a victim only if waiting for a rescue party will be of greater risk than immediate movement, if there are sufficient helpers to carry the victim (as a general rule, it takes six to eight adults to carry one injured victim), and if the distance is reasonable (under 5 miles [8 km]). A victim who is carried on an improvised stretcher over difficult terrain usually gets a rough ride. Always test your carrying system on a noninjured person before you use it on the victim.

Lifting and moving techniques

Straight lift

If a person is seriously injured, profoundly weak, or unconscious, and there is concern for possible spinal injury, they should be lifted so that they remain motionless and with their spine in as straight an alignment as possible. This can be accomplished by five rescuers. The first kneels at the head, controls the victim's head and neck, and calls out commands. The other four rescuers kneel at the victim's sides, one at chest level and one at hip level on one side, and the others at lower back level and leg level on the opposite side (Fig. 270). In this way, they can slide their hands under the victim in a staggered fashion to provide a continuous chain of support. If necessary, the rescuer closest to the legs can free a hand to position a pad, backboard, or litter underneath the victim. The rescuers should lift the victim straight up into the air, taking care not to injure *their* backs. *Always lift with your legs, not your back.*

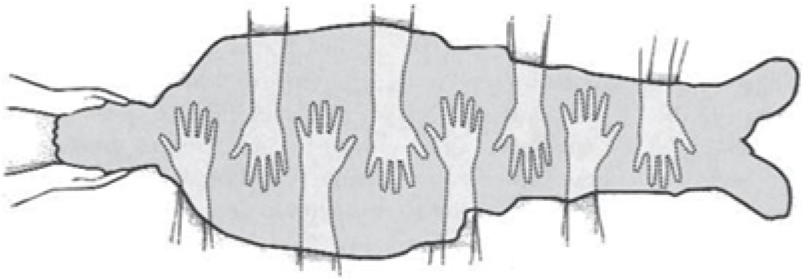


FIG. 270 Proper hand positioning for straight lift.

The best way to carry and immobilize a person who might have an injured spine is to use a scoop stretcher, a vacuum mattress, or a backboard. A vacuum mattress is wrapped around the victim, and a pump is used to remove air inside the mattress making it stiffly take the shape of the victim. See vacuum mattress Fig. 271. If there are enough rescuers, a straight lift can be used to move a victim onto a litter (see above).

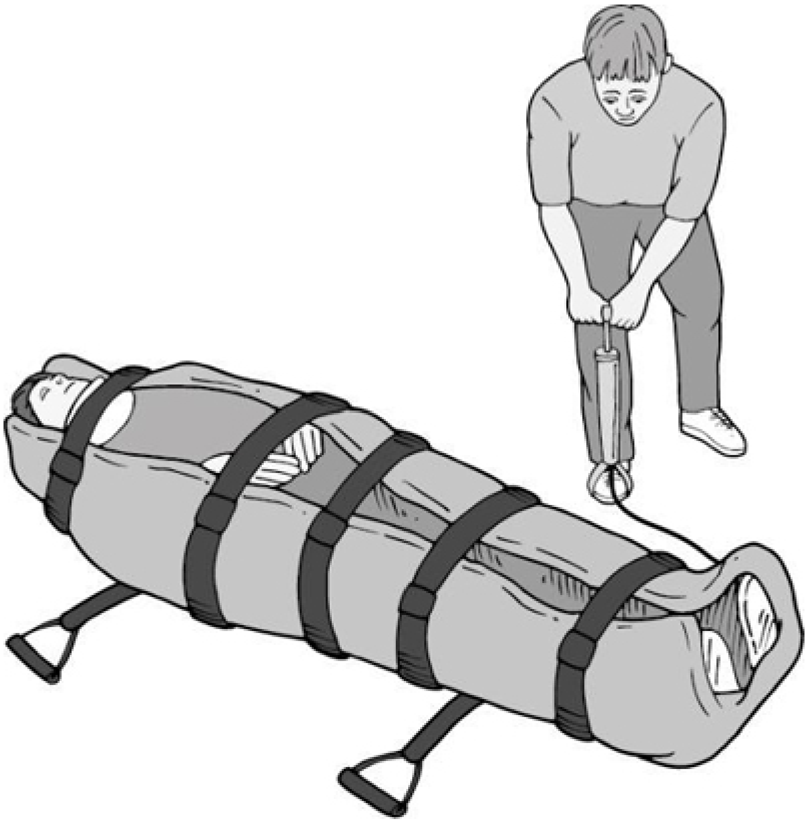


FIG. 271 Vacuum mattress.

Logrolling the victim (see Figs. 27 and 28)

When a spine-injured person must be turned, logrolling is the best method. It is also the preferred method to turn a victim on their side in order to slide a pad, board, or litter underneath them.

- The first rescuer approaches the victim from the head and keeps the head and shoulders in a fixed position (no neck movement).
- The second rescuer extends the victim's arm (on the side over which the victim is to be rolled) above the victim's head or crosses both their arms across the chest. The second rescuer gets a solid grip of clothes at the victim's hip and shoulder. Do not grab belt loops that may tear loose.
- All rescuers work together to roll the victim, without moving their neck. The rescuer at the head initiates all movements.

Carries and litters

The method of evacuation used to transport a victim will depend on the degree of disablement and what is available to the rescuer(s). To conserve the energy of all party members, victims with minor injuries should travel under their own power as much as possible but should never travel unattended. One healthy and strong person should accompany anyone who must leave the group for medical reasons.

When lifting and carrying, take care to not injure yourself. This is best accomplished by handling a manageable load, using a safe grip, keeping the back straight and lifting with the legs, maintaining a wide stance to enhance balance, avoiding twisting, lifting slowly, and properly following commands when lifting as part of a group.

Carries

If the victim has suffered an injury that does not allow them to walk out, mechanical transport must be improvised. A single person who cannot walk but who does not need to be on a litter (one with, for example, a broken ankle, mild exhaustion, or acute mountain sickness) can be carried on the back of a strong rescuer using a rope seat. This is fashioned by passing a long 1-inch (2.5 cm) rope or strap across the victim's back and under their arms, then crossing the rope in front of their chest. The victim is loaded piggyback onto the rescuer's back, and the rope ends are passed forward over the shoulders of the rescuer, under their arms, and around to the rescuer's back, then between and through the victim's legs from the front, and around the outside of the victim's legs just under the buttocks, to be tied snugly in front of the rescuer's waist (Fig. 272). Such a rope seat is far preferable to a standard fireman's carry, which is very fatiguing (Fig. 273). A shoulder drag (Fig. 274), fireman's drag (Fig. 275), or blanket drag (Fig. 276) is only good for very short distances, such as to pull a person quickly away from an immediate hazard. Piggyback (Fig. 277) and cradle (Fig. 278) carries are also quickly exhausting.

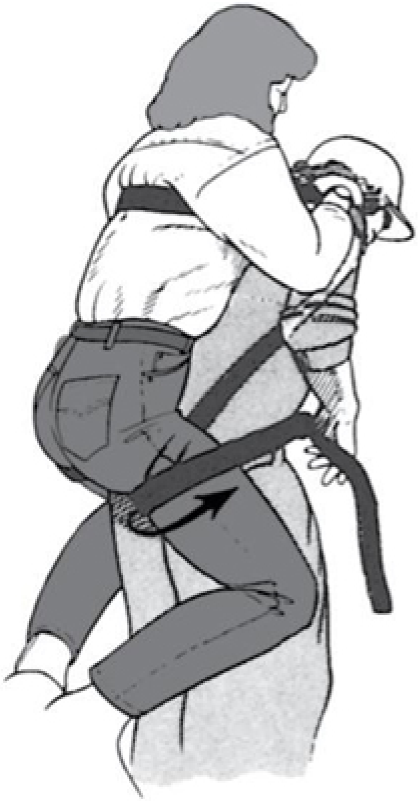


FIG. 272 Fashioning a rope (webbing) seat.

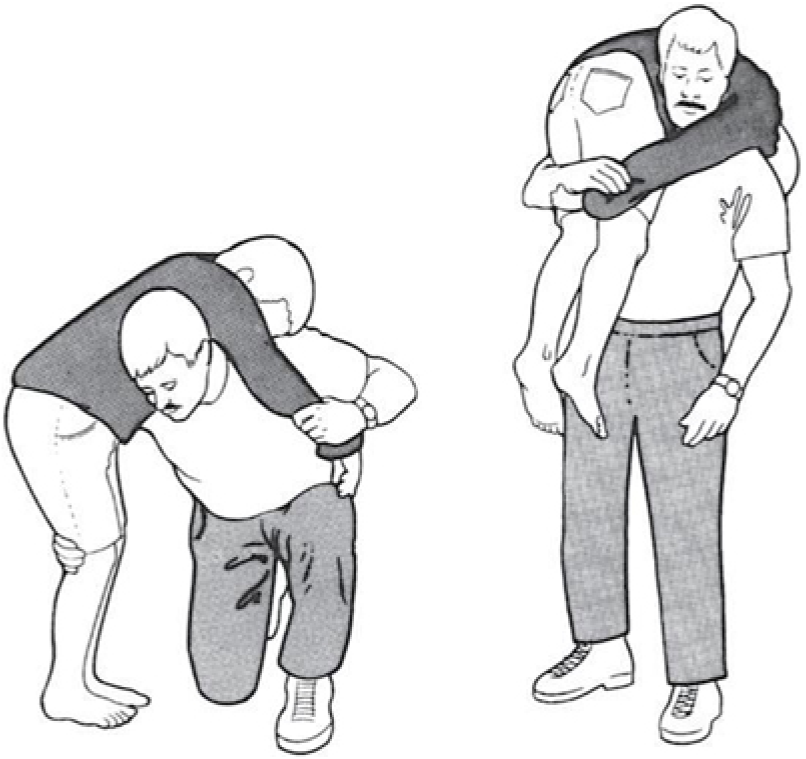


FIG. 273 Fireman's carry.

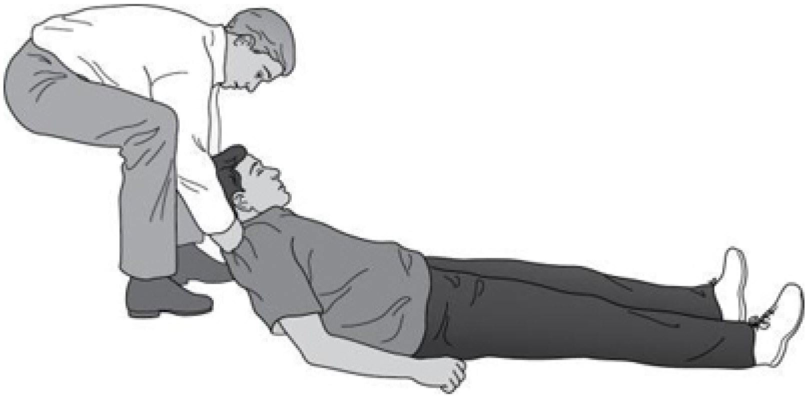


FIG. 274 Shoulder drag.

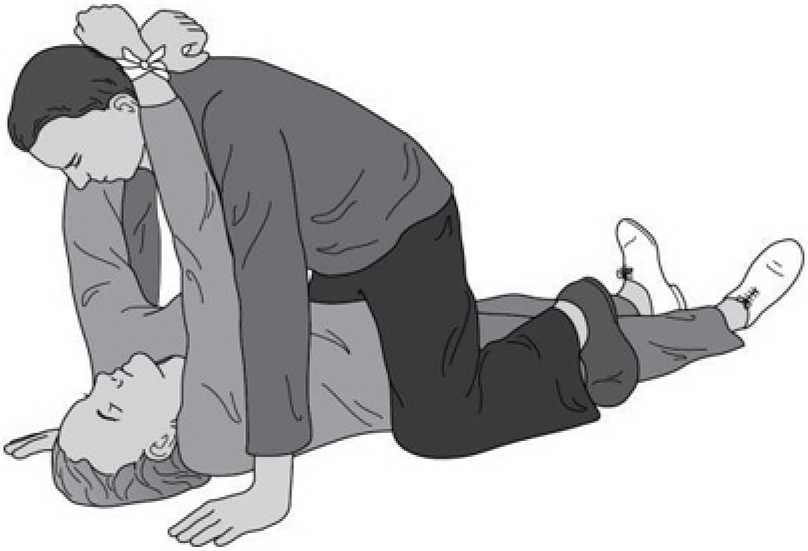


FIG. 275 Fireman's drag.

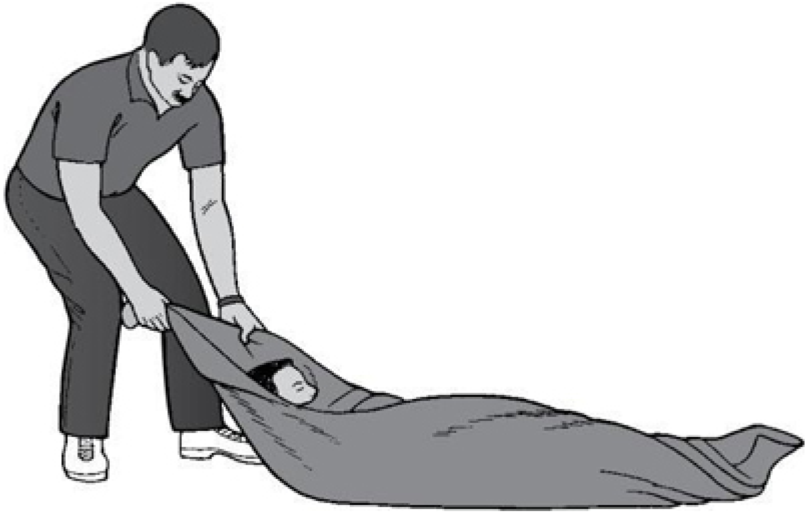


FIG. 276 Blanket drag.

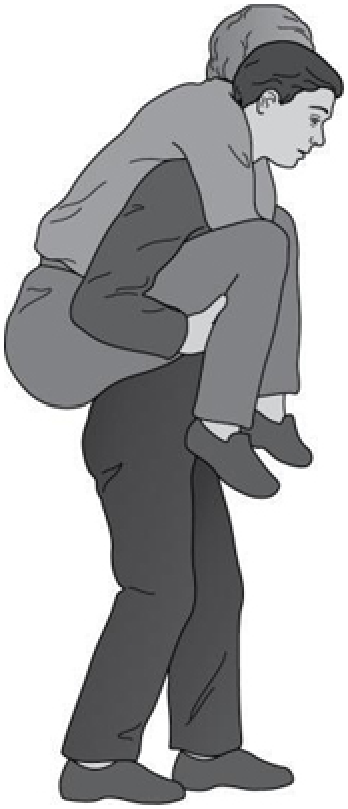


FIG. 277 Piggyback carry.

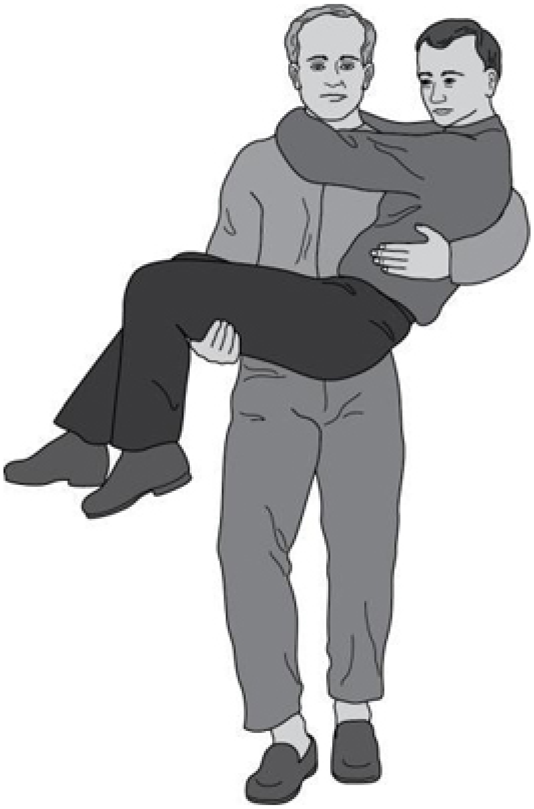


FIG. 278 Cradle carry.

Other simple ways to carry a victim include the four-hand seat, limb carry, backpack carry, ski pole or tree limb backpack carry, three-person wheelbarrow carry, and coiled rope seat. In the first method, two rescuers interlock hands. Each rescuer first grasps their right wrist with their left hand. Holding the palms down, each rescuer then firmly grasps the left wrist or forearm of the other rescuer with their right hand, interlocking all four hands (Fig. 279). The victim sits on the four-hand seat. In the limb carry, one person holds the victim's legs while another carries the victim under the arms. In the third method, leg holes can be cut into a large backpack, so that a victim can sit in it like a small child would in a baby carrier. In the fourth method, two rescuers with sturdy backpacks stand side by side. Pack straps are looped down from each pack, and ski poles or tree limbs are slung across through the loops, or the poles are placed to rest on the padded hip belts. The poles should be padded so that the victim can sit on the rigid seat, steadying themself by draping their arms around the shoulders of their rescuers (Fig. 280). The three-person wheelbarrow carry (Fig. 281) is an efficient method that can be used for long periods on rough terrain. The split-coil rope seat is created by coiling a rope, then fixing the coil at one segment. The coil's loops are split and used to position the victim on the rescuer's back (Fig. 282). A two-rescuer split-coil technique is also useful (Fig. 283).

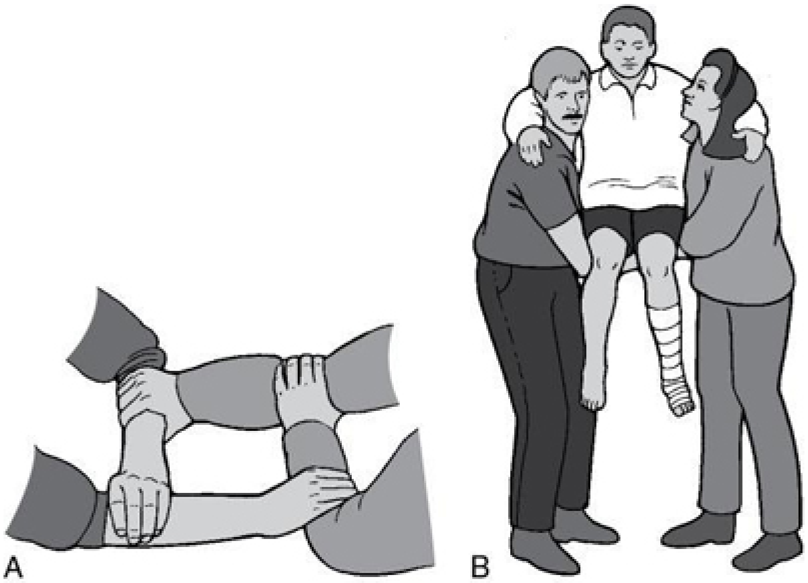


FIG. 279 **A,** Overlapping hands to create a four-hand seat. **B,** Carrying the victim.

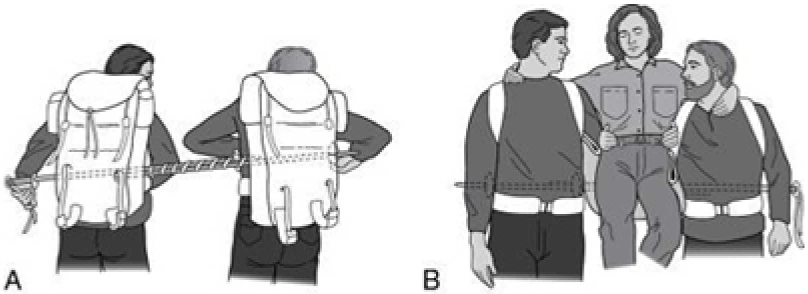


FIG. 280 Fashioning a ski pole seat. **A,** The poles are slung between rescuers wearing backpacks. **B,** A victim can sit comfortably on the padded ski poles.

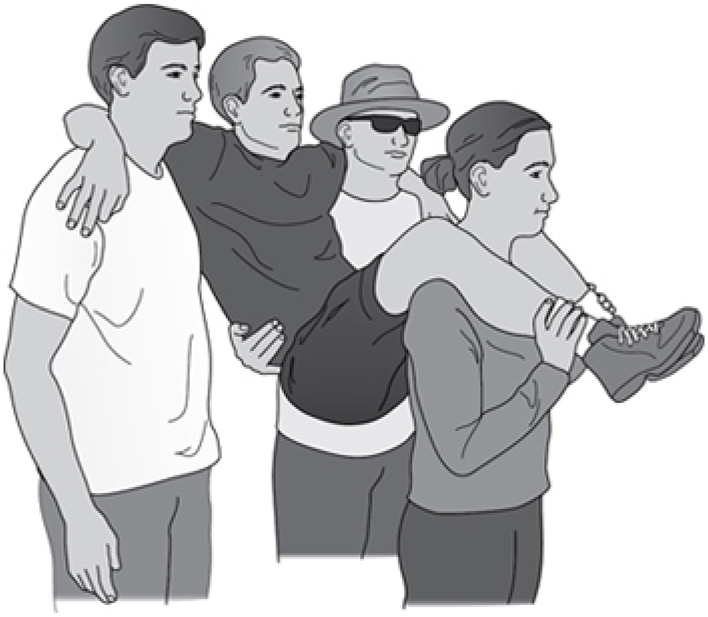


FIG. 281 Three-person wheelbarrow carry.

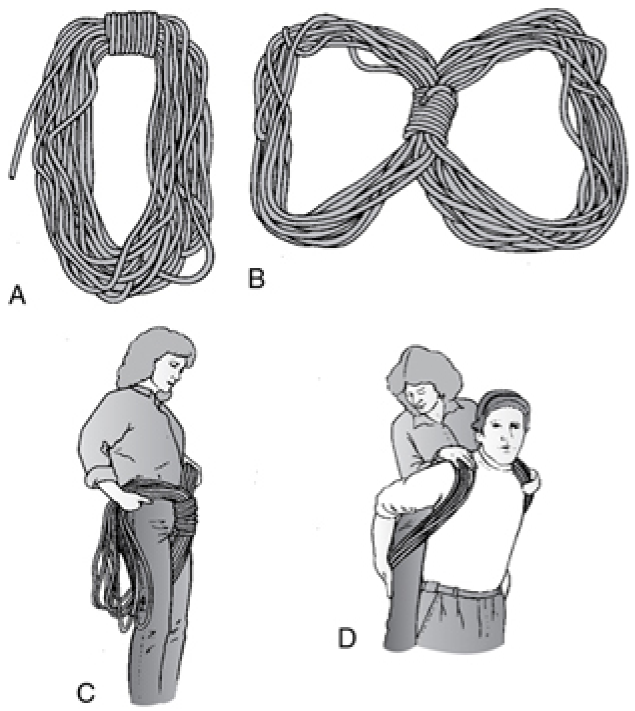


FIG. 282 Creating a coiled rope seat. **A,** The rope is coiled and the loops secured. **B,** The loops of the coil are divided into equal sections at the point of fixation. **C** and **D,** The victim can step through the split loops, so that a single rescuer can carry the victim.

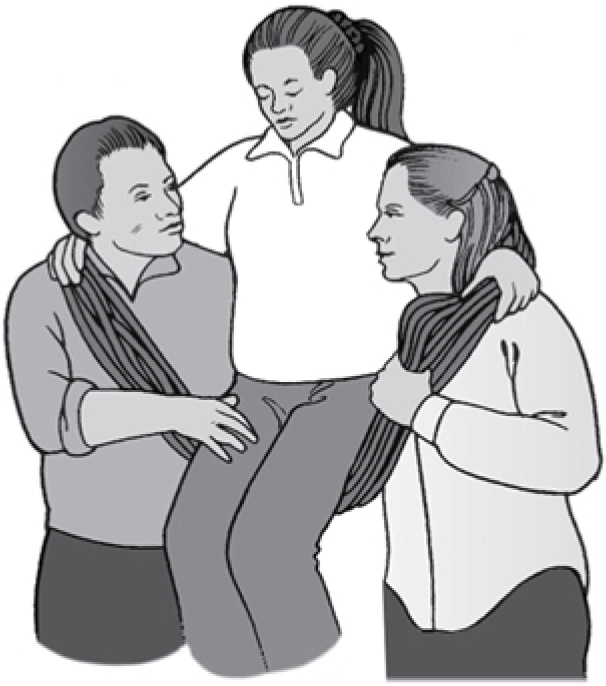


FIG. 283 Two-rescuer split-coil rope seat.

Litters

The safest anatomic position for an injured victim (from a transport perspective) is supine with their back straight, eyes forward, and arms and legs straight with their hands at their sides. If the victim might vomit or is unconscious, they should be on their side, cushioned to protect against undue motion and to ensure an open airway.

If a specialized litter or stretcher (such as a Stokes basket or split scoop frame) is not available, an improvised litter can be constructed from a blanket or sturdy drop cloth and two 6 to 7 ft (1.8 to 2.1 m) poles or sturdy tree limbs (saplings). Separate the poles by slightly more than the width necessary to carry the victim. Fold the blanket over one pole, then fold the edges over the other pole sequentially and back again over the first pole (Fig. 284). Secure the outside blanket flap with safety pins or stitches of cord. Test it to be sure that it can support the victim. Carry the victim so that their body secures the outside (free) blanket flap. Be sure to immobilize the victim on the litter and cushion their head and neck.

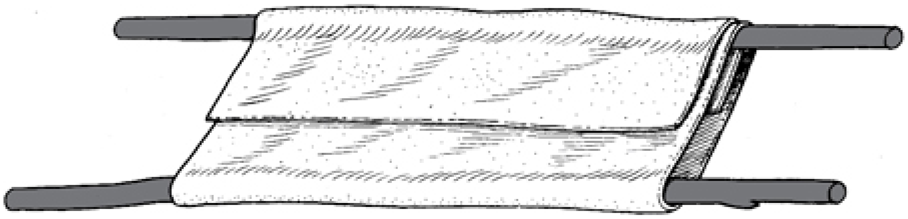


FIG. 284 Blanket-pole litter.

Litters resembling ladders can be fashioned from tree limbs or ski poles fastened with twine, rope, clothing, or pack straps. Two backpack frames can be fastened together with tape or rope (Fig. 285) to form a ladder-like platform for a sleeping bag or pads and blankets. A “parka litter” can be created by running two skis or long tree limbs through zipped jackets that are aligned bottom-to-bottom (Fig. 286).

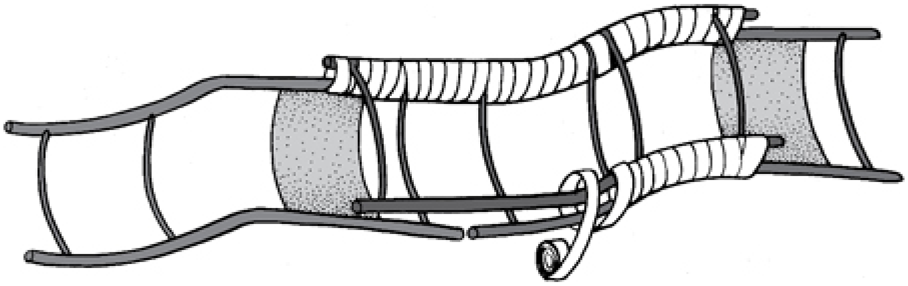


FIG. 285 Construction of a backpack frame litter. Pads or a sleeping bag are placed on the litter.

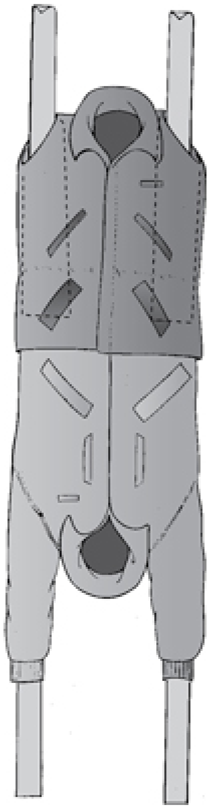


FIG. 286 Parka litter.

A rope stretcher is constructed by stretching a 150- to 200-ft (46 to 61 m) rope on the ground and determining its midpoint. At the midpoint, fold the rope back on itself. Measure 3 ft (91 cm) from the bend and fold each half of the rope back again to the outside. This creates the central "rungs" of a "ladder" that will be 3 ft wide. Repeat the process of folding the rope back on itself in 3 ft segments, moving away from the central rungs in each direction, and laying out a series of evenly spaced parallel loops. About 16 or 18 loops (rungs) should create a ladder approximately the same length as the victim. Take the two remaining long ends of the rope and lay them perpendicular to the rungs, alongside the bends in the rope (Fig. 287). Use the long ends to secure the loops together (completing the long sides of the ladder) by tying a clove hitch (see Fig. 287 B.) or other secure knot onto each consecutive bend in the rope 2 to 3 inches (5 to 7.5 cm) inside the bend, so that a small loop remains to the outside of the knot. Each pair of knots should be separated by 3 to 4 inches (7.5 to 10 cm). After all the knots are tied, the rope ends are threaded through the small outside loops as the remaining lengths are circled around the outside of the stretcher and finally tied off.

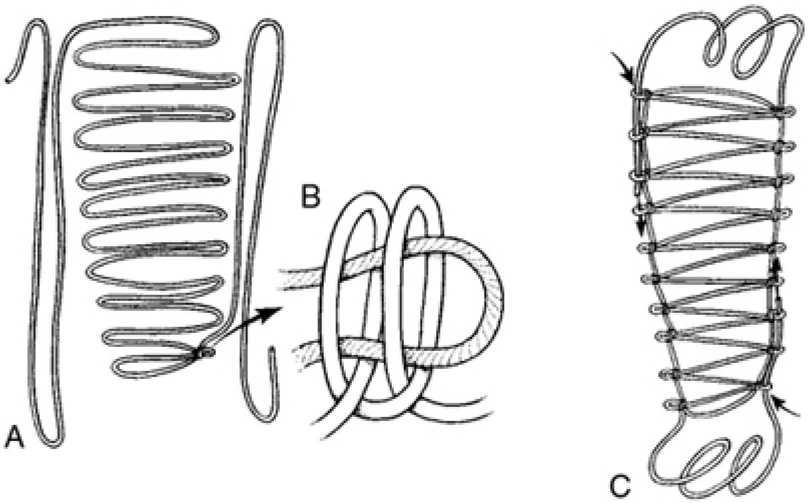


FIG. 287 Making a rope stretcher. **A,** Having created a series of parallel loops, lay the lengthwise segments perpendicularly alongside. **B,** Use a clove hitch to secure the loop ends. **C,** The remaining long ends of the rope are passed through the outside loops to form the perimeter of the stretcher, and are tied off to complete the process.

A mummy litter (also called a daisy chain or cocoon wrap) can be constructed of a long climbing rope, large tarp, sleeping pads, blankets or a sleeping bag, and stiffeners (skis, poles, tree limbs, or the like). The rope is laid out with even U-shaped loops (Fig. 288) that are roughly twice the victim’s width. Tie a small loop at the foot end of the rope. Lay a tarp on the rope. On the tarp, lay down foam pads, then lengthwise stiffening rods, then another layer of pads. Lay the victim on the pads, and cover with the sleeping bag or blankets. Pull the sides of the tarp up to wrap the victim. To secure them, bring the first untied loop above the tied end (foot) loop through the tied loop, and pull it toward the center. Moving toward the head, feed the next loop through the preceding loop, and so on until the armpits are reached. At this point, bring a loop up over one shoulder and tie the rope off in front of the victim after bringing the rope end over the opposite shoulder.

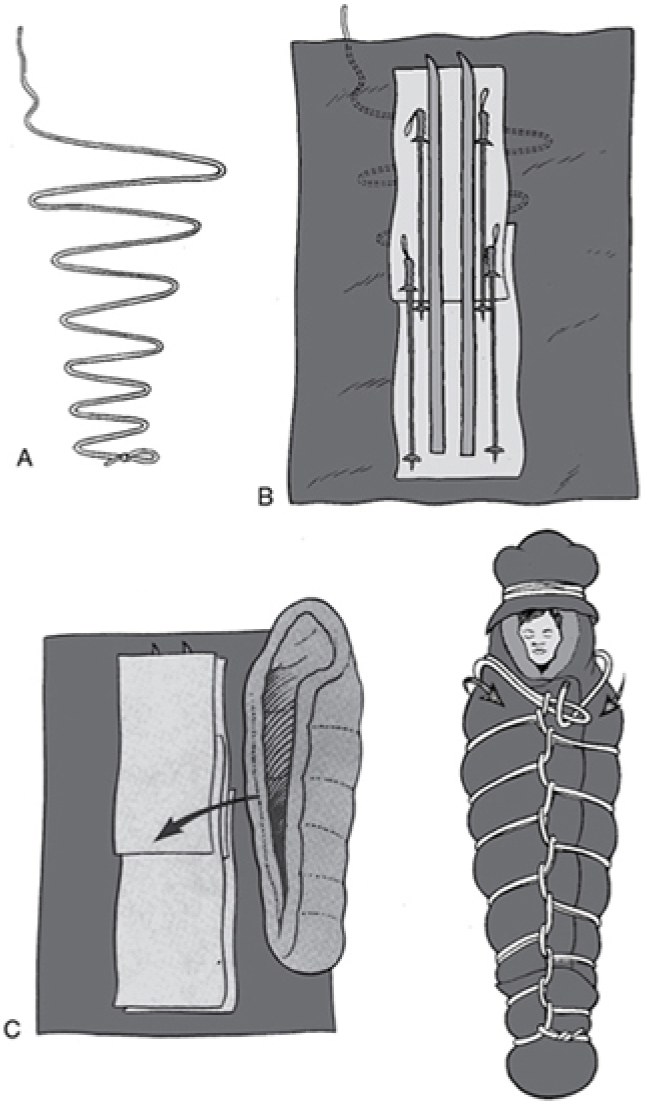


FIG. 288 Mummy litter. **A,** Lay out the rope in even loops. **B,** Lay blankets or tarps over the loops, then long, rigid objects for stability. **C,** Place a sleeping bag or blanket in the center to hold the victim. **D,** Pass the first nontied loop through the tied loop and work your way to the top. Bring the finishing loops over the shoulders and tie off.

Test any litter on an uninjured person before trusting it to bear the weight of the victim. Be certain to fasten the victim securely into the stretcher or litter, so that they don't fall out. Pad all injuries, and the head and neck, to make the victim as comfortable as possible. Positioning on a litter is very important. In general, keep the injury uphill, to keep extra weight (pressure) and jostling from causing pain. If the chest is injured, keep the victim lying on their side with the wounded side (lung) down, to allow the good lung to expand more fully. If the victim has altered consciousness, is nauseated, or is vomiting, they should be kept on their side to protect the airway (see page 18). If the victim has suffered a face, head, or neck injury, they should be transported with their head slightly elevated (see page 89). Victims suffering from shock (see page 70), bleeding, or hypothermia (see page 321) should be carried with the head down and feet elevated. Victims with chest pain and/or difficulty breathing, which might indicate a heart attack or heart failure (see page 54), should be carried with the upper body elevated.

All victims should be covered above and below with blankets, clothing, sleeping bags, or whatever else is available for warmth. Handle all suspected hypothermic victims gently. A victim secured to a stretcher should never be left unattended. Constantly reassure the victim. If the terrain is steep, keep their feet pointed downhill. Litter transport is exhausting for the rescuers and should not be entertained if the distance to be covered is more than a few miles.

If possible, position at least one rescuer at the head of the victim, one at each shoulder, one at each hip, and one at the legs. This allows a litter to be carried and facilitates a quick action to turn the victim, should that be necessary. A leader should call out all activities of the team.

A victim on a backboard must be securely tied down so that they cannot roll or slide off the board. This will involve straps and padding around the legs, waist and hips, chest, and head and neck. Carriers should be in a position to turn the board so that a victim might vomit without choking or falling off the board.

Helicopters

Most helicopters used for medical evacuation can safely land at altitudes of up to 10,000 ft (3050 m) and are limited by visibility, landing space, and weather conditions. Rescue helicopters may be operating under visual flight rules (VFR), which means that flight conditions must be free of clouds and airspeed can be slow enough for the pilot to see far enough to avoid a collision. Larger military and search and rescue helicopters can fly under instrument flight rules (IFR), using special navigational instruments, and can land at higher altitudes.

When calling for a helicopter, provide the following information: number of victims and their weights, injuries, and level of consciousness; reason why you need a helicopter; location of the landing zone; and the current and expected weather conditions (temperature, visibility, distance [“ceiling”] from ground to clouds, and wind speed/direction). People on the ground should be aware of the limitations of maneuverability, and should obey certain rules when involved with a helicopter rescue:

- Prepare and brightly mark a proper landing zone (site). The ideal location is on level ground (bare rock is best; snow is worst) with no more than 10 degrees of incline and access from all sides. If possible, choose a site where the helicopter will be able to drop off during takeoff, rather than having to climb up. Ideally, there will be 360-degree access so that the helicopter can take off in any direction, depending on wind conditions. Clear an area a minimum of 100 ft (31 m) long by 100 ft wide of all debris that could interfere with landing or be scattered by gusts from the propellers. Colored lights can be placed to mark the perimeter or corners of the landing site. Any obstacles that cannot be removed, such as cables, wires, or antennas, should be clearly marked. At night, if you have lights, shine them on objects that will alert the pilot to unseen danger (such as the poles of power lines). If the landing site can be marked with an "H" or "Y," that will be helpful to the pilot. Although the absolute minimum ground dimensions for a "safety square" can, under ideal weather and visibility conditions, be somewhat less than this, you should clear the full area (or even up to 100 ft [31 m] × 300 ft [93 m]), as a helicopter can rarely take off or land strictly vertically, particularly in the thinner air of high altitude. A smoky fire or smoke signal should be placed near the landing site so that the pilot can judge the wind (pilots prefer takeoffs and landings to be directed into the prevailing wind to increase lift). If this is not possible, stand away from the landing site where the pilot can see you, and hold up an improvised wind flag (such as streamers), or position yourself with the wind behind your back, and point with both arms at the landing site. If there is a danger at the last minute before landing, signal "don't land" to the helicopter pilot by lifting your arms from a horizontal (to-the-side) outstretch to straight overhead several times. Remember that waving your arms and hands frantically is the universal "wave-off" instruction! If the landing area is on snow, place some large markers, such as backpacks, near the landing spot to offer the pilot some depth perception. At night, create a landing area at least half again as large as during the daytime, and position lights or small fires in the corners, pointing down at the ground rather than up into the air. Never shine a flashlight directly at a helicopter, to avoid blinding the crew. If fires are used, remember that the helicopter might scatter embers, so watch carefully for unintended fire spread. Minimize the number of people approaching the helicopter.

- To summarize hand signals for guiding a helicopter pilot into a landing: Stand with your back to the wind and extend both arms directly toward the landing area, which signifies where to land and that the wind is at your back. As the helicopter hovers over the proper landing site, extend your arms to the sides with clenched fists, which signifies to the pilot to hold the hover. As the helicopter begins to touch the ground, move your arms down at a 45-degree angle to the ground with hitchhiker thumbs pointing downward, signifying to the pilot to hold the ground position. When you want the rotors to be turned off, slice your hand across your neck with the palm pointed down.

- Unless otherwise instructed, stay at least 150 ft (46 m) from a helicopter with rotors spinning. Look away as the ship lands, so as not to be struck in the face or eyes by flying debris. Protect the victim. Secure all loose objects or clear them from the landing area. Coil and secure all ropes. Because of the strong gusts from the approaching helicopter (up to 100 miles per hour, or 161 km per hour), don't stand near the edge of a cliff! Don't stand in the landing zone if on snow, in case the helicopter settles.
- Always approach or leave a helicopter at a 30- to 45-degree angle from the front, in sight of the pilot and crew (Fig. 289). Never approach the helicopter from ground higher than the landing spot, to avoid walking into a rotor. Stay away from the tail rotor because it is nearly invisible when rotating. All loading and unloading of a helicopter should occur on the downhill side of the aircraft, to avoid striking a rotor (Fig. 289).
- Keep your head down! You might not perceive that the rotor blade is dipping (up to 4 ft, or 1.2 m, from the center attachment) until it chops off your head. Don't hold any objects (particularly not your arms) above your head. Protect your eyes from dust kicked up by the rotor wash.
- Don't smoke a cigarette near a helicopter.
- Follow the pilot's and flight crew's instructions. Don't approach, enter, leave, or load a helicopter until you are given the command. Establish eye contact with the pilot and obey their signals.
- Don't stand under or anywhere near a helicopter during takeoff or landing. Everyone near the landing site should stay at a safe distance in a single group, clearly visible to the pilot. At night, carry a light or wear a reflective object or clothing.
- If a cable or rope is lowered, allow it to touch the ground before you handle it, to avoid a shock from static electricity. Never tie the rope or cable to an immovable object on the ground; this could cause a crash.
- If a rescue device (e.g., litter) is being used, put the victim into the rescue device and take care to keep the hoist cable clear of looping around anyone in the area. Be certain that the victim is properly strapped into the rescue device before anyone signals the helicopter crew to haul up the cable.
- All people should wear hard hats and eye protection, if available. Keep jackets zipped. Carry all packs, rather than wear them on your back.

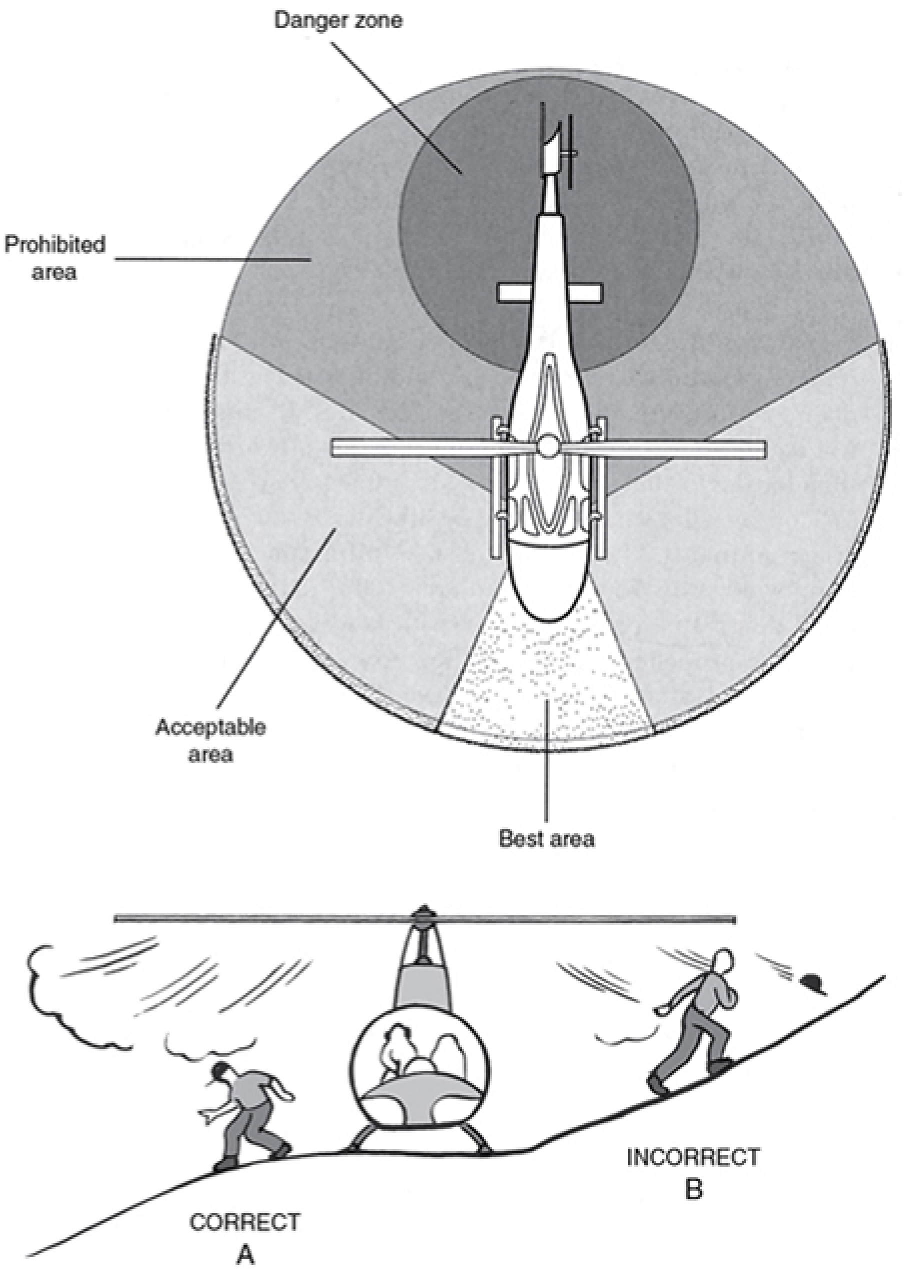

Danger zone
Prohibited area
Acceptable area
Best area
INCORRECT
B
CORRECT
A

FIG. 289 Approach zones around a helicopter. **A,** It is best to approach from the front. **B,** Don’t walk uphill into the helicopter rotor blades.

Ground-to-air distress signals

If a party is trapped or lost, and helicopter or airplane search parties are likely to be in the region, it might help to attempt to signal the aircraft. One way that this can be done is by creating ground-to-air distress signals, either by marking an open field or a riverbank that's visible from the air by stamping out large (8 to 10 ft [2.4 to 3 m]) designs in the snow (in an open area), or by attracting attention with display patterns of clothing, rocks, fire rings, or the like. Fig. 290 illustrates some standard ground markings for communication.

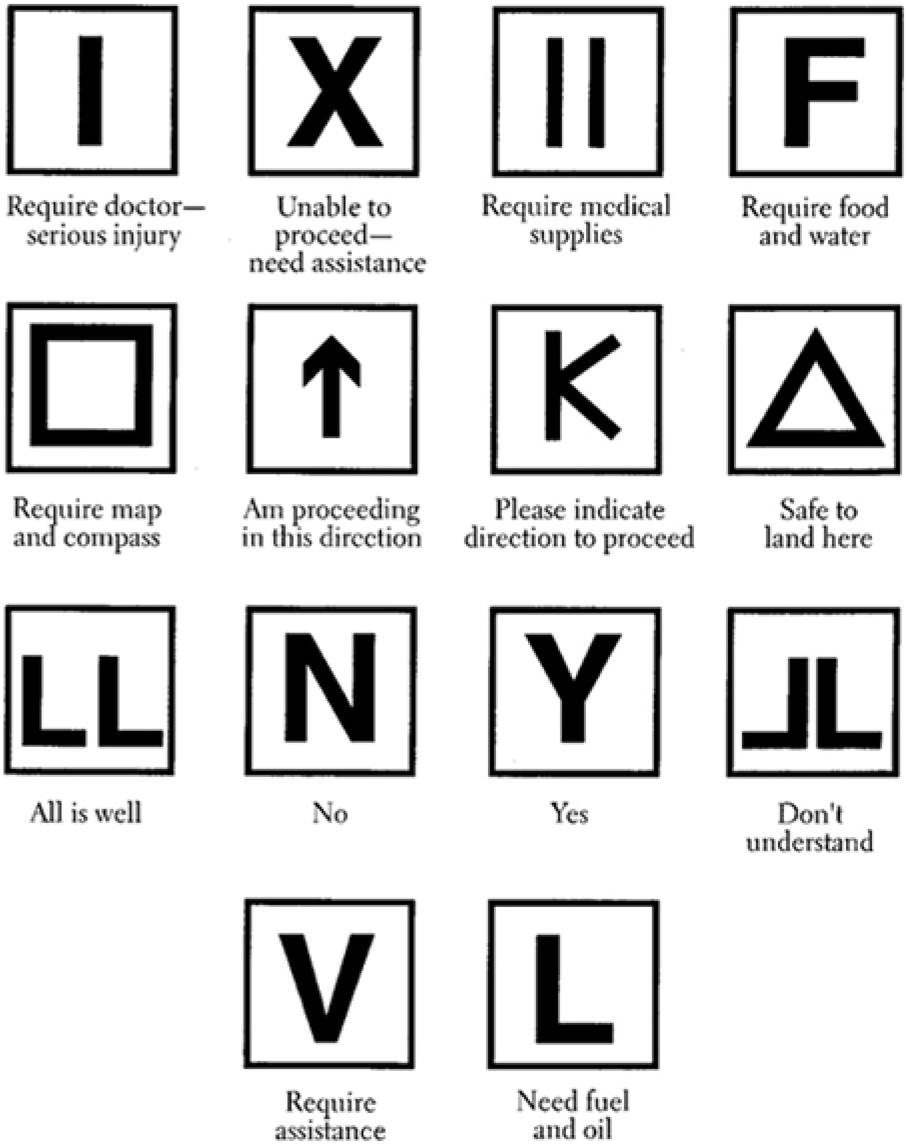

I
Require doctor—serious injury
X
Unable to proceed—need assistance
II
Require medical supplies
F
Require food and water
Require map and compass
Am proceeding in this direction
K
Please indicate direction to proceed
Safe to land here
LL
All is well
N
No
Y
Yes
JL
Don't understand
V
Require assistance
L
Need fuel and oil

FIG. 290 Ground-to-air signals.

The three signals that are recognized (and remembered) by most pilots are: three of anything—"distress"; large X—"unable to proceed" or "need medical assistance"; and an arrow—"proceeding in this direction." Three fires (set 100 ft [31 m] apart) placed in a triangular configuration is a sign of distress to a passing pilot. Ground-to-air patterns should be large, composed of straight lines, and made up of colors that contrast sharply with the natural colors of the environment (royal blue is best). Small battery-powered emergency strobes are also useful. A heliograph mirror is a small signal reflector that can be accurately aimed to reflect sunlight at a distant object (such as an aircraft).

Lost people

People lost in the wilderness often act in a predictable manner. Rapid location of a lost person can make the difference between life and death. These general guidelines might assist you in a search:

- Prevent lost people. Don’t wander off from the group. Carry map/compass/navigation device on all hikes (even short ones). Tell someone your plan, direction, and timing even for short walks.
- Brief the group at the beginning of the trip on terrain, landmarks, cardinal directions, meet up spots, and contingency plans if someone becomes lost.
- Lost people tend to follow the path of least resistance (open fields, trails, roads, dry streambeds).
- A person who is lost tends to travel downhill and to seek apparent shortcuts toward civilization or a familiar location.
- People tend to avoid barriers and obstacles (lakes, large rivers, boulder fields, dense brush).
- At night, a lost person tends to travel toward lights.
- In bad weather, people tend to seek shelter with overhead protection.
- Small children tend to seek shelter when tired.

Procedures

Intramuscular injection

Intramuscular (into the muscle) injection of epinephrine is used to manage a severe allergic reaction. The injection may be performed with a preloaded syringe (already containing the medicine in the barrel—see page 482) or might require that the medicine be drawn up for administration. After you wash your hands, follow these instructions:

1. Select the proper syringe and needle. For the treatment of an allergic reaction, a syringe that holds at least 1 mL is necessary, equipped with a 21- or 23-gauge needle (the larger the gauge number, the smaller the diameter of the needle) sufficiently long to penetrate through the skin and fat into the muscle.
2. Never touch the metal of the needle with your hands.
3. Never share needles (never use the same needle to inject multiple people).
4. If the medication is in a preloaded syringe, be sure to see that the amount of medicine does not exceed the dose you want to administer. Be certain not to inject too much medicine.
5. If the medicine is in a glass vial, flick the vial a few times with your finger to drive the air bubble to the top, and then snap the vial open at the line marked on the glass at the neck (Fig. 291A and B). Draw the proper amount of medicine to be administered up into the syringe (Fig. 291C). In the case of epinephrine, this will be 0.3 to 0.5 mL for an adult, and 0.01 mL/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight for a child, not to exceed 0.3 mL.
6. If the medication is in a glass bottle with a rubber top, wipe the top of the bottle with alcohol, stick the needle through the rubber, and draw up the desired amount of medication. If you cannot draw the medicine out of the bottle, you might need to inject some air into the bottle first (use the same entry into the bottle to inject air in and to draw medicine out).
7. Before injection, point the needle upward, tap the syringe a few times to float the air bubbles to the top, and squirt out any air that is in the syringe (Fig. 291D and E). You should be left with only medicine. Try not to inject any air.

8. Wipe off the skin with alcohol or with soap and water (if no alcohol is available) where you intend to administer the medicine. The easiest place to inject epinephrine is on the lateral arm at the shoulder.
9. Pinch the skin up between your fingers, and quickly plunge the needle in just under the skin at a 90-degree angle to the skin (Fig. 291F). With the needle in the skin, gently pull back on the plunger, to see if blood enters the syringe. If it does, you have inadvertently entered a blood vessel, and you should reposition. If no blood is returned, firmly plush the plunger and inject the medicine. Quickly remove the needle from the skin, and gently massage the injection site.

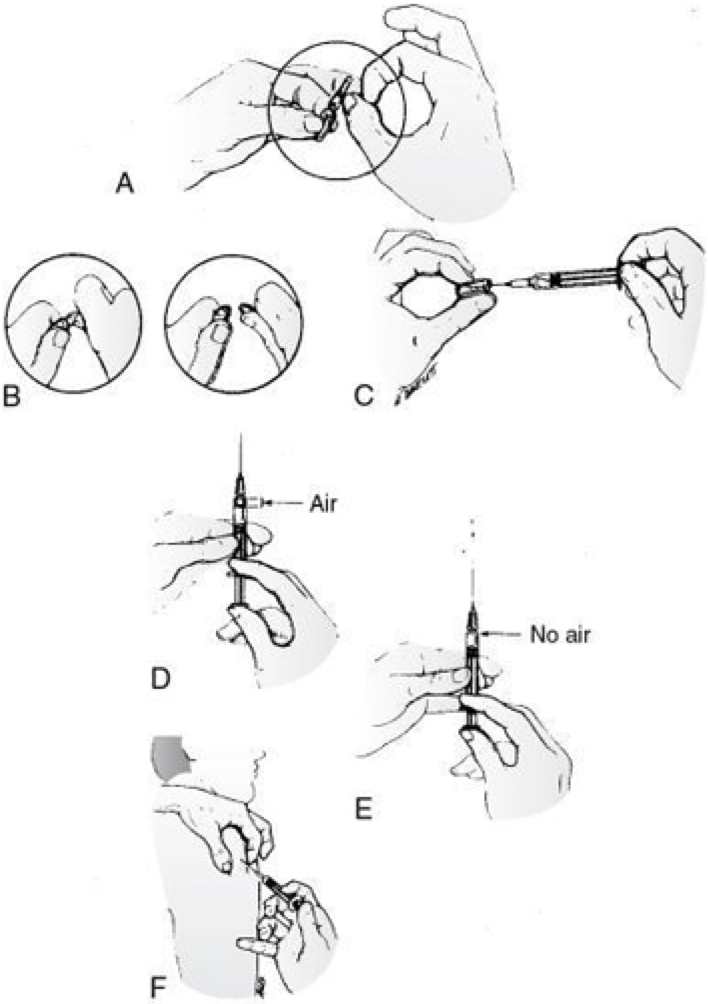


FIG. 291 Administering an injection. **A,** Flick the air bubble to the top of the vial. **B,** Break off the top of the vial at the narrowing or line. **C,** Draw the medicine into the syringe. **D,** Holding the needle straight up, gently push the plunger until **(E)** no air is left. **F,** Pinch up a fold of skin and briskly stick the needle through the skin and into muscle at a 90-degree angle for an intramuscular injection, or just under the skin at a 15- to 30-degree angle for a subcutaneous injection.

Again, when administering an injection, *never* share needles between people.

Fishhook removal

If a fishhook enters the skin, gently scrub the skin surrounding the entry point with soap and water. After the skin is clean, apply gentle pressure along the curve toward the point while pulling on the hook. If the hook is not easily removed, this means that the barb is caught in the tissue (Fig. 292A).

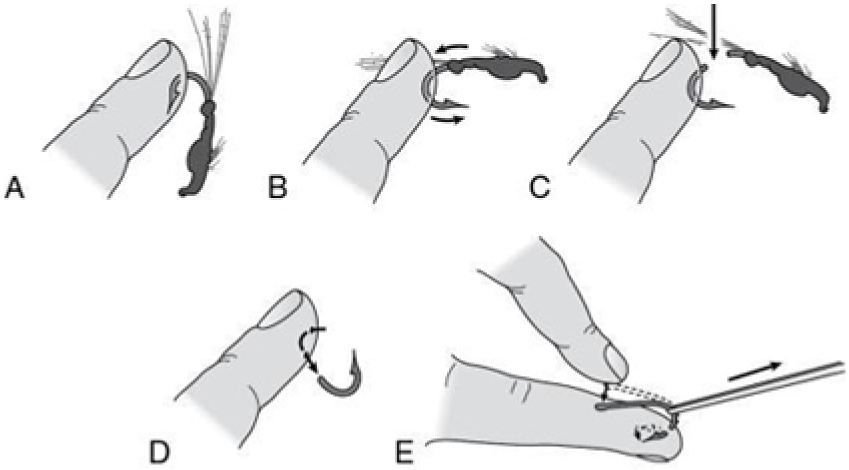


FIG. 292 Fishhook removal. **A,** The barb is embedded in the finger. **B,** The hook and barb are pushed through the skin. **C,** The shaft of the hook is cut. **D,** Both pieces are easily extracted. **E,** "Press-and-yank" method of fishhook removal.

If the hook has a barbed shank, the hook can be removed by pushing it through the skin. This should be done (because of the increased risk of infection) if it will take more than 8 hours to get to a doctor. If the hook is a treble hook, carefully cut off the nonembedded barbs so that they will not inadvertently become embedded while you're handling the hook. Grasp the shank of the hook with a plier. With a steady, firm motion, push the hook through the skin so that the barb appears (Fig. 292B). Cut off the shaft or the barb (take care to cover the area with a free hand to prevent the detached barb from flying into someone's eye) and then pull the remainder of the hook back out of the skin (Fig. 292C and D).

A popular method of fishhook removal is the "string-pull" or "press-and-yank" technique (Fig. 292E). Attach (tie) a shoelace or 2 ft (60 cm) length of string, fishing line, or rolled gauze around the bend of the hook. Push the shank of the hook down (toward the barb), parallel to the skin. This (hopefully) will disengage the barb from the tissue. Then use the string (at a 30-degree angle) to yank the hook from the skin in a snapping motion. Take care that the flying hook released from the skin does not impale anyone nearby. Wear eye protection or look away when you pull on the string to remove the hook.

Vigorously wash the wound and leave it open with a simple dry dressing. Don't seal in the dirt and bacteria with any grease or home remedies. If the hook was dirty (or was holding a dirty worm), begin the victim on dicloxacillin, penicillin, erythromycin, or cephalexin. If the victim suffers from a depressed immune system, use an antibiotic that's effective against germs acquired in an aquatic environment (see page 394). If a hook enters the skin anywhere near the eye, don't attempt removal. Tape the hook in place so that it cannot be snagged and take the victim immediately to see a doctor.

Splinter removal

A splinter can be removed by gently cutting away the skin near its entry point, until a firm grasp can be made with a small tweezers or with the fingers. If a splinter enters the finger under the fingernail, cut a small V-shaped wedge out of the nail, so that the splinter can be grasped. Sometimes a splinter can be teased out a bit using a needle or sharp pin to allow the exposed end of the splinter to be grasped. This same technique can be done using a sharp-tipped scissors. Another method is to push a needle (bevel facing up) into the splinter end for about ⅛ of an inch and then push down on the hub, which elevates the needle tip and drags the splinter out from under the nail. If a splinter cannot be removed for more than 24 hours, begin the victim on penicillin, erythromycin, or cephalexin.

If a splinter lies in full view longitudinally under the skin, it might be easier to take a sharp blade and carefully cut down through the skin directly over the splinter along its entire length, to avoid fragmenting it by dragging the (usually) wood out of a small opening.

Ring removal

A ring should be removed if swelling of a finger underneath will cause the ring to become an inadvertent tourniquet. This is particularly true with broken fingers, burns, crush injuries, stings, and bites. The easiest method is to lubricate the skin with soap, ointment, or something greasy, and then apply a circular motion with traction on the ring. Keep the hand or foot (for a toe ring) elevated and cool (cold water or ice pack for 10 minutes) to minimize the swelling.

If swelling prevents easy removal, wrap completely the entire portion of the finger beyond the ring very snugly with a strip of something elastic and leave the wrap in place for 5 minutes. This will hopefully squeeze blood and other tissue fluid out of the swollen part of the finger and back under the ring. Unwrap the finger, apply a lubricant, and see if the ring will now slide off the finger.

If the patient will allow the ring to be cut (or if you are making the decision), most rings can be cut using the notch designed for that purpose on the Leatherman Raptor Medical Shears Multi-Tool. Because the metal in most rings is rigid and won't bend, you will need to cut it on opposite sides of the finger, taking care to not injure the skin.

Another method is to use the "string-wrap" technique (Fig. 293). Take a 20-inch (50 cm) string and pass it under the ring so that the long portion is left on the fingernail side of the ring. Wrap the long portion around the finger in a spiral fashion, starting next to the ring and working out toward the fingernail, keeping the loops close together. No tissue should bulge through between the loops. The string is then unwrapped by unwinding on the side closer to the hand, which pushes the ring little by little off the finger. The process is repeated over and over until the ring can be forced over the swollen finger joint(s), which might be a bit painful. Take care between wraps not to lose ground by inadvertently pushing the ring back toward the hand.

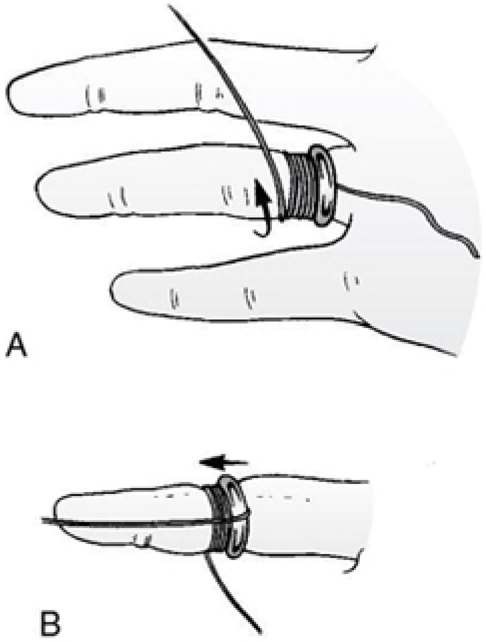


FIG. 293 Ring removal. **A,** Thread a string under the ring. Wrap the long portion to compress the finger next to the ring. **B,** Unwrap the string to push the ring toward the end of the finger. The process is repeated until the ring is moved over the knuckle or swollen part of the finger.

Some rings are made of metals (such as tungsten) that are extremely difficult to cut. It's sometimes possible to use a vice-grip wrench to make repeated forceful squeezes that create microfractures in the metal, eventually causing it to shatter and the ring to be removed.

Zipper removal

If skin gets caught in a zipper, the best way to solve the problem is to cut the diamond-shaped slider with a wire cutter so that the zipper falls apart (Fig. 294). You also might be able to pop this piece apart using two well-placed small metal probes from, for instance, a pair of multitools. Another method is to cover the entire area with mineral oil, which hopefully will lubricate everything and free the skin from the zipper. Once the slider is removed, then pull apart the exposed zipper teeth, clean the affected skin, and apply an antiseptic ointment. Remember, if you keep trying to slide the zipper, you might entrap more skin, so that's not a good technique.

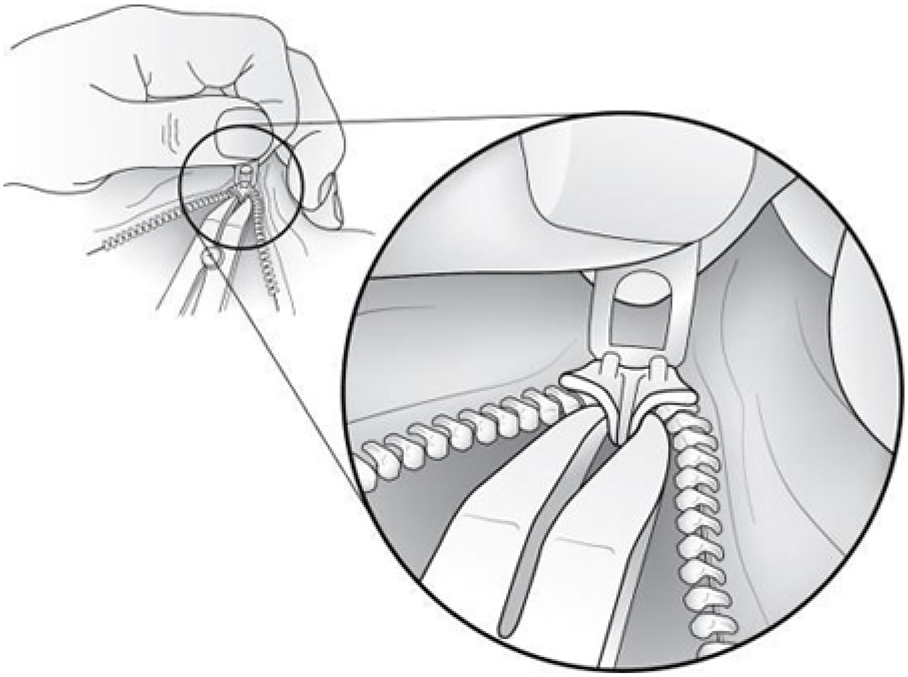


FIG. 294 Zipper removal by cutting the diamond-shaped slider.

Knots and hitches

One of the most useful wilderness skills is the ability to quickly tie a secure knot or hitch. This is particularly important when fashioning a litter or traction device. The following diagrams illustrate a selection of common useful knots, hitches, and bends: overhand knot (Fig. 295), slip knot (Fig. 296), figure-of-eight knot (Fig. 297), half hitch and double half hitch (Fig. 298), bowline (Fig. 299), double bowline (Fig. 300), loop knot and draw loop (Fig. 301), round turn with double half hitch (Fig. 302), single sheet bend (Fig. 303), clove hitch (Fig. 304), double carrick bend (Fig. 305), Prusik hitch (Fig. 306), and double fisherman's bend (Fig. 307).

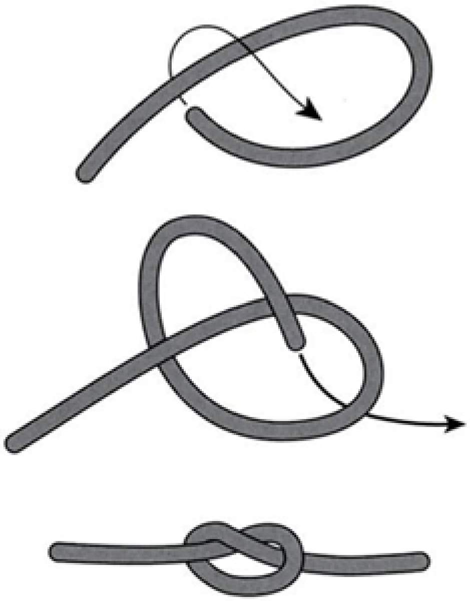


FIG. 295 Overhand knot.

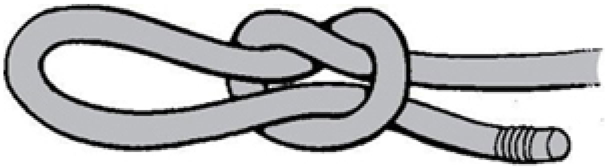


FIG. 296 Slip knot.

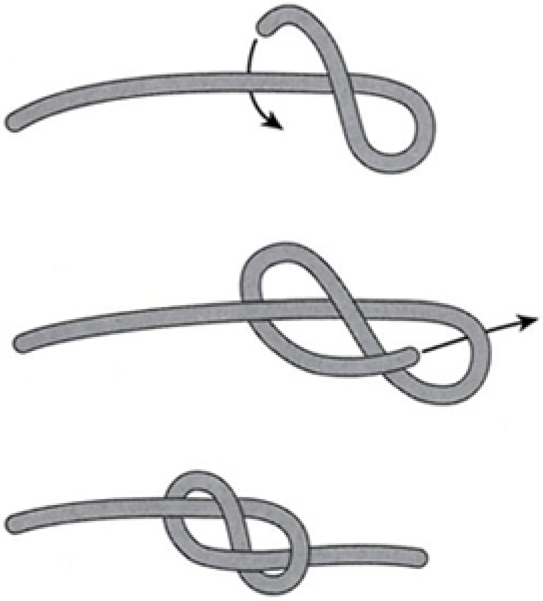


FIG. 297 Figure-of-eight knot.

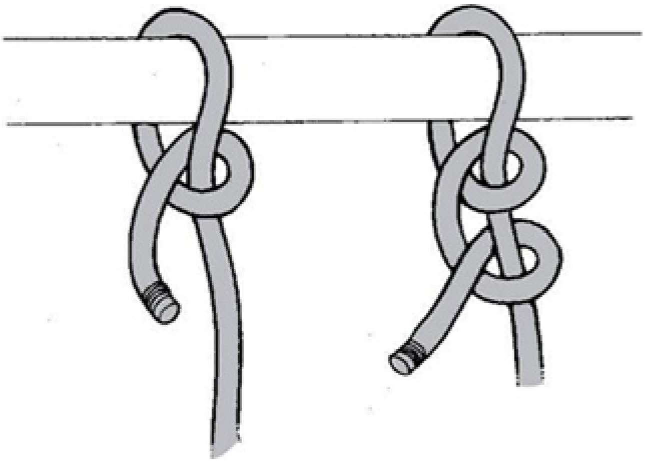


FIG. 298 Half hitch and double half hitch.

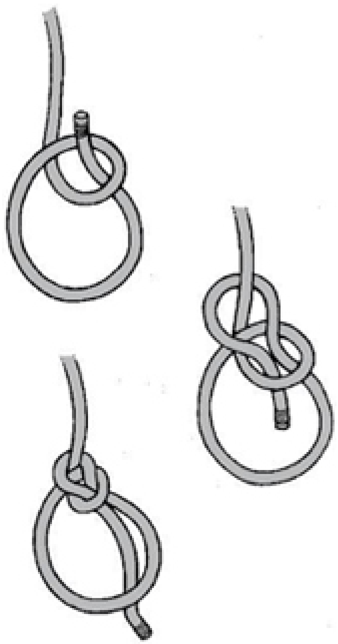


FIG. 299 Bowline.

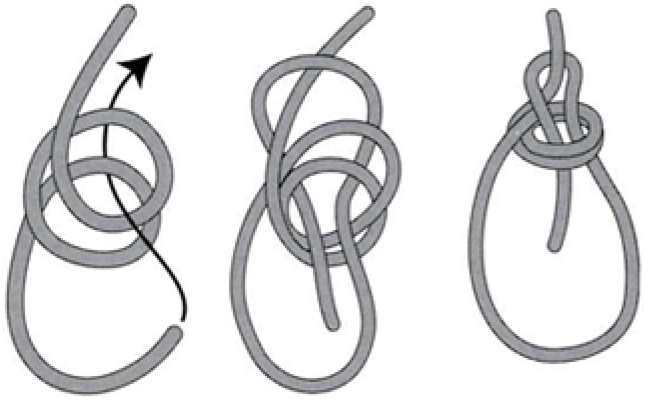


FIG. 300 Double bowline.

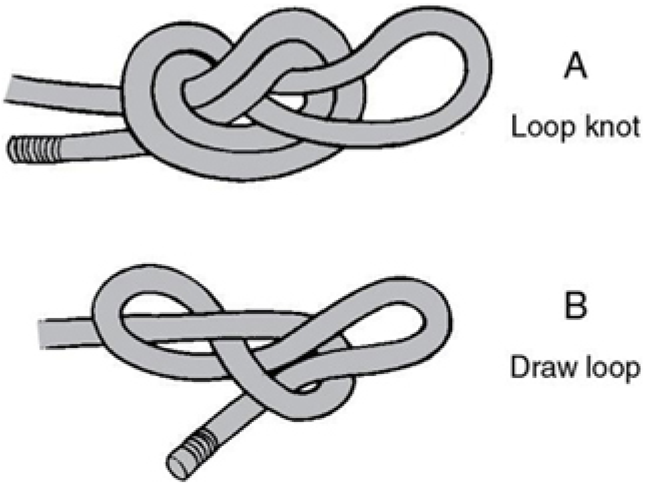

A
Loop knot
B
Draw loop

FIG. 301 **A,** Loop knot. **B,** Draw loop.

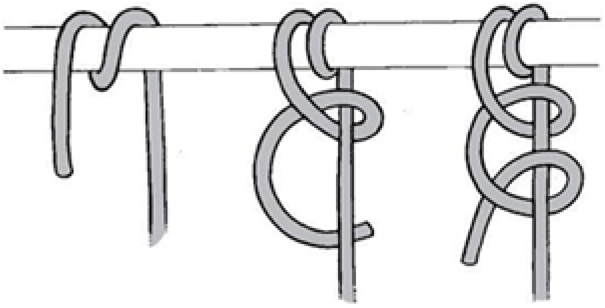


FIG. 302 Round turn with double half hitch.

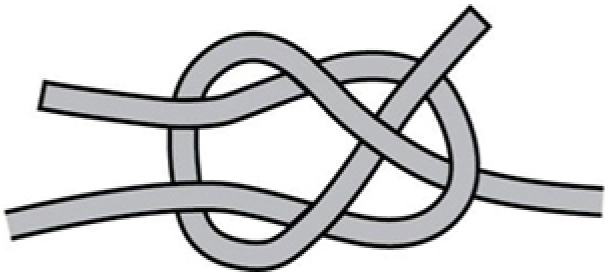


FIG. 303 Single sheet bend.

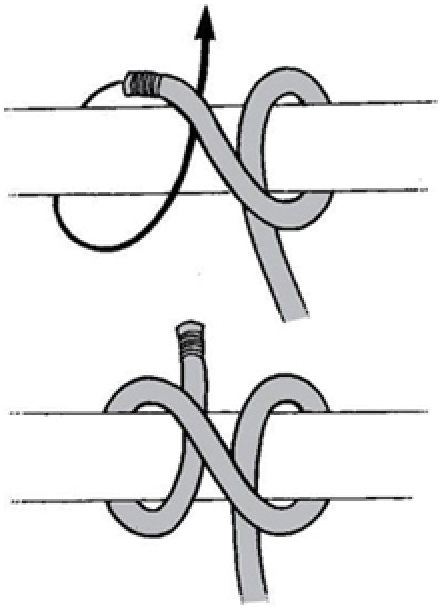


FIG. 304 Clove hitch.

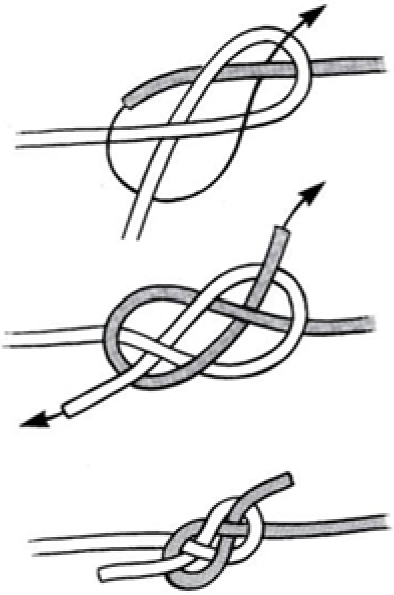


FIG. 305 Double carrick bend.

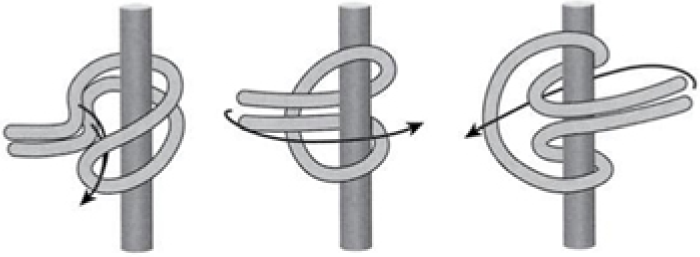


FIG. 306 Prusik hitch.

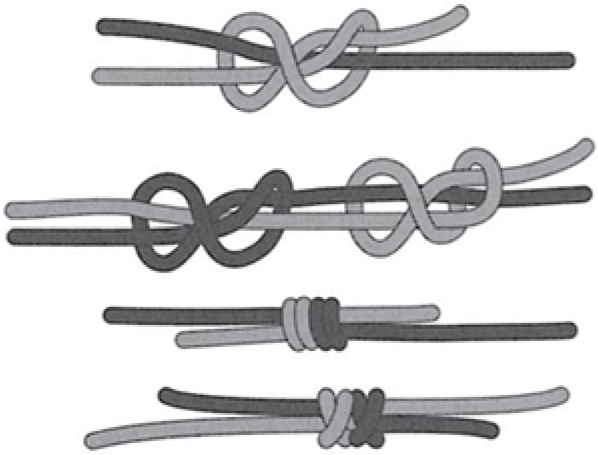


FIG. 307 Double fisherman's bend.

Dealing with death

Despite best efforts to do the right thing, sometimes people die. They might have died of "natural causes," been severely injured, or expired because of an acute or chronic illness. The physical condition of death is described on page 32. If you encounter a dead person in the wilderness, you must do the best you can to deal with the situation, including caring for the dead person(s) and the living survivors.

Handling a dead body

If the body is to be recovered and transported, then do your best to handle it with dignity and respect. If there is any consideration of a communicable disease, then be particularly cautious when handling the remains. Whenever possible, use blood and bodily fluid precautions (see page 504). This is mandatory when a person has died because of Ebola virus disease, for which full personal protective equipment (PPE) is essential. If possible, keep the body covered and in a cool or cold location, to attempt to limit decomposition and the accompanying difficult-to-handle sight and smells. Try to limit your and other's exposure to the body. If there is any question of foul play, try not to move or otherwise disturb what might become a crime scene. If a person is obviously dead, don't put yourself at risk trying to recover the body. Examples would include someone trapped underwater in the midst of swift water or a person who has expired after a long fall on a glacier and requires a technical approach to be retrieved. Coordinate with local authorities to obtain assistance for body recovery and transportation. If you must leave the scene without taking the body, so long as you do not suspect an infection as the cause of death, bring along whatever personal effects you can reasonably gather without compromising your ability to safely travel. These might be important to family members and friends.

If you are in possession of a dead body or bodies and extrication will not be possible, you might need to dispose of the body. Here are some suggestions:

- Respect local custom and practice, unless it is dangerous. This is often the case with Ebola virus disease, where the deceased person carries a large amount of virus on their exterior, which makes them highly

infectious. Burial is often the preferred method, but cremation might be advised in certain circumstances of infectious disease.
- The burial site should be at least 164 ft (50 m) from drinking water sources and 1640 ft (500 m) from the nearest dwelling. Dig the hole at least 5 ft (1.5 m) above the groundwater table, and at least 3.3 ft (1 m) deep.
- Keep a record of identifying features, including photographs and possessions.
- If you're able, wrap the victim in a plastic sheet or something similar before burial.
- Mark the location of the burial.

If cremation is done, it should occur at least 1640 ft (500 m) downwind from the nearest dwelling.

Emotional considerations

When someone dies, it is usually a highly emotional situation for the survivors, particularly if family or friends are present. It's a good idea to gather the team and reflect on what just happened and be respectful of the life that was lost. Allow those grieving the option to view, sit with, or touch the victim if safe to do so. It may be necessary to first clean up blood, cover up exposed injuries, and position the victim in a respectful way in order to support the grieving. The grieving process might be difficult, but it is appropriate and necessary. Use a moment of silence, prayer, hugs, tears, or whatever helps people stay strong at this very vulnerable time. Anticipate stress responses and support the grieving.

It's natural to be sad and perhaps remorseful, frightened, or repelled by the situation. Talk to others and allow yourself to express your emotions, so long as you can function as a problem-solver. Allow others to speak to you and work through what they are feeling. Don't impose your cultural or religious beliefs on others unless they request this assistance. Be strong, be consistent, and above all, show compassion.

Obtaining assistance

Work to notify local authorities (park rangers, police) as well as next of kin after the death of a patient. If a death occurs in a foreign country, notify the native embassy/consulate of the patient for assistance.

Appendices

OUTLINE

Appendix One: Commonly used drugs (medications) and doses
Appendix Two: Conversion tables
Appendix Three: Guidelines for prevention of diseases transmitted via human blood and other bodily fluids
Appendix Four: Commonly used applications of the SAM splint
Appendix Five: Emergency canine medicine

Appendix One: Commonly used drugs (medications) and doses

This Appendix lists drugs that are mentioned in the book, and some that are not mentioned but that might become available.

No medication is without potential adverse side effect. All medication should be given with caution. Carrying a pharmacy for yourself and other trip members comes with great responsibility and should be done under the direction of a physician.

Always have a doctor and/or pharmacist explain the actions and side effects of any drug you obtain to be carried with you. Use medications only if you understand what you are treating. Prior to the trip, take note of the medical issues of your team members, including chronic prescriptions that they take. Ensure that team members have a reasonable supply of their own prescription medications and that these medications have been well tolerated. Prior to administering a medication to a patient, be sure to take a medical history, including past medical problems and allergies. Exercise extra caution when administering drugs to pregnant women and children, as drugs have many side effects. Many drugs are used to suppress symptoms (such as abdominal pain, nausea and vomiting, and headache) of potentially serious disorders. In these cases, don't overmedicate the victim if you need to watch for a worsening condition.

Drugs are listed here by purpose. We have listed some products that are available over the counter; however, many of the drugs require a prescription. This is not a comprehensive formulary, but rather emphasizes the medications most likely to be used or encountered.

Doses are listed in absolute amount (generally, for adults) or in amount to be given per body weight or per age (generally, for children); if utilizing per bodyweight dosing for larger/older children, max dosing should not exceed adult dosing. The drug should be administered orally unless otherwise specified.

Because children usually require a fraction of the dose used for adults, they might need to have the drug in special tablet or liquid form. If there are children on your wilderness trip/expedition, it is prudent to know their weight prior to starting the trip. The average weights for children, according to age, are as follows:

- *1 year—10 kg (22 lb)*
- *3 years—15 kg (33 lb)*
- *6 years—20 kg (44 lb)*
- *8 years—25 kg (55 lb)*

- *9½ years—30 kg (66 lb)*
- *11 years—35 kg (77 lb)*

Drugs are listed in the following order:

- Drugs and pregnancy (page 482)
- Overview of epinephrine (page 484)
- Overview of metered dose inhaler, albuterol (page 485)
- For relief from a severe allergic reaction (page 486)
- Overview of steroids (page 486)
- For relief from a mild allergic reaction (page 487)
- For relief from severe asthma (page 488)
- For relief of chest pain (angina) (page 488)
- For treatment of congestive heart failure (page 489)
- For treatment of seizures (epilepsy) (page 489)
- For relief from pain (page 489)
- For treatment of opioid overdose (page 490)
- For relief from fever (page 490)
- For relief from muscle aches or minor arthritis; includes nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) (page 491)
- For relief from migraine headache (page 491)
- For relief from itching (page 491)
- For relief from toothache (page 491)
- For relief from motion sickness (page 492)
- For relief from nausea and vomiting (page 492)
- For relief from diarrhea (page 492)
- For relief from constipation (page 493)
- For relief from ulcer pain (page 493)
- For relief from indigestion or gas pains (page 494)
- For relief from heartburn (reflux esophagitis) (page 494)
- For relief from nasal congestion (page 495)
- For relief from cough (page 495)
- For relief from sore throat (page 495)
- Cold formulas (page 495)
- Skin medications (page 495)
- For sleep (page 497)
- Antibiotics (page 498)

Drugs and pregnancy

In general, it's best to avoid taking any medication when pregnant (particularly during the first trimester, or first third, of pregnancy) to avoid the risk of fetal malformation, or illness or injury in the newly born child. A pregnant woman should be discouraged from taking over-the-counter drugs. However, women can certainly become ill during pregnancy, so it's important to know what can be administered safely and what should be absolutely avoided. Fortunately, many of the drugs that are labeled "potentially hazardous" have only been proved hazardous in laboratory animals, frequently in relative doses that far exceed their common usage in humans. There is limited data on the safety of most drugs during pregnancy.

The following list reflects recommendations compiled from the current medical literature and should be used only as guidance and with the understanding that recommendations change. Whenever possible, a pregnant woman contemplating use of a medication should seek advice *in advance* from her physician.

Antibiotic, Antifungal, Antiviral, Antimalarial in Pregnancy		
No Recognized Hazard	**Avoid If Possible**	**Hazardous**
amoxicillin–clavulanate ampicillin/amoxicillin cephalosporins chloroquine (apparently safe) clotrimazole topical erythromycin mefloquine (apparently safe) nystatin paromomycin penicillin	acyclovir chloramphenicol ciprofloxacin fluconazole gentamicin injection gentamicin topical eye medication metronidazole miconazole nitrofurantoin primaquine quinacrine terconazole quinine trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole	fleroxacin norfloxacin ofloxacin tetracycline/doxycycline (causes staining of teeth and altered bone development in fetus)

Pain Medication in Pregnancy		
No Recognized Hazard	**Avoid If Possible**	**Hazardous**
acetaminophen	aspirin (avoid during last 3 months of pregnancy) codeine hydrocodone ibuprofen and other NSAIDs (avoid during last 3 months of pregnancy) meperidine oxycodone	indomethacin

Antiallergy Drugs in Pregnancy		
No Recognized Hazard	**Avoid If Possible**	**Hazardous**
cimetidine dimenhydrinate epinephrine (use only in a critical situation) famotidine loratadine topical corticosteroids, decongestants (e.g., oxymetazoline)	albuterol chlorpheniramine diphenhydramine epinephrine (avoid in a noncritical situation) hydroxyzine prednisone	brompheniramine cyclizine

Antinausea, Anti–Motion-Sickness, Antidiarrheal, Anticonstipation Drugs in Pregnancy		
No Recognized Hazard	**Avoid If Possible**	**Hazardous**
bisacodyl dimenhydrinate docusate meclizine metoclopramide (apparently safe) mineral oil ondansetron (considered safe) psyllium fiber	anticholinergic drugs prochlorperazine promethazine scopolamine trimethobenzamide	

Other Drugs in Pregnancy		
No Recognized Hazard	**Avoid If Possible**	**Hazardous**
antacids betamethasone cyproheptadine dextromethorphan kaolin-pectin omeprazole prednisolone prednisone pyrethrins/piperonyl butoxide simethicone sucralfate	acetazolamide albuterol amantadine beclomethasone bismuth subsalicylate caffeine dexamethasone diphenoxylate furosemide isoproterenol lindane loperamide metaproterenol nifedipine oxymetazoline theophylline triazolam	captopril (and all other angiotensin-converting enzyme [ACE] inhibitors) chlordiazepoxide chlorothiazide dapsone diazepam hydrochlorothiazide isotretinoin midazolam phenacetin phenytoin ranitidine thyroid inhibitors tolbutamide

Allergic reaction to a drug

If a person develops an allergic reaction to a drug (itching, shortness of breath, swollen tongue, difficulty talking, skin rash, hives, and so on), immediately discontinue the drug and follow the instructions on page 78.

Overview of epinephrine

Epinephrine is a life-saving medication used for multiple medical conditions including severe allergic reactions and severe asthma.

Epinephrine (adrenaline) 1:1000 aqueous solution (1mg/mL). Adult dose 0.3 to 0.5 mL injected intramuscularly (see page 469) into the lateral thigh. This may be repeated at 5 to 20 minute intervals (or sooner!) depending on the situation. Patients should carry more than one dose of their epinephrine and at least two autoinjectors in case a repeat dose is needed. If a repeat dose is needed, then inject in a new location. If a patient does not respond after second or third dose, then other interventions and rapid evacuation may be necessary. The pediatric dose is 0.01 mg/kg (0.01 mL/kg of the 1 mg/mL concentration), not to exceed 0.3 mg, injected intramuscularly into the lateral thigh. If the thigh is obese, whether in an adult or a child, such that the needle might not reach into muscle, then inject into the lower thigh. If obesity is extreme, consider injecting into the mid-calf. *Don't delay use of epinephrine in a patient that may need it. Use with caution in patients with preexisting conditions such as heart disease and elderly patients.*

Side effects: Rapid heartbeat, nervousness.

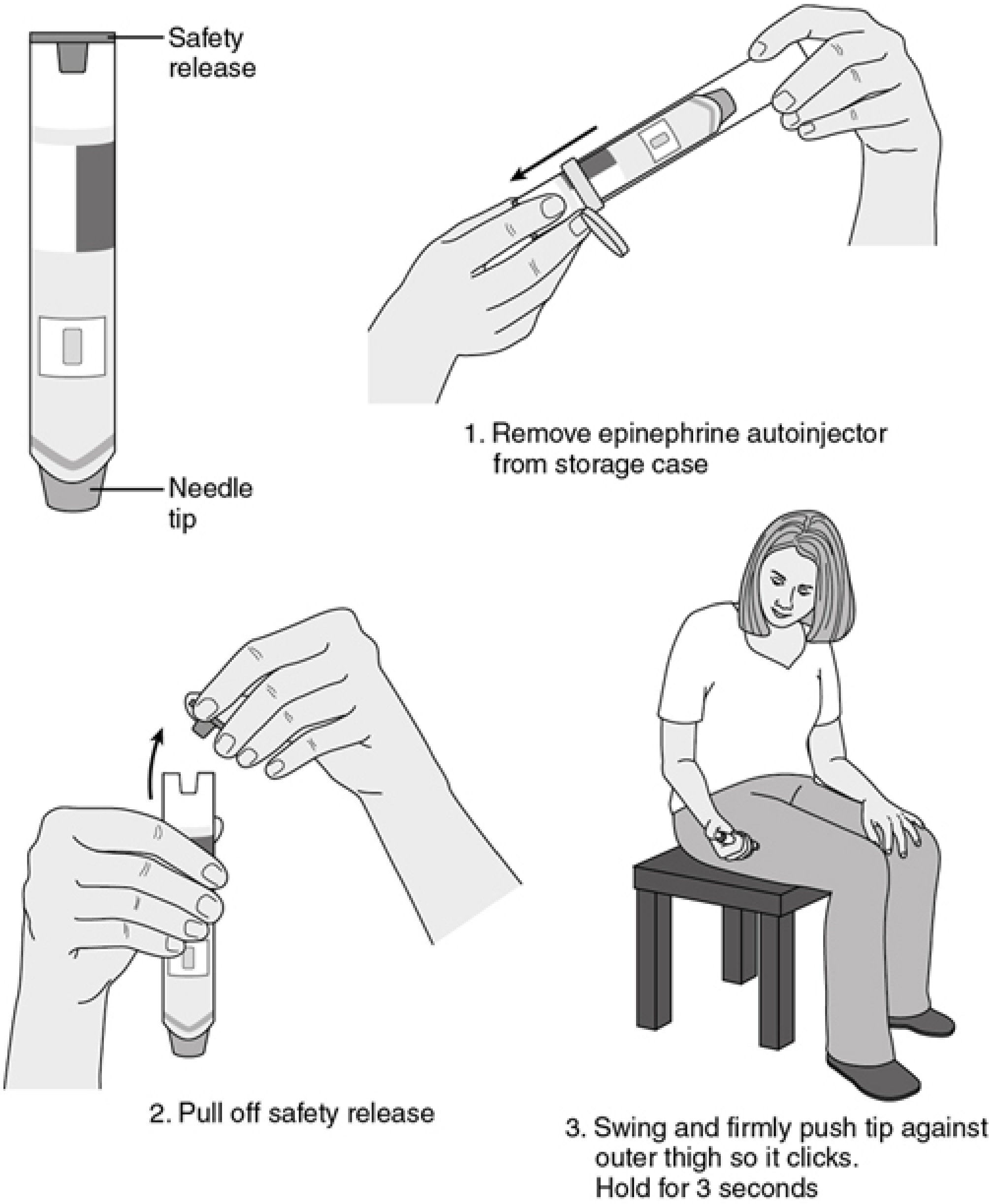
The drug is available in preloaded syringes in certain allergy kits (see Fig. 308) or may be drawn up from a vial using a syringe (see page 469).

Preloaded syringes include the EpiPen auto-injector (0.3 mg) and EpiPen Jr. auto-injector (0.15 mg), Auvi-Q autoinjectors, Adrenaclick auto-injectors, and SYMJEPI prefilled (with epinephrine) syringes. FDA-approved generic products are sometimes less expensive. Other devices worldwide are the Jext, Emerade, Allerject, and Anapen. Instructions for use accompany the kits. For dosing purposes, a 0.3-mg autoinjector should be used for adults and children over 66 lb (30 kg) in weight. Children 66 lb and under should be injected with a 0.15 mg autoinjector. When injecting into a child's leg, be sure to hold the leg firmly so that it doesn't move in order to prevent creating a cut. Never reinsert an autoinjector needle.

See Fig. 308, How to use epinephrine auto-injector.

Take particular care to handle preloaded syringes properly, to avoid inadvertent injection into an unintended location, such as a finger or toe. Don't intentionally inject epinephrine into the buttocks or a vein. Epinephrine should not be exposed to heat or sun but does not need to be kept refrigerated. Protect epinephrine from freezing.

According to manufacturers, epinephrine should be stored between 68°F to 77°F (20°C to 25°C) with brief excursions permitted to 59°F to 86°F (15°C to 30°C). If clear (liquid) epinephrine turns cloudy or discolored, it should be discarded. When administering an injection, *never* share needles between people.



1. Remove epinephrine autoinjector from storage case

2. Pull off safety release

3. Swing and firmly push tip against outer thigh so it clicks. Hold for 3 seconds

FIG. 308 How to use epinephrine autoinjector.

Overview of metered-dose inhalers, albuterol

Metered dose inhalers are used to administer a variety of medications for a variety of conditions. Albuterol is a common medication contained in an inhaler and used to treat a variety of breathing conditions such as asthma, severe allergy, and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) as noted in the following pages.

Albuterol (Ventolin) or metaproterenol (Alupent) metered-dose inhaler. Adult dose two to four puffs every 20 minutes for 1 hour during attack (may need more frequent dosing), followed by two to four puffs every 3 to 6 hours as needed.

Side effects: Rapid heartbeat, nervousness ("jitters").

The proper technique for using a metered-dose inhaler device is as follows (see Fig. 309):

1. Shake the inhaler vigorously for 5 seconds before each use.
2. Invert the inhaler so that the opening is downward if directed to do so. Hold the inhaler 4 cm (1.6 inches) in front of an open mouth, or place a spacer on the opening, around which the lips will be sealed.
3. Exhale fully. Close your lips around the spacer, or hold the device about 4 cm (1.6 inches) from your mouth, or close your lips around the mouthpiece.
4. Activate the inhaler at the beginning of inspiration.
5. Inhale slowly and deeply to full lung capacity.
6. Hold your breath for 10 seconds, then exhale slowly.
7. Wait 1 minute before repeating all steps before the next puff. Shake the inhaler before each puff.

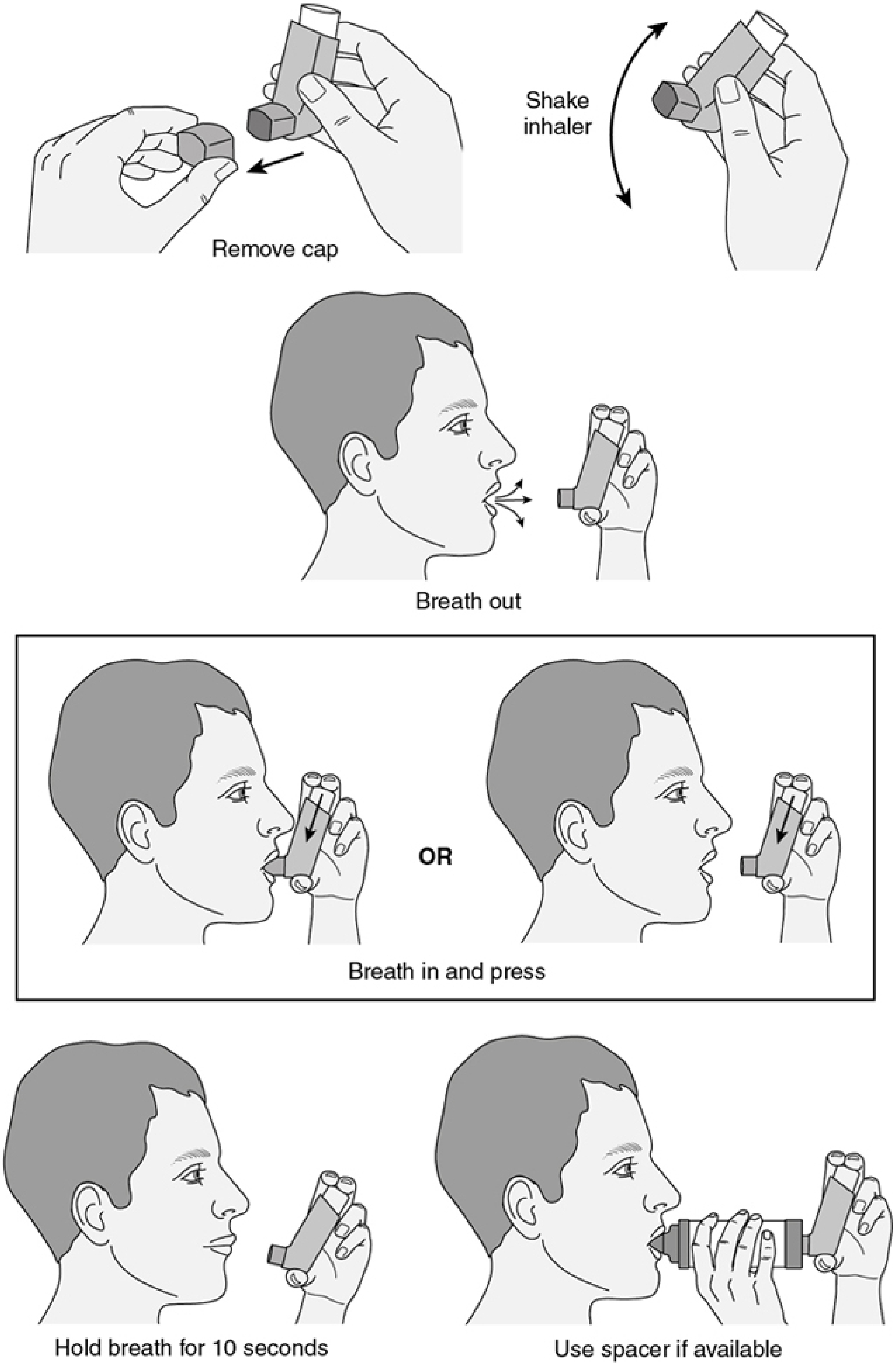

Remove cap
Shake inhaler
Breath out
OR
Breath in and press
Hold breath for 10 seconds
Use spacer if available

FIG. 309 How to use metered-dose inhaler, Albuterol.

Overview of steroids

There are different types of steroids, and steroids are used to treat many different conditions.

Corticosteroids ("steroids") are interchangeable to a certain degree. If you must substitute, here is a rough measure of equivalence: 20 mg prednisone equals 16 mg methylprednisolone equals 3 mg dexamethasone.

Corticosteroids should always be taken with the understanding that a rare side effect is serious deterioration of the head ("ball" of the ball-and-socket joint) of the femur, the long bone of the thigh.

When corticosteroids are administered to a person for a sufficiently long period of time, the adrenal glands (which manufacture the same hormones) are suppressed. To allow the adrenal glands to recover, the following rules should be observed:

If someone has been receiving a high (nontapered) dose of a corticosteroid for 5 days or less, then the medication can be abruptly discontinued without consideration for adrenal suppression.

If someone has been receiving a high (nontapered) dose of a corticosteroid for 6 to 10 days, then the medication should be tapered over an additional 7 days.

For relief from a severe allergic reaction

Epinephrine (adrenaline) 1:1000 aqueous solution (1mg/mL). Adult dose 0.3 to 0.5 mL injected intramuscularly (see page 469) into the lateral thigh. See Overview of Epinephrine on page 484 and Fig. 308.

Diphenhydramine (Benadryl). Adult dose 25 to 50 mg every 4 to 6 hours; pediatric dose 1 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight.

Side effects: Drowsiness, paradoxical hyperactivity (children).

Albuterol (Ventolin) or metaproterenol (Alupent) metered-dose inhaler. Adult dose two puffs every 3 to 6 hours as needed. See Overview of Metered-Dose Inhalers page 485 and Fig. 309.

Side effects: Rapid heartbeat, nervousness ("jitters").

Prednisone. Adult dose 50 to 80 mg the first day. Each day, the dose is decreased by 10 mg. The pediatric dose is 1 mg/kg of body weight the first day, tapered every 4 days by halving the dose. Administer with food or with an antacid if possible. Corticosteroids are interchangeable to a certain degree. See Overview of Steroids above.

For a severe skin reaction to poison ivy, oak, or sumac, see the instructions on page 255.

For a severe sunburn, see the instructions on page 249.

For relief from a mild allergic reaction or hay fever

Diphenhydramine (Benadryl). Adult dose 25 to 50 mg every 4 to 6 hours; pediatric dose 1 mg/kg of body weight.

Diphenhydramine (25 mg) with pseudoephedrine (60 mg) (Benadryl Decongestant). Adult dose one tablet every 8 hours.

Cetirizine hydrochloride (Zyrtec). Dose 5 to 10 mg every 24 hours; don't use in children under 6 years of age. Pediatric dose: children ages 6 to 11 years 5 or 10 mg every 24 hours; ages 6 months to 5 years 2.5 mg every 24 hours.

Fexofenadine (Allegra). Adult dose 60 mg every 12 hours. In adults, it may also be administered as 180 mg once a day. Pediatric dose for children ages 2 to 11 years 30 mg twice a day. Rarely causes drowsiness. Allegra-D: fexofenadine 60 mg with pseudoephedrine 120 mg extended-release tablet.

Loratadine (Claritin). Adult dose 10 mg every 24 hours. Pediatric dose children ages 2 to 6 years 5 mg every 24 hours. Rarely causes drowsiness. Claritin-D: loratadine 5 mg with pseudoephedrine 120 mg. Claritin-D 24 Hour: loratadine 10 mg with pseudoephedrine 240 mg.

Cyproheptadine (Periactin). Adult dose 4 mg every 8 hours. Pediatric dose: children 7 to 14 years 4 mg every 8 to 12 hours; ages 2 to 6 years 2 mg every 8 to 12 hours.

Prednisone. Adult dose 50 to 80 mg the first day for severe seasonal allergies that don't respond to other medications. Each day, the dose is decreased by 10 mg. The pediatric dose is 1 mg/kg of body weight the first day, tapered every 4 days by halving the dose. Administer with food or with an antacid, if possible. See Overview of Steroids page 486.

Triprolidine with pseudoephedrine (Actifed). Adult dose 1 tablet every 8 hours; pediatric dose (6 to 12 years of age) half tablet every 8 hours.

Side effect: Drowsiness.

For relief from severe asthma or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease

Many asthma and COPD medications are administered by metered dose inhaler. The proper technique for using this device is discussed on page 487 and Fig. 309. *Albuterol* (*Ventolin*) metered-dose inhaler. Adult dose two puffs every 4 hours as needed. In an acute asthma attack, start with four puffs and consider going up to 10 puffs as needed with more frequent repeat dosing.

Epinephrine (adrenaline) 1:1000 aqueous solution (1mg/mL). Adult dose 0.3 to 0.5 mL injected intramuscularly (see page 469) into the lateral thigh. This may be repeat at 20-minute intervals for total of three doses. (See page 485 and Fig. 308) The pediatric dose is 0.01 mL /kg (2.2 lb) of body weight, not to exceed 0.3 mL. *Don't use epinephrine for treatment of COPD.*

Side effects: Rapid heartbeat, nervousness.

Prednisone. Adult dose 50 to 80 mg the first day. Each day, the dose is decreased by 10 mg. The pediatric dose is 1 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight the first day, tapered every 4 days by halving the dose. Administer with food or with an antacid, if possible. See Overview of Steroids page 486.

For treatment of chest pain (angina)

Nitroglycerin 0.4 mg or lingual aerosol (0.4 mg metered dose per spray). Adult dose one tablet dissolved under the tongue, or one spray under the tongue, for treatment of angina. This may be repeated every 10 minutes for two additional doses.

Side effects: Dizziness (low blood pressure), headache. If a person uses nitroglycerin and becomes faint, they should lie down with their legs elevated until their skin color returns to normal and they feel better (usually, in a minute or two). If chest pain or weakness persists, this might indicate a heart attack (see page 57).

Nitroglycerin patch 0.4 to 0.6 mg. Apply for 12 to 24 hours.

Isosorbide mononitrate or dinitrate (short-acting formulation). Adult dose 20 to 60 mg by mouth twice daily.

Isosorbide mononitrate or dinitrate (sustained-release formulation). Adult dose 60 to 120 mg by mouth twice daily.

Side effects: Headache, dizziness, nausea, irregular heartbeat (palpitations). This drug should not be given with medications for erectile dysfunction (e.g., sildenafil citrate [Viagra]).

Metoprolol (short-acting formulation). Adult dose 50 to 150 mg by mouth twice daily.

Metoprolol (sustained-release formulation). Adult dose 100 to 300 mg once daily.

Side effects: Fatigue, shortness of breath, wheezing, weakness, dizziness. Should be used with caution in persons with COPD, diabetes, depression, severe peripheral vascular disease, certain abnormal heart rhythms, or erectile dysfunction.

Nifedipine (sustained-release formulation). Adult dose 30 to 90 mg by mouth once daily.

Verapamil (short-acting formulation). Adult dose 20 to 120 mg two to three times by mouth daily.

Verapamil (sustained-release formulation). Adult dose 180 to 240 mg by mouth once or twice daily.

Diltiazem (sustained-release formulation). Adult dose 120 to 480 mg by mouth once daily.

For treatment of congestive heart failure

Furosemide (Lasix) diuretic (promotes urination). Adult dose 1 to 4 tablets (20 to 80 mg) each day for the fluid retention associated with heart failure. Diuretics should not be used for fluid retention not associated with heart failure (such as that from high altitude) or for weight reduction.

Digoxin (Lanoxin). Adult dose 0.125 to 0.25 mg per day.

For treatment of seizures (epilepsy)

Doses of antiseizure medications vary widely, depending on the age and size of the patient, whether other drugs are also being taken, any underlying chronic diseases, and other factors. Therapeutic levels are closely monitored by the patient's neurologist. Therefore, the doses for these medications are listed for reference only as possible maintenance doses.

Diphenylhydantoin (Dilantin). Adult dose 300 to 400 mg per day; pediatric dose 2.5 mg/kg of body weight twice a day.

Phenobarbital. Adult dose 60 to 120 mg three times per day; pediatric dose 1 to 1.5 mg/kg of body weight three times a day.

Carbamazepine (Tegretol). Adult dose 400 to 1200 mg a day in two to three divided doses; pediatric dose 10 to 20 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight each day in two to three divided doses.

Levetiracetam (Keppra). Adult dose 500 to 1500 mg twice a day; pediatric dose 10 to 30 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight twice a day.

Lamotrigine (Lamictal). Adult dose 100 to 200 mg once a day; pediatric dose for children ages 2 to 12 years 1 to 5 mg/kg (2.2 lb) body weight in one or two divided doses.

Pregabalin (Lyrica). Adult dose 150 to 600 mg once a day.

Valproic acid (Depakote). Adult and pediatric (ages 10 years and older) dose 10 to 50 mg/kg (2.2 lb) body weight once a day.

Clonazepam (Klonopin). Adult dose 1.5 to 20 mg per day in three divided doses; pediatric dose (up to 10 years of age) 0.1 to 0.2 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight in three divided doses.

Gabapentin (Neurontin). Adult dose 900 to 1800 mg per day in three divided doses; pediatric dose ages 3 to 12 years 25 to 40 mg/kg (2.2 lb) per day in three divided doses.

Trimethadione (Tridione). Adult dose 300 to 600 mg three or four times a day; pediatric dose 100 to 300 mg three or four times a day.

Primidone (Mysoline). Adult and pediatric (ages 8 years and over) dose 250 mg three or four times a day.

Ethosuximide (Zarontin). Adult and pediatric dose ages 3 years of age and older 20 mg/kg (2.2 lb) per day not to exceed 1.5 g daily.

For relief from pain (see also for relief from muscle aches or minor arthritis)

We are in the midst of an opioid epidemic. It is best to avoid opioid treatment unless patients have severe pain, and if used, to wean the patient as soon as possible (e.g., in less than 1 week). See treatment of opioid overdose below.

Acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin). Adult dose 325 to 1000 mg every 4 to 6 hours (maximum dose 4000 mg per day); pediatric dose 10 to 15 mg/kg (not to exceed 90 mg/kg/day) every 4 to 6 hours. Do not use aspirin in children <18 years recovering from viral or flu-like illness because of increased risk (of Reye syndrome).

Side effect: Stomach irritation. Don't administer to a person with an ulcer or upset stomach. Take with food or an antacid, if possible. Enteric-coated aspirin (such as Ecotrin) helps prevent stomach irritation and should be used whenever possible.

Acetaminophen (Tylenol). Adult dose 500 to 1000 mg every 4 to 6 hours (maximum dose 4000 mg per day); pediatric dose: up to 1 year, 60 mg; 1 to 3 years, 60 to 120 mg; 3 to 6 years, 120 mg; 6 to 12 years, 240 mg. Acetaminophen taken in too high a quantity acutely or over time can cause liver failure, so it is very important to keep track of the amount ingested, including as part of combination medications.

Codeine. Adult dose 30 to 60 mg every 6 to 8 hours; pediatric dose 0.5 to 1 mg/kg of body weight.

Side effects: Codeine is a narcotic and has side effects of drowsiness and alteration of mental status. In addition, it might cause constipation.

Acetaminophen (Tylenol) 325 mg with codeine 30 mg. Adult dose one to two tablets every 4 to 6 hours.

Hydrocodone 5 mg with acetaminophen 500 mg (Vicodin). Adult dose one to two tablets every 4 to 6 hours. This is a narcotic drug and should not be taken in any situation in which altered mental status will be dangerous.

Ketorolac (Toradol) 10 mg. Adult dose one tablet every 6 to 8 hours. This is an antiinflammatory drug that is particularly useful for persons suffering kidney stones.

For treatment of opioid overdose

Naloxone (Narcan). Adult dose ranges depending on route. For intranasal spray, give full spray in one nostril (2 to 8 mg depending on formulation) and repeat in alternating nostrils every few minutes as needed. See page 45 and Fig. 31.

The route of administration determines the onset of effects; intravenous (IV) is almost immediate, while intranasally may take 5 or more minutes. An autoinjector (EVZIO) comes in a single dose of 0.4 mg or 2 mg (this product has been discontinued in the US). The initial dose is 0.4 mg, but if a synthetic narcotic such as fentanyl has caused the overdose, a total dose of up to 25 mg might be required. The intranasal spray preparation is available in doses of 2 or 4 or 8 mg in 0.1 mL. If the person treated is addicted to an opioid and its effect is reversed by naloxone, they might show severely unpleasant opioid withdrawal symptoms. The duration of effect of the naloxone ranges from 20 to 90 minutes, so you must be alert for the patient to deteriorate again after it has worn off. If this happens, a repeat dose is given, and observation continued.

For relief from fever

Acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin). Adult dose 325 to 1000 mg every 4 to 6 hours (maximum dose 4000 mg per day); pediatric dose 10 to 15 mg/kg (not to exceed 90 mg/kg/day) every 4 to 6 hours. Do not use aspirin in children <18 years recovering from viral or flu-like illness because of increased risk (of Reye syndrome).

Acetaminophen (Tylenol). Adult dose 500 to 1000 mg every 4 to 6 hours (maximum dose 4000 mg per day); pediatric dose: up to 1 year, 60 mg; 1 to 3 years, 60 to 120 mg; 3 to 6 years, 120 mg; 6 to 12 years, 240 mg. Acetaminophen taken in too high a quantity acutely or over time can cause liver failure, so it is very important to keep track of the amount ingested, including as part of combination medications.

Ibuprofen (Motrin, Advil, Nuprin). Adult dose 400 to 600 mg every 4 to 6 hours; pediatric dose 5 to 10 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight, not to exceed 400 mg.

For relief from muscle aches or minor arthritis

Acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin). Adult dose 325 to 1000 mg every 4 to 6 hours (maximum dose 4000 mg per day); pediatric dose 10 to 15 mg/kg (not to exceed 90 mg/kg/day) every 4 to 6 hours. Do not use aspirin in children <18 years recovering from viral or flu-like illness because of increased risk (of Reye syndrome).

Acetaminophen (Tylenol). Adult dose 500 to 1000 mg every 4 to 6 hours (maximum dose 4000 mg per day); pediatric dose: up to 1 year, 60 mg; 1 to 3 years, 60 to 120 mg; 3 to 6 years, 120 mg; 6 to 12 years, 240 mg. Acetaminophen taken in too high a quantity acutely or over time can cause liver failure, so it is very important to keep track of the amount ingested, including as part of combination medications.

Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs listed below ("NSAIDs"; should not be taken on an empty stomach; side effects are abdominal pain and diarrhea).

Ibuprofen (Motrin, Advil, Nuprin). Adult dose 400 to 600 mg every 6 to 8 hours.

Ketoprofen (Orudis KT, Actron). Adult dose 12.5 to 50 mg every 6 to 8 hours.

Naproxen (Naprosyn, Aleve). Adult dose 250 to 500 mg every 6 to 12 hours.

Naproxen sodium (Naprelan). Adult dose 375 or 500 mg sustained release every 24 hours.

Ketorolac (Toradol). Adult dose 10 mg every 8 to 12 hours; don't exceed 3 days' consecutive use.

Diclofenac/Misoprostol (Arthrotec). Adult dose 50 to 75 mg (based on diclofenac) every 6 to 8 hours. This drug should not be given to women who are pregnant or who might become pregnant, because misoprostol might induce a miscarriage.

Celecoxib (Celebrex). Adult dose 10 to 200 mg twice a day. This is a COX-2 antagonist drug. *This drug is possibly associated with a higher incidence of heart attack in persons who use it.*

For relief from muscle spasm

Metaxalone (Skelaxin). Adult dose 800 mg three or four times a day for relief from acute painful muscle spasms.

For relief from migraine headache

Sumatriptan oral tablets. Adult dose 50 to 100 mg every 2 hours, not to exceed 200 mg per day.

Sumatriptan nasal spray. Adult dose 5 or 20 mg every 2 hours, not to exceed 40 mg per day.

Zolmitriptan oral tablets. Adult dose 2.5 to 5 mg every 2 hours, not to exceed 10 mg per day.

Zolmitriptan "melting" tablets. Adult dose 2.5 mg to dissolve under the tongue every 2 hours, not to exceed 10 mg per day.

Rizatriptan oral tablets. Adult dose 5 or 10 mg every 2 hours, not to exceed 30 mg per day. If propranolol is also taken, use the 5 mg dose.

Almotriptan oral tablets. Adult dose 6.25 or 12.5 mg every 2 hours, not to exceed 25 mg per day.

Naratriptan oral tablets. Adult dose 1 or 2.5 mg every 4 hours, not to exceed 5 mg per day.

Frovatriptan oral tablets. Adult dose 2.5 mg every 4 hours, not to exceed 5 mg per day.

Eletriptan oral tablets. Adult dose 20 or 40 mg every 2 hours, not to exceed 80 mg per day.

For relief from itching

Diphenhydramine (Benadryl). Adult dose 25 to 50 mg every 4 to 6 hours; pediatric dose 1 mg/kg of body weight.

Hydroxyzine (Atarax). Adult dose 25 to 50 mg every 8 hours; pediatric dose: up to 6 years 10 mg every 8 hours; 6 to 12 years 10 to 25 mg every 8 hours.

For relief from toothache

Benzocaine-phenol-alcohol (Anbesol). For topical application to the gums.

Oil of cloves. For topical application to the gums.

For relief from motion sickness

Dimenhydrinate (Dramamine). Adult dose 50 mg every 4 to 6 hours; pediatric dose (8 to 12 years of age) 25 mg every 4 to 6 hours.

Side effect: Drowsiness.

Meclizine (Antivert, Bonine). Adult dose 25 to 50 mg one to two times per day. Don't give this drug to children under age 12 years.

Side effect: Drowsiness.

Cyclizine (Marezine). Adult dose 25 mg; pediatric dose 12.5 mg for ages 9 to 12.

Scopolamine (Transderm-Scōp Transdermal Therapeutic System). Adult dose: apply 1 patch (1.5 mg scopolamine) on the hairless area behind the ear. A single patch is good for 3 days. Take care to wash the hands carefully after application of the patch, to avoid getting any medication in the eyes. Not approved for children under age 12.

Side effects: Blurred vision, dry mouth, decreased sweating, difficulty with urination, propensity to heat illness, altered mental status. A diver who uses this preparation should be alert to the danger of heat illness while out of the water encased in a constrictive (heat-retaining) wet suit.

For relief from nausea and vomiting

Ondansetron (Zofran). Adult dose 4 or 8 mg tablet dissolved on the tongue every 8 hours; pediatric dose 0.15 mg/kg body weight of the oral dissolving tablet every 8 hours. This drug is also indicated for nausea and vomiting after surgery or associated with chemotherapy. It appears to be safe in children and in the elderly.

Alcohol wipe. In adults, inhaling isopropyl alcohol fumes from an alcohol-saturated pad (“wipe”) held ½ to 1 inch from the nose, with or without taking ondansetron, has been reported effective to relieve nausea.

Prochlorperazine (Compazine). Adult dose 5 to 10 mg by mouth every 8 to 12 hours (by suppository 25 mg twice daily). Don’t give this drug to children under age 12 years.

Side effects: Neck spasms, difficulty in swallowing and talking (inability to control the tongue—it might stiffen and/or protrude from the mouth), restlessness, difficulty with eye movement, and muscle stiffness. These side effects might occur in combination (“dystonic reaction”). If any of these occur, discontinue use of the drug and administer diphenhydramine (Benadryl) 50 mg every 6 hours for four doses. If a child has a dystonic reaction, the dose of diphenhydramine (Benadryl) to alleviate the side effects is 1 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight. Be certain that the victim is capable of purposeful swallowing.

Promethazine (Phenergan). Adult dose 25 mg every 6 to 8 hours (by suppository 12.5 to 25 mg every 12 hours); pediatric dose 0.25 to 0.5 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight by mouth or per rectum (suppository).

Side effects: Similar to those with prochlorperazine.

Trimethobenzamide (Tigan). Adult dose 250 mg by mouth or 200 mg by suppository every 6 to 8 hours.

Side effects: Similar to those with prochlorperazine.

Metoclopramide (Reglan). Adult dose 10 mg by mouth every 6 hours.

Side effect: Movement disorder.

Cyclizine hydrochloride (Marezine). Adult dose 25 to 50 mg every 6 to 8 hours.

For relief from diarrhea

Loperamide (Imodium or Pepto Diarrhea Control caplets). Adult dose two pills (2 mg each) initially, followed by one pill after each loose bowel movement, not to exceed eight pills. With uncomplicated (no fever or blood in stools) watery diarrhea, this drug can be given to children aged 2 years and older. The dose in children is 0.2 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight every 6 hours. The liquid preparation contains 1 mg per 5 teaspoons (5 mL).

Diphenoxylate (Lomotil). Adult dose two tablets two to four times per day. Don't give this drug to children under age 18 years.

Bismuth subsalicylate (Pepto-Bismol). Adult dose 2 tablespoons (30 mL) or two tablets every 30 to 60 minutes, not to exceed 8 to 10 doses; pediatric dose: 3 to 6 years, 1 teaspoon (5 mL) or ½ tablet; 6 to 10 years, 2 teaspoons (10 mL) or one tablet; 1 to 14 years, 4 teaspoons (20 mL) or 1½ tablets; may repeat dose in children every 1 hour, not to exceed four doses. This drug should not be given to people who are sensitive to aspirin-containing products, have kidney disease or gout, or who are taking anticoagulants, probenecid, or methotrexate.

Side effects: Black discoloration of the tongue and bowel movements, ringing in the ears, nausea, and constipation.

Kaolin-pectin (Kaopectate). Adult dose 4 to 8 tablespoons (60 to 120 mL) after each loose bowel movement; pediatric dose: 3 to 6 years 1 to 2 tablespoons (15 to 30 mL); 6 to 12 years 2 to 4 tablespoons (30 to 60 mL); older than 12 years 4 tablespoons (60 mL) after each loose bowel movement. This drug is of limited value; it does not shorten the course of diarrheal illness and acts only to add a little consistency to stools.

For relief from constipation

Mineral oil. Adult dose 1 to 2 tablespoons (15 to 30 mL); pediatric (older than 5 years) dose 1 to 2 teaspoons (5 to 10 mL). This drug is a mild laxative.

Docusate sodium (Colace). Adult dose 100 mg twice a day; pediatric dose 0.3 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight once or twice a day. The dose should be adjusted to the response. This drug is a stool softener.

Docusate sodium (stool softener) with casanthranol (laxative) (Peri-Colace). Adult dose one capsule once or twice a day.

Docusate sodium (stool softener) 5 mL microenema. Adult dose 200 mg (one enema) once a day as necessary.

Docusate calcium (stool softener) (Surfak Stool Softener Gel Cap). Adult dose 240 mg once or twice a day.

Senna extract (Senokot). Two tablets a day at bedtime. This drug is a mild laxative.

Magnesium hydroxide (Phillips' Milk of Magnesia). Adult dose 1 to 2 tablespoons (15 to 30 mL) once or twice a day. This drug is a mild laxative.

Magnesium citrate (Evac-Q-Mag). Adult dose 10 to 20 tablespoons (150 to 300 mL) as needed.

Lactulose syrup, USP (Duphalac). Adult dose 1 to 2 tablespoons (15 to 30 mL) daily. This drug is a mild laxative.

Bisacodyl (Dulcolax). Adult dose two 5 mg tablets or one 10 mg suppository. This drug is a moderate laxative. A child aged 6 to 12 years may take one 5 mg tablet.

Cascara sagrada 150 mg; aloe 100 mg (Nature's Remedy) (laxative). Adult dose two tablets a day.

Psyllium mucilloid (Metamucil, Perdiem, Fiberall). Adult dose titrate up to 20 g per day. These natural psyllium fiber products increase the bulk of the stool and should be ingested with at least a quart (liter) of liquid.

Methylcellulose (Citrucel). Adult dose titrate up to 20 g per day.

Polycarbophil (Fibercon, Equalactin, Konsyl). Adult dose titrate up to 20 g per day.

Lactulose. 10 mg/15 mL of syrup. Adult dose 15 to 30 mL per day, up to 60 mL per day.

Polyethylene glycol solution (MiraLax). Adult dose 17 g powder (1 heaping tablespoon) dissolved in 8 oz (240 mL) water, taken once per day for up to 4 days to produce a bowel movement.

For relief from ulcer pain

Mylanta II. Adult dose 2 tablespoons (30 mL) or two tablets (chewed) 1 and 3 hours after meals, at bedtime, and as needed. This is a mixture of aluminum hydroxide, magnesium hydroxide, and simethicone.

Rolaids. Adult dose one to two tablets (chewed) after meals as necessary. These contain dihydroxy-aluminum sodium carbonate. Because of the relatively high sodium content, these should not be used routinely by people with congestive heart failure (see page 54).

Cimetidine (Tagamet). Adult dose 300 mg three times a day with meals and at bedtime. This H2RA (antagonist to histamine H2 receptor) drug decreases the secretion of gastric acid.

Ranitidine hydrochloride (Zantac). (RECALLED) Adult dose 75 to 150 mg two times a day. This H2RA drug decreases the secretion of gastric acid. Recalled in 2020 by the FDA because it was determined that some medications containing ranitidine contain a possible cancer-causing nitrosamine impurity called N-nitrosodimethlamine (NDMA) at low levels.

Famotidine (Pepcid). Adult dose 20 mg twice a day or 40 mg at bedtime for 4 weeks to treat an active duodenal ulcer, then 20 mg at bedtime for 2 to 4 weeks for suppression therapy to diminish the secretion of gastric acid. This H2RA drug decreases the secretion of gastric acid.

Propantheline bromide (Pro-Banthine). Adult dose 7.5 to 15 mg three times a day before meals and at bedtime. This drug is used to control gastric acid secretion and to reduce bowel activity (decrease cramping).

Sucralfate (Carafate). Adult dose one tablet (gram) 1 hour before meals and at bedtime. This drug binds to the ulcer crater and therefore requires the presence of acid to work properly. Thus, antacids should not be ingested within 30 minutes before or after the ingestion of sucralfate.

Omeprazole (Prilosec). Adult dose one capsule (20 mg) a day given 30 minutes before a meal. This proton (acid) pump inhibitor (PPI) drug diminishes gastric acid secretion.

Rabeprazole (Aciphex). Adult dose 20 mg once a day. This PPI drug diminishes gastric acid secretion.

For relief from indigestion or gas pains

Antacid (such as Mylanta II). Same as “For Relief from Ulcer Pain.”

Simethicone (Mylicon-80). Adult dose one to two tablets (chewed) after meals and at bedtime.

For relief from heartburn (reflux esophagitis)

Omeprazole (Prilosec). Adult dose 10 to 20 mg once a day.

Antacid (such as Mylanta II). Same as “For Relief from Ulcer Pain.”

Ranitidine hydrochloride (Zantac). (RECALLED) Adult dose 75 mg every 12 hours as needed. This H2RA (antagonist to histamine H2 receptor) drug decreases the secretion of gastric acid. Recalled in 2020 by the FDA because it was determined that some medications containing ranitidine contain a possible cancer-causing nitrosamine impurity called NDMA at low levels.

Cimetidine (Tagamet HB). Adult dose 200 mg (two 100 mg tablets) 30 to 60 minutes before a meal, not to exceed twice in a 24-hour period. This H2RA drug decreases the secretion of gastric acid.

Famotidine (Pepcid AC). Adult dose 10 to 20 mg as 10 mg chewable tablet or gelcap twice a day for up to 6 weeks.

Gaviscon or Gaviscon II. Adult dose one to two tablets (chewed) or 1 to 2 tablespoons (15 to 30 mL) (liquid preparation) after each meal and at bedtime. This is a mixture of aluminum hydroxide, magnesium trisilicate, sodium bicarbonate, and alginic acid.

Metoclopramide hydrochloride (Reglan). Adult dose 10 mg up to four times a day, 30 minutes before meals and at bedtime.

Side effects: Rarely, neck spasms, difficulty in swallowing and talking (inability to control the tongue—it might stiffen and protrude from the mouth), difficulty with eye movement, and muscle stiffness. These side effects might occur in combination ("dystonic reaction"). If any of these occur, discontinue use of the drug and administer diphenhydramine (Benadryl) 50 mg every 6 hours for four doses. Be certain that the victim is capable of purposeful swallowing.

For relief from nasal congestion

Pseudoephedrine (Sudafed). Adult dose 30 to 60 mg every 6 to 8 hours; pediatric dose 1 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight. The U.S. FDA recommends that this drug not be used in children under 6 years of age.

Phenylephrine hydrochloride 0.25% nasal spray (Neo-Synephrine ¼ %). Adult dose two to three drops or sprays twice a day; pediatric dose (older than 6 years) 0.125% two drops twice a day. Don't use this drug for more than 3 consecutive days, to avoid "rebound" swelling of the nasal passages from chemical irritation and sensitization to the medicine.

Oxymetazoline hydrochloride 0.05% (Afrin). Adult dose two to three drops or sprays twice a day; pediatric dose (older than 6 years) two 0.025% (half-strength) drops twice a day. Don't use this drug for more than 3 consecutive days, to avoid "rebound" swelling of the nasal passages from chemical irritation and sensitization to the medicine.

For relief from cough

A U.S. FDA advisory panel in 2007 recommended that there is no evidence that over-the-counter cold and cough medicines work in children and that the products should not be given to children younger than 6 years of age.

Glyceryl guaiacolate (Robitussin) expectorant. Adult dose 1 teaspoon (5 mL) every 3 to 4 hours.

Robitussin A-C: Plus codeine (cough suppressant).
Robitussin-DAC: Plus codeine, pseudoephedrine (decongestant).
Robitussin-PE: Plus pseudoephedrine.
Robitussin-DM: Plus dextromethorphan (cough suppressant).

Codeine. Adult dose 15 to 30 mg every 4 to 6 hours. This is a potent cough suppressant.

CoTylenol Liquid Cold Formula. Adult dose 2 tablespoons (30 mL) every 6 hours; 2 tablespoons (30 mL) contains dextromethorphan hydrobromide 30 mg (for cough), acetaminophen 650 mg (for fever, aches), chlorpheniramine maleate (antihistamine) 4 mg, and pseudoephedrine hydrochloride (decongestant) 60 mg.

Dextromethorphan hydrobromide–guaifenesin (Vicks Cough Syrup). Adult dose 2 to 3 teaspoons (10 to 15 mL) every 4 to 6 hours.

Dextromethorphan hydrobromide–guaifenesin–phenylpropanolamine (Naldecon cough syrup). Adult dose 1 teaspoon (5 mL) every 4 hours.

Buckwheat honey. Dose 1 to 2 teaspoons for children ages 2 to 18 years. *It is not advised to feed honey to infants or children younger than 12 months of age because of the risk of infant botulism.*

Mucinex (guaifenesin 600 mg). This drug is taken every 12 hours and works to help loosen phlegm (mucus) and thin bronchial secretions to rid the bronchial passageways of bothersome mucus and make coughs more productive.

For relief from sore throat

Benzocaine-hexylresorcinol (Sucrets antiseptic throat lozenges).
Benzocaine-cetylpyridinium (Cēpacol lozenges, Vicks lozenges).

Cold formulas

A U.S. FDA advisory panel in 2007 recommended that there is no evidence that over-the-counter cold and cough medicines work in children and that the products should *not* be given to children younger than 6 years of age.

Skin medications

Antiseptic ointments, solutions, and scrubs

Apply ointments thinly to the skin twice a day. Be aware that allergic reactions are possible.

Bacitracin antiseptic ointment.

Bacitracin–polymyxin B sulfate (Polysporin) ointment.

Mupirocin (Bactroban) 2% ointment.

Mupirocin (Bactroban) calcium 2% cream.

Bacitracin–polymyxin B sulfate–neomycin (Neosporin, triple antibiotic, or Mycitracin) ointment.

Neomycin-gramicidin (Spectrocin) ointment.

Neomycin (Myciguent) ointment.

Retapamulin 1% (Altabax) ointment.

Povidone–iodine 0.5% (Betadine First Aid) cream.

Silver sulfadiazine (Silvadene) cream. Soothing antiseptic cream for burns; apply to the skin once or twice a day. Don't use in children younger than 2 years. Avoid use on the face.

Benzalkonium chloride (Zephiran) antiseptic solution (1:750 dilution in water). May be used full strength to clean unbroken skin but should be diluted 1:2 or 1:3 with water to swab an open wound or animal bite (to kill rabies virus).

Hexachlorophene scrub (Phisohex). Use as a scrubbing soap on cuts, scrapes, and infected skin. Don't use on children under 1 year of age.

Povidone–iodine (Betadine) antiseptic solution. Use in a 1:10 dilution with water to gently scrub cuts and scrapes.

Anti itch, anti sting

Campho-Phenique. Topical anti itch gel medication consisting of camphorated phenol in mineral oil.

Campho-Phenique Maximum Strength ointment or Neosporin Plus ointment or Mycitracin Plus ointment. Topical anti itch and antiseptic medication consisting of lidocaine hydrochloride, bacitracin zinc, neomycin sulfate, and polymyxin B sulfate.

Lidocaine hydrochloride 2.5% anesthetic ointment. Use for relief from pain due to scrapes; apply to the skin and leave in place for 10 minutes before scrubbing. Don't apply if the area to be covered is greater than 5% of the total body surface area (an area approximately four to five times the size of the victim's palm).

Benzalkonium chloride 0.13%; lidocaine hydrochloride 2.5% (Bactine solution). Very mild antiseptic–anesthetic combination available over the counter. May be used to swab animal bites if Zephiran is not available.

Calamine lotion. Apply thinly as a drying agent two to three times a day to skin affected with poison ivy, oak, or sumac.

Phenolated (1%) calamine lotion. Apply thinly as a drying agent two to three times a day to skin affected with poison ivy, oak, or sumac.

Calamine–pramoxine hydrochloride 1% (Caladryl). Apply thinly as a drying agent two to three times a day to skin affected with poison ivy, oak, or sumac.

Hydrocortisone and pramoxine (Pramosone). Topical anti itch medication for skin rashes due to plant allergy, insect bites, or sunburn. Apply two to three times a day.

Antifungal cream, lotion, pill, spray, and powder

Apply to the skin two to three times a day for athlete's foot or jock itch.

Tolnaftate 1% (Tinactin, Aftate)
Terbinafine 1% cream or spray (Lamisil)
Clotrimazole 1% (Lotrimin, Mycelex)
Clotrimazole oral
Zinc undecylenate (Desenex)
Miconazole nitrate 2% (Micatin)
Naftifine (Naftin) 2%

Nizoral cream. Apply thinly once or twice a day to treat yeast or fungal infection.

Nizoral. 400 mg one oral dose for tinea versicolor (harmless yeast overgrowth on the skin); induce mild sweating 2 to 4 hours after dose; don't shower for 8 hours after dose (the drug is excreted in sweat).

Spectazole cream. Apply thinly once or twice a day to treat yeast or fungal infection.

Antimites

Permethrin 5% cream (Elimite). Apply to entire skin, leave on for 8 hours, and then shower for treatment of scabies; appears to be safe in pregnant women and children over 2 months of age.

Permethrin 1% creme rinse (Nix). Apply to washed and towel-dried hair, leave on for 10 minutes, and then rinse thoroughly and comb out nits for treatment of head lice.

Malathion (Ovide). Apply to dry hair, leave on without occlusion for 8 to 12 hours, and then shampoo and rinse thoroughly and comb out nits for treatment of head lice.

Crotamiton (Eurax). For topical use only. To treat scabies, take a bath or shower. Apply the medication over the whole body from the chin down. Rub in gently, paying special attention to skinfolds and creases. Trim fingernails and apply the medication under the nails. Change all clothing and bed linens the next morning and wash them in the hot cycle of the washing machine. A second application of the medication should be done in 24 hours. Take a good cleaning bath or shower 48 hours after the last application. To relieve dry skin, apply a small amount of the medication to the affected area and rub it in gently until it disappears. Avoid use on open, irritated, or inflamed skin. Avoid use near the eyes, mouth, or vagina.

Spinosad (Natroba) 0.9% suspension. For topical use only. Apply as a liquid to the affected scalp and hair to treat head lice. Shake the suspension well right before each use to mix the medication evenly. Cover the face and eyes with a towel and keep eyes closed during treatment. Apply spinosad suspension to dry hair and scalp area. Use enough suspension to cover the entire scalp area first and then apply upward toward the ends of the hair to cover all of the hair. Keep the suspension on the hair and scalp for 10 minutes. After 10 minutes, rinse the suspension from the scalp and hair with warm water. You should not use a shower or bathtub to rinse the suspension away because you do not want to get the suspension over the rest of your body. Anyone who helped apply the suspension should wash their hands carefully after the application and rinsing steps. Shampoo the hair after rinsing the suspension from the scalp and hair. Repeat the procedure in 1 week if lice are still present.

Topical steroids

Hydrocortisone 1% cream, 2.5% cream (Hytone). Safe for infants, face, perianal area, skinfolds.

Triamcinolone 0.1% ointment. Often mixed with Eucerin cream 1:1; moisturizer increases penetration—too potent for face, genitalia, or infants.

For sleep

Diphenhydramine (Benadryl, Sominex, Nytol). Adult dose 50 mg at bedtime.

Triazolam (Halcion). Adult dose 0.125 to 0.25 mg at bedtime. This is short-acting and might be a better choice at high altitude.

Side effects: Short-term memory loss, bad dreams.

Zolpidem tartrate (Ambien). Adult dose 5 to 10 mg, or 6.25 mg or 12.5 mg extended release, at bedtime. There have been rare reports of hallucinations in people who took higher doses; elders might be prone to such a reaction. Cautions to users should include information that impaired performance (e.g., driving) might be present the morning after using zolpidem, particularly extended-release forms of the medication. The medication can also cause paradoxical alertness instead of sleep.

Zaleplon (Sonata). Adult dose 5 to 10 mg at bedtime. The dose is 5 mg for elderly, debilitated, or liver-impaired adults.

Eszopiclone (Lunesta). Adult dose 1, 2, or 3 mg at bedtime. A dose of 3 mg can cause impairment to motor skills (such as driving), memory, and coordination that can last more than 11 hours after taking an evening dose, so it is best to begin with a dose of 1 mg at bedtime.

Ramelteon (Rozerem). Adult dose 8 mg at bedtime.

Temazepam (Restoril). Adult dose 15 to 30 mg at bedtime.

Flurazepam (Dalmane). Adult dose 15 to 30 mg at bedtime.

Melatonin. The hormone melatonin is endogenously produced by humans in the pineal gland from the precursor tryptophan. Melatonin levels in the blood increase and are highest during normal hours of sleep, decreasing toward morning.

Sold over the counter, melatonin is considered a “dietary supplement” and thus does not come under the scrutiny of the U.S. FDA. The science supporting its use to induce sleep, decrease wakefulness during sleep, and decrease jet lag is preliminary and suggests that it might be beneficial, without any obvious adverse effects. The doses cited range from 1 to 5 mg administered orally 1 to 2 hours before going to bed. Recommendations for its use to treat jet lag are found on page 440.

Antibiotics

FLUOROQUINOLONE ANTIBACTERIAL DRUGS PRECAUTION: Throughout the book, there is occasional mention of the antibacterial ciprofloxacin and other antibiotics in the fluroquinolone category (“fluoroquinolones”). Evolving medical wisdom is to not recommend fluroquinolone medications for sinusitis, bronchitis, and uncomplicated urinary tract infections (unless there are no other treatment options) because of possible serious side effects. These side effects include tendinopathies (e.g., inflamed tendons such as the Achilles tendon) or even a weakened aorta, particularly in persons who are elderly or known to suffer from high blood pressure, have vascular disease or aneurysms, or certain rare conditions that affect collagen (which contributes to blood vessel and tendon strength). Furthermore, the U.S. FDA has recently issued labeling changes for fluoroquinolones due to case reports of side effects of low blood sugar and mental health problems (disturbance in attention, agitation, disorientation, nervousness, memory impairment, delirium). To what extent fluoroquinolones will cease to be used by medical professionals will become known over time. In the meantime, these drugs should be selected as a last choice only if no other effective antibiotic is available.

If not otherwise specified, the default initial duration for administration of an antibiotic is 7 days. *When a pediatric dose is calculated (based on body weight), do not exceed the adult dose.*

Amoxicillin. Adult dose 250 to 500 mg every 8 hours; pediatric dose 10 to 15 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight every 8 hours (three times a day).

Amoxicillin–clavulanate (Augmentin). Adult dose 500 to 875 mg two times a day; pediatric dose 25 to 45 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight in two divided doses per day. For otitis media in children, use the higher dose.

Ampicillin. Same dose as phenoxymethyl penicillin (see later).

Azithromycin (Zithromax). Adult dose 500 mg day 1, then 250 mg per day for 4 additional days; pediatric dose 10 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight day 1, then 5 mg/kg body weight for 4 additional days. *Caution:* Azithromycin can cause abnormal changes in the electrical activity of the heart that might lead to a potentially fatal irregular heart rhythm. Persons at particular risk for this complication include those with existing "prolonged QT interval, " low blood levels of potassium or magnesium, a slower than normal heart rate, or use of certain heart medications.

Cefadroxil (Duricef). Adult dose 500 mg to 1 g twice a day. For pharyngitis, to eradicate the group A streptococcus, an acceptable dose is 1 g once a day for 10 days. Pediatric dose: for skin infections, 30 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight per day in two divided doses; for pharyngitis, administer in a single dose or two divided doses for 10 days.

Cefdinir. Adult dose 300 mg twice per day; pediatric dose 7 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight twice per day.

Cefixime. Adult dose 400 mg per day; pediatric dose 8 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight once per day; no refrigeration needed—discard 14 days after the dry powder is reconstituted with water.

Cefuroxime axetil. Adult dose 500 mg twice a day; pediatric dose 30 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight in two divided doses a day.

Cefpodoxime (Vantin). Adult dose 200 to 400 mg twice a day for pneumonia; pediatric dose 10 mg/kg (2.2 lb) body weight in two divided doses.

Cefprozil (Cefzil). Adult dose 500 g once a day; pediatric dose 15 to 30 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight twice per day.

Ceftibuten (Cedax). Adult dose 400 mg once a day; pediatric dose 9 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight once per day.

Cephalexin (Keflex). Adult dose 250 mg every 4 to 6 hours or 500 mg every 12 hours; pediatric dose the same as for phenoxymethyl penicillin. *Avoid use* in a person with true penicillin allergy (manifested as anaphylaxis), because at least 2% of those allergic to penicillin are also allergic to cephalosporins.

Ciprofloxacin (Cipro). (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.) Adult dose 500 mg twice a day for 3 days to treat infectious diarrhea. This drug should not be given to pregnant women or children under age 18 years. This drug should not be administered to someone with myasthenia gravis, because of the possibility of a prolonged myasthenic crisis.

Clarithromycin (Biaxin). Adult dose 500 mg twice a day; pediatric dose 15 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight in two divided doses per day. *This drug should optimally not be given to a person taking atorvastatin, simvastatin, or lovastatin, to avoid the possible side effect of breaking down muscle tissue.*

Clindamycin (Cleocin). Adult dose 300 mg three times a day; pediatric dose 30 mg/kg (2.2. lb) of body weight in three or four divided doses per day.

Dicloxacillin. Same dose as phenoxymethyl penicillin (later).

Doxycycline (Vibramycin). Adult dose 100 mg twice a day for treatment, or once a day for prevention, of infectious diarrhea. Don't give to pregnant women or children up to age 7 years, because this drug might cause permanent dark discoloration of the teeth. Children above age 7 years may take 2 to 4 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight in two or four divided doses.

Erythromycin. Same dose as phenoxymethyl penicillin (see later). Common side effects are stomach upset and diarrhea. This drug is the first alternative to penicillin in penicillin-allergic individuals. *This drug should not be taken in combination with nitroimidazole antifungal agents (ketoconazole, itraconazole, fluconazole), diltiazem, verapamil, or troleandomycin because of a potential interaction that might cause a serious abnormal heart rhythm associated with sudden death. This drug should optimally not be given to a person taking atorvastatin, simvastatin, or lovastatin, to avoid the possible side effect of breaking down muscle tissue.*

Fleroxacin. Adult dose 400 mg once a day for 3 days for the treatment of infectious diarrhea. This drug should not be administered to someone with myasthenia gravis, because of the possibility of a prolonged myasthenic crisis. This is a fluoroquinolone antibiotic. (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.)

Levofloxacin. Adult dose 250 to 500 mg once a day. This drug should not be administered to someone with myasthenia gravis, because of the possibility of a prolonged myasthenic crisis. This is a fluoroquinolone antibiotic. (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.)

Linezolid (Zyvox). Adult dose 400 to 600 mg twice a day for methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) infection; pediatric dose 30 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight in three divided doses.

Loracarbef (Lorabid). Adult dose 200 to 400 mg every 12 hours; pediatric dose 7.5 to 15 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight every 12 hours.

Metronidazole (Flagyl). Adult dose 250 mg three times a day. Don't drink alcohol when taking this medication and for 3 days afterward; the interaction would cause severe abdominal pain, nausea, and vomiting.

Moxifloxacin (Avelox). Adult dose 400 mg once a day. This drug should not be administered to someone with myasthenia gravis, because of the possibility of a prolonged myasthenic crisis. This is a fluoroquinolone antibiotic. (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.)

Noroxin. Adult dose 400 mg every 12 hours. This drug should not be administered to someone with myasthenia gravis, because of the possibility of a prolonged myasthenic crisis. This is a fluoroquinolone antibiotic. (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.)

Ofloxacin. Adult dose 300 to 400 mg every 12 hours. This drug should not be administered to someone with myasthenia gravis, because of the possibility of a prolonged myasthenic crisis. This is a fluoroquinolone antibiotic.

Phenoxymethyl penicillin (Penicillin VK). Adult dose 250 to 500 mg every 4 to 6 hours; pediatric dose: 2 to 6 years, 125 mg every 6 to 8 hours; 6 to 10 years, 250 mg every 6 to 8 hours. For pharyngitis, to eradicate the group A *Streptococcus*, an acceptable adult dose is 1 g twice a day for 10 days. Swelling of the lips, eyes, and mucous membranes occurs in about 1 per 10, 000 courses of penicillin.

Rifampin (Rifadin). Adult and pediatric dose 20 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight per day in two or four divided doses, not to exceed 600 mg per day.

Rifaximin. Adult (ages 12 years and older) dose 200 mg three times a day for traveler's diarrhea.

Sparfloxacin (Zagam). Adult dose 400 mg day 1, then 200 mg each day. *This drug should not be administered to someone with myasthenia gravis, because of the possibility of a prolonged myasthenic crisis.* This is a fluoroquinolone antibiotic. (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.)

Sulfisoxazole (Gantrisin). Pediatric dose 150 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight in four to six divided doses a day, not to exceed 6 g per day.

Telithromycin (Ketek). Adult (ages 13 years and older) dose 800 mg once a day.

Tetracycline. Adult dose 500 mg four times a day. Don't give to pregnant women or children up to age 7, because this drug might cause permanent dark discoloration of the teeth.

Tinidazole (Tiniba, Fasigyn). Adult dose 2 g in a single dose; pediatric dose 50 mg/kg (2.2 lb) of body weight in a single dose.

Trimethoprim–sulfamethoxazole (Bactrim or Septra DS [double strength]). Adult dose one pill (80 mg trimethoprim with 400 mg sulfamethoxazole) twice a day for infectious diarrhea or bladder infection; one pill once a day for prevention of traveler's diarrhea. The pediatric dose for an ear infection, MRSA infection, or severe infectious diarrhea (caused by *Shigella* bacteria) is 1 teaspoon (5 mL) of the pediatric suspension per 10 kg (22 lb) of body weight every 12 hours (twice a day), not to exceed 4 teaspoons (20 mL) (the adult dose) per dose. More precisely, the pediatric dose is 4 mg/kg/dose trimethoprim (TMP) with 20 mg/kg/dose sulfamethoxazole (SMX). *It is possible that elder patients who take TMP-SMX might be at increased risk for high blood level of potassium.*

Trovafloxacin (Trovan). Adult dose 200 mg once a day for 5 to 7 days to treat acute sinusitis. *This drug should not be administered to someone with myasthenia gravis, because of the possibility of a prolonged myasthenic crisis.* This is a fluoroquinolone antibiotic. (See fluoroquinolone antibacterial drugs precaution on page 498.)

Appendix Two: Conversion tables

Fahrenheit and centigrade (celsius) temperature conversion

To convert degrees Fahrenheit (°F) into degrees centigrade (°C, or Celsius), subtract 32, then multiply by 5, then divide by 9. To convert degrees C into degrees F, multiply by 9, then divide by 5, then add 32. For extrapolation into “subzero” (below 0°F) range, be aware that 1 Fahrenheit degree represents the temperature change of ⁵⁄₉ of a centigrade degree, or 1 centigrade degree represents 1.8 times the temperature change of a Fahrenheit degree. For example, to obtain the centigrade number equivalent to 0°F, subtract 32 from 0° (which yields −32), then multiply by ⁵⁄₉, which yields −17.8 centigrade. However, recall that when most people use the phrase *17 below*, they are referring to below 0 on the Fahrenheit scale.

Degrees Centigrade	**Degrees Fahrenheit**
−17.8	0
−17	1.4
−16	3.2
−15	5.0
−14	6.8
−13	8.6
−12	10.4
−11	12.2
−10	14.0
−9	15.8
−8	17.6
−7	19.4
−6	21.2
−5	23.0
−4	24.8
−3	26.6
−2	28.4
−1	30.2
0	32.0
1	33.8
2	35.6
3	37.4
4	39.2
5	41.0
6	42.8
7	44.6
8	46.4

Degrees Centigrade	**Degrees Fahrenheit**
9	48.2
10	50.0
11	51.8
12	53.6
13	55.4
14	57.2
15	59.0
16	60.8
17	62.6
18	64.4
19	66.2
20	68.0
21	69.8
22	71.6
23	73.4
24	75.2
25	77.0
26	78.8
27	80.6
28	82.4
29	84.2
30	86.0
31	87.8
32	89.6
33	91.4
34	93.2
35	95.0

Degrees Centigrade	Degrees Fahrenheit
36	96.8
37	98.6
38	100.4
39	102.2
40	104.0
41	105.8
42	107.6
43	109.4
44	111.2
45	113.0
46	114.8
47	116.6
48	118.4
49	120.2
50	122.0
100	212.0

Measures of length

Unit	**U.S. Equivalent**	**Metric Equivalent**
Inch	1 inch	0.0254 m; 2.54 cm
Foot	12 inches; 0.333 yd	0.3048 m; 30.48 cm
Yard	3 ft; 36 inches	0.914 m
Fathom	6 ft; 72 inches	1.83 m
Rod	16.5 ft; 5.5 yd	5.029 m
Mile	5280 ft; 1760 yd	1608.64 m; 1.609 km
Millimeter	0.03937 inch	0.001 m
Centimeter	0.3937 inch	0.01 m
Decimeter	3.937 inch	0.1 m
Meter	39.37 inches; 3.28 ft	1 m
Decameter	10.93 yd	10 m
Hectometer	328.08 ft; 109.36 yd	100 m
Kilometer	0.6214 miles	1000 m

Measures of volume (capacity)

Unit	U.S. Equivalent	Metric Equivalent
Minim	1⁄60 fluidram	0.061610 mL
Drop	0.017 fluid oz	0.5 mL
Fluidram	60 minims	3.696 mL
Teaspoon	0.170 fl oz	5 mL
Tablespoon	3 tsp; 0.51 fl oz	15 mL
Fluid ounce	8 fluidrams	29.573 mL
Gill	4 fl oz	118.291 mL
Cup	8 fl oz; 16 tbsp	236.58 mL
Pint	2 cups	0.473 liter
Quart	2 pints; ¼ gallon	0.946 liter
Gallon	4 quarts	3.785 liters
Barrel	31.5 gallons	119.23 liters
Hogshead	2 barrels; 63 gallons	238.46 liters
Milliliter	0.034 fl oz	0.001 liter
Centiliter	0.338 fl oz	0.01 liter
Deciliter	3.38 fl oz	0.1 liter
Liter	1.05 quarts	1 liter; 1000 mL
Kiloliter	1050 quarts; 262.5 gallons	1000 liters

Measures of weight

Unit	U.S. Equivalent	Metric Equivalent
Grain	0.002083 oz (apothecary)	0.0648 g; 64.8 mg
Gram	0.04 oz; 0.002 lb	1 g
Ounce (avoirdupois)	437 grains	28.349 g
Pound (avoirdupois)	16 oz; 7000 grains	0.453 kg; 454 g
Ton (short)	2000 lb	0.907 metric ton

Conversion between feet and meters

Feet to meters

Feet	**Meters**
1	0.30
10	3.05
100	30.48
1, 000	304.8
2, 000	609.6
3, 000	914
4, 000	1, 219
5, 000	1, 524
6, 000	1, 829
7, 000	2, 134
8, 000	2, 438
9, 000	2, 743
10, 000	3, 048
11, 000	3, 353
12, 000	3, 658
13, 000	3, 962
14, 000	4, 267
15, 000	4, 572
16, 000	4, 877
17, 000	5, 182
18, 000	5, 486
19, 000	5, 791
20, 000	6, 096
21, 000	6, 401
22, 000	6, 705
23, 000	7, 010
24, 000	7, 315

Feet	**Meters**
25, 000	7, 620
26, 000	7, 925
27, 000	8, 230
28, 000	8, 534
29, 000	8, 839

Appendix Three: Guidelines for prevention of diseases transmitted via human blood and other bodily fluids

Human fluids commonly encountered by laypeople during medical or recreational activities that would be considered high risk for the transmission of disease include blood, semen, vaginal secretions, saliva, and any fluid contaminated by blood, feces, and urine. Not all fluids are of equal risk, depending on the infectious agent. For instance, feces, nasal secretions, respiratory secretions, sweat, tears, urine, and vomitus don't appear to appreciably transmit the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), but it's usually difficult to tell if these fluids are contaminated with blood. Therefore, it's safest to assume that any bodily fluid can transmit disease and to avoid unprotected contact with any moist human body substance.

There are some situations in which caution should be very high for a possible infectious disease. These include fever greater than 102°F (38.9°C), unexplained bleeding, jaundice, deep purple spotted rash, reddened eyes, swollen/tender/bruised lymph nodes, "pox" rash, severe cough, rapidly progressive severe illness, and multiple persons stricken ill during a tight time period who have been in close proximity.

To minimize the transmission of infectious disease, a medical rescuer should take the following precautions:

- Be careful with sharp objects, such as knives and needles. Obtain all available useful immunizations, including hepatitis and varicella.
- Use personal protective equipment, such as disposable nitrile gloves (any liquid-impermeable gloves or even a thin plastic bag will do in a pinch; avoid latex gloves because of the risk for latex allergy), goggles (eye shields, glasses, ski goggles), pocket face mask or barrier shield (for rescue breathing), and gown or overclothing. A properly fitted N95 face mask can be worn if an airborne or contagious droplet-spread germ is suspected. If a face mask is not available, a bandana might provide some protection. In cold weather, thin glove liners can be worn under disposable gloves.
- After any victim contact, even if gloves are worn, wash your hands thoroughly with soap and water. If you have only one pair of gloves and need to care for more than one patient, wash your gloved hands or at least rinse them between patients. If a glove breaks during contact with a victim, remove it and wash your hands immediately.
- While unbroken skin is very protective, if skin is exposed to a victim's bodily fluid, it should be washed immediately with soap and water. If

soap and water aren't available, use waterless antiseptic hand cleanser, plain water, or snow.

- Carry materials contaminated by bodily fluids in clearly labeled nonpermeable containers, such as heavy plastic bags. Carry "sharps" (e.g., used needles) in impenetrable containers.
- If floors, clothes, bedding, or equipment (such as a litter) have been contaminated by a bodily fluid and must be reused, it should be cleaned with soap and water, followed by scrubbing with bleach (see below). Wear gloves while cleaning the equipment. Eyeglasses can be washed with soap and water.

Household bleach containing sodium hypochlorite usually has a 5% concentration of chlorine, but when preparing any solution, take care to note the precise original concentration. Because bleach loses its concentration of chlorine over time, be certain that the bleach has the odor of chlorine. Do not use "thick bleach" preparations. Use clear water to dilute the bleach. If possible, prepare the disinfection solution daily. Use a plastic container, not metal.

- A 1:10 dilution (0.5% chlorine) is used to clean medical equipment, dead bodies, and spills of blood, excrement, and other bodily fluids. The 1:10 dilution is made by adding one volume of household bleach to nine volumes of clean water. Exercise caution as the 1:10 dilution is caustic and must be kept away from skin and eyes.
- The weaker 1:100 dilution is used to clean surfaces, bedding, gloves intended for reuse (not optimal, but sometimes necessary), contaminated waste intended for disposal, and clothing *before it is laundered.* The 1:100 dilution is made by adding one volume of the 1:10 dilution to nine additional volumes of clean water. An alternative is to take the original household bleach (5% chlorine) and add it to 99 volumes of clean water.
- When possible, rinse items and surfaces decontaminated with any chlorine-based solution with disinfected water if it is available.
- Clean hands with soap and water washing and/or a commercial hand disinfectant. Don't *use the chlorine solution, even at a 1:100 dilution, for cleaning hands or other skin, because this can cause significant irritation.*
- Alternative minimum dilutions (in water) for disinfection include 0.3% hydrogen peroxide, 25% ethyl alcohol, 35% isopropyl alcohol, 0.5% Lysol, and 0.25% povidone–iodine (Betadine).

With just a moment of thought and the initiation of proper precautions, needless transmission of infectious diseases can be prevented, and medical rescue can proceed without harm to the rescuer.

Human immunodeficiency virus

Postexposure prophylaxis (PEP)

Despite efforts to avoid a dangerous exposure to HIV-contaminated blood, it sometimes occurs or a person is accidentally punctured by a needle or blade. The area of exposure should first be washed with soap and water, or alcohol-based agent. It's very important to seek immediate medical attention and counseling to screen for blood borne pathogens including HIV (both the source and the patient), as well as discuss the risks and benefits of starting postexposure prophylaxis (PEP). The World Health Organization recommends starting PEP following exposure of bodily fluids from a patient who has possible HIV infection. The PEP should be started as soon as possible, ideally within 72 hours; don't wait for a pending HIV test of the source or patient. A possible three drug regimen includes tenofovir disoproxil fumarate + emtricitabine, and raltegravir or dolutegravir. This regimen is usually continued for 28 days. The regimen and duration should be guided by an HIV specialist and include close monitoring. PEP may be discontinued if source patient is found to be HIV negative.

If a person is going to be isolated from medical care and responsible for their own PEP, then seek advance education from a physician, from whom a prescription will be obtained. National Clinician's Post-Exposure Prophylaxis Hotline (1-888-448-4911) serves as a resource for indications for PEP after potential exposures.

Preexposure prophylaxis (PrEP)

Individuals who are at risk for frequent exposure to HIV should discuss preexposure prophylaxis (PrEP) with their doctor. These medications are highly effective at preventing a new HIV infection. These medications include either emtricitabine in combination with tenofovir disoproxil fumarate or emtricitabine in combination with tenofovir alafenamide. The preventative medication regime is currently recommended to be taken daily but may also have some benefits when taken on-demand prior to exposure. These medications should be prescribed by your doctor along with discussion of other risk reducing strategies and do not substitute for avoiding bodily fluids and personal protective equipment as discussed above.

Appendix Four: Commonly used applications of the SAM splint

This information is adapted with permission from the SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Splints (Sam Medical Products) are available in the following sizes:

Standard—4 ¼ inches × 36 inches; 4 oz; roll or flatfold
Junior—4 ¼ inches × 18 inches; 2.4 oz; flatfold
Wrist—4 ¼ inches × 9 inches; 1.1 oz; flat
XL—5 ½ inches × 36 inches; 5.9 oz; flatfold
Finger—1.8 inches × 3 ¾ inches; 0.2 oz; flat

General

The standard SAM Splint has a thin core of aluminum alloy and is closed-cell foam padded, reusable, not affected by ambient temperature or altitude, cuts with regular scissors, and is waterproof. Radiographs (X-rays) can be taken through the SAM Splint. The strength of the applied splint is derived from how it is shaped with proper angles and bends by the user.

The closed pore foam will not flash when exposed to flame but will begin to melt and eventually ignite after approximately 8 seconds. The SAM Splint is easily cut with ordinary scissors. Cutting exposes the thin aluminum core. Unless serrated scissors have been used, the now-exposed aluminum is usually not very sharp. To prevent any injury from the exposed edge, we recommend folding the edge on itself 1 to 2 times. Covering the edge with tape is also effective.

The closed-pore polyurethane foam does not absorb or allow passage of air or perspiration. This does not present a problem during short-term use. If, however, the splint is to be maintained for prolonged periods (hours to days), some absorbent material such as cotton cloth or cast padding should be placed between the splint and patient to prevent skin irritation and odor. Also, to prevent uncomfortable pressure points during prolonged use, place soft padding (such as gauze pads) around all bony prominences.

The splint is nonsterile. To reuse the SAM Splint, wash thoroughly with disinfectant before repacking. Whether cut or used intact, the splint can be cleaned with antiseptic soap and water or with almost any protocol cleaning solution, such as an inexpensive diluted mixture of commercially available bleach and water.

The concept: The basic bend

A SAM Splint without any bends (e.g., rolled in the package) is completely malleable. When a curve or fold is placed anywhere across its longitudinal axis, it becomes rigid and suitable for splinting almost any bone on the body. Always use curves to add strength and rigidity to the SAM Splint.

The **basic C-curve** (Fig. 310) meets most splinting needs. To create the C-curve, place both thumbs in the center of the SAM Splint. Using your thumbs as a brace, pull the edges of the splint toward you to create a shallow C-curve. This curve immediately adds strength and rigidity to the splint. For greater strength, deepen the bend.

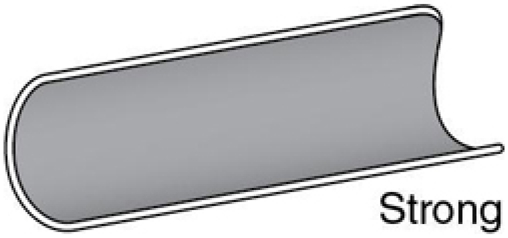


FIG. 310 SAM Splint basic C-curve. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

The **reverse C-curve** is stronger. First, form a C-curve. Then add additional strength by bending the edges of the C-curved splint back in the reverse direction (Fig. 311).

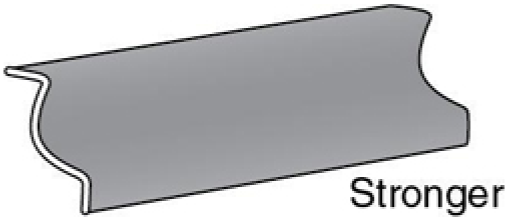


FIG. 311 SAM Splint reverse C-curve. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

The **T-curve** is yet stronger. This bend adds exceptional strength to the splint. To create the T-curve, fold the outer edges of the splint together. Next, bend half of each side of the fold in the opposite direction to create a T-shaped beam (Fig. 312).

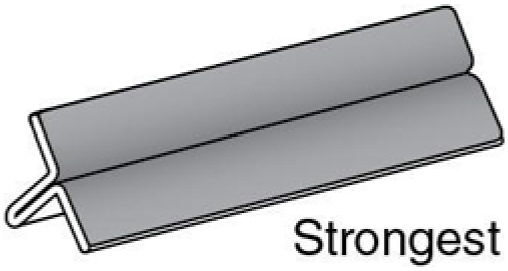


FIG. 312 SAM Splint T-curve. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

Finger splint (for fingertip injuries, broken or dislocated finger, cut finger)

Step 1: To create a simple finger splint or fingertip guard, first form a SAM Finger Splint into the C-curve (Fig. 313A).
Step 2: Place the finger in the curved surface of the splint. Squeeze the end of the splint to create a fingertip guard (Fig. 313B).
Step 3: Secure with your wrap of choice (Fig. 313C).

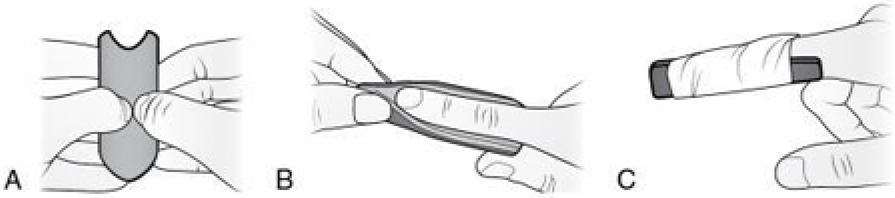


FIG. 313 SAM Splint finger splint. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

Volar (underneath) wrist splint (for broken wrist, cut wrist, carpal tunnel syndrome)

Step 1: Roll over the end of a 9-inch (for children) or 18-inch (for adults) SAM Splint to provide comfort for fingers (Fig. 314A).
Step 2: Apply a C-curve (Fig. 314B).
Step 3: Using your own right or left hand and wrist as a template, mold the splint into the position of function (Fig. 314C).

Step 4: Be sure to create a generous curve for the base of the thumb (Fig. 314D).

Step 5: Obtain additional strength by folding up the ulnar (little finger) side of the splint (Fig. 314E).

Step 6: Apply to patient (Fig. 314F).

Step 7: Make fine adjustments as necessary. Secure with your wrap of choice (Fig. 314G).

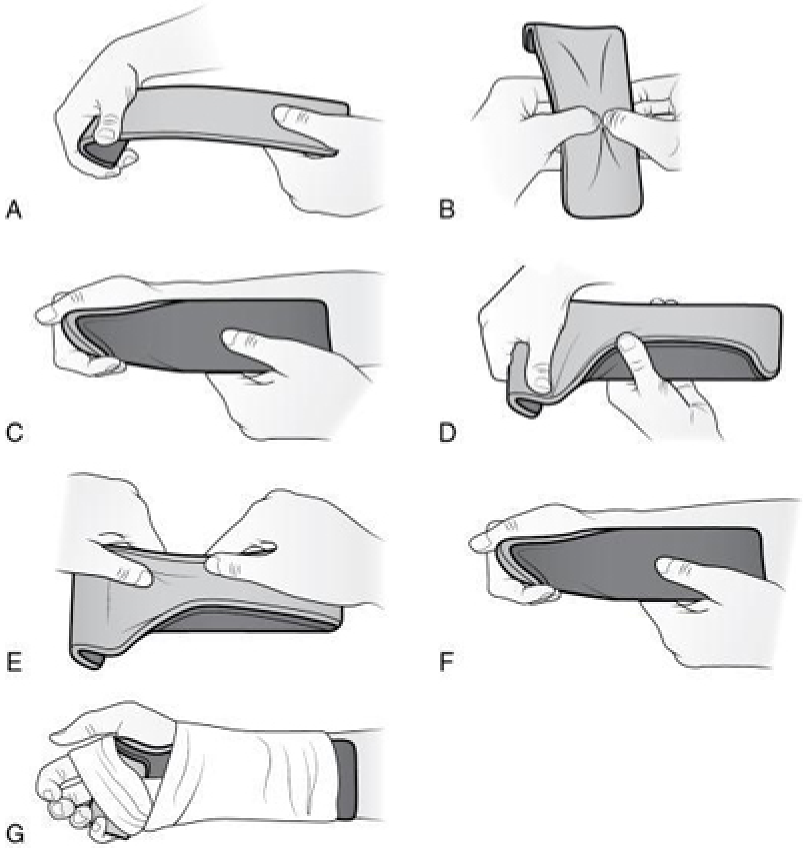


FIG. 314 SAM Splint volar wrist splint. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

Thumb spica splint (for navicular [scaphoid] fracture, broken or dislocated thumb, ulnar collateral ligament sprain)

Step 1: Using your own right or left thumb and wrist as a template, mold the thumb spica shape into the selected SAM Splint. A 9-inch splint works well for this (Fig. 315A).
Step 2: Be sure to create a generous curve for the base of the thumb (Fig. 315B).
Step 3: You can add reverse C-curves on the edges as needed for additional strength (Fig. 315C).
Step 4: Apply to the patient. Make fine adjustments as needed (Fig. 315D).
Step 5: Secure with your wrap of choice (Fig. 315E).

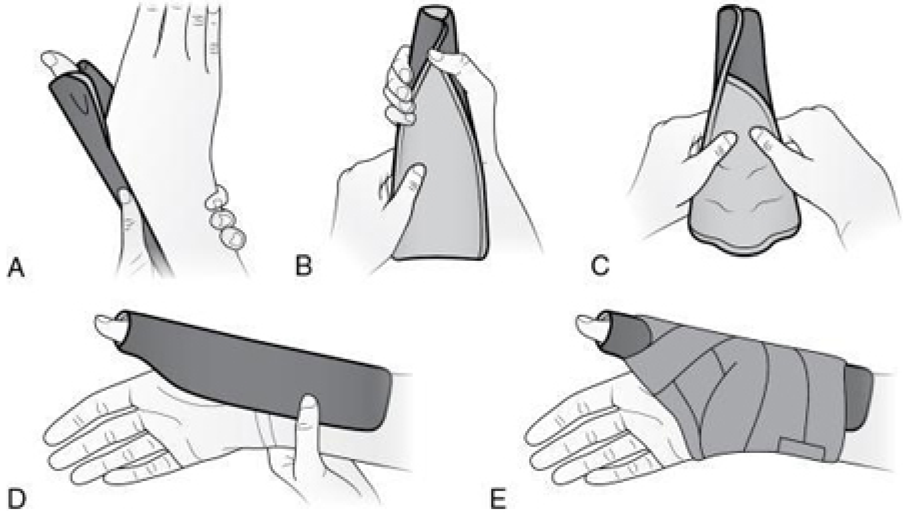


FIG. 315 SAM Splint thumb spica splint. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

Ulnar gutter splint (for broken or dislocated fourth or fifth finger)

Step 1: Fold a 9-inch SAM Splint lengthwise (Fig. 316A).
Step 2: Using the ulnar side of your own hand and wrist as a template, mold the splint into the desired shape (Fig. 316B).
Step 3: Apply to the patient (Fig. 316C).
Step 4: Make fine adjustments as needed and secure with your wrap of choice (Fig. 316D).

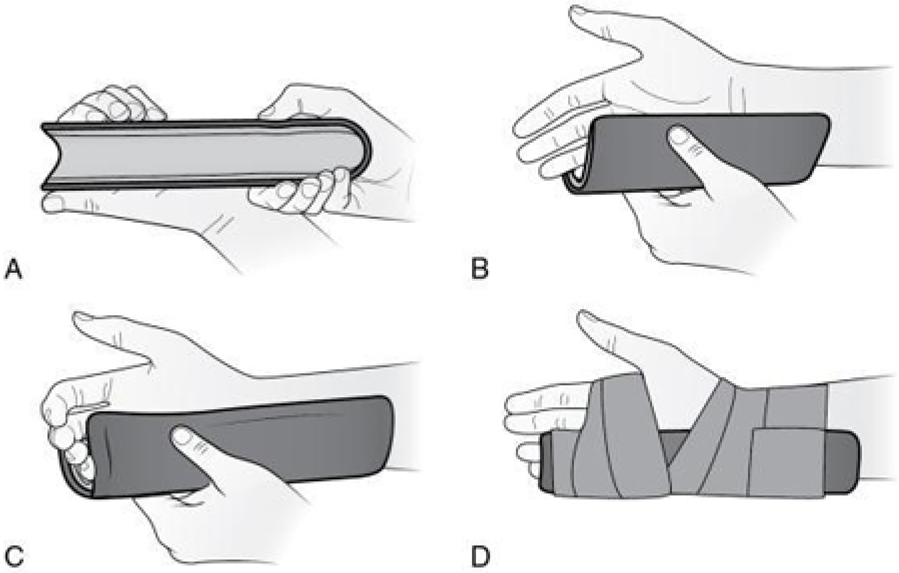


FIG. 316 SAM Splint ulnar gutter splint. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

Double layer wrist splint (for sprained or broken wrist, cut wrist)

Step 1: Fold a 36-inch SAM Splint in half upon itself (Fig. 317A).
Step 2: Roll over the end to provide more comfort for the fingers (Fig. 317B).
Step 3: Add strength by creating a C-curve (Fig. 317C).
Step 4: Using your own right or left arm as a template, mold the splint to the general shape of the wrist and forearm (Fig. 317D).
Step 5: Make adjustments to fit the injury and apply to the patient. Only small adjustments should be made once the splint is in place. Secure with your wrap of choice (Fig. 317E).

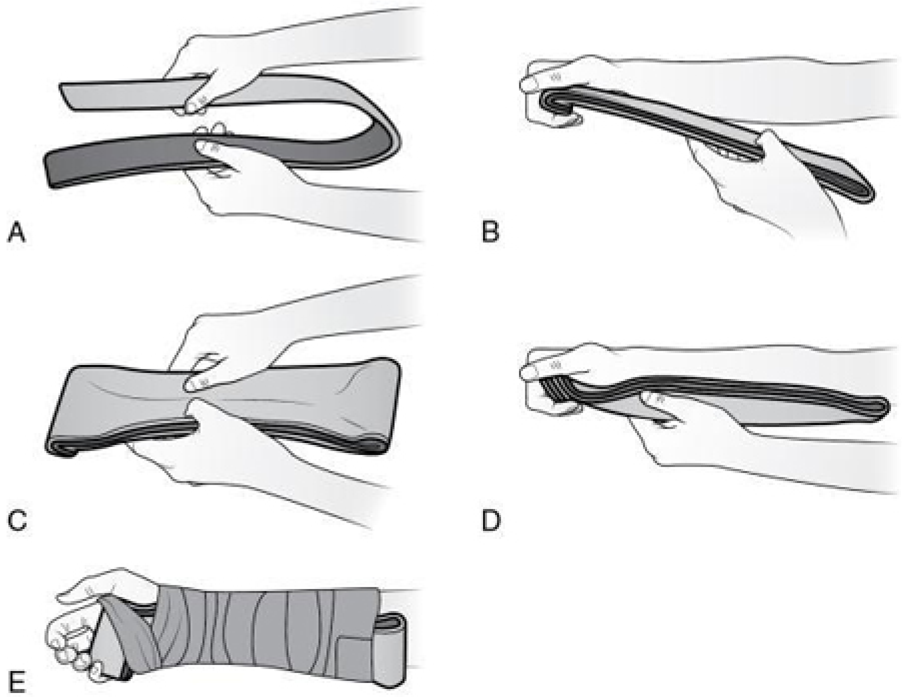


FIG. 317 SAM Splint double-layer wrist splint. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

Upper arm splint (for broken upper arm)

Step 1: Fold one-third of a 36-inch SAM Splint upon itself to create a 12-inch section of double-layered splint (Fig. 318A).
Step 2: Curve the double layer into a fishhook shape and secure the double layer with your wrap of choice (Fig. 318B).
Step 3: Form a C-curve along the shank of the fishhook for strength and fit (Fig. 318C).
Step 4: Apply the splint to the patient. Fold any excess splint over the patient's shoulder or back upon itself (Fig. 318D)
Step 5: Secure with your wrap of choice. Apply a sling and swathe for additional support (Fig. 318E).

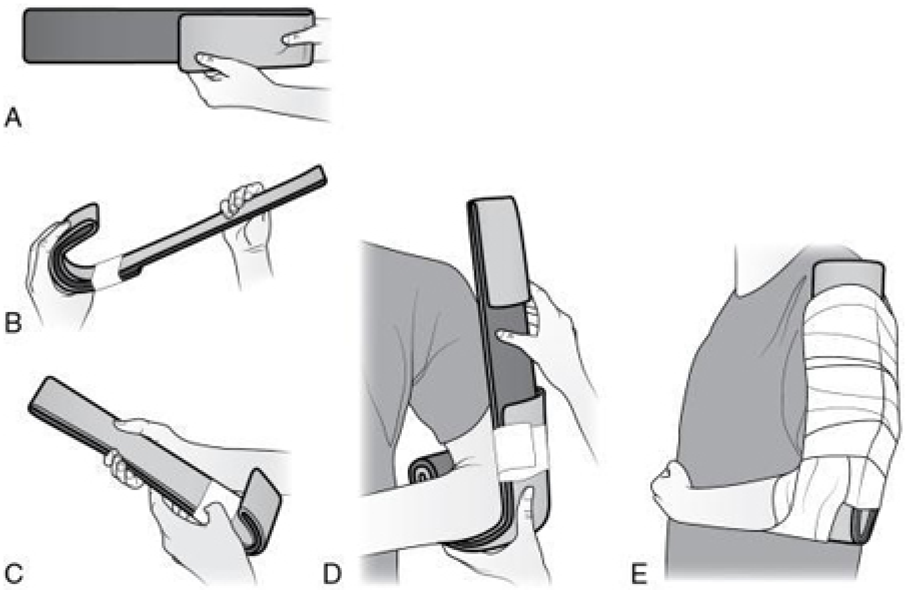


FIG. 318 SAM Splint upper arm splint. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

"Sugar tong" splint (for dislocated or broken elbow, forearm, wrist)

Step 1: Fold a 36-inch SAM Splint in half (Fig. 319A).
Step 2: To obtain the correct length, use the patient's arm as a template. Place the folded splint around the elbow so the end of the top-half stops at the knuckles. Fold the bottom-half down even with the top (Fig. 319B).
Step 3: Form a C-curve in each half. Extend the C-curve no further than two-thirds the distance down each half. If you extend the curve farther, it will limit your ability to fold the splint around the elbow (Fig. 319C).
Step 4: Using your own right or left arm as a template, shape the splint to fit (Fig. 319D).
Step 5: Pad any bony prominences about the wrist and elbow (Fig. 319E).
Step 6: Fit the splint to the patient (Fig. 319F).
Step 7: Secure the splint with your wrap of choice (Fig. 319G).

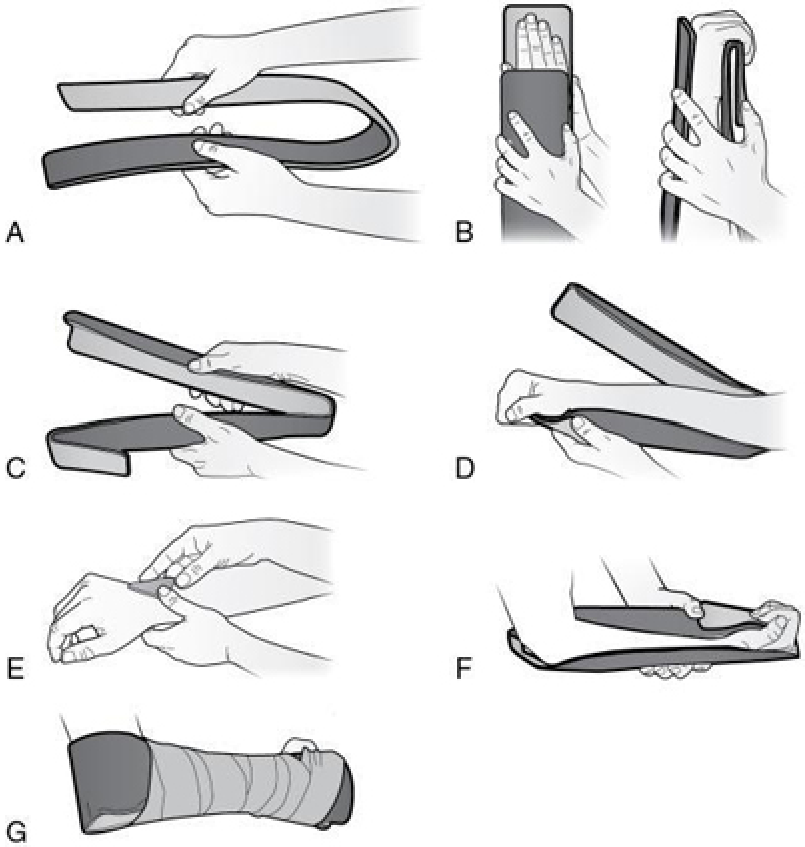


FIG. 319 SAM Splint sugar tong splint. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

Elbow splint (for dislocated or broken elbow)

Step 1: Using the patient's non-affected arm, extend a 36-inch SAM Splint from just below the patient's armpit to the knuckles (Fig. 320A).
Step 2: Fold over any portion of the splint that extends beyond the knuckles (Fig. 320B).
Step 3: Form a C-curve down the entire length of the splint (Fig. 320C).
Step 4: Using your own right or left arm as a template, shape the splint to fit (Fig. 320D).
Step 5: You can create reverse C-curve bends on the edges as needed for strength (Fig. 320E).
Step 6: Apply the splint to the patient (Fig. 320F).
Step 7: Secure with your wrap of choice (Fig. 320G).

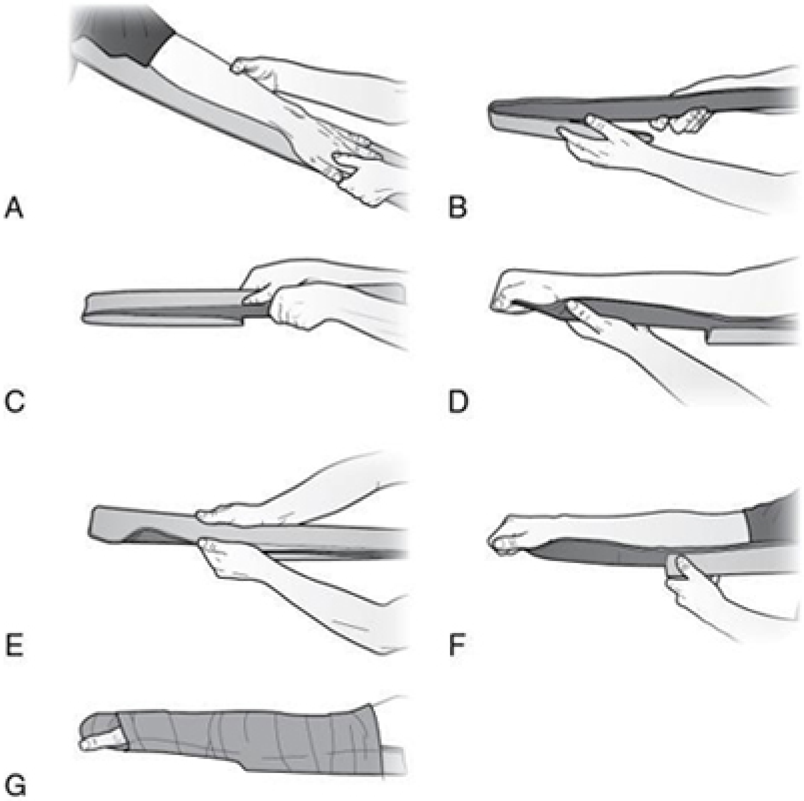


FIG. 320 SAM Splint elbow splint. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

Adjustable cervical collar (for suspected neck injury)

Step 1: Fold a 36-inch SAM Splint 5 inches from the end (Fig. 321A).
Step 2: Bracing your thumbs on each side of the fold, pull the upper edges toward you to create a V-shaped chin rest (Fig. 321B).
Step 3: Place the chin rest beneath the patient's chin and lower jaw. Be careful to avoid pressure on the front of the neck. Loop the remaining portion of the splint loosely around the neck (Fig. 321C).
Step 4: Bring the end forward and down in an oblique direction until it touches the chest. This creates the correct chin-to-chest distance for the chin post (Fig. 321D).
Step 5: While continuing to support the chin, bring the chest portion of the splint around the original chin rest to create a chin-post. Squeeze to deepen the chin-post (Fig. 321E).
Step 6: Insert your index fingers in each side of the looped splint. Pull outward (Fig. 321F).

Step 7: Squeeze to create two side or lateral posts and ensure a snug fit (Fig. 321G).

Step 8: If the patient is sitting, you can form a back or posterior post in a similar manner (Fig. 321H).

Step 9: Fold up any excess splint. Secure with tape or your wrap of choice (Fig. 321I).

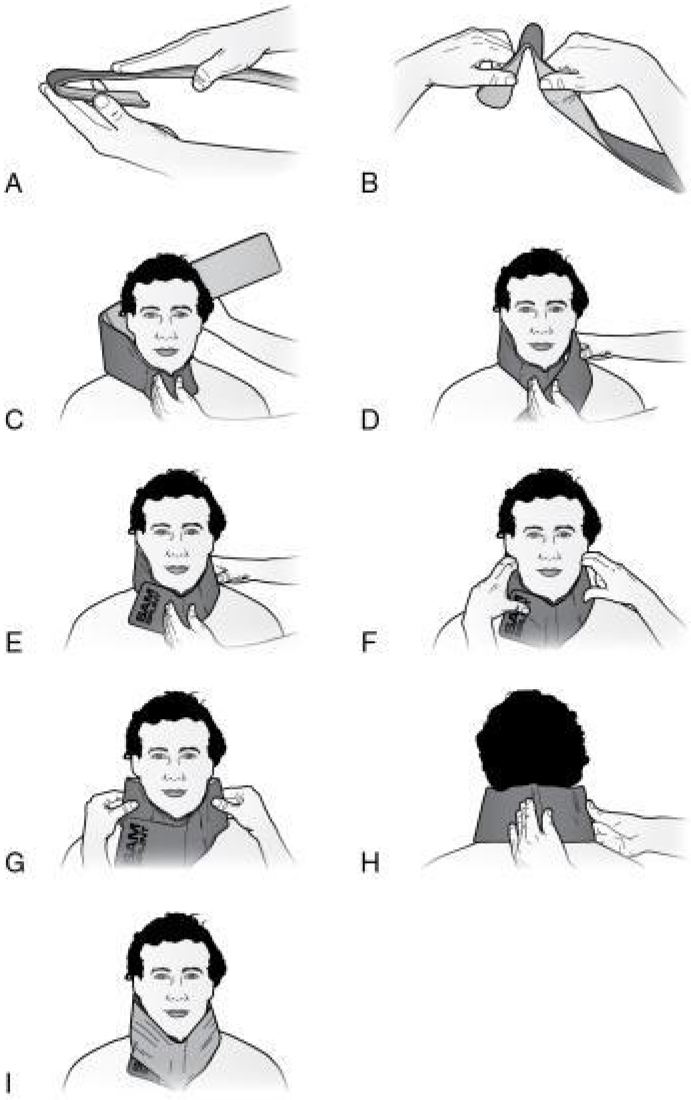


FIG. 321 SAM Splint cervical (neck) collar. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

Anterior dislocation of the shoulder

In this common dislocation, the patient's arm is typically most comfortable when supported in the abducted (sitting away from the body) position. The arm can be supported in this manner with a rolled ski parka, blanket, pillow, or SAM Splint "triangle." To create a "triangle, " the splint is first folded into thirds. This produces three equal 12-inch sections of splint.

Step 1: Fold the outer sections along the longitudinal axis, leaving the middle section flat. Hook the outer folded ends together, producing a triangle. A more rounded, gentler curve or half-circle is then folded along the longitudinal axis of the flat section of the triangle. This curve is formed to the contour of the arm (Fig. 322A).
Step 2: The triangle is then placed in the axilla and used to support the abducted arm. The arm triangle is held in place by the patient or secured to the patient's trunk with your wrap of choice (Fig. 322B).

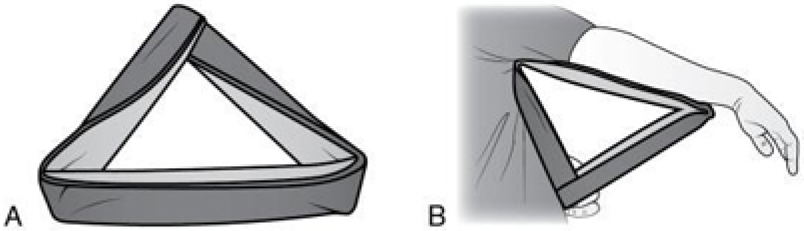


FIG. 322 SAM Splint anterior shoulder dislocation prop splint. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

Ankle stirrup splint (for sprained, broken, or dislocated ankle; for broken lower leg)

Step 1: If footwear is removed or when the ankle is exposed, place padding above and around the bony prominences on each side of the ankle (Fig. 323A).
Step 2: Fold a 36-inch SAM Splint to create two equal halves (Fig. 323B).
Step 3: Apply C-curves two-thirds of the distance down each half. Add reverse C-curves on the edges if needed for strength. Don't extend the curves further or they will stiffen the splint and limit your ability to fold it around the foot and ankle (Fig. 323C).
Step 4: Fold the stirrup splint around the foot and ankle (Fig. 323D).
Step 5: Secure with your wrap of choice (Fig. 323E).

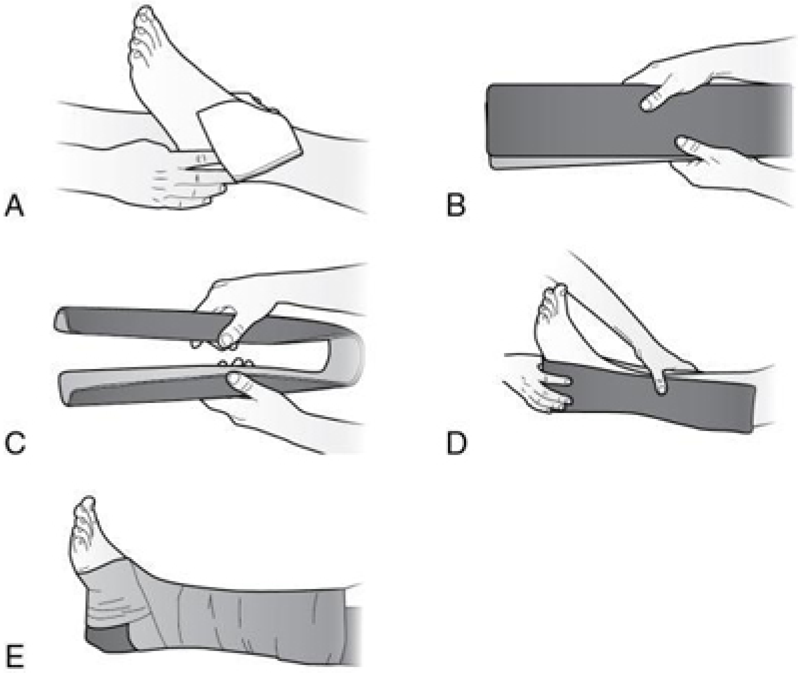


FIG. 323 SAM Splint ankle stirrup splint. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

Figure-eight ankle splint (for sprained, broken, or dislocated ankle)

Step 1: If footwear is removed or when the ankle is exposed, place padding above and around the bony prominences on each side of the ankle (Fig. 324A).

Step 2: Lay a 36-inch SAM Splint flat. Place the patient's foot in the middle of the splint so that the splint lies just forward of the heel (Fig. 324B).

Step 3: Conform half of the splint snugly around the ankle (Fig. 324C).

Step 4: Fold the second-half of the splint around the first in a figure-of-eight position. Crimp as necessary to fit (Fig. 324D).

Step 5: Secure with your wrap of choice (Fig. 324E).

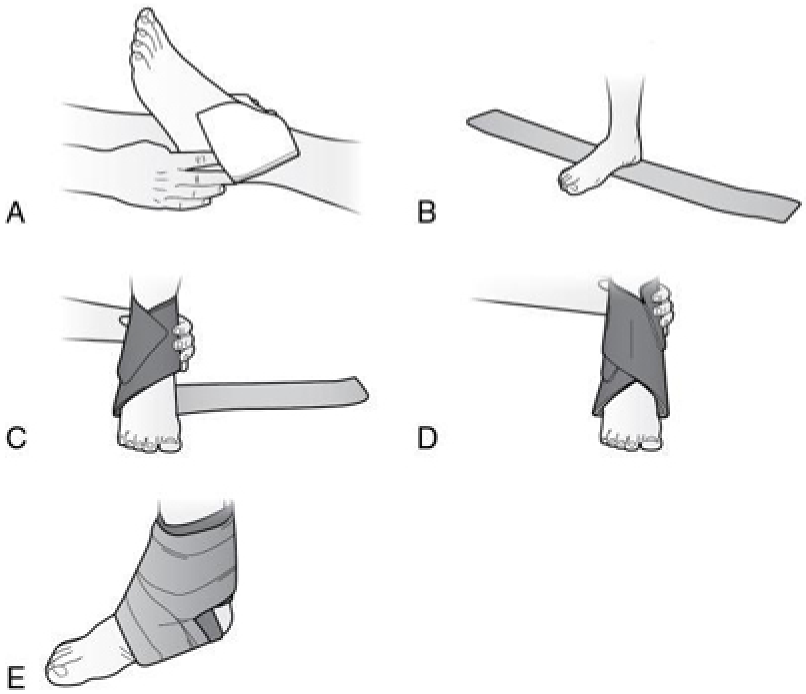


FIG. 324 SAM Splint figure-of-eight ankle splint. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

Combination ankle stirrup and figure-of-eight splint (for sprained, broken, or dislocated ankle where maximum immobilization is needed)

Step 1: First apply a figure-of-eight splint (see previous steps) (Fig. 325A).
Step 2: Next, prepare an ankle stirrup splint (see previous steps) (Fig. 325B).
Step 3: Apply the ankle stirrup splint over the figure-of-eight splint (Fig. 325C).
Step 4: Secure with your wrap of choice and crimp as needed to fit (Fig. 325D).

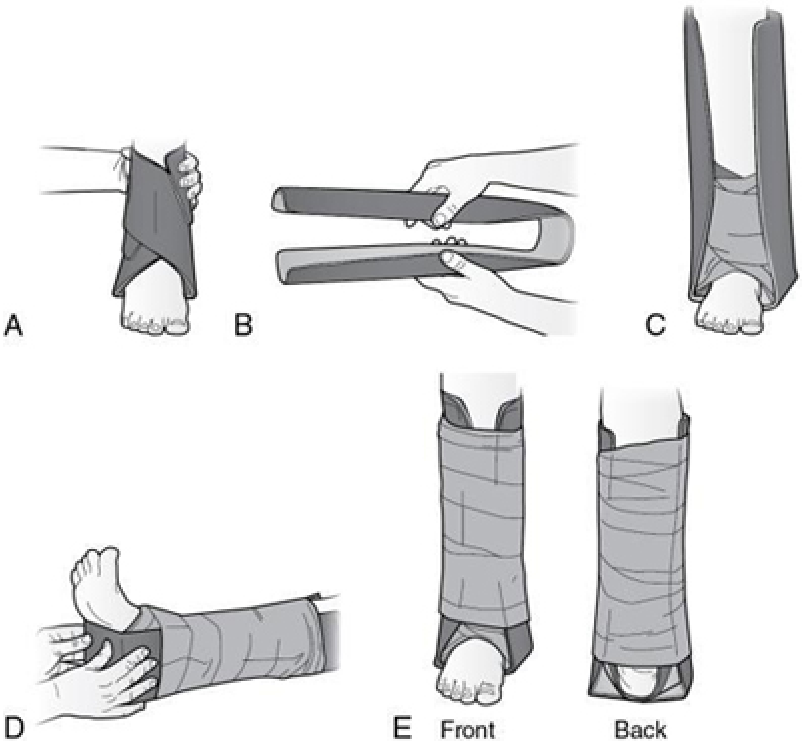


FIG. 325 SAM Splint combination stirrup and figure-of-eight ankle splint. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

Single long leg splint (for broken lower leg)

Step 1: If footwear is removed or when the ankle is exposed, place padding above and around the bony prominences on each side of the ankle (Fig. 326A).
Step 2: Apply a C-curve to approximately 30 inches of a 36-inch SAM Splint. Leave the last 6 inches of the splint flat and soft to fold under the foot (Fig. 326B).
Step 3: For extra strength, apply reverse C-curves on the edges where necessary (Fig. 326C).
Step 4: Place the splint against the outside of the leg and fold the soft portion of the splint under the foot to create a footplate (Fig. 326D).
Step 5: Adjust splint to fit the leg (Fig. 326E).
Step 6: Secure with your wrap of choice (Fig. 326F).

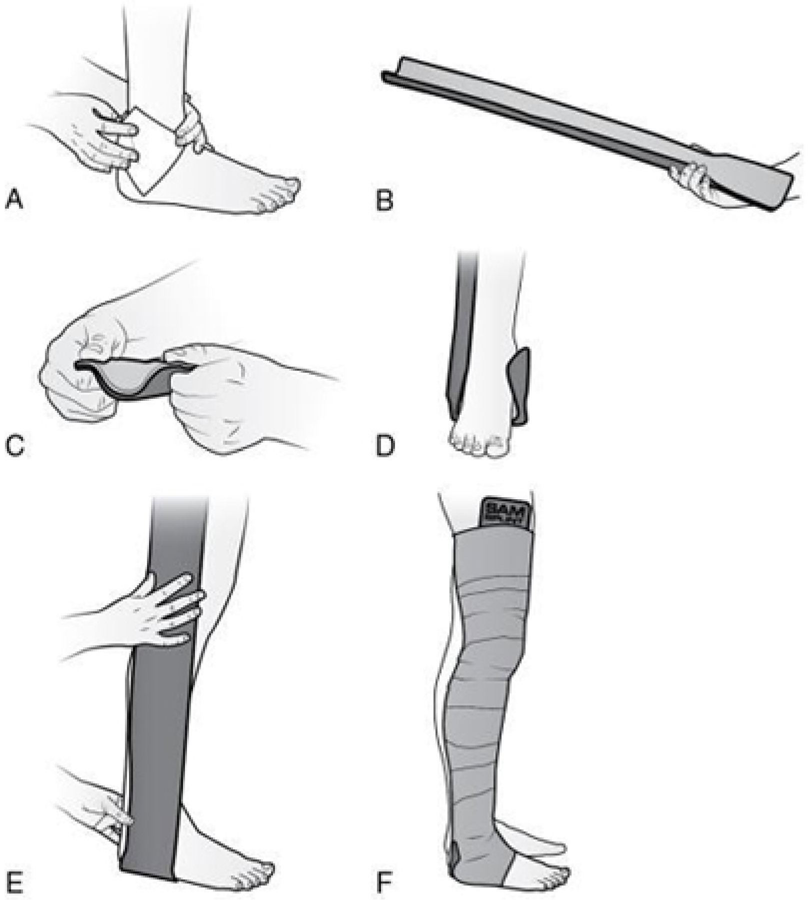


FIG. 326 SAM Splint single long leg splint. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

Double long leg splint (for broken lower leg where more immobilization is needed)

Step 1: If footwear is removed or when the ankle is exposed, place padding above and around the bony prominences on each side of the ankle (Fig. 327A).

Step 2: Create a long leg splint as shown previously (Fig. 327B).

Step 3: Apply the long leg splint to the outer aspect of the leg (Fig. 327C).

Step 4: Prepare a second splint, identical to the first. Apply this splint to the inner aspect of the leg (Fig. 327D).

Step 5: Fold the soft, flat end over the first footplate (Fig. 327E).

Step 6: Secure both splints to leg with your wrap of choice (Fig. 327F).

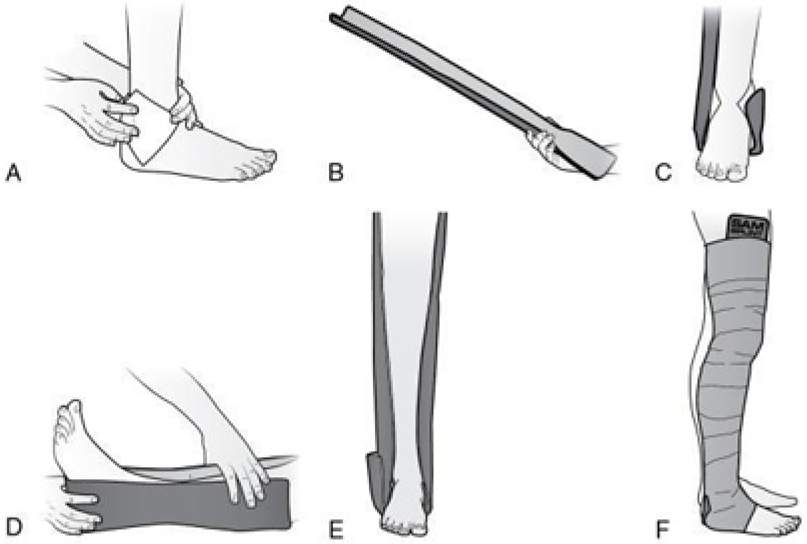


FIG. 327 SAM Splint double long leg splint. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

Knee immobilizer splint (for knee injuries)

Step 1: Fold a 36-inch SAM Splint in the center to create two equal halves. Spread the halves to produce a fan-shaped splint, wider at the top for the thigh and narrower at the bottom for the calf (Fig. 328A).
Step 2: Apply tape to the top and middle portions of the splint to maintain the fan shape (Fig. 328B).
Step 3: Apply a second fan-shaped splint (Fig. 328C).
Step 4: Form a C-curve in each SAM Splint (Fig. 328D).
Step 5: The C-curves should appear as shown (Fig. 328E).
Step 6: Place one splint on each side of the knee and make fine adjustments to fit (Fig. 328F).
Step 7: Secure with your wrap of choice.

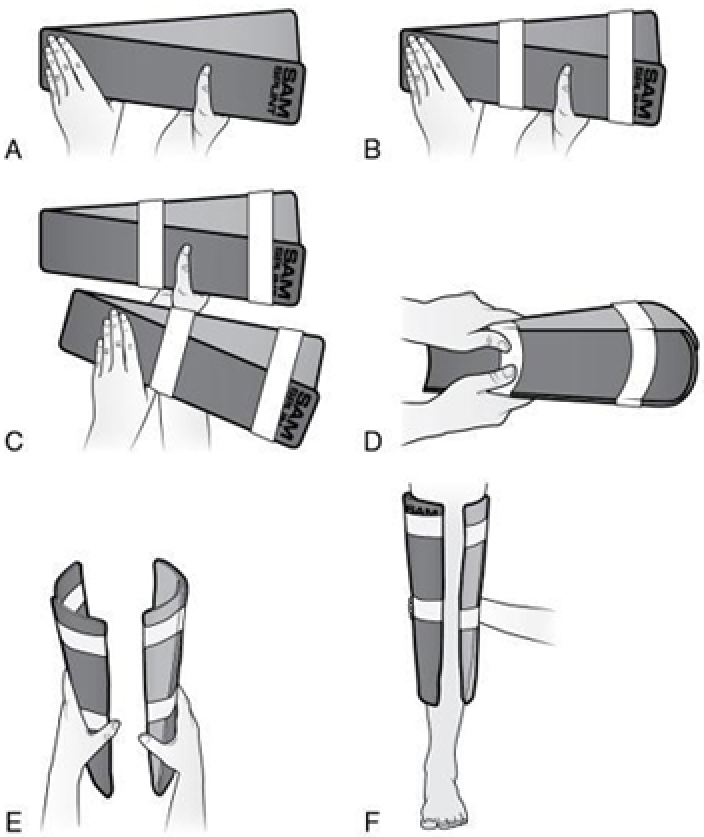


FIG. 328 SAM Splint knee immobilizer splint. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

Half-ring splint for femur fracture (for broken femur)

Step 1: First create the "foot support" by cutting an 8-inch section from an old ski pole. Drill two holes 6 inches apart through this foot support section. The hole should be sized with a larger entry hole and a smaller exit hole to tightly accommodate the tapered end of the ski pole. Keep the "foot support" section in your pack along with duct tape, safety pins, and strong cord (to be used for traction as desired). To create the "half-ring hip support, " place two ski poles, handle facing handle, each on the outer-third of a 36-inch flat SAM Splint (Fig. 329A).

Step 2: Roll each end of the splint tightly around the handles and secure the splint with duct tape. The rolled middle third of the SAM Splint is then folded as the ski poles are aligned parallel to each other. The position of the ski poles is maintained by firmly fitting the tips of the poles into the tapered holes in the "foot support." The rolled "hip support section" of the SAM Splint between the two ski poles handles is now contoured to resemble a Thomas half-ring (Fig. 329B).

Step 3: Duct tape thigh and calf supports are then applied and can be reinforced with cloth or elastic wraps (Fig. 329C).

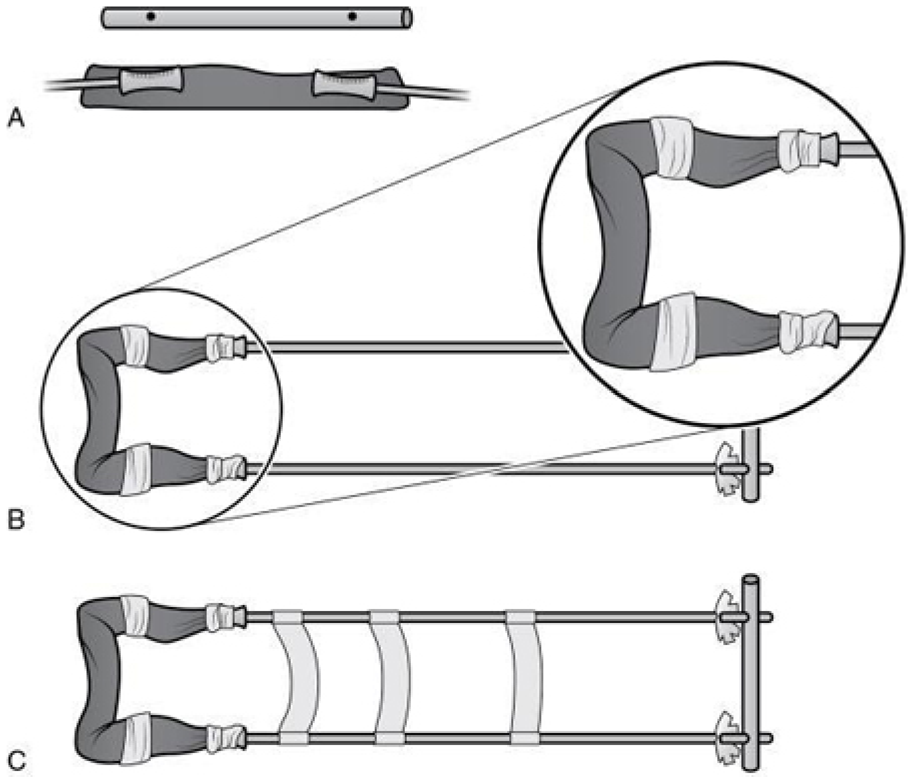


FIG. 329 SAM Splint half-ring femur splint. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

Impaled object protector

Step 1: Cut a section of a SAM Splint to the desired length.

Step 2: Make a series of parallel cuts along one margin of the splint to create a number of flaps.

Step 3: Fold these flaps to 90 degrees so they lie at the correct angle to the uncut margin of the splint.

Step 4: Roll the splint on itself and secure with tape.

Step 5: Place this device over the impaled object, fill any voids with careful packing around object, and secure to the body with tape or gauze (Fig. 330).

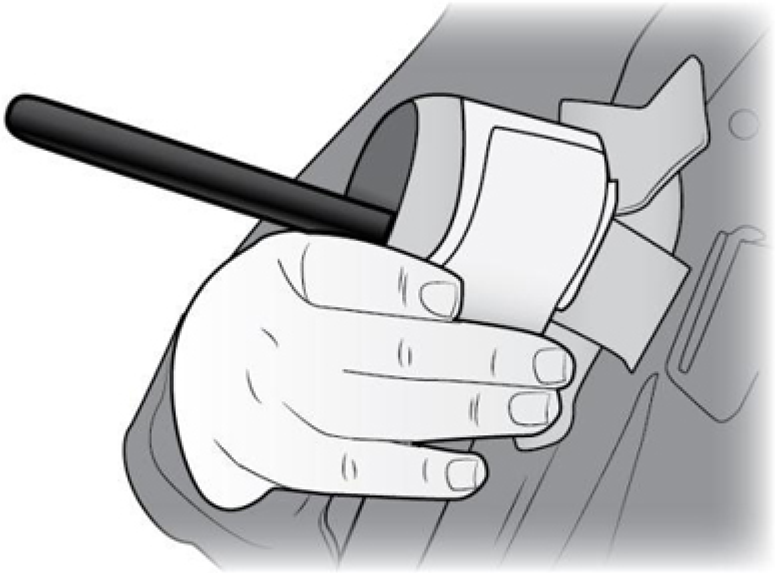


FIG. 330 SAM Splint impaled object protector. *Source:* (Redrawn from Scheinberg S: SAM Splint User Guide. SAM Medical Products, 2007, p. 19)

Appendix Five: Emergency canine medicine

Dogs might accompany you in the outdoors. A few basic problems for which there are simple or obvious interventions are mentioned here. In preparation for an adventure outdoors with a dog, be certain that the animal has had all of its immunizations, is at least 1 year of age, and is not expected to carry more than 30% of its body weight in a pack. Bathe the animal with a pyrethrin (insecticide)-containing shampoo and carry flea-tick-lice powder. Give heartworm preventive medication if mosquito bites are a possibility. Consider using a flea and tick preventive medication, which can be obtained from a veterinarian. Each day, inspect the animal and properly remove all ticks.

When treating a dog, use a muzzle if possible. An improvised muzzle can be created using a rolled gauze or strap (Fig. 331).

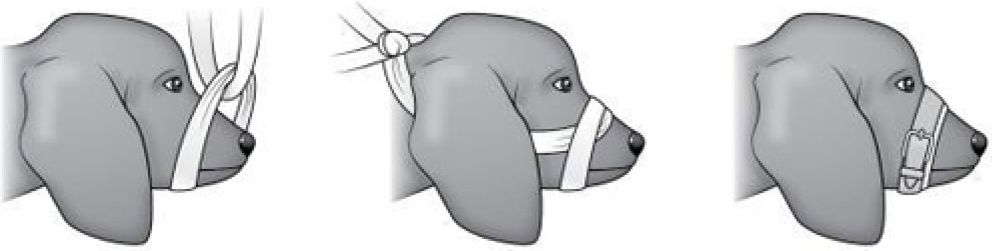


FIG. 331 Improvised dog muzzle created from a rolled gauze or strap.

The normal resting temperature of a dog is 100°F to 102.5°F (37.8°C to 39.2°C), and after exercise is 103°F to 106°F (39.4°C to 41.1°C). Resting heart rate is 60 to 80 beats per minute and depends on the size of the animal. After exercise, it is up to 130 beats per minute. The pulse is appreciated most easily by feeling one of the femoral arteries, which are found on the inside of a dog's rear thighs. The breathing rate is 10 to 40 breaths per minute, not counting panting. Dogs can certainly become dehydrated. Signs and symptoms of dehydration are shortness of breath, decreased skin elasticity, skin that "tents" (does not return to normal position) when pinched and pulled, dry gums, sunken eyes, increased abdominal efforts with breathing, coarse breath sounds, and deeply red-colored mucous membranes.

Heat exhaustion and heat stroke afflict dogs. Heat stroke is life-threatening. In addition to the symptoms of dehydration, the dog might show altered mental status (tired, uncooperative, confused, weak), weak pulses, vomiting, diarrhea, collapse, incoordination, and seizures. Treat the animal immediately by spraying with cool water and fanning to promote cooling by evaporation. If a body of cool water is available, immerse the animal. The goal is to reduce the body temperature to 103°F (39.4°C) as soon as possible. Any time an animal is this sick, if possible, get to a veterinarian, who might use more aggressive cooling measures and intravenous or subcutaneous rehydration.

Pay close attention to your dog in the heat. Allow sufficient rest in the shade and access to drinking water. If the weather is hot and the situation permits, allow the animal to immerse in cool or cold water.

Dogs will eat just about anything, so be alert to various poisonings, such as plants and mushrooms, certain toads, insect repellent (DEET), grapes, raisins, rodenticides, insecticides, lead, antifreeze, etc. Signs and symptoms include seizures, weakness, confusion and lethargy up to coma, muscle spasm, vomiting, and apparent pain. If you have access to a phone, call the ASPCA (American Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Animals) poison control telephone number at 888-426-4435; there is a fee for service.

A dog might be "quilled" by a porcupine. If only a few quills are present, the treatment is to muzzle the animal, cover its eyes, grasp the quills individually with pliers as close to the skin as possible, and pull. The same treatment holds true for humans. If the quill has been in the skin for a long time, it might have absorbed fluid and swelled. If need be, the skin can be nicked to allow the trapped barb to pass.

A dog sprayed with skunk musk is an unhappy animal. Instructions for treatment are found on page 417.

A dog might be bitten by a rattlesnake. Fundamentally, the treatment is the same as advised for a human (see page 360). Try to minimize the dog's activity and bring the dog promptly to medical attention, because administration of antivenom might be necessary. If the bite is near the nose and mouth, swelling can compromise breathing. The venom's effects can cause low blood pressure, bleeding, and shock. If the animal survives the bite, the local tissues might die, leaving a large sore that requires meticulous wound care. There is no effective first aid in the field. Snakebite kits have not been proved effective. If you're traveling in snake country, prevention is essential. Unleashed dogs wander, and their curiosity leads them directly to snakes. If you hear a snake, keep your dog close until the danger is passed. Snakes move around more at night. The same way that you would not reach under a rock or log, don't allow your dog to do this. If your dog is sniffing in tall grass or bushes that might be harboring a snake, move the dog away. Don't use an animal to flush out a snake or to provide protection.

A dog might suffer from high-altitude illness, including pulmonary edema. Signs and symptoms include decreased appetite, weak and tired behavior, reduced activity, dusky tongue color, pale gums, pink or brownish fluid from the mouth and nose, coarse and difficult breathing. Dogs can be administered dexamethasone 4 mg by mouth for suspected high-altitude illness.

Glossary (Including Acronyms and Abbreviations)

A

ABC: airway, breathing, and circulation.

abdomen: the part of the body between the chest and the pelvis.

abrasion: a scraped area of skin.

abscess: a localized collection of pus, usually surrounded by inflamed tissue.

acclimatize: to adapt to a new altitude, climate, environment, or situation.

acidotic: in a state of abnormally reduced alkalinity; overwhelmed by acid; related to decreased pH.

acute: sudden in onset.

adrenaline: epinephrine.

AED: automated external defibrillator.

airway: passage for air into the lungs, including the mouth, nose, pharynx, larynx, trachea, and bronchi.

alkaline: having the properties of a base; related to high pH.

allergy: exaggerated reaction (sneezing, runny nose, itching, skin rash, difficulty in breathing) to substances that don't affect other individuals.

ALS: advanced life support.

alveoli: microscopic air spaces in the lung where oxygen is exchanged for carbon dioxide.

ambulatory: able to walk.

amnesia: loss of memory.

amniotic fluid: liquid that surrounds unborn child within the membranes inside the uterus.

amputate: to cut from the body.

AMS: altered mental status.

analgesia: relief from pain.

anaphylaxis: hypersensitivity to substances following prior exposure, resulting in a severe allergic reaction.

anemia: deficiency in red blood cells.

anesthesia: loss of sensation.

aneurysm: abnormally dilated blood vessel.

angina pectoris: episodic chest pain caused by insufficient oxygen supply to the heart.

antibiotic: drug used to kill bacteria.

antibody: body substance, produced by specialized cells, that combines with and neutralizes foreign substances or toxins.

antiemetic: drug used to control nausea and vomiting.

antihistamine: drug used to inactivate histamine.

antiinflammatory: drug used to prevent or correct inflammation.

antiseptic: substance that limits or stops the growth of microscopic germs.

antivenom: drug used to inactivate the effects of animal or insect venom.

anus: posterior opening from the intestine to the outside world.

aorta: the large artery that carries oxygenated blood from the heart to be distributed to the body.

aortic: pertaining to the aorta.

appendectomy: surgical removal of the appendix.

appendicitis: inflammation of the appendix.

appendix: wormlike appendage of the bowel, located in the right lower quadrant of the abdomen.

aqueous: mixed with or related to water.

arachnoid: middle layer of membranes that cover the brain and spinal cord.

argasid: related to soft ticks.

arrest: sudden stop.

arterial: pertaining to an artery.

arteritis: inflammation of an artery.

artery: muscular- and elastic-walled blood vessel that carries oxygenated blood from the heart to the body.

arthritis: inflammation of the joints.

arthropod: invertebrate animal with jointed limbs belonging to the phylum Arthropoda; insect, spider, or crustacean.

aspirate: to draw by suction; to inhale into the lungs.

asthma: labored breathing caused by narrowing of the smaller air passages (past the bronchi) in the lungs, associated with shortness of breath, wheezing, cyanosis, and coughing.

atherosclerosis: hardening of the arteries.

atrial: pertaining to the atrium.

atrium: one of two smaller chambers of the heart.

aura: a sensation of lights or sounds that occurs before a migraine headache or seizure.

B

barotitis: disorder of the ear due to increased or decreased atmospheric pressure.

BID: twice a day.

bile: green fluid produced by the liver and stored in the gallbladder, where it is released into the duodenum to aid in the digestion and absorption of fats.

bilirubin: a pigment formed from the destruction of red blood cells.

biopsy: the process of removing tissue from living creatures for diagnostic examination.

blister: fluid-filled elevation of the epidermis.

BLS: basic life support.

borrelial: related to microorganisms of the genus *Borrelia,* which transmit diseases such as Lyme disease.

bowel: intestine.

BP: blood pressure.

brainstem: part of the central nervous system between the spinal cord and brain that controls certain critical functions, such as breathing.

breech: buttocks first, as in breech birth.

bronchitis: inflammation of the bronchial tree.

bronchoconstriction: narrowing of small airways, often caused by smooth muscle contraction.

bronchodilator: drug used to relax and widen the bronchi.

bronchus: main passageway from the trachea to the smaller air passages in the lungs.

bruise: injury that does not break the skin, with rupture of small blood vessels that causes blue or purplish discoloration.

bursa: fluid-filled sac that allows smooth motion of muscles or tendons over a bone or joint.

bursitis: inflammation of a bursa.

buttocks: the seat of the body; the rump.

C

CAB: circulation, airway, and breathing.

calorie: the amount of energy necessary to raise the temperature of 1 g of water by 1°C; 1 food calorie (“kilocalorie”) is equal to 1000 energy calories.

cancer: malignant tumor; uncontrolled growth of cells that invade normal body tissues for no reason and serve no purpose.

canker sore: small, painful ulcer of the mouth.

cannula: small tube for insertion of fluid or air.

capillary: microscopic blood vessel that connects an artery to a vein.

carbonaceous: rich in carbon; black like soot.

carbon dioxide: gas that combines with water to form carbonic acid; formed by the combustion and decomposition of organic substances.

cardiac: pertaining to the heart.

cardiopulmonary: pertaining to the heart and lungs.

carotid artery: chief artery that travels up the neck and carries blood to the head and brain.

carpal: relating to the wrist.

cartilage: elastic tissue that is transformed into bone.

cartilaginous: composed of cartilage.

cataract: opacity in the lens of the eye.

caustic: corrosive; capable of destroying by chemical action.

cellulitis: inflammation of tissue, such as the skin.

central nervous system: the brain and spinal cord.

cerebral: pertaining to the brain.

cervical: pertaining to the neck.

chilblain: inflammation, swelling, and blistering of the skin caused by exposure to cold.

cholecystitis: inflammation of the gallbladder.

cholelithiasis: condition of having stones present in the gallbladder.

chronic: of long duration.

CNS: central nervous system.

CO: carbon monoxide.

colic: acute pain caused by spasm, obstruction, or twisting of a hollow organ.

colitis: inflammation of the colon.

colon: the large intestine.

coma: a state of profound unconsciousness.

comatose: in a coma.

comminuted: in multiple pieces; shattered.

compound fracture: broken bone accompanied by torn skin.

conjunctiva: membrane that covers the insides of the eyelids and extends over the whites of the eyes.

convulsion: seizure; abnormal involuntary contraction or series of contractions of the muscles.

COPD: chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, caused by scarred lung tissue.

core: center; involving the abdomen and chest organs.

cornea: the transparent covering of the eyeball over the iris and pupil that allows light to enter the eye.

coronavirus: type of virus that can cause different diseases including Covid-19.

corticosteroid: one of a number of hormones produced by the adrenal glands.

costochondritis: inflammation of the cartilage that attaches the ribs to the sternum.

COVID-19: illness caused by coronavirus SARS-CoV-2.

CPR: cardiopulmonary resuscitation, with artificial breathing and chest compressions.

cravat: triangular cloth bandage folded into a longitudinal strap.

crepitus: a crackling sound or feeling.

culture: to grow in a prepared laboratory medium.

cyanosis: blue or purple discoloration of the skin due to inadequate oxygen in the blood.

cyst: an abnormal sac containing gas, fluid, or solid material.

D

debridement: surgical removal of torn, contaminated, or devitalized tissue.

decompression: loss of pressure; contributes to diving-related bends.

DEET: active ingredient of many insect repellents; N, N-diethyl-3-methylbenzamide.

dehydration: depletion of bodily fluids.

dermatitis: inflammation of the skin.

dermis: layer of skin just underneath the epidermis that contains sensitive nerve endings, blood vessels, and hair follicles.

diagnose: to identify a disease.

diaphragm: muscular wall that separates the chest from the abdomen.

dilation: stretching to normal or beyond normal dimensions.

dinoflagellate: marine plankton.

discharge: liquid released from an organ or tissue surface.

dislocation: displacement of bones at a joint.

disseminated: spread over a wide area.

distal: at the end of; in the area farthest from the center of the body.

diuretic: drug that promotes urination.

diverticulitis: inflammation of a diverticulum.

diverticulum: small outpouching from a hollow organ (such as the large intestine).

dressing: bandage; covering for a wound.

duodenum: first part of the small intestine.

E

ectopic: at a remote site; in the wrong place.

edema: swelling caused by the accumulation of fluid.

electrolyte: soluble inorganic chemical (such as sodium or potassium) found in bodily fluids.

embolism: sudden obstruction of a blood vessel by an embolus.

embolus: abnormal particle (such as a blood clot or air bubble) circulating in the bloodstream.

encephalopathy: disease of the brain that often results in abnormal mentation.

encyst: to surround with a membrane.

endemic: native to.

endotracheal: through the trachea.

envenom: to poison with venom.

epidermis: outermost layer of the skin.

epigastrium: area lying over the stomach; central upper area of the abdomen.

epiglottis: soft tissue pillar in the throat that covers the vocal cords and keeps food and liquid from entering the trachea during swallowing.

epiglottitis: inflammation of the epiglottis.

epilepsy: disorder associated with disturbed electrical discharges in the central nervous system that cause convulsions.

epinephrine: most potent hormone that stimulates increased heart rate and force of contraction, relaxation of smooth muscle in the airways that causes bronchoconstriction (during asthma or an allergic reaction), and constriction of microscopic blood vessels.

epistaxis: nosebleed.

eruption: a breaking out, particularly the appearance of redness, rash, blisters, sores, or other lesions of the skin.

erythema: redness.

esophageal reflux: return of food and acid from the stomach into the esophagus; major cause of heartburn.

esophagitis: inflammation of the esophagus.

esophagus: muscular tube from the pharynx to the stomach.

eustachian tube: a tube of bone and cartilage that connects the middle ear with the upper throat and allows equalization of pressure on both sides of the eardrum.

exhale: to breathe out.

expectoration: sputum, phlegm, or mucus; the act of spitting out saliva or mucus from the air passages via the mouth.

extend: lengthen; reach out.

extremity: arm and hand (upper extremity) or leg and foot (lower extremity).

F

facial: pertaining to the face.

fallopian tube: small tube that conducts the egg from the ovary to the uterus.

fascia: tough, fibrous tissue that surrounds muscle bundles.

fasciitis: inflammation of the fascia.

feces: solid human bodily waste discharged through the anus.

feculent: pertaining to or resembling feces.

femoral artery: large artery that carries blood to the leg.

femur: large bone of the thigh.

fetus: unborn young after it has taken form in the uterus.

fibrillation: unsynchronized quivering.

flagellate: possessing a flagellum.

flagellum: whiplike organelle (tail) for locomotion.

flail chest: series of detached ribs that cannot move properly to assist with breathing.

flatulence: the presence of excessive gas in the bowel.

flatus: gas generated in the digestive tract and discharged via the anus.

flex: bend; fold.

fluorescence: the reemission of light (usually lower frequency) following its absorption; this is usually most apparent when the absorbed light is in the (invisible) ultraviolet range and the reemitted light is in the visible range.

fluorescent: possessing fluorescence.

follicle: skin cavity in which a root of hair lies.

fracture: to break; a broken object.

frostbite: freezing of the tissues.

G

gallbladder: muscular, hollow organ that stores bile produced by the liver.

gangrene: tissue death due to loss of blood supply; can be caused by injury or infection.

gastroenteritis: inflammation or irritation of the stomach and intestine.

gastrointestinal: pertaining to the stomach and intestine; digestive system.

gauge: the diameter of a hypodermic needle expressed as a standard number.

genitals: external organs of reproduction.

GI: gastrointestinal.

gland: a specialized group of cells that selectively removes substances from the blood, concentrates or alters substances in the blood, and/or creates and releases special substances into the blood.

glaucoma: disease of the eye associated with increased pressure within the eyeball.

glucose: type of sugar used by the body for energy.

gonorrhea: sexually transmitted disease caused by the bacterium *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*.

graft (skin): piece of skin taken from one area of the body to cover a defect or burn in another area.

grain: a measure of weight equal to 0.0648 g.

gram: a measure of weight equal to 15.432 grains.

grand mal seizure: convulsion manifested by violent generalized muscle contractions, clouded consciousness, and a period of confusion after the event.

GU: Genitourinary.

H

HACE: high-altitude cerebral edema.

hallucinate: to see visions or experience lack of reality.

hallucination: imaginary perception.

HAPE: high-altitude pulmonary edema.

heartburn: burning discomfort behind the sternum related to irritation or spasm of the lower portion of the esophagus.

Heimlich maneuver: technique for removal of a foreign object caught in the upper airway.

helminth: intestinal worm-shaped parasite.

hemoglobin: iron-containing, oxygen-carrying pigment in red blood cells.

hemorrhage: bleeding.

hemorrhoid: dilated vein found at the anal margin.

hepatitis: inflammation of the liver.

hernia: protrusion of part or all of an organ through a wall of the space in which it is normally contained.

hiatal hernia: protrusion of part of the stomach through the diaphragm.

histamine: chemical compound that plays a major role in allergic reactions.

HIV: human immunodeficiency virus.

hives: raised red skin wheals associated with allergic reactions.

hormone: chemical substance formed in the body that is carried in the bloodstream to affect another part of the body; an example is thyroid hormone, produced by the thyroid gland in the neck, which affects growth, temperature regulation, metabolic rate, and other body functions.

HR: heart rate.

hydrate: to cause to take up water.

hygiene: the science or practice of preserving health.

hyper- (prefix): excessive.

hyperbaric: pertaining to increased atmospheric pressure.

hyperextension: accentuated extension or straightening of a limb.

hypertension: elevated blood pressure.

hyperthermia: elevated core body temperature.

hypertrophy: enlargement of; excessive size.

hyphemia: collection of blood in the chamber of the eye between the lens and the cornea (anterior chamber).

hypo- (prefix): insufficient; underneath.

hypodermic: under the skin.

hypoglycemia: low blood sugar.

hyponatremia: low blood sodium.

hypothermia: low core body temperature.

I

ileum: the last (and longest) segment of the small intestine.

ileus: profoundly decreased physiologic activity (motility) of the bowel, characterized by dilation, abdominal pain, and vomiting.

iliac: pertaining to the ilium.

ilium: the upper bone that forms the side of the pelvis.

IM: intramuscular.

immobilize: to prevent freedom of movement.

immune: not susceptible to.

immunity: condition of being able to resist a certain entity or disease.

immunization: the process of developing immunity; often refers to an injection.

impetiginize: to involve with impetigo.

impetigo: contagious skin disease caused by *Staphylococcus* or *Streptococcus* bacteria, characterized by weeping, crusting, and areas of pus formation.

incarcerate: to confine; to entrap.

infarction: area of tissue death caused by obstruction of blood circulation.

inflammation: response to cell injury that involves dilation of small blood vessels, redness, warmth, pain, and migration of white blood (pus) cells to the region; part of the healing process that removes noxious substances and damaged tissue; can be destructive as a primary disease process.

infrared: light that lies outside of the visible spectrum, with wavelengths longer than those of red light.

inhale: to breathe in.

inspiration: the act of breathing in.

intestine: the digestive tube that passes from the stomach to the anus; the small intestine (bowel) consists of the duodenum, jejunum, and ileum; the large intestine (bowel) consists of the cecum (with attached appendix), colon (ascending, transverse, descending, and sigmoid), and rectum.

intoxication: state of poisoning.

intravenous: into a vein.

irrigate: to rinse.

ischemic: in a condition of lowered blood flow; lacking sufficient oxygen to sustain function.

-itis (suffix): inflammation of.

IV: intravenous.

J

jaundice: yellow pigmentation of the tissues and bodily fluids.

jejunum: the segment of the small intestine that follows the duodenum and precedes the ileum.

K

ketoacidosis: condition of excessive ketones in the bloodstream, associated with increased systemic acidity; a life-threatening condition of diabetics.

ketone: acid by-product of metabolism.

kg: kilogram.

kilo- (prefix): one thousand of something.

kilocalorie: 1 food calorie, or 1000 energy calories; the energy necessary to raise the temperature of 1 kg of water by 1°C.

kilogram: 1000 g; 2.2 lb.

L

lacerate: to tear or cut roughly.

larva: wormlike form of an insect that issues from the egg, for example, grub, maggot, or caterpillar.

larynx: the portion of the trachea that contains the vocal cords; the voice box.

lateral: away from the midline; outer.

lb (abbreviation): pound.

lethargy: drowsiness or aversion to activity, caused by disease.

ligament: fibrous connective tissue that attaches bone to bone.

liter: volume of water that weighs 1 kg; 1.0567 quarts.

localized: confined to a specific area.

lumbar: pertaining to the lower back.

lymph: amber nutrient fluid that contains white blood cells; it circulates in the lymphatic system and is involved with injuries, infections, and cancers.

lymphatic: related to lymph glands, cells, or fluid; small vessel that transports lymph fluid.

lymph node: collection of lymph cells that function as a gland; node (colloquial).

M

malleolus: rounded bony prominence, such as occurs on either side of the ankle.

mandible: lower bone of the jaw.

manipulate: to move mechanically, usually with the hands.

melena: dark-colored, tarry stools (feces), due to the presence of blood altered by intestinal fluids.

meningitis: inflammation of the covering of the brain and upper spinal cord.

menses: periodic hemorrhage from a woman’s uterus that occurs most commonly at 4-week intervals.

menstrual: related to menses.

menstruation: periodic discharge of bloody fluid from the uterus.

mental status: condition of alertness and comprehension.

metabolism: the energy-producing and energy-using processes that occur in the human body.

mg: milligram.

micron: measure of length equal to one one-millionth of a meter.

microorganism: small life form that requires a microscope to be seen.

microscopic: very tiny; requires a microscope to be seen.

migraine: recurrent severe headaches generally accompanied by an aura (classic migraine), nausea, vomiting, and dizziness.

milli- (prefix): one one-thousandth.

milligram: 1/1000 of a gram.

milliliter: 1/1000 of a liter.

mL (abbreviation): milliliter.

mononucleosis: infectious disease characterized by an abnormal increase in monocytes (a type of white blood cell) in the blood, weakness, fever, sore throat, and enlargement of the spleen and lymph nodes in the neck.

mottled: covered with colored spots or blotches.

mucus: slippery secretion created by mucous glands associated with mucous membranes (such as those that line the nose, throat, and mouth) for lubrication and some protection against bacteria.

myocardial: pertaining to the heart muscle.

myoglobin: iron-containing, oxygen-carrying pigment present in muscle tissue.

myoglobinuria: condition of having myoglobin present in the urine.

N

naloxone: lifesaving medication used to treat opioid overdose; opioid receptor antagonist.

Narcan: brand name medication containing naloxone.

nanometer: one one-billionth of a meter.

narcosis: altered mental status ranging from confusion to coma.

nebulize: to reduce to a fine spray.

neurologic: pertaining to the nervous system.

nm (abbreviation): nanometer.

nonsteroidal: not containing steroids.

NSAID: nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug.

O

opiate: naturally derived opioid such as heroin or morphine.

opioid: drug that acts on opioid receptor, reduces pain, addictive.

organ: part of the body with a specific function.

OTC: over-the-counter.

otitis: inflammation or infection of the ear.

ounce: measure of weight equal to 28.35 g; 1/16 lb.

ovary: one of two reproductive glands in a female that produces the female sex cells (“eggs”).

ovulation: release of an egg from the ovary.

oxygen: colorless, odorless gas necessary for combustion and life.

oxygenate: to supply with oxygen.

oz (abbreviation): ounce.

ozone: triatomic form of oxygen (O_3) that is formed by electric discharge through air.

P

pallor: pale skin color.

palpate: feel with the hands.

palpation: the act of feeling with the hands.

palpitation: abnormal beating of the heart felt by the victim.

pancreas: gland that produces and secretes digestive enzymes (juices) and the insulin hormone.

pancreatitis: inflammation of the pancreas.

parasite: an animal or vegetable that lives on or in another and that draws its nourishment from the host.

paroxysmal: sudden.

patient assessment: a structured approach to evaluating victims for injury and illness.

pediatric: pertaining to children.

pelvic: related to the pelvis.

pelvis: strong, basin-shaped bone structure that provides support for the spine, hips, and legs.

penile: related to the penis.

peptic: related to digestive fluids.

perineum: area of skin situated between the external genitalia and the anus; area between the thighs extending from the tailbone to the front of the pubis.

peristalsis: natural contractions of the muscular walls of the bowel that move bowel contents forward.

peritoneum: lining of the abdominal organs and cavity.

peritonitis: inflammation of the peritoneum.

petit mal seizure: form of epilepsy characterized by brief periods of confusion without major abnormal muscle activity.

pharyngitis: inflammation of the pharynx; sore throat.

pharynx: throat.

phlegm: mucus secreted in the respiratory passages.

photophobia: aversion to light.

photosensitivity: sensitivity to light, particularly to ultraviolet radiation.

pigment: coloring matter or stain.

placenta: organ implanted within the uterus that supports an unborn child, which is attached by the umbilical cord.

plankton: microscopic plant life found in natural bodies of water.

plantar: on the bottom.

platelet: cellular component of the blood that contributes to clotting.

pleura: lining that covers the lungs and the inside of the chest cavity.

pleural space: a small space between the pleura that covers the lung and that lines the inside of the chest wall; normally, this space is minuscule (cannot be seen) because it is filled with negative pressure, which allows the lung to expand with the chest wall.

pleuritis: inflammation of the pleura.

pneumonia: infection of the lung characterized by fever, cough, shortness of breath, and the production of purulent or bloody sputum.

pneumothorax: collapsed lung with air in the pleural space.

PO: by mouth.

potable: drinkable (preferably, disinfected).

prognosis: projected outcome.

prolapse: to fall or sink down.

prone: lying flat with the face down.

prophylactic: for the purpose of prophylaxis.

prophylaxis: measures designed to maintain health and to prevent disease.

protozoan: microscopic unicellular or acellular animal.

proximal: closer to starting point or center; nearest to central part of the body.

pubic: pertaining to the region of the pubis.

pubis: the lowermost and anterior bone of the pelvis.

pulmonary: pertaining to the lungs.

punctate: like a dot or small mark.

pupil: contractile round opening in the center of the iris of the eye through which light is transmitted to the lens.

purulent: foul.

pus: white, yellow-green, or beige creamy fluid that is formed by decomposing tissue, white blood cells, and tissue fluids.

pyelonephritis: inflammation of the kidney due to a bacterial infection.

Q

QD: every day (daily).

QID: four times a day.

quadrant: one of the four quarters into which a region can be divided.

R

radial artery: the main artery that travels through the wrist to supply the hand.

radiation: emission of energy in the form of waves or particles.

radiation of pain: pain that travels from one region to another, such as from the hand to the shoulder.

rebound tenderness: pain in the abdomen that is worse on release of pressure than it is on creation of pressure (compression); often indicates peritonitis.

recompression: the method whereby increased atmospheric pressure is used to treat victims of air embolism or decompression sickness (diving-related disorders).

reflux: backward flow.

reflux esophagitis (heartburn): inflammation of the esophagus caused by backward flow of acid from the stomach.

relapse: return of a disease after it has spent its course.

renal: related to the kidney.

respiratory: pertaining to the organs of breathing or the act of breathing.

resuscitate: to revive from death or unconsciousness.

retina: the posterior inside surface of the eye, which receives a light image refracted through the cornea and lens, and transmits it to the brain via the optic nerve.

rigor mortis: stiffening of the body that begins a few hours after death and that disappears from 1 to 5 days later, when decomposition begins.

RR: respiratory rate.

S

saline: salty (solution); normal saline (liquid compatible with most human tissues) is 0.9% sodium chloride in water.

SARS-CoV-2: severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2; coronavirus that causes Covid-19 illness.

saturate: to soak; to dissolve to the highest possible concentration.

sedate: to bring under the influence of a sedative.

sedation: the act of calming.

sedative: calming or quieting; a drug or other substances that decreases nervous excitement.

seizure: epileptic convulsion.

serum: the fluid component of blood after the cells are removed.

shock: a clinical state manifested by profound depression of all body functions, caused by insufficient blood and nutrient supply to the tissues; signs and symptoms include low blood pressure, cool and clammy skin, altered mental status, and collapse.

silica: silicon dioxide.

SL: sublingual (under the tongue).

soft tissue: body tissue that is not composed of bone or cartilage; generally refers to skin, muscle, and fat; generally excludes internal organs.

spasm: involuntary muscular contraction.

sphincter: muscular ring that serves as a junction between two tubes, such as the esophageal sphincter (between the esophagus and stomach).

spirochete: curled or spiraled microorganism capable of causing infectious disease.

sprain: incomplete stretching or tearing of ligaments.

sputum: phlegm composed of saliva and discharges from the respiratory passages.

SQ: subcutaneous (under the skin).

status: unchanging situation, such as status asthmaticus (severe, unchanging asthma), or status epilepticus (nonceasing convulsions).

STD: sexually transmitted disease.

STI: sexually transmitted infection.

sterile: uncontaminated by infectious agents.

sternocleidomastoid: prominent neck muscle that connects the mandible to the collarbone and sternum.

sternum: breastbone.

steroids: hormones, vitamins, body constituents, and drugs with a specific chemical structure.

strain: incomplete stretching or tearing of tendons or muscles.

stridor: harsh vibrating noise heard in the upper airway during breathing; commonly associated with an outflow obstruction during exhalation; can be inspiratory.

stroke: cerebral hemorrhage, thrombosis, vasospasm, or embolism characterized by some degree of paralysis; also called apoplexy.

sub- (prefix): underneath.

subarachnoid: under the arachnoid.

subconjunctival: under the conjunctivae.

subcutaneous: under the skin.

sublingual: under the tongue.

supine: lying flat with the face up.

supraventricular: above the level of the ventricles (lower chambers) of the heart.

suture: to sew with surgical thread or nylon; the thread or nylon used to sew a wound closed.

symphysis: a barely movable junction of two bone surfaces connected by a fibrous cartilage pad.

syndrome: a collection of signs and symptoms that, taken together, constitute a particular disease or abnormality.

synthesize: to create or compose.

syringe: device used to inject fluids into or remove them from the body.

systemic: affecting the entire body.

T

tachycardia: rapid heart rate (beat).

TBI: traumatic brain injury.

tendon: fibrous tissue that attaches muscle to bone.

tension pneumothorax: collapsed lung under pressure from air in the pleural space.

testicle: testis.

testis: one of two male reproductive glands located in the scrotum.

tetanus: an infectious disease caused by the bacterium *Clostridium tetani* and characterized by severe muscle contractions and inability to open the mouth (lockjaw); the bacterium that causes tetanus.

thermal: pertaining to heat.

thermoregulatory: in control of temperature.

thrombophilia: increased number of platelets.

thrombophlebitis: an inflammation of the veins that causes the formation of blood clots.

thrombosis: formation of a thrombus.

thrombus: clot formed in a blood vessel or in one of the cavities of the heart.

TID: three times a day.

tinnitus: noises, such as ringing, in the ears in the absence of an auditory stimulus.

tissue: a group of cells that combine in the body to serve a specific function.

tourniquet: a device used to control blood flow by impeding or preventing circulation.

toxin: poisonous substance.

trachea: main passageway for air from the pharynx to the bronchi.

tracheostomy: surgical opening created in the neck into the trachea to allow breathing when the upper airway is obstructed.

trauma: mechanical injury.

traumatic: related to mechanical injury.

triage: sorting of patients by priority.

tubal: related to a tube.

tumor: abnormal growth of tissue that arises in the body without purpose; can be benign (noncancerous) or malignant (cancerous).

tympanic membrane: eardrum.

U

ulcer: erosion; open sore.

ultrasonic: beyond the normal range of sound waves.

ultraviolet: light outside of the violet end of the visible spectrum with a wavelength shorter than that of visible light.

umbilical: relating to the umbilicus.

umbilicus: navel; belly button; pit in the center of the abdominal wall where the umbilical cord was attached to the fetus before birth.

unconscious: unaware; unarousable.

ureter: muscular tube that carries urine from the kidney to the bladder.

urethra: passage that carries urine from the bladder to the external opening in the genital region.

URI: upper respiratory infection.

urogenital: genitourinary; pertaining to the urinary tract and genitalia.

urticaria: itchy, patchy, raised, and red skin rash, often associated with allergy.

uterus: muscular reproductive female organ in which a child develops; womb.

UTI: urinary tract infection.

UV: ultraviolet.

UVR: ultraviolet radiation.

V

vaccinate: to inject a special preparation for the purpose of achieving immunity from disease.

vacuum mattress: moldable, full body splint made rigid by removing air with pump.

vaginitis: irritation of the vagina.

varicose: abnormally swollen or dilated.

vascular: pertaining to the blood vessels.

vasospasm: contraction of a blood vessel, often caused by microscopic muscle contraction.

vein: blood vessel that carries blood from the body back to the heart.

venom: poison secreted from venom glands in animals and insects; usually introduced into the victim with a bite or sting.

venous: pertaining to the veins.

ventricle: one of two large chambers of the heart.

ventricular: pertaining to the ventricle.

vertebra: one of the bony segments that form the spinal column (backbone).

vertigo: dizziness; sensation of whirling motion.

vessel: container; a blood vessel can be an artery, vein, or capillary.

VF: ventricular fibrillation.

vitreous: gelatinous fluid within the eye.

W

wheezing: labored breathing, usually noted on expiration, associated with lung disorders characterized by airway narrowing, such as asthma.

Index

Page numbers followed by f indicate figures; t, tables.

2-Undecanone (BioUD), 383

A

ABC (airway, breathing, circulation) method, 17–18
  versus CAB approach, 17–18
Abdomen
  cramps in, 233
  examination of, 14, 15, 141
Abdominal aortic aneurysm, 145–146, 145f
Abdominal organs, 138f
Abdominal pain, 15, 137–147
  abdominal aortic aneurysm as cause of, 145–146, 145f
  appendicitis as cause of, 142–143, 142f
  bowel obstruction as cause of, 143
  diverticulitis as cause of, 144–145
  in elderly, 144–145
  epigastrium, 139–140
  gallstones as cause of, 140–142, 141f
  gastroenteritis as cause of, 140, 142
  general evaluation of, 137
  heart attack as cause of, 139
  heartburn as cause of, 56, 140, 245

  hepatitis, 140
  hernia as cause of, 143–144, 144f
  kidney stone, 143, 146–147, 147f
  in left lower quadrant, 144–145
  in left upper quadrant, 142
  liver injury as cause of, 140
  in lower abdomen (central), 145–146
  ovarian infection as cause of, 143, 148–149, 148f
  ovulation-related, 149
  pancreatitis as cause of, 140, 142
  physical examination for, 137–139
  pneumonia, 142
  in right lower quadrant, 142–144
  in right upper quadrant, 140–142, 247
  spleen injury as cause of, 142
  torsed ovary as cause of, 149
  ulcers as cause of, 139–140, 139f
  vaginal bleeding associated with, 149
  vaginitis as cause of, 149–150
Abrasion, 279
Abscess, 262–264
  definition of, 262
  draining of, 264, 264f
  illustration of, 263f
  loop technique for, 264, 264f
  methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* as cause of, 260
  perianal, 264
  treatment of, 262–264
Absence seizure, 80
Acarbose, 162

Accelerade, 342
Acclimatization, 6, 347–348
  gradual, for high altitude–related problems, 347–348
  health hazards avoided through, 6
  to heat, 343
ACDU neurologic assessment scale, 75–76
Acetaminophen, 189, 199, 340, 354–355
  for dengue fever, 170–171
  for fever, 189
  for pain, 490
Acetazolamide, 348
  for acute mountain sickness, 349, 354–355
  auto-CPAP and, 349
  in children, 349
  diuretic effects of, 348
  for glaucoma, 212
  for periodic breathing, 349
Acetylsalicylic acid. *See* Aspirin
Achilles tendon rupture, 309–310
Acid reflux, 225
Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), 1, 6, 190, 234, 505
Acute mountain sickness (AMS), 318, 353–355
  acetazolamide for, 349
  causes of, 354
  dexamethasone for prevention of, 349, 355
  high-altitude cerebral edema progression of, 355
  high-altitude headache as sign of, 352
  ibuprofen for prevention of, 348
  Lake Louise Scoring System for, 353
  signs and symptoms of, 354

- sleep apnea and, 349
- treatment of, 354–355

Acute myocardial infarction. *See* Heart attack

Acute stress disorder, 317–318

Acute urinary retention, 153–154

Acyclovir
- for Bell's palsy, 219
- for fever blisters, 219
- for herpes simplex virus, 150
- for shingles, 275–276

Adenosine, for supraventricular tachycardia, 58

Adrenaclick autoinjectors, 368

Adrenaline. *See* Epinephrine

Advanced life support, 13

Aedes aegypti, 170

African tick-bite fever, 178–179

Afrin. *See* Oxymetazoline hydrochloride

AIDS. *See* Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)

Aircast patellar brace, 123–124

Aircraft, rescue, 409

Air embolism, 408–409, 408f
- stroke and, 166

Air Evacuation (MEDEVAC) Priorities, 11

Air pocket, for breathing, 392

Air Quality Index (AQI), 134, 135

Airway
- in head injury victims, 71f, 72
- inhalation injury and, 133
- management of/opening, 45
- obstruction of, 197, 219–220, 365

  - in seizure victims, 80

- Airway obstruction, 18–22, 19f, 20f, 21f, 22f
- Albuterol
  - for allergic reactions, 79, 485–486
  - for asthma, 52
  - for high-altitude pulmonary edema, 351
  - metered-dose inhaler, 486, 487f
- Alcoholic beverages, hypothermia and, 323
- Allegra. *See* Fexofenadine
- Allergic reaction(s), 78–79
  - diphenhydramine for, 76, 78
  - to drugs, 235, 484
  - epinephrine for, 78, 368, 469
  - hives secondary to, 336, 368
  - insect bites/stings as cause of, 368–370
  - to medications, 13, 14, 242
  - red meat, 378
  - shock caused by, 68–69, 71
  - snakebite as cause of, 365
  - symptoms, 78
  - treatment of, 75–76, 78–79
- Allergies, 7–8
  - eye, 202, 226, 247
  - seasonal, 226
- Allergy kits, 368, 449
- Allethrin, 382
- Almotriptan, 491
- Alpha-galactosidase, 244–245
- Alprazolam, for anxiety, 315
- Alternobaric vertigo, 411

Altitude-related problems. *See* High altitude–related problems

Altitude throat, 358

Aluminum chlorohydrate, for hypothermia, 323

Aluminum subacetate, 256

Amanita muscaria (fly agaric), 428, 428f

Amanita phalloides (death cap), 427, 428f

Amantadine hydrochloride, for influenza, 227

Amebic dysentery, 237

Amebic meningoencephalitis, 394

American Heart Association, CPR training conforming to, 1

Amnesia

  concussion as cause of, 73, 76

  from lightning strike, 387

Amoxicillin

  for Lyme disease, 178

  for otitis media, 199

Amoxicillin-clavulanate

  for bladder infection, 153

  for cellulitis, 264

  for kidney infection, 153

  for otitis media, 199

  for pneumonia, 55, 58

  for sore throat, 200

Ampicillin, for typhoid fever, 182

Amputation, 127–127, 363

AMS. *See* Acute mountain sickness

Anal fissure, 244

Anal itching, 244

Anaphylaxis, 78–79. *See also* Allergic reaction(s)

Anaplasmosis, 178

Anatomical snuffbox, 94, 95f
Anemia, 54, 187, 188, 236, 341
  high-altitude and, 349–350
  iron-deficiency, 349–350
Anemones, 258
Anesthesia, for wound care, 280–281
Aneurysm
  abdominal aortic, 145–146, 145f
  cerebral artery, 165
  definition of, 145–146
Angina pectoris, 7–8, 56–57, 245. *See also* Chest pain
  definition of, 56
  nitroglycerin for, 56
  signs and symptoms of, 55, 56
Animal attacks, 415–421
  avoidance of, 420–421
  bubonic plague, 418
  cat bite, 415
  cat-scratch disease, 416
  general treatment of, 415
  high-risk wounds caused by, 415–416
  murine typhus, 418–419
  rabies, 416–417
  skunks, 417–418
Animals, diseases contracted from
  anthrax, 419
  avoidance of, 420–421
  bear, 421, 421f
  bubonic plague, 418
  hantavirus, 419–420

  rabies, 416–417
Anisakidosis, 407
Ankle
  fracture of, 125
  heat-related swelling of, 341
  sprain of. *See* Ankle sprain
  traction harness for, 114–115, 114f
Ankle hitch, 114–115, 115f
Ankle sprain
  ankle stirrup splint for, 514, 514f
  combination ankle stirrup and figure-of-eight splint for, 515, 516f
  figure-of-eight ankle splint for, 515, 515f
  figure-of-eight bandage for, 307, 308f
  management of, 307
  taping of, 307, 308f
Antacids, 494
  for ulcers, 247
Anterior cruciate ligament, 124
Anthrax, 419
Antibiotics, 498–500. *See also specific antibiotic*
  administration of, recommendations for, 2
  for appendicitis, 142
  for babesiosis, 179
  for bladder infection, 153
  for bronchitis, 55, 227
  for burn wound, 131, 133
  for corneal scratch, 202–204
  for diarrhea, 229–241
  for fever of unknown origin, 190
  in first-aid kit, 449

  for gastrointestinal tract disorders, 229
  for infection, 190
  for kidney infection, 153
  for leptospirosis, 181
  for Lyme disease, 175–177
  for periorbital cellulitis, 213
  photosensitivity and, 234
  for pneumonia, 55, 58
  for respiratory disorders, 225–228
  for sinusitis, 215–216
  for snake bite, 366
Anticoagulants
  bruises and, 277
  head injury and, 70, 72
Antifungal cream, 496–497
Antihistamines, 372, 379
  for hay fever, 228
Anti itch, 496
Antimigraine medications, 195
Antimites, 497
Antimotility drugs, 231, 235
Antiseizure medications, 81
Antiseptic ointments, 495–496
Antiseptics, 333
Anti sting, 496
Antivert. *See* Meclizine
Ants, 367–368
Anxiety, 191, 245, 315
  hyperventilation and, 316
Aorta, 146

Aortic aneurysm, abdominal, 145–146, 145f

Aortic dissection, 57

Aphthous ulcers, 219

Appendicitis, 142–143, 142f, 245

Appendix, 142–143

AQI. *See* Air Quality Index (AQI)

Aquamira water treatment, 436

Aquatic environments, first-aid kit for, 450

Aquatic life, hazardous, 394–407

- anisakidosis, 407
- barnacle cuts, 398
- barracudas, 395
- bristleworms, 400–401, 400f
- catfish, 403
- ciguatera fish poisoning, 406
- cone snails (shells), 401, 401f
- coral, 398
- creatures, 404
- cucumbers, 400, 400f
- fire coral, 396
- hallucinatory fish poisoning, 407
- jellyfish, 396–398
- lionfish, 403, 403f
- moray eels, 395
- octopuses, 404
- paralytic shellfish poisoning, 406–407
- poisonings from seafood, 405
- Portuguese man-of-war, 397
- pufferfish poisoning, 405–406
- Scombroid fish poisoning, 405

- scorpionfish, 403, 403f
- sea snakes, 404
- sea urchins, 398–399, 399f
- sharks, 394
- skin rashes, 404
- sponges, 395–396
- starfish, 400
- stingrays, 401–402, 402f
- surgeonfish, 403

Arm
- bandaging of, 297, 299f
- elbow. *See* Elbow
- upper. *See* Upper arm

Armpit
- axillary temperature measurement in, 189
- odor of, 266, 273

Army battle dressing pads, 60–61

Artemether
- with lumefantrine, for malaria, 170
- for schistosomiasis, 167

Arthritis, 310
- Chikungunya disease and, 171–172
- Lyme disease and, 176
- management of, 310
- medications for, 489–490
- signs and symptoms of, 310

Arthropod bites/stings. *See* Insect and arthropod bites/stings

Artificial tears, 206

Ascorbic acid, 434

Asphyxiation, snow burial as causes of, 391

Aspiration injury, 135–136
Aspirin
  bruising risks, 277
  for costochondritis, 59
  for fever, 217, 340, 490
  for frostbite, 332
  for heart attack, 58–59
  for migraine headache, 194
  Reye syndrome concerns, 189, 199, 217
  for sunburn, 129
  for tension headache, 199–200
  for transient ischemic attack, 165
Asthma, 52–53, 190, 228
  severe, 52
  treatment of, 52–53
Atarax. *See* Hydroxyzine
Athlete's foot, 271–272
Ativan. *See* Lorazepam
Atovaquone
  for babesiosis, 179
  proguanil hydrochloride and, for malaria, 169
Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), 318
Automated external defibrillator (AED), training, 1
Auvi-Q autoinjectors, 368
Avalanche
  country, 7
  rescue beacon, 7
  snow, 389–393
AvaLung, 392, 393
AVPU neurologic assessment scale, 75

Azithromycin
  for babesiosis, 179
  for bronchitis, 54
  for diarrhea, 245–246
  for gonorrhea, 156
  for otitis media, 199
  for pneumonia, 54, 58
  for whooping cough, 190–191

B

Babesia microti, 179
Babesiosis, 179
Bacillus anthracis, 419
Bacitracin, for blepharitis, 209
Backpack
  back pain caused by, 153, 313
  uses of, 153–154, 313–314
Back pain, 153, 312–314, 313f
Bacterial vaginosis, 150
Balanitis, 156
Bandage, 1, 3–4, 60–61, 94–95. *See also* Splint(s)
  for ankle sprain, 307, 308f
  application of, techniques for, 296–301
  for arm injuries, 297, 299f
  butterfly, 283, 283f
  for chest wounds, 298
  for eye injury, 205f
  for finger wounds, 296–297, 296f
  for foot injuries, 297
  for groin injuries, 297, 299f

- for hand fractures, 297
- for head injuries, 298–301, 300f, 301f
- for leg injuries, 297, 299f
- pressure, 60–61, 60f
- removal of, 301
- for shoulder injuries, 297, 300f
- spiral leg, 299f
- for thigh injuries, 297, 299f
- triangular, 296–301, 296f
- wound, 60, 60f
- for wrist, 297, 298f

Bandaging, of wounds, 296–301
Bark scorpion, 373
Barnacle cuts, 398
Barometric pressure, 433–434
Barotitis, 197
Barracudas, 395
Battle’s sign, 75, 91
Beach tar, 131–132
Bears, 421, 421f
“Beaver poison,” 424
Bed bug, 379, 380
Bed nets, for insect protection, 381
Bees
- Africanized (killer), 367
- stings from, 367, 368

Beetles, 379, 379f
Bell’s palsy, 197
Benadryl. *See* Diphenhydramine
“Bends, ” the, 409–410

Benign paroxysmal positional vertigo (BPPV), 193
Benign prostatic hypertrophy (BPH), 153–154
Benzocaine, 221
Benzophenones, 252
Betadine, for water disinfection, 435
“Bicycle seat prostatitis,” 154
Bisacodyl, 493
Bismuth subsalicylate, 234, 493
Bite(s)
  cat, 295, 415
  dog, 261
  human, 262
  insect. *See* Insect and arthropod bites/stings
  snakebite. *See* Snakebite
  spider. *See* Spiders
Biting flies, 374
“Black Death,” 418
Black eye, 277
Blackflies, 374, 385
Black tongue, 220
Black widow spider, 370–371, 371f
Bladder infection, 152–153
Blast injuries, 443–444
Bleach
  household, 504–505
  water disinfection using, 433
Bleeding, 14, 60–69
  in amputation, 127
  arterial, 60
  control, 279–280, 280f

  - from cuts, 279–280, 280f
  - in dislocations, 103–104
  - external, 60–61
  - in eye (hyphema), 205f, 214
  - from finger, 280f
  - in fractures, 103–104
  - internal, 14, 68–69, 140
  - from nose, 199
    - head injury and, 72
  - ruptured or torn varicose (dilated) vein, 67
  - treatment of, 60–62
    - Army battle dressing pads for, 60–61
    - hemostatics, 62
    - pressure point compression, 62
    - tourniquet used in. *See* Tourniquet
  - ulcers and, 139–140, 139f
  - vaginal, 149
  - from vein, 60, 62
- Blepharitis, 209
- Blister(s), 267–271, 268f. *See also* Fever blisters; Rash
  - from burns, 130, 250–251, 332
  - from cold-related injuries, 332, 333f
  - draining of, 268–269
  - fever, 199
  - friction, 267
  - frostbite, 332, 333f
  - healing of, 264
  - heel, 268f
  - "hot spot" on, 267
  - infection of, 264

  insect bites and stings as cause of, 367, 369
  management of, 267–271, 268f
  moleskin for, 268
  open, 269
  prevention of, 269–271, 270f
  sunburn as cause of, 249–251
  toe, 269
  torn, 269
  treatment of, 268
Blister beetle, 379, 379f
Blood
  in airway, 192
  in bowel movements, 137
  cold weather effects on flow of, 331
  contaminated, 505
  coughing up, 191–192, 225
  diseases transmitted via, guidelines for prevention of, 504-505
  in feces, 68–69
  under fingernail, 278, 278f
  in urine, 68–69, 153, 338–339
  vomiting of, 68–69, 137, 245
Blood clots
  in airway, 67
  bleeding control and, 62
  broken nose and, 215
  head injury and, 72
  pulmonary embolism and, 52
  stroke and, 162, 165–166
  thrombophlebitis and, 53
Blood loss

  - dislocations as cause of, 84
  - fractures as cause of, 84
  - shock secondary to, 70
- Blood pressure
  - high (hypertension), 58, 194, 350
  - low, 57, 367
- “Blood Stopper,” 62
- Blood sugar
  - in diabetes, 159, 162
  - low, 15, 192, 341
- Blowfish, 405
- Bodily waste disposal, 9
- Body, dead, 180, 478
- Body fluids
  - diseases transmitted via, guidelines for prevention of, 504-505
  - high altitude–related retention of, 357
  - loss of, at higher altitudes, 348
  - retention of, 14
- Body temperature
  - axillary measurement of, 189, 322–323
  - of canine, 520
  - elevated. *See* Fever; Hyperthermia
  - lowered. *See* Hypothermia
  - measurement of, 13, 189, 322–323
  - normal, 189, 321
  - rectal, 189
- Body tingling, from lightning strike, 387
- Body weight, age-specific values for, 14
- Boil, 262. *See also* Abscess
- Boiling, of water, 434

Bones, of skeleton, 89f

Bonine. *See* Meclizine

Borrelia burgdorferi, 175–176

Borrelia hermsii, 174

Botfly, 380

Botulism, 240–241

Bowel
  loops of, from laceration, 67, 67f
  obstruction of, 143, 245

Bowline, 475f

Box jellyfish, 396

Boyle's law, 408

Braces (dental), broken/snagged, 224

Brain
  injury to, 14, 70, 72. *See also* Head injury
  subarachnoid hemorrhage in, 195
  swelling of, 352

Brainstem, stroke involving, 165

Breast cellulitis, 159

Breathing, 3–4, 25–26, 25f, 45–46
  adequacy of, 48
  age-specific values for, 12
  assistance with, 12
  in avalanche, 391
  cessation of, lightning and, 387
  checking for/evaluation of, 413
  in dengue victims, 167
  evaluation of, 12
  ketoacidosis and, 163–164
  mouth-to-mouth, 3–4, 324, 413

- periodic, 354
- pocket for, 392
- problems involving, hyperventilation, 316
- raspy (stridor), 133

Breech delivery, 160

Breeze fly, 374

Bristleworms, 400–401, 400f

Broken nose, 215

Broken ribs, 47

Broken wrist. *See* Wrist, broken

Bronchitis, 14, 58, 134
- chronic, 54
- high-altitude, 358

Bronchodilators, 52
- for allergic reactions, 79
- for asthma, 52–53
- for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 54

Brown recluse spider, 371–372, 372f

Bruised liver, 140

Bruised lung, 48, 192

Bruises, 68–69, 277–302

Bubonic plague, 418

"Bucket-handle" tear, of meniscus, 124

Buck's traction, 114–115, 115f

Buffalo gnats, 374

Bupivacaine, for wound, 280

Burns, 15, 128–132
- antibiotics for, 131
- blisters caused by, 131, 250–251, 332
- definitions, 128

  - dressings for, 131
    - dry, 131
    - wet, 131
  - first-degree, 128
  - fluid replacement for, 131
  - full-thickness, 130
  - inhalation injury as, 128, 133
  - lightning-related, 387, 387f
  - partial-thickness, 129
  - prevention of, 132, 134–135
  - rule of nines for body surface area calculations in, 130–131, 130f
  - second-degree, 130
  - sunburn, 128, 129, 209
  - tar, 131–132
  - third-degree, 131
  - total body surface area calculations for, 130
  - treatment for, 128–131
  - wound caused by
    - dressings for, 129
    - infection of, 130
- Bursitis, 310–311, 311f
- Butoconazole, for vaginal infections, 149–150
- Butterfly bandage, 283, 283f

C

- Cactus spine removal, 257
- Caffeine
  - in first-aid kit, 449
  - for migraine headache, 195
- CamelBak hydration system, 342

Campylobacter bacteria, 232

Canadian C-Spine Rule, 90

Candida albicans. *See also* Yeast infection

  sore throat caused by, 216–218

  vaginal infections caused by, 149–150

Candidiasis, 149–150

Canine

  body temperature of, 520

  emergency medicine, 520-521, 520f

  heat exhaustion and heat stroke in, 520

  muzzle for, 520f

  pulmonary edema in, 521

  snakebite in, 521

Canker sores, 219

Captain Morgan technique, for hip dislocation, 121, 122f

Carafate. *See* Sucralfate

Carbohydrates, for hypoglycemia, 163

Carbonaceous black sputum, thermal injury and, 133

Carbon monoxide poisoning, 329

  smoke (chemical) injury as cause of, 133

Cardiac arrest, 57, 325, 387, 412

Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR), 1, 3–4, 31, 33, 57, 387

  chest compressions for, 45

  of hypothermia victims, 324

  in infants, 31, 32f

  lightning and, 387

  need for, assessing for, 46

  practicing of, 1

Cardioversion, for supraventricular tachycardia, 58

Caregiver, 15

Caries, dental, 220
Carotid artery
  massage of, 58
  pulse assessment using, 45
Carpal tunnel syndrome, 303
  volar (underneath) wrist splint for, 507, 508f
Carries, for transporting injured victim, 455
  blanket drag, 457f
  cradle carry, 458f
  fireman's carry, 456f
  fireman's drag, 456f
  four-hand seat, 458f
  piggyback carry, 457f
  rope (webbing) seat, 455f, 460f
  shoulder drag, 456f
  ski pole seat, 459f
  wheelbarrow carry, 459f
Cascara sagrada, 493
Castor bean, 424, 424f
Cataracts, 209
Cat bite, 295, 415
Caterpillars, 378–379, 378f
Catfish, 403
Cat-scratch disease, 416
Cavit, 221
Cefadroxil, for kidney infection, 152
Cefaly device, 195
Cefdinir
  for otitis media, 199
  for pneumonia, 55, 58

Cefixime, for gonorrhea, 156
Cefpodoxime
  for gonorrhea, 156
  for otitis media, 199
  for pneumonia, 55
Ceftriaxone
  for gonorrhea, 156
  for meningococcal disease, 177
Cefuroxime axetil
  for Lyme disease, 177
  for pneumonia, 55
Celecoxib (Celebrex), 491
Cellulitis, 261–262
  breast, 160–161
  orbital, 213
  periorbital, 213
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), 452
Centigrade (Celsius) temperature conversion, 501, 501t
Centipedes, 375
Centruroides exilicauda, 373
Cercariae, 179, 257–258
Cerebral artery aneurysm, 165
Cerebral edema, high-altitude, 352–353
Cerebrospinal fluid, leaking of, 91
Cerena Transcranial Magnetic Stimulator, 195
Cerumenex, 200–201
Cervical spine
  "clearing" of, 90–91
  head injury and, 73
Chafe, 260

Chalazion, 212–213
Chemical injury
  to eye, 202
  inhalation-related, 133–135
Chest
  bandaging of, 298
  examination of, 14
  fracture of, 111
Chest compressions, 45
  in infants and small children, 31
Chest injuries, 47–51
  broken ribs, 47
  bruised lung, 48, 192
  flail chest, 47, 51f
  pneumothorax, 47–48, 48f, 409
  treatment for, 48–51, 49f, 55
  wounds, 48–50
Chest pain, 55, 56–59. *See also* Angina pectoris
  costochondritis as cause of, 59, 59f
  heart attack as cause of. *See* Heart attack
  heartburn as cause of, 58–59
  infection as cause of, 58
  Lassa fever and, 184
  muscle injuries as cause of, 59
  noncardiac causes of, 58–59
  pulmonary embolism as cause of, 58
  supraventricular tachycardia as cause of, 58
Chest wounds
  dressing of, 49f
  sucking, 48–50

Chickenpox, 275. *See also* Herpes zoster; Shingles

Chiggers, 375

Chikungunya disease, 171–172

Chilblain, 335

Childbirth

- emergency. *See* Emergency childbirth
- normal, 157

Children. *See also* Infants

- acclimatization of, in high altitudes, 343
- acetazolamide in, 349
- acute mountain sickness in, 354
- arthropod bites in, 368
- asthma in, 52–53
- black widow spider bites in, 371
- bronchodilators for, 79
- common cold in, 225–226
- dexamethasone for, 352–353
- diarrhea in, 234–235
- ear infection in, 225
- ehrlichiosis in, 177–178
- elbow dislocation in, 99–101
- epinephrine administration in, 78
- fever in, 188–190, 225
- foreign bodies in, 212–213
- head trauma in, 245
- high-altitude precautions for, 350
- insect bites in, 368
- jellyfish stings in, 397
- lost, 468
- Lyme disease in, 177

- motion sickness in, 438–439
- mushroom poisoning in, 422
- nasal foreign bodies in, 214
- nifedipine administration in, 351–352
- pneumonia in, 53, 58
- pulse in, 12, 45, 229
- respiratory rate in, 225
- sore throat in, 215
- vomiting in, 229
- whooping cough in, 190–191
- wild plant poisoning in, 422

Chills
- causes of, 188–190
- sinusitis and, 213

Chironex fleckeri, 396

Chlamydia trachomatis
- bladder infection caused by, 152
- description of, 150

Chlorine, as chemical disinfectant, 434

Chloroquine phosphate, 169

Choking, 22–24, 23f, 339

Cholecystitis, 140–142, 141f

Cholelithiasis. *See* Gallstones

Cholera, 229

Chondroitin, for arthritis, 310

Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)
- description of, 54–55
- medications for, 53

Cigarette smoking, bronchitis and, 225

Ciguatera fish poisoning, 406

Cimetidine, 494
Ciprofloxacin
  for anthrax, 419
  for bladder infection, 152
  for diarrhea, 232
  for kidney infection, 153
  for meningococcal disease, 182–183
  for otitis externa, 199–200
  for paratyphoid fever, 182
  for typhoid fever, 182
Circadian clock, 440
Circadian rhythm, 3
Circulation, 28–33, 29f, 30f, 31f
Citronella, 381, 382, 383
Clarithromycin
  for otitis media, 199
  for pneumonia, 55
  for whooping cough, 190–191
Claritin. *See* Loratadine
Clavicle fracture, 101–103, 102f. *See also* Collarbone
"Clearing, " cervical spine, 91
Clobetasol, for chigger bites, 375
Clonazepam, for seizures, 81, 489
Clostridium spp.
  C. botulinum, 240–241
  C. difficile, 232–233, 261–262
Clothing, as insect repellent, 381
Clotrimazole
  for black tongue, 220
  for vaginal infections, 149–150

Clove hitch, 476f
Cluster headache, 195
Coartem, for malaria, 170
Codeine
  for cough, 495
  for pain, 490
“Coffee grounds,” 68–69, 246
Coiled rope seat, 460f
Colchicine, for arthritis, 310
Cold application, for bruises, 277
Cold, common, 190
Cold formulas (medications), 495
Cold-related injuries and illness, 321–336
  chilblain, 335
  frostbite. *See* Frostbite
  frostnip, 334
  hives, 336
  immersion foot, 334–335
  pernio, 335
  Raynaud’s phenomenon, 335–336
  sledding mishaps, 330–331
  snow blindness, 336
  trench foot, 334–335
Cold sores, 218–219
Cold-water immersion, 326–327
Colitis (irritable colon), 241
Collarbone
  fracture of, 101–103, 102f
  shoulder separation and, 110
Colorado tick fever, 175

Combat application tourniquet (CAT), 63–64, 63f
Combat Gauze, 68
Combination ankle stirrup and figure-of-eight splint, 515, 516f
Common cold, 190–191
Common sense, 5
Communication, 7
  accident/illness report, 12
  emergency, 12
Community-acquired pneumonia, 55
Compartment syndrome, 85–86
  bruises and, 277
  signs and symptoms of, 86
Compound fracture, 83, 83f
Concussion, 72–73
Conditioning, 6. *See also* Acclimatization
Cone snails (shells), 401, 401f
Confusion
  concussion as cause of, 73, 76
  from lightning strike, 387
Congestion. *See* Nasal congestion
Conjunctivitis, 207–208
Consciousness, 76
Constipation, 241–243
Constriction band, for snakebite, 363–364
Contact lens(es), 208–213
  corneal scratch caused by, 210
  “pink eye” and, 207–208
  removal of, 206, 206f
  soft, displacement of, 206
Contraception, emergency, 151

Conversion tables, 501-503

- centigrade (Celsius), 501
- Fahrenheit, 501
- feet to meters, 503
- length, 502
- meters to feet, 503
- temperature, 501
- volume, 502
- weight, 503

Coordination, stroke and, 165–166

Coprinus atramentarius (inky cap), 428, 429f

Coral, 398

- cuts and scrapes caused by, 398
- fire, 396

Coral poisoning, 398

Coral snakes

- characteristics of, 359
- envenomation from, signs of, 362
- illustration of, 360f

Cornea

- abrasion of, 207, 209
- burn of, 202
- foreign body in, 202–204, 202f
- scratched, 202–204
- snow blindness effects on, 209–210
- ultraviolet radiation–related burn of, 209

Corneal ulcer, 202–204

Corticosteroids. *See also specific drug*

- for allergic reactions, 78
- for asthma, 52–53

- bruising risks, 256, 277
- for burns, 131
- for chigger bites, 375
- for sponge-related skin rash, 396
- for sunburn, 128

Cortinarius rainierensis, 428

Costochondritis, 59, 59f

Cougar, 421

Cough, 190–191

- blood in, 191–192
- chronic, 225
- croup, 191
- high-altitude, 358
- medications for, 495
- thermal injury and, 133
- treatment of, 190–191
- whooping, 190

COVID-19, 2, 184–185

CPR. *See* Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR)

Cradle carry, 458f

Cranberry juice, for bladder infection prevention, 152

Cravat, 203, 204f

Creatures, sea, 404

Creeping eruption, 275

Crime avoidance, 442

Cromolyn sodium nasal spray, 228

Crotamiton, 497

Croup, 191

Crown of thorns starfish, 400

Cryptosporidiosis, 235

Cucumbers, 400, 400f

Culiseta melanura, 173

Cunningham technique, for shoulder dislocation, 104–105, 104f

Cutaneous larva migrans, 275

Cuts, 14. *See also* Wounds

- from barnacles, 398
- closing of, 282–285, 283f, 284f
- from coral, 398
- management of, 279–285, 280f
- of scalp, 76–77

Cyanoacrylate glue, 76–77, 215, 285, 293

Cyanosis, 351

Cyclical vomiting, 246

Cyclist's palsy, 303

Cyclizine hydrochloride, for motion sickness, 492

Cyproheptadine, 488

Cystitis. *See* Bladder infection

D

"Dangle" method, for shoulder relocation, 106, 106f

Death, 15

- appearance of, 324–325
- dealing with, 182, 478–480
- emotional considerations after, 176, 478–479
- handling of body after, 181, 478

Death cap mushroom, 427, 428f

Debrox, 200–201

Dechlorination, for water disinfection, 436

Decision-making, medical, 14–15

Decompression sickness (the "bends"), 409–410

Deep vein thrombosis
  definition of, 311
  traveling and, 440
Deerfly, 374, 385
DEET, 168, 252, 376–377, 382–383

Defecation, 9
Dehydration, 143, 187, 235, 338
  avoidance of, 8, 341
  constipation secondary to, 244
  in diabetes victims, 163
  gastrointestinal tract disorders, 229
  in high-altitude environments, 347
  hypothermia and, 323
  rehydration for, 13
  shock caused by, 70
  skin findings suggestive of, 15
  sweating as cause of, 337–338
  vagus nerve stimulation caused by, 341
Delirium, management of, 317
Dengue, 170–171
Dental braces, broken or snagged, 224
Dental caries, 220
Dental problems
  broken, displaced, or lost tooth, 222–224
  first-aid kit supplies for, 448
  lost fillings, 220
  toothaches, 220–222
  tooth inflammation/infections, 220–222
Depression (emotional), 316–317
Depression, of shoulder dislocation, 103
DERMABOND ADVANCED, 293
Dermacentor andersoni, 175
Dermatitis
  seaweed, 257, 404

  soapfish, 258

Dermatobia hominis, 380

Dexamethasone, 349

  for acute mountain sickness prevention, 349, 355

  for asthma, 52–53

  in children, 352–353

  for croup, 191

  for high-altitude cerebral edema, 352–353

  for high-altitude pulmonary edema, 352

  for otitis externa, 195

  for sore throat, 195

Dextromethorphan, 227, 495

Diabetes, 162–164, 217–218

  definition of, 162

  fatigue in, 187

  hypoglycemic reactions in, 164

  insulin-dependent, 162

  seizure caused by, 81

  skin infection risks in, 164

Diabetic ketoacidosis, 163–164

Diamox. *See* Acetazolamide

Diaper rash, 273

Diarrhea, 15, 225, 229–241

  antibiotic-associated, 232–233

  antibiotics for, 232

  antimotility drugs for, 231

  bloody, 236

  Clostridium difficile-associated, 240–241

  drugs for, 241

  fluid replacement for, 245–246

- food poisoning as cause of, 229
- *Giardia lamblia* as cause of, 232
- infectious, 247
- irritable bowel syndrome as cause of, 241
- medications for, 492–493
- prevention of
  - food safety for, 238
  - hand hygiene, 240
  - washing dishes and cooking/eating utensils, 240
- recovery diet, 233
- rehydration enema for, 231
- shock caused by, 71
- traveler's ("turista"), 233–234
- treatment of, 226–227, 233–234, 492–493
- viral, 234–235, 247

Diazepam
- for anxiety, 315
- for black widow spider bite, 371
- for seizure, 81
- for vertigo, 192–193

Diclofenac/misoprostol, 491

Diet
- electrolyte requirements and, 342
- gastrointestinal tract disorders and, 226, 246
- healthy, 3

Digital electronic eardrum scanners, 322–323

Digoxin, 489

Dilantin. *See* Diphenylhydantoin; Phenytoin sodium

Diltiazem, 489

Dimenhydrinate, for motion sickness, 438–439, 492

Di-n-propyl isocinchomeronate, 382–383
Diphenhydramine
  for allergic reactions, 76, 78, 491
  for insect stings, 368
  for itching, 486, 491
  for motion sickness in children, 438–439
Diphenoxylate, for diarrhea, 231, 493
Diphenylhydantoin, 489
Diphtheria-tetanus-acellular pertussis (DTaP) vaccine, 191
Disability and neurologic status, 33–37, 33f, 34f, 35f
Disaster preparedness, 10
Disaster response triage, 10–11
Discharge
  from ears, 199
  from penis, 156
  from vagina, 149–150
Dishwashing, 422
Disinfectants, chemical, 434
Disinfection, of water, 433–437
Dislocation, 83–126, 83f. *See also* Fracture
  of ankle, 125
  bleeding associated with, 111–112
  broken bone (dislocation), 83
  of chest, 111
  closed (skin intact), 83, 83f
  of coccyx, 112
  of collarbone (clavicle), 101–103, 102f
  comminuted, 83, 83f
  compartment syndrome, 85–86
  compound, 83, 83f

of elbow, 93, 93f, 99, 99f
of face, 91
of femur, 113–118, 113f, 114f, 115f, 116f, 117f, 118f, 119f, 120f
of finger, 93–98, 94f, 97f, 98f
of forearm, 95f, 98
of hand, 93–98, 93f
of heel, 126
of hip, 120–122, 120f, 121f, 122f
of humerus, 101, 108f
of jaw, 91–93, 92f
of knee, 122–124, 123f
of kneecap, 122–124, 123f
of lower back, 111
of lower leg, 124–125, 125f
of neck, 88–90
of nose, 91
of nursemaid's elbow, 99–101, 100f
open, 84
of pelvis, 111–112, 112f
of rib, 111
of scaphoid, 94, 94f
of shoulder, 103–110, 103f, 104f, 105f, 106f
simple, 83f
of skull, 91
of spine, 111
splints and slings for, 86–88, 87f, 93f, 95f, 96f, 97f
of tailbone, 112
taping of, 88
of thumb, 95–98, 98f
of toe, 125

  - of upper arm (humerus), 101, 101f, 102f
  - of wrist, 93–98, 93f, 94f
- Dissection, aortic, 57
- Distress signals, 453, 467–467, 467f
- Divers Alert Network, 7, 164, 408
- Diverticula, 144–145
- Diverticulitis, 144–145
- Dizziness, 192–193, 341
  - head injuries as cause of, 72–73
  - motion sickness as cause of, 438, 439
- Doctors abroad, 451–451
- Docusate sodium, 493
- Dog bite, 261
- Double bowline, 475f
- Double carrick bend, 477f
- Double fisherman's bend, 477f
- Double half hitch, 474f, 476f
- Double layer wrist splint, 509, 510f
- Double long leg splint, 516, 517f
- Doxycycline
  - for African tick-bite fever, 178
  - for anthrax, 419
  - for diarrhea, 232
  - for ehrlichiosis, 177–178
  - for gonorrhea, 156
  - for leptospirosis, 181
  - for Lyme disease, 167
  - for malaria, 169
  - for pneumonia, 55
  - for relapsing fever, 174

- for Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 175
- for traveler's diarrhea prophylaxis, 233–234
- for tularemia, 181

Dracunculiasis, 433

Dramamine. *See* Dimenhydrinate

Draw loop, 475f

Dressings. *See also* Bandage

- buddy-taping, 94f
- for burns, 128
- for chest wounds, 48–50
- for cold injuries, 333
- dry, 131
- for eyes, 448
- in first-aid kit, 448
- for jaw dislocation and fracture, 84, 93f
- wet, 131
- for wounds, 294–295

Driving, 3

Drowning, 408, 412–414

- cold-water, 412
- prevention of, 413–414
- victims of, recognizing of, 412–413

Drug overdose, 45–46, 45f

Drugs, 481-500. *See also* Medications; *specific drug*

- antianxiety, 315
- overdose of, 189

Dry eyes, 208–209

Dry socket, 223–224

Duodenal ulcers, 139f

Duty to assist, 11

Dysentery, amebic, 237

E

- Ear(s), 15
  - amputation of, 127
  - discharge from, 199
  - foreign body, 200
  - head injury–related bleeding from, 72–73
  - wax, 200–201
- Earache, 197
- Eardrum, injury, 200
- Ear infections, 189, 198–200
  - anatomy of, 198f
  - labyrinthitis, 192–193
  - middle ear, 225
  - otitis externa (swimmer's ear), 199
  - otitis media, 198–199
  - vertigo secondary to, 192
- Ear squeeze, 410–411, 410f
- Earthquake, 389–390
- Eastern equine encephalitis (EEE), 173
- Eastward traveling, jet lag associated with, 441
- Eating utensils, diarrhea prevention by washing of, 240
- Ebola virus, 183–184, 478
- Eclampsia, 81
- Ectopic pregnancy, 4, 149
- *Ehrlichia chaffeensis*, 177–178
- Ehrlichiosis, 177–178
- Elbow
  - dislocation of, 99–101, 100f

- fracture of, 99–101, 100f
  - elbow splint for, 512, 512f
  - “sugar tong” splint for, 510, 511f
- “nursemaid’s,” 99–101, 100f
- splint for, 512, 512f

Elderly
- abdominal pain in, 144–145
- black widow spider bites, 371
- influenza in, 226–227
- special considerations for, 234, 275

Electric (digital) thermometers, 189

Electrolyte solution, dilute, 14

Eletriptan, for migraine headaches, 491

Elidel. *See* Pimecrolimus

E-MAT Emergency Tourniquet, 65f

Embolism
- air, 408–409, 408f
  - stroke and, 166
- pulmonary, 52
  - chest pain caused by, 57
  - coughing up blood caused by, 190

Emergency canine medicine, 520-521, 520f

Emergency childbirth, 157–161, 163
- breech delivery, 160
- complicated deliveries, 160
- mastitis considerations after, 160–161
- normal delivery, 157
- umbilical cord prolapse, 160

Emergency contraception, 151

Emergency medical service (EMS) systems, 13

Emergency position-indicating radio beacon (EPIRB), 6
Emphysema, 54. *See also* Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)
EMT Toothsaver, 223
Encephalitis, 184
  West Nile viral disease and, 172
Enteric fever. *See* Paratyphoid fever
Envenomation
  from cone snails, 401
  from coral snakes, 362
  from Gila monster, 365–366
  from Mexican beaded lizard, 365–366
  from pit vipers, 361–362, 361f
  signs of, 361
Ephedra, 343
Epididymitis, 156
Epidural hematoma, 74
Epigastrium, abdominal pain from, 139–140
Epilepsy, 7–8, 80. *See also* Seizure
Epinephrine, 484–485, 485f
  administration, 53
  for allergic reactions, 78, 368, 469
  for asthma, 54
  for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 54
  for croup, 191
  for insect sting, 368
EpiPen, 53, 368
EPIRB, 6
Epistaxis, 213–215
Equipment, safety/survival, 6–7
Ergotamines, for migraine headaches, 195

Erythema migrans, 177

Erythromycin

- for Lyme disease, 177
- for relapsing fever, 174
- for sore throat, 216–217
- for whooping cough, 191

Escherichia coli O157:H7, 236

Eskimo technique, for humeral dislocation, 108, 109f

Esophageal reflux, 245

Esophagitis, reflux, 58–59, 190

- medications for, 494

Esophagus, food stuck in, 218

Ethosuximide, for seizures, 81

Eurax. *See* Crotamiton

Eustachian tube, 198f, 410–411, 410f

Evacuation, 54, 213, 389

- emergency, 13, 86, 160, 163, 345
- of victim. *See also* Transport, of injured victim
  - with head injury, 74

Evaporation, 340

Examination, physical, 15, 137–139

Exenatide, for diabetes, 162

Exercises, for back pain, 312

Extractor device

- for botfly larvae removal, 380–381
- for fly larvae removal, 380–381
- for insect stinger removal, 368, 369f

Eye(s), 15, 201–207. *See also specific anatomy*

- allergies of, 208–209
- altitude-related changes to, 357

anatomy, 201, 201f
bandaging of, 203, 203f, 301
Bell’s palsy–related precautions, 197
black, 277
bleeding in, 204–205, 205f
blepharitis, 209
chemical burn of, 202
contact lens in
    removal of, 206, 206f
    soft, displacement of, 206
corneal injuries. *See* Cornea
dry, 208–209
first-aid kit medications for, 448
floaters in, 210–211
foreign body, 202–204
glaucoma of, 212
hyphema of, 204–205
optic neuritis of, 212
patching of, 209
periorbital cellulitis of, 213
pink, 207–208
protective eyeglasses for, 210
pterygium of, 213
pupils. *See* Pupil(s)
red, 207
retinal injury in, 211–212
snow blindness effects on, 207
subconjunctival hemorrhage, 206, 207f
sunglasses for, 210
vitreous detachment in, 210–211

Eyeball injury, 204, 205f

Eye drops, 228, 240–241

Eyelashes, 202

Eyelids

- chalazion of, 213
- foreign body under, 202–204
- glued shut, 202
- infection of, 213
- injury of, 212, 213
- stye in, 212–213
- “superglue” of, 202

Eye shield, 204, 205f

F

Face

- fracture of, 91
- swelling of, 357

Face mask, for oxygen administration, 432

Facial muscles, stroke and, 165

Factor V Leiden thrombophilia, 53

Fahrenheit temperature conversion, 501, 501t

Fainting, 68–69, 187–188

- definition of, 187
- heat-related, 341–343
- management of, 187
- vagal reaction as cause of, 187

Falciparum malaria, 168

Falling, through ice, 327–328

Fallopian tubes, pregnancy in. *See* Ectopic pregnancy

Falls prevention, 5

Famciclovir
  for fever blisters, 219
  for herpes simplex virus, 150
  for shingles, 275–276
Famotidine
  for allergic reactions, 79
  for heartburn, 245, 494
  for ulcer pain, 494
Fansidar, for malaria, 169
Fatigue, 195, 228, 246, 372
  fainting caused by, 341
  management of, 188
  as sleep apnea symptom, 349
  West Nile viral disease as cause of, 171
Fear, 3–4
Feces, contaminated, 504
Feet
  amputation of, 127
  arch support, 269
  athlete's foot, 271–272
  bandaging of, 297
  black widow spider bite of, 370–371
  blisters on, 267–271, 268f. *See also* Blister(s)
  chigger bite of, 375
  flea bites of, 375
  frostbite of, 331–332
  heat-related swelling of, 341
  swelling of, 357
  trench, 334–335
Feet (measurement), conversion to meters, 503

Felon, 266–267, 267f
Female reproductive system
  anatomy of, 148f
  ectopic pregnancy, 149
  ovarian cyst, 149
  ovarian infection, 148–149
  ovulation-related pain, 149
  torsed (twisted) ovary, 149
  vaginal bleeding, 149
  vaginal discharge, 149–150
  vaginitis, 149–150
Femur fracture
  Buck's traction for, 114–115, 115f
  half-ring splint for, 518, 519f
  management of, 113–118, 113f, 114f, 115f, 116f, 117f, 118f, 119f, 120f
  traction harness for, 114–115, 116f
  traction splint for, 114
Ferning lightning burn, 387f
Fever, 188–190, 247, 338
  African tick-bite, 178–179
  in children, 189, 226
  Colorado tick, 175
  dengue as cause of, 170–171
  hemorrhagic, 171
  Lassa, 183–184
  malaria as cause of, 167
  medications for, 487–488
  paratyphoid, 167
  relapsing, 167
  in returning (foreign country) traveler, 167

- Rocky Mountain spotted, 175
- typhoid, 167
- of unknown origin, 190

Fever blisters, 218–219, 276

Fexofenadine, 256, 379

Fibula dislocation, 125

Figure-of-eight ankle splint, 515, 515f

Figure-of-eight bandage, 101–103, 102f, 307, 308f

Figure-of-eight knot, 474f

Filter pore sizes, for water disinfection, 436

Finafloxacin otic suspension, 199–200

Finger(s). *See also* Thumb
- amputation of, 127
- bandaging of, 296–297, 296f
- bleeding from, 280f
- buddy-taping of, 94f
- cut in, finger splint for, 507, 507f
- dislocation of, 93–98, 94f, 97f, 98f, 507, 507f
- fourth/fifth, broken/dislocated, ulnar gutter splint for, 508, 509f
- fracture of, 94f
- jersey, 98
- mallet, 98, 98f
- reduction of, 93–98
- splint for, 507, 507f

Fingernail
- blood under, 278, 278f
- torn, 278

Fingertip
- injuries of, splint for, 507, 507f
- skin cracks in, 266

Fire coral, 396
Fireman's carry, 456f
Fireman's drag, 456f
Fires, wildland. *See* Wildland fires
First-aid kits, 445–450
  for allergies, 449
  for aquatic environments, 450
  basic supplies in, 445
  for childbirth, 157
  dental supplies in, 448
  eye medications in, 448
  for forest environments, 449–450
  general supplies in, 445–446
  for mountain environments, 449–450
  nonprescription medications in, 448–449
  prescription medications in, 449
  sling material in, 447
  splinting material in, 447
  topical skin preparations in, 448
  wound care preparations and dressings in, 446–447
First-aid principles, 12–15
First-aid programs, 1
First-degree burns, 129
Fish handler's disease, 259
Fishhook removal, 469–471, 470f
Fitness, 6
Flail chest, 47, 51f
Flash flood, 414
Flatus, 244–245
Flatworms, schistosomiasis caused by, 179

Flavivirus, 170–171
Fleas, 374–375, 385
Flies, biting, 374
Floaters, 210–211
Flood, 389
“Floppy baby,” 189, 196
Flu. *See* Influenza
Fluconazole
  for thrush, 220
  for vaginal infections, 149–150
Fluids. *See also* Body fluids
  intake of, for acute mountain sickness, 354–355
  loss of, at higher altitudes, 348
  replacement of, 245–246
    for burns, 131
    for diarrhea, 245–246
    electrolytes, 242, 342
    for hypothermia, 324
    salts, 230, 342
  requirements for, 8
    muscle cramps and, 340
  types of, 504
Flutter valve effect, 48–50
Fly agaric, 428, 428f
Fly larvae, skin infestation by, 380–381
Fontanel, 189
Food handling, 238
Food poisoning, 235
Food safety, 238
Foot. *See* Feet

Foot care, 273
Forearm sling, 98
Foreign body
  in ear, 200
  embedded/impaled, 68
  under eyelid, 202–204
  in nose, 215
Foreign travel, infectious diseases, 182
Foreshock, 390
Foreskin infection, 156
Forest environments, first-aid kit for, 449–450
Fosfomycin trometamol, for bladder infection, 152
Four-hand seat, 455–458, 458f
Foxglove, 423, 423f
Fracture, 83–126, 83f. *See also* Dislocation
  of ankle, 125
  bleeding associated with, 111–112
  broken bone (dislocation), 83
  of chest, 111
  closed (skin intact), 83, 83f
  of coccyx, 112
  of collarbone (clavicle), 101–103, 102f
  comminuted, 83, 83f
  compartment syndrome, 85–86
  compound, 83, 83f
  of elbow, 93, 93f, 99, 99f
  of face, 91
  of femur, 113–118, 113f, 114f, 115f, 116f, 117f, 118f, 119f, 120f
  of finger, 93–98, 94f, 97f, 98f
  of forearm, 95f, 98

  - of hand, 93–98, 93f
  - of heel, 126
  - of hip, 120–122, 120f, 121f, 122f
  - of humerus, 101, 108f
  - of jaw, 91–93, 92f
  - of knee, 122–124, 123f
  - of kneecap, 122–124, 123f
  - of lower back, 111
  - of lower leg, 124–125, 125f
  - of neck, 88–90
  - of nose, 91, 215
  - of nursemaid's elbow, 99–101, 100f
  - open, 84
  - of pelvis, 60, 111–112, 112f
  - of rib, 111
  - of scaphoid, 94, 94f
  - of shoulder, 103–110, 103f, 104f, 105f, 106f
  - simple, 80, 83f
  - of skull, 74, 91
  - of spine, 111
  - splints and slings for, 86–88, 87f, 93f, 95f, 96f, 97f
  - of tailbone, 112
  - taping of, 88
  - of thumb, 95–98, 98f
  - of toe, 125
  - of upper arm, 101, 101f, 102f
  - of wrist, 93–98, 93f, 94f

Francisella tularensis, 181

Friction blisters, 267

Frostbite, 14, 331, 347

  blisters caused by, 332, 333f
  of corneas, 333
  first degree, 332
  fourth degree, 332
  frostnip *versus*, 334
  hypothermia with, 332
  prevention of, 334
  rewarming for, 331–332
  second degree, 332
  stages of, 332
  symptoms of, 331
  third degree, 332
  tissue destroyed by, 333
  treatment of, 331–332
  wounds caused by, 332
Frostnip, 334
Frovatriptan, 491
Fruits, handling of, 239
Full-thickness burns, 130
Fungal infections, 199–200
“Furious rabies,” 417

G
Gabapentin
  for postherpetic neuralgia, 275–276
  for seizures, 81
Gallbladder
  anatomy of, 141f
  inflammation of, 140–141, 141f
Gallstones, 140–142, 141f

"Gamekeeper's thumb," 98, 99f
Gamow bag, 352, 355–357, 356f
  guidelines for use, 356–357
Gas pains, 494
Gastric ulcer, 246
Gastroenteritis, 245–246
  abdominal pain caused by, 140, 142
  in diabetes, 164
  viral, 247
Gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD), 245
Gastrointestinal tract disorders, 226, 229–248
  bowel obstruction, 245
  colitis, 232–233
  constipation, 234
  diarrhea. *See* Diarrhea
  diverticulitis, 144–145
  flatus, 236–237
  heartburn, 245
  hemorrhoids, 139–140, 246
  irritable bowel syndrome, 241
  motion sickness associated with, 438
  nausea and vomiting, 226, 233
  trichinellosis-related symptoms of, 180
  vomiting of blood, 68–69, 245
Gatifloxacin, for corneal scratch, 202
Gaviscon, 494
Generalized seizure, 80
Genital herpes, 150
GERD (gastroesophageal reflux disease), 245
Giant cell arteritis, 196–197

Giardia cysts, 433

Giardia lamblia, 236–237, 433

Gila monster, 365–366

Ginger, for nausea, 439

Ginkgo biloba, 349

  for acute mountain sickness, 349, 355

Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS), 74–75

Glass signal mirror, 329

Glaucoma, 212

Global conflict, 442–444

Global positioning system (GPS), 1, 3–4, 329

Global Rescue, 7

Globefish, 405

Gloves, 279–280, 288

Glucagon, 162, 163

Glucophage. *See* Metformin

Glucosamine, for arthritis, 310

Glucose-concentrated liquid (Glutose), 81

Gluing, of wounds, 293–294

Glutose. *See* Glucose-concentrated liquid (Glutose)

Glyceryl guaiacolate, 495

Gnats, 374, 382–383, 385

Gonorrhea, 148–149, 156

GPS (global positioning system), 1

Grand mal seizure, 80

Green-headed flies, 374

Groin bandaging, 297, 299f

Ground-to-air distress signals, 467–467, 467f

Guaifenesin, 227

Gunshot wound, 68

Gyne-Lotrimin. *See* Clotrimazole
Gypsy moth caterpillar, 378–379, 378f

H

Habituation, 318
Halazone, for water disinfection, 436, 436t
Half hitch, 474f
Half-ring splint, for femur fracture, 518, 519f
Hallucinatory fish poisoning, 407
Halogens, as chemical disinfectants, 434
Hammock sling, 96f
Hand(s). *See also* Finger(s); Thumb
  bandaging of, 297
  cold-related disorders and injuries, 323
  fracture/dislocation of, 93–98, 93f
  hygiene of, 240
  swelling of, 357
  ulcers on, tularemia and, 181
  washing of, 9, 14
Hand gels, 232–233
Hand Sense cream, for hypothermia, 323
Hand signals, for helicopter landing, 464–465
Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome, 419–420
Hay fever, 228
Head
  bandaging of, 298–301, 300f, 301f
  examination of, 14
Headache, 194–197
  Bell's palsy, 197
  cluster, 195

- in concussion victims, 72–73
- dengue as cause of, 182
- giant cell arteritis as cause of, 196–197
- glaucoma as cause of, 212
- head injury as cause of, 70, 72
- high altitude–related, 208–209, 352, 357
- influenza as cause of, 226–227
- meningitis as cause of, 196
- migraine
  - characteristics of, 192, 194
  - medications for, 192–193, 491
  - precipitating factors, 194
- motion sickness and, 439
- occipital neuralgia, 196
- paroxysmal hemicrania, 195
- sinus, 195–196
- stroke as cause of, 165
- subarachnoid hemorrhage as cause of, 196
- tension, 194
- worrisome types of, 192, 194

Head injury, 45, 70, 72–77
- concussion, 72–73
- Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS) for, 72
- neurologic assessment scales for evaluating, 73
- with no loss of consciousness, 76
- scalp lacerations secondary to, 73, 76f
- treatment principles, 73–75

Health, 1, 3

Healthy diet, 1, 3

Hearing

  problems in, head injuries and, 72–73
  stroke and, 165
Heart attack, 12, 54, 57, 192, 412, 413
  abdominal pain associated with, 139
  aortic dissection as cause of, 57
  aspirin for, 57
  risk factors for, 57
  treatment, 57
Heartburn, 245. *See also* Gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD)
  chest pain caused by, 58–59
  medications for, 494
Heart failure, 54, 190
  congestive, 54, 134
Heart rate
  slow, 192
  very rapid, 58
Heart rhythm, abnormal, 341
Heart stunning, 57
Heat
  generation of, 337
  radiant, 346
Heat application, to bruises, 277
Heat exhaustion, 338–339
  in canine, 520
Heat index, 337, 338f
Heat loss, 321
  conduction, 337
  convection, 337
  evaporation, 337
  radiation, 337

Heat rash, 260
Heat-related injuries and illness, 337–344
  avoidance of, 343–344
  burn injuries, 337. *See also* Burns
  cooling the victim, 339–340, 339f
  fainting, 341–343
  heat exhaustion. *See* Heat exhaustion
  heat stroke, 338–339
  hyperthermia, 337–338
  muscle cramps, 340–341
  swelling, 341
Heat stroke, 338–339
  in canine, 520
Heel pain, 305
Heimlich maneuver, 22–23, 23f
  in drowning victims, 413
  with victim lying down, 45
Helicobacter pylori, 139–140, 246
Helicopters, 329
  transporting injured victim using, 467
Heliograph mirror, 467
Helmet
  inspection of, 3
  removal of, 24
Hemlock
  poison, 424–425, 425f
  water, 424, 424f
Hemoglobin, 153
Hemophilia, 60
  bruises and, 277

Hemorrhage
  shock caused by, 68, 70
  subconjunctival, 206, 207f
Hemorrhagic fevers, 183–184
Hemorrhoids, 246
Hepatitis
  A, 433
  management of, 247–248
  prevention of, 2, 5
  signs and symptoms of, 247
Hernia, 143–144, 144f
Herniated disk, 312, 313f
Herpes, genital, 150
Herpes simplex virus, 276
  type 1, 218
Herpes sufferer, 150
Herpes zoster, 275
Hiccoughs. *See* Hiccups
Hiccups, 192
High-altitude cerebral edema (HACE), 352–353
High altitude, contraindications for, 350–351
High-altitude flatus expulsion (HAFE), 357–358
High-altitude pulmonary edema (HAPE), 45, 54, 190, 348, 351–352
  evacuation of victim of, 351
  nifedipine for, 352
  oxygen supplementation for, 351
  signs and symptoms of, 351
  treatment for, 351–352
High altitude–related problems, 347–358
  acclimatization for, 347–348

- acute mountain sickness. *See* Acute mountain sickness (AMS)
- altitude throat, 358
- bronchitis, 358
- in canine, 521
- causes of, 347
- cerebral edema. *See* High-altitude cerebral edema (HACE)
- cough, 358
- fluid retention, 357
- headache, 208–209, 357
- prevention of, 347–351
- pulmonary edema. *See* High-altitude pulmonary edema (HAPE)
- radial keratotomy, visual changes after, 357
- snow blindness, 358

Hip dislocation, 120–122, 120f, 121f, 122f
- anterior, 121f

Hitches, 472–473

Hives, 259, 259f, 336

Honeybee sting, 368, 369f

Honey, for wound care, 294

Hookworms, 275

Hornets, 367, 369–370

Horsefly, 374

Hostage behavior, 442–443

Human bite, 262

Human granulocytic anaplasmosis. *See* Anaplasmosis

Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), 151, 505
- postexposure prophylaxis, 505
- preexposure prophylaxis, 505

Humerus
- dislocation of, 101, 108f

- fracture of, 101, 108f

Humidifying device, in oxygen administration, 432

Hunting response, 331

Hurricanes, 389

Hydration, 341

Hydration requirements, 8

Hydrocortisone, for sunburn, 260

Hydroxyzine
- for ciguatera fish poisoning, 406
- for itching, 491

Hygiene
- hand, 232–233
- personal, 9

Hyperarousal, 318

Hyperbaric chamber
- for acute mountain sickness, 355
- for air embolism, 410
- for brown recluse spider bite, 372
- for high-altitude pulmonary edema, 352
- portable, 355–357, 356f

Hypertension, 350

Hyperthermia, 188, 317, 337–338

Hyperventilation, management of, 316

Hyphema, 204–205, 205f

Hypoglycemia
- in diabetes, 162
- seizure caused by, 81
- treatment of, 81, 163–164

Hypoglycemic reaction, 164

Hyponatremia, 342

Hypothermia, 45, 188, 321–323, 347
  body temperature measurements in, 322–323
  burns as cause of, 129
  dengue as cause of, 171
  depression caused by, 316–317
  mild, 321, 324
  moderate, 321–322, 324
  near-drowning, 413
  prevention of, 323
  profound, 322, 324–325
  progression of, 321–323
  severe, 322, 324–325
  suspicion of, 322
  transporting victim of, 325–326
  vomiting secondary to, 135–136
Hypoxia, 54–55

I

Ibuprofen, 194
  for acute mountain sickness prevention, 348
  for chilblain, 335
  for fever, 490
  for frostbite, 332
  for muscle aches, 491
Ice, falling through, 327–328
Identification bracelet, 7–8
Ileus, 143
Illness
  current, 14
  heat-related, 337–338

  prior, 42
  reaction to, 317–318
Immersion foot, 334–335
Immunizations, 1, 7–8, 42, 452–452
  for anthrax, 419
  for bubonic plague, 418
  diphtheria-tetanus-acellular pertussis, 191
  for hepatitis, 247–248
  for rabies, 416, 417
Impaled object protector, 519, 519f
Impetigo, 257–258, 260
Indigestion, 494
Infants. *See also* Children
  chest compressions in, 45
  CPR in, 45
  dehydration in, 229
  diaper rash, 273
  fever in, 189
  “floppy baby,” 189, 196, 229
  lethargy in, 229
  pneumonia in, 54, 58
  pulse rate in, 229
Infection
  aquatic, 394–407
  back pain caused by, 153, 313
  bladder, 152–153
  blister, 264
  breast, 157, 164
  chest pain caused by, 58
  fever and, 58

joint, 310

kidney, 153

  - ovarian, 143, 148–149
  - prostate, 154, 156
  - transmission of, defecation as source of, 9
  - vaginal, 149–150, 234
  - wound, 13, 278, 295
- Infectious diarrhea, 234
  - prevention of, 238–239
- Infectious diseases, 167–186
  - African tick-bite fever, 178–179
  - AIDS, 190
  - anaplasmosis, 178
  - anthrax, 419
  - babesiosis, 179
  - bubonic plague, 418
  - Chikungunya disease, 171–172
  - Colorado tick fever, 175
  - dengue, 170–171
  - eastern equine encephalitis, 173
  - Ebola virus, 183–184, 478
  - ehrlichiosis, 177–178
  - fever in returning (foreign country) traveler, 167
  - hantavirus, 419–420
  - hemorrhagic fevers, 183–184
  - human immunodeficiency virus, 505
  - influenza, 226–227
  - Lassa virus, 183–184
  - leptospirosis, 181
  - Lyme disease, 175–177
  - malaria, 167–170

- meningococcal disease, 182–183
- mononucleosis, 216–217
- paratyphoid fever, 182
- rabies, 416–417
- relapsing fever, 174
- Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 175
- schistosomiasis, 179–180
- tetanus, 183
- tick-borne diseases, 174
- tick paralysis, 178–179
- transmission of, precautions for, 505
- trichinellosis, 180–181
- tularemia, 181–182
- typhoid fever, 182
- whooping cough, 190
- Zika virus disease, 173

Infectious mononucleosis, 218

Inflatable air splint, 88

Influenza, 226–227
- in elderly, 226

Ingrown toenail, 265, 265f

Inguinal hernia, 143–144, 144f

Inhalation injuries, 129, 133–136
- Air Quality Index, 135
- aspiration, 135–136
- burn-related, 133
- chemicals as cause of, 133–135
- severity of, 133
- smoke-related, 133–135
- thermal-related, 133

Injections
  administration of, 1
  intramuscular, 469, 470f
  subcutaneous, 470f
Injuries
  prevention of, 9–10
  reaction to, 317–318
  risk factors for, 9–10
Injury and illness in outdoors
  digital, mercury or alcohol thermometer, 41, 41f
  environment, 37
  expose, 37
  nonreactive and bilaterally dilated pupils, 39
  physical exam, 38–40
  primary survey, 17
  secondary survey, 37–38
  structured approach, 16–44
  vital signs by age group, 40, 40t
Inky cap, mushroom, 428, 429f
Insect and arthropod bites/stings, 367–385
  ants, 367
  avoidance of, 370
  bees, 367–368
  beetles, 379
  biting flies, 374
  blackflies, 374
  breeze fly, 374
  caterpillars, 378–379, 378f
  centipedes, 375
  chiggers, 375

  deerfly, 374, 385
  fleas, 374–375, 385
  gnats, 374
  hornets, 367, 369–370
  horsefly, 374
  leeches, 385
  mango fly, 374
  midge (no-see-um), 374
  millipedes, 375–376
  mosquitoes, 374
  myiasis, 380
  sand fly, 374
  scorpions, 373–374, 373f
  skin infestation by fly larvae, 380–381
  spiders. *See* Spiders
  sucking bugs, 379–380
  ticks, 376, 376f. *See also* Tick(s)
  treatment of, 368–370
  wasps, 367, 368, 370
Insect candles, 381
Insect coils, 381
Insect repellents, 381
  clothing as, 381
  DEET as, 382–383
  mosquitoes, 173
  permethrin, 252, 374, 376–377, 382–383
  with sunscreen, 383
Insect screens, 381–382
Insect traps, 381–382
Insomnia

  - acute mountain sickness as cause of, 354
  - high altitude–related, 349
  - medications for, 349
- Instrument flight rules (IFR), 464
- Insulation wrap, 325–326, 326f
- Insulin
  - description of, 163–164
  - hypoglycemic reactions caused by overdose of, 163
- Insulin-dependent diabetes, 162
- Intact blisters, 268
- Internal bleeding, 14, 68–69, 140
- Internal organ protrusion, from large wound, 67
- International Association for Medical Assistance to Travellers (IAMAT), 451
- Intertrigo, 260
- Intestine. *See* Bowel
- Intramuscular injection, 469, 470f
- Intravenous hydration, for cholera, 246
- Iodine
  - with alcohol, 434
  - as chemical disinfectant, 434, 435t
  - with povidone
    - as chemical disinfectant, 435
    - in cleaning of wounds, 281
- Ipecac, 422
- Iron-deficiency anemia, 349–350
- Irrigation, of wounds, 281, 282f
- Irritable bowel syndrome, 241
- Itching, medications for, 491
- Itraconazole, for onychomycosis, 272
- *Ixodes* spp., 175–176

J

Jaundice, 247, 372

Jaw

  dislocation of, 91–93, 92f

  fracture of, 91–93, 92f

  temporomandibular joint syndrome, 220

Jellyfish, 396–398

Jersey finger, 98

Jet lag, 440–441

Jewelry

  removal of, 86, 332, 363

  as tourniquet, 13

Jimsonweed, 426, 426f

Jock itch, 271–272

Joint pain, 173

K

Kaolin-pectin (Kaopectate), 231, 493

Kendrick Traction Device, 114

Ketoacidosis, 163–164

Ketones, 163–164

Ketorolac, 490

Kidnapping, 442–443

Kidney(s)

  functioning of, assessment of, 14

  infection of, 153

  stone, 153

Kidney failure, 236, 419

  diabetes and, 162

“Kissing bug,” 379, 380f

Knee
  dislocation of, 122–124, 123f
  fracture of, 122–124, 123f
  injury of, knee immobilizer splint for, 516
  meniscal tear of, 124
  sprain of, 122–124
  strain of, 122–124
Kneecap dislocation, 122–124
Knee immobilizer splint, 516
Knots, 472–473
  bowline, 475f
  clove hitch, 476f
  double bowline, 475f
  double carrick bend, 477f
  double fisherman's bend, 477f
  double half hitch, 474f, 476f
  draw loop, 475f
  figure-of-eight, 474f
  half hitch, 474f
  for litter, 472–473
  loop, 475f
  overhand, 473f
  single sheet bend, 476f
  slip, 474f

L

Lacerations
  scalp, 76–77, 285
  wound, 279–285
Lactobacilli, 150

Lactobacillus casei, 231

Lactobacillus rhamnosus, 233

Lactulose, 493

Lake Louise AMS Score, 353

Lamotrigine, for seizures, 81

Landing site for helicopters, 464

Landslide, 390

Lanoxin. *See* Digoxin

Lassa virus, 183–184

Lassitude, acute mountain sickness and, 354

Lateral collateral ligament, of knee, 122–123

Latex allergy, 156

Latrotoxin, 370–371

Leeches, 385

Leg

- bandaging of, 297, 299f
- broken
  - ankle stirrup splint for, 514, 514f
  - double long leg splint for, 516, 517f
  - single long leg splint for, 515–516, 517f
- lower, fracture of, 124–125, 125f

Length measures, conversion of, 502

Leptospirosis, 181

Lethargy, in infants, 188, 196

Levetiracetam, for seizures, 81, 489

Levofloxacin

- for bladder infection, 154
- for kidney infection, 153
- for pneumonia, 55

Levonorgestrel, 151

Lice, 273–274
  sea, 258
Lidocaine hydrochloride
  for jellyfish stings, 397
  for postherpetic neuralgia, 258
  for sea bather's eruption, 258
  for wound anesthesia, 279, 280–281
"Life jacket," 414
"Life vest," 414
Ligaments
  knee
    anterior cruciate, 124
    lateral collateral, 124
    medial collateral, 124
    posterior cruciate, 124
  sprains and strains in, 307
Lightning, 386
  avoidance of, 388
  burn caused by, 387, 387f
  safety during, 388
Lightning strike, 386–388
Lindane, 274
Lionfish, 403, 403f
Lip(s)
  sore, 220
  vermilion border of, 285f
Liquid bleach, as chemical disinfectants, 436
Litters, 472–473
  backpack frame, 461f
  blanket-pole, 460f

  - mummy, 463f
  - parka, 461f
- Liver
  - bruised, 47
  - glucagon effects on, 162
  - injury to, abdominal pain associated with, 140
- Liver failure, 189, 217, 225
- Lizard, Mexican beaded, 365–366
- Local anesthesia, of wound, 280–281
- Logrolling, 454–455
  - of neck injury victim, 90
  - the victim, 36f, 37
- Lomefloxacin
  - for bladder infection, 152
  - for kidney infection, 153
- Lone Star tick, 378
- Loop knot, 475f
- Loperamide, for diarrhea, 231, 492
- Loratadine, 256, 379
- Lorazepam
  - for anxiety, 315
  - for black widow spider bite, 371
- Lost people/person, 329, 468–468
- Low blood sugar, 162
  - stroke and, 166
- Lower leg fracture, 124
- Lumbar spinal stenosis, 312
- Lumefantrine plus artemether, for malaria, 170
- Lung(s)
  - bruised, 47, 192

  cancer, 192
  collapsed, 47–48, 49f. *See also* Pneumothorax
  coughing up blood, 187
  injury of, 192
  pleuritis of, 228
Lung cancer, 192, 225
Lung disorders, 47, 52–55, 58
  asthma, 47–48, 52–53, 190
  chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 54
  emphysema, 54
  heart failure, 54
  lung cancer, 68–69, 192
  pneumonia, 54, 58
  pulmonary embolism, 52
Lyme disease, 175–177, 197
Lymph nodes, swollen, 216, 374

M

Mack’s DryEar, 200
Malaria, 167–170
Malarone, 169
Mallet finger, 98, 98f
Mango fly, 374
Mannitol, for ciguatera fish poisoning, 406
Maps, 10
Marezine. *See* Cyclizine
Mastitis, 160–161
Mastomys natalensis, 184
Meat
  contaminated, 234–235, 419

handling of, 239

Meclizine, for motion sickness, 438–439, 492

Medial collateral ligament, of knee, 124

Median nerve, carpal tunnel syndrome and, 303

Medical consultation, 7

Medical decision-making, 14–15

MedicAlert bracelet, 4

Medical history, 13

Medications, 7–8, 13. *See also* Drugs; *specific medication*

for diabetes, 162

in first-aid kit, 445

Mefloquine, for malaria, 168

Megalopyge crispata, 378–379

Megalopyge opercularis, 378–379

Melanin, 249–250

Melanoma, 251, 254

Melatonin, for jet lag, 440

Memory loss, 72–73

Meningitis, 172–173, 198–199

Meningococcal disease, 182–183

Meniscal tear, 124

Mental health

disorders of. *See* Psychiatric emergencies

emergencies, 315–320

evaluation of, 14

Mental status

altered, 135–136

dehydration as cause of, 237–238

head injury as cause of, 73

hypothermia as cause of, 322

    - insulin reaction *versus*, 162
    - malaria as cause of, 167
    - nausea and vomiting in victims with, 245
    - poisoning, 427
    - shock as cause of, 70
    - stroke as cause of, 165
    - West Nile viral disease as cause of, 172
    - yellow fever as cause of, 173
  - assessment of, 14
- Merozoites, 168
- Metal, frostbite and, 334
- Metaxalone, 491
- Metered dose inhalers, 485–486
- Meters, conversion to feet, 503
- Metformin, 162
- Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), 260
- Methylcellulose, 493
- Methylprednisolone, for vestibular neuronitis, 192–193
- Metoclopramide
  - for heartburn, 494
  - for migraine headache, 192, 194
  - for nausea and vomiting, 245, 492
- Metoprolol, 488–489
- Metronidazole
  - for balanitis, 156
  - for *Giardia lamblia*-associated diarrhea, 232
  - for vaginitis, 150
- Mexican beaded lizard, 365–366
- Miconazole, for vaginal infections, 149–150
- Microenema, 242

Middle ear infections, 225
Middle ear squeeze, 410f
Middle East Respiratory Syndrome (MERS), 2
Midge (no-see-um), 374
Migraine headache
  characteristics of, 192, 194, 195
  high-altitude headache *versus*, 357
  medications for, 192–193, 195, 482
  precipitating factors of, 194, 195
Milch technique, 108–109
Millipedes, 375–376
Mineral oil, 493
Minimal erythema dose, for sunscreens, 251
Mini-marshmallow, for removing contact lens, 206
Miraculous survivals, 31
Mitch technique, for humeral dislocation, 109, 109f
Mites, 274, 375
Moleskin, 268
Moniliasis, 149–150
Monistat. *See* Miconazole
Monkshood, 424, 425f
Mononucleosis, infectious, 218
Monosodium glutamate sensitivity, 405
Moray eels, 395
Mosquitoes
  avoidance of, 374
  bites from, 374
    therapy for, 374
  diseases transmitted by
    Chikungunya disease, 171–172

    - dengue, 170–171
    - eastern equine encephalitis, 173
    - malaria, 167
    - West Nile viral disease, 172
  - traps for, 382
- Motion sickness, 438–439
  - medication recommendations for, 492
  - signs and symptoms of, 438
- Mountain environments, first-aid kit for, 449–450
- Mouth. *See also* Tooth
  - black tongue of, 220
  - canker sores of, 224
  - fever blisters of, 218–219
  - gum infection or abscess, 220–221
  - salivary gland infection/inflammation of, 219–220
  - trench, 224
- Mouth-to-mouth breathing, 3–4, 26–28, 26f, 133, 324
  - and nose breathing, 26, 27f
- Moving, of injured victim, 453–454
- Moxifloxacin
  - for corneal scratch, 207
  - for pneumonia, 55
- MRSA. *See* Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*
- Mucinex, 495
- Mummy litter, 462, 463f
- Murine typhus, 418–419
- Muscle
  - injuries to, chest pain and, 59, 60–61
  - overuse syndromes of, 303
  - torn, 306–307

Muscle aches
  lightning strike as cause of, 387
  medications for, 489–490
Muscle cramps, 310, 340–341, 370–371
Muscle fatigue, 304
Muscle spasm, 491
Muscle strain, 312
Muscle strength, 165
Musculoskeletal injuries, 303–314
  arthritis, 310
  back pain, 153, 312–314, 313f
  bursitis, 310–311, 311f
  carpal tunnel syndrome, 303
  cyclist's palsy, 303
  muscle fatigue, 304
  overuse syndromes, 303
  plantar fasciitis, 305–306, 306f
  rotator cuff tendinitis, 303–304
  Saturday night palsy, 303, 304f
  shin splints, 304–305, 305f
  sprains and strains, 307–310, 308f, 309f
  thrombophlebitis, 311–312
  torn muscle, 306–307
  turf toe, 304
  venous thrombosis, 311–312
Mushrooms
  Amanita muscaria (fly agaric), 428, 428f
  Amanita phalloides (death cap), 427, 428f
  Coprinus atramentarius (inky cap), 428, 429f
  poisonous types of, 423–428

Muzzle, 520, 520f

Mycoplasma, 148–149

Myiasis, 380, 381

Mylanta II, 493

Myocardial infarction. *See* Heart attack

Myocardial stunning, 57

Myoglobin, 153, 188

Myoglobinuria, 188

N

Naegleria fowleri, 394

Naloxone administration, 45–46, 45f

Naproxen/naproxen sodium, 491

Naratriptan, for migraine headaches, 195, 491

Nasal cannula, for oxygen administration, 432

Nasal congestion, 195–196, 225, 226, 358, 495

- headache and, 195–196

Natroba. *See* Spinosad

Nausea and vomiting, 57, 233, 245–246. *See also* Gastrointestinal tract disorders; Vomiting

- head injury as cause of, 73

Navicular (scaphoid) fracture. *See* Scaphoid fracture

Neck

- cuts in, 62
- examination of, 12
- fractures of, 88–90
- injuries of
  - head injury and, 74
  - logrolling of victim with, 90
  - suspected, adjustable cervical (neck) collar for, 512–513, 513f

- stiff, 189, 196, 225
  - Lyme disease and, 167

Needle holder, 287–288

Neisseria meningitidis, 182

Neomycin-polymyxin B-hydrocortisone, for otitis externa, 199–200

Neurologic assessment scales, 73

Neurologic examination, 165–166

Never re-insert, 368

Nifedipine
- for angina pectoris, 489
- for high-altitude pulmonary edema, 352

Nitazoxanide, 235

Nitrofurantoin, for bladder infection, 152

Nitrogen
- decompression sickness caused by, 410
- narcosis, 410

Nitroglycerin
- for angina pectoris, 56–57
- for heart failure, 54

Nonceliac (disease) gluten sensitivity, 241

“Nonfatal drowning,” 412

Nonrebreathing face mask, for oxygen administration, 431

Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)
- for arthritis, 310
- for back pain, 312
- for fever, 189
- for migraine headaches, 189, 224
- for snow blindness, 209–210

Nonvenomous snakes, 359, 361f, 365

Norfloxacin

- for bladder infection, 152
- for diarrhea, 233–234
- for gonorrhea, 156
- for kidney infection, 153

Nose, 213–216
- broken, 215
- foreign body in, 215
- fracture of, 215
- sinusitis and, 215–216, 216f

Nosebleed, management of, 213–215

NSAIDs. *See* Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)

Nursemaid's elbow, 99–101, 100f

Nutrition, 8

Nystagmus, 192

Nystatin, for thrush, 217–218

O

Observations, recording of, 12

Occipital neuralgia, 196

Octopuses, 404

Ofloxacin
- for bladder infection, 152
- for corneal scratch, 203–204
- for diarrhea, 234
- for gonorrhea, 156
- for kidney infection, 153
- for otitis externa, 215–216

Oil of lemon eucalyptus, 382

Ointments, for burns, 129

Oleander, 423, 423f

Omeprazole, 245, 494
Ondansetron
  for acute mountain sickness, 350, 355
  for heartburn, 483t
  for migraine headache, 192–193, 212
  for nausea and vomiting, 192–193, 245–246, 492
Onychomycosis, 272
Open fracture, 84
Optic neuritis, 212
Oral rehydration, 340
Oral rehydration salts, 13, 230. *See also* Dehydration; Fluids, replacement of
Orbital cellulitis, 213
Orientia tsutsusgamushi, 375
Ornithodoros hermsii, 174
Oseltamivir phosphate, for influenza, 226–227
Osteoarthritis, 310
Otitis externa, 198–200, 198f
Otitis media, 198–200, 198f
Outdoor medicine, 14
Outdoor safety programs, 1
Ovaries
  cyst of, 149
  infection of, 143, 148–149
  torsed (twisted), 149
Overhand knot, 473f
Overuse syndromes, 59, 303
Ovulation, 149
Oxygen, 412
  for acute mountain sickness, 354–355
  administration of, 431–432, 436

        - delivery devices for, 431
        - instructions for, 339
        - precautions for, 432
    - for asthma, 54
    - for chest injury, 50
    - for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 54
    - for decompression sickness, 410
    - for heart failure, 54
    - for high-altitude headache, 357
    - and high altitude–related problems, 351
    - hyperbaric chamber for delivery of. *See* Hyperbaric chamber
    - for pneumonia, 54, 56
    - for pulmonary embolism, 52
    - for smoke injury, 133
- Oxygen cylinders, 431
- Oxygen saturation, 12
    - pulse oximetry measurement of, 12
- Oxymetazoline hydrochloride, 495

P

- Padimate O, 252
- Pain
    - abdominal. *See* Abdominal pain
    - back, 152, 312–314, 313f
    - in brain injury victim, 76
    - chest. *See* Chest pain
    - control, 76
    - headache-related, 75
    - medications, 489–490
    - referred, 200

Palsy
  Bell’s, 197
  cyclist’s, 303
Pancreas, 140
Pancreatitis, 140, 142
Panic, 3–4, 12, 315–316
Pantoprazole, 245
Para-aminobenzoic acid (PABA), 252
Paralysis
  from lightning strike, 387
  Lyme disease as cause of, 167
  stroke as cause of, 165
Paralytic shellfish poisoning, 406–407
Paratyphoid fever, 182
Parka litter, 459, 461f
Paronychia, 266, 266f
Paroxysmal hemicrania, 195
Partial seizure, 80
Partial-thickness burns, 129
Patching, of eye, 209
Patella dislocation. *See* Kneecap dislocation
Patient assessment, 16–44, 16f
Pedestrians, 6
Pediarix, 452
Pelvic fracture, 111–112, 112f
Penciclovir, for fever blisters, 219
Penicillin V, for sore throat, 216–217
Penis
  discharge from, 156
  problems of, 155–156

Penis problems
  balanitis, 156
  foreskin infection, 156
  painful testicle, 155–156
  penile discharge, 155
Pepper spray, 421
Pepto-Bismol. *See* Bismuth subsalicylate
Periactin. *See* Cyproheptadine
Pericoronitis, 221–222
Periodic breathing, 354
Periorbital cellulitis, 213
Peritonitis, 143
PermaKill 4 Week Tick Killer, 385
Permethrin, 274, 374, 376–377, 382–383, 497
Pernio, 335
Personal flotation device, 414
Personal hygiene, 9
Personal safety. *See also* Safety
  blast injuries, 443–444
  crime avoidance for, 442
  in global conflict, 442–444
  hostage behavior, 442–443
  kidnapping, 442–444
  piracy, 443
  safe travel, 442
  terrorism, 442–444
Pertussis, 188
Petit mal seizure, 80
Pharyngitis. *See* Sore throat
Phencyclidine, 316

Phenobarbital, 489
  for seizure, 81
Phenytoin sodium, for seizure, 81
Phonophobia, 194
Photolyase, 254
Photophobia, 194
Physical examination, 15
  for abdominal pain, 14, 137–139
  in evaluation of victim, 143
Physicians, in foreign countries, 451–451
Picaridin, 253, 382
Piggyback carry, 457f
Pimecrolimus, 256
"Pink eye," 207–208
Piracy, 443
Pit vipers
  characteristics of, 359–360
  envenomation from, signs of, 361–362, 361f
Placenta, 157
Plague, bubonic, 418
Plantar fasciitis, 305–306, 306f
Plantar warts, 271
Plants, poisonous. *See* Poisonous plants
Plasmodium spp., 167–170
Pleuritis, 228
Pneumonia, 58, 190, 191
  bronchitis and, 227
  bubonic plague-related, 418
  in children, 55
  chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and, 54

  - common cold and, 225–226
  - community-acquired, 55
  - definition of, 55
  - influenza and, 226–227
  - pleuritis and, 228
  - signs and symptoms of, 188
  - sputum expectorant associated with, 191
  - treatment of, 55, 58
- Pneumothorax, 47–48, 50f, 409
  - definition of, 50
  - dressing for, 49f
  - release of air from, 50
  - tension, 50, 50f
- Poisoning
  - food, 245
  - mushroom, 422–430
  - from seafood. *See* Seafood, poisoning caused by
  - sun, 250
  - wild plant, 422–430
- Poison ivy, 255–256, 255f
- Poison oak, 255–256, 255f
- Poisonous plants. *See also* Wild plant and mushroom poisoning
  - canine ingestion of, 520
  - castor bean, 424, 424f
  - commonly ingested types of, 423–428, 423f, 424f, 425f, 426f, 427f, 428f
  - by common name, 422–430
  - foxglove, 423, 423f
  - jimsonweed, 426, 426f
  - medical history for, 422
  - monkshood, 424, 425f

  - oleander, 423, 423f
  - poison hemlock, 424–425, 425f
  - pokeweed, 425, 426f
  - pyracantha, 427, 427f
  - Rhododendron, 425–426, 426f
  - skunk cabbage, 426, 427f
  - toxicity of, 422–430
  - treatment for, 422
  - water hemlock, 424, 424f
- Poison sumac, 255–256, 255f
- Pokeweed, 425, 426f
- Poodle-dog bush, 257
- Porcupinefish, 405
- Portuguese man-of-war, 397
- "Position of function," 93, 93f
- Posterior cruciate ligament, 124
- Postexposure prophylaxis, 505
- Postherpetic neuralgia, 275–276
- Posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD), 318
- Postviral encephalopathy, 189
- Potable Aqua Plus, 434
- Povidone with iodine
  - as chemical disinfectant, 435, 435t
  - wound cleaning using, 281
- Pre-acclimatization, 349
- Precose. *See* Acarbose
- Prednisolone, for glaucoma, 212
- Prednisone, 486, 488
  - for allergic reactions, 78–79
  - for asthma, 52–53

  for chigger bites, 375
  for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 54
  for sponge-related skin rash, 396
Preexisting condition, 4, 350
Preexposure prophylaxis (PrEP), 505
Pregabalin
  for postherpetic neuralgia, 275–276
  for seizures, 81, 489
Pregnancy, 143. *See also* Emergency childbirth
  antiallergy drugs, 483t
  antibiotic, antifungal, antiviral, antimalarial, 483t
  antinausea, anti–motion-sickness, antidiarrheal, anticonstipation drugs in, 483t
  drugs and, 482–484
  early detection of, 4
  ectopic, 4, 149
  high altitude considerations, 350
  pain medication, 483t
  seizure in, 81
  vaccine in, 452
Preparedness
  disaster, 10
  importance of, 10
“Press-and-yank” technique, for fishhook removal, 471
Pressure application, for bleeding control, 62, 279–280
Pressure bags, inflatable, 352
Pressure gauge, in oxygen administration, 431
Pressure immobilization technique, 363–364, 364f, 401, 404
Pressure points, 62
Primidone, for seizures, 81, 489
Probiotics, 233

Prochlorperazine
  for acute mountain sickness, 355
  for nausea and vomiting, 245–246, 406, 438–439, 492
  side effects of, 492
Proguanil, for antimalarial prophylaxis, 169
Prolapsed umbilical cord, 160
Promethazine
  for acute mountain sickness, 355
  for migraine headache, 194
  for nausea and vomiting, 245–246, 438–439, 492
Propantheline bromide (Pro-Banthine), 494
Prostate gland
  enlarged, 153–154
  infection of, 154, 156
Prostatic hypertrophy, benign, 153–154
Prostatitis, 154
Protective eyeglasses, 210
Proton pump inhibitors, 232–233
Prusik hitch, 477f
Pseudoephedrine, 495
Psychiatric emergencies, 315–320
  anxiety, 315
  attention deficit hyperactivity disorder, 318
  delirium, 317
  depression, 316–317
  panic, 315–316
  posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD), 318
  psychosis, 317
  reaction to injury or illness, 317–318
Psychosis, 317

Psyllium, 493
Pterygium, 213
Pufferfish poisoning, 405–406
Pulmonary edema
  in canine, 521
  high-altitude, 45, 54, 190, 348, 351–352
    evacuation of victim of, 351
    treatment for, 351–352
Pulmonary embolism, 53–54, 191
  chest pain caused by, 58
  coughing up blood caused by, 190–191
Pulse oximeter, 41
Pulse oximetry, 12
Pulse/pulse rate, 12
  dehydration and, 235
  normal, 229
Punctate (starburst) lightning burn, 387, 387f
Puncture wound, 278, 282, 295, 401, 403, 404, 415–416
Pupil(s), 201, 324–325
  epidural hematoma findings, 74
  examination of, 15, 201
  unequal, 73, 74f
Purification, of water, 433
Puss caterpillar, 378–379, 378f
Pyelonephritis. *See* Kidney(s), infection of
Pyracantha, 427, 427f
Pyrimethamine
  dapsone and, for malaria, 169
  sulfadoxine and, 168

Q

QuikClot adsorbent hemostatic gauze, 68

Quinacrine hydrochloride, for *Giardia lamblia*, 237

Quinine sulfate, 341

  for malaria, 167–168

R

Rabeprazole, 245, 494

Rabies, 185, 416–417

"Raccoon eyes," 91, 277

Radial keratotomy, visual changes after, 357

Radial nerve, Saturday night palsy and, 303

Range of motion, 306–307

Ranitidine hydrochloride, 494

  for allergic reactions, 79

  for heartburn, 494

Rash, 234. *See also* Blister(s); Hives

  in Chikungunya disease, 171–172

  in dengue, 170–171

  diaper, 273

  in ehrlichiosis, 177–178

  in hepatitis, 247–248

  in infectious mononucleosis, 218

  in leptospirosis, 167

  in Lyme disease, 176

  marine creatures as cause of, 404

  in meningococcal disease, 182–183

  in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 175

  in West Nile viral disease, 172

Rattlesnakes

  bite from, in canines, 521
  characteristics of, 359
  illustration of, 360f
Raynaud's phenomenon, 335–336
Reaction to injury or illness, 317–318
"Rebound" swelling, of nasal passages, 215–216
Recco Rescue System, 393
Recluse spiders, 371–372, 372f
Rectal prolapse, 244
Red bugs, 375
Red eye, 207
Red meat allergy, 378
Reduction
  of finger dislocation, 93–98
  of shoulder dislocation, 103–110, 103f, 104f, 105f, 106f
Referred pain, 200
Reflux esophagitis, 58–59, 190
  medications for, 494
Reglan. *See* Metoclopramide
Regulator, in oxygen administration, 432
Rehydration enema, 231
Relapsing fever, 174
ReliefBand device, 438
Repellents. *See* Insect repellents
Rescue
  avalanche beacon used in, 4
  beacon avalanche, 3–4
Respiratory rate, 225
Respiratory system, anatomy of, 18, 18f
Restoril. *See* Temazepam

Retching, 246
Retinal injury, 211–212
Reye syndrome, 189, 225
Rheumatoid arthritis, 310
Rhododendron, 425–426, 426f
Rib(s)
  costochondritis of, 59, 59f
  flail chest findings, 50–51, 51f
  fracture of, 47, 51, 111
Ricin, 424
Rickettsia africae, 178
Rifampin, for meningococcal disease, 182–183
Rifaximin, for traveler's diarrhea prophylaxis, 233–234
Rimantadine, for influenza, 227
Ring removal, 471–472, 472f
Ringworm, 271–272
Rizatriptan, for migraine headaches, 195, 491
Road rules, 5–6
Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 175
Rolaids, 494
Rope seat, 455, 460f
Rope stretcher, 459–462, 462f
"Rose spots, " in typhoid and paratyphoid fevers, 182
Rotator cuff tendinitis, 303–304
"Rough handling," 324
Rule of nines, for body surface area, 130–131, 130f

S

Safe sex, 156
Safe travel, 442

Safety. *See also* Personal safety
    in earthquake, 389–390
    in flood, 389
    in hurricane, 389
    in landslide, 390
    in lightning, 388
    in tidal wave, 390
    in tornado, 389
Saline solution, for wound cleaning, 281
Salivary gland infection/inflammation, 219–220
Salmeterol, for high-altitude pulmonary edema, 351
Salmonella spp.
    description of, 182, 232
    S. typhi, 182
Salt tablets, 342
Samaritan laws, 12
SAM chest seal, 48–50
SAM Pelvic Sling, 111–112
SAM Splint, 88, 365
    ankle fracture managed with, 125
    ankle sprain managed with, 309
    ankle stirrup splint, 514, 514f
    applications of, 506-519
    basic bend, 506–507
    basic C-curve, 506, 506f
    combination ankle stirrup and figure-of-eight splint, 515, 516f
    concept of, 506–507
    description of, 114, 506
    double layer wrist, 509, 510f
    double long leg splint, 516, 517f

elbow splint, 512, 512f
figure-of-eight ankle splint, 515, 515f
finger splint using, 507, 507f
forearm fracture managed with, 93f
half-ring splint, for femur fracture, 518, 519f
impaled object protector, 519, 519f
knee immobilizer splint, 516, 518f
neck fracture managed with, 88–89
reverse C-curve, 507, 507f
shoulder, anterior dislocation, 513–514, 514f
single long leg splint, 515–516, 517f
sizes of, 506
sugar tong splint, 510, 511f
“sugar tong” splint fashioned using, 510, 511f
T-curve, 507, 507f

  thumb spica splint using, 508, 509f
  "triangle," 513–514, 514f
  ulnar gutter splint, 508, 509f
  upper arm splint, 510, 511f
  volar (underneath) wrist splint using, 507, 508f
  wrist fracture managed with, 93f
Sand fly, 374
Sarcoptes scabiei, 274
Saturday night palsy, 303, 304f
Scabies, 274
Scalp, lacerations of, 76–77, 76f, 77f, 285
Scaphoid fracture
  anatomical snuffbox, 95f
  management of, 95f
  thumb spica splint for, 508, 509f
Scapular manipulation technique, for shoulder dislocation, 106–107, 107f
Schistosoma haematobium, 179–180
Schistosomiasis, 179–180
Scombroid fish poisoning, 405
Scopolamine, for motion sickness, 438–439, 492
Scorpionfish, 403, 403f
Scorpions, 373–374, 373f
Scrapes, 279
Screening examinations, 3
Scrub typhus, 375
Scuba diving
  stroke and, 166
  underwater diving accidents. *See* Underwater diving accidents
"Sea band, " for motion sickness, 438

Sea bather's eruption, 258, 404
Sea cucumbers, 400, 400f
Seafood
  contaminated/infected, 234–235
  handling of, 239
  poisoning caused by, 405
    anisakidosis, 407
    ciguatera fish poisoning, 406
    hallucinatory fish poisoning, 407
    paralytic shellfish poisoning, 406–407
    pufferfish poisoning, 405–406
    scombroid poisoning, 405
Seal finger, 259
Seasickness, 438–439. *See also* Motion sickness
Sea snakes, 404
Sea urchins, 398–399, 399f
Seaweed dermatitis, 257, 404
Second-degree burns, 129
Seizure, 14, 78, 80–82, 387
  classifications, 80
  concussion as cause of, 76
  medications for, 81
  in pregnancy, 81
  treatment for, 80–82
Sensation, stroke and, 165
Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS), 2
Sexual intercourse, 151
Sexually transmitted diseases
  Chlamydia trachomatis, 150
  gonorrhea, 148–149, 155

- herpes simplex virus, 150
- trichomoniasis, 150

Sharks, 394
- avoidance of, 394–395

Shellfish poisoning, paralytic, 406–407

Shields, mosquito repellent, 382

Shingles, 275–276, 275f

Shin splints, 304–305, 305f

Shivering, 321

Shock, 68–71, 130
- allergic reaction and, 70
- causes of, 70
- dehydration as cause of, 70
- diarrhea as cause of, 71
- management of, 60, 70–71
- positioning of victim in, 70, 71f, 73
- signs and symptoms of, 67, 70
- spinal, 111
- transporting victim in, 86

Shortness of breath, 191

Shoulder
- anterior dislocation of, 513–514, 514f
- bandaging of, 297, 300f
- dislocation of, 103–110, 103f, 104f, 105f, 106f
- separation of, 110, 110f

Shoulder drag, 456f

Shoulder dystocia, 160

Shoulder harness, 109–110, 110f

Sildenafil, for high-altitude pulmonary edema, 352

Silicone ointment, for trench foot, 335

Simethicone, 244–245
Simplified motor scale, 75
Single long leg splint, 515–516, 517f
Single sheet bend, 476f
Sinus headache, 195–196
Sinusitis, 190, 215–216, 228
Sinus squeeze, 411
Skelaxin. *See* Metaxalone
Skeleton, bones of, 89f
Skin
  burn injury to, 130. *See also* Burns
  examination of, 15
  fly larvae infestation of, 380–381
  heat loss from, 337
  Lyme disease findings, 167
  rash of. *See* Rash
  topical preparations for, in first-aid kit, 448
Skin avulsions, 285
Skin disorders. *See also* Rash; Skin infection
  abscess. *See* Abscess
  armpit odor, 273
  athlete's foot, 271–272
  blisters, 267–271, 268f
  cellulitis, 261–262. *See also* Cellulitis
  chafe, 260
  chilblain, 335
  creeping eruption, 275
  diaper rash, 273
  felon, 266–267, 267f
  fever blisters, 276

fingertip cracks, 266
fish handler’s disease, 259
foot care, 273
frostbite, 331
frostnip, 334
heat rash, 260
herpes simplex, 276
herpes zoster, 275
hives, 259, 259f
hookworms, 275
immersion foot (trench foot), 334–335
impetigo, 260
ingrown toenail, 265, 265f
intertrigo, 260
jock itch, 271–272
lice, 273–274
melanoma, 254
onychomycosis, 272
paronychia, 266, 266f
pernio, 335
plantar warts, 271
poison ivy, 255–256, 255f
poison oak, 255–256, 255f
poison sumac, 255–256, 255f
ringworm, 271–272
scabies, 274
sea bather’s eruption, 258
seal finger, 259
seaweed dermatitis, 257
shingles, 275–276, 275f

  soapfish dermatitis, 258
  sunburn, 249–251
  sunscreens for prevention of, 251–254
  swimmer's itch, 257–258
  tinea versicolor, 272
Skin flaps, 285
Skin infection
  cellulitis. *See* Cellulitis
  diabetes as risk factor for, 164
Skin medications, 495–496
Ski pole seat, 459f
Skull fracture, 72, 91
Skunk cabbage, 426, 427f
Skunks, 417–418
Sledding mishaps, 330–331
Sleep
  amount of, 3
  jet lag and, 440
  medications, 497–498
Sleep apnea, high-altitude precautions for persons with, 349
Sling
  first-aid kit material for, 447
  fracture managed with, 86–88, 87f, 93f, 95f, 96f
  hammock, 96f
  pelvic fracture managed with, 112f
Sling psychrometer, 343
Slip knot, 474f
Slishman Traction Splint, 114
Small cactus spines, 257
Smoke, 329

  breathing of, 346
  contents of, 133
  inhalation injury caused by, 133–135
  particulate matter with, 134
Snails, 401, 401f
Snakebite, 359–366
  in canine, 521
  coral snakes, 359, 360f
  patterns of, 361f
  pit vipers, 359–362
  pressure immobilization technique for, 363–364, 364f, 404
  rattlesnakes, 359, 360f
  sea snake, 404
  treatment of, 362–365
  venomous snakes, 359–361, 361f
Snake wine, 361
Snow avalanche, 389–393
Snow blindness, 209–210, 358
Snow tires, 328
Soapfish dermatitis, 258
Sodium thiosulfate, 434
Solar-powered mosquito traps, 382
Solar radiation, 249
Sore throat, 14, 140, 190–191, 216–218
  altitude-related, 358
  coughing up blood secondary to, 190
  medications for, 495
Spaso technique, for humeral (shoulder) dislocation, 108, 108f
Speech, stroke effects on, 165
Spenco 2nd Skin, 130

Spicules of stinging nettle, 257
Spiders, 370
  black widow, 370–371, 371f
  recluse, 371–372, 372f
  tarantula, 372, 373f
Spinal cord injury, 67, 70, 111
Spinal shock, 111
Spinal stenosis, lumbar, 312
Spine
  examination of, 15
  fracture of, 111
Spinosad, 274, 497
Spiral leg bandage, 299f
Spitting cobra venom, 202
Spleen
  abdominal pain originating from, 142
  injury of, 68–69, 142
  rupture of, 218
Splint(s), 1, 3–4
  application of, 86–88
  Denver, 215
  dislocations managed with, 86–88
  first-aid kit materials for, 447
  fractures managed with, 86–88
  improvised types of, 112f, 118
  inflatable air, 88
  Kendrick Traction Device, 114
  for knee, 122–124, 123f
  for mallet finger, 98f
  for nose, 215

  - SAM. *See* SAM Splint
  - ski poles as, 98
  - for snakebite, 363–364, 364f
  - “sugar tong,” 98
  - for teeth, 222–223
  - Thomas, 114
- Splinter removal, 471
- Split-coil rope seat, 460f
- Sponges, 395–396
- Sporozoites, 168
- Sprain, 307–310
  - ankle, 307, 308f, 309f
  - knee, 122–124, 123f
  - wrist, 509, 510f
- Squeeze
  - ear, 197, 410–411, 410f
  - sinus, 411
  - tooth, 411
- *Staphylococcus* bacteria, 149, 232, 260
- Stapling, of wounds, 292–293, 292f, 293f
- Starfish, 400
- Status epilepticus, 80
- SteriPEN, 436
- Steroids, 486
- Stiff neck, 189, 196, 225
  - Lyme disease and, 176
- Stingray injuries, avoidance of, 402
- Stingrays, 401–402, 402f
- Stomach
  - inhalation of contents of, 135

- ulcers of, 139f, 246

“Stomach flu,” 140, 226. *See also* Diarrhea; Influenza; Vomiting

Stomatitis, 219

Stones, 140–142
- gallstones, 141f

Stool softener, 241–242

Straight lift, 453–454, 454f

Strains, 307–310
- knee, 122–124, 123f
- muscle, 312

“Strep throat,” 216

Streptococcus bacteria, 216–217

Stress disorder
- acute, 317–318
- posttraumatic, 318

Stretchers
- rope, 455f
- scoop, 90

Stridor, 133

StrikeAlert Personal Lightning Detector, 388

“String-pull” technique, for fishhook removal, 471

“String-wrap” technique, for ring removal, 471–472

Stroke, 58, 165–166, 189, 197

Stye, 212–213

Subarachnoid hemorrhage, 196

Subconjunctival hemorrhage, 206, 207f

Subcutaneous injection, 470f

Substantivity, of sunscreen, 252

Sucking bugs, 379–380

Sucralfate, 494

Sudafed. *See* Pseudoephedrine
Sudden hearing loss, 197
Sudden vision loss, 210
"Sugar tong" splint
  elbow fracture treated with, 510, 511f
  upper arm fracture treated with, 98
Sumatriptan, for migraine headaches, 195, 491
Sunburn, 128, 209, 249–251
Sunglasses, 210
"Sun poisoning," 250
Sunscreens, 251–254, 383
Superchlorination, for water disinfection, 436
Superficial burns, 129
"Superglue," 202
Supraventricular tachycardia, 58
Surgeonfish, 403
Survival kit, for winter storms, 328, 329
Suturing, of wound, 287–292, 288f, 289f, 290f, 291f
Swallowing, stroke effects on, 165
Sweating, 337–338
Swellfish, 405
Swelling
  altitude-related, 352
  bruises and, 277
  fractures and, 113–114
  heat-related, 341
Swimmer's ear, 199
Swimmer's itch, 257–258, 404
Swimming
  in contaminated water, 239

  in shared pools, 211
SYMJEPI syringes, 368
Systemic loxoscelism, 372

T

Tachycardia, supraventricular, 58
Tadalafil, for high-altitude pulmonary edema, 352
Tagging of patients, in disaster response, 10
Tailbone fracture, 112
Tamiflu. *See* Oseltamivir phosphate
Tamsulosin, 154
Tanning, 249–250. *See also* Sunburn; Sunscreens
Taping, 125, 203f, 204
  for ankle sprain, 307, 308f, 309f
  buddy-taping method, 94f
  for plantar fasciitis, 305, 306f
  for shin splints, 304–305, 305f
  of wounds, 285–287, 286f, 287f
Tarantulas, 372, 373f
Tar burn, 131–132
Tarp-assisted cooling, 339, 339f
Tavaborole, 272
TBI. *See* Traumatic brain injury (TBI)
Teeth. *See* Tooth
Tegaderm, 294
Temazepam, 349, 354
Temperature, 13
  high altitude–related problems and, 347
  measures of, conversion of, 501, 501t
  for water disinfection, 433

Temporomandibular joint syndrome, 224
Tendinitis, rotator cuff, 303–304
Tendon rupture, 307–310
Tension headache, 194
Tension pneumothorax, 47–48, 48f
"Tephra," 391
Terconazole, for vaginal infections, 149–150
Terrorism, 442–444
Testicle
  painful, 153–156
  problems of, 155–156
  swelling of, 155
  torsion of, 155, 155f
Tetanus, 183
Tetracycline
  for bubonic plague, 418
  for chlamydia, 154
  for ehrlichiosis, 177–178
  for malaria, 169
  for relapsing fever, 167
  for Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 167
Tetraglycine hydroperiodide, for water disinfection, 434
THERMACELL devices, 382
Thermal inhalation injury, 133
Thermometers, 189, 322–323, 339
Thigh bandaging, 297, 299f
Third-degree burns, 131
Throat, 14
  food stuck in, 218
  infectious mononucleosis of, 218

  sore. *See* Sore throat
Thrombophlebitis, 53, 311–312
Thrombosis
  deep vein
    definition of, 311
    traveling and, 440
  venous, 311–312
"Thrush," 217–218
Thumb
  dislocation of
    management of, 95–98, 98f
    thumb spica splint for, 508, 509f
  gamekeeper's, 98, 99f
Thumb spica splint, 508, 509f
Thunder, 386
TIA. *See* Transient ischemic attack (TIA)
Tick(s), 376, 376f
  African tick-bite fever from, 167
  anaplasmosis from, 174
  avoidance of, 376–377
  babesiosis from, 174
  bites from, 376, 378
  Colorado tick fever from, 175
  ehrlichiosis from, 176
  illustration of, 376f
  Lyme disease from, 176
  prevention strategies for, 183
  relapsing fever from, 174
  removal of, 377–378, 377f
  Rocky Mountain spotted fever from, 167

tularemia from, 167
Tick-borne diseases, 174
Tick paralysis, 178–179
Tidal wave, 390
Time zone crossings, jet lag caused by, 440
Tinea versicolor, 272
Tinidazole, for *Giardia lamblia*, 232
Tinnitus, 192
Tioconazole, for vaginal infections, 149–150
Tissue adhesives, for wounds, 293
TMJ (temporomandibular joint), 224
Toe(s)
  blister on, 269
  fracture of, 125
  turf, 304
Tongue
  biting of, seizure as cause of, 80
  black, 220
Tonic-clonic seizure, 80
Tonsillitis, 216–218
Tooth
  abscess of, 212–213
  broken, 222–224
  displacement of, 222–224
  "dry socket" after extraction of, 223–224
  inflammation/infections of, 220–222
  loss of, 222–224, 228
Toothaches, 220–222, 491
Tooth squeeze, 411
Topical steroids, 497

Tornado, 389
Torn fingernail, 278
Torn muscle, 306–307
Torsed (twisted) ovary, 149
Tourniquet
  amputation applications of, 86, 127
  application of, 62–68, 63f, 86, 127
  combat application, 63–64, 63f
  improvised, 65–66, 66f
  jewelry as, 86, 363
  second, 66
Toxicodendron, 255–256
Toxic plants. *See also* Wild plant and mushroom poisoning
  commonly ingested types of, 423–428
Traction
  Buck's, 114–115, 115f
  Kendrick Traction Device, 114
  shoulder dislocation and, 103–110
Traction harness, for femur fracture, 114–115, 114f
Transdermal scopolamine patch, for motion sickness, 439
Transient ischemic attack (TIA), 165
Transport
  aircraft, 409
  carries for, 455
    blanket drag, 457f
    cradle carry, 458f
    fireman's carry, 456f
    fireman's drag, 456f
    four-hand seat, 458f
    piggyback carry, 457f

    - rope (webbing) seat, 455f, 460f
    - shoulder drag, 456f
    - ski pole seat, 459f
    - wheelbarrow carry, 459f
  - ground-to-air distress signals, 459–462, 467–467, 467f
  - helicopters for, 464–466, 465f
  - of hypothermic victim, 325–326
  - of injured victim, 12, 363, 453–466
  - lifting techniques used in, 453–454
  - litters for, 458–464
    - backpack frame, 461f
    - blanket-pole, 460f
    - mummy, 462, 463f
    - parka, 461f
    - rope stretcher, 462f
  - logrolling for, 15, 454–455
  - moving techniques for, 453–454
  - straight lift for, 453–454, 454f
- Trauma-related bruises, 277
- Traumatic brain injury (TBI), 72
- Traveler's diarrhea ("turista"), 233–234
- Travelers, immunization of, 452
- Traveling, jet lag secondary to, 440–441
- Trench foot, 334–335
- Trench mouth, 224
- Triangular bandage, 296–301, 296f
- Triatomids, 379–380, 380f
- *Trichinella* spp., 180
- Trichinellosis, 180–181
- Trichinosis. *See* Trichinellosis

Trichomoniasis, 150
Triclosan, 219
Trimethadione, for seizures, 81, 489
Trimethobenzamide, for nausea and vomiting, 245–246, 492
Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
  for bladder infection, 154
  for bubonic plague, 418
  for chlamydia, 154
  for diarrhea, 233–234
  for kidney infection, 153
  for meningococcal disease, 182
  for methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, 260
  for paratyphoid fever, 182
  for typhoid fever, 182
  for whooping cough, 190
Trip plans, 7
"Triptans," for migraine headache, 195
Trovafloxacin, for bladder infection, 152
Tubal pregnancy. *See* Ectopic pregnancy
Tularemia, 181–182
Tumbu fly, 380
Tungiasis, 375
Turf toe, 304
Turkey gnats, 374
Typhoid fever, 182

U

Ulcers, 139–140, 246–247
  abdominal pain caused by, 139–140, 139f
  aphthous, 219

  bleeding, 64, 70
  corneal, 202–204
  duodenal, 139f
  gastric, 245
  hand, tularemia and, 171–172
  management of, 246
  pain caused by, medications for, 493–494
  stomach, 139f
  treatment of, 246
Ulipristal acetate, 151
Ulnar collateral ligament sprain, thumb spica splint for, 508, 509f
Ulnar gutter splint, 508, 509f
Ulnar nerve, cyclist's palsy and, 303
Ultraviolet radiation (UVR). *See also* Sunburn; Sunscreens; Tanning
  corneal burn caused by, 209
  sunglasses for ocular protection against, 210
  water disinfection using, 437
Umbilical cord
  description of, 160
  prolapsed, 160
Unconsciousness
  altitude-related, 352
  breathing and, 45–46
  head injury and, 45
  heat stroke and, 338–339
  long-term care, 46
  pulse and, 45
  seizure and, 81
Underwater diving accidents, 408–411
  air embolism, 408–409, 408f

  decompression sickness (the “bends”), 409–410
  depth and pressure changes, 408f
  ear squeeze, 410–411, 410f
  nitrogen narcosis, 410
  sinus squeeze, 411
  tooth squeeze, 411
Upper arm fracture
  management of, 101, 101f, 102f
  splint for, 510, 511f
Upper respiratory disorders, 225–228, 245
  anthrax, 419
  bronchitis, 227, 358
  common cold, 218, 225–226
  hay fever, 228
  influenza, 226–227
  pleuritis, 228
Ureaplasma bacteria, 149
Urethral obstruction, 152
Urinary tract disorders
  blood in urine, 152
  dark urine, 218
Urinary tract infection (UTI), 152
Urine
  acute retention of, 152
  blood in, 152
  color of, 8
  contaminated, 505
  discoloration of, 152, 342
Urticaria, 259. *See also* Hives
Urushiol, 255

V

Vaccinations. *See* Immunizations

Vagal reaction, 187

Vagina
  bleeding from, 149
  discharge from, 149–150
  infections of, 149–150, 232

Vaginitis, 149–150

Vaginosis, bacterial, 150

Vagus nerve
  dehydration-related stimulation of, 341
  description of, 187

Valacyclovir
  for Bell’s palsy, 197
  for fever blisters, 219
  for herpes simplex virus, 150
  for shingles, 275–276

Valium. *See* Diazepam

Valproic acid, for seizures, 81, 489

Vasovagal reaction, 187

Vegetables, handling of, 239

Vehicle cold weather survival kit, 329–330

Venom. *See* Envenomation; Snakebite; Spiders

Venom Locc Snakebite First Aid Kit, 365

Venomous snakes, 359–361, 361f
  avoidance of, 365
  types of, 359

Venous thrombosis, 311–312

Ventolin. *See* Albuterol

Ventricular fibrillation, 323

ventricular fibrillation and, 322–323

Vertigo, 192

Vestibular neuronitis, 192–193

Vestibular system, motion sickness and, 438

Vibrio bacteria, 394

Vibrio cholerae, 229

Victim(s)

  approaching, 12

  assessment of condition of, 14

  with chest injury, evacuation of, 47

  cooling of, 339–340, 339f

  evaluation of, 12

  of head injury, 72

  hypothermic, insulation of, 325–326

  multiple, 14

  pulse oximetry evaluation of, 12

  reassuring of, 12

  of starvation, assistance to, 14

  transport of, 15

  unconscious, 187

Viral diarrhea, 234–235

Vision

  head injuries as cause of problems in, 73

  stroke and, 165

Visual flight rules (VFR), 464

Vitamin E, for sunburn, 250

Vitreous detachment, 210–211

Volar (underneath) wrist splint, 507, 508f

Volcano, 391

Volume measures, conversion of, 502

Vomiting, 45–46, 246. *See also* Gastrointestinal tract disorders; Nausea and vomiting
  - aspiration injury and, 133
  - bile, 140
  - of blood, 67, 137, 247, 362
  - cyclical, 246
  - diabetes and, 163–164
  - dizziness and, 192–193
  - fainting and, 187–188
  - food poisoning and, 229
  - glaucoma and, 212
  - head injury and, 73, 245
  - hepatitis and, 247–248
  - motion sickness and, 438
  - sinusitis and, 215–216
  - sore throat and, 216–218
  - wild plant and mushroom poisoning, 424

W

Warts, plantar, 271

Washing dishes and cooking, diarrhea prevention by, 240

Wasps, 367, 368, 370

Waste disposal, bodily, 9

Water
  - boiling of, 434
  - contaminated, 433
  - in desert, 344
  - disinfection of, 10, 234, 433–437
  - purification of, 433
  - sterilization of, 433

Water hemlock, 424, 424f
Wax, in ear, 200–201
Weight, measures of, 503
West Nile viral disease, 172–173
Westward traveling, jet lag associated with, 440–441
Wet bulb globe temperature (WBGT), 343
Wet *versus* dry dressings, 131
Wheelbarrow carry, 455–458, 459f
Wheezing
  with allergic reaction, 259
  with asthma, 54
  thermal injury and, 133
Whistle, 329
Whistler technique, for hip dislocation, 122, 122f
Whooping cough, 190
Wildland fires, 345–346
  high-risk situations for, 345
  standard principles for, 345
  when caught in, 345–346
Wild plant and mushroom poisoning, 422–430
  medical history for, 422
  toxicity of, 422–430
  treatment for, 422
“Windburn,” 250
Windchill, 321, 322f
  frostbite caused by, 331
Wine, snake, 361
Winter storm
  driving during, 328
  preparedness for, 328–330

  - vehicle survival kit, 328, 329

- Worms, parasitic, 244
- Wounds, 67–68
  - abrasions, 279
  - anesthetizing of, 280–281
  - from animal attacks, 415
  - bandaging of, 296–301
  - bleeding from, 67, 70, 279–285
  - burn-related
    - dressings for, 131
    - infection of, 131
  - chest, dressing for, 47, 47f, 55
  - cleaning of, 281–282
  - closing of, 282–285, 283f, 284f
    - by stapling, 292–293
    - by suturing, 287–292
    - by tape, 285–287
  - cuts, 14, 279–285, 280f
  - dressing of, 294–295
  - embedded/impaled in body, 68
  - first-aid kit for care of, 446–447
  - gluing of, 293–294
  - gunshot, 68
  - "halving" of, 284f
  - from head injury, 77
  - infection of, 15, 278, 295
  - irrigation of, 281, 282f
  - lacerations, 279–285
  - local anesthesia of, 280–281
  - management after thawing, 332–333

  - medical care of, 295–296
  - minor, 277–302
  - myiasis of, 381
  - numbing of, 280–281
  - puncture, 266, 278, 282, 295, 401, 403, 404
  - “quartering” of, 284f
  - removing stitches in, 292
  - scrapes, 279
  - skin flaps and avulsions, 285
  - splinting of, 295
  - stapling of, 292–293, 292f, 293f
  - suturing of, 287–292, 288f, 289f, 290f, 291f
  - taping of, 285–287, 286f, 287f
- Wrist
  - bandaging of, 297, 298f
  - broken
    - double layer wrist for, 509, 510f
    - volar (underneath) wrist splint for, 507, 508f
  - carpal tunnel syndrome, 303
  - cut
    - double layer wrist for, 509, 510f
    - volar (underneath) wrist splint for, 507, 508f
  - dislocation of, 93–98, 93f, 94f
  - fracture of, 93–98, 93f, 94f
  - scaphoid fracture of, 94, 95f

X

- Xanax. *See* Alprazolam
- Xtoro. *See* Finafloxacin otic suspension

Y

Yeast infection, 234, 260

Yellow fever, 170

Z

Zaleplon, for insomnia, 349

Zanamivir, for influenza, 226–227

Zika virus disease, 173

Zinc metal, 434

Zinc oxide-eugenol, 221

Zipper removal, 472, 473f

Zolmitriptan, for migraine headaches, 195, 491

Zolpidem, for insomnia, 349

Zostavax, 276